

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

v88

Genesis

Copyrights & Licensing

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Copyright © 2022 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/ or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: “The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn”. You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes
Date: 2026-01-14
Version: v88
Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Literal Text
Date: 2026-01-14
Version: v88
Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text
Date: 2026-01-14
Version: v88
Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible
Date: 2024-07-23
Version: v2.1.31
Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy
Date: 2026-01-14

Version: v88
Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Words
Date: 2026-01-14
Version: v88
Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links
Date: 2026-01-14
Version: v88
Published by: unfoldingWord®

Table of Contents

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes - Genesis **18**

Genesis Introduciton 18
Genesis 1 24
Genesis 2 97
Genesis 3 147
Genesis 4 201
Genesis 5 257
Genesis 6 306
Genesis 7 356
Genesis 8 404
Genesis 9 452
Genesis 10 512
Genesis 11 558
Genesis 12 617
Genesis 13 662
Genesis 14 700
Genesis 15 759
Genesis 16 801
Genesis 17 838
Genesis 18 895
Genesis 19 978
Genesis 20 1061
Genesis 21 1102
Genesis 22 1167
Genesis 23 1217
Genesis 24 1261
Genesis 25 1401
Genesis 26 1461
Genesis 27 1529
Genesis 28 1614
Genesis 29 1657
Genesis 30 1728
Genesis 31 1807

Genesis 32 1919
Genesis 33 1980
Genesis 34 2020
Genesis 35 2070
Genesis 36 2128
Genesis 37 2194
Genesis 38 2263
Genesis 39 2319
Genesis 40 2365
Genesis 41 2409
Genesis 42 2523
Genesis 43 2597
Genesis 44 2666
Genesis 45 2729
Genesis 46 2785
Genesis 47 2842
Genesis 48 2909
Genesis 49 2955
Genesis 50 3026

Appendex: unfoldingWord® Translation Academy 3077

Abstract Nouns 3078
Active or Passive 3082
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information 3086
Background Information 3092
Biblical Distance 3097
Biblical Imagery — Extended Metaphors 3102
Biblical Money 3107
Biblical Volume 3111
Biblical Weight 3117
Blessings 3121
Collective Nouns 3124
Connect — Background Information 3129
Connect — Contrary to Fact Conditions 3133
Connect — Contrast Relationship 3139
Connect — Exception Clauses 3142
Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship 3145
Connect — Hypothetical Conditions 3150

Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship 3153
Connect — Sequential Time Relationship 3157
Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship 3161
Connecting Words and Phrases 3164
Copy or Borrow Words 3170
Direct and Indirect Quotations 3173
Double Negatives 3176
Doublet 3181
Ellipsis 3185
Euphemism 3189
Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ 3192
First, Second or Third Person 3194
Forms of ‘You’ — Dual/Plural 3197
Forms of ‘You’ — Singular 3199
Generic Noun Phrases 3202
Go and Come 3205
Hendiadys 3209
How to Translate Names 3213
Hyperbole 3220
Hypothetical Situations 3227
Idiom 3231
Imperatives — Other Uses 3235
Information Structure 3240
Introduction of a New Event 3244
Introduction of New and Old Participants 3250
Irony 3254
Irregular Use of Tenses 3259
Kinship 3266
Litotes 3270
Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit 3273
Merism 3276
Metaphor 3279
Metonymy 3289
Nominal Adjectives 3292
Numbers 3295
Oath Formulas 3300
Ordinal Numbers 3306
Parallelism 3310

Personification 3315
Poetry 3318
Politeness 3323
Possession 3329
Pronouns 3335
Pronouns — When to Use Them 3338
Quotations and Quote Margins 3342
Quotes within Quotes 3347
Reduplication 3351
Reflexive Pronouns 3354
Rhetorical Question 3359
Simile 3366
Symbolic Action 3370
Synecdoche 3374
Textual Variants 3376
Translate Unknowns 3380
Verse Bridges 3385
When Masculine Words Include Women 3388

Appendex: unfoldingWord® Translation Words 3391

Abel 3392
Abimelech 3393
abomination, abominable 3394
Abraham, Abram 3395
Adam 3397
adversary, enemy 3399
afflict, affliction, distress 3400
Ai 3402
alien, foreigner, sojourn 3403
Almighty 3404
altar 3405
Amalek, Amalekite 3406
Ammon, Ammonite 3407
Amorite 3408
angel, archangel 3409
anoint, anointed, anointing 3411
appoint, appointed 3413
Aram, Aramean, Aramaic, Aram of Damascus 3414

Ararat 3415
archer 3416
ark 3417
ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh 3418
Asher 3419
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community 3420
Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire 3422
avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance 3423
Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian 3425
barren, dry 3427
bear, bearer, bore, borne, produce, produced 3428
beast 3429
Beersheba 3430
believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief 3431
Benjamin, Benjaminite 3434
Bethel 3435
Bethlehem, Ephrathah 3436
Bethuel 3437
Bilhah 3438
bind, bond, bound 3439
birthright 3441
bless, blessed, blessing 3442
blot out, wipe out 3444
bow and arrow, a bow 3445
bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee 3446
bread 3448
bronze 3449
burnt offering, offering by fire 3450
bury, buried, burial 3451
Cain 3452
call, called, call out, called out 3453
camel 3454
Canaan, Canaanite 3455
captive, captivate, captivity, catch 3457
cast out, driving out, throw out 3459
Chaldea, Chaldean 3460
chariot, charioteer 3461

cherub, cherubim 3462
chief, leader 3464
circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision 3465
cistern, well 3468
clan 3470
column, pillar 3471
companion, fellow worker, friend 3472
compassion, compassionate 3473
conceive, conceived, conception 3474
concubine 3475
contempt, contemptible, not worth listening to 3476
corrupt, corrupted, corruption, incorruptibility, depraved 3477
council 3478
covenant 3479
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love 3482
cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox 3483
create, created, creation, creator 3485
cry, cry out, outcry 3487
cupbearer 3488
curse, cursed, cursing 3489
Cush 3491
Damascus 3492
Dan 3493
day 3494
deceive, lie, deception, illusion 3496
declare, proclaim, announce 3498
decree, decreed 3499
deer, doe, fawn, roebuck, stag 3500
defile, defiled, desecrate 3501
delight 3503
deliver, deliverer, deliverance, delivered 3504
descend, descendant 3506
desert, wilderness 3508
desolate, desolated, desolation, deserted, desolator 3509
destroy, destruction, annihilate 3511
devour 3512
discern, discernment, distinguish 3513
disperse, dispersion, scatter, distributed 3514

divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer 3515
dominion 3516
donkey, mule 3517
dove, pigeon, turtledove 3518
dream 3519
drink offering 3521
drunk, drunkard 3522
earth, land 3523
Eden, garden of Eden 3525
Edom, Edomite, Idumea 3526
Egypt, Egyptian 3527
Elam, Elamites 3529
elder 3530
Enoch 3531
envy, covet, jealous, jealousy 3532
Ephraim, Ephraimite 3533
Ephrath, Ephrathah 3534
Esau 3535
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever 3537
Euphrates River, the River 3540
Eve 3541
evil, wicked, unpleasant 3543
ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearer, sheepskin 3545
family, household 3547
famine 3548
favor, favorable, favoritism 3549
fear, afraid, frighten 3551
feast, feasting 3553
fig 3554
firstborn 3555
flock, herd 3557
flood 3558
flute, pipe 3560
fool, foolish, folly 3561
forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned 3563
forsake, forsaken, leave 3565
fountain, source, spring 3566
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful 3567

Gad 3568
gate, gate bar, gatekeeper, gatepost, gateway 3569
Gaza 3570
generation 3571
Gerar 3572
Gilead, Gileadite 3573
Girgashites 3574
goat, goatskin, scapegoat, kid 3575
God 3577
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry 3580
gold, golden 3582
Gomorrah 3583
good, right, pleasant, better, best 3584
Goshen 3586
grace, gracious 3587
grain, grainfields 3589
grape, grapevine 3590
grave, gravedigger, tomb, burial place 3591
Greece, Grecian 3593
guilt, guilty 3594
Hagar 3596
Ham 3597
Hamath, Hamathites, Lebo Hamath 3598
Hamor 3599
hang, hung 3600
Haran 3601
hard, harder 3602
harvest, reap 3603
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly 3605
Hebrew 3607
Hebron, Kiriath Arba 3608
heir 3609
Hittite 3610
Hivite 3611
honey, honeycomb 3612
honor 3613
horn, horned 3614
horse, warhorse, horseback, stallion, steed, mare 3615

horseman 3616
house 3617
image of God, image 3618
image, carved image, cast metal image, figure, carved figure, statue 3619
inherit, inheritance, heir 3620
iniquity 3622
innocent 3623
integrity 3625
interpret, interpretation, interpreter 3626
Isaac 3627
Ishmael, Ishmaelite 3629
Israel, Israelites 3631
Issachar 3633
Jacob, Israel 3634
Japheth 3636
jealous, jealousy 3637
Jebus, Jebusite 3638
Jordan River, Jordan 3639
Joseph (OT) 3640
joy, joyful, rejoice, glad 3642
Judah 3644
judge 3645
judge, judgment 3646
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification 3648
Kadesh, Kadesh Barnea, Meribah Kadesh 3651
Kedar 3652
king, kingship 3653
kingdom 3655
kiss 3657
know, knew, knowledge, known, unknown, distinguish 3658
Korah, Korahite 3660
Laban 3661
labor, labors, labored, laboring, laborer, work, hard work 3662
lamb, Lamb of God 3663
Lamech 3665
lament, lamentation 3666
law, principle 3667
Leah 3668

Levi, Levite 3669
lion, lioness 3670
livestock, animals 3671
loins 3672
lord, Lord, master, sir 3673
Lot 3676
love, beloved 3677
lust, lustful, passion, desire 3680
lute, lyre 3681
Maacah 3682
magic, magical, magician, who talk with spirits 3683
Manasseh 3684
Mede, Medes, Media 3685
meditate, meditation 3686
Melchizedek 3687
Meshech 3688
messenger 3689
Midian, Midianite 3690
might, mighty, mighty works 3692
Mizpah 3694
Moab, Moabite 3695
mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock 3696
month, monthly 3698
Most High 3699
mourn, mourner, weeping 3700
multiply, multiplied, multiplication 3701
myrrh 3702
Naaman 3703
Nahor 3704
Naphtali 3705
nation 3706
Negev 3708
Nile River, River of Egypt, the Nile 3709
Nineveh, Ninevite 3710
Noah 3711
oak 3713
oath, vow, swear, swearing, swear by 3714
oil 3716

olive 3717
oversee, overseer, keeper 3718
overtake 3719
Paddan Aram 3720
Paran 3721
peace, peaceful, peacemaker 3722
perfect, complete 3724
Perizzite 3725
Pharaoh, king of Egypt 3726
Philistines 3728
pit, pitfall, trench, cistern 3729
plea, plead, please, beg, implore 3730
pledge 3731
plow, plower, plowman, plowmen, plowshare, unplowed 3732
possess, possessed, possession, dispossess 3733
Potiphar 3735
praise, praised, praiseworthy 3736
pray, prayer 3738
prey, prey on 3740
priest, priesthood 3741
prince, princess, governor, provincial governor, official, nobleman, noblemen, nobility 3743
profit, profits, profited, profitable 3745
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess 3746
prosper, prosperity, prosperous 3748
prostitute, harlot, whored 3749
prostrate 3750
prostrate, bow down, worship 3751
proud, pride, prideful, boast, boastful, boasting 3753
pure, purify, purification 3755
Rachel 3757
Rebekah 3758
rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness 3760
rebuke, reprove 3762
redeem, redeemer, redemption 3763
reed 3765
reign, rule 3766
remnant 3767
report, reported, tell, reputation 3768

restore, restoration 3769
Reuben 3771
reward, prize, deserve 3772
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness 3774
rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader 3777
sackcloth 3779
sacrifice, offering 3780
Salt Sea, Dead Sea 3782
sandal 3783
Sarah, Sarai 3784
Saul (OT) 3785
save, saved, safe, salvation 3786
scepter 3789
seal, sealed, unsealed 3790
seed 3791
seek, search, look for 3793
seize, seizure, capture 3794
serpent, snake, viper 3795
servant, serve, maidservant, young man, young women 3796
Seth 3798
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach 3799
Sheba 3801
Shechem 3802
Shem 3803
shepherd, herder, pastor 3804
shield 3806
Shiloh 3807
Shinar 3808
shrewd, cunning 3809
Sidon, Sidonians 3810
sign, proof, reminder 3811
silver 3813
Simeon 3814
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning 3815
slaughter, slaughtered 3818
slay, slain, slaughter, kill, murder 3819
Sodom 3820
sons of God, children of God 3821

soul, self 3822
sow, sower, plant, planted, replanted, transplanted 3824
spirit, wind, breath 3826
staff, clubs 3828
statute 3829
strife, disputes, quarrel, arguing, conflict 3830
Succoth 3831
sweep 3832
sword, swordsmen 3833
Tamar 3835
Tarshish 3836
tent, tentmaker 3837
tenth, tithe 3838
Terah 3839
terror, terrorize, terrify, dread, panic 3840
test, tested, testing, testing in the fire 3841
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence 3843
thief, thieves, rob, robber, robbery, bandit 3846
thorn, thorn bush, thistle 3847
thresh 3848
throne, enthroned 3849
tongue, language 3850
transgress, transgression 3852
tremble, stagger, shake 3853
tribe, tribal, tribesmen 3854
trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity 3855
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness 3857
Tubal 3859
tunic 3860
unleavened bread 3861
Ur 3863
veil, veiled, unveiled 3864
vine 3865
vineyard 3866
virgin, virginity 3867
vision, envision 3868
watch, guard, take heed, beware 3869
week 3870

wheat 3871
wine, wineskin, new wine 3872
wise men, advisor 3874
wise, wisdom 3875
wolf, wild dog, wild dogs 3877
womb 3878
wrath, fury 3879
wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful 3880
Yahweh, Yah 3881
year 3884
yoke, yoked, tied 3885
Zebulun 3886
Zilpah 3887
Zoar 3888

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes - Genesis

Introduction to Genesis

Part 1: General Introduction

In the book of Genesis, God communicates to all people the early history of the universe. He begins with how he created everything from nothing, including the earth and all the heavenly bodies (sun, moon, stars), all the plants and animals, and especially how he created human beings in his image to be in a relationship with him. This book also explains how sin and death came into the world and what God's plan is to save people from that. In fact, all the important teachings in the Bible begin in Genesis. That makes this book foundational and important for everyone so that they can know and understand the truth about God and his plan for their lives.

Beginning with verse 1, the book of Genesis is a narrative that tells the history of events that actually happened. This is confirmed by the fact that the conjunctions and the forms of the verbs that are used in the Hebrew text reflect the Hebrew narrative style, which is used to narrate historical accounts. In the same way, those who translate the book of Genesis should also use grammatical structures in their languages that are used for true, historical narratives. God uses narrative, which is one of the most interesting styles of communication, to not only tell people about the events in the early history of the world, but also to teach them about himself and about the way he interacts with people as their loving Creator.

Genesis provides the vital context for the rest of God's Word, especially the gospel message about Jesus, and so it helps people to understand their need for him to be their Savior. In fact, without Genesis, it would not be clear why everyone needs to trust in Jesus as the only one who can save them from sin and its consequences, so that they can associate with God and be part of his eternal family.

In light of all that, Genesis should be one of the first books of the Bible that is translated into every language that needs a translation. May God guide and bless you and your translation team as you undertake this important task together by his power.

Author and date of writing

Moses was the human author of the first five books of the Bible, including the book of Genesis (Exodus 24:3–4; Deuteronomy 31:9, 24; John 1:45). The Holy Spirit is the one who inspired what Moses wrote in those books (2 Peter 1:21), so ultimately God is the author, and these books are part of his Message to mankind. Those five books are sometimes referred to as the Torah (a Hebrew word that means "teaching," "instruction," or "law") or the Pentateuch (a Greek word that means "five books"). In the New Testament this set of books is also referred to as "the Law" (John 1:45) or "the Law of Moses" (Acts 28:23), and Jesus himself affirmed that Moses wrote them (John 5:46–47; 7:23).

Moses was born in the country of Egypt around 1526 B.C. (Exodus 2:1–10). According to the genealogies in Genesis, his birth was about 1,000 years after the Flood (which was about 1,650 years after creation). Moses may have written much of the Pentateuch during the forty years that he led the people of Israel as they wandered in the wilderness (around 1446 B.C.—1406 B.C.).

The very first verse in Genesis assumes that God (the author guiding the human author) has always existed and that he has no beginning and no end (also see 21:33; Deuteronomy 33:27; Psalm 90:2). He uses his personal name "Yahweh" for the first time in Genesis 2:4. The name "Yahweh" means "he is" and indicates that God is eternal. His name also means that he is unchanging and that he is always present.

Book outline

In all, Genesis covers a span of about 2200 years of history. After the world's early history, the rest of Genesis tells about the ancestors of God's people, with special focus on Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and Joseph (and their families). Genealogies are an important part of what ties the book together from beginning to end.

The following outline shows these two main divisions in the book of Genesis: (1) Early World History, and (2) The History about the Ancestors of God's Chosen People. Those two divisions each have roughly four main subdivisions, which are based on four key events (in the first division) and four key ancestors (in the second division). Some scholars prefer to divide the book up into ten divisions that are introduced by the Hebrew phrase that means "these are the generations of …" In the outline below, **asterisks** mark the sections that contain that phrase. The phrase is found in Genesis 2:4 (heavens and earth), 5:1 (Adam), 6:9 (Noah), 10:1, 10:32 (sons of Noah), 11:10 (Shem), 11:27 (Terah), 25:12 (Ishmael), 25:19 (Isaac), 36:1, 36:9 (Esau), and 37:2 (Jacob).

Bold words in the outline show which sections contain promises and covenants from God and also mark who the main ancestors were in the various sub-divisions.

Division 1: Early World History

Creation

- God creates the universe and everything in it (1:1–2:3)
- Adam and Eve and the Garden of Eden (2:4–25)*

The Fall

- The first sin and God's judgment; prophecy of Christ (3:1–24) - **promise**
- Cain and Abel: the first murder; Cain's descendants (4:1–26)
- The descendants of Adam to Noah (5:1–32)*

The Flood

- God destroys the world with a flood, puts rainbow in the sky - **covenant** (6:1–9:17)*
- Noah curses his son Ham and his grandson Canaan, blesses other sons (9:18–27)
- The descendants of Noah's sons Shem, Ham, and Japheth (10:1–32)**

Tower of Babel

- Mankind rebels against God at Babel, so God creates many different languages and scatters the people over the earth (11:1–9)

Division 2: The History about the Ancestors of God's Chosen People

The history about **Abraham**Genesis 11:10–25:11

- The descendants of Shem to Abram (11:10–26)*
- Terah and his three sons' families in Haran; Terah dies (11:27–32)*
- Abram travels to Canaan with Sarai and his nephew Lot (12:1–9) - **promise**
- Abram lies about Sarai to Pharaoh, king of Egypt (12:10–20)
- Back in the Negev Desert, Abram and Lot part ways (13:1–18) - **promise**

- War of the kings; Abram rescues Lot and the other citizens of Sodom (14:1–17)
- Melchizedek blesses Abram; Abram refuses bounty from king of Sodom (14:18–24)
- God's **covenant** with Abram (15:1–21) - **promise**
- Hagar and Ishmael (16:1–16)
- New names: Abraham and Sarah; **covenant** of circumcision (17:1–27) - **promise**
- Three men visit Abram, Yahweh renews promise, Sarah laughs (18:1–15) - **promise**
- Abram pleads with Yahweh to spare Sodom (18:16–33)
- Lot and two daughters escape destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah (19:1–29)
- Lot's grandsons: the ancestors of the Moabites and Ammonites (19:30–38)
- Abraham lies about Sarah to Abimelech, king of the Philistines (20:1–18)
- Isaac is born to Sarah; Ishmael grows up in the desert (21:1–21)
- Abraham makes a treaty with King Abimelech at Beersheba (21:22–34)
- God tests Abraham by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac (22:1–19) - **promise**
- Sarah dies and Abraham buys burial property in the land of Canaan (23:1–20)
- God provides Rebekah as a wife for Isaac (24:1–67)
- Abraham's descendants by second wife Keturah (25:1–6)
- Abraham dies and is buried by Isaac and Ishmael (25:7–11)

The history about **Ishmael** and **Isaac**Genesis 25:12–35:29

- Ishmael's descendants and his death (25:12–18)*
- Isaac's sons Esau and Jacob; Esau sells his birthright (25:19–34)*
- Isaac lies about Rebekah to Abimelech, king of the Philistines (26:1–22) - **promise**
- God's **covenant** with Isaac in Beersheba; treaty with Abimelech (26:23–33)

The history about **Esau** and **Jacob**Genesis 26:34–36:43

- Jacob steals Esau's blessing; Esau plans revenge (26:34–27:46)
- Jacob flees and heads to Haran; stairway to heaven at Bethel (28:1–22) - **promise**
- Jacob works for Laban to marry his wives Leah and Rachel (29:1–30)
- Jacob's wives have his first eleven sons (29:31–30:24)
- Jacob becomes wealthy while working for Laban (30:25–43)
- Jacob and his family flee from Laban; Jacob's treaty with Laban (31:1–55)
- Jacob wrestles with God, who names him **Israel** (32:1–32)
- Jacob and Esau reconcile, and Jacob settles in the city of Shechem (33:1–20)
- Shechem rapes Dinah, and Jacob's sons take revenge (34:1–31)
- God blesses Jacob at Bethel (35:1–15) - **promise**
- Rachel dies giving birth to Benjamin (35:16–20)
- List of Jacob's twelve sons; Isaac dies and is buried by Esau and Jacob (35:16–29)
- Esau's descendants, the Edomites (36:1–43)**

The history about **Jacob** and **Joseph**Genesis 37–50

- Jacob's family; Joseph's dreams anger his brothers (37:1–11)*
- Joseph sold as a slave and taken to the country of Egypt (37:12–36)
- **Judah** and his daughter-in-law Tamar have children (38:1–30)
- Potiphar's wife falsely accuses Joseph, and he is imprisoned (39:1–23)
- In the prison, Joseph interprets dreams for Pharaoh's officials (40:1–23)
- Joseph interprets Pharaoh's dreams about famine (41:1–40)
- As governor over Egypt, Joseph stores up grain; he has two sons (41:41–57)

- Joseph's brothers come to Egypt to buy grain, then return to Jacob (42:1–38)
- All Joseph's brothers return to Egypt and have a meal with him (43:1–34)
- Joseph tests his brothers with his silver cup (44:1–17)
- Judah pleads with Joseph for Benjamin's freedom (44:18–34)
- Joseph reveals his identity to his brothers; they give the news to Jacob (45:1–28)
- Jacob and his family move to Egypt; list of his descendants (46:1–27)
- Joseph settles Jacob and his family in the land of Goshen (47:1–12)
- Joseph sells grain to all the people of Egypt (37:13–31)
- Jacob blesses Joseph's sons Ephraim and Manasseh (48:1–22)
- Jacob blesses each of his 12 sons (49:1–28)
- Jacob's death (49:29–33)
- Joseph has his father Jacob embalmed and buries him in Canaan (50:1–14)
- Joseph reassures his brothers that he has forgiven them (50:15–21)
- Joseph's death Genesis (50:22–26)

Special formatting

The book of Genesis sometimes uses poetic language to emphasize what is being said. Many translations use a special format to identify these passages as poetry by indenting each clause on a new line. Many other translations do not do this, but rather use regular paragraph formatting everywhere, including for poetry. It may be helpful to look at a translation in the national language of your country that uses poetry formatting, to help you decide whether or not you want to do something similar in your translation. Some translations put some of the following passages in poetry format since these verses have certain features of poetry such as parallelisms and metaphors: Genesis 1:27; 2:23; 3:14–16, 17b–19; 4:23–24; 8:22; 9:6, 9:25–27; 12:2–3; 14:19–20; 15:1; 16:11–12; 24:60; 25:23; 27:27–29, 27:39–40; 48:15–16, 48:20; 49:1–27. You may not want to put all these passages in poetry format since some of them have parallelisms that are not necessarily poetry but may just be emphasizing certain events in the narrative or certain points in a prophecy.

Genesis 1

Genesis 1 Chapter Introduction

Possible titles for this book:

- "Genesis"
- "The Book of Genesis"
- "Genesis: The First Book By Moses"
- "Genesis: The Book About Beginnings"
- "The First Book That God's Spokesman Moses Wrote: Genesis"

The English title "Genesis" is a transliteration of a Greek word that means "origin" or "beginning" or "birth"; the ancient Greek translation of the Hebrew scriptures (the Septuagint) uses this word for the first time in Genesis 2:4. The Hebrew title of this book בְּרֵאשִׁית (pronounced "bereshith") is the first Hebrew word in verse 1 and literally means "In the beginning." The Latin translation of the Bible (the Latin Vulgate) was the first translation to use the title "The Book of Genesis." Since that time, many other translations include "Genesis" in the book title because people are familiar with that name. Sometimes, as part of the title, translators also include the fact that Moses was the author and that he was inspired by God.

Genesis 1:1

ULT:
In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth.

UST:
{This is how everything} began: God created the heavens and the earth.

In the beginning (ULT)

{This is how everything} began (UST)

The first chapter of Genesis is a true, historical narrative (which is indicated by the Hebrew language structures that are used throughout the chapter), and verse 1 records the first event in that history. This is confirmed by the wider context of the Scriptures, which teach us that God created everything out of nothing at the very beginning of the world. Psalm 33:6, Psalm 33:9; Hebrews 11:3). Some languages must use a verb ("began") in verse 1 rather than an abstract noun (**beginning**). Alternate translation: [At the beginning of time]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

---

created (ULT)

created (UST)

In the Hebrew Bible, the verb "create" refers to an activity that only God does, and it often implies (as it does here) that he made something out of nothing. Also, the forms of the verbs in the Hebrew text (and the conjunctions) show that chapter 1 is a narrative that tells about true history and events in the order that things actually happened. Make sure that your translation does the same thing. Alternate translation: [made]

---

the heavens (ULT)

the heavens (UST)

Alternate translation: [the sky]

---

and the earth (ULT)

and the earth (UST)

This phrase refers to the planet earth.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- created
- God
- the heavens
- the earth

UST

- created
- God
- the heavens
- the earth

Genesis 1:2

ULT:
Now the earth was formless and empty, and darkness {was} over the surface of the deep {waters}, and the Spirit of God was hovering over the surface of the waters.

UST:
{At first after that,} the earth did not have {its present} form, and there was nothing {living} on it. It was {totally} dark, there was deep water {everywhere}, and God's Spirit was moving above the water.

Now the earth (ULT)

{At first after that,} the earth (UST)

The author pauses here to describe what the earth and the heavens were like after God first created them (verse 1). Some languages use a conjunction like **Now** to introduce that information, while other languages do not use a conjunction here. Do what is natural in your language. Also, be consistent here with how you translated **the earth** in verse 1. Alternate translation: [Now at first after that, the earth]

---

was formless and empty (ULT)

did not have {its present} form, and there was nothing {living} on it (UST)

It is not clear what the earth looked like at that time, but it did not have its present shape and order. The phrase **was formless and empty** could mean: (1) "did not have its present form, and there was nothing living on it yet" (2) "completely desolate," which treats the text as a hendiadys. However, it is best to keep both terms separate in your translation (as they are in the Hebrew text).

---

and darkness {was} over the surface of the deep {waters} (ULT)

It was {totally} dark, there was deep water {everywhere} (UST)

Alternate translation: [It was completely dark, there was deep water everywhere] or [and everywhere there was deep water that was surrounded by total darkness]

---

and the Spirit of God was hovering (ULT)

and God's Spirit was moving (UST)

The clause **and the Spirit of God was hovering** could mean: (1) "and God's Spirit was hovering" or (2) "and a wind from God was blowing"

---

over the surface of the waters (ULT)

above the water (UST)

Throughout this chapter, the word **waters** is in the plural in the Hebrew text. For some languages it is more natural to use the singular "water." Alternate translation: [over the surface of the water] or [above the waters]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Now the earth
- and the Spirit of
- God

UST

- {At first after that,} the earth
- and … s Spirit
- God

Genesis 1:3

ULT:
Then God said, “Let there be light.” And there was light.

UST:
Then God said, “I command light to start shining!” And {immediately} light started shining.

Then God said (ULT)

Then God said (UST)

What God says in verse 3 is a command. Consider whether or not it is best in your language to make that explicit in this quote margin. Alternate translation: [Then God commanded]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Let there be light (ULT)

I command light to start shining (UST)

This is a command, not a permission or a suggestion. It is a direct quote of what God actually said, and it is usually put between quotation marks in a translation. If you use an exclamation point with this command in your translation, make sure it does not mean or imply that God was angry. Also, the way you translate **light** should refer to what shines from a source of light; it does not refer here to the source itself. Alternate translation: [Let light exist] or [I command there to be light]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- God

UST
- God

Genesis 1:4

ULT:
And God saw the light, that {it was} good. Then God separated between the light and the darkness.

UST:
God observed that the light {was} excellent. Then he divided the light from the darkness {so that each had its own time}.

And God saw (ULT)

God observed (UST)

Notice that Hebrew frequently uses a conjunction such as **And** or **Then** at the beginning of a sentence. Some languages do not use conjunctions as frequently as Hebrew uses conjunctions. Do what is accurate and natural in your language in each context. Alternate translation: [And he saw] or [He saw]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

---

the light, that {it was} good (ULT)

that the light {was} excellent (UST)

In the Bible, **good** is an important theme. Throughout chapter 1, it especially means that what God created was high quality, complete, and had no defects; in other words, it had all the characteristics and functions that God intended it to have. The word **good** also includes the idea that what God created was untainted by sin and reflected his good character (Psalm 19:1; Romans 1:20). The focus here is not on how pleased or satisfied God was. Alternate translation: [that the light was good]

Then God separated between the light and the darkness (ULT)

Then he divided the light from the darkness {so that each had its own time} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then he caused the light to have its own time and the darkness to have its own time] or [Then he separated the light from the darkness so that it would be light for a number of hours and then dark for a number of hours]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- {it was} good
- God

UST

- God
- {was} excellent
- Then he divided

Genesis 1:5

ULT:
And God called the light Day, and the darkness he called Night. Then there was evening, and there was morning, one day.

UST:
He named the light Daytime, and the darkness he named Nighttime. Then evening came, and {later} morning came, {and that was} {the end of} the first day.

And God called (ULT)

He named (UST)

Some languages omit the connecting word **And** or **Then** here. Consider what is the best way in your language to connect this sentence with the previous one. Alternate translation: [Then He called] or [God named]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

---

the light Day (ULT)

the light Daytime (UST)

Notice that in this context the word **Day** refers only to the time when the sun is shining, not to the 24-hour time period that makes up a complete day. Make sure that this is clear in your translation. Throughout chapter 1, some translations use quote marks around the names that God gives the different things he created.

Then there was evening, and there was morning (ULT)

Then evening came, and {later} morning came (UST)

The evening and the morning are the parts of a 24-hour day that separate the hours of daytime (light) from the hours of nighttime (darkness): Evening came at the end of each daytime after

God finished his work of creating. Then after about 12 hours of nighttime, morning came, which began the next 12 hours of daytime when God did more work. Make sure your translation does not sound like morning came immediately after evening. Some languages have a one-word conjunction that means “and then” or “and later” and would fit well here. Alternate translation: [Then evening came, and then morning came]

Support Reference: Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

---

one day (ULT)

{and that was} {the end of} the first day (UST)

Here, **day** refers to a full 24-hour day. Also, the Hebrew text uses a cardinal number (**one**) here, but then uses ordinal numbers (“second,” “third,” and so on) for the rest of the days of the creation week. Some languages need to use an ordinal number (“first”) here too. Other languages use cardinal numbers throughout (“day one,” “day two,” and so on). Alternate translation: [and that was day one]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And … called
- God
- Day
- he called
- day

UST

- He named
- He named
- Daytime
- he named
- {and that was} {the end of} the … day

Genesis 1:6

ULT:
Then God said, "Let there be an expanse in the middle of the waters, and let it separate the waters from the waters."

UST:
Then God said, "I command there to be a large space in the middle of the water, so that it divides the water into two separate places."

Then God said (ULT)

Then God said (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 3. Alternate translation: [Then God commanded]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Let there be an expanse (ULT)

I command there to be a large space (UST)

The Hebrew word for **expanse** here describes a large space that is spread out. It was not solid, but rather it was open and empty, and it could be seen through and flown through (verse 20). It was probably also curved, following the spherical shape of the earth. See how you translated **Let there be** in verse 3. Alternate translation: [Let there be a vast space] or [I command there to be a vast space] or [I command a vast space to form]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

---

in the middle of the waters (ULT)

in the middle of the water (UST)

See how you translated **waters** in verse 2.

---

and let it separate the waters from the waters (ULT)

so that it divides the water into two separate places (UST)

Alternate translation: [and let it divide the water above it from the water below it] or [so that it separates the waters into two different places]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- God

UST
- God

Genesis 1:7

ULT:
So God made the expanse and separated between the waters that {were} under the expanse and the waters that {were} above the expanse. And it was so.

UST:
That is how God made a large space and used it to divide the water that {was} below the space from the water that {was} above it. Everything happened {exactly} as he commanded,

So God made (ULT)

That is how God made (UST)

Verse 7 explains what God's command in verse 6 caused to happen, and it repeats some of the same words and phrases. Make sure that your translation of these verses does not sound like God created the expanse twice. Alternate translation: [In that way God made] or [That is how he made]

---

the expanse (ULT)

a large space (UST)

Alternate translation: [a vast space]

---

and separated (ULT)

and used it to divide (UST)

Alternate translation: [and divided] or [and used it to separate]

---

between the waters that {were} under the expanse and the waters that {were} above the expanse (ULT)

the water that {was} below the space from the water that {was} above it (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to use a pronoun (**it**) here to refer to the expanse, since it was just mentioned earlier in the verse. Each language has its own system of when to use nouns or pronouns to refer to people, places, and things. In each context, do what is clear and natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the water that was under it from the water that was above it]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

And it was so (ULT)

Everything happened {exactly} as he commanded (UST)

Alternate translation: [That is the way it happened] or [Everything was exactly as he commanded it to be]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God

UST

- God

Genesis 1:8

ULT:
And God called the expanse Heavens. Then there was evening, and there was morning, the second day.

UST:
and he named the space Sky. Then evening came, and {later} morning came, {and that was} {the end of} the second day.

the expanse (ULT)

the space (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verses 6 and 7. Alternate translation: [the vast space]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

Heavens (ULT)

Sky (UST)

This word probably refers here to the atmosphere above the earth's surface, where clouds are and where birds fly, as well as the space where the sun, moon, and stars are now. Be consistent here with how you translated this term in verse 1.

Then there was evening, and there was morning (ULT)

Then evening came, and {later} morning came (UST)

See how you translated this sentence in verse 5, and see the note about that there. Alternate translation: [Then evening came, and then morning came]

---

the second day (ULT)

{and that was} {the end of} the second day (UST)

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to use an ordinal number (**second**) here or a cardinal number (“two”). Alternate translation: [and the second day ended] or [and that was the end of day two]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And … called
- God
- Heavens
- the … day

UST

- and he named
- and he named
- Sky
- {and that was} {the end of} the … day

Genesis 1:9

ULT:
Then God said, "Let the waters under the heavens be gathered to one place, and let the dry ground appear." And it was so.

UST:
Then God said, "I command the water {that is} below the sky to come together in one place so that there is dry ground." And that is {exactly} what happened.

Then God said (ULT)

Then God said (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verses 3 and 6. Alternate translation: [Then God commanded]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Let the waters under the heavens be gathered (ULT)

I command the water {that is} below the sky to come together (UST)

Consider whether it is better here in your language to use a passive form of the verb (**be gathered**) or an active form ("gather" or "come"). Alternate translation: [Let the water that is under the sky come together] or [I command the water that is below the heavens to come together]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

to one place (ULT)

in one place (UST)

Alternate translation: [in one area] or [into one area]

---

and let the dry ground appear (ULT)

so that there is dry ground (UST)

The water had been covering the land, so when the water receded from it, the land became exposed and dried off. Make sure that the way you translate **dry ground** does not sound like the land was dry while it was under the water. Alternate translation: [so that there is dry land] or [so that dry land can be seen] or [so that land is uncovered and dries off]

And it was so (ULT)

And that is {exactly} what happened (UST)

See how you translated this sentence in verse 7. It may be necessary to translate it in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [And it was exactly as God commanded it to be]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- the heavens

UST

- God
- the sky

Genesis 1:10

ULT:
And God called the dry ground Land, and the gathered waters he called Seas. And God saw that {it was} good.

UST:
Then God named the ground that had dried off Land, and he named the water which had gathered together Ocean. And he observed that {what he had made was} excellent.

And God called (ULT)

Then God named (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then he named]

---

the dry ground (ULT)

the ground that had dried off (UST)

Alternate translation: [the dry land] or [the land that had dried off]

Land (ULT)

Land (UST)

This is the same Hebrew word that is translated as “earth” in verse 1, but here it refers to the dry land or ground (in contrast to the water), and not to the entire planet. Alternate translation: [Ground]

---

and the gathered waters he called (ULT)

and he named the water which had gathered together (UST)

See how you translated a sentence in verse 5 that is similar in structure to this sentence. Alternate translation: [and the waters that he had gathered together he named] or [and he called the gathered waters] or [and he called the waters that had come together]

Support Reference: Information Structure

Seas (ULT)

Ocean (UST)

At that time there was probably just one very large body of water and one very large landmass on the earth (as verse 9 indicates). So a singular noun that refers to the largest body of water, such as “Ocean” or “Sea,” could be used here in your translation. Alternate translation: [Oceans]

---

that {it was} good (ULT)

that {what he had made was} excellent (UST)

Some languages cannot use a pronoun (**it**) here, but have to specify what was good. Also see how you translated the word **good** in verse 4, and see the note about that there. Alternate translation: [that what he had made was good] or [that the land and the seas were good]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And … called
- God
- Land
- he called
- God

- {it was} good

UST

- Then … named
- God
- Land
- he named
- אֱלֹהִים (ORIG QUOTE)
- {what he had made was} excellent

Genesis 1:11

ULT:
Then God said, "Let the land sprout vegetation: {every} plant yielding seed, {every} fruit tree bearing fruit according to its kind, that {has} its seed inside it, on the earth." And it was so.

UST:
Then God said, "I command the land to produce {green} plants all over the earth, {including} {all types of} plants that produce seeds {and} {all types of} fruit trees that produce their own type of fruit with seeds inside." And that is {exactly} what happened.

Then God said (ULT)

Then God said (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then God commanded]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Let the land sprout vegetation (ULT)

I command the land to produce {green} plants (UST)

The Hebrew word for **vegetation** refers generally here to any kind of green plant and includes the plants and trees that are mentioned next in this verse. Also, see how you translated "Land" in verse 10. Alternate translation: [I command the ground to grow green plants] or [The ground must now be covered with green plants]

{every} plant yielding seed (ULT)

{including} {all types of} plants that produce seeds (UST)

This phrase refers to many different kinds of plants, not just one plant or one seed. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Also, these kinds of plants have soft stems and include vegetable plants, herbs and other plants that produce edible seeds, such as rice, corn, and

wheat. Alternate translation: [including every kind of plant that has seeds] or [including all kinds of plants that bear seeds]

{every} fruit tree bearing fruit according to its kind (ULT)

{and} {all types of} fruit trees that produce their own type of fruit (UST)

The phrase **according to its kind** emphasizes that each different kind of tree produces its own kind of fruit and seeds, which grow and become only that kind of tree. For example, apple trees always produce apples with apple seeds, never peaches or cherries, or any other kind of fruit or seeds. Alternate translation: [and fruit trees that bear fruit, each according to its own kind] or [and every kind of fruit tree that bears its own kind of fruit] or [and all kinds of fruit trees that bear their own kind of fruit]

---

that {has} its seed inside it (ULT)

with seeds inside (UST)

Alternate translation: [that has seeds inside] or [with its own kind of seeds inside it]

---

on the earth (ULT)

all over the earth (UST)

For some languages it is clearer and more natural to put this phrase earlier in this verse and say, “Let the land sprout vegetation throughout the earth …” Alternate translation: [throughout the earth]

Support Reference: Information Structure

And it was so (ULT)

And that is {exactly} what happened (UST)

Either a period or a colon can be used here, but a colon more clearly shows that verse 12 gives the details of what happened. This is different from verse 7, where the details of what happened come before **And it was so**, and from verse 9, where no additional details are given. Alternate translation: [And it happened exactly as God commanded it to happen:]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- the land
- yielding
- seed
- fruit
- fruit
- {has} its seed
- the earth

UST

- God
- the land
- that produce
- seeds
- {and} {all types of} fruit trees
- their own type of fruit
- with seeds
- the earth

Genesis 1:12

ULT:
So the land brought out vegetation, {every} plant yielding seed according to its kind, and {every} tree bearing fruit that {has} its seed inside it, according to its kind. And God saw that {it was} good.

UST:
The land started producing {green} plants, {including} {all types of} plants that produce their own type of seeds and {all types of} trees that produce their own type of fruit with seeds inside. God observed that {what he had made was} excellent.

So the land brought out vegetation (ULT)

The land started producing {green} plants (UST)

Verse 12 explains what God's command in verse 11 caused to happen, and it repeats some of the same words and phrases. Make sure that your translation of these verses does not sound like God created the plants twice. Alternate translation: [The land sprouted plants] or [The land started growing green plants]

{every} plant yielding seed according to its kind (ULT)

{including} {all types of} plants that produce their own type of seeds (UST)

Alternate translation: [including plants that have seeds, each according to its own kind] or [including every kind of plant that has seeds that grow into the same kind of plant] or [including all kinds of plants that have their own type of seeds]

---

and {every} tree bearing fruit that {has} its seed inside it, according to its kind (ULT)

and {all types of} trees that produce their own type of fruit with seeds inside (UST)

Alternate translation: [and trees that bear fruit with seeds inside, each according to its own kind] or [and every kind of tree that has fruit with seeds that grow into the same kind of tree] or [and all kinds of trees that have their own kind of seed-bearing fruit]

And God saw (ULT)

God observed (UST)

Consider whether or not it is more natural in your language to begin this sentence with a conjunction. Alternate translation: [And he saw] or [He saw]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

---

that {it was} good (ULT)

that {what he had made was} excellent (UST)

See how you translated this clause in verse 10. Some languages have to specify what was good. Alternate translation: [that what he had made was good] or [that all the plants and trees were good]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the land
- yielding
- seed
- fruit
- {has} its seed

- God
- {it was} good

UST

- The land
- that produce
- their own type of seeds
- fruit
- seeds
- God
- {what he had made was} excellent

Genesis 1:13

ULT:
Then there was evening, and there was morning, the third day.

UST:
Then evening came, and {later} morning came, {and that was} {the end of} the third day.

Then there was evening, and there was morning (ULT)

Then evening came, and {later} morning came (UST)

See how you translated this sentence in verses 5 and 8. Alternate translation: [Then evening came, and then morning came]

---

the third day (ULT)

{and that was} {the end of} the third day (UST)

Alternate translation: [and the third day ended] or [and that was the end of day three]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the … day

UST

- {and that was} {the end of} the … day

Genesis 1:14

ULT:
Then God said, "Let there be lights in the expanse of the heavens to separate between the day and the night. And let them be for signs, and for seasons, and for days and years.

UST:
Then God said, "I command there to be sources of light in the sky that divide the day{time} from the night{time}. They must also mark when important things happen, and {they must} show when seasons, days and years begin {and end}.

Then God said (ULT)

Then God said (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then God commanded]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Let there be lights (ULT)

I command there to be sources of light (UST)

These lights refer to the sun, the moon, and stars that give off light. But it is important to keep this general in your translation (like the Hebrew text does) and not specify the names of these lights. Alternate translation: [Let there be objects that give light]

---

in the expanse of the heavens (ULT)

in the sky (UST)

It might seem that the expression **the expanse of the heavens** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. The expanse is the same thing as the heavens (verse 8), so some translations leave **the expanse of** implied here.

Alternate translation: [in the space of the sky] or [in the open space of the sky] or [in the heavens]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

---

to separate (ULT)

that divide (UST)

Alternate translation: [to divide] or [that separate]

And let them be for signs (ULT)

They must also mark when important things happen (UST)

Alternate translation: [Let those lights also be] or [They will also serve as markers] or [I also command those lights to serve as]

---

and for seasons, and for days and years (ULT)

and {they must} show when seasons, days and years begin {and end} (UST)

The sun and moon show the passing of time. For example, the 30-day month is determined by the phases of the moon, and the 365-day year is determined by the time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun. The **seasons** are regular times of the year, such as seed-planting and harvesting times, and the seasons of spring, summer, fall and winter (Genesis 8:22), as well as the special festivals which God appointed for his people to meet with him. You could put some of that information in a footnote.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- the heavens
- the day
- for signs
- and for seasons
- and for days
- and years

UST

- God
- in the sky
- the day{time}
- They must also mark when important things happen
- and {they must} show when seasons … begin {and end}
- days
- and years

Genesis 1:15

ULT:
And let them be as lights in the expanse of the heavens to shine on the earth.” And it was so.

UST:
They must function as lights in the sky that shine {light} on the earth.” And that is {exactly} what happened.

And let them be as lights (ULT)

They must function as lights (UST)

Alternate translation: [And they will be sources of light] or [They will serve as lights] or [Their purpose is to serve as sources of light]

---

in the expanse of the heavens (ULT)

in the sky (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 14. Alternate translation: [in the space called the sky] or [in the open space of the sky] or [in the heavens]

---

to shine on the earth (ULT)

that shine {light} on the earth (UST)

See how you translated **the earth** in verses 1–2. Alternate translation: [to shine light on the earth] or [so that they give light to the earth]

And it was so (ULT)

And that is {exactly} what happened (UST)

Alternate translation: [And it was exactly as he commanded it to be]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the heavens
- the earth

UST

- in the sky
- the earth

Genesis 1:16

ULT:
So God made the two great lights, the greater light to rule the day, and the lesser light to rule the night, and the stars.

UST:
That is how God made the two bright lights, the brighter light to shine during the day{time}, and the weaker light to shine during the night{time}. {That is} also {when he made} the stars.

So God made (ULT)

That is how God made (UST)

Verses 16–18 explain what God's commands in verses 14–15 caused to happen. Make sure your translation of these verses does not sound like he created the lights twice. See how you translated **So God made** in verse 7. Alternate translation: [In that way God made] or [That is how he made]

---

the two great lights (ULT)

the two bright lights (UST)

This phrase refers to the sun and the moon, which are the two brightest objects in the earth's sky. However, the author intentionally does not use their names, so you should not include their names in your translation either. Alternate translation: [the two big lights]

---

the greater light (ULT)

the brighter light (UST)

The focus is on the relative brightness or strength of the lights, not on their size. Alternate translation: [the stronger light]

---

to rule the day (ULT)

to shine during the day{time} (UST)

The word **rule** is a figure of speech that means each light has the greatest effect during a particular time period, because it is the brightest light that is shining then. For some languages, nonliving objects like the sun and the moon cannot **rule** because only people can do that. Do what is accurate and natural in your language. Alternate translation: [to govern the day]

Support Reference: Personification

---

and the lesser light (ULT)

and the weaker light (UST)

Alternate translation: [and the dimmer light]

---

to rule the night (ULT)

to shine during the night{time} (UST)

Be consistent here with how you translated **rule** previously in this verse. Alternate translation: [to govern the night]

---

and the stars (ULT)

{That is} also {when he made} the stars (UST)

The verb **made** that is used earlier in the verse is implied here. Translate this in a way that is clear and natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and he also made the stars] or [That is also when he created the stars]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- to rule
- the day
- to rule

UST

- God
- to shine during
- the day{time}
- to shine during

Genesis 1:17

ULT:
And God set them in the expanse of the heavens to shine on the earth,

UST:
He put those lights in the sky to shine light on the earth,

in the expanse of the heavens (ULT)

in the sky (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verses 14 and 15. Alternate translation: [in the space called the sky] or [in the open space of the sky] or [in the heavens]

---

to shine on the earth (ULT)

to shine light on the earth (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 15. Alternate translation: [to provide light to the earth]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- God
- the heavens
- the earth

UST
- אֱלֹהִים (ORIG QUOTE)
- in the sky
- the earth

Genesis 1:18

ULT:
and to rule over the day and over the night, and to separate between the light and the darkness. And God saw that {it was} good.

UST:
to shine during the day{time} or during the night{time}, and to divide the light from the darkness. God observed that {what he had made was} excellent.

and to rule over the day and over the night (ULT)

to shine during the day{time} or during the night{time} (UST)

Make sure that your translation of the word **day** refers here to the daytime hours, not an entire 24-hour day. Also see how you translated **rule** in 1:16. Alternate translation: [and to dominate the daytime or the nighttime] or [and to shine during the daytime and during the nighttime]

Support Reference: Personification

---

and to separate between the light and the darkness (ULT)

and to divide the light from the darkness (UST)

Consider again how you translated **separate** in verses 4, 6–7, 14 and 18. Alternate translation: [and to distinguish the light from the darkness] or [and to separate the time of light from the time of darkness]

And God saw (ULT)

God observed (UST)

Alternate translation: [And he saw] or [He saw]

---

that {it was} good (ULT)

that {what he had made was} excellent (UST)

Some languages need to specify what was good. Alternate translation: [that what he had made was good] or [that the lights in the sky were good]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and to rule
- over the day
- God
- {it was} good

UST

- to shine
- during the day{time}
- God
- {what he had made was} excellent

Genesis 1:19

ULT:
Then there was evening, and there was morning, the fourth day.

UST:
Then evening came, and {later} morning came, {and that was} {the end of} the fourth day.

Then there was evening, and there was morning (ULT)

Then evening came, and {later} morning came (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then evening came, and then morning came]

---

the fourth day (ULT)

{and that was} {the end of} the fourth day (UST)

Alternate translation: [and the fourth day ended] or [and that was the end of day four]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the … day

UST
- {and that was} {the end of} the … day

Genesis 1:20

ULT:
Then God said, "Let the waters swarm {with} swarm{s} of living creature{s}, and let bird{s} fly above the earth across the face of the expanse of the sky."

UST:
Then God said, "I command there to be large groups of {water} animals that live everywhere in the water. I also command there to be birds that fly in the sky above the earth."

Then God said (ULT)

Then God said (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then God commanded]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Let the waters swarm {with} swarm{s} of living creature{s} (ULT)

I command there to be large groups of {water} animals that live everywhere in the water (UST)

For emphasis, the speaker is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of showing the emphasis. Alternate translation: [I command the water to be full of large groups of living creatures] or [I command there to be large numbers of water animals that live everywhere in the water]

Support Reference: Poetry

---

and let bird{s} fly (ULT)

I also command there to be birds that fly (UST)

The Hebrew word for **birds** can also be more general and refer to "winged creatures," which includes birds, bats, flying insects and even flying reptiles that are now extinct. Alternate translation: [and let there be birds that fly] or [Also let there be winged creatures that fly]

---

above the earth across the face of the expanse of the sky (ULT)

in the sky above the earth (UST)

Alternate translation: [above the earth, through the air] or [across the sky above the earth]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- the earth
- the … sky

UST

- God
- the earth
- in the sky

Genesis 1:21

ULT:
So God created the great sea creatures and every living creature that moves which the waters swarm with according to their kind, and every winged bird according to its kind. And God saw that {it was} good.

UST:
That is how God made the huge sea animals and all {the other} {types of} animals that live all over the place in the water, {each} having its own type of young. {That is} also {how he made} all {the different types of} birds, {each} having its own type of young. God observed that {what he had made was} excellent.

the great sea creatures (ULT)

the huge sea animals (UST)

These include whales, sharks, giant squid, crocodiles, and leviathans (Psalm 74:13–14, Isaiah 27:1), which were probably swimming reptiles that are now extinct. Alternate translation: [the huge ocean animals]

---

and every living creature that moves (ULT)

and all {the other} {types of} animals that live (UST)

Alternate translation: [and every kind of fish and every other animal that lives] or [and all the fish and other kinds of animals that live]

---

which the waters swarm with (ULT)

all over the place in the water (UST)

Alternate translation: [throughout the ocean in large groups] or [in the water and fills it] or [everywhere in the ocean]

---

according to their kind (ULT)

{each} having its own type of young (UST)

The author assumes that his readers will understand that each different kind of creature has its own distinct kind of offspring. For example, whales always give birth to whales, and never give birth to cats or cows or any other kind of creature. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [each according to its own kind] or [each that has its own kind of young]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

every winged bird (ULT)

all {the different types of} birds (UST)

See how you translated “birds” in verse 20. Alternate translation: [every kind of bird] or [all the different kinds of birds] or [every kind of winged creature]

---

according to its kind (ULT)

{each} having its own type of young (UST)

See how you translated this phrase earlier in this verse. Alternate translation: [each according to its own kind] or [each that has its own kind of young]

And God saw (ULT)

God observed (UST)

Alternate translation: [And He saw] or [He saw]

---

that {it was} good (ULT)

that {what he had made was} excellent (UST)

Some languages need to specify what was good. Alternate translation: [that what he had made was good] or [that the water animals and the birds were good]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- So … created
- God
- God
- {it was} good

UST

- That is how … made
- God
- God
- {what he had made was} excellent

Genesis 1:22

ULT:
Then God blessed them, saying, "Be fruitful and multiply and fill the waters in the seas, and let the bird{s} multiply on the earth."

UST:
Then he blessed them {all} by saying {to them}, "You {water animals} must have many young so that you increase {greatly} {in number} and live all over the place in the ocean. {You} birds must {also} increase {greatly} {in number} all over the earth."

Then God blessed them (ULT)

Then he blessed them {all} (UST)

For some languages it is necessary to specify to what **them** refers. Alternate translation: [Then God blessed the water creatures and the birds]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

saying (ULT)

by saying {to them} (UST)

God blesses the water animals first. If that is not clear, you could make that explicit here in the quote margin or at the beginning of what God says. Alternate translation: [and said first to the water animals]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

Be fruitful (ULT)

You {water animals} must have many young (UST)

God speaks directly to the water animals using the second person ("you"), then later in the verse speaks about the birds in the third person (**the birds**). For some languages it is necessary

to use either second person for both or third person for both, to prevent confusion. Do what is natural and clear in your language. Alternate translation: [Reproduce] or [You water animals will produce many young]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

---

and multiply (ULT)

so that you increase {greatly} {in number} (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that you and your offspring will multiply greatly in number] or [so that you and your offspring will become very many]

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

---

and fill (ULT)

and live all over the place (UST)

Alternate translation: [and live throughout]

---

the waters in the seas (ULT)

in the ocean (UST)

For some languages, “waters in the seas” is too repetitive, so it is more natural here to just say “sea” or “ocean” or “water.” Alternate translation: [the water of the sea]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

---

on the earth (ULT)

all over the earth (UST)

Alternate translation: [throughout the earth] or [and live all over the earth]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then … blessed
- God
- Be fruitful
- and multiply
- let … multiply
- on the earth

UST

- Then he blessed
- אֱלֹהִים (ORIG QUOTE)
- You {water animals} must have many young
- so that you increase {greatly} {in number}
- must {also} increase {greatly} {in number}
- all over the earth

Genesis 1:23

ULT:
Then there was evening, and there was morning, the fifth day.

UST:
Then evening came, and {later} morning came, {and that was} {the end of} the fifth day.

Then there was evening, and there was morning (ULT)

Then evening came, and {later} morning came (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then evening came, and then morning came]

---

the fifth day (ULT)

{and that was} {the end of} the fifth day (UST)

Alternate translation: [and the fifth day ended] or [and that was the end of day five]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the … day

UST
- {and that was} {the end of} the … day

Genesis 1:24

ULT:
Then God said, "Let the land bring forth {every} living creature according to its kind: livestock and {every} crawling creature and {every} living thing of the earth, {each} according to its kind." And it was so.

UST:
Then God said, "I command the land to produce {all types of} animals, {each} having its own type of young, {including} domestic animals, {all types of} animals that crawl and {all} the {other types of} wild animals, {each} having its own type of young." And that is {exactly} what happened.

Then God said (ULT)

Then God said (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then God commanded]

Let the land bring forth (ULT)

I command the land to produce (UST)

See how you translated a similar command to the land in verse 11. Alternate translation: [I command the land to yield] or [The land must now produce]

{every} living creature (ULT)

{all types of} animals (UST)

This is a general term that refers to all the different kinds of creatures that breathe, including the three large categories of animals mentioned below in this verse. Alternate translation: [every type of living animal] or [all kinds of animals]

---

according to its kind (ULT)

{each} having its own type of young (UST)

This phrase means that every kind of animal that God created always produces young that are the same kind of animal as their parents. See how you translated this phrase in verse 21, and see the note about that there. Alternate translation: [each that has its own kind of young] or [each having its own kind of young]

---

livestock (ULT)

{including} domestic animals (UST)

Moses assumes that his readers will understand that **livestock** probably includes animals such as horses, camels, cattle, sheep, and goats that people raise for food or use for farming or other work. This is in contrast to animals that normally live in the wild. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [including farm animals]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and {every} crawling creature (ULT)

{all types of} animals that crawl (UST)

Alternate translation: [every type of animal that crawls] or [all kinds of animals that crawl]

---

and {every} living thing of the earth (ULT)

and {all} the {other types of} wild animals (UST)

Moses assumes that his readers will understand that this phrase, **and {every} living thing of the earth**, refers in general to animals that are normally not raised by people but live in the wild. Alternate translation: [and every other kind of wild animal that lives on the land] or [and all the other kinds of wild animals that live on the land]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

{each} according to its kind (ULT)

{each} having its own type of young (UST)

See how you translated this phrase earlier in this verse. Alternate translation: [each that has its own kind of offspring] or [each having its own kind of offspring]

And it was so (ULT)

And that is {exactly} what happened (UST)

Alternate translation: [It happened exactly as he commanded it to happen]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- the land
- livestock
- the earth

UST

- God
- the land
- {including} domestic animals

- and {all} the {other types of} wild animals

Genesis 1:25

ULT:
So God made {every} creature of the earth according to its kind, and the livestock according to its kind, and every crawling creature of the ground according to its kind. And God saw that {it was} good.

UST:
That is how God made {all the different types of} wild animals, {each} having its own type of young, and {all} the domestic animals, {each} having its own type of young, and all {different types of} animals that crawl on the ground, {each} having its own type of young. God observed that {what he had made was} excellent.

So God made (ULT)

That is how God made (UST)

Alternate translation: [That is how God created] or [In that way God made]

{every} creature of the earth (ULT)

{all the different types of} wild animals (UST)

See how you translated **every creature of the earth** in verse 24. Alternate translation: [every kind of wild animal] or [all the different kinds of wild animals]

---

according to its kind (ULT)

{each} having its own type of young (UST)

Alternate translation: [each that bears its own kind of young] or [each having its own kind of young]

---

according to its kind (ULT)

{each} having its own type of young (UST)

Alternate translation: [each that bears its own kind of young] or [each having its own kind of young]

---

and every crawling creature of the ground (ULT)

and all {different types of} animals that crawl on the ground (UST)

See how you translated **crawling creature** in verse 24. Alternate translation: [and every kind of creature that crawls along the ground] or [and all different kinds of animals that crawl along the ground]

---

according to its kind (ULT)

{each} having its own type of young (UST)

Consider again how you translated this phrase in verses 11, 12, 21, 24, and 25. It may be necessary to translate this phrase in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [each that bears its own kind of offspring] or [each having its own kind of young]

And God saw (ULT)

God observed (UST)

Alternate translation: [And he saw] or [He saw]

---

that {it was} good (ULT)

that {what he had made was} excellent (UST)

Some languages need to specify what was good. Consider again how you translated “And God saw that … good” in verses 10, 12, 18, 21, 25. Alternate translation: [that what he had made was good] or [that all the animals that he had made were good]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- the earth
- the livestock
- God
- {it was} good

UST

- God
- {all the different types of} wild animals
- {all} the domestic animals
- God
- {what he had made was} excellent

Genesis 1:26

ULT:
Then God said, "Let us make man in our image, according to our likeness, and let them rule over the fish of the sea and over the bird{s} of the sky and over the livestock and over all the earth and over every moving creature moving on the earth."

UST:
Then God said {to himself}, "{Now} we should make human beings to be like us and act like us, and let us put them in charge of the fish in the ocean, the birds in the sky, the domestic animals, and the entire earth, including all the animals that live on the earth."

Then God said (ULT)

Then God said {to himself} (UST)

Here God is not commanding anything to happen, but is getting ready to personally create mankind (the details are given in Genesis 2:7, 21–22). Some languages have to specify who is being spoken to.

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Let us make (ULT)

{Now} we should make (UST)

Most Bible scholars think that the plural pronouns (**us** and **our**) in this verse refer to God and reflect the fact that he is three Persons in one God. So it is best to keep these pronouns plural in your translation. Also, many translations capitalize the first letter of all pronouns that refer to God in order to show him honor and respect. Your translation team needs to decide whether or not you will do that too. Be consistent with your decision as you translate the Bible. Alternate translation: [Now we will make]

---

man (ULT)

human beings (UST)

The Hebrew word for **man** is used here (and in verse 27) as a collective noun that refers to human beings in general, including both male and female. Alternate translation: [mankind]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

---

in our image, according to our likeness (ULT)

to be like us and act like us (UST)

These two phrases have similar meanings and emphasize that God made mankind to be like himself in many ways. Alternate translation: [to be like us, so that they are similar to us in many ways]

Support Reference: Doublet

---

and let them rule (ULT)

and let us put them in charge of (UST)

Alternate translation: [and let us put them in control of] or [We will give them authority to rule]

---

over the fish of the sea (ULT)

the fish in the ocean (UST)

Alternate translation: [the fish in the sea]

---

and over the bird{s} of the sky (ULT)

the birds in the sky (UST)

Some translations leave out the phrase **of the sky** because it is strongly implied and may not sound natural in their languages. However, if it is natural in your language, it is best to include this phrase, because the author repeatedly contrasts three large categories of animals in this section: creatures that live on the ground, creatures that swim in the water, and creatures that fly in the sky. Alternate translation: [the birds that fly in the sky]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

---

and over all the earth (ULT)

and the entire earth (UST)

This refers to the planet earth and everything on it, including water, soil, metals, minerals, and other resources, as well as all the plants and animals.

---

and over every moving creature moving on the earth (ULT)

including all the animals that live on the earth (UST)

For some languages it is not natural to repeat **and** or **over** with each item in this list. Consider what is the best way to translate a list like this in your language. Alternate translation: [including every creature that moves on the earth] or [and all the animals that live on the earth]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- man
- God
- in our image
- and let them rule
- the sky

- and over the livestock
- the earth
- the earth

UST

- human beings
- God
- to be like us
- and let us put them in charge of
- the sky
- the domestic animals
- the … earth
- the earth

Genesis 1:27

ULT:
Then God created man in his image. In the image of God he created him; male and female he created them.

UST:
So God created human beings to be like himself. {Yes,} he made them to be like himself. He {also} created them {to be} male or female.

Then God created (ULT)

So God created (UST)

In this verse God does what he said he was going to do (verse 26). Make sure your translation does not sound like God created mankind twice. Also see how you translated **created** in verses 1 and 21. Alternate translation: [So God made]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

---

man (ULT)

human beings (UST)

Be consistent here with how you translated this term in verse 26. Alternate translation: [mankind]

In the image of God he created him (ULT)

{Yes,} he made them to be like himself (UST)

This clause is the second half of a chiasm (an inverted parallelism) that repeats the first part of verse 27 in reverse order, to emphasize that it was in God's image that human beings were created. Alternate translation: [Yes he made them in his image] or [Indeed he created them to be like himself] or [Yes, God made them to be similar to himself in many ways]

Support Reference: Parallelism

In the image of God he created him (ULT)

{Yes,} he made them to be like himself (UST)

The pronoun **him** refers to the collective noun **man**, which in this case refers to human beings in general, not just one person.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

male and female he created them (ULT)

He {also} created them {to be} male or female (UST)

The phrase **male and female** comes first in the Hebrew text in order to emphasize it. Do what is accurate and natural in your language. Also make sure your translation of this verse does not sound like God is both male and female. Alternate translation: [He also made them to be male or female]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- man
- Then … created
- God
- in his image
- In the image of
- God
- he created
- he created

UST

- human beings
- So … created
- God
- to be like himself
- Yes … to be like himself
- Yes … to be like himself

- he made
- He {also} created

Genesis 1:28

ULT:
Then God blessed them, and God said to them, "Be fruitful and multiply, and fill the earth and subdue it. And rule over the fish of the sea and over the bird{s} of the sky and over every living thing that moves on the earth."

UST:
Then God blessed them by saying to them, "Have many children so that you {and your descendants} increase {greatly} {in number} and live all over the earth and take control of it. You are in charge of the fish in the ocean, the birds in the sky, and all the animals that live on the land."

and God said to them (ULT)

by saying to them (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation of this quote margin that what God says next is the way that he blessed mankind, not something he said separately from that. Alternate translation: [and said] or [He said]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Be fruitful (ULT)

Have many children (UST)

See how you translated **Be fruitful and multiply** in verse 22. It may be necessary to translate the phrase in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [Bear many children] or [You will bear many children]

Support Reference: Blessings

---

and multiply (ULT)

so that you {and your descendants} increase {greatly} {in number} (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that you and your descendants will multiply greatly in number] or [so that you and your descendants will become very many]

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

---

and fill the earth (ULT)

and live all over the earth (UST)

Alternate translation: [and inhabit the whole earth] or [Fill the earth]

---

and subdue it (ULT)

and take control of it (UST)

Alternate translation: [and take care of it] or [and bring it under your control]

And rule (ULT)

You are in charge of (UST)

See how you translated **rule** in verse 26. Alternate translation: [You must rule over] or [I am giving you authority to rule]

---

over the fish of the sea and over the bird{s} of the sky (ULT)

the fish in the ocean, the birds in the sky (UST)

See how you translated these phrases in verse 26. Alternate translation: [the fish in the ocean, the birds that fly in the sky]

---

and over every living thing that moves on the earth (ULT)

and all the animals that live on the land (UST)

This phrase refers generally here to every kind of creature that lives on land. Alternate translation: [and every animal that moves on the land] or [and all the animals that move on the land]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then … blessed
- God
- God
- Be fruitful
- and multiply
- the earth
- And rule
- the sky
- the earth

UST

- Then … blessed
- God
- by saying
- Have many children
- so that you {and your descendants} increase {greatly} {in number}
- the earth
- You are in charge of
- the sky
- the land

Genesis 1:29

ULT:
Then God said, "Behold, I have given to you every plant {that} yields seed that {is} on the surface of the whole earth and every tree that {has} tree fruit {that} yields seed inside it. They will be yours for food.

UST:
Then he {also} said {to them}, "Listen, I am {now} giving to you {for food} all {the different types of} plants that produce seeds and grow anywhere on the earth, as well as all the {different types of} trees that {produce} fruit with seeds inside it. {All of} them are yours to eat from.

Then God said (ULT)

Then he {also} said {to them} (UST)

God is still speaking to the human beings, so it may be necessary to add "also" to this quote margin. Some languages need to specify who is being spoken to. Other languages may leave this quote margin implied, since the same subject (God) is talking to the same people. However, the repeated quote margin in the Hebrew text could show that God paused before continuing or that he is changing the topic, or it may be to emphasize what he says next. So if it is natural to keep the quote margin here in your language, that is best. Alternate translation: [Then God also said to them] or [Then he added]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Behold (ULT)

Listen (UST)

This word means that what God says next is important and should be given special attention. Consider what is the best way to translate this term in your language. Alternate translation: [Look] or [Listen to this] or [I want you to know that]

Support Reference: Metaphor

I have given to you (ULT)

I am {now} giving to you {for food} (UST)

Alternate translation: [I am now giving to you as food] or [I have provided as food for you] or [I am now providing as food for you]

---

every plant {that} yields seed that {is} (ULT)

all {the different types of} plants that produce seeds and grow (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in verses 11 and 12. Alternate translation: [every kind of seed-bearing plant that grows] or [every kind of plant with seeds that grows] or [all the different kinds of plants that yield seeds and grow]

---

on the surface of the whole earth (ULT)

anywhere on the earth (UST)

Alternate translation: [anywhere throughout the earth]

---

and every tree that {has} (ULT)

as well as all the {different types of} trees that {produce} (UST)

Alternate translation: [as well as every kind of tree that bears] or [and all the different kinds of trees that bear]

---

tree fruit {that} yields seed inside it (ULT)

fruit with seeds inside it (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in verses 11 and 12. Alternate translation: [seed-bearing fruit]

They will be yours for food (ULT)

{All of} them are yours to eat from (UST)

Alternate translation: [You may eat from any of those plants]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- {that} yields
- seed
- the … earth
- tree fruit
- {that} yields
- seed

UST

- Then he {also} said {to them}
- that produce
- seeds
- the earth
- fruit with seeds inside it
- fruit with seeds inside it
- fruit with seeds inside it

Genesis 1:30

ULT:
And to every living thing of the earth, and to every bird of the sky, and to every{thing} moving on the earth that {has} living breath in it, {I have given} every green plant for food." And it was so.

UST:
In the same way, {I give} every {type of} green plant for food to all the {wild} animals {that live} on the earth, and all the birds {that fly} in the sky, and all the {other} animals {that live} on the land and breathe {air}." And that is how it was.

And to every living thing of the earth (ULT)

In the same way … to all the {wild} animals {that live} on the earth (UST)

See how you translated similar phrases in verses 24 and 25. Alternate translation: [In the same way, to every kind of wild creature that lives on the land] or [Likewise, to all the wild creatures that live on the land] or [In the same way, to all the wild animals]

---

and to every bird of the sky (ULT)

and all the birds {that fly} in the sky (UST)

Alternate translation: [and every kind of bird that flies in the sky]

---

and to every{thing} moving on the earth that {has} living breath in it (ULT)

and all the {other} animals {that live} on the land and breathe {air} (UST)

See how you translated "that moves on the earth" in verse 28. Alternate translation: [and every other kind of creature that moves on the land and has the breath of life] or [and all the other creatures that move on the earth and breathe air to live]

{I have given} every green plant for food (ULT)

{I give} every {type of} green plant for food (UST)

For some languages it is clearer or more natural to put this phrase near the beginning of this verse and say, “In the same way, I give every type of green plant for food to all the wild animals that live on the earth, and all the birds that fly in the sky, and all the other animals that live on the land and breathe air.” Also see how you translated **plant** in verses 11, 12, 29. Alternate translation: [I give every kind of green plant as food] or [I have given all the green plants as food]

Support Reference: Information Structure

And it was so (ULT)

And that is how it was (UST)

Consider again how you translated this sentence in verses 7, 9, 11, 15, 24 and 30. It may be necessary to translate it in different ways, depending on the context. For example, here in verse 30 this phrase follows a statement God made, which is different from the other contexts where it follows a command. Alternate translation: [And it was exactly as God said it would be]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the earth
- the sky
- the earth

UST

- the earth
- the sky
- the land

Genesis 1:31

ULT:
Then God saw all that he had made, and behold, {it was} very good. Then there was evening, and there was morning, the sixth day.

UST:
Then God looked at everything that he had made, and he observed that it was {all} very excellent. Then evening came, and {later} morning came, {and that was} {the end of} the sixth day.

Then God saw (ULT)

Then God looked at (UST)

See how you translated "God saw …" in verse 4. Alternate translation: [Then God observed]

---

all that he had made (ULT)

everything that he had made (UST)

This phrase refers to everything that God made during the entire week of Creation, not just on the sixth day. Consider again how you translated **made** (or "make") in verses 7, 16, 25, 26 and 31. Compare that to how you translated a word that has a similar meaning ("created") in verses 1, 21 and 27. Alternate translation: [everything that he had created]

---

and behold (ULT)

and he observed that (UST)

This word calls attention to what God is looking at and helps emphasize that what he saw was very good. Alternate translation: [and indeed]

Support Reference: Metaphor

{it was} very good (ULT)

it was {all} very excellent (UST)

Consider again how you translated “good” in verses 4, 10, 12, 18, 21, 25, and 31. Alternate translation: [it was all very good]

Then there was evening, and there was morning (ULT)

Then evening came, and {later} morning came (UST)

Consider again how you translated these phrases in verses 5, 8, 13, 19, 23, and 31, and see the note about that at verse 5. Alternate translation: [Then evening came, and then morning came]

---

the sixth day (ULT)

{and that was} {the end of} the sixth day (UST)

Alternate translation: [and the sixth day ended] or [and that was the end of day six]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- it was … good
- the … day

UST

- God
- it was {all} … excellent
- {and that was} {the end of} the sixth day

Genesis 2

Genesis 2:1

ULT:
So the heavens and the earth were completed, and all their hosts.

UST:
That is how God finished {creating} the heavens and the earth, including all the many things that are in them.

So the heavens and the earth were completed (ULT)

That is how God finished {creating} the heavens and the earth (UST)

Verse 1 is a summary statement that looks back at what God did in chapter 1. Make sure that is clear in your language. Also consider whether it is better in your language to use an active or passive clause here, and see how you translated "heavens and earth" in 1:1. Alternate translation: [So it was that the heavens and the earth were finished by God] or [That is how God concluded making the heavens and the earth]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the heavens
- and the earth

UST
- the heavens
- and the earth

Genesis 2:2

ULT:
And by the seventh day God had completed his work that he had done, so he rested on the seventh day from all his work that he had done.

UST:
By the seventh day he had finished the work he had been doing, so he rested on that day from all that work.

by the seventh day (ULT)

By the seventh day (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that God had completed his work by the seventh day and did not work on that day. Also consider again how you translated ordinal numbers in Genesis 1:5, 8, 13, 19, 23, 31; 2:2. Alternate translation: [By day seven]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

---

so he rested on the seventh day from all (ULT)

so he rested on that day from all (UST)

God **rested** in the sense that he stopped his work and did not work on that day. It does not mean he was tired or had lost his strength. Rest is an important theme in the Bible, so you should try to be consistent in how you translate this term here and in other passages, such as Exodus 23:12, 31:17 and Hebrews 4:4, 10. Part of this theme includes the Hebrew word for Sabbath, which has the same root word as the verb for “rest” and is often translated as “resting day.” Alternate translation: [so he ceased on that day from all] or [so on the seventh day he no longer did]

---

his work that he had done (ULT)

the work he had been doing (UST)

Alternate translation: [the work that he had been doing]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- by the … day
- on the … day

UST

- אֱלֹהִים (ORIG QUOTE)
- By the … day
- on that day

Genesis 2:3

ULT:
And God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, because on it he rested from all his work of creating that God had done.

UST:
Then God established the seventh day {as a day} to bless {people}, by setting it apart as a special time {to rest and worship him}. {He did that} because on that day he no longer did the work that he had been doing, creating {everything}.

And God blessed the seventh day (ULT)

Then God established the seventh day {as a day} to bless {people} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then he designated the seventh day as a day to bless people] or [And he honored the seventh day]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

---

and sanctified it (ULT)

by setting it apart as a special time {to rest and worship him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and made it a holy day] or [and set it apart as a day especially devoted to him] or [by setting it apart as a special day for people to rest and worship him]

---

because on it (ULT)

{He did that} because on that day (UST)

Alternate translation: [because during that day] or [He did that because during that day]

---

he rested from all his work (ULT)

he no longer did the work (UST)

See how you translated a similar clause in 2:2. Alternate translation: [he ceased from all the work] or [he did not do any more work]

---

of creating that God had done (ULT)

that he had been doing, creating {everything} (UST)

Alternate translation: [of creating that he had been doing]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And … blessed
- God
- the … day
- of creating
- God

UST

- Then … established … as a day} to bless {people}
- God
- the … day
- he had been doing, creating {everything}
- he had been doing, creating {everything}

Genesis 2:4

ULT:
These {are} the generations of the heavens and the earth when they were created, in the day {when} Yahweh God made the earth and the heavens,

UST:
What follows tells {more details about} the history of what {God} did when he created the heavens and the earth: During the time {when} Yahweh {who is} God created the earth and the heavens,

These {are} (ULT)

What follows tells {more details about} (UST)

This phrase refers forward to Genesis 2:5–24 and begins a new section. Chapter 1 of Genesis gives an overview of what God did each day of creation week, including that he created human beings on day six. Chapter 2 gives more details about how God created Adam and Eve, who were his most important creations. Each chapter emphasizes different parts of the same history; they are not two different histories. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: [These are more details about] or [This is more about] or [What follows gives more details about]

---

the generations of the heavens and the earth when they were created (ULT)

the history of what {God} did when he created the heavens and the earth (UST)

The Hebrew text uses a passive construction here to emphasize the heavens and the earth. Decide the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: [the history of the heavens and the earth when they were created by God] or [what happened when God created the heavens and the earth]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

in the day {when} (ULT)

During the time {when} (UST)

Alternate translation: [during the days when] or [During the days when]

---

made the earth and the heavens (ULT)

created the earth and the heavens (UST)

This clause forms a poetic device called a chiasm with “the heavens and the earth … created” in the first part of this verse. Try to keep the same phrase order in your translation. See how you translated **the heavens** and **the earth** in 1:1 and 2:1. Alternate translation: [created the earth and the heavens]

Support Reference: Poetry

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the generations of
- the heavens
- and the earth
- when they were created
- in the day {when}
- Yahweh
- God
- the earth
- and the heavens

UST

- the history of
- the heavens
- and the earth
- what {God} did when he created
- During the time {when}
- Yahweh
- {who is} God
- the earth
- and the heavens

Genesis 2:5

ULT:
and every shrub of the field had not yet appeared on the earth, and every plant of the field had not yet sprung up, because Yahweh God had not caused it to rain on the earth, and there was no man to work the ground.

UST:
{for a while} there were not yet any bushes {growing} in the fields on the earth, and there were not any {other} plants that had sprouted yet. {That was} because God had not {yet} sent rain to water the earth, and human beings did not exist {yet} to cultivate the ground.

and every shrub of the field had not yet appeared on the earth (ULT)

{for a while} there were not yet any bushes {growing} in the fields on the earth (UST)

Verses 5–6 give background information about what things were like before God created mankind (verse 7). Some languages use a conjunction like "Now" to introduce background information, while other languages do not use a conjunction here. Alternate translation: [Now for a while, there were not yet any shrubs in the fields on the earth] or [For a while, no wild shrubs had yet started growing on the earth]

Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

---

and every plant of the field had not yet sprung up (ULT)

and there were not any {other} plants that had sprouted yet (UST)

See how you translated "plants" in 1:11–12 and 1:29–30. Alternate translation: [nor had any other plants started growing yet]

---

had not caused it to rain on the earth (ULT)

had not {yet} sent rain to water the earth (UST)

See how you translated **earth** in 1:1 and 2:1. Alternate translation: [had not yet caused it to rain on the earth] or [had not yet caused rain to water the earth]

---

and there was no man (ULT)

and human beings did not exist {yet} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and there were no human beings yet] or [and mankind did not exist yet]

---

to work the ground (ULT)

to cultivate the ground (UST)

Working the ground includes tasks such as clearing the ground, preparing the soil, planting seeds, and watering the plants. See how you translated **ground** in 1:25. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [to farm the land]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and … man
- on the earth
- Yahweh
- God
- the earth
- to work

UST

- and human beings
- on the earth

- יְהוָה (ORIG QUOTE)
- God
- the earth
- to cultivate

Genesis 2:6

ULT:
But mist came up from the earth and watered all of the surface of the ground.

UST:
{During that time} springs of water kept seeping up from underground and supplied water to the entire surface of the land.

But mist (ULT)

{During that time} springs of water (UST)

The Hebrew word for **mist** refers to water in some form, such as water vapor, springs, or streams of water. Also, some translations begin verse 6 without **But**. Alternate translation: [But at that time mist] or [At that time mist]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

---

came up (ULT)

kept seeping up (UST)

This verb describes a repeated or continuous action. Alternate translation: [seeped up]

---

from the earth (ULT)

from underground (UST)

Alternate translation: [from the ground] or [from underground]

---

and watered (ULT)

and supplied water to (UST)

Alternate translation: [and irrigated] or [and spread over]

---

all of the surface of the ground (ULT)

the entire surface of the land (UST)

Alternate translation: [the whole surface of the earth] or [the ground everywhere]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the earth

UST
- underground

Genesis 2:7

ULT:
Then Yahweh God formed the man {out of} dust from the ground, and he breathed into his nostrils the breath of life, and the man became a living being.

UST:
Then Yahweh {who is} God {took} {some} dirt from the earth {and} formed the first man {out of it}. Then he blew his breath into the man's nostrils to make him live, so that the man became alive.

Then Yahweh God formed (ULT)

Then Yahweh {who is} God {took} … {and} formed … out of it (UST)

The word **formed** describes what an expert craftsmen would do; it implies artistic skills and design. Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh who is God shaped]

---

the man (ULT)

the … first man (UST)

The definite article **the** is used here because this refers to a specific man, the first male human. For many languages it is more natural to use an indefinite article ("a") to introduce him here or else to not use an article at all. Alternate translation: [the first man]

{out of} dust (ULT)

{some} dirt (UST)

The word used here in the Hebrew text is usually translated as **dust** (as in 13:16, 28:14), but it can also be translated as "dirt" (as in 26:15) or "mortar/mud/clay" (as in Leviticus 14:42). The dirt would have been damp enough to be formed or shaped. Alternate translation: [out of mud]

---

from the ground (ULT)

from … earth … the (UST)

For some languages it may be better to change the order of the phrases in the first half of this verse and say, “Then Yahweh who is God took some dirt from the ground and formed a man out of it,” Also, see how you translated **ground** in 1:25 and 2:5–6. You may need to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [from the earth]

---

and he breathed (ULT)

Then he blew (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he blew] or [Then he exhaled]

---

and he breathed into his nostrils the breath of life (ULT)

Then he blew his breath into the man’s nostrils to make him live (UST)

This refers to God breathing God’s breath into man’s nostrils. As you translate the pronouns **he** and **his** in this verse, make sure it is clear in your language to whom each pronoun refers.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the man
- the man
- Yahweh
- God
- the breath of

UST

- the man
- the … first man
- Yahweh

- {who is} God
- his breath

Genesis 2:8

ULT:
Now Yahweh God had planted a garden in Eden, in the east, and there he put the man whom he had formed.

UST:
Now Yahweh God had planted a {large} garden in {the region of} Eden, {which was} in the east, and that is where he put the man whom he had created.

Now Yahweh God had planted (ULT)

Now Yahweh God had planted (UST)

The clause **Now Yahweh God had planted** could mean: (1) "Now Yahweh God had previously planted" or "Before that, Yahweh God had planted." This interpretation fits the context of chapter one, which says that God had made all the trees and plants on day three (1:11–12), three days before he created man (1:26–27; 2:7). Following this view, verses 8–14 give background information for what happens in verses 15–24. (2) "Then Yahweh God planted" According to this interpretation, God made the Garden of Eden on day six, after he created man.

Support Reference: Background Information

---

a garden (ULT)

a {large} garden (UST)

The man lived in this garden, and there were animals and many trees and other plants in it too, so it was fairly large. Make sure your translation of this term does not refer to something that is too small. Alternate translation: [a large park]

---

in Eden, in the east (ULT)

in {the region of} Eden, {which was} in the east (UST)

In this context, the phrase **in the east** could refer to: (1) the eastern part of the region of Eden; or (2) a region east of where Moses lived when he wrote this. It is best, if possible, to keep your translation of this phrase general here (like the Hebrew text). Alternate translation: [in the region called Eden, which was to the east] or [in the eastern part of the land of Eden]

---

and there he put the man (ULT)

and that is where he put the man (UST)

Alternate translation: [and in that garden he put the man] or [That is where he put the man]

---

whom he had formed (ULT)

whom he had created (UST)

See how you translated **formed** in verse 7. Alternate translation: [whom he had shaped] or [whom he had created]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the man
- Now … had planted
- Yahweh
- God
- in Eden

UST

- the man
- Now … had planted
- Yahweh
- God

- in {the region of} Eden

Genesis 2:9

ULT:
And Yahweh God had made to grow from the ground every tree {that} is pleasant to the sight and good for food, and the tree of life in the middle of the garden, and the tree of the knowledge of good and evil.

UST:
{There} Yahweh had caused all {types of} trees to grow from the ground that are beautiful to look at and {that grow fruit that is} good to eat. In the middle of the garden was the tree whose fruit makes people live {forever}, as well as the tree whose fruit enables people to know {what is} good and {what is} evil.

to the sight (ULT)

to look at (UST)

Alternate translation: [to the eyes] or [in appearance]

---

and good (ULT)

and {that grow fruit that is} good (UST)

Alternate translation: [and that have fruit that is good] or [and whose fruit is good]

---

for food (ULT)

to eat (UST)

Alternate translation: [for eating]

---

and the tree of life in the middle of the garden (ULT)

In the middle of the garden was the tree whose fruit makes people live {forever} (UST)

Alternate translation: [including the tree whose fruit gives people eternal life, which was in the middle of the garden]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Yahweh
- God
- {that} is pleasant
- and good
- the knowledge of
- good
- and evil

UST

- Yahweh
- אֱלֹהִים (ORIG QUOTE)
- that are beautiful
- and {that grow fruit that is} good
- people to know
- {what is} good
- and {what is} evil

Genesis 2:10

ULT:
And a river was going out from Eden to water the garden, and from there it divided and became four head{water}s.

UST:
There was a river flowing through {the region of} Eden that provided water for the park. From Eden the river divided into four {smaller} rivers.

And a river was going out (ULT)

There was a river flowing (UST)

Verse 10 gives more of the background information that began in verse 8. Many translations omit the conjunction **And** or "Now" here. Alternate translation: [Now a river was flowing] or [A river was flowing]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

---

from Eden (ULT)

through {the region of} Eden (UST)

The garden was inside the land of Eden, so as the river flowed through Eden, it watered the garden. Alternate translation: [from the land of Eden]

---

to water (ULT)

that provided water for (UST)

See how you translated "watered" in verse 6. Alternate translation: [to irrigate] or [to provide water for] or [that watered]

---

the garden (ULT)

the park (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 8. Alternate translation: [the park]

---

and from there (ULT)

From Eden (UST)

Alternate translation: [and from the garden] or [and from Eden]

---

it divided and became four head{water}s (ULT)

the river divided into four {smaller} rivers (UST)

This verse could refer to: (1) a river in Eden which was the source river that watered the garden and then divided downstream into the four smaller rivers. Alternate translation: [the river divided into four smaller rivers]; (2) the four rivers being source headwaters that flowed downstream and joined to form the larger river in Eden. Alternate translation: [there were four smaller source rivers that joined together and formed the larger river] If possible, leave your translation ambiguous here (as the Hebrew text does), so that either interpretation is possible.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- from Eden

UST
- through {the region of} Eden

Genesis 2:11

ULT:
The name of the first {is} Pishon. It winds through all of the land of Havilah, where gold {is}.

UST:
The first {river} {was} the Pishon {River}, which flowed around the entire region of Havilah, {a place} where {there was} {much} gold.

The name of the first {is} (ULT)

The first {river} {was} (UST)

Most translations use past tense in verse 10, but then use present tense throughout verses 11–14. It may be best to use past tense throughout verses 10–14, especially since the rivers and places that are named in these verses no longer existed when Genesis was written, because the Flood completely changed the entire surface of the earth; after the Flood, the names of some of those rivers and places were given to new rivers and places. Alternate translation: [The first river is named] or [The first river is]

Pishon (ULT)

the Pishon {River} (UST)

Consider whether or not it is natural in your language to use the article (the) with the name of a river.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

It winds through (ULT)

which flowed around (UST)

The words **winds** or “meanders” mean that the river changed direction from time to time. Alternate translation: [It meanders through] or [which flows around]

---

all of the land of Havilah (ULT)

the entire region of Havilah (UST)

Be consistent in how you translate **land of** throughout this section. Alternate translation: [the whole region called Havilah]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

where gold {is} (ULT)

{a place} where {there was} {much} gold (UST)

Alternate translation: [a place where there is much gold] or [which has a lot of gold]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the land of
- gold {is}

UST

- the … region of
- {there was} {much} gold

Genesis 2:12

ULT:
And the gold of that land {is} good. Bdellium and onyx stone {are} there.

UST:
In fact, the gold from that region {was} {very} pure. A {type of} fragrant resin and {valuable} onyx gemstones {were} {also} in that region.

And the gold of that land (ULT)

In fact, the gold from that region (UST)

This sentence emphasizes the previous statement about the gold and gives more information about it. Alternate translation: [In fact, the gold from that land] or [Indeed, the gold that is found in that land]

{is} good (ULT)

{was} {very} pure (UST)

Alternate translation: [is very pure] or [is very high quality]

Bdellium (ULT)

A {type of} fragrant resin (UST)

The meaning of this Hebrew word is not certain. In many translations it is transliterated, that is, spelled the way the Hebrew word is pronounced. It may refer to: (1) a fragrant tree resin that was used to make perfume; or (2) a type of stone or crystal, or possibly pearl. Alternate translation: [A kind of sweet-smelling resin called bdellium] or [A kind of fragrant perfume]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

---

and onyx stone (ULT)

and {valuable} onyx gemstones (UST)

It is not certain what kind of stone this was, but most Bible scholars think it was onyx, which is a kind of quartz that is often black but also occurs in many other colors and can have stripes or bands of white (or other colors) running through it. Alternate translation: [and valuable stones called onyx] or [and valuable gemstones]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

{are} there (ULT)

{were} {also} in that region (UST)

Make sure the verb tense you choose here fits with the way you translated verse 11. Alternate translation: [are also found there] or [are also in that land]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And the gold of
- land
- {is} good

UST

- In fact, the gold from
- region
- {was} {very} pure

Genesis 2:13

ULT:
And the name of the second river {is} Gihon. It winds through all of the land of Cush.

UST:
The second river {was} the Gihon {River}, which flowed around through the entire region of Cush.

It winds through (ULT)

which flowed around through (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 2:11. Alternate translation: [It meanders through] or [which wanders throughout]

---

all of the land of Cush (ULT)

the entire region of Cush (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 2:11. Alternate translation: [the whole region of Cush]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the land of
- Cush

UST
- the … region of
- Cush

Genesis 2:14

ULT:
And the name of the third river {is} Tigris. It goes east of Asshur. And the fourth river {is} Euphrates.

UST:
The third river {was} the Tigris {River}, which flowed east of {the region of} Assyria, and the fourth river {was} called the Euphrates {River}.

And the name of the third river {is} (ULT)

The third river {was} (UST)

Alternate translation: [The name of the third river is] or [The third river is named] or [The third river is]

It goes east of (ULT)

which flowed east of (UST)

The word **east** refers to where the river was located, not the direction it was flowing. Alternate translation: [It flows in an area east of] or [which flows in an area east of] or [which was located east of]

Asshur (ULT)

{the region of} Assyria (UST)

This Hebrew name is pronounced “ash-shur” and is spelled “Asshur,” “Ashur,” or “Assyria” in English, depending on the context. This was a region of land, because at that time there were no cities. Most translations have “Assyria” here. Consider again how you translated “the land of” in verses 2:11 and 2:13. Alternate translation: [the land of Asshur]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Asshur
- Euphrates

UST

- {the region of} Assyria
- was} called the Euphrates {River}

Genesis 2:15

ULT:
And Yahweh God took the man and put him in the Garden of Eden to work it and tend it.

UST:
After Yahweh God placed the man in Eden Garden to cultivate it and take care of it,

And Yahweh God took the man and put him (ULT)

After Yahweh God placed the man (UST)

In verse 8 it says that God had already put the man in the garden, so the way you translate verse 15 should not sound as though he did it again. This information is repeated here to continue the story from verse 8. Alternate translation: [Now Yahweh God had already situated the man]

Support Reference: Background Information

---

in the Garden of Eden (ULT)

in Eden Garden (UST)

Notice that **Garden** is capitalized when it is part of a name. Alternate translation: [in the garden in the land called Eden]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

to work it (ULT)

to cultivate it (UST)

See how you translated **work** in verse 2:5. Alternate translation: [to farm it] or [so that he would farm it]

---

and tend it (ULT)

and take care of it (UST)

Alternate translation: [and maintain it]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the man
- Yahweh
- God
- Eden
- to work it
- and tend it

UST

- the man
- Yahweh
- God
- Eden
- to cultivate it
- and take care of it

Genesis 2:16

ULT:
Then Yahweh God commanded the man, saying, “From every tree of the garden you may freely eat,

UST:
he instructed him, “You may eat as much {fruit} as you want {to eat} from any tree in the garden,

Then Yahweh God commanded the man, saying (ULT)

he instructed him (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then he directed the man, telling him]

From every tree of the garden you may freely eat (ULT)

You may eat as much {fruit} as you want {to eat} from any tree in the garden (UST)

Alternate translation: [You may eat all the fruit you want to eat from every tree in the garden] or [You are permitted to eat whatever fruit that you want to eat from every tree in the garden]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the man
- Yahweh
- God

UST

- him
- יְהוָה (ORIG QUOTE)
- אֱלֹהִים (ORIG QUOTE)

Genesis 2:17

ULT:
but you must not eat from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, because on the day you eat from it you will surely die."

UST:
except I forbid you to eat {any fruit} from the tree whose fruit enables people to know {what is} good and {what is} evil. If you eat {fruit} from that tree, on that {same} day you will definitely die."

but you must not eat from the tree of (ULT)

except I forbid you to eat {any fruit} from the tree (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that God is not contradicting himself here, but rather he is giving an exception to what he said in verse 16. To make that clear, you could say (starting with the beginning of God's words in verse 16), "Out of all the trees in the garden, there is only one tree that you must not eat from: the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If you eat fruit from that tree, on that same day you will certainly die." Alternate translation: [except you may not eat any fruit from the tree] or [except for one: you may not eat the fruit that grows on the tree]

Support Reference: Connect — Exception Clauses

---

the knowledge of good and evil (ULT)

whose fruit enables people to know {what is} good and {what is} evil (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 2:9. Alternate translation: [whose fruit enables people to discern what is good and what is wrong]

---

because on the day you eat from it (ULT)

If you eat {fruit} from that tree, on that {same} day (UST)

Alternate translation: [because on the same day that you eat fruit from that tree] or [If you eat any fruit from that tree, on that same day]

---

you will surely die (ULT)

you will definitely die (UST)

Alternate translation: [you will certainly die]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the knowledge of
- good
- and evil
- on the day

UST

- whose fruit enables people to know
- {what is} good
- and {what is} evil
- on that {same} day

Genesis 2:18

ULT:
Then Yahweh God said, "{It is} not good {for} the man to be alone. I will make a suitable helper for him."

UST:
Then Yahweh {who is} God said, "{It is} not good {for} the man to live by himself. {So} I will create someone who is just right for him to help him."

Then Yahweh God said, "{It is} not good {for} (ULT)

Then Yahweh {who is} God said, "{It is} not good (UST)

Alternate translation: [Next, Yahweh who is God declared, "It is not good]

---

a suitable helper for him (ULT)

someone who is just right for him to help him (UST)

Alternate translation: [a helper who is just right for him] or [someone who is right for him and will help him]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the man
- Yahweh
- God
- It is … good {for}

UST
- {for} the man
- Yahweh
- {who is} God
- It is … good

Genesis 2:19

ULT:
Now Yahweh God had formed from the ground every living thing of the field and every bird of the sky. So he brought {them} to the man to see what he would call them, and whatever the man called a living creature, that {was} its name.

UST:
Now {previously,} Yahweh had used {dirt} from the ground to form all {the different types of} wild animals and all {the different types of} birds {that fly} in the sky. So he brought {them all} to the man to hear how he would name them. Whatever name the man gave to each {kind of} animal, that {became} the name for that kind of animal.

Now Yahweh God had formed from the ground (ULT)

Now {previously,} Yahweh had used {dirt} from the ground to form (UST)

The first sentence of verse 19 is a flashback of what happened before the events in verses 15–18 (which were first recorded in Genesis 1:20–21, 24–25). Translate this phrase in a way that makes it clear that this is background information that has already happened. Also see how you translated **formed** in verses 2:7–8 and "dust from the ground" in verse 2:7. Alternate translation: [Now before that, Yahweh God had shaped from the dust on the ground] or [Now previously, he had used dust from the ground to form]

Support Reference: Background Information

---

every living thing of the field (ULT)

all {the different types of} wild animals (UST)

Consider how you translated a similar phrase ("every living creature of the earth") in Genesis 1:24 and 1:30. Alternate translation: [every type of creature that lives in the fields] or [all the different kinds of animals that live in the fields] or [all the different kinds of wild animals]

---

and every bird of the sky (ULT)

and all {the different types of} birds {that fly} in the sky (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 1:30. Alternate translation: [and every kind of bird that flies in the sky] or [and all the different kinds of birds that fly in the sky]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

---

So he brought {them} (ULT)

So he brought {them all} (UST)

This sentence continues the storyline. Consider how your language continues a story after giving background information. Also consider whether **brought** or "took" fits best here in your language. Alternate translation: [So he took them all]

Support Reference: Go and Come

---

to the man (ULT)

to the man (UST)

Every translation team needs to decide when to use Adam's name for the first time in the book of Genesis. The Hebrew word "adam" means **man** and is also Adam's name; the choice that is not followed here in your translation could be put in a footnote. Some translations first use Adam's name here in verse 19, when he is naming the animals. Many other translations start using his name at the end of verse 20. Still other translations wait until 3:20, when he names Eve, and a few other translations begin in 3:9, 17, or 21. Alternate translation: [to Adam]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

to see (ULT)

to hear (UST)

Alternate translation: [to watch] or [to find out]

---

what he would call them (ULT)

how he would name them (UST)

These names were labels for what kind of animals they were, such as “dog” or “horse,” not personal names like “David” or “Mary.” Alternate translation: [what he would name each one] or [what names he would give to them]

---

and whatever the man called (ULT)

Whatever name the man gave to (UST)

Alternate translation: [Whatever name the man assigned to]

---

a living creature (ULT)

each {kind of} animal (UST)

Alternate translation: [each kind of living creature] or [each type of animal]

---

that {was} its name (ULT)

that {became} the name for that kind of animal (UST)

Alternate translation: [that became its name] or [that became the name of that type of animal]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the man
- the man
- Yahweh
- God
- the sky
- them
- called

UST

- the man
- the man
- Yahweh
- אֱלֹהִים (ORIG QUOTE)
- the sky
- them
- Whatever name … gave to

Genesis 2:20

ULT:
And the man gave names to all the livestock and to the bird{s} of the sky and to every living thing of the field, but for the man a suitable helper was not found.

UST:
The man gave names to all the {different kinds of} livestock and to {all} the {different kinds of} birds {that fly} in the sky, and to all the {different kinds of} wild animals, but none of them was an appropriate companion to help him.

And the man gave names to all the livestock (ULT)

The man gave names to all the {different kinds of} livestock (UST)

Alternate translation: [The man assigned names to all the different types of livestock] or [Adam named all the different types of tame animals]

---

and to the bird{s} of the sky (ULT)

and to {all} the {different kinds of} birds {that fly} in the sky (UST)

Alternate translation: [and to all the different types of birds that fly in the sky]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

---

and to every living thing of the field (ULT)

and to all the {different kinds of} wild animals (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 2:19. Alternate translation: [and to all the other different types of creatures that live in the wild] or [and to all the wild animals]

---

but for the man a suitable helper was not found (ULT)

but none of them was an appropriate companion to help him (UST)

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to use an active or passive construction here. Also see how you translated **a suitable helper** in Genesis 2:18. Alternate translation: [but he could not find a fitting helper for himself among them] or [but none of them was a helper who was just right for him]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the man
- And … gave
- the livestock
- the sky
- but for the man

UST

- The man
- gave
- livestock
- the sky
- but

Genesis 2:21

ULT:
So Yahweh God caused a deep sleep to fall on the man. And {while} he was sleeping, then he took one of his ribs and closed up its place {with} flesh.

UST:
So Yahweh God caused the man to sleep deeply. Then while the man was asleep, God took a rib {out of the man's body} and filled in the place where it had been with flesh {and healed it}.

So Yahweh God caused a deep sleep to fall on the man (ULT)

So Yahweh God caused the man to sleep deeply (UST)

Many languages have a similar common expression for **caused a deep sleep to fall on** that works well here. Consider what is best in your language. Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh God caused the man to go into a deep sleep]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

then he took (ULT)

God took (UST)

Consider whether to use a pronoun or noun here to refer to God. Make sure it is clear in your translation to whom each pronoun is referring at each point in this verse. Alternate translation: [he took out]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

one of his ribs (ULT)

a rib {out of the man's body} (UST)

The phrase **one of his ribs** could mean: (1) "one of the man's ribs from his body" Alternate translation: [a rib from the man's side]; (2) "part of the man's side from his body"

---

and closed up its place {with} flesh (ULT)

and filled in the place where it had been with flesh {and healed it} (UST)

In this context, the term **flesh** probably includes muscles and skin. Alternate translation: [and filled in the hole where it had been with flesh and healed it] or [and replaced it with flesh and healed him]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the man
- Yahweh
- God

UST

- the man to sleep deeply
- Yahweh
- God

Genesis 2:22

ULT:
Then Yahweh God built the rib which he had taken from the man into a woman, and he brought her to the man.

UST:
Next Yahweh God made a woman from the rib which he had taken out of the man{'s body}, and he took her to the man.

Then Yahweh God built (ULT)

Next Yahweh God made (UST)

Alternate translation: [Next he] or [After that, he]

Then … built the rib which he had taken from the man into a woman (ULT)

Next … made a woman from the rib which he had taken out of the man{'s body} (UST)

See how you translated **rib** in verse 2:21 and see the note about that there. Alternate translation: [used the part which he taken from the man to construct a woman from it]

---

and he brought her to the man (ULT)

and he took her to the man (UST)

See how you translated **brought** in verse 2:19. Alternate translation: [Then he took her to Adam]

Support Reference: Go and Come

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the man
- the man
- Yahweh
- God

UST

- the man
- the man{’s body}
- Yahweh
- God

Genesis 2:23

ULT:
And the man said, "This {one} now {is} bone from my bones and flesh from my flesh! She will be called 'woman,' because {it was} from a man {that} she was taken."

UST:
{When the man saw her,} he exclaimed, "Finally! Here is someone {like me} who has bones and flesh from me! I will call her 'woman,' because {it was} from {the body of} a man {that} {God} took her."

And the man said (ULT)

{When the man saw her,} he exclaimed (UST)

Remember to only make implied information explicit in your translation if it helps people understand the text better or if it is necessary to prevent wrong meaning or bad grammar in your language. Alternate translation: [Then the man said] or [When the man saw her, he said] or [When the man woke up and saw the woman, he said]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

This {one} now (ULT)

Finally! Here (UST)

Alternate translation: [Now there is a person who] or [At last here is a person like me who] or [Ah! Here is someone like me who]

{ … is} bone from my bones and flesh from my flesh (ULT)

is someone {like me} who has bones and flesh from me (UST)

Alternate translation: [was made out of my own bones and flesh!]

She will be called ‘woman (ULT)

I will call her ‘woman (UST)

There is a play on words here because the Hebrew word for woman (“ishsha”) is similar to the Hebrew word for man (“ish”). You could put that information in a footnote.

---

because {it was} from a man {that} she was taken (ULT)

because {it was} from {the body of} a man {that} {God} took her (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Alternate translation: [because she was taken by God from the body of a man]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the man
- will be called

UST

- the man
- I will call

Genesis 2:24

ULT:
For that {reason} a man will leave his father and his mother, and he will cling to his wife, and they will become one flesh.

UST:
Because of that, {when a man gets married,} he must leave {the home of} his father and mother, and he must unite with his wife, so that they become completely united.

For that {reason} (ULT)

Because of that (UST)

Alternate translation: [That is why]

---

a man will leave (ULT)

{when a man gets married,} he must leave (UST)

Alternate translation: [a man who marries must leave] or [when a man gets married, he must move away from]

---

and he will cling to his wife (ULT)

and he must unite with his wife (UST)

This is a common expression meaning that the man is committed to his wife and has a close physical relationship with her too. Consider what is the best way to translate this in your language. Alternate translation: [and he must join with his wife] or [and he must live in close relationship with his wife]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and they will become (ULT)

so that they become (UST)

Some languages have a special dual pronoun for **they** that fits well here.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

---

one flesh (ULT)

completely united (UST)

The phrase **one flesh** is a common expression that emphasizes the close physical and spiritual unity between a husband and wife. Other languages may have a similar common expression. Consider how to best communicate this in your language. Alternate translation: [completely one] or [joined in body and spirit] or [united like one person]

Support Reference: Idiom

Genesis 2:25

ULT:
And the man and his wife were both naked, but they were not ashamed.

UST:
{During that time} the man and his wife did not wear any clothes, but {yet} they were not ashamed {about it}.

And the man and his wife were both naked (ULT)

{During that time} the man and his wife did not wear any clothes (UST)

Alternate translation: [Now at that time both the man and his wife were naked] or [At that time the man and his wife did not wear any clothes]

---

but they were not ashamed (ULT)

but {yet} they were not ashamed {about it} (UST)

Some languages have a common expression for this clause that fits well here. Alternate translation: [but yet they were not embarrassed about it] or [but yet they did not feel embarrassed about being naked]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the man
- they were … ashamed

UST

- the man
- they were … ashamed {about it}

Genesis 3

Genesis 3:1

ULT:
Now the serpent was more crafty than every living thing of the field that Yahweh God had made. And he said to the woman, "Did God really say, 'You must not eat from any tree of the garden'?"

UST:
Now the snake was the craftiest of all the animals that Yahweh God had created. {One day} he asked the woman, "Did God really command you not to eat {fruit} from any of the trees in the garden?"

Now the serpent (ULT)

Now the snake (UST)

Here the author is introducing **the serpent** as a new participant in the story. Your language may have its own way of introducing new participants that you can use in your translation.

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

---

was more crafty (ULT)

was the craftiest (UST)

By **crafty**, the author means that the snake had evil intent and was clever in a way that was not good. See how you translated **living thing of the field** in Genesis 2:19–20. Alternate translation: [was more deceptive and clever than any of the other creatures living in the wild]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

than every living thing of the field (ULT)

of all the animals (UST)

By **every living thing of the field** the author means all the beasts, large and small, crawling, swimming, flying, or moving on legs, that God made. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Make sure your translation of this phrase refers to the animals that God had made, not the fields. Alternate translation: [than each and every animal]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

And he said to the woman (ULT)

{One day} he asked the woman (UST)

If you use a pronoun (**he**) here in your translation, make sure it clearly refers to the serpent, not God. Also, since the snake asked a question, some languages have to be more specific and say "asked" in the quote margin. Alternate translation: [One day the snake went to the woman and asked her]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

Did God really say, 'You must not eat (ULT)

Did God really command you not to eat (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [Did God actually command you to not eat] or [Is it true that God commanded you not to eat]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

from any tree of the garden (ULT)

{fruit} from any of the trees in the garden (UST)

See how you translated **garden** in Genesis 2, beginning in verse (2:8. Alternate translation: [any fruit from the trees in the garden?]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Now the serpent
- more crafty
- Yahweh
- God
- God

UST

- Now the snake
- the craftiest
- Yahweh
- God
- God

Genesis 3:2

ULT:
Then the woman said to the serpent, "We may eat from the fruit of the tree{s} of the garden,

UST:
The woman answered him, "{No,} {God said that} we may eat fruit from {any of} the tree{s} in the garden,

Then the woman said to the serpent (ULT)

The woman answered him (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin in your language. Alternate translation: [The woman answered the snake, saying] or [The woman responded to him] or [The woman replied]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

We may eat (ULT)

{No,} {God said that} we may eat (UST)

The woman is not including the snake when she says "we" here. Alternate translation: [No, we have permission from God to eat] or [No, God has given us permission to eat]

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

---

from the fruit of (ULT)

fruit from (UST)

See how you translated **fruit** in Genesis 1:11–12, 291:11–12, 1:29. Alternate translation: [the fruit from]

---

the tree{s} of the garden (ULT)

{any of} the tree{s} in the garden (UST)

Alternate translation: [all of the trees that are in the garden] or [any tree in the garden]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the serpent
- from the fruit of

UST

- him
- fruit from

Genesis 3:3

ULT:
except from the fruit of the tree that {is} in the middle of the garden. God said, ‘You must not eat from it, and you must not touch it, or else you will die!’”

UST:
except fruit from the tree that is in the center of the garden. He commanded {us} not to eat that fruit or even touch it, because if we do, we will die!”

except from the fruit of the tree that {is} in the middle of the garden (ULT)

except fruit from the tree that is in the center of the garden (UST)

For some languages it is necessary to put the exception clause first and say, “No, it is only the tree in the middle of the garden that God said we must may not eat any fruit from, but the fruit of all the rest of the trees in the garden we may eat.” Notice that if you follow this example, you must combine verses 2 and 3 and put the verse numbers “2–3” in front of the combination. Alternate translation: [except fruit from the tree that is in the middle of the garden] or [except there is one tree that we may not eat fruit from, which is in the center of the garden]

Support Reference: Verse Bridges

God said, ‘You must not eat from it, and you must not touch it, or else you will die (ULT)

He commanded {us} not to eat that fruit or even touch it, because if we do, we will die (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [God told us to not eat any of that fruit or touch it, or else we will die!]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

or else you will die (ULT)

because if we do, we will die (UST)

Make sure the way you translate this clause fits with whether you translated the first part of the sentence as a direct (**you**) or indirect ("we") quote. Alternate translation: [because if you do eat it or touch it, you will die!] or [because if we do eat it or touch it, we will die!"]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- except from the fruit of
- God

UST

- except fruit from
- He commanded

Genesis 3:4

ULT:
But the serpent said to the woman, "You will not surely die.

UST:
But the snake said to the woman, "{That is not true.} You will not die.

But the serpent said to the woman (ULT)

But the snake said to the woman (UST)

See how you translated **serpent** in verses 3:1–2. Alternate translation: [But the snake replied to her] or [But the snake replied]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the serpent

UST

- the snake

Genesis 3:5

ULT:
For God knows that on the day you eat from it, then your eyes will be opened, and you will be like God in knowing good and evil.”

UST:
Actually, God knows that as soon as you eat {fruit} from that tree, you will understand new things, so that you will know {what is} right and {what is} wrong just like God does.”

For God knows (ULT)

Actually, God knows (UST)

The connecting word **For** introduces an explanation here. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: [Actually, he knows] or [The reason God said that is because he knows]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

---

that on the day (ULT)

that as soon as (UST)

Alternate translation: [that if]

---

you eat from it (ULT)

you eat {fruit} from that tree (UST)

The pronouns **you** and **your** are plural in this verse and refer to the man and the woman. Some languages have a special dual pronoun for this. Consider again how you translated **you** and **your** in verses 1–5. Alternate translation: [you eat any of that fruit]

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

---

then your eyes will be opened (ULT)

you will understand new things (UST)

Consider whether your language has a common expression such as **your eyes will be opened** that would fit well here. Alternate translation: [your mind will be opened] or [you will gain new understanding] or [you will know new things]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and you will be like God in knowing good and evil (ULT)

so that you will know {what is} right and {what is} wrong just like God does (UST)

The word translated as **God** could mean: (1) "God," which is what it means everywhere else in the first 30 chapters of Genesis. Alternate translation: [and as a result you will be like God because you will know what is good and what is evil] or [so that you will know what is good and what is evil, just like God does]; (2) "gods" or "divine beings" or (3) "angels." See how you translated **good and evil** in Genesis 2:9 and 2:17.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- knows
- God
- on the day
- like God
- in knowing
- good
- and evil

UST

- knows
- God
- as soon as
- just like God does
- know

- {what is} right
- and {what is} wrong

Genesis 3:6

ULT:
And the woman saw that the tree {was} good for food, and that it {was} pleasant to the eyes, and {that} the tree was desirable for gaining wisdom. So she took some of its fruit and ate {it}. Then she also gave {some} to her husband with her, and he ate {it}.

UST:
The woman saw that the tree{'s fruit} {looked} good to eat and that the tree {itself} was {very} beautiful. She also wanted {to eat} the fruit so that it would make her wise. So she picked some of the fruit {off the tree} and ate it. She also gave {some of the fruit} to her husband, {who was} {there} with her, and he ate {it} {too}.

And the woman saw that (ULT)

The woman saw that (UST)

Alternate translation: [The woman observed that]

---

the tree (ULT)

the tree{'s fruit} (UST)

The word **tree** refers here to the fruit that is produced by that tree. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: [the tree produced fruit that] or [the fruit of that tree]

Support Reference: Metonymy

{was} good for food (ULT)

{looked} good to eat (UST)

Alternate translation: [was good to eat]

---

and that it {was} pleasant to the eyes (ULT)

and that the tree {itself} was {very} beautiful (UST)

Alternate translation: [and that the tree itself looked very beautiful]

---

and {that} the tree was desirable for gaining wisdom (ULT)

She also wanted {to eat} the fruit so that it would make her wise (UST)

Alternate translation: [and she thought that the fruit from the tree would make her wise]

So she took some of its fruit and ate {it} (ULT)

So she picked some of the fruit {off the tree} and ate it (UST)

Alternate translation: [So she took some of the fruit off the tree and ate it]

---

and he ate {it} (ULT)

and he ate {it} {too} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he ate some too] or [and he also ate it]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- {was} good
- and {that} … was desirable
- some of its fruit

UST

- {looked} good

- She also wanted {to eat}
- some of the fruit

Genesis 3:7

ULT:
Then the eyes of them both were opened, and they knew that they {were} naked. So they sewed fig leaves together and made aprons for themselves.

UST:
Suddenly they both understood new things, and they realized that their bodies {were} bare. So they sewed {some} fig {tree} leaves together and made clothes for themselves {to cover their nakedness}.

Then the eyes of them both were opened (ULT)

Suddenly they both understood new things (UST)

An immediate result of their sin was that they realized they were naked, which they had not been aware of before. See how you translated the common expression “eyes … opened” in verse 3:5. Alternate translation: [Immediately it was as if their minds were opened] or [Immediately they both had new understanding]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and they knew (ULT)

and they realized (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that they became aware]

---

that they {were} naked (ULT)

that their bodies {were} bare (UST)

The author assumes that his readers will understand that this sense of nakedness led to a sense of shame. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [that their bodies were bare, and they felt ashamed]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

So they sewed … together (ULT)

So they sewed … together (UST)

The word for **sewed** implies here that some type of needle and thread were used. For example, they may have used a thin, sharpened stick for the needle, and plant fibers for the thread. If necessary, you could use a more general term such as "fastened together" or "connected." Also, some languages have dual pronouns that can be used in verses 7–8 for **they** and **themselves**. Alternate translation: [So they joined together]

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

---

and made aprons for themselves (ULT)

and made clothes for themselves {to cover their nakedness} (UST)

The narrator assumes that readers will know that these aprons probably covered them from the waist down to somewhere around the knees. Alternate translation: [and used them as aprons to cover their bodies] or [and wore them around their waists to cover their bodies] or [and used them to make clothes for themselves]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and they knew
- fig

UST

- and they realized
- {some} fig {tree} leaves

Genesis 3:8

ULT:
Then they heard the sound of Yahweh God walking in the garden in the breeze of the day, but the man and his wife hid from the presence of Yahweh God among the tree{s} of the garden.

UST:
{Late that afternoon,} during the cool time of the day, the man and his wife heard Yahweh God's voice as he walked in the garden, but they hid from him behind some tree{s} in the garden.

Then they heard (ULT)

the man and his wife heard (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then the man and his wife heard]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

the sound of Yahweh God walking (ULT)

Yahweh God's voice as he walked (UST)

This phrase could refer to: (1) the sound of his voice. See UST (2) the sound of God's footsteps. Alternate translation: [the sound of Yahweh God's steps as he walked] Either meaning fits the context well and is followed by many translations.

---

in the garden (ULT)

in the garden (UST)

Alternate translation: [around in the garden] or [through the garden]

---

in the breeze of the day (ULT)

{Late that afternoon,} during the cool time of the day (UST)

This common expression refers to the late afternoon or early evening when there is a breeze blowing and it is cooler. For some languages it is more natural to put this time phrase at the beginning of the sentence. Alternate translation: [late in the afternoon, in the breezy time of the day] or [late that day when there was a cool breeze blowing]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

but the man and his wife hid (ULT)

but they hid (UST)

If you use **the man and his wife** earlier in this verse in your translation, consider whether or not a pronoun should be used here. Alternate translation: [so they hid themselves] or [so they tried to hide themselves]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

among the tree{s} of the garden (ULT)

behind some tree{s} in the garden (UST)

Since the garden is already mentioned earlier in verse 8, for some languages it may be more natural to be general here and say “there.” Alternate translation: [in the midst of the trees in the garden] or [behind some trees there]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

---

from the presence of Yahweh God (ULT)

from him (UST)

Alternate translation: [from Yahweh God] or [from his sight]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the man
- Yahweh
- God
- in the breeze of
- the day
- Yahweh
- God

UST

- but they hid
- Yahweh
- God
- {Late that afternoon,} during the cool time of
- the day
- from him
- from him

Genesis 3:9

ULT:
So Yahweh God called to the man and said to him, "Where {are} you?"

UST:
So Yahweh God called {out} to the man, "{Adam,} where are you?"

to the man and said to him (ULT)

So … called {out} to the man (UST)

See the note at Genesis 2:19 about when to start using Adam's name. Also consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin in your language. Alternate translation: [to the man and asked him] or [to Adam]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Where {are} you (ULT)

{Adam,} where are you (UST)

Notice that the word **you** is singular here because God is only addressing the man.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the man
- So … called
- Yahweh
- God

UST
- the man
- So … called {out}
- Yahweh

- God

Genesis 3:10

ULT:
And he said, "I heard your sound in the garden, but I was afraid because I {was} naked, so I hid."

UST:
The man replied, "I heard the sound of you {walking} in the garden, but I was afraid because I was naked, so I hid {from you}."

And he said (ULT)

The man replied (UST)

Alternate translation: [He answered him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

I heard your sound (ULT)

I heard the sound of you {walking} (UST)

See how you translated **sound** in verse 3:8. Alternate translation: [I heard your voice] or [I heard the sound of your voice as you walked]

---

in the garden (ULT)

in the garden (UST)

Alternate translation: [through the garden]

---

but I was afraid because I {was} naked, so I hid (ULT)

but I was afraid because I was naked, so I hid {from you} (UST)

Alternate translation: [but I was naked, so I felt afraid and I hid from you] or [but I was naked and afraid that you would see me, so I hid]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- but I was afraid

UST

- but I was afraid

Genesis 3:11

ULT:
Then he said, "Who told you that you {were} naked? Did you eat from the tree that I commanded you not to eat from?"

UST:
Then Yahweh God asked, "Who told you that you were naked? Did you {disobey me and} eat {fruit} from the tree from which I ordered you not to eat?"

Then he said (ULT)

Then Yahweh God asked (UST)

Make sure your translation of **he** refers to Yahweh here, not the man. Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh God questioned Adam, asking]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

Who told you that you {were} naked (ULT)

Who told you that you were naked (UST)

The pronoun **you** is still singular here. Alternate translation: [What made you realize that you were naked?] or [How did you find out that you were naked?]

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

---

that I commanded you not to eat from (ULT)

from which I ordered you not to eat (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to use a direct quote here for Yahweh's words.

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

Genesis 3:12

ULT:
Then the man said, "The woman whom you gave {to be} with me, she gave me {fruit} from the tree, and I ate {it}."

UST:
The man replied, "The woman whom you put here {to be} with me, she {is the one who} gave me some of that fruit, so I ate {it}."

Then the man said (ULT)

The man replied (UST)

Alternate translation: [But the man replied to him] or [The man answered him]

The woman whom you gave {to be} with me, she (ULT)

The woman whom you put here {to be} with me, she {is the one who} (UST)

The pronoun **she** is emphatic in the Hebrew text. That, along with the position of **The woman** at the beginning of the sentence, shows that the man is strongly emphasizing his blame of the woman. Consider what is the best way to communicate that emphasis in your language. Alternate translation: [The woman whom you put here to live with me, she is the one who] or [It was the woman you gave to me who]

---

gave me {fruit} from the tree (ULT)

gave me some of that fruit (UST)

See how you translated **fruit** in verses 3:1–6. Alternate translation: [gave me some fruit from that tree]

---

and I ate {it} (ULT)

so I ate {it} (UST)

Alternate translation: [That is why I ate it]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the man

UST

- The man

Genesis 3:13

ULT:
Then Yahweh God said to the woman, "What {is} this you have done?" And the woman said, "The serpent deceived me, so I ate {it}."

UST:
Then Yahweh God asked the woman, "What did you do?" The woman replied, "The snake tricked me, so I ate {some of the fruit}."

What {is} this you have done (ULT)

What did you do (UST)

God already knew the answer to this question, but he is giving the woman a chance to confess and explain what she did. God's question probably also implies that he is displeased with what has happened. Alternate translation: [What have you done?] or [Tell me what you have done]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

And the woman said (ULT)

The woman replied (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then the woman answered]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

The serpent (ULT)

The snake (UST)

This phrase is emphasized in the Hebrew text. Alternate translation: [It was the snake that]

---

deceived me (ULT)

tricked me (UST)

Alternate translation: [lied to me]

---

so I ate {it} (ULT)

so I ate {some of the fruit} (UST)

Alternate translation: [so I ate some of that fruit] or [That is why I ate it]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Yahweh
- God
- The serpent
- deceived me

UST

- Yahweh
- God
- The snake
- tricked me

Genesis 3:14

ULT:
Then Yahweh God said to the serpent, "Because you have done this, you are cursed above all the livestock and above every living thing of the field. You will move on your belly, and you will eat dust all the days of your life.

UST:
So Yahweh God said to the snake, "Because you did that, I am cursing you more {severely} than all the livestock and all the animals in the fields! {As a result,} you must crawl {along the ground} on your belly, and you will eat dust {with your food} for as long as you live.

Because you have done this (ULT)

Because you did that (UST)

Alternate translation: [Since you did that] or [Since you tricked the woman]

---

you are cursed (ULT)

I am cursing you (UST)

In this context, **cursed** involves God punishing the serpent and its descendants, causing them to suffer by crawling along the ground on their bellies and having a hostile relationship with human beings. Make sure that the way you translate this term does not imply the use of magic. Alternate translation: [you are cursed by me] or [I will cause you to suffer] or [I will punish you]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

above all the livestock (ULT)

more {severely} than all the livestock (UST)

When Adam and Eve sinned and God judged them, the curse and punishment of death and decay also affected everything that was under their authority, including the animals. Here in

Genesis 3:14, God puts a more severe curse on the serpent (and his descendants) than he put on the rest of the animals. See how you translated **livestock** in Genesis 1:24–26 and 2:20. Alternate translation: [more harshly than all the tame animals]

---

and above every living thing of the field (ULT)

and all the animals in the fields (UST)

See how you translated **every living thing of the field** in verse 1. Alternate translation: [and more harshly than all the creatures of the fields] or [and more harshly than all the wild animals]

You will move on your belly (ULT)

{As a result,} you must crawl {along the ground} on your belly (UST)

Alternate translation: [As a result, you will move on the ground on your stomach]

---

and you will eat dust (ULT)

and you will eat dust {with your food} (UST)

Make sure your translation of **you will eat dust** does not imply that dust or dirt is all the snake will eat. Rather it could mean that dirt will get into his mouth when he eats his food, or it could be an common expression meaning that as he slithers along the ground, his mouth will always be close to the dirt on the ground (a position of humility). Also see how you translated **dust** in Genesis 2:7. Alternate translation: [and you will eat dirt with your food]

---

all the days of your life (ULT)

for as long as you live (UST)

Alternate translation: [your entire life]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Yahweh
- God
- the serpent
- are cursed
- the livestock
- the days of

UST

- Yahweh
- God
- the snake
- I am cursing
- the livestock
- for as long as you live

Genesis 3:15

ULT:
I will also put hostility between you and the woman, and between your offspring and her offspring. He will strike you {on} the head, and you will strike him {on} the heel."

UST:
Besides that, I will cause you and your descendants to be enemies with the woman and her descendants. {In fact,} her descendant will crush your head, and you will bite his heel."

I will also put hostility between you and the woman, and between your offspring and her offspring (ULT)

Besides that, I will cause you and your descendants to be enemies with the woman and her descendants (UST)

Alternate translation: [I will also cause you and the woman to be enemies with each other, and your offspring and her offspring to also be enemies]

He (ULT)

{In fact,} her descendant (UST)

Here, the pronoun **He** could refer to: (1) the woman's descendant (Jesus), who would one day come to earth as the Messiah. Alternate translation: [In fact, her offspring] or [In fact, one of her descendants]; (2) the woman's descendants who will constantly be enemies of the snake's descendants. If you follow the first interpretation, this would be the first prophecy in the Bible about the Christ ("the Anointed One" or "the Promised Savior King") who would come to earth and destroy Satan's power (Hebrews 2:14). You could include that information in a footnote.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

will strike you {on} the head, and you will strike him {on} the heel (ULT)

will crush your head, and you will bite his heel (UST)

This is figurative language that Satan will harm the Messiah, but the Messiah will destroy him. For some languages it is better to switch the order of these clauses and say, “In fact, you will bruise the heel of one of her descendants, but he will crush your head.” Alternate translation: [will crush your head, and you will bruise his heel]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- your offspring
- her offspring

UST

- Besides that, I will cause you and your descendants to be enemies with the woman and her descendants
- Besides that, I will cause you and your descendants to be enemies with the woman and her descendants

---

Genesis 3:16

ULT:
To the woman he said, "To multiply I will multiply your pain and your childbearing; in pain you will bear children. Yet your desire {will be} for your husband, and he will rule over you."

UST:
{Then} God said to the woman, "I will greatly increase how much you suffer when you bear children, {yes,} you will suffer {much pain} when you give birth. But you will {still} desire {to be with} your husband, and he will dominate you."

To multiply I will multiply your pain (ULT)

I will greatly increase how much you suffer (UST)

The speaker is repeating forms of the verb **multiply** in order to intensify the idea that it expresses. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the emphasis. Alternate translation: [I will cause you to have much pain] or [I will cause childbirth to be very painful]

Support Reference: Reduplication

---

in pain you will bear children (ULT)

{yes,} you will suffer {much pain} when you give birth (UST)

This clause is the second part of a parallelism, the use of two phrases meaning basically the same thing, which emphasizes the pain and suffering that women will experience when they bear children. If possible, it is best to keep both parts of the parallelism in your translation. Alternate translation: [yes, you will suffer much pain when you give birth] or [yes, bearing children will be very painful for you]

Support Reference: Parallelism

Yet your desire {will be} for your husband (ULT)

But you will {still} desire {to be with} your husband (UST)

The common expression **your desire will be for your husband** could refer to (1) sexual desire, which is similar to what "desire" means in Song of Songs 7:10. Alternate translation: [Yet you will still desire to be with your husband] ; or (2) desire for control, which is similar to what **desire** means in Genesis 4:7. The interpretation that is not followed in your translation could be put in a footnote. Alternate translation: [And you will want to control your husband]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and he will rule over you (ULT)

and he will dominate you (UST)

See how you translated **rule over** in Genesis 1:18. It may be necessary to translate this term differently here because of the negative context of the curse and the consequences of sin. Alternate translation: [and he will control you] or [and he will lord it over you]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- I will multiply
- you will bear
- will rule

UST

- I will greatly increase
- when you give birth
- will dominate

Genesis 3:17

ULT:
Then to the man he said, "Since you listened to the voice of your wife and ate from the tree that I commanded you, saying, 'You must not eat from it,' the ground is cursed because of you. By painful toil you will eat {from} it all the days of your life.

UST:
Then God said to Adam, "You did what your wife said and ate {fruit} from the tree that I commanded you not to eat {any fruit} from. Because of what you did, I have cursed the ground. {As a result,} for as long as you live, you will have to work {very} hard and suffer {to grow enough food} to eat.

Then to the man he said (ULT)

Then God said to Adam (UST)

In the Hebrew text, the phrase **to the man** is emphasized. See how you translated a similar case ("to the woman") in verse 3:16. Alternate translation: [Next God said to the man] or [Next Yahweh God turned to Adam and said to him]

Since you listened to the voice of your wife (ULT)

You did what your wife said (UST)

This phrase means that Adam heard what his wife said to him and then did what she said. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [Since you disobeyed me and did what your wife said] or [Since you did what your wife told you to do]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

that I commanded you, saying, 'You must not eat from it (ULT)

that I commanded you not to eat {any fruit} from (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Also see how you translated this command in verse 3:3. Alternate translation: [from which I told you not to eat any fruit]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

the ground is cursed because of you (ULT)

Because of what you did, I have cursed the ground (UST)

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to break up this long sentence and say, "You did what your wife said and ate fruit from the tree that I commanded you not to eat any fruit from. Because of what you did, I have cursed the ground." Also see how you translated **cursed** in verse 3:14. Alternate translation: [the ground is cursed by me because of what you did] or [I have cursed the ground because you sinned]

Support Reference: Information Structure

By painful toil you will eat {from} it (ULT)

As a result … you will have to work {very} hard and suffer {to grow enough food} to eat (UST)

Alternate translation: [As a result, only by painful toil will you eat any food from it] or [As a result, you will have to work very hard and suffer to get enough food to eat]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

---

all the days of your life (ULT)

for as long as you live (UST)

For some languages it is better to put this phrase before the previous clause and say, “As a result, for as long as you live, you will have to work very hard and suffer to grow enough food to eat.” Alternate translation: [every day of your life] or [for your entire life]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then to the man
- is cursed
- the days of

UST

- Then … to Adam
- I have cursed
- for as long as you live

Genesis 3:18

ULT:
And it will produce thorn{s} and thistle{s} for you, and you will eat the plant{s} of the field{s}.

UST:
In fact, thorn plants and thistle plants {and other weeds} will grow from the ground {and make it difficult} for you to grow {enough} crops in your fields for food.

And it will produce thorn{s} and thistle{s} (ULT)

In fact, thorn plants and thistle plants {and other weeds} will grow from the ground (UST)

The thorn and thistle plants represent all types of weeds, which are useless and possibly harmful plants. Alternate translation: [In fact, the ground will produce thorn plants and thistle plants and other weeds]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

---

for you, and you will eat the plant{s} of the field{s … } (ULT)

{and make it difficult} for you to grow {enough} crops in your fields for food (UST)

The Hebrew text here could mean: (1) “and make it difficult for you to grow enough crops in the fields for food.” or “so that you will have to work very hard in your fields to produce enough crops to eat.” or (2) “so that your crops will not grow well and you will have to eat wild plants that grow in the open fields to survive.” That difference of interpretation comes from the fact that the Hebrew word **fields** can refer to land that people cultivate or to uncultivated land where wild plants grow.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- And … thorn{s}
- and thistle{s}

UST

- In fact, thorn plants
- and thistle plants {and other weeds}

Genesis 3:19

ULT:
By the sweat of your nose you will eat bread, until you return to the ground, since from it you were taken. For you {are} dust, and to dust you will return."

UST:
You will have to {work hard and} sweat a lot in order to {produce} {enough} food to eat, until you {die and} again become dirt, which I created you from. Yes, {I created} you out of dirt, so dirt is what you will become again {after you die}."

By the sweat of your nose you will eat bread (ULT)

You will have to {work hard and} sweat a lot in order to {produce} {enough} food to eat (UST)

The phrase "by the sweat of your brow" is a common expression that refers to hard physical labor. Consider whether or not your language has a similar common expression. Also, bread was one of the main food staples for that time and culture, so the Hebrew word for **bread** is used here as a common expression that refers to all food, not just loaves of bread. Consider whether your language does something similar, using one type of food (such as bread, rice or potatoes) to refer to all food in general. Or you could use a general term like "food," especially if bread is rare or expensive in your language area. Alternate translation: [Only by the sweat of your face will you be able to have enough food to eat] or [You will have to work hard and sweat a lot in order to have enough food to eat]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

until you return to the ground (ULT)

until you {die and} again become dirt (UST)

Alternate translation: [until you die and again become dust]

---

since from it you were taken (ULT)

which I created you from (UST)

Alternate translation: [which you were made from by me] or [which I took you from] or [which I made you out of]

For (ULT)

Yes (UST)

This sentence rephrases and emphasizes what God just said. Alternate translation: [Indeed]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

---

you {are} dust (ULT)

{I created} you out of dirt (UST)

Alternate translation: [your bodies were made by me from dust] or [I made you out of dust]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- bread

UST

- in order to {produce} {enough} food to eat

Genesis 3:20

ULT:
Then the man called the name of his wife Eve, because she was the mother of all the living.

UST:
Then Adam named his wife Eve, {which means "living,"} because she would be the mother of everyone who would ever live.

Then the man called the name of his wife (ULT)

Then Adam named his wife (UST)

Some translations use Adam's name here because he is naming Eve. See what you did in verse 3:17. Alternate translation: [Then Adam called his wife] or [Then the man gave his wife the name]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

Eve (ULT)

Eve, {which means "living … } (UST)

If you include the meaning of Eve's name in your translation or in a footnote, make sure it is similar to the word in the following clause that has the same meaning (**living**), so that it is clear why Eve was given that name. The meaning of names is important in the Hebrew language, and this translation issue occurs frequently in the book of Genesis.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

because (ULT)

because (UST)

Alternate translation: [He did that because]

---

she was the mother of (ULT)

she would be the mother of (UST)

Alternate translation: [she would be the ancestor of]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the man
- Then … called
- Eve

UST

- Adam
- Then … named
- Eve, {which means “living … }

Genesis 3:21

ULT:
Then Yahweh God made garments of {animal} skins for Adam and his wife, and he clothed them.

UST:
Then Yahweh God made {some} clothes out of {animal} skins for Adam and his wife, and he put the clothes on them.

and he clothed them (ULT)

and he put the clothes on them (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he dressed them] or [and he put the garments on them]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- for Adam
- Yahweh
- God
- garments of

UST

- for Adam
- Yahweh
- God
- {some} clothes out of

Genesis 3:22

ULT:
Then Yahweh God said, "Behold, the man has become like one of us in knowing good and evil. And now he must not reach out his hand and also take {fruit} from the tree of life and eat it and live forever!"

UST:
Then Yahweh God said {to himself}, "Look! The man {and his wife} have become like one of us, so that they know {what is} good and {what is} evil. So now we must do something so that they do not also pick and eat {fruit} from the tree that gives people {eternal} life, which will make them live forever!"

Behold (ULT)

Look (UST)

This word expresses emotion and calls attention to what God says next. See how you translated this term in Genesis 1:29. Alternate translation: [Listen]

Support Reference: Metaphor

---

the man (ULT)

The man {and his wife} (UST)

Throughout verses 22–24, **the man** represents mankind, which included both the man and the woman at this point. Make sure your translation communicates that clearly in those verses and does not just refer to Adam. Alternate translation: [the man and his wife] or [mankind] or [human beings]

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

---

has become like one of us (ULT)

have become like one of us (UST)

The pronoun **us** is inclusive because God is talking to himself. Alternate translation: [have become like us]

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’

---

in knowing good and evil (ULT)

so that they know {what is} good and {what is} evil (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 3:5 and a similar phrase in Genesis 2:9

And now he must not reach out his hand and also take (ULT)

So now we must do something so that they do not also pick (UST)

See how you translated “took … fruit” in verse 3:6. Alternate translation: [So now, they must not be allowed by us to also pick] or [So we must not allow them to also pick] or [So now we must do something so that they cannot also pick]

{fruit} from the tree of life and eat it (ULT)

and eat {fruit} from the tree that gives people {eternal} life (UST)

See how you translated **the tree of life** in Genesis 2:9. Alternate translation: [fruit from the tree of eternal life and eat some of it]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the man
- Yahweh
- God
- in knowing
- good
- and evil
- forever

UST

- The man {and his wife}
- Yahweh
- God
- so that they know
- {what is} good
- and {what is} evil
- forever

Genesis 3:23

ULT:
So Yahweh God sent him out of the Garden of Eden to work the ground which he had been taken from.

UST:
Then Yahweh God expelled the man {and his wife} from Eden Garden to work the ground which he had made them from.

So Yahweh God sent him (ULT)

Then Yahweh God expelled the man {and his wife} (UST)

Notice that in verses 22–24, the words "the man," and the pronouns **him**, and **he** all refer to mankind, that is, both the man and the woman. Make sure it is clear in your translation here that both humans were sent out of the garden, not just the man. Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh God banished the man and his wife] or [So then Yahweh God forced them to leave]

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

---

out of the Garden of Eden (ULT)

from Eden Garden (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 2:15. Alternate translation: [the garden in the land of Eden]

---

to work the ground (ULT)

to work the ground (UST)

See how you translated **work the ground** in Genesis 2:5 and "work it" in 2:15. Alternate translation: [to farm the land]

---

which he had been taken from (ULT)

which he had made them from (UST)

It does not refer to the exact ground that he was made from. See how you translated **taken from** in verse 3:19. Alternate translation: [from which they had been taken by him] or [from which he had taken them]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Yahweh
- God
- Eden

UST

- Yahweh
- God
- Eden

Genesis 3:24

ULT:
And after he drove the man out, then he placed on the east side of the Garden of Eden cherubim {angels} and a flaming sword that was turning in every direction to guard the way of the tree of life.

UST:
After he expelled them, he stationed to the east {side} of the garden {some} {powerful} cherubim {angels} and a burning sword that was swinging around in all directions to keep everyone away from the path to the tree whose fruit makes people live {forever}.

And after he drove the man out (ULT)

After he expelled them (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then after God drove the man and his wife out of the garden] or [After God banished them from the garden]

---

then he placed (ULT)

he stationed (UST)

Alternate translation: [then he stationed] or [then he placed]

---

on the east side of the Garden of Eden (ULT)

to the east {side} of the garden (UST)

It is implied that the entrance to the garden is where the cherubim were placed to keep everyone from ever entering the garden again. Consider again how you translated “garden” in Gen 2:8–10, 2:15–16 ; 3:1–3, 3:8, 3:10 and 3:23–24. Alternate translation: [on the east side of the garden at its entrance] or [at the entrance to the garden, which was on its east side]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and a flaming sword (ULT)

and a burning sword (UST)

Alternate translation: [and a fiery sword] or [and a sword made of flames]

---

that was turning in every direction (ULT)

that was swinging around in all directions (UST)

It seems that the sword was swinging by itself since there is no mention of anyone holding it. Alternate translation: [that was turning around in all directions] or [that was flashing back and forth]

---

to guard the way of (ULT)

to keep everyone away from the path to (UST)

Alternate translation: [to keep everyone away from the way that leads to] or [so that no one could go near]

---

the tree of life (ULT)

the tree whose fruit makes people live {forever} (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 2:9 and 3:22. Alternate translation: [the tree of eternal life] or [the tree whose fruit gives people eternal life]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the man
- cherubim {angels}
- And after he drove … out
- Eden
- a … sword

UST

- them
- some} {powerful} cherubim {angels}
- After he expelled
- to the east {side} of the garden
- a … sword

Genesis 4

Genesis 4:1

ULT:
Then the man knew Eve his wife, and she conceived and bore Cain. And she said, "I have obtained a man with Yahweh!"

UST:
Then Adam had {marital} relations with his wife Eve, and she became pregnant and gave birth to {a son they named} Cain, {which means "obtained."} {They named him that} because she said, "Yahweh has enabled me to obtain a son!"

Then the man (ULT)

Then Adam (UST)

For a note about when to begin referring to the man as Adam, see 2:19. Alternate translation: [Then the man Adam]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

knew Eve his wife (ULT)

had {marital} relations with his wife Eve (UST)

This phrase is a common expression in Hebrew that means Adam had sexual relations with Eve. Many languages have a similar common expression. Make sure you translate this in a way that is polite and will not offend or embarrass people, especially when read aloud. Alternate translation: [slept with his wife Eve] or [was intimate with his wife Eve]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

and she conceived and bore (ULT)

and she became pregnant and gave birth to (UST)

Translate this clause in a way that will not embarrass people, especially when read aloud. Alternate translation: [so that she became pregnant and later gave birth to]

Support Reference: Euphemism

Cain (ULT)

a son they named} Cain, {which means "obtained … } (UST)

You could include the meaning of Cain's name in your translation or in a footnote. See what you did for a similar case in Genesis 3:20.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

And she said, "I have obtained (ULT)

{They named him that} because she said … has enabled me to obtain (UST)

This sentence explains how **Cain** got his name. Eve's statement, **I have obtained a man with Yahweh** could mean: (1) that Yahweh enabled her to have a child. Alternate translation: [They named him that because Eve had said, "I have gotten]; (2) that Eve has produced a son. Alternate translation: [They named him that because Eve had said, "I have produced] If you include the meaning of Cain's name earlier in this verse in your translation or in a footnote, make sure it matches your choice here so that it is clear why he was given that name.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

a man (ULT)

a son (UST)

For some languages it is confusing to refer to a newborn baby as a man. Do what is clear and natural in your language. Alternate translation: [a male child] or [a boy] or [a baby boy]

---

with Yahweh (ULT)

Yahweh (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to put this phrase earlier in this sentence and say, “With Yahweh’s help I have obtained a son!” or “Yahweh has enabled me to get a son!” Alternate translation: [with help from Yahweh!]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Eve
- Then the man
- knew
- and she conceived
- and bore
- Cain
- Yahweh

UST

- Eve
- Then Adam
- had {marital} relations
- and she became pregnant
- and gave birth to
- a son they named} Cain, {which means “obtained … }
- Yahweh

Genesis 4:2

ULT:
Then she continued on to bear his brother Abel. Now Abel became a keeper of flock{s}, and Cain became a worker of the ground.

UST:
Then Eve also gave birth to Cain's brother {whom they named} Abel. {When they grew up,} Abel became a shepherd, and Cain became a {crop} farmer.

Then she continued on to bear (ULT)

Then Eve also gave birth to (UST)

The idiom **continued on** may mean that Cain and Abel were twins, or Abel may have been born sometime later, when Eve became pregnant again. If possible, translate verse 2 in a way that allows for either interpretation of **continued on**. Alternate translation: [Then she also gave birth to] or [After that, Eve gave birth to]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

his brother (ULT)

Cain's brother (UST)

Some languages have a specific term for "younger brother" that can be used here.

Support Reference: Kinship

Now Abel became (ULT)

{When they grew up,} Abel became (UST)

This sentence introduces background information for what happens next. Consider what is the best way to begin this sentence in your language. Also, it is implied here that the boys had

grown up to be adults. If necessary, you could make that explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: [Now when the boys had grown up, Abel]

Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

---

a keeper of flock{s} (ULT)

a shepherd (UST)

Alternate translation: [was a keeper of sheep] or [raised sheep and goats]

---

and Cain (ULT)

and Cain (UST)

The author uses the word **and** here to indicate a contrast between **Abel** and **Cain**. In your translation, indicate this contrast in a way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [but Cain]

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

---

became a worker of the ground (ULT)

became a {crop} farmer (UST)

Cain raised crops, not animals. See how you translated a similar phrase ("work the ground") in Genesis 2:5. Alternate translation: [was a tiller of the soil] or [was a crop farmer] or [grew food crops]

Support Reference: Background Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- to bear
- Abel
- Abel
- a keeper of
- flock{s}
- and Cain
- a worker of

UST

- gave birth to
- {whom they named} Abel
- Abel
- a shepherd
- a shepherd
- and Cain
- a {crop} farmer

Genesis 4:3

ULT:
And it happened in the course of days that Cain brought some of the fruit of the ground {as} an offering to Yahweh.

UST:
As time went by, one day Cain gave some of the crops {that he had grown} in his fields to Yahweh as a gift {to honor him}.

And it happened in the course of days (ULT)

As time went by, one day (UST)

These phrases introduce an important new event. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: [Then one day it happened that] or [As time went on one day]

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

---

that Cain brought (ULT)

Cain gave (UST)

Alternate translation: [Cain offered]

---

some of the fruit of the ground (ULT)

some of the crops {that he had grown} in his fields (UST)

The word **fruit** is general here and refers to any edible plant or crop that grows as the result of being cultivated. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: [some of the crops that he had raised in his fields] or [some of the edible plants that he had harvested from his fields]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

{as} an offering to Yahweh (ULT)

to Yahweh as a gift {to honor him} (UST)

The term **offering** refers to something that is given. Alternate translation: [to Yahweh as an gift to worship him]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- days
- Cain
- some of the fruit of
- to Yahweh

UST

- As time went by, one day
- Cain
- some of the crops {that he had grown} in
- to Yahweh

Genesis 4:4

ULT:
And Abel also brought some of the firstborn of his flock{s} and some of their fat. And Yahweh looked {favorably} on Abel and his offering.

UST:
Abel also gave {a gift} {to Yahweh}, {but what he gave was} some of the firstborn animals from his flock{s}, including some of their best parts. Yahweh was pleased with Abel and his gift.

some of the firstborn of his flock{s} (ULT)

some of the firstborn animals from his flock{s} (UST)

See how you translated **flocks** in verse 2. Alternate translation: [some of the firstborn animals from his sheep]

---

and some of their fat (ULT)

including some of their best parts (UST)

In that culture, fat was considered one of the best parts of an animal to eat. If that is different from how fat is viewed in your language area, that information could be put in a footnote. Alternate translation: [and some of the fat portions of the meat] or [and some of their best parts] or [and the best parts of the meat]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

And Yahweh looked {favorably} on (ULT)

Yahweh was pleased with (UST)

Alternate translation: [Yahweh was happy with] or [Yahweh accepted]

Abel and his offering (ULT)

Abel and his gift (UST)

Alternate translation: [Abel and his sacrifice] or [Abel and what he gave to him]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And Abel
- some of the firstborn of
- his flock{s}
- Yahweh
- Abel

UST

- Abel
- some of the firstborn animals from
- his flock{s}
- Yahweh
- Abel

Genesis 4:5

ULT:
But he did not look {favorably} on Cain and his offering. So Cain burned with intense anger, and his face fell.

UST:
However, he was not pleased with Cain or his gift. So Cain became extremely angry, and he frowned.

But he did not look {favorably} on Cain (ULT)

However, he was not pleased with Cain (UST)

See how you translated "looked favorably on" in the previous verse. Alternate translation: [But Yahweh was not happy with Cain] or [However, he did not accept Cain]

---

and his offering (ULT)

or his gift (UST)

Alternate translation: [and his gift] or [and what he gave to him]

So Cain burned with intense anger (ULT)

So Cain became extremely angry (UST)

Many languages have a similar common expression that fits well here. Alternate translation: [So Cain was extremely angry]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and his face fell (ULT)

and he frowned (UST)

Alternate translation: [and his face showed that he was angry] or [and he scowled] or [and his face showed it]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Cain
- Cain

UST

- Cain
- So Cain became … angry

Genesis 4:6

ULT:
Then Yahweh said to Cain, "Why are you burning with anger? And why is your face fallen?

UST:
Then Yahweh asked him, "Why are you so angry? And why are you frowning?

Then Yahweh said to Cain (ULT)

Then Yahweh asked him (UST)

The way you translate this quote margin should fit with the way that you translated the following three rhetorical questions. Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh asked Cain]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Why are you burning with anger? And why is your face fallen (ULT)

Why are you so angry? And why are you frowning (UST)

God is using these rhetorical questions to correct Cain. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Also see how you translated the expressions "burned with … anger" and "face fell" in verse 5. Alternate translation: [Why are you so angry? And why are you scowling?] or [There is no reason for you to be angry and scowling]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Yahweh
- Cain

UST
- Yahweh
- him

Genesis 4:7

ULT:
If you do right, will {you} not {be} accepted? But if you do not do right, sin is crouching at the door, and its desire {is} for you, but you must rule over it."

UST:
If you do {what is} right, I will accept {you} {and your offering}. But if you do not do {what is} right, then sin {is like a fierce animal that} is waiting outside your door {to attack you}. It wants {to control} you, but you must control it {so that you do not sin}."

will {you} not {be} accepted (ULT)

I will accept {you} {and your offering} (UST)

God uses this rhetorical question here to remind Cain of something that he already knew. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: [you know that you will be accepted by me] or [you know that I will be pleased with you and your gift too] or [I will accept you and your gift too]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

But if you do not do right (ULT)

But if you do not do {what is} right (UST)

Alternate translation: [But if you do what is wrong]

---

sin is crouching (ULT)

then sin {is like a fierce animal that} is waiting (UST)

In verse 7, sin is treated as if it were alive, like a lion or some other fierce animal which is preparing to attack Cain. Some languages can do the same thing. Other languages cannot do that and must say something like: "then you are in great danger of being tempted to sin, but

you must resist and not give in." Alternate translation: [then sin is like a dangerous animal that is waiting] or [then sin will be waiting like a wild animal]

Support Reference: Personification

---

at the door (ULT)

outside your door {to attack you} (UST)

Alternate translation: [outside the door of your heart to tempt you]

---

and its desire {is} for you (ULT)

It wants {to control} you (UST)

Alternate translation: [Sin wants to destroy you]

---

but you must rule over it (ULT)

but you must control it {so that you do not sin} (UST)

Alternate translation: [but you must master it so that you do not sin] or [but you must keep it from destroying you]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- you do right
- you do … do right
- sin
- must rule

UST

- you do {what is} right

- you do … do {what is} right
- then sin {is like a fierce animal … }
- must control it {so that you do not sin}

Genesis 4:8

ULT:
Then Cain spoke to Abel his brother. And it happened while they were in the field, then Cain rose up against Abel his brother and killed him.

UST:
But {after that,} Cain said to his brother Abel, "Let's go out to the field {to work} {together}." So {they went out} to the field, and while they were there, Cain attacked his brother and murdered him.

Then Cain spoke (ULT)

But {after that,} Cain said (UST)

After God spoke to Cain, we do not know how long Cain waited before he spoke to Abel; it may have been a few hours or a few days. Alternate translation: [Some time later, Cain spoke]

Support Reference: Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

---

to Abel his brother (ULT)

to his brother Abel, "Let's go out to the field {to work} {together} (UST)

This sentence is what the Hebrew text has. Instead of that text, some ancient manuscripts and translations (including the Samaritan Pentateuch, Septuagint, Latin Vulgate, and Syriac) and many modern translations have: "Then Cain said to Abel his brother, 'Let's go out to the field and work together.'" or "Then Cain invited his brother Abel to go out to the field with him to work." Some translation teams follow the way this verse is translated in a well-known translation, such as in the national language or in a neighboring language. Decide what to do in your translation. The textual variant that you do not use in your translation could be put in a footnote. Alternate translation: [with his brother Abel]

Support Reference: Textual Variants

And it happened while they were in the field (ULT)

So {they went out} to the field, and while they were there (UST)

For some languages it is necessary to make explicit that Cain and Abel actually went to the field. Alternate translation: [So they went out to the field to work together, but while they were there]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

Abel his brother (ULT)

his brother Abel, “Let’s go out to the field {to work} {together} (UST)

The Hebrew text keeps repeating the phrase **Abel his brother** to emphasize the seriousness of Cain’s crime. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. See how you translated **brother** in verse 2. Alternate translation: [his own brother Abel] or [his own brother]

Support Reference: Kinship

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Cain
- Abel
- Cain
- Abel
- and killed him

UST

- Cain
- Abel, “Let’s go out to the field {to work} {together}
- Cain
- הֶבֶל (ORIG QUOTE)
- and murdered him

Genesis 4:9

ULT:
Then Yahweh said to Cain, "Where {is} Abel your brother?" And he replied, "I do not know. Am I my brother's keeper?"

UST:
Later Yahweh asked Cain, "Where {is} your brother Abel?" Cain responded, "I do not know {where he is}. Is it my job to take care of my brother?"

Then Yahweh said to Cain (ULT)

Later Yahweh asked Cain (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh asked Cain]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

And he replied (ULT)

Cain responded (UST)

Cain is answering Yahweh rudely. Consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin in your language, including whether or not to use a conjunction here. Alternate translation: [Then He said to him] or [He answered him] or [He retorted]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

I do not know (ULT)

I do not know {where he is} (UST)

Alternate translation: [How should I know that?]

Am I my brother's keeper (ULT)

Is it my job to take care of my brother (UST)

Cain uses this rhetorical question to support the lie that he just told. His response to God is rude and disrespectful. Consider whether or not a rhetorical question communicates that here in your language. Alternate translation: [Am I in charge of my brother?] or [Is it my responsibility to take care of my brother?]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Cain
- Abel
- Yahweh
- I do … know
- Am … keeper

UST

- Cain
- Abel
- Yahweh
- I do not know {where he is}
- Is it my job to take care of my brother

Genesis 4:10

ULT:
Then he said, “What have you done? The voice of your brother’s blood is crying out to me from the ground!

UST:
Then Yahweh said {to him}, “You have done a terrible thing! I see your brother’s blood on the ground, and I must punish you {for killing him}!

Then he said (ULT)

Then Yahweh said {to him} (UST)

Make sure that your translation of this phrase refers to Yahweh, not Cain. Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh asked]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

What have you done (ULT)

You have done a terrible thing (UST)

God uses this rhetorical question to condemn what Cain had done. Consider whether or not a rhetorical question works well here in your language. Alternate translation: [What you have done is very horrible!] or [You have done a horrible thing!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

The voice of your brother’s blood is crying out to me from the ground (ULT)

I see your brother’s blood on the ground, and I must punish you {for killing him} (UST)

In the Hebrew text, blood is spoken of as if it were a living thing that had a voice or could cry out like a person does. If it is not possible to do that in your language, you could say that his brother’s blood is “like a voice …” or you could state the meaning plainly.

Support Reference: Personification

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- is crying out

UST

- I see your brother’s blood on the ground, and I must punish you {for killing him}

Genesis 4:11

ULT:
So now you are cursed from the ground, which has opened its mouth to receive your brother's blood from your hand.

UST:
So from now on I am cursing you {so that you will not be able to grow food} from the ground, which is where your brother's blood spilled out when you murdered him.

So now (ULT)

So from now on (UST)

Alternate translation: [Therefore from now on] or [Because of what you did]

---

you are cursed (ULT)

I am cursing you (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Also see how you translated this in Genesis 3:14. Alternate translation: [you are cursed by me]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

from the ground (ULT)

{so that you will not be able to grow food} from the ground (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that you will not be able to grow food from the soil] or [so that you are banished from farming the soil]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

which has opened its mouth to receive your brother’s blood (ULT)

which is where your brother’s blood spilled out (UST)

In the Hebrew text, **the ground** is spoken of as if it were a living thing that had a mouth to open. If that is not possible in your language, you could follow one of the alternates above. Alternate translation: [which is covered with blood from your brother]

Support Reference: Personification

---

from your hand (ULT)

when you murdered him (UST)

Alternate translation: [when you killed him]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- are cursed

UST

- I am cursing

Genesis 4:12

ULT:
When you work the ground, it will not continue to yield its strength for you. You will be a fugitive and a wanderer on the earth.”

UST:
Whenever you {try to} farm the ground, it will no longer produce good crops for you. {From now on,} you will be an outcast who wanders around on the earth {without a permanent home}.”

When (ULT)

Whenever (UST)

Alternate translation: [As a result, whenever]

---

you work the ground (ULT)

you {try to} farm the ground (UST)

See how you translated **work the ground** in Genesis 2:5 and 3:23; also see similar phrases in 4:2 and 4:11. Alternate translation: [you try to farm the soil]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

it will not continue to yield its strength for you (ULT)

it will no longer produce good crops for you (UST)

Alternate translation: [it will no longer grow good crops for you] or [it will not grow enough food for you anymore]

You will be (ULT)

you will be (UST)

Alternate translation: [and you will also]

You will be a fugitive and a wanderer on the earth (ULT)

From now on,} you will be an outcast who wanders around on the earth {without a permanent home} (UST)

The phrase **a fugitive and a wanderer** forms a hendiadys, a phrase that expresses a single idea by using two words connected with **and**. Consider what is the best way to translate that phrase in your language. Alternate translation: [be a homeless outcast on the earth] or [be rejected by people so that you have no permanent home and have to move from place to place]

Support Reference: Hendiadys

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- you work
- a fugitive
- on the earth

UST

- you {try to} farm
- From now on … an outcast
- on the earth

Genesis 4:13

ULT:
Then Cain said to Yahweh, "My punishment {is} greater than I can bear.

UST:
Cain replied to Yahweh, "You are punishing me more {severely} than I can endure.

Then Cain said to Yahweh (ULT)

Cain replied to Yahweh (UST)

Alternate translation: [But Cain replied to him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

My punishment {is} greater (ULT)

You are punishing me more {severely} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Your punishment of me will cause me more suffering] or [You are punishing me more harshly]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

---

than I can bear (ULT)

than I can endure (UST)

Alternate translation: [than I am able to cope with]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Cain

- Yahweh
- than I can bear

UST

- Cain
- Yahweh
- than I can endure

Genesis 4:14

ULT:
Behold, today you are driving me from the surface of the ground, and I will be hidden from your presence. And I will be a fugitive and a wanderer on the earth, and it will be {that} everyone who finds me will kill me!"

UST:
Look, you have now banished me from {farming} the ground, and I will be far away from you. I will be a homeless fugitive on the earth, so that whoever sees me will kill me!"

Behold (ULT)

Look (UST)

This term emphasizes what Cain says next. See how you translated this term in Genesis 1:29 and 3:22. It may be necessary to translate it in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [Listen]

Support Reference: Metaphor

---

today you are driving me (ULT)

you have now banished me (UST)

See how you translated "drove" in Genesis 3:24. Alternate translation: [today you are forcing me away] or [you have now prevented me]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

from the surface of the ground (ULT)

from {farming} the ground (UST)

Alternate translation: [from working the land]

---

and I will be hidden from your presence (ULT)

and I will be far away from you (UST)

This clause is probably a common expression that means Cain will be cursed and no longer blessed by God. Alternate translation: [and I will be separated from you] or [and you will no longer bless me]

Support Reference: Idiom

And I will be a fugitive and a wanderer on the earth (ULT)

I will be a homeless fugitive on the earth (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 4:12. Alternate translation: [I will be a fugitive who wanders around on the earth without a permanent home] or [I will be a wandering outcast on the earth]

Support Reference: Hendiadys

---

everyone who finds me will kill me (ULT)

whoever sees me will kill me (UST)

Cain uses generalization and extreme statement here to emphasize his strong emotion. If possible, keep this extreme statement in your translation because it helps communicate how fearful Cain felt. Alternate translation: [anyone who meets me will kill me!]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- you are driving
- today
- a fugitive

- on the earth
- will kill me

UST

- you have … banished
- now
- a homeless fugitive
- on the earth
- will kill me

Genesis 4:15

ULT:
Then Yahweh said to him, "For that {reason}, anyone who kills Cain will suffer vengeance seven times over!" Then Yahweh put a mark on Cain so that everyone who found him would not strike him.

UST:
Yahweh replied to him, "So then, {I will warn everyone that} I will take vengeance on whoever kills you {and punish him} seven times more {severely} {than I am punishing you}!" Then he put a mark on Cain to warn everyone who met him not to kill him.

Then Yahweh said to him (ULT)

Yahweh replied to him (UST)

Alternate translation: [So Yahweh said to him] or [Yahweh said to Cain]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

For that {reason} (ULT)

So then (UST)

That is what the Hebrew text has. Instead of that text, some ancient translations (such as the Septuagint) and many modern translations have: "Not so." or "That will not happen because." The textual variant that you do not use in your translation could be put in a footnote. Alternate translation: [In that case]

Support Reference: Textual Variants

---

anyone who kills Cain will suffer vengeance (ULT)

{I will warn everyone that} I will take vengeance on whoever kills you (UST)

What God says here implies that he will do something to prevent people from killing Cain; he is not just talking about punishing them if they kill him. If necessary, you could make that explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: [I will warn everyone that if anyone kills you, I will take revenge on him for you] or [I will make it clear to everyone that I will take revenge on anyone who kills you]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

Then Yahweh put a mark on Cain (ULT)

Then he put a mark on Cain (UST)

We do not know exactly how Yahweh marked Cain, so keep your translation of this clause general (like the Hebrew text is). Alternate translation: [Then he put a special symbol on Cain] or [Then he marked Cain with a special mark]

---

so that everyone who found him would not strike him (ULT)

to warn everyone who met him not to kill him (UST)

The phrase **strike him** is used here as a common expression that means "kill him." Alternate translation: [so that anyone who saw him would not kill him]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Yahweh
- who kills
- Cain

- will suffer vengeance
- Yahweh
- on Cain
- a mark

UST

- Yahweh
- kills
- you
- I will take vengeance
- יְהוָה (ORIG QUOTE)
- on Cain
- a mark

Genesis 4:16

ULT:
Then Cain went away from the presence of Yahweh and lived in the land of Nod, east of Eden.

UST:
Then Cain left Yahweh's presence and lived in the region of Nod, {which means "wandering,"} {which was} east of {the region of} Eden.

Then Cain went away (ULT)

Then Cain left (UST)

Alternate translation: [After that, Cain went away]

---

from the presence of Yahweh (ULT)

Yahweh's presence (UST)

Yahweh is everywhere, so this probably means that after talking to Yahweh, Cain left that place. Alternate translation: [from Yahweh] or [from the place where Yahweh had been talking to him]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

and lived (ULT)

and lived (UST)

Alternate translation: [and settled] or [and started living]

---

in the land of Nod (ULT)

in the region of Nod, {which means "wandering … } (UST)

The original readers of the Hebrew text knew that the name **Nod** means "wandering." Usually translators transliterate (copy or borrow) the name from the Hebrew text, and they might also include the meaning of the name in the text or in a footnote. If you do that here, the meaning should be similar to how you translated "wanderer" in verses 12 and 14.

Support Reference: Copy or Borrow Words

---

east of Eden (ULT)

{which was} east of {the region of} Eden (UST)

Consider again how you translated "the land of Eden" and "the Garden of Eden" in the book of Genesis. See 2:8, 10, 15; 3:23–24; and 4:16. Alternate translation: [which was east of the land called Eden] or [which was east of Eden Land]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Cain
- Yahweh
- in the land of
- Eden

UST

- Cain
- Yahweh
- in the region of
- {the region of} Eden

Genesis 4:17

ULT:
Then Cain knew his wife, and she conceived and bore Enoch. And he was building a city, so he called the name of the city after the name of his son Enoch.

UST:
Then Cain had {marital} relations with his wife, and she became pregnant and gave birth to {a son they named} Enoch. {At that time} Cain was building a city, so he named the city after his son Enoch.

Then Cain knew his wife (ULT)

Then Cain had {marital} relations with his wife (UST)

See how you translated this common expression in Genesis 4:1. Alternate translation: [Then Cain slept with his wife]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

and she conceived and bore (ULT)

and she became pregnant and gave birth to (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 4:1. Alternate translation: [so that she became pregnant and gave birth to]

And he was building a city (ULT)

{At that time} Cain was building a city (UST)

Make sure that your translation of this clause refers to Cain, not Enoch. Alternate translation: [Now at that time, Cain was in the process of constructing a city]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

so he called the name of the city (ULT)

so he named the city (UST)

Alternate translation: [so he called the city]

---

after the name of his son Enoch (ULT)

after his son Enoch (UST)

Alternate translation: [Enoch, after his son] or [Enoch, the same name as his son]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then … knew
- Cain
- and she conceived
- and bore
- Enoch
- so he called
- Enoch

UST

- Then … had {marital} relations
- Cain
- and she became pregnant
- and gave birth to
- {a son they named} Enoch
- so he named
- Enoch

Genesis 4:18

ULT:
Then to Enoch was born Irad, and Irad fathered Mehujael, and Mehujael fathered Methushael, and Methushael fathered Lamech.

UST:
When Enoch {grew up,} he had {a son named} Irad. Then Irad had {a son named} Mehujael. Then Mehujael had {a son named} Methushael. Then Methushael had {a son named} Lamech.

Then to Enoch was born (ULT)

When Enoch {grew up,} he had (UST)

In this record of Cain's descendants, It is implied that many years have gone by between each descendant growing up, getting married, and having his own children. Decide the best way to translate this genealogical record in your language. Alternate translation: [Later on, Enoch fathered] or [When Enoch grew up, he fathered] or [Enoch was the father of]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

Irad (ULT)

{a son named} Irad (UST)

Alternate translation: [a son whose name was Irad]

---

and Irad fathered (ULT)

Then Irad had (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Irad fathered] or [When Irad grew up, he had] or [Irad was the father of]

Mehujael (ULT)

{a son named} Mehujael (UST)

Alternate translation: [a son whose name was Mehujael]

---

and Mehujael fathered (ULT)

Then Mehujael had (UST)

Alternate translation: [Mehujael was the father of]

Methushael (ULT)

{a son named} Methushael (UST)

Alternate translation: [a son whose name was Methushael]

---

and Methushael fathered (ULT)

Then Methushael had (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Methushael fathered] or [When Methushael grew up, he had] or [Methushael was the father of]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then … was born
- to Enoch
- Lamech

UST

- When Enoch {grew up,} he had
- When Enoch {grew up,} he had
- {a son named} Lamech

Genesis 4:19

ULT:
Then Lamech took for himself two wives. The name of the one {was} Adah, and the name of the second {was} Zillah.

UST:
When Lamech {grew up,} he married two wives. His first wife's name was Adah, and his other wife's name was Zillah.

Then Lamech took for himself two wives (ULT)

When Lamech {grew up,} he married two wives (UST)

In this context, the phrase **took for himself** is a common expression that means "married." Consider whether or not your language has a similar expression. Alternate translation: [Then Lamech grew up, and he chose two women to be his wives] or [When Lamech grew up, he married two women]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Lamech

UST
- When Lamech {grew up,} he married

Genesis 4:20

ULT:
And Adah bore Jabal. He was the father of {those} who live {in} tents and own livestock.

UST:
Adah gave birth to {a son named} Jabal. He {grew up and} became the first of {all} those who live {in} portable shelters and raise livestock {for a living}.

Jabal (ULT)

{a son named} Jabal (UST)

Alternate translation: [a son whose name was Jabal]

He was (ULT)

He {grew up and} became (UST)

Alternate translation: [who was] or [who grew up and became]

---

the father of {those} who live (ULT)

the first of {all} those who live (UST)

The phrase **father of** is used here as a common expression that means Jabal was the first person to do these things. He originated this way of living, and many people after him followed his example. Alternate translation: [the first of all people who]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And … bore
- {in} tents
- and own livestock

UST

- gave birth to
- {in} portable shelters
- and raise livestock {for a living}

Genesis 4:21

ULT:
And the name of his brother {was} Jubal. He was the father of all who play harps and flutes.

UST:
His brother's name was Jubal. He became the first of all {those} who play harps and flutes.

And the name of his brother {was} Jubal (ULT)

His brother's name was Jubal (UST)

Jubal was probably younger than Jabal. See how you translated **brother** in verse 4:2. Alternate translation: [Jabal had a brother named Jubal]

Support Reference: Kinship

He was (ULT)

He became (UST)

Alternate translation: [who was] or [He grew up and became]

---

the father of all (ULT)

the first of all {those} (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 4:20. Alternate translation: [the ancestor of all people who]

---

who play harps and flutes (ULT)

who play harps and flutes (UST)

Alternate translation: [play musical instruments called lyres and pipes] or [play stringed instruments and wind instruments]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- harps
- and flutes

UST

- harps
- and flutes

Genesis 4:22

ULT:
And Zillah also bore Tubal Cain, who forged all {kinds} of tools out of bronze and iron. And the sister of Tubal Cain {was} Naamah.

UST:
{Lamech's other wife} Zillah also gave birth to {a son named} Tubal Cain. He {was the first of all those who} make all {kinds} of tools {and other things} out of bronze and iron. Tubal Cain had a sister {whose name was} Naamah.

also bore (ULT)

also gave birth to (UST)

Alternate translation: [also became pregnant and gave birth to a son, and they named him]

Tubal Cain (ULT)

{a son named} Tubal Cain (UST)

Be consistent with how you spell this name both times in verse 4:22. Alternate translation: [Tubal-Cain] or [Tubal-cain] or [Tubalcain]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

who forged (ULT)

He {was the first of all those who} make (UST)

It is probably implied from verses 20–21 that Tubal Cain, like his brothers, was the father or first of all those who had this skill. Alternate translation: [He was the first person to forge] or [He was the first blacksmith, and he forged] or [He was the first of all people who forge]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

all {kinds} of tools out of bronze and iron (ULT)

all {kinds} of tools {and other things} out of bronze and iron (UST)

The word **tools** that is used here in the Hebrew text is general and can include farming tools and weapons and other things that are made out of metal. Alternate translation: [all kinds of tools and other things out of brass and iron] or [all kinds of brass and iron things]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- bore
- Cain
- bronze
- Tubal

UST

- gave birth to
- Cain
- bronze
- Tubal

Genesis 4:23

ULT:
And Lamech said to his wives, "Adah and Zillah, hear my voice. Wives of Lamech, give ear to my word{s}: For I killed a man for my wound, even a young man for my bruise.

UST:
{One day,} Lamech bragged to his {two} wives, "Adah and Zillah, listen to what I have to say. My wives, listen to this: I killed a young man for wounding me! In fact, {I killed} that man {just} because he bruised me.

And Lamech said (ULT)

{One day,} Lamech bragged (UST)

Consider what is the best way in your language to introduce this new event. Alternate translation: [One time, Lamech said proudly] or [One day, Lamech boasted]

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

---

to his wives, Adah and Zillah (ULT)

to his {two} wives, Adah and Zillah (UST)

Be consistent with how you spelled these names in verses 4:19–20, 4:22–23.

---

hear my voice (ULT)

listen to what I have to say (UST)

The phrase **my voice** refers here to the words being said. Consider what is the best way to translate this figure of speech in your language. Alternate translation: [listen to what I am going to tell you]

Support Reference: Metonymy

Wives of Lamech, give ear to my word{s} (ULT)

My wives, listen to this (UST)

This clause forms a parallelism, use of two phrases mean basically the same thing, with the previous clause and emphasizes what Lamech says next. Also, consider whether or not your language has an expression that is similar to **give ear to**. Alternate translation: [My wives, listen to me carefully]

Support Reference: Parallelism

For I killed a man for my wound, even a young man for my bruise (ULT)

I killed a young man for wounding me! In fact, {I killed} that man {just} because he bruised me (UST)

This could mean: (1) that Lamech killed a young man who bruised him. Alternate translation: [I killed a man for wounding me; he was a young man who bruised me!] or [I killed a young man for wounding me! In fact, I killed that man just because he injured me!]; (2) that Lamech killed two a man who wounded him and also a man who bruised him. Alternate translation: [I killed a man for wounding me, and I also killed a young man for bruising me] or [A man wounded me, so I killed him. A young man bruised me, so I killed him too!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Lamech
- Lamech
- I killed

UST

- Lamech
- My wives
- I killed

Genesis 4:24

ULT:
If Cain is avenged seven times, then Lamech {is avenged} seventy-seven times!”

UST:
God will avenge Cain seven times, but {I,} Lamech {avenge myself} 77 times!”

If Cain is avenged seven times, then Lamech (ULT)

God will avenge Cain seven times, but {I,} Lamech (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Alternate translation: [Since God has promised to avenge Cain seven times, then] or [Cain is avenged by God seven times, but]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

then Lamech {is avenged} seventy-seven times (ULT)

but {I,} Lamech {avenge myself} 77 times (UST)

Lamech is bragging in verses 23 and 24 about how severely he avenges himself. He is not saying that God will avenge him more than he will avenge Cain. Also, each translation team needs to decide how they will handle numbers in the Hebrew text so that readers will not confuse those numbers with verse numbers. For example, it may be best to use words for single and double-digit numbers in the text. Be consistent with how you spelled the name **Lamech** in verses 18–19, 23–24. Alternate translation: [I, Lamech avenge myself seventy-seven times!] or [I avenge myself 77 times!]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- is avenged
- Cain

- then Lamech

UST

- God will avenge
- Cain
- but {I,} Lamech

Genesis 4:25

ULT:
Then Adam knew his wife again, and she bore a son, and she called his name Seth, because {she had said}, "God has appointed for me another offspring in place of Abel, since Cain killed him."

UST:
Then Adam had {marital} relations with his wife again, and she gave birth to a son, and she named him Seth, {which means "given."} {She named him that} because {when he was born,} {she had said}, "God has given me another child to replace Abel, whom Cain killed."

Then Adam knew his wife again (ULT)

Then Adam had {marital} relations with his wife again (UST)

See how you translated the common expression **knew** in verses 4:1 and 4:17. Alternate translation: [Then Adam slept with his wife Eve again]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

and she bore a son (ULT)

and she gave birth to a son (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that she conceived and had a son] or [with the result that she became pregnant and gave birth to a son]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

---

and she called his name (ULT)

and she named him (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in 3:20. Alternate translation: [and she gave him the name]

---

because {she had said} (ULT)

She named him that} because {when he was born,} {she had said} (UST)

What follows is a direct quote of what Eve said that gave Seth his name. Make sure that is clear in your language. Alternate translation: [She named him that because when he was born, she had exclaimed]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

God has appointed for me (ULT)

God has given me (UST)

If you include the meaning of Seth's name in your translation or in a footnote, make sure it matches the way you translate **appointed** here, so that it is clear why he was given that name. Alternate translation: [God has given to me]

God has appointed for me another offspring in place of Abel, since Cain killed him (ULT)

God has given me another child to replace Abel, whom Cain killed (UST)

For some languages it is necessary to put this phrase first in this clause so that events are in the order that they happened. Alternate translation: [Since Cain killed Abel, God granted me another child to replace him]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then … knew
- Adam
- and she bore
- and she called
- Seth
- God
- offspring
- Abel
- killed him
- Cain

UST

- Then … had {marital} relations
- Adam
- and she gave birth to
- and she named him
- Seth, {which means “given … }
- God
- child
- Abel
- whom … killed
- Cain

Genesis 4:26

ULT:
And to Seth also a son was born, and he called his name Enosh. Then {people} began to call on the name of Yahweh.

UST:
Seth also had a son, and he named him Enosh. During that time people began to worship {God} by using His name Yahweh.

And to Seth also a son was born (ULT)

Seth also had a son (UST)

The word order in the Hebrew text here emphasizes Seth. Alternate translation: [Later on, Seth also had a son]

Then (ULT)

During that time (UST)

Alternate translation: [At that time] or [That is when]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And to Seth
- was born
- and he called
- to call
- Yahweh

UST

- Seth
- had
- and he named him
- by using His name
- Yahweh

Genesis 5

Genesis 5:1

ULT:
This {is} the written account of the generations of Adam: On the day God created man{kind}, he made him in the likeness of God.

UST:
Here {is} the {family} record of Adam and his descendants: On the day when God created human beings, he made them to be like himself.

This {is} (ULT)

Here {is} (UST)

Alternate translation: [What follows is]

---

the generations of Adam (ULT)

Adam and his descendants (UST)

Alternate translation: [about Adam and his descendants:]

On the day God created man{kind}, he made him (ULT)

On the day when God created human beings, he made them (UST)

See how you translated **created** in Genesis 1:1, 1:27; 2:4, and "man" in Genesis 1:26–27.
Alternate translation: [On the day that God made human beings, he made them]

---

in the likeness of God (ULT)

to be like himself (UST)

God created mankind to be like himself in certain ways, but not to be exactly like him in every way (Genesis 1:26–27). Alternate translation: [in his own likeness]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- man{kind}
- the generations of
- Adam
- On the day
- created
- God
- God

UST

- human beings
- Adam and his descendants
- Adam and his descendants
- On the day when
- created
- God
- to be like himself

Genesis 5:2

ULT:
He created them male and female, and he blessed them and called their name "man{kind}" on the day they were created.

UST:
He {also} created them {to be} male and female, and on the {same} day that he created them, he blessed them and named them "human beings."

He created them male and female (ULT)

He {also} created them {to be} male and female (UST)

See how you translated this clause in Genesis 1:27.

---

and called their name (ULT)

and named them (UST)

See how you translated the phrase "called … name" in Genesis 4:17 and 4:25,. Alternate translation: [and called them]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

man{kind} (ULT)

human beings (UST)

Be consistent here with how you translated this term in verse 5:1.

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

---

and he blessed them and called their name “man{kind}” on the day they were created (ULT)

and on the {same} day that he created them, he blessed them and named them “human beings (UST)

For some languages, it is clearer or more natural to put this clause earlier in this verse.
Alternate translation: [and on the same day that they were created, he blessed them and called them human beings]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- man{kind}
- He created them
- and he blessed
- and called
- on the day
- they were created

UST

- human beings
- He {also} created them {to be}
- and … he blessed
- and named them
- on the {same} day
- that he created them

Genesis 5:3

ULT:
And Adam lived 130 years, then he fathered {a son} in his own likeness, according to his image, and he called his name Seth.

UST:
When Adam was 130 years old, he had {a son} who was like him in many ways, and he named him Seth.

And Adam lived 130 years, then he fathered {a son} (ULT)

When Adam was 130 years old, he had {a son} (UST)

Each translation team needs to decide how they are going to write large numbers in the Bible. Many teams use numerals, for example, **130** here in verse 3, especially if the target language has a complicated counting system. Other teams prefer to use words, for example, “one hundred and thirty” here. Be consistent in what you do throughout your translation. Alternate translation: [When Adam had lived 130 years, he had a son] or [When Adam was 130 years old, he fathered a son]

Support Reference: Numbers

---

in his own likeness, according to his image (ULT)

who was like him in many ways (UST)

These two phrases have similar meanings and emphasize that Seth was similar to Adam in many ways. See how you translated similar phrases in Genesis 1:26. Alternate translation: [who was a human being like himself and looked like him]

Support Reference: Doublet

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Adam
- years

- and he called
- Seth

UST

- Adam
- 130 years old
- and he named him
- Seth

Genesis 5:4

ULT:
And the days of Adam after he fathered Seth were 800 years, and he fathered {other} sons and daughters.

UST:
After Seth's birth, Adam lived {another} 800 years. He {also} had {other} sons as well as daughters.

And the days of Adam after he fathered Seth were (ULT)

After Seth's birth, Adam lived (UST)

Alternate translation: [After he had Seth, he lived] or [After Seth was born, Adam lived]

---

800 years (ULT)

{another} 800 years (UST)

For some languages, it may be more natural to change the clause order of this sentence and say, "Adam lived 800 more years after Seth was born …" Do what is best in your language throughout this chapter. Alternate translation: [800 more years]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

and he fathered (ULT)

He {also} had (UST)

This clause probably refers to all the other children that Adam had, including those who were born before and after Seth was born. Alternate translation: [and he also had] or [Adam also had] or [He was also the father of]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Seth
- the days of
- Adam
- 800
- years

UST

- Seth's birth
- lived
- Adam
- {another} 800 years
- {another} 800 years

Genesis 5:5

ULT:
So all the days of Adam that he lived were 930 years, and he died.

UST:
So Adam lived a total of 930 years, and {then} he died.

(There are no notes for this verse)

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the days of
- Adam
- 930 years
- 930 years

UST

- So Adam lived a total of
- So Adam lived a total of
- 930 years
- 930 years

Genesis 5:6

ULT:
And Seth lived 105 years, then he fathered Enosh.

UST:
When Seth was 105 years old, he had {a son named} Enosh.

And Seth lived 105 years (ULT)

When Seth was 105 years old (UST)

The events in verse 6 happened before Adam died (verse 5). So if you use a conjunction here, make sure your translation does not sound like verse 6 happened after Adam died. Alternate translation: [After Seth had lived 105 years] or [After Seth was 105 years old]

Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

---

then he fathered Enosh (ULT)

he had {a son named} Enosh (UST)

You could make it explicit in your translation or in a footnote that Enosh was a son. The same thing is true for the rest of the children whose births are mentioned in this chapter (who were all sons). Alternate translation: [he fathered a son named Enosh] or [he had a son they named Enosh] or [he had a son whose name was Enosh]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Seth
- 105 years
- 105 years

UST
- Seth

- 105 years old
- 105 years old

Genesis 5:7

ULT:
Then after he fathered Enosh, Seth lived 807 years, and he fathered {other} sons and daughters.

UST:
After Enosh's birth, Seth lived {another} 807 years. He {also} had {other} sons as well as daughters.

Then after he fathered Enosh, Seth lived (ULT)

After Enosh's birth, Seth lived (UST)

In fact, throughout chapter 5, make sure it is clear in your translation whom each pronoun refers to. Alternate translation: [After he had Enosh, he lived] or [After Enosh was born, Seth lived]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

807 years (ULT)

{another} 807 years (UST)

Alternate translation: [807 more years]

---

and he fathered (ULT)

He {also} had (UST)

See how you translated this phrase and the following one in verse 4. Alternate translation: [and he also had] or [Seth also had] or [He was also the father of]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Seth
- 807 years
- 807 years

UST

- Seth
- {another} 807 years
- {another} 807 years

Genesis 5:8

ULT:
So all the days of Seth were 912 years, and he died.

UST:
So Seth lived a total of 912 years, and {then} he died.

(There are no notes for this verse)

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Seth
- the days of
- 912 years
- 912 years

UST

- Seth
- So … lived a total of
- 912 years
- 912 years

Genesis 5:9

ULT:
And Enosh lived ninety years, then he fathered Kenan.

UST:
When Enosh was ninety years old, he had {a son named} Kenan.

And Enosh lived ninety years (ULT)

When Enosh was ninety years old (UST)

See how you translated the beginning of a similar new paragraph in this genealogy at verse 6.

Alternate translation: [After Enosh had lived 90 years] or [After Enosh was 90 years old]

Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- ninety years

UST
- ninety years old

Genesis 5:10

ULT:
Then after he fathered Kenan, Enosh lived 815 years, and he fathered {other} sons and daughters.

UST:
After Kenan's birth, Enosh lived {another} 815 years. He {also} had {other} sons as well as daughters.

Then after he fathered Kenan, Enosh lived (ULT)

After Kenan's birth, Enosh lived (UST)

See how you translated a similar sentence in verse 5:7, and see the notes about that there.

Alternate translation: [After he had Kenan, he lived] or [After Kenan was born, Enosh lived]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

815 years (ULT)

{another} 815 years (UST)

Alternate translation: [815 more years]

---

and he fathered (ULT)

He {also} had (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he also had] or [Enosh also had] or [He was also the father of]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- 815 years

- 815 years

UST

- {another} 815 years
- {another} 815 years

Genesis 5:11

ULT:
So all the days of Enosh were 905 years, and he died.

UST:
So Enosh lived a total of 905 years, and {then} he died.

and he died (ULT)

and {then} he died (UST)

Alternate translation: [before he died]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the days of
- 905 years
- 905 years

UST

- So … lived a total of
- 905 years
- 905 years

Genesis 5:12

ULT:
And Kenan lived seventy years, then he fathered Mahalalel.

UST:
When Kenan was seventy years old, he had {a son named} Mahalalel.

And Kenan lived seventy years (ULT)

When Kenan was seventy years old (UST)

Throughout this chapter, be consistent with how you have decided to handle numbers in the Bible. For example, many translation teams use words for single and double-digit numbers, but use numerals for larger numbers. This strategy helps prevent confusion with verse numbers. This is especially true in translations that use a large font size for verse numbers so that people doing group Bible study can easily be in the same verse together. Alternate translation: [After Kenan had lived seventy years] or [After Kenan was seventy years old]

Support Reference: Numbers

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- years

UST
- seventy years old

Genesis 5:13

ULT:
Then after he fathered Mahalalel, Kenan lived 840 years, and he fathered {other} sons and daughters.

UST:
After Mahalalel's birth, Kenan lived {another} 840 years. He {also} had {other} sons as well as daughters.

Then after he fathered Mahalalel, Kenan lived (ULT)

After Mahalalel's birth, Kenan lived (UST)

Alternate translation: [After Kenan had Mahalalel, he lived] or [After Mahalalel was born, Kenan lived]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

840 years (ULT)

{another} 840 years (UST)

Alternate translation: [840 more years]

---

and he fathered (ULT)

He {also} had (UST)

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to Kenan at this point in the paragraph.
Alternate translation: [and he also had] or [Kenan also had] or [He was also the father of]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- 840 years
- 840 years

UST

- {another} 840 years
- {another} 840 years

Genesis 5:14

ULT:
So all the days of Kenan were 910 years, and he died.

UST:
So Kenan lived a total of 910 years, and {then} he died.

and he died (ULT)

and {then} he died (UST)

Alternate translation: [before he died]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the days of
- 910 years
- 910 years

UST

- So … lived a total of
- 910 years
- 910 years

Genesis 5:15

ULT:
And Mahalalel lived sixty-five years, then he fathered Jared.

UST:
When Mahalalel was sixty-five years old, he had {a son named} Jared.

And Mahalalel lived sixty-five years (ULT)

When Mahalalel was sixty-five years old (UST)

Alternate translation: [After Mahalalel had lived 65 years] or [After Mahalalel was 65 years old]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- sixty-five years
- sixty-five years

UST
- sixty-five years old
- sixty-five years old

Genesis 5:16

ULT:
Then after he fathered Jared, Mahalalel lived 830 years, and he fathered {other} sons and daughters.

UST:
After Jared's birth, Mahalalel lived {another} 830 years. He {also} had {other} sons as well as daughters.

Then after he fathered Jared, Mahalalel lived (ULT)

After Jared's birth, Mahalalel lived (UST)

Alternate translation: [After he had Jared, he lived] or [After Jared was born, Mahalalel lived]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

830 years (ULT)

{another} 830 years (UST)

Alternate translation: [830 more years]

---

and he fathered (ULT)

He {also} had (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he also had] or [He also fathered] or [He was also the father of]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- 830 years
- 830 years

UST

- {another} 830 years
- {another} 830 years

Genesis 5:17

ULT:
So all the days of Mahalalel were 895 years, and he died.

UST:
So Mahalalel lived a total of 895 years, and {then} he died.

and he died (ULT)

and {then} he died (UST)

Alternate translation: [before he died]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the days of
- 895 years
- 895 years

UST

- So … lived a total of
- 895 years
- 895 years

Genesis 5:18

ULT:
And Jared lived 162 years, then he fathered Enoch.

UST:
When Jared was 162 years old, he had {a son named} Enoch.

And Jared lived 162 years (ULT)

When Jared was 162 years old (UST)

Alternate translation: [After Jared had lived 162 years] or [After Jared was 162 years old]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- 162 years
- 162 years
- Enoch

UST
- 162 years old
- 162 years old
- {a son named} Enoch

Genesis 5:19

ULT:
Then after he fathered Enoch, Jared lived 800 years, and he fathered {other} sons and daughters.

UST:
After Enoch's birth, Jared lived {another} 800 years. He {also} had {other} sons as well as daughters.

Then after he fathered Enoch, Jared lived (ULT)

After Enoch's birth, Jared lived (UST)

Alternate translation: [After Jared had Enoch, he lived] or [After Enoch was born, Jared lived]

---

800 years (ULT)

{another} 800 years (UST)

Alternate translation: [800 more years]

---

and he fathered (ULT)

He {also} had (UST)

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to Jared at this point in the paragraph.
Alternate translation: [and he also had] or [Jared also had] or [He was also the father of]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Enoch

- 800 years

UST

- Enoch’s birth
- {another} 800 years

Genesis 5:20

ULT:
So all the days of Jared were 962 years, and he died.

UST:
So Jared lived a total of 962 years, and {then} he died.

and he died (ULT)

and {then} he died (UST)

Alternate translation: [before he died]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the days of
- 962 years
- 962 years

UST
- So … lived a total of
- 962 years
- 962 years

Genesis 5:21

ULT:
And Enoch lived sixty-five years, then he fathered Methuselah.

UST:
When Enoch was sixty-five years old, he had {a son named} Methuselah.

And Enoch lived sixty-five years (ULT)

When Enoch was sixty-five years old (UST)

Consider again how you translated double-digit numbers in verses 9, 12, 15, 21. Alternate translation: [After Enoch had lived 65 years] or [After Enoch was 65 years old]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Enoch
- sixty-five years

UST
- Enoch
- sixty-five years old

Genesis 5:22

ULT:
Then after he fathered Methuselah, Enoch walked with God 300 years, and he fathered {other} sons and daughters.

UST:
After Methuselah's birth, Enoch lived {in a close relationship} with God for {another} 300 years. He {also} had {other} sons as well as daughters.

after he fathered Methuselah (ULT)

After Methuselah's birth (UST)

Alternate translation: [After he had Methuselah] or [After Methuselah was born]

Then … Enoch walked with God (ULT)

Enoch lived {in a close relationship} with God (UST)

The phrase **walked with** is used here as a common expression that means "lived in a close relationship with." Consider whether or not you have a similar expression in your language.
Alternate translation: [Enoch lived faithfully with God] or [Enoch lived in a faithful relationship with God]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

300 years (ULT)

for {another} 300 years (UST)

Alternate translation: [for 300 more years]

---

and he fathered (ULT)

He {also} had (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he also had] or [Enoch also had] or [He was also the father of]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Enoch
- God
- 300 years

UST

- Enoch
- God
- for {another} 300 years

Genesis 5:23

ULT:
So all the days of Enoch were 365 years.

UST:
So Enoch lived a total of 365 years.

So all the days of Enoch were 365 years (ULT)

So Enoch lived a total of 365 years (UST)

Make sure that the name **Enoch** is spelled consistently in your translation of verses 18–19, 21–24. Alternate translation: [So he lived a total of 365 years] or [All together he lived 365 years]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the days of
- Enoch
- 365 years
- 365 years

UST
- So … lived a total of
- Enoch
- 365 years
- 365 years

Genesis 5:24

ULT:
And Enoch walked with God, and {then} he was not {there}, because God took him away.

UST:
Then while he was {still} living {in a close relationship} with God, {suddenly} he was no longer {on earth}, because God had taken him away {to be with him}.

And Enoch walked with God (ULT)

Then while he was {still} living {in a close relationship} with God (UST)

Alternate translation: [All his life Enoch lived in a faithful relationship with God]

---

and {then} he was not {there} (ULT)

suddenly} he was no longer {on earth} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and suddenly he was not on earth anymore] or [and he suddenly disappeared from earth]

---

because God took him away (ULT)

because God had taken him away {to be with him} (UST)

It may be more natural to put this clause before the previous clause and say, "… God took him away to be with him, so he was suddenly no longer on earth."

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Enoch
- God
- God

UST

- Then while he was {still} living {in a close relationship}
- God
- God

Genesis 5:25

ULT:
And Methuselah lived 187 years, then he fathered Lamech.

UST:
When Methuselah was 187 years old, he had {a son named} Lamech.

And Methuselah lived 187 years (ULT)

When Methuselah was 187 years old (UST)

Consider again how you translated verses in this chapter that are similar in structure to this verse; see verses 6, 9, 12, 15, 18, 21, 25, and part of verses 3 and 28, and see the note about this at verse 6. Alternate translation: [After Methuselah had lived 187 years] or [After Methuselah was 187 years old]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- 187 years
- 187 years
- Lamech

UST
- 187 years old
- 187 years old
- {a son named} Lamech

Genesis 5:26

ULT:
Then after he fathered Lamech, Methuselah lived 782 years, and he fathered {other} sons and daughters.

UST:
After Lamech's birth, Methuselah lived {another} 782 years. He {also} had {other} sons as well as daughters.

Then after he fathered Lamech, Methuselah lived (ULT)

After Lamech's birth, Methuselah lived (UST)

Alternate translation: [After he had Lamech, he lived] or [After Lamech was born, Methuselah lived]

---

782 years (ULT)

{another} 782 years (UST)

Alternate translation: [782 more years]

---

and he fathered (ULT)

He {also} had (UST)

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to Methuselah at this point in the paragraph. Alternate translation: [and he also had] or [He also fathered] or [He was also the father of]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Lamech
- 782 years
- 782 years

UST

- Lamech’s birth
- {another} 782 years
- {another} 782 years

Genesis 5:27

ULT:
So all the days of Methuselah were 969 years, and he died.

UST:
So Methuselah lived a total of 969 years, and {then} he died.

and he died (ULT)

and {then} he died (UST)

Alternate translation, without the preceding comma: [before he died]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the days of
- 969 years
- 969 years

UST

- So … lived a total of
- 969 years
- 969 years

Genesis 5:28

ULT:
And Lamech lived 182 years, then he fathered a son,

UST:
When Lamech was 182 years old, he had a son,

And Lamech lived 182 years (ULT)

When Lamech was 182 years old (UST)

Alternate translation: [After Lamech had lived 182 years] or [After Lamech was 182 years old]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Lamech
- 182 years
- 182 years

UST
- Lamech
- 182 years old
- 182 years old

Genesis 5:29

ULT:
and he called his name Noah, saying, "This {one} will comfort us from our labors and from the toil of our hands because of the ground which Yahweh has cursed."

UST:
and he named him Noah {which means "rest,"} {because} he said, "This {son} will give us rest from the difficult work that we have to do because Yahweh has cursed the ground."

and he called his name (ULT)

and he named him (UST)

Alternate translation: [whom he named]

Support Reference: Idiom

Noah (ULT)

Noah {which means "rest … } (UST)

If you include the meaning of Noah's name in your translation or in a footnote, make sure it matches what Lamech says about him in the following quote so that it is clear why he was given that name.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

saying (ULT)

{because} he said (UST)

What Lamech says next is the reason why he named his son Noah. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: [He named him that because he had said about him]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

This {one} will comfort us (ULT)

This {son} will give us rest (UST)

Alternate translation: [This son will relieve us] or [This son will give us relief]

---

from our labors and from the toil of our hands (ULT)

from the difficult work that we have to do (UST)

These two phrases have similar meanings and emphasize how difficult the work was. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [from the difficult labor and work we have to do with our hands] or [from the agonizing work that we have to do]

Support Reference: Doublet

---

because of the ground which Yahweh has cursed (ULT)

because Yahweh has cursed the ground (UST)

Alternate translation: [as we farm the ground that Yahweh has cursed]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and he called
- Noah
- has cursed
- Yahweh

UST

- and he named him
- Noah {which means “rest … }
- has cursed
- Yahweh

Genesis 5:30

ULT:
Then after he fathered Noah, Lamech lived 595 years, and he fathered {other} sons and daughters.

UST:
After Noah's birth, Lamech lived {another} 595 years. He {also} had {other} sons as well as daughters.

Then after he fathered Noah, Lamech lived (ULT)

After Noah's birth, Lamech lived (UST)

Consider again how you translated verses in this chapter that are similar in structure to this verse; see verses 7, 10, 13, 16, 19, 26, 30, and part of verses 4 and 22. Alternate translation: [After he fathered Noah, he lived] or [After Noah was born, Lamech lived]

---

595 years (ULT)

{another} 595 years (UST)

Alternate translation: [595 more years]

---

and he fathered (ULT)

He {also} had (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he also had] or [Lamech also had] or [He was also the father of]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Lamech

- Noah
- 595 years
- 595 years

UST

- Lamech
- Noah’s birth
- {another} 595 years
- {another} 595 years

Genesis 5:31

ULT:
So all the days of Lamech were 777 years, and he died.

UST:
So Lamech lived a total of 777 years, {and} then he died.

and he died (ULT)

{and} then he died (UST)

Alternate translation: [before he died]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the days of
- Lamech
- 777 years
- 777 years

UST

- So … lived a total of
- Lamech
- 777 years
- 777 years

Genesis 5:32

ULT:
And Noah was a son of 500 years, then Noah fathered Shem, Ham, and Japheth.

UST:
After Noah was 500 years old, he had {sons whose names were} Shem, Ham, and Japheth.

And Noah was a son of 500 years (ULT)

After Noah was 500 years old (UST)

Here, **a son of 500 years** is a common expression that means "was 500 years old." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And Noah saw his 500th year] or [Noah turned 500 years old]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

then Noah fathered Shem, Ham, and Japheth (ULT)

he had {sons whose names were} Shem, Ham, and Japheth (UST)

Noah's sons were not triplets, but were born in different years after Noah was 500 years old. The way you translate this verse should allow for that meaning.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

then Noah fathered (ULT)

he had (UST)

Consider again how you translated **fathered** in this chapter; see verses 4, 6–7, 9–10, 12–13, 15–16, 18–19, 25–26, 28, 30, 32. Alternate translation: [he fathered]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Noah
- years
- Noah
- Shem
- Ham
- Japheth

UST

- Noah
- 500 years old
- נֹ֖חַ (ORIG QUOTE)
- {sons whose names were} Shem
- Ham
- Japheth

Genesis 6

Genesis 6:1

ULT:
And it happened when mankind began to multiply on the surface of the earth and daughters were born to them,

UST:
Now it happened that people began to multiply {in number} all over the earth, and they were having daughters.

And it happened (ULT)

Now it happened (UST)

The author is using **And it happened** to describe something that was ongoing. This provides the background for other events he will describe that began to happen during this time. Connect this clause to the story in a way that makes it clear in your language that this clause is describing something that was ongoing in the background.

The events in Genesis 6:1–2 started happening long before the events in 5:32, so the way your translation begins this verse should allow for that meaning and not begin with a sequence word like "Then."

Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

---

when (ULT)

that (UST)

Alternate translation: [that as]

Support Reference: Background Information

---

mankind (ULT)

people (UST)

See how you translated **mankind** in Genesis 5:1–2. Alternate translation: [human beings]

---

began to multiply (ULT)

began to multiply {in number} (UST)

Alternate translation: [began to increase in number] or [began to be more numerous]

---

on the surface of the earth (ULT)

all over the earth (UST)

Alternate translation: [throughout the world]

---

and daughters were born to them (ULT)

and they were having daughters (UST)

Alternate translation: [and they were having many daughters]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- mankind
- to multiply
- were born

UST
- people

- to multiply {in number}
- they were having

Genesis 6:2

ULT:
then the sons of God saw the daughters of mankind, that they {were} beautiful, so they took wives for themselves from any {of them} that they chose.

UST:
{When those girls grew up,} the sons of God saw that they {were} beautiful, so they chose any {of them} that they wanted and married them.

then the sons of God saw (ULT)

{When those girls grew up,} the sons of God saw (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then those girls grew up, and the sons of God saw]

---

then … saw the daughters of mankind, that they {were} beautiful (ULT)

When those girls grew up … saw that they {were} beautiful (UST)

Alternate translation: [saw that the daughters of human beings were beautiful] or [saw that those young women were beautiful] or [saw that they were very beautiful]

---

so they took wives for themselves from any {of them} that they chose (ULT)

so they chose any {of them} that they wanted and married them (UST)

Alternate translation: [so they married any of them that they wanted to marry]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- mankind
- the sons of
- God

- {were} beautiful

UST

- that they {were} beautiful
- the sons of
- God
- that they {were} beautiful

Genesis 6:3

ULT:
Then Yahweh said, "My Spirit will not strive with mankind forever, because they {are} indeed flesh. Therefore their days will be 120 years."

UST:
Then Yahweh said {to himself}, "My Spirit will not put up with human beings forever, because they {are} very corrupt. I will give them 120 years {to repent}."

Then Yahweh said (ULT)

Then Yahweh said {to himself} (UST)

The implication is that Yahweh is speaking to himself. Only make implied information explicit in your translation if it is necessary to prevent wrong meaning or if your language's grammar requires it so that your translation is easier to read and understand. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [So Yahweh said to himself]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

My Spirit (ULT)

My Spirit (UST)

The words **My Spirit** could mean: (1) God is speaking of his spirit or saying "I," which is a way of God referring to himself (Genesis 1:2 is similar) (2) that God is referring to his breath that gives life (as in Genesis 2:71). If the text is not translated literally, the literal text should be put in a footnote.

---

will not strive with mankind forever (ULT)

will not put up with human beings forever (UST)

The phrase **will not strive with mankind forever** could mean: (1) that God will not contend with human beings forever. Alternate translation: [will not put up with human beings forever] or (2) that God will not remain with human beings forever. Alternate translation: [will not dwell among humans forever] The interpretation that is not used in your translation could be put in a footnote.

---

because they {are} indeed flesh (ULT)

because they {are} very corrupt (UST)

The word **flesh** is used here as a common expression that means human beings are "mortal" (that is, their bodies will die) and that they are "sinful." The two meanings are interrelated since it is because of sin that their bodies die. In this context, the focus is on their corrupt behavior, which is the reason God will send a flood. Alternate translation: [because they are very sinful] or [because they are only sinful mortals]

Support Reference: Idiom

Therefore their days will be 120 years (ULT)

I will give them 120 years {to repent} (UST)

This sentence could mean: (1) that mankind will have 120 years to repent. Alternate translation: [I will give them 120 years to repent]; (2) that 120 years will be the maximum lifespan. Alternate translation: [From now on, they will have no longer than 120 years.] The first interpretation seems to best fit the context here of God announcing his plan to judge mankind for their sin (verse 7). This would mean that Noah was 480 years old when God said this (about 20 years before he started having sons; Genesis 5:32), since the flood came when he was 600 years old (Genesis 7:6); you could put some of that information in a footnote. The

second interpretation does not fit with the fact that after God said this, many people lived much longer than 120 years, so it does not seem likely that length of life was his meaning here.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- with mankind
- Yahweh
- My Spirit
- forever
- their days
- years

UST

- with human beings
- Yahweh
- My Spirit
- forever
- I will give them
- years {to repent}

Genesis 6:4

ULT:
The Nephilim were on the earth in those days and also after that, when the sons of God went to the daughters of mankind, and they bore children for them. They {were} the mighty {ones} who {were} from long ago, the men of renown.

UST:
{People called} the Nephilim lived on the earth during that time and also later on. {That happened} when the sons of God had relations with the daughters of human beings, and those women gave birth to children for them. Their children were {the Nephilim, who were} the famous mighty men who lived long ago.

The Nephilim (ULT)

{People called} the Nephilim (UST)

Most translations transliterate (borrow or copy) the Hebrew word **Nephilim** here, treating it as a name. The word means "fallen ones" and probably refers to their fallen (sinful) spiritual state. The Nephilim were the descendants of the sons of God and the daughters of mankind. The only other time in the Bible that the Nephilim are mentioned is centuries later in Numbers 13:32–33, where they are identified as evil giants. Based on that, some translations translate "the Nephilim" as "giants" here in Genesis 6:4. Alternate translation: [Giants called the Nephilim] or [Giants]

Support Reference: Copy or Borrow Words

---

in those days and also after that (ULT)

during that time and also later on (UST)

It may be more natural to put this time phrase first in verse 4 and say, "During that time there were Nephilim living on the earth, when …"

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

when (ULT)

{That happened} when (UST)

Alternate translation: [That was when]

---

the sons of God (ULT)

the sons of God (UST)

Be consistent here with how you translated this phrase in verse 6:2, and see the important note about that there. Alternate translation: [angels] or [supernatural beings]

---

went to (ULT)

had relations with (UST)

Translate this common expression in a way that is polite and will not shame or embarrass people when this verse is read aloud in public. See how you translated a similar expression ("knew") in Genesis 4:1, 4:17 and 4:25. Alternate translation: [slept with] or [had sexual relations with]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

the daughters of mankind (ULT)

the daughters of human beings (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 6:2. Alternate translation: [human women]

They {were} (ULT)

Their children were {the Nephilim, who were} (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation who is being referred to here. Alternate translation: [Those children grew up and were the Nephilim, who were]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

the mighty {ones} (ULT)

the … mighty men (UST)

Alternate translation: [the powerful men] or [heroes]

---

who {were} from long ago (ULT)

who lived long ago (UST)

Alternate translation: [who lived a long time ago] or [who lived many years ago]

---

the men of renown (ULT)

famous (UST)

For some languages it may be more natural to put this phrase earlier in this sentence and say, “They were the mighty men of renown who were from long ago.” or “They were the famous mighty men who lived a long time ago.” Alternate translation: [who were famous men]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- mankind
- on the earth
- in … days
- the sons of
- God
- and they bore children
- the mighty {ones}

UST

- human beings
- on the earth
- during … time
- the sons of
- God
- and those women gave birth to children
- the … mighty men

Genesis 6:5

ULT:
And Yahweh saw that the wickedness of mankind {was} great on the earth, and that every inclination of the thoughts of their hearts {was} only evil all day long.

UST:
Yahweh saw that the people on the earth had become very evil, and that everything they thought about and desired {was} completely evil all the time.

And Yahweh saw (ULT)

Yahweh saw (UST)

The verb **saw** is used here as a common expression. Consider whether your language has a similar common expression that would fit well here. Alternate translation: [Yahweh knew] or [Yahweh was aware]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and that every inclination of the thoughts of their hearts (ULT)

and that everything they thought about and desired (UST)

In Hebrew culture the heart is considered the center of thoughts and desires. Consider whether your language has a similar common expression. Alternate translation: [and that every desire they had in their minds] or [and that everything they thought about and wanted]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

all day long (ULT)

all the time (UST)

Alternate translation: [constantly]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- mankind
- Yahweh
- the wickedness of
- on the earth
- evil
- day long

UST

- the people
- Yahweh
- had become … evil
- on the earth
- was … evil
- the time

Genesis 6:6

ULT:
So Yahweh was sorry that he had made mankind on the earth, and he was grieved in his heart.

UST:
As a result, he regretted that he had made them {to live} on the earth, and he felt very sad.

that he had made mankind (ULT)

that he had made them (UST)

See how you translated **mankind** in verses 6:1. 3, and 5, and consider whether or not it is best to use a pronoun ("them") here in your language. Alternate translation: [that he had created them] or [that he had created human beings]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

and he was grieved in his heart (ULT)

and he felt very sad (UST)

Consider whether your language has a similar common expression that would fit well here. Alternate translation: [and his heart was filled with pain] or [and he was very sad]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- mankind
- Yahweh
- on the earth

UST

- them
- As a result, he regretted

- {to live} on the earth

Genesis 6:7

ULT:
Then Yahweh said, "I will wipe away mankind whom I created off the surface of the ground, both mankind and animals, and crawling creatures and the birds of the sky, because I am sorry that I made them."

UST:
So he said {to himself}, "I will completely destroy from the earth {all} the people whom I created. {In fact}, {I will destroy} {not only} {all} the people, but also {all} the animals, including the creatures that crawl {on the ground} and the birds {that fly} in the sky, because I regret that I {ever} made them."

Then Yahweh said (ULT)

So he said {to himself} (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 3. Also make sure that the way you begin verse 7 fits well with the way you begin verse 6. The implication is that Yahweh is speaking to himself. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [Then he said to himself]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

I will wipe away (ULT)

I will completely destroy (UST)

Consider whether your language has a similar common expression that would fit well here. Alternate translation: [I will wash away] or [I will blot out]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

mankind whom I created off the surface of the ground (ULT)

from the earth {all} the people whom I created (UST)

Alternate translation: [all the human beings whom I created, from the surface of the earth]

---

both mankind and animals (ULT)

{In fact}, {I will destroy} {not only} {all} the people, but also {all} the animals (UST)

Alternate translation: [In fact, I will destroy not just all the people, but also all the animals]

---

and crawling creatures (ULT)

including the creatures that crawl {on the ground} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and the creatures that move on the ground]

---

and the birds of the sky (ULT)

and the birds {that fly} in the sky (UST)

It might seem that the expression **birds of the sky** contains extra information that would be unnatural to express in your language. If so, you can shorten it. Alternate translation: [and all the birds]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

---

because I am sorry (ULT)

because I regret (UST)

See how you translated “was sorry” or “regretted” in verse 6:6. Alternate translation: [because I am sad]

---

that I made them (ULT)

that I {ever} made them (UST)

Alternate translation: [that I ever created them]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- both mankind
- mankind
- Yahweh
- I will wipe away
- I created
- animals
- the sky

UST

- {In fact}, {I will destroy} {not only} {all} the people
- {all} the people
- יְהוָֹה (ORIG QUOTE)
- I will completely destroy
- I created
- {all} the animals
- the sky

Genesis 6:8

ULT:
But Noah found favor in the eyes of Yahweh.

UST:
But Yahweh was pleased with Noah.

But Noah found favor in the eyes of Yahweh (ULT)

But Yahweh was pleased with Noah (UST)

The common expression **found favor** means "pleased someone." And the common expression **in the eyes of** refers to someone's opinion about something or someone. Consider whether your language has similar expressions that work well here or whether it is better to translate this sentence without a common expression. Alternate translation: [But Noah pleased God] or [However, Yahweh was pleased with Noah]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- But Noah
- favor
- Yahweh

UST
- But Yahweh was pleased with Noah
- But Yahweh was pleased with Noah
- But Yahweh was pleased with Noah

Genesis 6:9

ULT:
These {are} the generations of Noah: He {was} a righteous man. He was without blemish in his generation. Noah walked with God.

UST:
Here is {more of} the history about Noah and his descendants: Noah {was} a man who did what was right. Out of all the people living at that time, he was the only one {whom God considered} blameless, {and} he lived in a close relationship with God.

These {are} the generations of Noah (ULT)

Here is {more of} the history about Noah and his descendants (UST)

Some of Noah's history has already been given in Genesis 5:29, 32, and 6:8. What follows tells more about him. Alternate translation: [This is more of the record of Noah and his family:] or [What follows tells more about Noah and his family:]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

He {was} (ULT)

Noah {was} (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to use a noun or a pronoun here to refer to Noah.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

a righteous man (ULT)

a man who did what was right (UST)

Alternate translation: [a good man]

He was without blemish in his generation (ULT)

Out of all the people living at that time, he was the only one {whom God considered} blameless (UST)

This sentence could mean: (1) Among his contemporaries, he alone was faultless in God's eyes. Alternate translation: [Of all the people living at that time, Noah was the only one whom God considered blameless] or (2) He had a spotless reputation among his contemporaries. The phrase **without blemish** is often used in the Bible to describe animals that have no defects. Here it is used as a common expression meaning that Noah was blameless or faultless in an ethical or moral sense or that he had good integrity, but it does not mean that he was totally sinless. Consider whether your language has a similar common expression that would work well here.

Support Reference: Idiom

Noah walked with God (ULT)

{and} he lived in a close relationship with God (UST)

See how you translated this common expression in 5:22, 24. Alternate translation: [and he walked closely with God] or [and he lived in a faithful relationship with God]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the generations of
- Noah
- He {was}
- righteous
- without blemish
- in his generation
- God
- Noah

UST

- {more of} the history about Noah and his descendants
- {more of} the history about Noah and his descendants

- Noah {was}
- who did what was right
- he was the only one {whom God considered} blameless
- Out of all the people living at that time
- God
- he lived in a close relationship

Genesis 6:10

ULT:
And Noah fathered three sons: Shem, Ham, and Japheth.

UST:
Eventually Noah had {his} three sons, {whose names were} Shem, Ham, and Japheth.

And Noah fathered (ULT)

Eventually Noah had (UST)

The fact that Noah fathered these three sons was already mentioned in Genesis 5:32. Make sure that the way you begin this verse in your translation does not sound like he fathered these sons a second time. Alternate translation: [Eventually he had] or [And as mentioned before, he had]

---

three sons: Shem, Ham, and Japheth (ULT)

{his} three sons, {whose names were} Shem, Ham, and Japheth (UST)

Alternate translation: [three sons, namely Shem, Ham, and Japheth]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Noah
- Shem
- Ham
- Japheth

UST
- Noah
- Shem
- Ham
- Japheth

Genesis 6:11

ULT:
Now the earth was corrupt before God, and the earth was filled {with} violence.

UST:
Now {the people on} the earth had become wicked according to God's standards, and all over the earth they were doing violent things.

Now the earth was corrupt (ULT)

Now {the people on} the earth had become wicked (UST)

The phrase **the earth** is often used in the Bible to refer to all the people on the earth. Consider whether your language can do the same thing, or whether it is necessary to make that implied information explicit. Alternate translation: [Now the people of the earth had become corrupt]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

and the earth was filled {with} violence (ULT)

and all over the earth they were doing violent things (UST)

The author uses two phrases which mean basically the same thing in order to emphasize how evil the people on the earth had become. The two clauses are different enough from each other that, if possible, it is best to keep both of them in your translation. Also be consistent with how you translated **the earth** earlier in this verse. Alternate translation: [and they had filled the earth with their destructive brutality] or [and all over the earth they were forcefully doing harm]

Support Reference: Parallelism

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Now … was corrupt
- the earth
- God

- the earth

UST

- Now … had become wicked
- {the people on} the earth
- according to God’s standards
- and all over the earth they were doing violent things

Genesis 6:12

ULT:
And God saw the earth, and behold, it was corrupted, because all flesh on the earth had corrupted its way.

UST:
God saw how wicked {everyone on} the earth had become, because all the people on the earth were {continually} behaving in evil ways.

And God saw (ULT)

God saw (UST)

Consider whether or not it is best in your language to begin this sentence with a conjunction.

---

the earth, and behold, it was corrupted (ULT)

how wicked {everyone on} the earth had become (UST)

See how you translated "corrupt" and **the earth** in verse 6:11. Alternate translation: [that everyone on the earth was very wicked] or [how dishonest everyone on the earth had become]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

because all flesh on the earth (ULT)

because all the people on the earth (UST)

The phrase **all flesh** refers here to all people and probably implies that people are mortal (verse 3). Alternate translation: [because everyone living on earth]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

---

had corrupted its way (ULT)

were {continually} behaving in evil ways (UST)

Alternate translation: [were living wicked lives] or [were continually doing wicked things]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- the earth
- it was corrupted
- had corrupted
- the earth

UST

- God
- how wicked {everyone on} the earth had become
- how wicked {everyone on} the earth had become
- were {continually} behaving in evil
- the earth

Genesis 6:13

ULT:
So God said to Noah, "The end of all flesh has come before me, because the earth is filled {with} violence because of them. So behold, I am destroying them with the earth.

UST:
So he said to Noah, "I am going to destroy all people, because all over the earth they are doing violent things. In fact, I am going to destroy them and {everything else on} the earth {too}.

So God said to Noah (ULT)

So he said to Noah (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then God said to Noah]

The end of all flesh has come before me (ULT)

I am going to destroy all people (UST)

Be consistent here with how you translated **flesh** in verse 12. Alternate translation: [I have decided to put an end to all human beings] or [I am going to destroy all mortals]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

---

because the earth is filled {with} violence because of them (ULT)

because all over the earth they are doing violent things (UST)

See how you translated **violence** in verse 6:11. Alternate translation: [because they have filled the earth with their brutality] or [because all over the earth they are doing harmful things]

So behold, I (ULT)

In fact, I (UST)

This phrase draws extra attention to what God says next. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: [Now listen]

Support Reference: Metaphor

---

am destroying them (ULT)

am going to destroy them (UST)

Alternate translation: [I plan to destroy them] or [I will destroy them]

---

with the earth (ULT)

and {everything else on} the earth {too} (UST)

This phrase includes everything on the earth, not just the people. Alternate translation: [as well as everything else on the earth]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- to Noah
- the earth
- am destroying them
- the earth

UST

- אֱלֹהִים (ORIG QUOTE)
- to Noah
- all over the earth they are doing violent things
- am going to destroy them

- and {everything else on} the earth {too}

Genesis 6:14

ULT:
Make an ark for yourself out of gopher wood. Make the ark {with} rooms, and cover it inside and outside with a covering.

UST:
{Therefore} {you must} build a {very} large boat for yourself {and your family} out of the best wood {for building boats}. Build rooms inside the boat, and seal it inside and outside with tar {to keep water out}.

Make (ULT)

{Therefore} {you must} build (UST)

Alternate translation: [Consequently, you must make]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

---

an ark (ULT)

a {very} large boat (UST)

The term ark is a Latin word that many translations use for the name of the structure that Noah built. The word refers to a chest or box that is closed on all sides, including the top. In this case, the ark was a very large boat that people and many animals lived in for a year. It had no motor, no oars, no sail, and no rudder. If Noah's boat is already well-known as the ark in your language area, you may choose to borrow the word "ark" as the name of this boat. Decide what is best for your translation. Alternate translation: [a very large houseboat]

Support Reference: Copy or Borrow Words

---

out of gopher wood (ULT)

out of the best wood {for building boats} (UST)

It is not certain what kind of wood this was, so many translations transliterate (copy or borrow) the Hebrew word **gopher**. Some Bible scholars think it was cypress wood. Alternate translation: [from cypress wood, which is good for building boats]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

Make the ark {with} rooms (ULT)

Build rooms inside the boat (UST)

Alternate translation: [Build the ark with stalls inside] or [Make rooms inside the ark]

---

and cover it inside and outside (ULT)

and seal it inside and outside … to keep water out (UST)

Alternate translation: [and completely coat it inside and outside]

---

with a covering (ULT)

with tar (UST)

The Hebrew word **covering** is general and does not specify what kind of waterproofing material is being used. However, many translations are more specific than that here and refer to "pitch" or "tar" or some other material made from tree resin or sap that can seal a boat well and keep it from leaking. Alternate translation: [with pitch to keep water out] or [with pitch to keep the boat from leaking]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- an ark
- the ark
- inside

UST

- a {very} large boat
- inside the boat
- inside

Genesis 6:15

ULT:
And this {is} how you must make it: the length of the ark {must be} 300 cubits, its width fifty cubits, and its height thirty cubits.

UST:
You must make the boat like this: It {must be} 140 meters long, twenty-three meters wide, and fourteen meters high.

And this {is} how you must make it (ULT)

You must make the boat like this (UST)

Alternate translation: [Build the ark with these dimensions] or [You must build the ark like this:]

---

the length of the ark {must be} 300 cubits, its width fifty cubits, and its height thirty cubits (ULT)

It {must be} 140 meters long, twenty-three meters wide, and fourteen meters high (UST)

A cubit was about half a meter (18 inches) long, which was the distance from a man's elbow to the tip of his middle finger. You can: (1) translate cubits into meters or feet, and put the literal text in a footnote; or (2) keep **cubits** in the main text (so that the numbers 300, 50, and 30 are kept) and put what that equals in meters or feet in a footnote. Alternate translation: [It must be 140 meters long, 23 meters wide, and 14 meters high] or [It must be 450 feet long, 75 feet wide, and 45 feet high]

Support Reference: Biblical Distance

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the ark

UST

- It {must be}

Genesis 6:16

ULT:
Make a window for the ark and finish it to within one cubit from the top. And put the door of the ark in its side. Make a lower, a second, and a third {deck}.

UST:
Make a half-meter high opening between the top of the walls of the ark and its roof {all the way around}, {to let light and air in}. Put a door in the side of the boat, and build three levels {on the inside}.

Make a window for the ark and finish it to within one cubit from the top (ULT)

Make a half-meter high opening between the top of the walls of the ark and its roof {all the way around}, {to let light and air in} (UST)

The meaning of the Hebrew text is not completely certain here, but God was probably telling Noah to make a one-cubit high window or opening at the top of the outside walls of the ark, just below the roof, all the way around the ark, to let light and air into the ark. See the note about **cubit** in verse 6:15. Alternate translation: [Build a skylight for the boat by finishing the sides of the ark to within one cubit below the top of the ark] or [Build a half-meter high window between the top of the sides of the ark and its roof all the way around, to let light and air in]

Support Reference: Biblical Distance

And put the door of the ark in its side (ULT)

Put a door in the side of the boat (UST)

Some translations begin this sentence without a conjunction (**And** or "Also"). Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Also put a door in the side of the ark] or [Put a door for the ark in its side]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

Make a lower, a second, and a third {deck} (ULT)

and build three levels {on the inside} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Build a lower deck, a middle deck, and an upper deck on the inside] or [and build a lower, middle, and upper story on the inside] or [and make three complete floors on the inside]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- for the ark
- the ark

UST

- a half-meter high … between the top of the walls of the ark and its roof {all the way around}, {to let light and air in}
- in the side of the boat

Genesis 6:17

ULT:
And I, behold, I am bringing floodwaters on the earth to destroy all flesh that {has} the breath of life in it from under the heavens. Everything that {is} on the earth will expire!

UST:
Listen {carefully} to me: I am going to bring a flood over the {whole} earth, which will destroy all the creatures under the sky that breathe {air}. {As a result,} every {living} thing that {is} on land will die!

And I, behold, I (ULT)

Listen {carefully} to me: I (UST)

In the Hebrew text, the pronoun **I** is emphatic, both by its form and by its position at the beginning of the sentence. Consider what is the best way to communicate that emphasis in your language. Alternate translation: [Behold, I myself]

Support Reference: Reflexive Pronouns

---

am bringing floodwaters on the earth (ULT)

am going to bring a flood over the {whole} earth (UST)

Alternate translation: [am going to send an excessive water on the whole earth] or [am going to flood the entire earth with water]

---

to destroy (ULT)

which will destroy (UST)

See how you translated **destroy** in verse 6:13. Alternate translation: [in order to destroy]

---

all flesh (ULT)

all the creatures (UST)

This phrase is general here and includes people and animals, so you may need to translate the phrase differently here from what you did earlier in verses 12–13 (where the focus seems to be on people). Alternate translation: [all the beings] or [every creature]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

---

that {has} the breath of life in it (ULT)

that breathe {air} (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 1:30. Alternate translation: [that breathes air]

---

from under the heavens (ULT)

under the sky (UST)

For some languages it may be clearer to put this phrase earlier in this sentence and say, “to destroy every living thing under the heavens that has the breath of life in it.” Alternate translation: [from under the sky]

Support Reference: Information Structure

Everything that {is} on the earth (ULT)

{As a result,} every {living} thing that {is} on land (UST)

Alternate translation: [So, every living being that lives on land]

---

will expire (ULT)

will die (UST)

The verb **expire** (which could also be translated as “exhale” or “breathe out”) is used here as a common expression that means “die.” Consider whether your language has a similar or different expressions that would work well here. Alternate translation: [will breathe out its last breath!] or [will perish!]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- floodwaters
- the earth
- to destroy
- the breath of
- the heavens
- {is} on the earth

UST

- a flood
- the {whole} earth
- which will destroy
- breathe {air}
- the sky
- {is} on land

Genesis 6:18

ULT:
But I will establish my covenant with you, so you must go into the ark, you and your sons and your wife and the wives of your sons with you.

UST:
But I will make a {special} agreement between me and you, so you must get on board the boat, and {take} your wife, your sons, and your sons' wives with you.

But I will establish (ULT)

But I will make (UST)

The word **establish** means to deliberately and formally put something into effect. Alternate translation: [However, I will make] or [However, I will set up]

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

---

so you must go into the ark (ULT)

so you must get on board the boat (UST)

Alternate translation: [so you must enter the ark]

---

you and your sons and your wife and the wives of your sons with you (ULT)

and {take} your wife, your sons, and your sons' wives with you (UST)

Alternate translation: [and take with you your wife, your sons, and their wives]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- my covenant

- the ark

UST

- a {special} agreement between me and you
- the boat

Genesis 6:19

ULT:
And from every living {creature}, from all flesh, you must bring two from each {kind} into the ark to keep alive with you. They must be male and female.

UST:
You must also take into the boat two of every {kind of} animal, so that they stay alive with you. Each pair must include {one} male and {one} female.

And from every living {creature}, from all flesh, you must bring two from each {kind} into the ark (ULT)

You must also take into the boat two of every {kind of} animal (UST)

Here, **living creature** refers to any kind of animal that lives and breathes. Alternate translation: [Also, from every kind of thing that lives, yes, from every kind of animal, you must take pairs of each kind into the ark] or [You must also bring into the ark pairs of every kind of living thing, that is, every kind of animal]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

And from every living {creature}, from all flesh (ULT)

also … of every {kind of} animal (UST)

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. Hebrew poetry was based on this kind of repetition, and it would be good to show this to your readers by including both phrases in your translation rather than combining them. It may be clearer in your language to connect the phrases with a word other than **and** in order to show that the second phrase is repeating the first one, not saying something additional. Alternate translation: [Also, from every kind of thing that lives, yes, from every kind of animal]

Support Reference: Parallelism

---

to keep alive with you (ULT)

so that they stay alive with you (UST)

Alternate translation: [in order to keep them alive with you]

They must be male and female (ULT)

Each pair must include {one} male and {one} female (UST)

Alternate translation: [They must be pairs with one male and one female each] or [Make sure that each pair has one male and one female]

Genesis 6:20

ULT:
From the birds according to their kinds, and from the animals according to their kinds, from every moving creature of the ground according to its kind, two from every {kind} will come to you to keep alive.

UST:
Pairs of every kind of bird and every kind of animal, including every kind of creature that moves on the ground, will come to you so that you keep them alive {in the boat}.

From the birds according to their kinds (ULT)

kind of bird (UST)

Alternate translation: [Males and females of every type of bird]

---

and from the animals according to their kinds (ULT)

and every kind of animal (UST)

Alternate translation: [and of every kind of animal]

---

from every moving creature of the ground according to its kind (ULT)

including every kind of creature that moves on the ground (UST)

This phrase emphasizes that the birds and animals mentioned in the first half of this verse lived on land. Alternate translation: [including every kind of creature that lives on the land]

---

two from every {kind} will come to you (ULT)

Pairs of every … will come to you (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to change the order of clauses in this sentence and say, “Two of every kind of bird and every kind of animal, including every kind of creature that moves on the ground, will come to you …” Alternate translation: [two of every kind of animal will come to you] or [two of each kind of animal will come to you]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

to keep alive (ULT)

so that you keep them alive {in the boat} (UST)

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these clauses, since the second clause explains the purpose for the action that the previous clause describes. Alternate translation: [to keep them alive on the ark] or [so that you keep them alive in the ark]

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the animals

UST

- and every kind of animal

Genesis 6:21

ULT:
And you must take with you some of every food that is eaten and store it with you, and it will be food for you and for them.”

UST:
You must {also} gather all the different kinds of food that people and animals eat and store it {on the boat} with you, so that there will be {enough} food for you {and your family} and for {all} the animals.”

And you (ULT)

You (UST)

Although the pronoun **you** is singular in the Hebrew text in verse 21, it could be translated as plural, since God’s instructions apply to Noah and his family, not just Noah. Or you could make his family explicit. Alternate translation: [You and your family]

Support Reference: Forms of ‘You’ — Singular

---

must take with you (ULT)

must {also} gather (UST)

Alternate translation: [must also gather and take]

---

some of every food (ULT)

all the different kinds of food (UST)

Alternate translation: [all kinds of food]

---

that is eaten (ULT)

that people and animals eat (UST)

Alternate translation: [that is eaten by people and animals] or [that you and all the animals will need]

---

and store it with you (ULT)

and store it {on the boat} with you (UST)

Alternate translation: [and put it on the ark with you]

---

and it will be food (ULT)

so that there will be {enough} food (UST)

Alternate translation: [This will be the food supply]

---

for you (ULT)

for you {and your family} (UST)

Consider again how you translated the pronoun **you** in this verse.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

Genesis 6:22

ULT:
And Noah did {that}; according to all that God had commanded him, so he did.

UST:
So, {that is what} Noah did; he did everything exactly as God had commanded him {to do}.

And Noah did {that} (ULT)

So, {that is what} Noah did (UST)

Some translations begin verse 22 without a conjunction. Alternate translation: [Noah did all of that]

---

according to all that God had commanded him, so he did (ULT)

he did everything exactly as God had commanded him {to do} (UST)

Alternate translation: [he did all the things just as God had told him to do]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Noah
- God

UST
- Noah
- God

Genesis 7

Genesis 7:1

ULT:
Then Yahweh said to Noah, “Go into the ark, you and all your household, because I have seen {that} you {are} righteous before me in this generation.

UST:
Then {after they had finished building the boat,} Yahweh commanded Noah, “You and your entire family must go into the boat, because I know {that} you {are} {the only one} among the people living today {who is} living rightly according to my standards.

Then Yahweh said to Noah (ULT)

Then {after they had finished building the boat,} Yahweh commanded Noah (UST)

For some languages it may be necessary to make it explicit that the boat was completed before Yahweh told Noah to enter it. Alternate translation: [Then after they had finished building the ark, Yahweh told Noah] or [After the ark was finished, Yahweh told Noah]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

Go into the ark, you and all your household (ULT)

You and your entire family must go into the boat (UST)

See how you translated “ark” in Genesis 6:14–16. Alternate translation: [Board the ark along with your entire family] or [You and your entire family must get into the ark]

---

because I have seen (ULT)

because I know (UST)

Alternate translation: [because I have found] or [because I see]

{that} you {are} righteous (ULT)

that} you {are} {the only one} … {who is} living rightly (UST)

In the Hebrew text, the pronoun **you** is emphasized to show that Noah was the only one who was righteous. See how you translated **righteous** in Genesis 6:9 Alternate translation: [that you alone are upright] or [that you are the only one who is living the right way]

---

before me (ULT)

according to my standards (UST)

Alternate translation: [in my eyes] or [according to my will]

---

in this generation (ULT)

among the people living today (UST)

For some languages it may be more natural to put this phrase earlier in this verse, after "because." Alternate translation: [among the people living today]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Yahweh
- to Noah
- your household
- the ark
- {are} righteous
- in … generation

UST

- Yahweh
- Noah
- your … family
- the boat
- {who is} living rightly
- among the people living today

Genesis 7:2

ULT:
From every clean animal take with you seven pairs, a male and its female, and from {every} animal that {is} not clean {take} two, a male and its female,

UST:
Take with you seven male and female pairs of every {kind of} pure animal, and {one} male and female pair of {every kind of} impure animal.

From every clean animal (ULT)

of every {kind of} pure animal (UST)

Alternate translation: [From every kind of animal that is acceptable to sacrifice]

---

take with you (ULT)

Take with you (UST)

The pronoun **you** is singular in the Hebrew text, but could be translated as a plural to include Noah's family. Alternate translation: [bring with you]

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

---

seven pairs, a male and its female (ULT)

seven male and female pairs (UST)

See how you translated "male and female" in Genesis 6:19.

---

and from {every} animal that {is} not clean (ULT)

and … {every kind of} impure animal (UST)

Alternate translation: [and from every kind of impure animal] or [and from every kind of animal that is not acceptable to sacrifice]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- animal
- animal

UST

- animal
- animal

Genesis 7:3

ULT:
also from {every} bird of the sky {take} seven pairs, male and female, to keep {their} offspring alive on the surface of the whole earth,

UST:
Also {take} seven male and female pairs of {every kind of} bird {that flies} in the sky, so that {later} their offspring will live all over the earth.

from {every} bird of the sky (ULT)

of {every kind of} bird {that flies} in the sky (UST)

Alternate translation: [from every type of bird that flies in the sky] or [from every type of bird]

{take} seven pairs, male and female (ULT)

{take} seven male and female pairs (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 2. Also, for some languages it may be better to put this phrase earlier in the sentence, as in the UST.

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

to keep {their} offspring alive (ULT)

so that {later} their offspring will live (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that later they will have offspring that will live]

---

on the surface of the whole earth (ULT)

all over the earth (UST)

Alternate translation: [and spread all over the earth] or [to repopulate the whole earth]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the sky
- {their} offspring
- the … earth

UST

- the sky
- their offspring
- the earth

Genesis 7:4

ULT:
because in seven more days I will cause it to rain on the earth {for} forty days and forty nights, and I will wipe every living thing that I have made off the surface of the ground."

UST:
{You must do that,} because seven days from today I will make it rain {continuously} {all} over the earth {for} forty days and nights. In that way, I will completely destroy from the earth every living creature that I have made."

because (ULT)

{You must do that,} because (UST)

The word translated as **because** indicates that what follows is a reason for what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a reason for what came before. Alternate translation: [The reason you must do so is that]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

---

in seven more days (ULT)

seven days from today (UST)

The phrase **seven more days** could be translated as "another week" here and in verse 11. However, it is probably best to keep the number seven in the text in both places, especially since the number seven often signifies perfection or completion in the Bible, perhaps also here. Alternate translation: [seven days from now]

Support Reference: Numbers

I will cause it to rain (ULT)

I will make it rain {continuously} (UST)

Alternate translation: [I will send rain]

---

on the earth (ULT)

{all} over the earth (UST)

Alternate translation: [all over the world]

{for} forty days and forty nights (ULT)

{for} forty days and nights (UST)

This phrase refers to 40 complete 24-hour days.

---

and I will wipe (ULT)

In that way, I will completely destroy (UST)

See how you translated this common expression in 6:7. Alternate translation: [in order to blot out] or [That will wash away]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

every living thing that I have made (ULT)

every living creature that I have made (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase ("living creature") in Genesis 6:19. Alternate translation: [all the living things that I have made]

---

off the surface of the ground (ULT)

from the earth (UST)

It may be clearer to put this phrase earlier in the sentence and say, "in order to completely destroy from the ground every living creature that I have made." See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 6:7. Alternate translation: [off the surface of the earth] or [off the land]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- in … days
- the earth
- days
- and I will wipe

UST

- seven days from today
- the earth
- days
- In that way, I will completely destroy

Genesis 7:5

ULT:
Then Noah did all that Yahweh had commanded him.

UST:
Then Noah did everything {exactly} as Yahweh had commanded him {to do}.

Then Noah did all that (ULT)

Then Noah did everything {exactly} as (UST)

Alternate translation: [So Noah did everything that] or [So Noah did everything just as]

Yahweh had commanded him (ULT)

Yahweh had commanded him {to do} (UST)

See how you translated 6:22, which is similar to 7:5. Alternate translation: [Yahweh had told him to do]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Noah
- Yahweh

UST
- Noah
- Yahweh

Genesis 7:6

ULT:
Now Noah {was} a son of 600 years when the floodwaters came on the earth.

UST:
Noah was 600 years old when the flood covered the earth.

Now Noah {was} a son of 600 years (ULT)

Noah was 600 years old (UST)

See how you handled large numbers in Genesis 5 and in Genesis 6:3, and see the note about this at Genesis 5:35. Also see how you translated the common expression "son of … years" in Genesis 5:32. Alternate translation: [He was 600 years old]

Support Reference: Numbers

---

when the floodwaters came on the earth (ULT)

when the flood covered the earth (UST)

For some languages it may be more natural to put this clause first in this sentence and say, "When the flood waters came on the earth, Noah was 600 years old." Also, see how you translated **floodwaters** in Genesis 6:17. Alternate translation: [when the earth was covered with deep water]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Now Noah
- years
- when the
- the earth

UST

- Noah
- was 600 years old
- when the flood covered
- the earth

Genesis 7:7

ULT:
And Noah and his sons and his wife and the wives of his sons went with him into the ark from the presence of the waters of the flood.

UST:
{That is when} he and his wife, and his sons and their wives went together into the boat so that they would not die in the flood.

And Noah and his sons and his wife and the wives of his sons went with him into the ark (ULT)

{That is when} he and his wife, and his sons and their wives went together into the boat (UST)

Noah and his family entered the ark on the same day that the floodwaters started coming (See verses 7:11–13). See how you translated a similar list of people in Genesis 6:18. Alternate translation: [That is when Noah and his wife, and his sons and their wives, went together into the ark]

---

from the presence of (ULT)

so that they would not die in (UST)

Alternate translation: [because of] or [to escape from] or [to keep them safe from]

---

the waters of the flood (ULT)

the flood (UST)

Alternate translation: [the floodwaters]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Noah
- the flood

UST

- נֹחַ (ORIG QUOTE)
- the flood

Genesis 7:8

ULT:
{Pairs} from the clean animal{s} and from the animal{s} that are not clean and from the bird{s} and everything that moves on the ground

UST:
{Also,} {every kind of} pure animal and {every kind of} impure animal and {every kind of} bird, {including} every {kind of creature} that lives on land,

and everything that moves on the ground (ULT)

{including} every {kind of creature} that lives on land (UST)

Here, **and everything that moves on the ground** could (1) include every kind of creature that moves on land. Alternate translation: [which includes every kind of animal that lives on land] According to this interpretation, the rest of verse 8 emphasizes that the clean and unclean animals and birds (verses 2–3, 8) were all creatures that lived on land (which are the creatures that the flood affected). (2) refer to every kind of creature that crawls along the ground. According to that interpretation, the rest of verse 8 refers to a fourth category of creatures besides the clean animals, unclean animals, and birds.

{Pairs} from the clean animal{s} and from the animal{s} that are not clean (ULT)

{Also,} {every kind of} pure animal and {every kind of} impure animal (UST)

See how you translated **clean** and "unclean" animals in verse 7:2 Alternate translation: [Also, every kind of clean animal and every kind of unclean animal]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the … animal{s}
- the animal{s}

UST
- animal

- animal

Genesis 7:9

ULT:
went two {by} two to Noah into the ark, male and female, just as God had commanded Noah.

UST:
came in pairs to Noah {and went} into the boat. {They were} male and female {pairs}, which was exactly what God had commanded him {to take along}.

went two {by} two to Noah into the ark (ULT)

came in pairs to Noah {and went} into the boat (UST)

Alternate translation: [came to Noah in pairs and went into the ark] or [came in pairs and entered the ark with Noah]

---

male and female (ULT)

They were} male and female {pairs} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Each pair had one male and one female]

---

just as God had commanded Noah (ULT)

which was exactly what God had commanded him {to take along} (UST)

Alternate translation: [which was exactly what God had told Noah to bring along]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Noah
- the ark
- God

- Noah

UST

- Noah
- the boat
- God
- him

Genesis 7:10

ULT:
And it happened, after the seven days, then the waters of the flood came on the earth.

UST:
So it happened {that} when the seven days {that God had spoken about} had passed, water started to flood the earth.

And it happened (ULT)

So it happened {that} (UST)

This phrase focuses attention on an important event, the beginning of the flood. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event. Alternate translation: [Now it came about]

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

---

after the seven days (ULT)

when the seven days {that God had spoken about} had passed (UST)

This phrase refers to the seven days which God talked about in verse 4. It does not mean seven days after Noah and the animals went into the ark (verses 7–9); they went into the ark on the same day that the flood started (verse 13). Translate the beginning of this sentence in a way that makes that clear. Alternate translation: [after seven days]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

then the waters of the flood came on (ULT)

water started to flood (UST)

Alternate translation: [the floodwaters started to come on] or [water started to cover]

---

the earth (ULT)

the earth (UST)

Alternate translation: [the whole earth]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the … days
- the flood
- the earth

UST

- when the seven days {that God had spoken about} had passed
- water started to flood
- the earth

Genesis 7:11

ULT:
In the six hundredth year of Noah's life, in the second month, on the seventeenth day of the month, on that day all the fountains of the great deep burst open, and the windows of the heavens were opened,

UST:
When Noah was 600 years old, on the seventeenth day of the second month {of the year}, on that {very} day all the springs in the deep ocean started pouring out water. {God also caused} the water in the sky to start pouring down, as if he had opened {huge} floodgates {in the sky},

In the six hundredth year of Noah's life (ULT)

When Noah was 600 years old (UST)

Compare how you translated Noah's age in verse 7:6.

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

---

in the second month, on the seventeenth day of the month (ULT)

on the seventeenth day of the second month {of the year} (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to switch the phrase order and say which day it is before giving the month. Do what is natural in your language.

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

on that day (ULT)

on that {very} day (UST)

Alternate translation: [on that same day] or [that is the day when]

---

all the fountains of (ULT)

all the springs in (UST)

Alternate translation: [all the underground water sources]

---

burst open (ULT)

started pouring out water (UST)

For some languages it may be more natural to put this phrase earlier and say, “water started gushing out of all the fountains in the deep ocean,” Alternate translation: [split open] or [started gushed forth water]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

and the windows of the heavens were opened (ULT)

God also caused} the water in the sky to start pouring down, as if he had opened {huge} floodgates {in the sky} (UST)

The author is speaking of **the heavens** as if they had **windows** that **were opened** to describe the beginning of a very heavy rainfall; it does not refer to actual windows. Alternate translation: [and all the windows in the sky were opened by God] or [God also caused the water in the heavens to start coming down, as if he had opened huge faucets in the heavens]

Support Reference: Metaphor

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- In the six hundredth
- year
- Noah
- in the … month
- day

- of the month
- on … day
- the fountains of
- the heavens

UST

- When Noah was 600 years old
- When Noah was 600 years old
- When Noah was 600 years old
- the second month {of the year}
- on the seventeenth day of
- on the seventeenth day of
- on … day
- the springs in
- God also caused} the water in the sky to start pouring down, as if he had opened {huge} floodgates {in the sky}

Genesis 7:12

ULT:
so that the rain fell on the earth forty days and forty nights.

UST:
so that it rained {continuously} {all} over the earth {for} forty days and nights.

so that the rain fell (ULT)

so that it rained {continuously} (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that heavy rain poured continuously]

---

on the earth (ULT)

{all} over the earth (UST)

Alternate translation: [all over the world]

---

forty days and forty nights (ULT)

{for} forty days and nights (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 7:4.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the earth
- days

UST
- the earth

- days

Genesis 7:13

ULT:
On that same day Noah and Shem and Ham and Japheth, the sons of Noah, and the wife of Noah and the three wives of his sons with them, went into the ark,

UST:
{So it was that} on the same day {that the flood started}, Noah and his sons, Shem, Ham, and Japheth, along with his wife and his sons' three wives {all} entered the boat.

On that same day (ULT)

So it was that} on the same day {that the flood started} (UST)

This is the same day that is mentioned in verse 11, when the flood started. Verses 13–16 repeat what happened, in order to emphasize it. Make sure that a translation does not sound like this is the second (or third) time that Noah and his family and the animals entered the ark. Alternate translation: [So it was that on the very same day that the rain started]

Noah and Shem and Ham and Japheth, the sons of Noah, and the wife of Noah and the three wives of his sons with them (ULT)

Noah and his sons, Shem, Ham, and Japheth, along with his wife and his sons' three wives (UST)

See how you translated a similar sentence in verse 7:7. Alternate translation: [Noah and his wife and their sons, Shem, Ham, and Japheth, and their three wives all]

---

went into the ark (ULT)

{all} entered the boat (UST)

Alternate translation: [boarded the ark]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- day
- Noah
- and Shem
- and Ham
- and Japheth
- Noah
- Noah
- the ark

UST

- day {that the flood started}
- Noah
- and … Shem
- Ham
- and Japheth
- his sons
- his wife
- the boat

Genesis 7:14

ULT:
they and every living thing according to its kind, and every livestock according to its kind, and every moving creature moving on the earth according to its kind, and every bird according to its kind, every bird of every wing.

UST:
They had with them every kind of living creature, including every kind of livestock and every {other} kind of creature that lives on the land, and every kind of bird {and} everything {else} that flies.

they and every (ULT)

They had with them every (UST)

Alternate translation: [They took with them every]

---

and every livestock according to its kind (ULT)

including every kind of livestock (UST)

Alternate translation: [every kind of tame animal]

---

and every moving creature moving on the earth according to its kind (ULT)

and every {other} kind of creature that lives on the land (UST)

This clause could refer to (1) every other kind of animal that lives on the earth, which seems to fit this context best;. (2) every kind of creature that crawls on the ground. Alternate translation: [and every kind of creature that crawls on the ground]

---

and every bird according to its kind, every bird of every wing (ULT)

and every kind of bird {and} everything {else} that flies (UST)

This phrase probably refers not only to birds, but also to other creatures that have wings and fly, such as bats and insects. Alternate translation: [and every kind of bird and everything else that has wings] or [and every kind of bird and every other kind of creature that flies]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- livestock
- the earth

UST

- livestock
- and every {other} kind of creature that lives on the land

Genesis 7:15

ULT:
So they went to Noah into the ark, two {by} two from all flesh which {has} in it the breath of life.

UST:
Pairs of every {kind of} living thing that breathes {air} came to Noah {and went} into the boat.

So they went to Noah into the ark (ULT)

came to Noah {and went} into the boat (UST)

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 7:9. Alternate translation: [They came to Noah and came into the ark] or [They entered the ark with Noah]

---

two {by} two from all flesh (ULT)

Pairs of every {kind of} living thing (UST)

The word **flesh** refers here to any kind of creature or animal. Alternate translation: [pairs of every kind of animal] or [pairs of every kind of living thing]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

---

which {has} in it the breath of life (ULT)

that breathes {air} (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 6:17. For some languages it may be better to change the order of the clauses in this verse and say, “Pairs of every kind of living thing that breathes air came to Noah and went into the boat.”

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Noah
- the ark
- the breath of

UST

- Noah
- the boat
- breathes {air}

Genesis 7:16

ULT:
And those that went in {were} male and female from all flesh; they went in just as God had commanded him. Then Yahweh shut him in.

UST:
The animals that went into {the boat} {were} male and female {pairs} from every {kind of} living thing, which was exactly what God had commanded Noah {to take along}. Then {after they were all inside,} Yahweh closed the door {of the boat} behind them.

And those that went in (ULT)

The animals that went into {the boat} (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to use **went** or "came" here. Also consider again how you translated **went** in verses 7, 9, 13, and 15. Alternate translation: [The pairs that came into the ark] or [Those animals]

Support Reference: Go and Come

---

from all flesh (ULT)

from every {kind of} living thing (UST)

See how you translated **all flesh** in verse 7:15. Alternate translation: [of every kind of creature] or [of every kind of living thing]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

---

they went in just as God had commanded him (ULT)

which was exactly what God had commanded Noah {to take along} (UST)

See how you translated “just as God commanded him” in verse 7:9. Alternate translation: [which was exactly what God had commanded him to bring along]

Then Yahweh shut him in (ULT)

Then {after they were all inside,} Yahweh closed the door {of the boat} behind them (UST)

Alternate translation: [After that, Yahweh shut them in the ark] or [Then after they were all inside, Yahweh shut the door of the ark behind him]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- Yahweh

UST

- God
- Yahweh

Genesis 7:17

ULT:
Then the flood came on the earth {for} forty days, and the waters increased and lifted the ark so that it rose up off the earth.

UST:
{For} forty days {and forty nights} the flood kept getting deeper and deeper {all} over the earth, and as the water rose, it lifted up the boat so that it floated {on the water} above the ground.

Then the flood came (ULT)

the flood kept getting deeper and deeper (UST)

Some translations begin this sentence without a conjunction. Do what is natural in your language. Also, notice that verses 7:17–20 talk about the forty days and nights that the flood kept getting deeper and deeper. Alternate translation: [After that the floodwaters kept getting deeper and deeper] or [The water kept coming]

Support Reference: Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

{for} forty days (ULT)

For} forty days {and forty nights} (UST)

For some languages it may be more natural to put this time phrase first in this sentence and say, "For forty days and forty nights the flood kept getting deeper and deeper all over the earth," Also see how you translated this phrase in verse 7:12. Alternate translation: [for 40 days and 40 nights]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

and the waters increased (ULT)

and as the water rose (UST)

Alternate translation: [and as the water level rose] or [As the water got deeper and deeper]

---

and lifted the ark so that it rose up off the earth (ULT)

it lifted up the boat so that it floated {on the water} above the ground (UST)

Alternate translation: [it lifted up the ark so that it floated on the water high above the earth] or [it made the ark rise up off the ground and float]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the flood
- days
- the earth
- and … increased
- the ark
- the earth

UST

- the flood
- For} forty days {and forty nights}
- the earth
- and as … rose
- the boat
- the ground

Genesis 7:18

ULT:
And the waters rose and increased greatly on the earth, and the ark went on the surface of the waters.

UST:
So the floodwaters continued to rise and get much deeper {all} over the earth, while the boat floated {safely} on the water.

And the waters rose (ULT)

So the floodwaters continued to rise (UST)

Verse 18 repeats some of verse 17 to emphasize what happened. Consider what is the best way to begin this sentence in your language. Alternate translation: [So the floodwaters continued to rise and get much higher] or [Yes, the water continued …] or [The water continued …]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

---

on the earth (ULT)

{all} over the earth (UST)

Alternate translation: [all over the world]

---

and the ark went (ULT)

while the boat floated {safely} (UST)

Alternate translation: [but the ark floated safely] or [so that the ark moved about]

---

on the surface of the waters (ULT)

on the water (UST)

Alternate translation: [on the surface of the water] or [on top of the water]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and increased
- the earth
- the ark

UST

- and get … deeper
- the earth
- the boat

Genesis 7:19

ULT:
And the waters rose very greatly on the earth, so that all the high mountains that {were} under the entire heavens were covered.

UST:
Eventually the water became so deep on the earth that {even} all the highest mountains everywhere under the sky were under water.

And the waters rose very greatly on the earth (ULT)

Eventually the water became so deep on the earth (UST)

Alternate translation: [At last, the waters became very deep over the world, so that] or [Eventually the water became so deep on the world that]

---

so that … were covered (ULT)

that … were under water (UST)

For some languages it is better to use an active form of the verb here and say, “Eventually the water became so deep on the earth that it even covered all the highest mountains under the entire sky.” Alternate translation: [were covered by water] or [were submerged in water]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the earth
- heavens

UST
- the earth
- the sky

Genesis 7:20

ULT:
The waters rose fifteen cubits above {them}, so that the mountains were covered.

UST:
{In fact,} the water rose {at least} seven meters above {the tops of} the {highest} mountains, so that they were {completely} under water.

The waters rose fifteen cubits above {them} (ULT)

{In fact,} the water rose {at least} seven meters above {the tops of} the {highest} mountains (UST)

See how you translated **cubits** in Genesis 6:15–16. Alternate translation: [In fact, the highest mountain tops were covered by at least twenty-two feet of water]

Support Reference: Biblical Distance

---

so that the mountains were covered (ULT)

so that they were {completely} under water (UST)

See how you translated **were covered** in verse 19. Alternate translation: [so that they were completely covered with water] or [… completely submerged in water] or [… completely under water]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

Genesis 7:21

ULT:
Then all flesh that moved on the earth expired, including the birds and the livestock and the living things and all the swarming things swarming on the earth, and all mankind.

UST:
Then all the creatures that lived on land died. {That} included {all} the birds, the livestock, and the {other} living creatures, including every {kind of} creature that lived in large groups on the earth, as well as all the people.

all flesh (ULT)

all the creatures (UST)

This phrase refers to everything listed in verse 21, including people. See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 6:17. Alternate translation: [Then all the beings] or [Then every creature] or [Then every living thing]

---

that moved on the earth (ULT)

that lived on land (UST)

Alternate translation: [that moved on the ground]

Then … expired (ULT)

Then … died (UST)

See how you translated this common expression in Genesis 6:17. Alternate translation: [breathed out its last breath] or [perished]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

including the birds and the livestock (ULT)

{That} included {all} the birds, the livestock (UST)

Alternate translation: [including all the birds, the tame animals]

---

and the living things (ULT)

and the {other} living creatures (UST)

[and the wild animals]

---

and all the swarming things swarming on the earth (ULT)

including every {kind of} creature that lived in large groups on the earth (UST)

Alternate translation: [including every kind of animal that lived in large numbers on the earth]

---

and all mankind (ULT)

as well as all the people (UST)

Alternate translation: [in addition to all the human beings]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- mankind
- the earth
- and the livestock
- the earth

UST

- the people
- land
- the livestock
- the earth

Genesis 7:22

ULT:
Everything that {had} the breath of the spirit of life in its nostrils, everything that {lived} on dry land, died.

UST:
Every living creature that breathed air and {lived} on dry land died.

Everything that {had} the breath of the spirit of life in its nostrils (ULT)

Every living creature that breathed air (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 7:15. Alternate translation: [Every living thing that breathed air]

---

everything that {lived} on dry land, died (ULT)

and {lived} on dry land died (UST)

Alternate translation: [and was on dry land died]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the spirit of

UST

- Every living creature that breathed air

Genesis 7:23

ULT:
So he wiped away every living thing that {was} on the surface of the ground, including mankind and livestock and crawling creatures and also the birds of the sky. So they were wiped off the earth, and only Noah was left and {those} who {were} with him in the ark.

UST:
That is how Yahweh completely destroyed all the living creatures that {were} on the earth, including {all} people and livestock and {all the other} creatures that lived {on the land} and also the birds {that flew} in the sky. Yes, he completely destroyed everything {that lived} on the earth, so that the only ones who were still alive were Noah and his family and the animals that were with them in the boat.

So he wiped away (ULT)

That is how Yahweh completely destroyed (UST)

See how you translated this common expression in verse 7:4. Alternate translation: [That is how Yahweh washed away] or [In that way, Yahweh blotted out]

---

every living thing (ULT)

all the living creatures (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 7:4. Alternate translation: [every living creature] or [all living things]

---

that {was} on the surface of the ground (ULT)

that {were} on the earth (UST)

See how you translated **the surface of the ground** in verse 7:4. Alternate translation: [that was on the surface of the earth] or [that were on the land]

---

including mankind (ULT)

including {all} people (UST)

See how you translated **mankind** in verse 7:21. Alternate translation: [including all mankind]

---

and livestock and crawling creatures (ULT)

and livestock and {all the other} creatures that lived {on the land} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and all the livestock and all the other animals that moved on the ground] or [and all the animals, including smaller animals that crawl on the ground]

---

and also the birds of the sky (ULT)

and also the birds {that flew} in the sky (UST)

Some languages leave out the phrase **of the sky** because it is not natural.

So they were wiped off the earth (ULT)

Yes, he completely destroyed everything {that lived} on the earth (UST)

See how you translated "wipe … off" in verse 7:4. Alternate translation: [All of them were completely washed off the earth by God] or [He completely destroyed them all from the earth] or [Yes, God completely destroyed everything that lived on the earth]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and only Noah was left (ULT)

so that the only ones who were still alive were Noah (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that only Noah was left alive, along with] or [so that the only ones who were left alive were Noah and] or [Only Noah survived, along with]

---

and {those} who {were} with him in the ark (ULT)

and his family and the animals that were with them in the boat (UST)

Alternate translation: [and the people and the animals that were with him in the ark]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- including mankind
- So he wiped away
- livestock
- the sky
- So they were wiped
- the earth
- Noah
- in the ark

UST

- including {all} people
- That is how Yahweh completely destroyed
- livestock
- the sky
- Yes, he completely destroyed everything {that lived} on
- the earth
- Noah
- in the boat

Genesis 7:24

ULT:
And the waters prevailed over the earth {for} 150 days.

UST:
{Deep} water continued to cover the {entire} world {for} 150 days.

And the waters prevailed over (ULT)

{Deep} water continued to cover (UST)

Alternate translation: [Deep water continued to flood] or [The floodwaters stayed deep over]

---

the earth {for} 150 days (ULT)

the {entire} world {for} 150 days (UST)

See how you handled a large number in verse 7:6. Alternate translation: [the entire earth for 150 days]

Support Reference: Numbers

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the earth
- days

UST
- the {entire} world
- days

Genesis 8

Genesis 8:1

ULT:
But God remembered Noah and all the living thing{s} and all the livestock that {were} with him in the ark, and God caused a wind to pass over the earth, and the waters subsided.

UST:
But God never forgot Noah {and his family} and all the animals, both wild and tame, that {were} with them in the boat. So he caused a wind to blow over {the water that was covering} the earth, so that the water {started to} go down.

But God remembered (ULT)

But God never forgot (UST)

The phrase **God remembered** is a common expression in the Bible that often means that God was paying special attention to certain people and was about to do something. Make sure that the way you translate this phrase does not imply that God had forgotten about Noah. Alternate translation: [God kept in mind] or [But God did not forget]

Support Reference: Idiom

Noah (ULT)

Noah {and his family} (UST)

Noah is the person on whom the author is focusing here, but Noah's family and all the animals are also included. Consider whether or not you need to make that explicit in your translation.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and all the living thing{s} and (ULT)

and all the animals, both wild and tame (UST)

The phrase **all the living things** could mean: (1) all the creatures (2) all the wild animals. See how you translated "living thing" in Genesis 7:14.

---

all the livestock that {were} with him in the ark (ULT)

the animals, both wild and tame, that {were} with them in the boat (UST)

Some translations combine this phrase with the previous phrase and say, "and all the animals, both wild and tame, that were with him in the boat." Alternate translation: [all the farm animals that were with him in the ark]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

and God caused a wind to pass over (ULT)

So he caused a wind to blow over (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he sent a wind over] or [So God sent a wind to blow over]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

the earth (ULT)

{the water that was covering} the earth (UST)

Alternate translation: [the water that was over the earth]

---

and the waters subsided (ULT)

so that the water {started to} go down (UST)

Notice that the floodwaters did not totally recede until verse 14, so the way you translate this clause should allow for that. Alternate translation: [so that the water started to recede] or [so that the water level started to go down]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- Noah
- the livestock
- in the ark
- God
- a wind
- the earth

UST

- God
- Noah {and his family}
- the animals, both wild and tame
- in the boat
- אֱלֹהִים (ORIG QUOTE)
- a wind
- {the water that was covering} the earth

Genesis 8:2

ULT:
And the fountains of the deep and the windows of the heavens were closed, and the rain from the heavens was stopped.

UST:
{He also caused} the springs in the deep {ocean} to stop {gushing out water}, and {he caused} the water to stop pouring from the sky, so that it stopped raining.

And the fountains of the deep and the windows of the heavens were closed (ULT)

{He also caused} the springs in the deep {ocean} to stop {gushing out water}, and {he caused} the water to stop pouring (UST)

See how you translated some of the same words and phrases in Genesis 7:11. Alternate translation: [He also caused the fountains in the deep ocean to stop gushing out water] or [God also stopped the water from gushing out of springs at the bottom of the ocean]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

and the rain from the heavens was stopped (ULT)

from the sky, so that it stopped raining (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to use an active or a passive verb here and in the previous clause. Alternate translation: [so that rain stopped falling from the sky] or [and he caused the rain to stop pouring from the sky]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the fountains of
- the heavens
- the heavens

UST

- the springs in
- and {he caused} the water to stop pouring
- the sky

Genesis 8:3

ULT:
Then the waters receded steadily from the earth, and {at} the end of the 150 days the waters had decreased,

UST:
Then the water steadily went down from {the surface of} the land. After the 150 days {had passed}, the water had gone down

Then the waters receded steadily (ULT)

Then the water steadily went down (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then the floodwaters gradually went down]

---

from the earth (ULT)

from {the surface of} the land (UST)

Alternate translation: [from the surface of the ground]

{at} the end of the 150 days (ULT)

After the 150 days {had passed} (UST)

Also make sure it is clear in your translation that the 150 days mentioned here in Genesis 8:3 are the same 150 days mentioned in Genesis 7:24, not two different periods of time. Alternate translation: [so that after the 150 days had passed]

---

the waters (ULT)

the water (UST)

Make sure the way you translate this phrase fits with the way you translated the beginning of the verse. Alternate translation: [the water level] or [it]

---

and … had decreased (ULT)

had gone down (UST)

Alternate translation: [had subsided]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the earth
- days

UST

- the land
- days {had passed}

Genesis 8:4

ULT:
so that in the seventh month, on the seventeenth day of the month, the ark rested on the mountains of Ararat.

UST:
so {much} that on the seventeenth day of the seventh month {of the year}, the boat came to rest on {one of} the mountains in the Ararat {mountain range}.

so that … rested (ULT)

so {much} that … came to rest (UST)

Alternate translation: [so low that … lay]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

---

in the seventh month, on the seventeenth day of the month (ULT)

on the seventeenth day of the seventh month {of the year} (UST)

See how you translated a similar time phrase in Genesis 7:11.

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

so that … the ark rested (ULT)

so {much} that … the boat came to rest (UST)

Alternate translation: [the ark came to rest] or [the ark landed]

---

on the mountains (ULT)

on {one of} the mountains (UST)

The ark landed on one mountain in a mountain range. Alternate translation: [on a mountain]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the ark
- in … month
- day
- of the month
- of Ararat

UST

- the boat
- of the … month {of the year}
- on the seventeenth day
- on the seventeenth day
- in the Ararat {mountain range}

Genesis 8:5

ULT:
And the waters continued to decrease until the tenth month. In the tenth month, on the first of the month, the tops of the mountains could be seen.

UST:
The floodwaters continued to go down until on the first {day} of the tenth month {of the year}, the peaks of the {surrounding} mountains became visible {above the water}.

And the waters (ULT)

The floodwaters (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then the water] or [The water]

---

continued to decrease (ULT)

continued to go down (UST)

See how you translated "decreased" in verse 3. Alternate translation: [continued to go away] or [kept subsiding]

---

until the tenth month. In the tenth month, on the first of the month (ULT)

until on the first {day} of the tenth month {of the year} (UST)

See how you translated a similar time phrase in verse 4. Alternate translation: [until the tenth month of the year. On the first day of that month]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

the tops of the mountains (ULT)

the peaks of the {surrounding} mountains (UST)

Alternate translation: [the mountaintops]

---

could be seen (ULT)

became visible {above the water} (UST)

Alternate translation: [could be seen above the water by Noah] or [appeared above the surface of the water]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the … month
- of the month

UST

- on the first {day} of the tenth month {of the year}
- on the first {day} of the tenth month {of the year}

Genesis 8:6

ULT:
And it happened {at} the end of forty days that Noah opened the window of the ark that he had made,

UST:
After forty {more} days {had passed}, Noah opened a window in the boat that he had made,

And it happened {at} the end of forty days (ULT)

After forty {more} days {had passed} (UST)

The author is using the word translated as **And it happened** to introduce a new development in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new development.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

---

that Noah opened the window (ULT)

Noah opened a window (UST)

It is not clear when Noah made this window. It may refer to the opening around the top of the walls of the ark (Genesis 6:16) or a different window that he made sometime later.

---

of the ark that he had made (ULT)

in the boat that he had made (UST)

Alternate translation: [that he had made in the ark]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- days
- Noah
- of the ark

UST

- days {had passed}
- Noah
- in the boat

Genesis 8:7

ULT:
and he sent out the raven, and it kept flying out and returning until the waters dried up from the earth.

UST:
and he released a raven, which kept flying back and forth until the water had dried up {more} from the land.

and he sent out (ULT)

and he released (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he set free]

---

the raven (ULT)

a raven (UST)

A **raven** is a large, black scavenger bird that eats whatever it finds, including dead animals. If the people in your language area are not familiar with ravens, you could make a comparison to a similar bird with which they are familiar and say, “a large black bird like a …” Or you could include a footnote that explains what a raven is. Alternate translation: [a large black bird called a raven]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

---

and it kept flying out and returning (ULT)

which kept flying back and forth (UST)

Alternate translation: [which continued flying back and forth outside the boat] or [but it kept flying around outside the boat]

---

until the waters (ULT)

until the water (UST)

Alternate translation: [until the floodwaters]

---

dried up from the earth (ULT)

had dried up {more} from the land (UST)

This phrase refers to the ground (as verse 8 confirms), not the entire planet. Alternate translation: [had dried up more from the ground]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and it kept flying out
- the earth

UST

- which kept flying back and forth
- the land

Genesis 8:8

ULT:
Then he sent out the dove from him to see if the waters had subsided from the surface of the ground.

UST:
Meanwhile Noah {also} released a dove from the boat to find out if the water had gone down from the land.

Then he sent out (ULT)

Meanwhile Noah {also} released (UST)

The events in verse 8 happened while the raven was still flying back and forth (verse 7). Consider what conjunction best communicates that in your language. Alternate translation: [And he also sent out] or [He also released]

Support Reference: Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship

---

the dove from him (ULT)

a dove from the boat (UST)

Alternate translation: [the small gray bird that coos]

---

to see if the waters had subsided (ULT)

to find out if the water had gone down (UST)

Alternate translation: [to find out if the floodwaters had receded]

---

from the surface of the ground (ULT)

from the land (UST)

Alternate translation: [from the surface of the land] or [from the ground]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the dove

UST

- a dove

Genesis 8:9

ULT:
But the dove did not find a resting place for the sole of its foot, so it returned to him in the ark, for the waters {were} over the face of all of the earth. And he reached out his hand and took it and brought it to him into the ark.

UST:
But water was {still} covering the entire earth, so the dove did not find anywhere to land and rest. Then it returned to Noah in the boat, and Noah reached out, caught it, and brought it {back} into the boat.

But the dove did not find (ULT)

so the dove did not find (UST)

Consider what is the best way to refer to the dove at this point in the paragraph in your language. Alternate translation: [But the dove could not find] or [But it was not able to find]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

a resting place for the sole of its foot (ULT)

anywhere to land and rest (UST)

In Hebrew the word **dove** is grammatically a feminine noun (for both male and female doves), so some translations say “her feet … she returned …” here. For languages such as English that do not assign grammatical gender to nouns, it is more accurate to use **its** and **it** here, because it is not known whether this dove was male or female. Alternate translation: [anywhere to perch and rest]

---

so it returned (ULT)

Then it returned (UST)

Alternate translation: [So it returned] or [So the dove flew back]

---

to him in the ark (ULT)

to Noah in the boat (UST)

Alternate translation: [flew back to him at the ark]

But the dove did not find a resting place for the sole of its foot, so it returned to him in the ark, for the waters {were} over the face of all of the earth (ULT)

But water was {still} covering the entire earth, so the dove did not find anywhere to land and rest. Then it returned to Noah in the boat (UST)

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since the second phrase gives the reason for the result that the first phrase describes. Alternate translation: [But since the waters were over the face of all of the earth, the dove did not find a resting place for the sole of its foot, so it returned to him in the ark]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

And he reached out his hand (ULT)

and Noah reached out (UST)

Alternate translation: [So he reached out] or [and he reached out]

---

to him into the ark (ULT)

and brought it {back} into the boat (UST)

Alternate translation: [back to himself in the ark] or [back into the ark]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the dove
- the ark
- the earth
- the ark

UST

- the dove
- the boat
- the … earth
- the boat

Genesis 8:10

ULT:
Then he waited another seven days and again sent out the dove from the ark.

UST:
Noah waited seven more days, then he released the dove from the boat again.

Then he waited (ULT)

Noah waited (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to begin this sentence with or without a conjunction. Alternate translation: [He waited]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

---

and again sent out the dove from the ark (ULT)

then he released the dove from the boat again (UST)

Alternate translation: [then he sent the dove out from the ark another time] or [then he released the dove from the ark again]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- days
- the dove
- the ark

UST

- days
- the dove
- the boat

Genesis 8:11

ULT:
Then the dove returned to him at evening time, and behold, {there was} a freshly picked olive leaf in its mouth. So Noah knew that the waters had subsided from the earth.

UST:
That evening the dove returned to him, and he saw that {it had} a fresh green olive {tree} leaf in its beak! That is how Noah realized that the water had gone down {further} from the land.

Then the dove returned to him at evening time (ULT)

That evening the dove returned to him (UST)

Alternate translation: [That evening the dove returned to Noah] or [When it was evening, the dove returned to him]

---

and behold (ULT)

and he saw that (UST)

Alternate translation: [and surprisingly] or [and Noah saw that]

{there was} a freshly picked olive leaf in its mouth (ULT)

{it had} a fresh green olive {tree} leaf in its beak (UST)

Alternate translation: [it was holding a newly picked green leaf from an olive tree in its beak] or [the dove had a green leaf in its bill that it had just taken from an olive tree]

So Noah knew (ULT)

That is how Noah realized (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Noah realized] or [That is how he knew]

---

that the waters (ULT)

that the water (UST)

Alternate translation: [that the floodwaters]

---

had subsided (ULT)

had gone down {further} (UST)

See how you translated **subsided** in verse 8, and how you translated three other Hebrew words with similar meanings In verses 1, 3, and 5. Alternate translation: [had receded] or [had gone down more]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

from the earth (ULT)

from the land (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 7. Alternate translation: [from the ground]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the dove

- olive
- So … knew
- Noah
- the earth

UST

- the dove
- olive {tree}
- That is how … realized
- Noah
- the land

Genesis 8:12

ULT:
Then he waited another seven days, and he sent out the dove, but it did not return to him again.

UST:
Then he waited seven more days and he released the dove {again}, but {this time} it did not come back to him again.

Then he waited another seven days, and he sent out the dove (ULT)

Then he waited seven more days and he released the dove {again} (UST)

See how you translated **sent out** in verses 7, 8, and 10. Alternate translation: [He waited another seven days, and then he released the dove again] or [After he waited seven more days, he released the dove again]

---

but it did not return to him again (ULT)

but {this time} it did not come back to him again (UST)

Remember to only make implied information explicit in a translation if it helps readers' understanding or if it is necessary to prevent wrong meaning or incorrect grammar. Alternate translation: [but this time it did not fly back to him again because it found a dry place to land]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- days
- the dove

UST
- days
- the dove

Genesis 8:13

ULT:
So it happened in the six hundred and first year, in the first {month}, on the first {day} of the month, the waters were drying up from the earth. Then Noah removed the covering of the ark and looked, and behold, the surface of the ground was drying.

UST:
So it was, when {Noah was} 601 years old, on the first {day} of the first month {of the year}, the water had {almost} dried up from the land. So Noah took off {part of} the roof of the boat and looked {around}, and he saw that {much of} the land's surface was {almost} dry.

So it happened (ULT)

So it was (UST)

Alternate translation: [So it happened that]

---

in the six hundred and first year (ULT)

when {Noah was} 601 years old (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 7:11.

---

in the first {month}, on the first {day} of the month (ULT)

on the first {day} of the first month {of the year} (UST)

Alternate translation: [in the first month of the year, on the first day of the month]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

---

the waters were drying up (ULT)

the water had {almost} dried up (UST)

Make sure your translation of this phrase fits with the fact that the ground was not yet dry enough to get out of the ark. That did not happen until the end of the second month (verse 14).
Alternate translation: [the water was drying up]

---

from the earth (ULT)

from the land (UST)

Alternate translation: [from the ground]

Then Noah removed (ULT)

So Noah took off (UST)

Alternate translation: [So he took off part of] or [made an opening in]

---

the covering of the ark (ULT)

{part of} the roof of the boat (UST)

Alternate translation: [the roof that was covering the ark] or [the roof of the ark]

---

and looked (ULT)

and looked {around} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and looked out]

---

and behold (ULT)

and he saw that (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 11. Alternate translation: [and indeed]

---

was drying (ULT)

was {almost} dry (UST)

Alternate translation: [was drying off]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- year
- of the month
- the earth
- Noah
- the ark

UST

- when {Noah was} 601 years old
- month {of the year}
- the land
- Noah
- the boat

Genesis 8:14

ULT:
Then in the second month, on the twenty-seventh day of the month, the earth was dry.

UST:
Then by the twenty-seventh day of the second month {of the year}, the land had dried off.

Then in the second month, on the twenty-seventh day of the month (ULT)

Then by the twenty-seventh day of the second month {of the year} (UST)

If your language would not represent a number in a form such as **in the seventh month**, you could represent this number in a form that your language would use. See how you translated similar time phrases in verses 4, 5, and 13.

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

---

the earth (ULT)

the land (UST)

Notice that the land was dry here, not the entire earth. Consider again how you translated this phrase in verses 3, 7, 11, 13–14. Alternate translation: [the ground]

---

was dry (ULT)

had dried off (UST)

In this context **dry** means that the ground was dry enough to walk on and live on without getting stuck in mud. Make sure your translation does not imply that it was so dry (like a desert) that almost nothing would grow on it .

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then in … month
- day
- of the month
- the earth

UST

- Then … of the … month {of the year}
- the … day
- לַחֹ֫דֶשׁ (ORIG QUOTE)
- the land

Genesis 8:15

ULT:
Then God said to Noah, saying,

UST:
Then God commanded Noah,

Then God said to Noah, saying (ULT)

Then God commanded Noah (UST)

See how you translated **said to Noah** in Genesis 7:1. Alternate translation: [So God said to Noah]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- God
- Noah

UST
- God
- Noah

Genesis 8:16

ULT:
“Go out of the ark, you and your wife and your sons and the wives of your sons with you.

UST:
“Come out of the boat, together with your wife, your sons, and your sons’ wives.

Go out of the ark (ULT)

Come out of the boat (UST)

Consider whether “come” or “go” is more natural here in your language. Also, some languages have a special term for getting off a boat that fits well here. Alternate translation: [Come out of the ark] or [Disembark from the ark]

Support Reference: Go and Come

---

and the wives of your sons with you (ULT)

and your sons’ wives (UST)

Alternate translation: [and their wives]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the ark

UST
- the boat

Genesis 8:17

ULT:
Bring out with you every living thing that {is} with you, all flesh, including the birds and the livestock and every creeper creeping on the earth, so that they will abound on the earth and be fruitful and multiply over the earth."

UST:
Bring out all the animals that {are} with you, all of them, including the birds, tame animals, and every {other} animal that moves on land. Then they can live all over the earth; {yes,} they will have many young and increase {in number} {all} over the earth."

Bring out with you (ULT)

Bring out (UST)

Consider whether "bring" or "take" is more natural here in your language. Alternate translation: [Take with you] or [Take out]

Support Reference: Go and Come

---

every living thing that {is} (ULT)

all the animals that {are} (UST)

Alternate translation: [all the living things that are]

---

with you (ULT)

"אִתָּךְ" (ORIG QUOTE) (UST)

Alternate translation: [with you in the ark] or [in the ark]

---

all flesh (ULT)

all of them (UST)

See how you translated **flesh** in Genesis 7:15–16.

Support Reference: Synecdoche

---

and every creeper creeping (ULT)

and every {other} animal that moves (UST)

The words **every creeper creeping** could mean: (1) "every other creature that moves," which seems to fit this context best since it is general and includes all the land animals that were not birds or livestock. (2) "and every animal that crawls," which is more specific and refers to animals like lizards, snakes, mice, and other animals that travel close to the ground.

Support Reference: Poetry

---

and every creeper creeping (ULT)

and every {other} animal that moves (UST)

For emphasis, the speaker is using a construction in which a verb and its object, **creeper creeping**, come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of showing the emphasis. [and every creature that moves about]

Support Reference: Poetry

---

on the earth (ULT)

on land (UST)

Alternate translation: [on the ground]

---

so that they will abound on the earth (ULT)

Then they can live all over the earth (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then they can spread all over the world]

---

and be fruitful (ULT)

{yes,} they will have many young (UST)

The rest of verse 17 forms a parallelism with **abound on the earth** that emphasizes filling the earth again with animals. Make sure your translation does not sound like this refers to separate events. Alternate translation: [yes, they will have many offspring]

Support Reference: Parallelism

---

and multiply (ULT)

and increase {in number} (UST)

See how you translated **be fruitful** and **multiply** in Genesis 1:22, 28. Alternate translation: [and become very many]

---

over the earth (ULT)

{all} over the earth (UST)

Alternate translation: [all over the world] or [throughout the earth]

---

including the birds and the livestock (ULT)

including the birds, tame animals (UST)

Alternate translation: [including the birds, domestic animals]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and the livestock
- the earth
- on the earth
- and be fruitful
- and multiply
- the earth

UST

- tame animals
- land
- all over the earth
- {yes,} they will have many young
- and increase {in number}
- the earth

Genesis 8:18

ULT:
Then Noah went out, and his sons and his wife and the wives of his sons with him.

UST:
So Noah came out {of the boat}, along with his wife and his sons and their wives.

Then Noah went out (ULT)

So Noah came out {of the boat} (UST)

In a context such as this, your language might say "came" instead of **went**. Alternate translation: [So Noah disembarked from the ark] or [Then Noah got off the ark]

Support Reference: Go and Come

---

and his sons and his wife and the wives of his sons with him (ULT)

along with his wife and his sons and their wives (UST)

See how you translated this list of Noah's family members (and similar lists) in Genesis 6:18, 7:7, and 8:16. Notice that the order of the people in this list varies in the Hebrew text, perhaps depending on who is in focus in each context. Alternate translation: [together with his wife and his sons and their wives]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Noah

UST
- Noah

Genesis 8:19

ULT:
Every living thing, every crawling thing and every bird, everything moving on the earth, went out of the ark by their families.

UST:
All the animals, {including} all the animals that crawl and all the birds {and} everything {else} that lives on land, {also} came out of the boat in groups of their own kind.

Every living thing (ULT)

All the animals (UST)

Alternate translation: [Every living creature]

---

every crawling thing (ULT)

{including} all the animals that crawl (UST)

Alternate translation: [including every animal that crawls] or [including all the creatures that crawl]

---

everything (ULT)

and} everything {else} (UST)

Alternate translation: [yes, every creature]

---

moving on the earth (ULT)

that lives on land (UST)

This phrase refers here to the land masses of **the earth** but not the entire planet. See how you translated this phrase in verse 17. Alternate translation: [that moves on the ground] or [that moves along the ground]

---

went out of the ark (ULT)

{also} came out of the boat (UST)

Consider again how you translated “go” and “went” and “bring” in verses 16–19. Notice that your choices are affected by your perspective: whether the viewpoint is from inside the ark or whether the viewpoint is from outside the ark. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [also came out of the ark]

Support Reference: Go and Come

---

by their families (ULT)

in groups of their own kind (UST)

Alternate translation: [grouped by their kinds] or [one family after another]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the earth
- the ark

UST

- land
- the boat

Genesis 8:20

ULT:
Then Noah built an altar to Yahweh, and he took from every clean animal and from every clean bird, and he offered burnt offerings on the altar.

UST:
Then Noah made an altar {out of large stones} {to offer sacrifices} to Yahweh. Next he chose {some} of every {kind of} animal and bird that is acceptable to sacrifice, and he {killed them and} burned {their bodies} on the altar as an offering {to Yahweh} {to worship him}.

to Yahweh (ULT)

{to offer sacrifices} to Yahweh (UST)

Alternate translation: [dedicated to Yahweh] or [to worship Yahweh]

---

and he took (ULT)

Next he chose (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then he chose]

---

and he offered burnt offerings on the altar (ULT)

and he {killed them and} burned {their bodies} on the altar as an offering {to Yahweh} {to worship him} (UST)

When animals were sacrificed, they were killed first, not burned alive. Consider whether or not you need to make that information explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: [and he killed them and offered them as burnt offerings to Yahweh on the altar] or [and he killed them and burned their bodies on the altar as gifts to Yahweh to honor him]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Noah
- an altar
- to Yahweh
- animal
- burnt offerings
- on the altar

UST

- Noah
- an altar {out of large stones}
- {to offer sacrifices} to Yahweh
- animal
- as an offering {to Yahweh} {to worship him}
- on the altar

Genesis 8:21

ULT:
And Yahweh smelled the pleasant aroma, and Yahweh said in his heart, "Never again will I curse the ground because of mankind, though the inclination of mankind's hearts {is} evil from their youth. And never again will I strike every living {thing} as I have done.

UST:
Yahweh smelled the aroma {of the offerings} and was pleased, and he thought to himself, "Never again will I curse the ground because of mankind{'s sins}, {even} though everything they desire and think about {is} evil from the time they are children. And never again will I destroy all living {creatures} the way I {just} did.

And Yahweh smelled the pleasant aroma (ULT)

Yahweh smelled the aroma {of the offerings} and was pleased (UST)

Alternate translation: [Yahweh smelled the sweet smell of the sacrifices] or [When Yahweh smelled the aroma of the sacrifices, he was pleased]

---

and Yahweh said in his heart (ULT)

and he thought to himself (UST)

Consider whether or not your language has this common expression or a similar common expression that would work well here. Alternate translation: [so he said to himself]

Support Reference: Idiom

Never again will I curse the ground (ULT)

Never … will I curse the ground (UST)

Make sure that your translation of **curse** does not imply the use of magic. Alternate translation: [I will never again curse the earth]

---

because of mankind (ULT)

because of mankind{'s sins} (UST)

Alternate translation: [to punish mankind for their sins]

---

though the inclination of mankind's hearts {is} evil (ULT)

{even} though everything they desire and think about {is} evil (UST)

See how you translated **inclination** in a similar phrase in Genesis 6:5. Alternate translation: [even though the desires of their hearts are evil] or [even though everything they desire is evil]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

from their youth (ULT)

from the time they are children (UST)

Alternate translation: [from youth onward] or [from the time they are young]

And never again will I (ULT)

And never again will I (UST)

Alternate translation: [I will never again] or [Nor will I ever again]

---

strike (ULT)

destroy (UST)

Consider whether your language has this common expression or a similar expression that fits well here. Alternate translation: [kill]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

every living {thing} (ULT)

all living {creatures} (UST)

Alternate translation: [every living creature] or [all living things]

---

as I have done (ULT)

the way I {just} did (UST)

Alternate translation: [as I just did]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- mankind
- mankind
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- curse
- {is} evil

UST

- everything they desire and think about
- mankind{'s sins}
- Yahweh
- יְהוָֹה (ORIG QUOTE)
- curse

- {is} evil

Genesis 8:22

ULT:
While all of the days of the earth continue, seed time and harvest, and cold and heat, and summer and winter, and day and night shall not cease.”

UST:
As long as the earth {still} exists, {each year} there will always be a season to plant seeds and a season to harvest {crops}, as well as cold weather and hot weather, summer and winter, and day and night.”

While all of the days of the earth continue (ULT)

As long as the earth {still} exists (UST)

Alternate translation: [As long as the earth still lasts]

---

seed time (ULT)

a season to plant seeds (UST)

Alternate translation: [seed-planting time] or [the time for planting seeds]

---

and harvest (ULT)

and a season to harvest {crops} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and harvest time] or [the time for gathering crops]

---

and cold and heat (ULT)

as well as cold weather and hot weather (UST)

These terms form a parallelism with **summer and winter**. If possible, it is best to keep both parts of the parallelism in your translation since each part has a different emphasis. Alternate translation: [cold season and hot season]

Support Reference: Parallelism

---

and summer and winter (ULT)

summer and winter (UST)

The seasons of summer and winter may be described differently depending on which part of the world your language area is located in. For example, some translations might use the terms “dry season” and “wet season,” depending on what best corresponds to summer and winter in that area.

---

shall not cease (ULT)

{each year} there will always be (UST)

It may be more natural to change the order of this sentence and say, “As long as the earth exists, each year there will always be a season to plant seeds and a time to harvest crops, as well as cold weather and hot weather, winter and summer, and day and night.” Alternate translation: [will never stop] or [will always continue to occur each year]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the days of
- the earth

- seed time
- and harvest
- and day

UST

- As long as the earth {still} exists
- As long as the earth {still} exists
- a season to plant seeds
- and a season to harvest {crops}
- and day

Genesis 9

Genesis 9:1

ULT:
Then God blessed Noah and his sons and said to them, "Be fruitful and multiply and fill the earth.

UST:
Then God caused Noah and his sons to prosper by saying to them, "Have many children so that you {and your descendants} will become numerous and live all over the earth.

and said to them (ULT)

by saying to them (UST)

The phrase "blessed … and said" is a Hebrew expression that refers to one event and emphasizes it. It does not refer to two separate events. The words of the blessing are in verses 1–7. See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 1:28. Alternate translation: [He said]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Be fruitful (ULT)

Have many children (UST)

Alternate translation: [Bear many children] or [You will bear many children]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and multiply (ULT)

so that you {and your descendants} will become numerous (UST)

See how you translated “be fruitful and multiply and fill the earth” in Genesis 1:28. Alternate translation: [so that you and your descendants will increase greatly in number] or [so that you and your descendants will become very many]

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

---

and fill the earth (ULT)

and live all over the earth (UST)

Alternate translation: [and fill the earth with people] or [and inhabit the whole earth] or [and live everywhere on the world]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then … blessed
- God
- Noah
- Be fruitful
- and multiply
- the earth

UST

- Then … caused … to prosper
- God
- Noah
- Have many children
- so that you {and your descendants} will become numerous
- the earth

Genesis 9:2

ULT:
And the fear of you and the dread of you will be on every living thing of the earth, including on every bird of the sky, on everything that moves on the ground, and on all the fish of the sea. Into your hand they are given.

UST:
Every living creature on the earth will be afraid and terrified of you, including every bird {that flies} in the sky, {along} with every creature that moves on land, and all the fish in the ocean. I have put them {all} under your authority.

And the fear of you and the dread of you will be on every living thing of the earth (ULT)

Every living creature on the earth will be afraid and terrified of you (UST)

The phrase **the fear of you and the dread of you** repeats the same idea in two different ways to emphasize how afraid the creatures will be. For some languages it may be better to combine the phrase and say "very afraid." Alternate translation: [Every living thing on the earth will be afraid and terrified of you] or [All the animals on earth will be very afraid of you]

Support Reference: Doublet

---

including on every bird of (ULT)

including every bird {that flies} in (UST)

It might seem that the phrase **bird of the sky** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you can shorten it. Consider again how you translated "birds of the sky" earlier in the book of Genesis; see 1:26, 28,30; 2:19–20; 6:7; 7:3, and 7:23. Alternate translation: [including every flying bird] or [including all the birds]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

---

on everything that moves on the ground (ULT)

{along} with every creature that moves on land (UST)

Alternate translation: [along with every animal that lives on land] or [as well as all animals that live on land]

---

and on all the fish of the sea (ULT)

and all the fish in the ocean (UST)

Alternate translation: [and all the fish in the sea]

Into your hand they are given (ULT)

I have put them {all} under your authority (UST)

The common expression **Into your hand** means God was again giving mankind the responsibility to manage and control all the rest of what God had created. Consider whether your language has a similar expression that would work well here. Alternate translation: [Into your control they are placed]

Support Reference: Idiom

Into your hand they are given (ULT)

I have put them {all} under your authority (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context suggests that it is God. Alternate translation: [I have put you in charge of them all]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And the fear of you
- and the dread of you
- the earth
- the sky

UST

- will be afraid and terrified of you
- will be afraid and terrified of you
- the earth
- the sky

Genesis 9:3

ULT:
Every moving creature that lives will be for you for food. Just as the green plants, I give you everything.

UST:
{From now on} every creature that is alive and moves is yours {to eat} as food. In the same way that {I provided you} green plants {for food}, {now} I provide you everything {for food}.

Every moving creature that lives (ULT)

{From now on} every creature that is alive and moves (UST)

See how you translated “every moving creature” in Genesis 1:26, and see the note about that there. It may be necessary to translate this phrase in different ways in different contexts. Alternate translation: [From now on every kind of living thing that moves] or [From now on every animal that is alive and moves]

---

will be for you for food (ULT)

is yours {to eat} as food (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to change the order of this sentence and say, “You may now have/eat any kind of living creature that moves, for food.” or “I now permit you to eat every kind of living creature that moves.” Alternate translation: [is available for you to eat as food]

Support Reference: Information Structure

Just as the green plants (ULT)

In the same way that {I provided you} green plants {for food} (UST)

Consider again how you translated **green plants** in Genesis 1:30 and how you translated **plants** in Genesis 1:11–12, 1:19, 2:5, 3:18. and 9:3. Alternate translation: [plants to eat]

I give you everything (ULT)

now} I provide you everything {for food} (UST)

Make sure that the way you translate this phrase means that God is now permitting people to eat both plants and animals. Alternate translation: [now I give you everything for food] or [so now I permit you to eat everything] or [so now I permit you to eat both plants and animals]

Genesis 9:4

ULT:
But you must not eat flesh with its life, {that is,} its blood.

UST:
However, you must never eat meat that still has its blood {in it}, which made it live.

But (ULT)

However (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that God is not contradicting himself here, but rather he is giving an exception to what he said in verse 3. God is putting a limit on the way that people may eat meat. Alternate translation: [You may eat meat, but not when it still has the blood of life in it]

Support Reference: Connect — Exception Clauses

---

you must not eat flesh (ULT)

you must never eat meat (UST)

Alternate translation: [you must never eat animal flesh]

---

with its life, {that is,} its blood (ULT)

that still has its blood {in it}, which made it live (UST)

Since life is in the blood, God did not want people to eat meat that still had its blood in it. Rather he wanted them to drain it out first before they cooked it (also see Deuteronomy 12:16, 23). You could put that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [that still has its life in

it, which is in its blood] or [with its blood in it, which made it live] or [that still has its lifeblood in it]

Genesis 9:5

ULT:
And surely I will demand your blood for your lives. From the hand of every living thing I will demand it, and from the hand of mankind; from the hand of a man {who kills} his brother, I will demand the life of the man.

UST:
Also, I definitely require that anyone who murders someone must die. {In fact,} if any animal {kills a human being}, I require that it must die. {That is also true} for human beings: If anyone {murders} another person, I require that he must die.

And surely I will demand your blood for your lives (ULT)

Also, I definitely require that anyone who murders someone must die (UST)

Alternate translation: [Also, I will definitely require an accounting for your lifeblood]

From the hand of every living thing (ULT)

In fact,} if any animal {kills a human being} (UST)

In this verse, the phrase **the hand of** refers to the animal or the person that is responsible for killing someone. Alternate translation: [From any animal that kills a person]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

I will demand it (ULT)

I require that it must die (UST)

Alternate translation: [I will demand its blood] or [I require it to be killed] or [I demand that it must die]

---

and from the hand of mankind (ULT)

{That is also true} for human beings (UST)

Alternate translation: [and that is also true for human beings]

---

from the hand of a man {who kills} (ULT)

If anyone {murders} (UST)

Alternate translation: [If a man kills] or [If anyone kills]

---

his brother (ULT)

another person (UST)

This phrase is used here as a general reference to any human being, not just biological brothers. Alternate translation: [a fellow human being]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

I will demand the life of the man (ULT)

I require that he must die (UST)

Alternate translation: [I require him to be executed] or [I demand that he must die]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the man
- mankind
- I will demand

- I will demand it
- I will demand

UST

- that he must die
- {That is also true} for human beings
- I … require
- I require that it must die
- I require

Genesis 9:6

ULT:
The one shedding the blood of a man, by mankind his blood must be shed, because in the image of God he made mankind.

UST:
{That's right,} you must put to death anyone who murders a human being, because God made human beings to be like himself.

The one shedding (ULT)

That's right … anyone who murders (UST)

The first half of verse 6 repeats and summarizes verse 5. These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. Hebrew poetry was based on this kind of repetition, and it would be good to show this to your readers by including both phrases in your translation rather than combining them. Alternate translation: [Yes, if anyone]

Support Reference: Parallelism

The one shedding the blood of (ULT)

That's right … anyone who murders (UST)

The phrase **shedding the blood of** is a common expression that means deliberately killing someone. Blood is an important concept in this passage and throughout the Bible, so if possible, it is best to keep this term in your translation. If that is not possible, you should put the literal text in a footnote. Alternate translation: [Yes, if anyone kills] or [Whoever takes the life of]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

a man (ULT)

a human being (UST)

Alternate translation: [a person] or [another human being] or [someone]

---

by mankind his blood must be shed (ULT)

you must put to death (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, “That’s right, you must put to death anyone who murders a human being, because I, God, made human beings in my own image.” Alternate translation: [Yes, by people the blood of this man must be shed]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

by mankind his blood must be shed (ULT)

you must put to death (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context suggests that it is God. Alternate translation: [people must execute him] or [people must put him to death] or [mankind must execute him]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

because in the image of God he made mankind (ULT)

because God made human beings to be like himself (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that God is referring to himself in this clause. See how you translated a similar clause in Genesis 1:27. Alternate translation: [because I, God made people in my own image] or [because I created human beings to be like myself]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- mankind
- by mankind
- a man
- in the image of
- God

UST

- human beings
- you must put to death
- a human being
- God made … to be like himself
- God made … to be like himself

Genesis 9:7

ULT:
And you, be fruitful and multiply. Abound on the earth and multiply on it.”

UST:
Now {as for} you, have many children so that you {and your descendants} will become numerous. Spread out all over the earth and become numerous everywhere.”

And you (ULT)

Now {as for} you (UST)

In the Hebrew text, the pronoun **you** is emphatic and has an emphatic position in the sentence (before the verb) to introduce a new topic. Consider what is the best way in your language to begin a new paragraph like this. Alternate translation: [And as for you] or [As for you]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

be fruitful (ULT)

have many children (UST)

See how you translated **be fruitful and multiply** in verse 1. Alternate translation: [bear many children]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and multiply (ULT)

so that you {and your descendants} will become numerous (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that you and your descendants become very many] or [so that you have many descendants] or [and increase in numbers]

Abound on the earth (ULT)

Spread out all over the earth (UST)

Alternate translation: [Live all over the earth]

---

on it (ULT)

everywhere (UST)

Alternate translation: [throughout it]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- be fruitful
- and multiply
- on the earth
- and multiply

UST

- have many children
- so that you {and your descendants} will become numerous
- all over the earth
- and become numerous

Genesis 9:8

ULT:
Then God said to Noah and to his sons with him, saying,

UST:
Then God said to Noah and his sons,

Then God said (ULT)

Then God said (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then God continued speaking]

---

to Noah and to his sons with him, saying (ULT)

to Noah and his sons (UST)

God is still speaking to the same people. This phrase emphasizes what he says next to them.
Alternate translation: [to Noah and his sons, who were with him] or [to them]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- God
- Noah

UST
- God
- Noah

Genesis 9:9

ULT:
"And I, behold, I am establishing my covenant with you and with your offspring after you,

UST:
"Listen {carefully} to me: I am making my agreement with you and your descendants.

And I, behold, I (ULT)

Listen {carefully} to me (UST)

See how you translated **behold** in Genesis 1:29, 4:14, and 6:13, 17. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [Now listen carefully to me: I]

Support Reference: Metaphor

---

am establishing (ULT)

I am making (UST)

See how you translated "establish my covenant with" in Genesis 6:18, and see the note about that there. Alternate translation: [am instituting] or [am setting up]

---

my covenant with you and with your offspring after you (ULT)

my agreement with you and your descendants (UST)

Notice that the pronouns **you** and **your** are plural throughout verses 2–15 since God is speaking to Noah and his sons. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [my special agreement with you and your descendants who come after you] or [my covenant between me and you and your offspring]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- my covenant
- your offspring

UST

- my agreement
- your descendants

Genesis 9:10

ULT:
and with every living creature that {is} with you: with the birds, with the livestock, and with every living thing of the earth with you, from all that came out of the ark to every living thing of the earth.

UST:
{It is} also with all the living creatures that {are} with you, including the birds, the livestock, and all the {other} living creatures on the earth {that are} with you. {That includes} all {those} that came out of the ark and all the living creatures {that will ever live} on the earth.

and with every living thing of the earth (ULT)

and all the {other} living creatures on the earth (UST)

Alternate translation: [and all the other living things on the earth] or [and all the wild animals]

---

from all that came out of the ark (ULT)

{That includes} all {those} that came out of the ark (UST)

The phrases **from all** and **to every** are used to emphasize that all the animals are included in God's covenant. Consider what is the best way to express that in your language. Alternate translation: [That includes all those that went out of the ark]

---

to every living thing (ULT)

and all the living creatures {that will ever live} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and all the living things] or [and all the animals]

---

living thing of the earth (ULT)

the {other} living creatures on the earth (UST)

Alternate translation: [that live on the earth]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- with the livestock
- the earth
- the ark
- of the earth

UST

- the livestock
- the earth
- the ark
- on the earth

Genesis 9:11

ULT:
And I am establishing my covenant with you that never again will all flesh be cut off by the waters of a flood, and never again will there be a flood to destroy the earth.”

UST:
My agreement that I am making with you is that never again will all living things die from a flood. I will not use a flood ever again to destroy {everything on} the earth.”

that never again will all flesh be cut off (ULT)

is that never again will all living things die (UST)

The phrase **all flesh** refers here to all people and animals. Alternate translation: [that never again will all life be cut off] or [that never again will all living creatures be killed]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

---

will … be cut off (ULT)

will … die (UST)

Alternate translation: [be killed by] or [be wiped out by]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

by the waters of a flood (ULT)

from a flood (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 7:10 Alternate translation: [by water from a flood]

---

to destroy (ULT)

to destroy (UST)

See how you translated “destroying” in Genesis 7:21. Alternate translation: [that destroys]

---

the earth (ULT)

{everything on} the earth (UST)

This phrase refers here to everything that lives on the earth. Alternate translation: [life on the earth] or [all living creatures on the earth]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- my covenant
- a flood
- a flood
- to destroy
- the earth

UST

- My agreement
- from a flood
- a flood
- to destroy
- {everything on} the earth

Genesis 9:12

ULT:
Then God said, "This {is} the sign of the covenant that I am making between me and you and every living creature that {is} with you, for generations forever:

UST:
Then God continued, "This {is} how I will show {everyone} that I have made this agreement with you and with all the living creatures that {are} with you, as well as with all the people and animals that will ever live:

Then God said (ULT)

Then God continued (UST)

God is still talking to the same people, but a quote margin, **Then God said**, is added here to emphasize the new topic, **the sign of the covenant**. For some languages it is more natural to leave this quote margin implied and just have a paragraph break. See what you did for a similar case in verse 9:8. Alternate translation: [Then God also said to them] or [Then God added]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

This {is} the sign of the covenant that I am making (ULT)

This {is} how I will show {everyone} that I have made this agreement (UST)

Alternate translation: [This is how I will remind everyone that I have made this covenant]

---

for generations forever (ULT)

as well as with all the people and animals that will ever live (UST)

Alternate translation: [for all future generations:] or [and with all generations to come] or [as well as with all the people and creatures that will ever live]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- the sign of
- the covenant
- for generations
- forever

UST

- God
- how I will show {everyone}
- that I have made this agreement
- as well as with all the people and animals that will ever live
- as well as with all the people and animals that will ever live

Genesis 9:13

ULT:
I have set my rainbow in the clouds, and it will be the sign of the covenant between me and the earth.

UST:
I will put my rainbow among the clouds {in the sky} to remind {everyone} that I have made this agreement with {every creature that lives on} the earth.

I have set my rainbow (ULT)

I will put my rainbow (UST)

Alternate translation: [I have put my rainbow] or [I am placing my rainbow]

---

the covenant between me and (ULT)

that I have made this agreement with (UST)

Alternate translation: [the covenant that I made with] or [my pledge to always keep my covenant with]

---

the earth (ULT)

{every creature that lives on} the earth (UST)

Here, **the earth** refers to mankind and all the animals. See how you translated the same phrase in verse 9:11. Alternate translation: [every living thing on the earth]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

and it will be the sign of (ULT)

to remind {everyone} (UST)

See how you translated **the sign of the covenant** in verse 9:12. Alternate translation: [where it will show everyone] or [to show everyone] or [and it will serve as the sign which shows]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- my rainbow
- the sign of
- the covenant
- the earth

UST

- my rainbow
- to remind {everyone}
- that I have made this agreement with
- {every creature that lives on} the earth

Genesis 9:14

ULT:
And it will be when I bring clouds over the earth and the rainbow is seen in the clouds,

UST:
So whenever I cause clouds to form {in the sky} above the earth and a rainbow appears in the clouds,

And it will be when I bring clouds (ULT)

So whenever I cause clouds to form {in the sky} (UST)

Alternate translation: [So it will happen that whenever I bring clouds together] or [So whenever I cause clouds to appear]

---

over the earth (ULT)

above the earth (UST)

Alternate translation: [in the sky over the earth]

---

and the rainbow is seen in the clouds (ULT)

and a rainbow appears in the clouds (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to use a passive or active verb here. Alternate translation: [and a rainbow forms among the clouds] or [and you see a rainbow among the clouds]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the earth
- the rainbow

UST

- the earth
- a rainbow

Genesis 9:15

ULT:
then I will remember my covenant that {is} between me and you and every living creature of all flesh, and never again will waters become a flood to destroy all flesh.

UST:
then I will not forget {to keep} my agreement that I have established with you and with all living creatures of every kind. {I promise} that I will never again use a flood to destroy all living creatures.

then I will remember my covenant (ULT)

then I will not forget {to keep} my agreement (UST)

See how you translated **remember** in Genesis 8:1. It may need to be translated differently in different contexts. Alternate translation: [then I will remember and keep my covenant] or [then I will not forget to keep my treaty]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

that {is} between me and you (ULT)

that I have established with you (UST)

Alternate translation: [that I have made between me and you] or [that I have made with you]

---

and never again will waters become a flood to destroy (ULT)

{I promise} that I will never again use a flood to destroy (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that this last clause in verse 15 is what God promised in his covenant. Alternate translation: [that never again will there be a flood that destroys] or [I vow that never again will I use a flood to destroy]

---

of all flesh (ULT)

of every kind (UST)

Alternate translation: [all life] or [all people and animals]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- my covenant
- a flood
- to destroy

UST

- my agreement
- a flood
- to destroy

Genesis 9:16

ULT:
So the rainbow will be in the clouds, and I will see it to remember the everlasting covenant between God and every living creature, with all flesh that {is} on the earth.”

UST:
Yes, whenever a rainbow appears in the clouds, I will see it and keep {my} permanent agreement which I have established with all people and all animals that {live} on the earth.”

So the rainbow will be (ULT)

Yes, whenever a rainbow appears (UST)

In verse 16, God repeats and emphasizes what he said in verses 12–15. Alternate translation: [So whenever a rainbow forms] or [That is how it will be: Whenever there is a rainbow]

---

in the clouds (ULT)

in the clouds (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verses 9:13–14. Alternate translation: [among the clouds]

---

and I will see it (ULT)

I will see it (UST)

Alternate translation: [and I will look at it]

---

to remember (ULT)

and keep (UST)

See how you translated **remember** in verse 15. Alternate translation: [and fulfill] or [and not forget to keep]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

between God and (ULT)

which I have established with (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that God is referring to himself here. Alternate translation: [between me and] or [which I have made with]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

---

every living creature, with all flesh (ULT)

all people and all animals (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 15 and how you translated **every living creature** in verses 10 and 12. Alternate translation: [all living beings of every kind]

---

that {is} on the earth (ULT)

that {live} on the earth (UST)

Alternate translation: [that are on the earth] or [that live in the world]

---

the everlasting covenant (ULT)

{my} permanent agreement (UST)

Alternate translation: [my permanent covenant] or [my covenant that lasts forever] or [my covenant that never ends]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the rainbow
- the … covenant
- everlasting
- God
- the earth

UST

- a rainbow
- agreement
- {my} permanent
- which I have established with
- the earth

Genesis 9:17

ULT:
Then God said to Noah, "That {is} the sign of the covenant that I have established between me and all flesh that {is} on the earth."

UST:
Then God {concluded} by saying to Noah, "A rainbow {is} what I will use to remind {everyone} that I have made this agreement with all the people and animals that {live} on the earth."

Then God said to Noah (ULT)

Then God {concluded} by saying to Noah (UST)

Alternate translation: [Finally, God said to Noah] or [Then God finished by saying to Noah]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

---

all flesh that {is} on the earth (ULT)

all the people and animals that {live} on the earth (UST)

Consider again how you translated **all flesh** when it includes people and animals. See Gen 6:12–13, 6:17; 7:21, 9:11, and 9:15–17. It may be necessary to translate this phrase in different ways in different contexts. Alternate translation: [all living creatures] or [all the people and creatures that are on the earth]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- God
- Noah
- the sign of
- the covenant
- the earth

UST
- God

- Noah
- what I will use to remind {everyone}
- that I have made this agreement
- the earth

Genesis 9:18

ULT:
And the sons of Noah who came out of the ark were Shem and Ham and Japheth; and Ham, he {was} the father of Canaan.

UST:
Noah's sons who came out of the boat {after the flood} were Shem, Ham, and Japheth; it was Ham who {was} Canaan's father.

who came out of the ark (ULT)

who came out of the boat {after the flood} (UST)

Be consistent here with how you translated "ark/boat" in chapters 6–8, and see the note about this at Genesis 6:14. Alternate translation: [who went out from the ark after the flood] or [who disembarked from the vessel] or [who got off the big boat]

And … were Shem and Ham and Japheth (ULT)

were Shem, Ham, and Japheth (UST)

Consider what is the best way to list names in your language.

---

and Ham, he (ULT)

it was Ham who (UST)

The pronoun **he** is emphatic here, emphasizing that Ham was the father of Canaan, who is probably mentioned here because he was well known as the ancestor of the Canaanites and the one whom the land of Canaan was named after. Alternate translation: [Ham was the one who]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

{was} the father of Canaan (ULT)

{was} Canaan's father (UST)

Alternate translation: [fathered Canaan]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Noah
- the ark
- Shem
- and Ham
- and Japheth
- and Ham
- Canaan

UST

- Noah
- the boat {after the flood}
- Shem
- Ham
- and Japheth
- it was Ham
- Canaan

Genesis 9:19

ULT:
Those three {were} the sons of Noah, and from them the whole earth was overspread.

UST:
It was the descendants of Noah's three sons who populated the entire earth {again}.

(There are no notes for this verse)

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Noah
- was overspread
- the … earth

UST

- Noah
- who populated … again
- the … earth

Genesis 9:20

ULT:
Now Noah, a man of the soil, began and planted a vineyard.

UST:
After a while, Noah, who was a farmer, planted {some} grape vines {and made wine from the grapes}.

Now Noah, a man of the soil, began and planted (ULT)

After a while, Noah, who was a farmer, planted (UST)

Consider what is the best way in your language to introduce or begin a new episode here. The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) “who was a farmer, began farming and planted” or “who was a farmer, was the first man to plant” or (2) “began to be a farmer and planted” or “became a farmer and planted” Alternate translation: [Now later on, Noah]

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

---

a vineyard (ULT)

some} grape vines {and made wine from the grapes} (UST)

It is implied that Noah made wine from the grapes (verse 21). If necessary, you could make that explicit here. Also, if grapes are not known in your language area, you could say “vines with a fruit called grapes,” or you could put in a footnote information about grapes, including how they are squeezed and how the juice is fermented to make wine. Alternate translation: [some grapevines and made wine from the grapes] or [a field with grapevines. And he made wine from the grapes]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Noah

- and planted
- a vineyard

UST

- Noah
- planted
- some} grape vines {and made wine from the grapes}

Genesis 9:21

ULT:
Then he drank some of the wine, and he became drunk, and he uncovered himself inside his tent.

UST:
Then {one day} he drank {too much of} the wine, so that he became drunk and was {lying} naked inside his tent.

Then he drank some of the wine (ULT)

Then {one day} he drank {too much of} the wine (UST)

Alternate translation: [One day he drank a lot of the wine]

---

and he became drunk, and he uncovered himself (ULT)

so that he became drunk and was {lying} naked (UST)

It is implied from verse 24 that Noah had fallen asleep. Alternate translation: [so that he became so intoxicated that he fell asleep uncovered]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

inside his tent (ULT)

inside his tent (UST)

See how you translated **tent** in Genesis 4:20

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the wine

- and he became drunk
- his tent

UST

- the wine
- so that he became drunk
- his tent

Genesis 9:22

ULT:
Then Ham, the father of Canaan, saw the nakedness of his father, and he told his two brothers outside.

UST:
Ham, {who was} Canaan's father, saw that his father was naked, and he went outside and told his two brothers {about it}.

the nakedness of his father (ULT)

that his father was naked (UST)

Alternate translation: [that his father was uncovered]

---

and he told his two brothers outside (ULT)

and he went outside and told his two brothers {about it} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he went out and told his two brothers that their father was drunk and naked]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Ham
- Canaan
- and he told

UST

- Ham
- Canaan
- and he … told … about it

Genesis 9:23

ULT:
But Shem and Japheth took a garment, and laid it across the shoulders of the two of them and walked backward and covered the nakedness of their father. And their faces were turned away, so that they did not see the nakedness of their father.

UST:
However, Shem and Japheth took a robe, and held it {between them} at shoulder level and walked backward {into the tent} and covered their father's naked body {with it}. {As they did that,} they kept their faces turned away {from him} so that they would not see him naked.

But Shem and Japheth took (ULT)

However, Shem and Japheth took (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Shem and Japheth took]

---

a garment (ULT)

a robe (UST)

This garment would have probably been fairly large, big enough to cover Noah's body.
Alternate translation: [a cloak]

---

and laid it across the shoulders of the two of them (ULT)

and held it {between them} at shoulder level (UST)

Alternate translation: [put it between them over their shoulders]

---

and walked backward (ULT)

and walked backward {into the tent} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and went backward into the tent]

---

and covered the nakedness of their father (ULT)

and covered their father's naked body {with it} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and used it to cover their naked father]

And their faces were turned away (ULT)

As they did that,} they kept their faces turned away {from him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [As they did that, they kept their eyes looking away from him] or [As they did that, they looked away from him]

---

so that they did not see the nakedness of their father (ULT)

so that they would not see him naked (UST)

Consider whether it is better here in your language to refer to Noah with a noun phrase or a pronoun. Alternate translation: [so that they did not see his nakedness] or [so that they did not see him naked]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Shem
- and Japheth

UST

- Shem
- and Japheth

Genesis 9:24

ULT:
Then Noah woke up from his wine, and he learned what his youngest son had done to him,

UST:
Later Noah woke up from being drunk, and he found out that his youngest son {Ham} had dishonored him.

Then Noah woke up (ULT)

Later Noah woke up (UST)

Alternate translation: [Later he woke up]

---

from his wine (ULT)

from being drunk (UST)

Alternate translation: [sober from the effects of the wine] or [sober]

---

and he learned (ULT)

and he found out (UST)

The text does not say how Noah found out about this, so it is best to not be too specific about that here in your translation. Alternate translation: [and he heard about]

---

what his youngest son had done to him (ULT)

that his youngest son {Ham} had dishonored him (UST)

Alternate translation: [that his youngest son Ham had disrespected him]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Noah
- from his wine
- and he learned

UST

- Noah
- from being drunk
- and he found out

Genesis 9:25

ULT:
and he said, “Cursed be Canaan! He will be a slave of slaves for his brothers.”

UST:
So he exclaimed {about him}, “I {ask God to} curse {Ham’s son} Canaan! Canaan will be the lowest servant for his relatives.”

and he said (ULT)

So he exclaimed {about him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [So he exclaimed about Ham]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Cursed be (ULT)

I {ask God to} curse (UST)

Alternate translation: [I hereby ask God to curse] or [May God curse]

Canaan (ULT)

{Ham’s son} Canaan (UST)

In verses 25–27, Canaan probably represents Ham and all of Ham’s descendants (the Canaanites), who will serve Shem and Japheth and all their descendants. You could put that information in a footnote.

Support Reference: Metonymy

He will be (ULT)

Canaan will be (UST)

Alternate translation: [I proclaim that he will be]

---

a slave of slaves (ULT)

the lowest servant (UST)

The Hebrew word here can mean either **slave** or "servant." Slaves in the Old Testament were usually treated well and were not much different than servants, sometimes even becoming like members of their owner's family. But they were of lower status than their masters, which is part of how Ham's family is being cursed. Alternate translation: [the lowest slave]

---

for his brothers (ULT)

for his relatives (UST)

Verses 26 and 27 show that **his brothers** probably refers here to Shem and Japheth (who were Canaan's uncles) and their descendants.

Support Reference: Kinship

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Cursed be
- Canaan
- a slave of
- slaves

UST
- I {ask God to} curse
- {Ham's son} Canaan
- the lowest servant

- the lowest servant

Genesis 9:26

ULT:
Then he said, "Praised be Yahweh, the God of Shem! And may Canaan be a slave for him.

UST:
Then Noah said, "Praise Yahweh, {who is} the God {who takes care} of Shem! May God cause Canaan to be Shem's servant.

Then he said (ULT)

Then Noah said (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then he also said] or [He also said]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

Praised be Yahweh (ULT)

Praise Yahweh (UST)

Although many English translations have "Blessed be" here instead of **Praised be**, the word used in the Hebrew text means "praise" when people are acting towards God (as here), and it means "bless" when God is acting towards people (as in Genesis 1:28; 5:2; 9:1). Alternate translation: [I praise Yahweh]

Support Reference: Blessings

---

the God of Shem (ULT)

{who is} the God {who takes care} of Shem (UST)

Alternate translation: [who is the God whom Shem worships]

And may Canaan be (ULT)

May God cause Canaan to be (UST)

Alternate translation: [May he cause Canaan to be] or [May he make Canaan] or [I ask him to make Canaan]

---

a slave for him (ULT)

Shem's servant (UST)

Alternate translation: [a servant for him]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Praised be
- Yahweh
- the God of
- Shem
- Canaan
- a slave

UST

- Praise
- Yahweh
- {who is} the God {who takes care} of
- Shem
- Canaan
- s servant

Genesis 9:27

ULT:
May God enlarge Japheth, and may he live in the tents of Shem. And may Canaan be a slave for him.”

UST:
I {also} ask God to give Japheth much {land} and enable him to live together {in peace} with Shem. May God {also} cause Canaan to be Japheth’s servant.”

May God enlarge Japheth (ULT)

I {also} ask God to give Japheth much {land} (UST)

In this context, **Japheth** refers to the territory or land where he lived. Alternate translation: [May God give Japheth more land]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

and may he live (ULT)

and enable him to live (UST)

Alternate translation: [and enable him and his family to live]

---

in the tents of Shem (ULT)

together {in peace} with Shem (UST)

Alternate translation: [together in harmony with Shem and his family] or [peacefully among Shem and his family]

And may Canaan be (ULT)

May God {also} cause Canaan to be (UST)

See how you translated a similar sentence in verse 26. Alternate translation: [I also ask God to make Canaan] or [Canaan will also be]

---

a slave for him (ULT)

Japheth's servant (UST)

Compare how you translated **slave** or "servant" in verses 25–27. Alternate translation: [a servant for him]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- Japheth
- in the tents of
- Shem
- Canaan
- a slave

UST

- God
- Japheth
- together {in peace} with
- Shem
- Canaan
- s servant

Genesis 9:28

ULT:
And after the flood, Noah lived 350 years.

UST:
From {the time that} the flood {began}, Noah lived {another} 350 years,

after the flood (ULT)

From {the time that} the flood {began} (UST)

Notice that this phrase refers to when the flood began, when Noah was 600 years old (Genesis 7:6), not when it ended a year later, when he was 601 years old (Genesis 9:21), since he was 950 when he died (verse 29), not 951. Alternate translation: [after the time that the flood began] or [from the beginning of the flood]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

And … Noah lived 350 years (ULT)

Noah lived {another} 350 years (UST)

Alternate translation: [Noah lived 350 more years]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Noah
- the flood
- 350 years
- 350 years

UST
- Noah
- From {the time that} the flood {began}
- {another} 350 years

- {another} 350 years

Genesis 9:29

ULT:
So all the days of Noah were 950 years, and he died.

UST:
so that he lived a total of 950 years before he died.

So all the days of Noah were (ULT)

so that he lived a total of (UST)

See how you translated Genesis 5:31, which is similar to 9:29. Alternate translation: [so that Noah lived a total of 950 years] or [So all together, Noah lived 950 years]

---

and he died (ULT)

before he died (UST)

Alternate translation: [and then he died]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the days of
- Noah
- 950 years
- 950 years

UST
- so that he lived a total of
- so that he lived a total of
- 950 years
- 950 years

Genesis 10

Genesis 10:1

ULT:
Now these {are} the generations of the sons of Noah: Shem, Ham, and Japheth, and sons were born to them after the flood.

UST:
This is the record of {the names of} Noah's sons Shem, Ham, and Japheth, and the descendants they had after the flood {was over}.

Now these {are} the generations of (ULT)

This is the record of {the names of} (UST)

This sentence begins a new section. Alternate translation: [Here is the list of the names of]

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

---

and sons were born to them (ULT)

and the descendants they had (UST)

The following record includes the names of Noah's sons and grandsons and their descendants (including some of the people groups who came from them). Here, **sons** means "descendants. The author is identifying these people as descendants of their ancestor Noah and his sons. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and their sons and other descendants who were born] or [and the sons they had]

Support Reference: Metaphor

---

after the flood (ULT)

after the flood {was over} (UST)

Alternate translation: [after the flood was gone]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the generations of
- Noah
- Shem
- Ham
- and Japheth
- and … were born
- the flood

UST

- the record of {the names of}
- Noah
- Shem
- Ham
- and Japheth
- and the descendants they had
- the flood {was over}

Genesis 10:2

ULT:
The sons of Japheth {were} Gomer and Magog and Madai and Javan and Tubal and Meshech and Tiras.

UST:
Japheth's sons {were} Gomer, Magog, Madai, Javan, Tubal, Meshech, and Tiras.

The sons of Japheth {were} (ULT)

Japheth's sons {were} (UST)

Throughout this chapter, many translations have a colon (:) instead of **were**.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and Javan
- Japheth {were}
- and Madai
- and Tubal

UST

- Javan
- Japheth
- Madai
- Tubal

Genesis 10:3

ULT:
And the sons of Gomer {were} Ashkenaz and Riphath and Togarmah.

UST:
Gomer's sons {were} Ashkenaz, Riphath, and Togarmah.

(There are no notes for this verse)

Genesis 10:4

ULT:
And the sons of Javan {were} Elishah and Tarshish, the Kittim and the Dodanim.

UST:
Javan's sons {were} Elishah and Tarshish, {and he was the ancestor of} the Kittites and the Dodanites.

And the sons of Javan {were} (ULT)

Javan's sons {were} (UST)

Compare how you translated a similar clause in verses 2 and 3.

Elishah and Tarshish (ULT)

Elishah and Tarshish, {and he was the ancestor of} (UST)

These are the names of Javan's sons, but the next two names are the names of people groups that descended from him. Alternate translation, with no comma following: [named Elishah and Tarshish, and he was the ancestor of]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

the Kittim and the Dodanim (ULT)

the Kittites and the Dodanites (UST)

Most translation teams transliterate people-group names in the Bible, but handle the suffix endings in different ways. For example, you could: (1) transliterate the Hebrew plural suffix "-im"; or (2) use a suffix that your language has for names of people groups (such as "-ites" in English); or (3) translate "-im" as "people" or "people group." Try to be consistent in how you handle people group names throughout this chapter and the rest of the book of Genesis. Alternate translation: [the Kitt people group and the Dodan people group]

Support Reference: Copy or Borrow Words

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Javan {were}
- and Tarshish

UST

- Javan
- and Tarshish, {and he was the ancestor of}

Genesis 10:5

ULT:
From those the coastland peoples spread out into their lands, each with its own language, according to their clans, in their nations.

UST:
From Japheth's {descendants} came the people groups who lived {in regions} near the sea. They moved to different places {and settled} in their {own} territories, and each {group} spoke its own language. They each had their {own} families, which {grew and} became their own people groups.

From those (ULT)

From Japheth's {descendants} came (UST)

This phrase probably refers to Japheth's descendants (verses 2–4), especially since the descendants of his brothers Ham (verse 20) and Shem (verse 31) are summarized in a similar way.

---

the coastland peoples spread out (ULT)

the people groups who lived {in regions} near the sea. They moved to different places {and settled} (UST)

Alternate translation: [came the people groups who lived in regions beside the sea. They moved to different places and settled]

---

into their lands (ULT)

in their {own} territories (UST)

Alternate translation: [in their own regions]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

each with its own language (ULT)

and each {group} spoke its own language (UST)

Alternate translation: [They all spoke their own languages]

---

according to their clans (ULT)

They each had their {own} families (UST)

Here the term **clans** specifically refers to a group of families who are descended from a common ancestor. If your language has a specific word for clans, it would be appropriate to use it here. Alternate translation: [and each of them lived in their own extended families] or [They each had their own family groups]

Support Reference: Kinship

From those the coastland peoples spread out into their lands, each with its own language, according to their clans, in their nations (ULT)

From Japheth's {descendants} came the people groups who lived {in regions} near the sea. They moved to different places {and settled} in their {own} territories, and each {group} spoke its own language. They each had their {own} families, which {grew and} became their own people groups (UST)

for some languages, it may be clearer to change the order of the phrases in this verse. Alternate translation: [Japheth's descendants spread out and settled near the Mediterranean Sea. They all formed their own family groups, which grew and became their own people groups that spoke their own languages and lived in their own territories]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- peoples

- into their lands
- with its own language
- according to their clans
- in their nations

UST

- the people groups
- in their {own} territories
- spoke its own language
- They each had their {own} families
- which {grew and} became their own people groups

Genesis 10:6

ULT:
And the sons of Ham {were} Cush and Mizraim and Put and Canaan.

UST:
Ham's sons {were} Cush, Mizraim, Put, and Canaan.

(There are no notes for this verse)

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Ham {were}
- Cush
- and Mizraim
- and Canaan

UST

- Ham
- Cush
- Mizraim
- and Canaan

Genesis 10:7

ULT:
And the sons of Cush {were} Seba and Havilah and Sabtah and Raamah and Sabteca. And the sons of Raamah {were} Sheba and Dedan.

UST:
Cush's sons {were} Seba, Havilah, Sabtah, Raamah, and Sabtecah. And Raamah's sons {were} Sheba and Dedan.

(There are no notes for this verse)

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Cush {were}
- {were} Sheba

UST
- Cush
- {were} Sheba

Genesis 10:8

ULT:
Cush also fathered Nimrod, who began to be mighty on the earth.

UST:
Cush {also} had {a son named} Nimrod, who was the first {person} on earth to be a powerful {ruler}.

Cush also fathered Nimrod (ULT)

Cush {also} had {a son named} Nimrod (UST)

See how you translated **fathered** in Genesis 6:10, and how you translated a phrase in 10:1 ("were born to") that has a similar meaning. Your language may have its own terms or expressions for these relationships. Alternate translation: [Cush also fathered a son named Nimrod]

Support Reference: Kinship

---

mighty (ULT)

a powerful {ruler} (UST)

There were other mighty men before Nimrod, but apparently he was the first one to have a kingdom (verse 10). Alternate translation: [a powerful warrior] or [a powerful king]

---

on the earth (ULT)

on earth (UST)

For some languages it may be more natural to put this phrase earlier and say, "who was the first man on earth to become a powerful ruler" Alternate translation: [in the world]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

who began to be (ULT)

who was the first {person} … to be (UST)

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) “who was the first person to be” or (2) “who became”

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Cush also
- mighty
- on the earth

UST

- Cush {also}
- a powerful {ruler}
- on earth

Genesis 10:9

ULT:
He was a mighty hunter before Yahweh. For that reason it is said, “Like Nimrod, a mighty hunter before Yahweh.”

UST:
He was {also} a great hunter whom Yahweh blessed. That is why people say {about other great men}, “{That man is} like Nimrod, a great hunter whom Yahweh blessed.”

He was a mighty hunter (ULT)

He was {also} a great hunter (UST)

Alternate translation: [Nimrod was also a excellent hunter]

---

before Yahweh (ULT)

whom Yahweh blessed (UST)

Alternate translation: [whom Yahweh helped] or [because Yahweh helped him]

---

it is said (ULT)

people say {about other great men} (UST)

This phrase indicates that what follows was a well-known saying that was used by people to praise or compliment other great men by comparing them to Nimrod. Alternate translation: [we have the saying about other great men:]

He was a mighty hunter (ULT)

He was {also} a great hunter (UST)

Alternate translation: [Nimrod was also a excellent hunter]

---

before Yahweh (ULT)

whom Yahweh blessed (UST)

Be consistent here with how you translated this phrase earlier in verse 9. Alternate translation: [whom Yahweh helped] or [because Yahweh helped him]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- a mighty
- Yahweh
- mighty
- Yahweh

UST

- a great
- whom Yahweh blessed
- a great
- whom Yahweh blessed

Genesis 10:10

ULT:
And the beginning of his kingdom was Babel and Erech and Akkad and Calneh, in the land of Shinar.

UST:
Nimrod started ruling as king {over} {the cities of} Babel, Erech, Akkad, and Calneh, {which were} {all} {located} in the region of Shinar.

And the beginning of his kingdom was (ULT)

Nimrod started ruling as king {over} (UST)

Alternate translation: [The first cities that Nimrod ruled as king were]

---

in the land of Shinar (ULT)

{which were} {all} {located} in the region of Shinar (UST)

Shinar is another name for the land of Babylonia. You could put that information in a footnote.

Alternate translation: [which were all located in the land called Shinar]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- his kingdom
- Babel
- in the land of
- Shinar

UST

- ruling as king {over}
- {the cities of} Babel
- {which were} {all} {located} in the region of
- Shinar

Genesis 10:11

ULT:
From that land he went to Asshur, and he built Nineveh and Rehoboth-Ir and Calah

UST:
From the land of Shinar he went to {the region of} Assyria, where he built {the cities of} Nineveh, Rehoboth-Ir, Calah,

From that land (ULT)

From the land of Shinar (UST)

Alternate translation: [From that region] or [From the land of Shinar]

---

he went to Asshur (ULT)

he went to {the region of} Assyria (UST)

See how you translated “the land of Assyria” in Genesis 2:14. Alternate translation: [he moved to the land called Asshur]

---

and he built (ULT)

where he built (UST)

Alternate translation: [and there he built]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- land
- to Asshur
- Nineveh

UST

- the land
- to {the region of} Assyria
- {the cities of} Nineveh

Genesis 10:12

ULT:
and Resen, between Nineveh and Calah, which {is} the great city.

UST:
and Resen, {which is located} between {the cities of} Nineveh and the great city of Calah.

and Resen, between Nineveh and Calah, which {is} the great city (ULT)

and Resen, {which is located} between {the cities of} Nineveh and the great city of Calah (UST)

This could mean: (1) that Resen is located between the cities of Nineveh and the great city of Calah. (2) that Resen is the great city located between the cities of Nineveh and Calah.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Nineveh

UST
- {the cities of} Nineveh

Genesis 10:13

ULT:
And Mizraim fathered the Ludim and the Anamim and the Lehabim and the Naphtuhim

UST:
Mizraim was the ancestor of the Ludites, Anamites, Lehabites, Naphtuhites,

And Mizraim fathered (ULT)

Mizraim was the ancestor of (UST)

Alternate translation: [Mizraim was the father of]

---

the Ludim and the Anamim and the Lehabim and the Naphtuhim (ULT)

the Ludites, Anamites, Lehabites, Naphtuhites (UST)

Throughout verses 13–18, translate the names of people groups in a way that is clear and natural in your language. See what you did in verse 4. Also consider what is the best way in your language to list the names in these verses. Some languages use a conjunction (like **and**) between names, while other languages only use a conjunction before the last name in the list, with commas between the other names.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- And Mizraim

UST
- Mizraim

Genesis 10:14

ULT:
and the Pathrusim and the Casluhim (whom the Philistim came from) and the Caphtorim.

UST:
Pathrusites, Casluhites, and Caphtorites. The Philistines descended from the Casluhites.

and the Pathrusim and the Casluhim (whom the Philistim came from) and the Caphtorim (ULT)

Pathrusites, Casluhites, and Caphtorites. The Philistines descended from the Casluhites (UST)

Alternate translation: [Pathrusites, Casluhites (whom the Philistines came from), and Caphtorites] or [Pathrusites, Casluhites, and Caphtorites. The Philistines came from the Casluhites]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the Philistim

UST
- The Philistines descended from the Casluhites

Genesis 10:15

ULT:
And Canaan fathered Sidon his firstborn, then Heth

UST:
Canaan had Sidon {who was} his firstborn {son}. {He was} also {the ancestor of} the Hittites,

And Canaan fathered (ULT)

Canaan had (UST)

See how you translated **fathered** in verses 10:8 and 10:13.

Support Reference: Kinship

---

then Heth (ULT)

{He was} also {the ancestor of} the Hittites (UST)

Canaan's son Heth was the ancestor of the Hittites, so some translations use "Hittites" here instead and say, "He was also the ancestor of the Hittites," Alternate translation: [then he had a son named Heth]

Support Reference: Kinship

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- And Canaan
- Sidon
- his firstborn
- Heth

UST
- Canaan
- Sidon
- who was} his firstborn {son}

- {He was} also {the ancestor of} the Hittites

Genesis 10:16

ULT:
and the Jebusites and the Amorites and the Girgashites

UST:
Jebusites, Amorites, Girgashites,

and the Jebusites and the Amorites and the Girgashites (ULT)

Jebusites, Amorites, Girgashites (UST)

In verses 16–18, the people group names are singular collective nouns in Hebrew (in contrast to the people group names in verses 4, 13–14 that are plural nouns). Most English versions translate these names with a plural "-ites" suffix so that it is clear that these names refer to more than one person. Alternate translation: [and Canaan was also the ancestor of the Jebusites, Amorites, Girgashites]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the Jebusites
- the Amorites
- the Girgashites

UST
- Jebusites
- Amorites
- Girgashites

Genesis 10:17

ULT:
and the Hivites and the Arkites and the Sinites

UST:
Hivites, Arkites, Sinites,

(There are no notes for this verse)

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the Hivites

UST

- Hivites

Genesis 10:18

ULT:
and the Arvadites and the Zemarites and the Hamathites. And afterward the clans of the Canaanites scattered,

UST:
Arvadites, Zemarites, and Hamathites. Later, those families {that descended} from Canaan spread out,

And afterward (ULT)

Later (UST)

Alternate translation: [As time went by]

---

scattered (ULT)

spread out (UST)

Alternate translation: [moved to different places]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the Hamathites
- scattered
- the clans of
- the Canaanites

UST

- Hamathites
- spread out
- those families {that descended} from
- Canaan

Genesis 10:19

ULT:
so the border{s} of the Canaanites were from Sidon, {then} you go toward Gerar as far as Gaza, {then} you go to Sodom and Gomorrah and Admah and Zeboiim, as far as Lasha.

UST:
so that the territory where they lived reached from {the city of} Sidon {in the north}, all the way {south} toward {the city of} Gerar to {the city of} Gaza, {then} as far {east} as {the cities of} Sodom, Gomorrah, Admah, and Zeboiim, all the way to {the city of} Lasha.

so the border{s} of the Canaanites were (ULT)

so that the territory where they lived reached (UST)

Alternate translation: [and eventually the borders of their land extended] or [so that eventually the land where they lived extended]

{then} you go toward Gerar as far as Gaza (ULT)

all the way {south} toward {the city of} Gerar to {the city of} Gaza (UST)

The Canaanites' border reached Gaza but did not extend down to Gerar, which was farther south. Alternate translation: [all the way down toward the city of Gerar to the city of Gaza] or [down to Gaza City, which is on the road to Gerar City]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

as far as Lasha (ULT)

all the way to {the city of} Lasha (UST)

Alternate translation: [until you reach Lasha City]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the Canaanites
- from Sidon
- toward Gerar
- Gaza
- to Sodom
- and Gomorrah

UST

- the territory where they lived
- from {the city of} Sidon {in the north}
- toward {the city of} Gerar
- {the city of} Gaza
- {the cities of} Sodom
- Gomorrah

Genesis 10:20

ULT:
Those {are} the sons of Ham according to their clans, according to their languages, in their lands, in their nations.

UST:
Those {people} {were} Ham's descendants and each one had his own family. Each family {grew and} became its own people group that spoke its own language and lived in its own territory.

Those {are} (ULT)

Those {people} {were} (UST)

The word **Those** refers back to the people listed in verses 6–19. Also, many translations that use "were" (and other past tense verbs) in verses 2–19 and 21–30 use **are** here (and in verses 31 and 32). Alternate translation: [Those are the names of] or [Those men are]

---

the sons of Ham (ULT)

Ham's descendants (UST)

Alternate translation: [the descendants of Ham]

---

according to their clans (ULT)

and each one had his own family (UST)

See how you translated **clans** in verse 10:5. Alternate translation: [according to their family groups] or [and each one had his own clan] or [and their extended families]

Support Reference: Kinship

---

according to their languages, in their lands, in their nations (ULT)

Each family {grew and} became its own people group that spoke its own language and lived in its own territory (UST)

See how you translated verse 10:5, which has some of the same phrases as verse 20. Alternate translation: [Each family spoke its own language and lived in its own territory and eventually became its own people group] or [Each family multiplied and established its own ethnic group that had its own language and lived in its own region]

Support Reference: Kinship

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Ham
- according to their clans
- according to their languages
- in their lands
- in their nations

UST

- Ham
- and each one had his own family
- that spoke its own language
- and lived in its own territory
- Each family {grew and} became its own people group

Genesis 10:21

ULT:
And sons were also born to Shem; he {was} the father of all the sons of Eber and the brother of Japheth the elder.

UST:
Shem also had {some} sons. He {was} the ancestor of all the descendants of Eber, and his older brother was Japheth.

And sons were also born to Shem (ULT)

Shem also had {some} sons (UST)

In the Hebrew text, **to Shem** comes first in this sentence after **And**, to emphasize Shem. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Shem also fathered some sons]

---

and the brother of Japheth the elder (ULT)

and his older brother was Japheth (UST)

This could mean: (1) Shem's older brother was Japheth. (2) Shem was Japheth's older brother.

Support Reference: Kinship

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- And … to Shem
- sons were … born
- Japheth

UST
- Shem
- had {some} sons
- was Japheth

Genesis 10:22

ULT:
The sons of Shem {were} Elam and Asshur and Arpachshad and Lud and Aram.

UST:
Shem's sons {were} Elam, Asshur, Arpachshad, Lud, and Aram.

Elam and Asshur and Arpachshad and Lud and Aram (ULT)

Elam, Asshur, Arpachshad, Lud, and Aram (UST)

The name **Arpachshad** is spelled as "Arphaxad" in many translations. Also, see how you spelled **Lud** in verse 10:13 (who is a different person with the same name). Be consistent with how you spell each name throughout the Bible. Alternate translation: [Elam, Asshur, Arpachshad, Lud and Aram]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Shem {were}
- Elam
- and Asshur
- and Aram

UST
- Shem
- Elam
- Asshur
- and Aram

Genesis 10:23

ULT:
And the sons of Aram {were} Uz and Hul and Gether and Mash.

UST:
Aram's sons {were} Uz, Hul, Gether, and Mash.

Uz and Hul and Gether and Mash (ULT)

Uz, Hul, Gether, and Mash (UST)

The same person who is called **Mash** here, is referred to as "Meshech" in 1 Chronicles 10:Chronicles. To prevent confusion, some translations use "Meshech" here too, or they put that name in a footnote.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Aram {were}
- and Mash

UST
- Aram
- and Mash

Genesis 10:24

ULT:
And Arpachshad fathered Shelah, then Shelah fathered Eber.

UST:
Arpachshad had {a son named} Shelah, then Shelah had {a son named} Eber.

(There are no notes for this verse)

Genesis 10:25

ULT:
Then two sons were born to Eber. The name of the one {was} Peleg, because in his days the earth was divided. And the name of his brother {was} Joktan.

UST:
Then Eber had two sons. The name of the first {one} {was} Peleg, {which means "division,"} because during his lifetime {the people on} the earth divided {into separate groups} {and spread out everywhere}. Peleg's {younger} brother's name {was} Joktan.

Then two sons were born to Eber (ULT)

Then Eber had two sons (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Eber fathered two sons]

Peleg (ULT)

Peleg, {which means "division … } (UST)

You can put the meaning of Peleg's name in the text or in a footnote so that it is clear why he was given his name. See what you did for a similar case (Noah's name) in Genesis 5:29.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

the earth was divided (ULT)

the people on} the earth divided {into separate groups} {and spread out everywhere} (UST)

This phrase refers to the people on the earth and implies that they scattered and lived all over the earth (as specified in Genesis 11:8). Alternate translation: [the people on the earth separated into separate groups and scattered everywhere]

Support Reference: Metonymy

And the name of his brother {was} Joktan (ULT)

Peleg's {younger} brother's name {was} Joktan (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation who is being referred to in this sentence, especially after reading the previous two sentences.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- in his days
- the earth

UST

- during his lifetime
- {the people on} the earth

Genesis 10:26

ULT:
And Joktan fathered Almodad and Sheleph and Hazarmaveth and Jerah

UST:
Joktan had {sons named} Almodad, Sheleph, Hazarmaveth, Jerah,

And Joktan fathered (ULT)

Joktan had {sons named} (UST)

Notice that the list of Joktan's sons continues through verse 29. Alternate translation: [Joktan fathered sons named] or [Joktan had the following sons:]

Support Reference: Kinship

Genesis 10:27

ULT:
and Hadoram and Uzal and Diklah

UST:
Hadoram, Uzal, Diklah,

(There are no notes for this verse)

Genesis 10:28

ULT:
and Obal and Abimael and Sheba

UST:
Obal, Abimael, Sheba,

(There are no notes for this verse)

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Sheba

UST

- Sheba

Genesis 10:29

ULT:
and Ophir and Havilah and Jobab. All those {were} the sons of Joktan.

UST:
Ophir, Havilah, and Jobab. Those {were} all Joktan's sons.

and Ophir and Havilah and Jobab (ULT)

Ophir, Havilah, and Jobab (UST)

Consider again how you translated lists of names throughout chapter 10.

All those {were} (ULT)

Those {were} all (UST)

Alternate translation: [All those were the names of] or [All those men were]

Genesis 10:30

ULT:
And their dwelling was from Mesha, {then} you go to Sephar, the mountain{s} of the east.

UST:
The region where they {and their descendants} lived reached from {the city of} Mesha {in the west} all the way to {the city of} Sephar, {which is in} the hill country in the east.

And their dwelling was (ULT)

The region where they {and their descendants} lived reached (UST)

Alternate translation: [Their dwelling place] or [Their region] or [The area where they and their descendants lived]

And … was from Mesha (ULT)

reached from {the city of} Mesha {in the west} (UST)

See how you translated a similar sentence in verse 10:19. Alternate translation: [extended from the city of Mesha in the west]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

{then} you go to Sephar (ULT)

all the way to {the city of} Sephar, {which is in} (UST)

Alternate translation: [as far as]

---

to Sephar (ULT)

to {the city of} Sephar, {which is in} (UST)

Sephar might refer to a city, a mountain, or a region (that was named after the city or mountain). Alternate translation: [the town of Sephar, which is in]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

---

the mountain{s} of the east (ULT)

the hill country in the east (UST)

The word **mountains** could be: (1) a collective noun that refers to mountains or hill country near the town of Sephar. Alternate translation: [the mountain range that is in the east]; (2) a singular noun that refers to a specific mountain that was called Sephar.

Genesis 10:31

ULT:
Those {are} the sons of Shem according to their clans, according to their languages, in their lands, according to their nations.

UST:
Those {people} {are} Shem's descendants and each one had his own family. Each family {grew and} became its own people group that spoke its own language and lived in its own territory.

Those {are} (ULT)

Those {people} {are} (UST)

The word **Those** refers here to the people listed in verses 21–30. See how you translated verse 20, which is almost exactly the same as verse 31. Alternate translation: [Those are the names of] or [Those men are]

---

according to their clans (ULT)

and each one had his own family (UST)

See how you translated **clans** in verses 10:5 and 10:20. Alternate translation: [and each one had his own clan]

Support Reference: Kinship

---

according to their languages, in their lands, according to their nations (ULT)

Each family {grew and} became its own people group that spoke its own language and lived in its own territory (UST)

Alternate translation: [Each family spoke its own language and lived in its own territory, and eventually became its own people group] or [Each family multiplied and established its own ethnic group that had its own language and lived in its own territory]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Shem
- according to their clans
- according to their languages
- in their lands
- according to their nations

UST

- Shem
- and each one had his own family
- that spoke its own language
- and lived in its own territory
- Each family {grew and} became its own people group

Genesis 10:32

ULT:
Those {are} the clans of the sons of Noah, according to their generations, in their nations. And from those the nations spread out on the earth after the flood.

UST:
{All} those family groups descended from Noah's sons. Each family group had its own descendants and became its own people group. In fact, after the flood {all} the people groups on the earth descended from them and spread out everywhere.

Those {are} the clans of the sons of Noah (ULT)

{All} those family groups descended from Noah's sons (UST)

The word **Those** refers here to everyone who is listed in verses 2–31. Consider again how you translated **clans** in verses 5 and 20, 29, 31–32.

---

according to their generations, in their nations (ULT)

Each family group had its own descendants and became its own people group (UST)

Compare how you translated similar phrases in verses 5 and 20, and 31. Alternate translation: [Each clan had its own genealogy and became its own ethnic group]

And from those the nations spread out on the earth after the flood (ULT)

In fact, after the flood {all} the people groups on the earth descended from them and spread out everywhere (UST)

Consider again how you translated **nations** in verses 10:5 and 10:20, 31–32. If it would be more natural in your language, you could change the order of the phrases. Alternate translation: [From those people came all the ethnic groups who spread out over the earth after the flood]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the clans of
- Noah
- according to their generations
- in their nations
- spread out
- the nations
- on the earth
- the flood

UST

- family groups descended from
- Noah
- Each family group had its own descendants
- and became its own people group
- and spread out everywhere
- {all} the people groups
- on the earth
- the flood

Genesis 11

Genesis 11:1

ULT:
Now the whole earth had one language and the same words.

UST:
Now {at first,} all {the people on} the earth spoke the same language, so that everyone understood each other.

Now the whole earth had one language (ULT)

Now {at first,} all {the people on} the earth spoke the same language (UST)

The events in chapter 11:1–9 happened before the people listed in chapter 10 had their own languages and before they spread out over the earth (Genesis 10:5, 10:19–20, and 10:30–32). You could include some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [Now at first, everyone on the earth shared the same language] or [Now for a while, all the people on the earth spoke one language]

Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

---

and the same words (ULT)

so that everyone understood each other (UST)

The phrases **one language** and **the same words** are very similar in meaning and emphasize the fact that everyone spoke the same language. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [and shared the same vocabulary] or [and spoke words everyone knew]

Support Reference: Doublet

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the … earth

UST

- {the people on} the earth

Genesis 11:2

ULT:
And it happened as they migrated from the east, that they found a plain in the land of Shinar and settled there.

UST:
As time passed, they moved from the eastern {regions} and {eventually} came to a wide, flat valley in the region of Shinar and stayed there.

And it happened (ULT)

As time passed (UST)

The author is using the word translated as **And it happened** to introduce a new development in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new development.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

---

as they migrated (ULT)

they moved (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to use a pronoun (**they**) or a noun phrase ("the people") here. Alternate translation: [they traveled] or [the people moved]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

from the east (ULT)

from the eastern {regions} (UST)

At first after the flood, people lived in the regions around the mountains of Ararat (where the ark had landed). As they began to migrate and spread out to different places (as God had told them to do), they must have headed south at some point since they ended up at the plain of

Shinar, which was south of where the Ararat Mountains were. The reference to **the east** probably reflects the viewpoint of the author (Moses), since the Ararat mountains and the plain of Shinar were both far to the east of where he was living. Alternate translation: [around in the eastern regions]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

that they found (ULT)

and {eventually} came to (UST)

Make sure the way you translate this phrase fits with the way you translated the first half of this verse. Alternate translation: [that they discovered] or [that they eventually came to]

---

a plain in the land of Shinar (ULT)

a wide, flat valley in the region of Shinar (UST)

This plain was a wide, flat area between mountains. Also be consistent here with how you translated **land of Shinar** in Genesis 10:10. Alternate translation: [a wide flat area in the land called Shinar]

---

and settled there (ULT)

and stayed there (UST)

Alternate translation: [and lived there] or [and began to live there]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- in the land of
- Shinar

UST

- in the region of
- Shinar

Genesis 11:3

ULT:
Then they said to each other, “Come, let us make bricks and bake them with fire.” And they had bricks for stones, and they had tar for mortar.

UST:
Then they urged each other, “Come on, let us {work together and} make bricks {from clay} and put them in fire to make them hard.” They used bricks {to build with} instead of stone, and they used tar {between the bricks} instead of mortar.

Then they said to each other (ULT)

Then they urged each other (UST)

The events that are described below probably did not happen immediately after they arrived at the plain. Consider what is the best way to introduce these events in your language. Alternate translation: [Then one day they told each other]

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

Come (ULT)

Come on (UST)

Consider whether or not your language has an idiom like this that is used to urge or persuade someone to do something together. Alternate translation: [Give help] or [Together]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

let us make (ULT)

let us {work together and} make (UST)

The pronoun **us** is inclusive here and refers to the people who are talking to each other. Alternate translation: [we should work together and make]

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’

---

bricks (ULT)

bricks {from clay} (UST)

Alternate translation: [some mud blocks] or [some blocks from mud]

---

and bake them with fire (ULT)

and put them in fire to make them hard (UST)

Alternate translation: [and harden them with fire] or [and use fire to bake them] or [and put them over fire to make them hard]

And they had (ULT)

They used bricks {to build with} (UST)

Alternate translation: [So they did that, and they had] or [They had]

---

bricks for stones (ULT)

They used bricks {to build with} instead of stone (UST)

Alternate translation: [blocks to build with instead of stone]

---

and they had tar (ULT)

and they used tar {between the bricks} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and they used tar between the blocks]

---

for mortar (ULT)

instead of mortar (UST)

Alternate translation: [to hold the blocks together]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- to each other

UST

- each other

Genesis 11:4

ULT:
Then they said, "Come, let us build a city for ourselves and a tower with its top in the heavens, and let us make a name for ourselves, so that we are not scattered over the face of the whole earth."

UST:
Then they urged {each other}, "Come on, we should {work together and} build a city for us {to live in} that has a {very} tall building that reaches high into the sky. {That way} we will become famous, and we will not separate from each other {and live} all over the earth."

Come (ULT)

Come on (UST)

See how you translated this common expression in verse 3.

---

let us build (ULT)

we should {work together and} build (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 3. Alternate translation: [let us work together and build]

---

and a tower (ULT)

that has a {very} tall building (UST)

Alternate translation: [that has a high tower] or [with a very tall building]

---

with its top in the heavens (ULT)

that reaches high into the sky (UST)

Alternate translation: [that reaches high into the heavens] or [that reaches up to heaven]

---

and let us make a name for ourselves, so that we are not scattered (ULT)

That way} we will become famous, and we will not separate from each other {and live} (UST)

The phrase **make a name for ourselves** is a common expression. Consider whether or not your language has a similar common expression that would work well here. Also see how you translated the word **scattered** in Genesis 10:18 and Genesis 10:32. Alternate translation: [We should do that to make ourselves famous and to keep us from spreading out] or [That way we will become well-known and we will not separate from each other and live]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

over the face of the whole earth (ULT)

all over the earth (UST)

Alternate translation: [all over the world] or [around the world]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- in the heavens
- we are … scattered
- the … earth

UST

- high into the sky
- separate from each other {and live}

- the earth

Genesis 11:5

ULT:
Then Yahweh came down to see the city and the tower that the sons of mankind had built.

UST:
But {one day} Yahweh came down {from heaven} and looked at the city and the {very} tall building that the people were building.

Then Yahweh came down (ULT)

But {one day} Yahweh came down {from heaven} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then one day Yahweh came down from heaven]

---

to see the city (ULT)

and looked at the city (UST)

The text implies that Yahweh actually looked at the city. Consider whether or not it is better in your language to make that explicit here. Alternate translation: [and inspected the city]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and the tower (ULT)

and the {very} tall building (UST)

See how you translated this word in verse 4.

---

had built (ULT)

were building (UST)

Make sure the way you translate this verb fits with the fact that the people had not yet finished building the city (Genesis 11:8). Alternate translation: [had started building] or [had begun constructing]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- mankind
- Yahweh

UST

- the people
- Yahweh

Genesis 11:6

ULT:
And Yahweh said, "Behold, {they are} one people, and they all have one language. So this {is} what they have begun to do, and now everything that they plan to do will not be impossible for them.

UST:
Then he said, "Look, they are one people {group}, and they all speak the same language. This {is} {only} the beginning of what they can do {together}. Soon they will be able to do anything they plan to do.

And Yahweh said (ULT)

Then he said (UST)

Consider what is the best way to refer to Yahweh here in your language. Alternate translation: [And he said (to himself)] or [He said]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

Behold (ULT)

Look (UST)

This term calls attention to what Yahweh says next. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: [Listen]

Support Reference: Metaphor

---

and they all have one language (ULT)

and they all speak the same language (UST)

See how you translated **have one language** in verse 11:1. Alternate translation: [and they all share the same language]

So this {is} what they have begun to do (ULT)

This {is} {only} the beginning of what they can do {together} (UST)

Alternate translation: [This is only the start of what they could do together]

---

everything that they plan to do will not be impossible for them (ULT)

they will be able to do anything they plan to do (UST)

The words **not** and **impossible** are two negatives that work together to communicate an emphatic positive statement. Consider what is the best way to translate this in your language. Alternate translation: [nothing that they plan to do will be impossible for them] or [anything they attempt to do will be possible for them] or [they can do whatever they try to do]

Support Reference: Double Negatives

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Yahweh

UST

- Then he said

Genesis 11:7

ULT:
Come, let us go down and there confuse their language, so that they will not understand each other's language."

UST:
{So} we must go down there {now} and mix up their language so that they are not able to understand what they say to each other."

Come (ULT)

So (UST)

Alternate translation: [So come on]

---

let us go down … there (ULT)

we must go down there {now} (UST)

Most Bible scholars think the plural pronoun **us** refers here to God and the fact that he is three Persons in one God. So it is best to keep this plural pronoun in your translation. See what you did for similar pronouns in Genesis 1:26. Alternate translation: [let us go to them]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

and … confuse their language (ULT)

and mix up their language (UST)

Alternate translation: [and scramble their language]

---

so that they will not understand (ULT)

so that they are not able to understand (UST)

Alternate translation: [making them unable to understand] or [so that they cannot understand]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- each other’s language

UST

- what they say to each other

Genesis 11:8

ULT:
Then Yahweh scattered them from there over the face of the whole earth, and they stopped building the city.

UST:
In that way, Yahweh caused the people to leave from there and live in different places all over the world, so that they had to stop building the city {and the tall building}.

Then Yahweh scattered them from there (ULT)

In that way, Yahweh caused the people to leave from there and live in different places (UST)

Alternate translation: [So Yahweh did that and caused the people to depart from there and spread out] or [That is how Yahweh made the people leave from there and resettle in other places]

---

over the face of the whole earth (ULT)

all over the world (UST)

Alternate translation: [over the surface of the entire earth] or [all over the earth]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and they stopped building (ULT)

so that they had to stop building (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that they had to stop constructing]

---

the city (ULT)

the city {and the tall building} (UST)

For some languages it is better to change the order of clauses in this verse (so that events are in the order that they happened) and say, “In that way, Yahweh caused the people to stop building the city and the tower and to move away from each other, so that eventually they lived all over the world.” Alternate translation: [the city and the tower]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then … scattered
- Yahweh
- the … earth

UST

- In that way … caused … to leave … and live in different places
- Yahweh
- the world

Genesis 11:9

ULT:
For that {reason} they called its name Babel, because there Yahweh confused the language of the whole earth, and from there Yahweh scattered them over the face of the whole earth.

UST:
That is why the name of the city is Babel, {which means "mixed up,"} because that is where Yahweh mixed up the language that everyone on the earth shared, and {in that way} he made them spread out from there all over the earth.

they called its name (ULT)

the name of the city is (UST)

Alternate translation: [people named the city] or [the name of that city is] or [the city was named]

Babel (ULT)

Babel, {which means "mixed up … } (UST)

If you include the meaning of **Babel** here in your translation or in a footnote, be consistent with the way you translate **confused** later in this verse and in verse 7.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

because there Yahweh (ULT)

because that is where Yahweh (UST)

Alternate translation: [because it was in that city that Yahweh]

---

confused (ULT)

mixed up (UST)

Alternate translation: [scrambled] or [confounded]

---

the language of the whole earth (ULT)

the language that everyone on the earth shared (UST)

Alternate translation: [the language that everyone on the earth spoke]

---

and from there Yahweh scattered them (ULT)

and {in that way} he made them spread out from there (UST)

Alternate translation: [and in that way Yahweh caused them to scatter]

---

over the face of the whole earth (ULT)

all over the earth (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verses 4 and 8. Alternate translation: [over the surface of the entire earth] or [throughout all the world]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- they called
- Babel
- Yahweh
- the … earth

- scattered them
- Yahweh
- the … earth

UST

- the name of the city is
- Babel, {which means “mixed up … }
- Yahweh
- the language that everyone on the earth shared
- he made them spread out
- he made them spread out
- the earth

Genesis 11:10

ULT:
These {are} the generations of Shem: Shem {was} the son of 100 years, then he fathered Arpachshad two years after the flood.

UST:
This is the record of Shem's descendants: Two years after the flood {began}, when Shem was 100 years old, he had {a son named} Arpachshad.

Shem {was} the son of 100 years, then he fathered Arpachshad two years after the flood (ULT)

Two years after the flood {began}, when Shem was 100 years old, he had {a son named} Arpachshad (UST)

The phrase **after the flood** probably refers to two years after the flood began, not after it ended; see a similar case in Genesis 9:28. Alternate translation: [Two years after the flood began, when Shem was 100 years old, he had a son named Arpachshad]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the generations of
- Shem
- Shem
- years
- two years
- the flood

UST
- the record of … s descendants
- Shem
- when Shem
- was 100 years old
- Two years
- the flood {began}

Genesis 11:11

ULT:
Then after he fathered Arpachshad, Shem lived 500 years, and he fathered {other} sons and daughters.

UST:
After Arpachshad was born, Shem lived {another} 500 years. He {also} had {other} sons, as well as daughters.

Then after he fathered Arpachshad, Shem lived (ULT)

After Arpachshad was born, Shem lived (UST)

Throughout this section, make sure that names and pronouns (like **he**) are used in a way that is accurate and natural in your language, so that it is always clear who is being referred to. Alternate translation: [After Shem had Arpachshad, Shem lived] or [After Arpachshad was born, Shem lived]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

500 years (ULT)

{another} 500 years (UST)

See how you translated Genesis 5:7, which has the same sentence structure as 11:11. For some languages, it may be more natural to change the clause order of this sentence and say, “Shem lived 500 more years after Arpachshad was born, and he fathered other sons and daughters.” Do what is best in your language throughout this chapter. Alternate translation: [500 more years]

Support Reference: Information Structure

{other} sons and daughters (ULT)

{other} sons, as well as daughters (UST)

Alternate translation: [more sons as well as daughters]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Shem
- years

UST

- Shem
- years

Genesis 11:12

ULT:
And Arpachshad lived thirty-five years, then he fathered Shelah.

UST:
When Arpachshad was thirty-five years old, he had {a son named} Shelah.

And Arpachshad lived thirty-five years (ULT)

When Arpachshad was thirty-five years old (UST)

Make sure that your translation of this clause does not mean that Arpachshad only lived to be thirty-five years old. Also, throughout this chapter, be consistent with how you have decided to handle numbers in the Bible. For example, many translation teams use words for single and double-digit numbers, but use numerals for larger numbers. This strategy helps prevent confusion with verse numbers. This is especially true in translations that use a large font size for verse numbers so that people doing group Bible study can easily see the numbers and be in the same verse together. See what you did in chapter 5. Alternate translation: [When Arpachshad had lived 35 years] or [When Arpachshad was 35 years old]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- years

UST
- thirty-five years old

Genesis 11:13

ULT:
Then after he fathered Shelah, Arpachshad lived 403 years, and he fathered {other} sons and daughters.

UST:
After Shelah was born, Arpachshad lived {another} 403 years. He {also} had {other} sons, as well as daughters.

403 years (ULT)

{another} 403 years (UST)

Alternate translation: [403 more years]

---

and he fathered (ULT)

He {also} had (UST)

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to Arpachshad at this point in the paragraph. Alternate translation: [and he also had] or [He also fathered] or [He was also the father of]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

{other} sons and daughters (ULT)

{other} sons, as well as daughters (UST)

Alternate translation: [more sons, and also daughters]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- 403 years
- 403 years

UST

- {another} 403 years
- {another} 403 years

Genesis 11:14

ULT:
And Shelah lived thirty years, then he fathered Eber.

UST:
When Shelah was thirty years old, he had {a son named} Eber.

And Shelah lived thirty years (ULT)

When Shelah was thirty years old (UST)

Alternate translation: [When Shelah had lived 30 years] or [When Shelah was 30 years old]

---

then he fathered Eber (ULT)

he had {a son named} Eber (UST)

Alternate translation: [he fathered a son named Eber] or [he had a son whose name was Eber]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- years

UST

- thirty years old

Genesis 11:15

ULT:
Then after he fathered Eber, Shelah lived 403 years, and he fathered {other} sons and daughters.

UST:
After Eber was born, Shelah lived {another} 403 years. He {also} had {other} sons, as well as daughters.

403 years (ULT)

{another} 403 years (UST)

Alternate translation: [403 more years]

---

and he fathered (ULT)

He {also} had (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he also had] or [Shelah also had] or [He was also the father of]

{other} sons and daughters (ULT)

{other} sons, as well as daughters (UST)

Alternate translation: [other sons as well as daughters]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- 403 years
- 403 years

UST

- {another} 403 years
- {another} 403 years

Genesis 11:16

ULT:
And Eber lived thirty-four years, then he fathered Peleg.

UST:
When Eber was thirty-four years old, he had {a son named} Peleg.

And Eber lived thirty-four years (ULT)

When Eber was thirty-four years old (UST)

Alternate translation: [When Eber had lived 34 years] or [When Eber was 34 years old]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- years

UST
- thirty-four years old

Genesis 11:17

ULT:
Then after he fathered Peleg, Eber lived 430 years, and he fathered {other} sons and daughters.

UST:
After Peleg was born, Eber lived {another} 430 years. He {also} had {other} sons, as well as daughters.

430 years (ULT)

{another} 430 years (UST)

Alternate translation: [430 more years]

---

and he fathered (ULT)

He {also} had (UST)

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to **Eber** at this point in the paragraph.
Alternate translation: [and he also had] or [Eber also had] or [He was also the father of]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

{other} sons and daughters (ULT)

{other} sons, as well as daughters (UST)

Alternate translation: [more sons, as well as daughters]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- 430 years

- 430 years

UST

- {another} 430 years
- {another} 430 years

Genesis 11:18

ULT:
And Peleg lived thirty years, then he fathered Reu.

UST:
When Peleg was thirty years old, he had {a son named} Reu.

And Peleg lived thirty years (ULT)

When Peleg was thirty years old (UST)

Alternate translation: [When Peleg had lived 30 years] or [When Peleg was 30 years old]

---

then he fathered Reu (ULT)

he had {a son named} Reu (UST)

Alternate translation: [he fathered a son named Reu] or [he had a son whose name was Reu]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- years

UST

- thirty years old

Genesis 11:19

ULT:
Then after he fathered Reu, Peleg lived 209 years, and he fathered {other} sons and daughters.

UST:
After Reu was born, Peleg lived {another} 209 years. He {also} had {other} sons, as well as daughters.

209 years (ULT)

{another} 209 years (UST)

Alternate translation: [209 more years]

---

and he fathered (ULT)

He {also} had (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he also had] or [Peleg also had] or [He was also the father of]

{other} sons and daughters (ULT)

{other} sons, as well as daughters (UST)

Alternate translation: [more sons, as well as daughters]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- 209 years
- 209 years

UST

- {another} 209 years
- {another} 209 years

Genesis 11:20

ULT:
And Reu lived thirty-two years, then he fathered Serug.

UST:
When Reu was thirty-two years old, he had {a son named} Serug.

And Reu lived thirty-two years (ULT)

When Reu was thirty-two years old (UST)

Alternate translation: [When Reu had lived 32 years] or [When Reu was 32 years old]

---

then he fathered Serug (ULT)

he had {a son named} Serug (UST)

Alternate translation: [he fathered a son named Serug] or [he had a son whose name was Serug]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- years

UST
- thirty-two years old

Genesis 11:21

ULT:
Then after he fathered Serug, Reu lived 207 years, and he fathered {other} sons and daughters.

UST:
After Serug was born, Reu lived {another} 207 years. He {also} had {other} sons, as well as daughters.

207 years (ULT)

{another} 207 years (UST)

Alternate translation: [207 more years]

---

and he fathered (ULT)

He {also} had (UST)

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to Reu at this point in the paragraph.
Alternate translation: [and he also had] or [Reu also had] or [He was also the father of]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

{other} sons and daughters (ULT)

{other} sons, as well as daughters (UST)

Alternate translation: [other sons as well as daughters]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- 207 years

- 207 years

UST

- {another} 207 years
- {another} 207 years

Genesis 11:22

ULT:
And Serug lived thirty years, then he fathered Nahor.

UST:
When Serug was thirty years old, he had {a son named} Nahor.

And Serug lived thirty years (ULT)

When Serug was thirty years old (UST)

Alternate translation: [When Serug had lived 30 years] or [When Serug was 30 years old]

---

then he fathered Nahor (ULT)

he had {a son named} Nahor (UST)

Alternate translation: [he fathered a son named Nahor] or [he had a son whose name was Nahor]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Nahor
- years

UST
- {a son named} Nahor
- thirty years old

Genesis 11:23

ULT:
Then after he fathered Nahor, Serug lived 200 years, and he fathered {other} sons and daughters.

UST:
After Nahor was born, Serug lived {another} 200 years. He {also} had {other} sons, as well as daughters.

200 years (ULT)

{another} 200 years (UST)

Alternate translation: [200 more years]

---

and he fathered (ULT)

He {also} had (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he also had] or [Serug also had] or [He was also the father of]

{other} sons and daughters (ULT)

{other} sons, as well as daughters (UST)

Alternate translation: [other sons as well as daughters]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Nahor
- years

UST

- Nahor
- {another} 200 years

Genesis 11:24

ULT:
And Nahor lived twenty-nine years, then he fathered Terah.

UST:
When Nahor was twenty-nine years old, he had {a son named} Terah.

And Nahor lived twenty-nine years (ULT)

When Nahor was twenty-nine years old (UST)

Alternate translation: [When Nahor had lived 29 years] or [When Nahor was 29 years old]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Nahor
- years
- Terah

UST
- Nahor
- twenty-nine years old
- {a son named} Terah

Genesis 11:25

ULT:
Then after he fathered Terah, Nahor lived 119 years, and he fathered {other} sons and daughters.

UST:
After Terah was born, Nahor lived {another} 119 years. He {also} had {other} sons, as well as daughters.

Then after he fathered Terah, Nahor lived (ULT)

After Terah was born, Nahor lived (UST)

Alternate translation: [After he had Terah, he lived]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

119 years (ULT)

{another} 119 years (UST)

Alternate translation: [119 more years]

---

and he fathered (ULT)

He {also} had (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he also had] or [Nahor also had] or [He was also the father of]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

{other} sons and daughters (ULT)

{other} sons, as well as daughters (UST)

Consider again how you translated verses 11:11, 13, 15, 17, 19, 21, 23, 25, which all have the same sentence structure. Alternate translation: [more sons as well as daughters]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Nahor
- Terah
- 119 years
- 119 years

UST

- Nahor
- Terah
- {another} 119 years
- {another} 119 years

Genesis 11:26

ULT:
And Terah lived seventy years, then he fathered Abram, Nahor, and Haran.

UST:
After Terah was seventy years old, he had {sons whose names were} Abram, Nahor, and Haran.

And Terah lived seventy years, then he fathered Abram, Nahor, and Haran (ULT)

After Terah was seventy years old, he had {sons whose names were} Abram, Nahor, and Haran (UST)

Your translation needs to allow for the fact that Terah's sons were not triplets (just as Noah's sons were not triplets; see 15:32), rather, he started having children after he turned seventy and his sons were born in different years after that. In fact, Abram was not born until Terah was at least 130 years old (11:321, 12:4–5; Acts 7:4), and he was probably Terah's youngest son. Abram is listed first (instead of Haran or Nahor) probably because of his importance as the one whom Yahweh made His covenant with. Some of this information could be put in a footnote. Alternate translation: [After Terah had lived 70 years, his wife birthed three sons.] or [After Terah turned 70 years old]

Support Reference: Kinship

---

then he fathered Abram, Nahor, and Haran (ULT)

he had {sons whose names were} Abram, Nahor, and Haran (UST)

Alternate translation: [he had sons named Abram, Nahor, and Haran] or [he fathered sons whose names were Abram, Nahor, and Haran]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Terah
- years

- Abram
- Nahor
- Haran

UST

- Terah
- seventy years old
- {sons whose names were} Abram
- Nahor
- Haran

Genesis 11:27

ULT:
Now these {are} the generations of Terah: Terah fathered Abram, Nahor, and Haran; and Haran fathered Lot.

UST:
Here is the history about Terah and his descendants: Terah's sons were Abram, Nahor, and Haran. Haran had a son {whose name was} Lot.

Now these {are} the generations of Terah (ULT)

Here is the history about Terah and his descendants (UST)

This section is different from the previous section. What follows is a history about Terah's descendants (especially Abram); it is not a genealogy or list of names. See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 6:91. Alternate translation: [This is the account about Terah and his family:]

Terah fathered Abram, Nahor, and Haran (ULT)

Terah's sons were Abram, Nahor, and Haran (UST)

Alternate translation: [Terah had sons named Abram, Nahor, and Haran;]

---

and Haran fathered Lot (ULT)

Haran had a son {whose name was} Lot (UST)

Alternate translation: [and Haran had a son named Lot] or [and Haran had a son whose name was Lot]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the generations of
- Terah
- Terah
- Abram
- Nahor
- Haran
- and Haran
- Lot

UST

- the history about Terah and his descendants
- the history about Terah and his descendants
- Terah's sons were
- Abram
- Nahor
- Haran
- Haran
- Lot

Genesis 11:28

ULT:
And Haran died in the presence of Terah his father, in the land of his birth, in Ur of the Chaldeans.

UST:
While his father was still alive, Haran died in the land where he was born, in {the city of} Ur where the Chaldean people lived.

And Haran died in the presence of Terah his father (ULT)

While his father was still alive, Haran died (UST)

Alternate translation: [Later, Haran died while he was with his father Terah] or [While his father Terah was still alive, Haran died]

---

in the land of his birth … Chaldeans (ULT)

in the land where he was born (UST)

Alternate translation: [in his native land]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Haran
- Terah
- in the land of … Chaldeans
- his birth
- in Ur of
- the

UST

- Haran
- While his father was still alive
- in the land
- where he was born
- in {the city of} Ur

- where the Chaldean people lived

Genesis 11:29

ULT:
And Abram and Nahor took wives for themselves. The name of Abram's wife {was} Sarai, and the name of Nahor's wife {was} Milcah, the daughter of Haran, the father of Milcah and the father of Iscah.

UST:
Meanwhile Abram and Nahor each married a wife. Abram's wife was named Sarai, and Nahor's wife was Milcah. Milcah and {her sister} Iscah were the daughters of {Nahor's brother} Haran.

And Abram and Nahor took wives for themselves (ULT)

Meanwhile Abram and Nahor each married a wife (UST)

Alternate translation: [During that time, Abram and Nahor each got married]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abram
- and Nahor
- Abram
- {was} Sarai
- Nahor
- Haran

UST

- Abram
- and Nahor
- Abram
- Sarai
- Nahor
- Milcah and {her sister} Iscah were the daughters of {Nahor's brother} Haran

---

Genesis 11:30

ULT:
But Sarai was barren; she did not have a child.

UST:
But Sarai was not able to become pregnant, {so} she did not have any children.

But Sarai was barren (ULT)

But Sarai was not able to become pregnant (UST)

Consider what is the best way in your language to introduce this background information about Sarai. Alternate translation: [Now Sarai was unable to conceive] or [Sarai was unable to get pregnant]

Support Reference: Background Information

---

she did not have a child (ULT)

{so} she did not have any children (UST)

For some languages it may be better to switch the order of the clauses in this verse and say, “But Sarai did not have any children, because she was not able to conceive.” Alternate translation: [she was childless]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Sarai
- barren

UST
- But Sarai was not able to become pregnant
- But Sarai was not able to become pregnant

Genesis 11:31

ULT:
Then Terah took Abram his son, and Lot, Haran's son, his son's son, and Sarai his daughter-in-law, the wife of his son Abram, and they went out together from Ur of the Chaldeans to go to the land of Canaan. But they came to Haran, and they settled there.

UST:
Then {one day,} Terah gathered his son Abram and his grandson Lot, {who was} Haran's son, and his daughter-in-law Sarai, who was Abram's wife, and they {all} left from {the city of} Ur where the Chaldean people lived to travel to the region of Canaan. But when they arrived at {the city of} Haran, they decided to live there {instead}.

Then Terah took (ULT)

Then {one day,} Terah gathered (UST)

Consider what is the best way to begin this new paragraph in your language. Alternate translation: [One day, Terah called together]

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

Abram his son (ULT)

his son Abram (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation of this phrase that **his son** refers to Abram, not another person.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

and Lot, Haran's son, his son's son (ULT)

and his grandson Lot, {who was} Haran's son (UST)

The phrases "Lot," "Haran's son," and **his son's son** all refer to Lot. Make sure that is clear in your translation and that it does not sound like three people.

Support Reference: Kinship

---

and Sarai his daughter-in-law (ULT)

and his daughter-in-law Sarai (UST)

The phrases “Sarai,” “his daughter-in-law,” and **the wife of his son Abram** all refer to Sarai. Make sure that is clear in your translation.

Support Reference: Kinship

---

and they went out together (ULT)

and they {all} left (UST)

Alternate translation: [and all of them set out together] or [Then they all departed]

---

from Ur of the (ULT)

from {the city of} Ur (UST)

See the note at 10:19 about how to translate the names of cities. Alternate translation: [from Ur City]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

Chaldeans (ULT)

where the Chaldean people lived (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 28. Alternate translation: [of the Chaldeans] or [where the Kasdim people lived]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

to go to the land of Canaan (ULT)

to travel to the region of Canaan (UST)

Alternate translation: [to go to the region of Canaan] or [to go to Canaan Land]

But they came to Haran (ULT)

But when they arrived at {the city of} Haran (UST)

The city of Haran was not in the land of Canaan; rather, it was around 450 kilometers (280 miles) northeast of there. The author uses the word **But** here to indicate a strong contrast between what was expected and what happened. In your translation, indicate this strong contrast in a way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [But on the way there, they came to the city of Haran, and] or [But along the way, when they stopped at the city of Haran]

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

---

and they settled there (ULT)

they decided to live there {instead} (UST)

Alternate translation: [they stayed there instead] or [they decided to settle there instead]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Terah
- Abram
- Lot
- Haran

- Abram
- from Ur of the
- Chaldeans
- to the land of
- Canaan
- Haran

UST

- Terah
- Abram
- Lot
- Haran
- Abram
- from {the city of} Ur
- where the Chaldean people lived
- to the region of
- Canaan
- {the city of} Haran

Genesis 11:32

ULT:
And the days of Terah were 205 years, then Terah died in Haran.

UST:
Then {many years later,} when Terah was 205 years old, he died {there} in {the city of} Haran.

And the days of Terah were 205 years (ULT)

Then {many years later,} when Terah was 205 years old (UST)

Alternate translation: [When Terah reached the age of 205 years]

---

in Haran (ULT)

in {the city of} Haran (UST)

Alternate translation: [in Haran City]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the days of
- Terah
- 205 years
- 205 years
- Terah
- in Haran

UST

- Then {many years later,} when … was
- Terah
- 205 years old
- 205 years old
- he died {there}
- in {the city of} Haran

Genesis 12

Genesis 12:1

ULT:
Then Yahweh said to Abram, "You yourself must go from your land and from your relatives and from the house of your father, to the land that I will show you.

UST:
{One day} Yahweh commanded Abram, "You must move away from your homeland and your relatives, including your father's family, {and move} to the land that I will guide you to.

Then Yahweh said to Abram (ULT)

{One day} Yahweh commanded Abram (UST)

Consider what is the best way to begin this new section in your language. Also, make sure that the way you translate this quote margin fits with what Yahweh says in the following quote.
Alternate translation: [Then one day Yahweh told Abram]

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

You yourself must go from your land (ULT)

You must move away from your homeland (UST)

Alternate translation: [Get yourself away from your country] or [You must depart from the land where you are living]

---

and from your relatives (ULT)

and your relatives (UST)

Alternate translation: [and your people]

---

and from the house of your father (ULT)

including your father's family (UST)

The phrase **the house** refers here to everyone who was a member of Terah's household.

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

to the land (ULT)

{and move} to the land (UST)

Alternate translation: [and go to the place]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Yahweh
- Abram
- from your land
- and from your relatives
- and from the house of
- the land

UST

- Yahweh
- Abram
- from your homeland
- and your relatives
- including … s family
- the land

Genesis 12:2

ULT:
And I will make you into a great nation, and I will bless you, and I will make your name great, and you shall be a blessing.

UST:
I will make you {and your descendants} become an important people group, and I will cause you {all} to prosper. I will make you well-known, and you {and your descendants} will bless {many people}.

And I will make you (ULT)

I will make you {and your descendants} become (UST)

Alternate translation: [I will transform you]

---

into a great nation (ULT)

an important people group (UST)

Alternate translation: [a large people group] or [a large, important ethnic group]

---

and I will make your name great (ULT)

I will make you well-known (UST)

Alternate translation: [I will make you important and famous]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- into a … nation

- and I will bless you
- a blessing

UST

- an … people group
- and I will cause you {all} to prosper
- and you {and your descendants} will bless {many people}

Genesis 12:3

ULT:
And I will bless those who bless you, but whoever curses you I will curse. And in you all the families of the earth will be blessed.”

UST:
I will bless everyone who blesses you, but I will curse anyone who curses you. I will bless all the people on the earth through you.”

but whoever curses you I will curse (ULT)

but I will curse anyone who curses you (UST)

See how you translated **curse** in Genesis 8:21

---

in you (ULT)

I will … through you (UST)

The phrase **in you** refers to Abram and his descendants, including, ultimately, the Messiah. In other words, God’s promise in this verse is part of his wonderful news (the gospel message) for all people (Galatians 3:8–9) and is a prophecy about the Messiah, who was one of Abraham’s descendants (Matthew 1:1, Genesis 22:18, and Galatians 3:16). God blessed all people on earth by sending his Son Jesus (the Messiah/Christ) to die in their place and pay for all their sins (John 3:16–18, 1 Timothy 2:3–6), so that they could have a close relationship with him/God and be part of his family forever. God repeats this great promise in Genesis 18:18; 22:18; 26:4; 28:14. You could put some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [through you and your offspring,] or [because of you and your offspring,] or [by means of you and your offspring,]

Support Reference: Metonymy

And in you all the families of the earth will be blessed (ULT)

I will bless all the people on the earth through you (UST)

The expression **will be blessed** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is God. Alternate translation: [And in you I will bless all the families of the earth]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And I will bless
- those who bless you
- but whoever curses you
- I will curse
- And … will be blessed
- the families of

UST

- I will bless
- everyone who blesses you
- but … anyone who curses you
- I will curse
- bless
- the people on

Genesis 12:4

ULT:
Then Abram went, just as Yahweh had told him, and Lot went with him. And Abram was the son of seventy-five years when he departed from Haran.

UST:
So Abram left {the city of Haran} exactly as Yahweh had commanded him {to do}, and {his nephew} Lot went with him. Abram was seventy-five years old when he left from there.

Then Abram went, just as Yahweh had told him (ULT)

So Abram left {the city of Haran} exactly as Yahweh had commanded him {to do} (UST)

Consider what is the best way in your language to begin this sentence so that it shows that Abram is now doing what God had just commanded him to do in 12:1 Alternate translation: [And Abram left the city of Haran, just as Yahweh had told him to do] or [Then Abram did what Yahweh had told him to do and left the city of Haran]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

---

and Lot went with him (ULT)

and {his nephew} Lot went with him (UST)

Alternate translation: [and his nephew Lot left with him]

And Abram (ULT)

Abram (UST)

Many translations omit the conjunction **And** or “Now” here. Alternate translation: [Now Abram]

Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

---

was the son of (ULT)

was seventy-five years old (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 5:32 and 11:10. Alternate translation: [was 75 years old]

---

when he departed (ULT)

when he left (UST)

Alternate translation: [when he set out]

---

from Haran (ULT)

from there (UST)

Alternate translation: [from the city of Haran]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Abram
- Yahweh
- Lot
- And Abram
- seventy-five years
- seventy-five years
- from Haran

UST
- Abram
- Yahweh

- {his nephew} Lot
- Abram
- was seventy-five years old
- was seventy-five years old
- from there

Genesis 12:5

ULT:
And Abram took Sarai his wife and Lot the son of his brother and all their possessions that they had accumulated and the people whom they had acquired in Haran, and they set out to go to the land of Canaan. Then they came to the land of Canaan.

UST:
He took {with him} his wife Sarai and his nephew Lot and everything that they owned, including servants {and everything else} they had acquired in {the city of} Haran, and they {all} started traveling to the region of Canaan. When they arrived there,

And Abram took Sarai his wife (ULT)

He took {with him} his wife Sarai (UST)

In a context such as this, your language might say "brought" instead of **took**. Also, be consistent here with how you spelled **Sarai** in Genesis 11:29–31. Alternate translation: [He brought with him his wife Sarai]

Support Reference: Go and Come

---

and Lot the son of his brother (ULT)

and his nephew Lot (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to make **son of his brother** or "his nephew" explicit in verse 4 (where Lot is first mentioned in this section) and leave it implied here in verse 5.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and all their possessions that they had accumulated and the people whom they had acquired (ULT)

and everything that they owned, including servants {and everything else} they had acquired (UST)

The word **possessions** is general here and includes slaves, animals, furniture, clothes, and money, but none in particular. Alternate translation: [everything that they owned, including slaves and everything else they had gotten]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

---

in Haran (ULT)

in {the city of} Haran (UST)

Alternate translation: [in the city of Haran] or [in Haran City]

---

to the land of Canaan (ULT)

to the region of Canaan (UST)

Alternate translation: [to the land called Canaan] or [to Canaan Land]

Then they came to the land of Canaan (ULT)

When they arrived there (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then they arrived in Canaan] or [When they reached Canaan] or [When they got there]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abram
- Sarai
- Lot
- in Haran
- to the land of
- Canaan
- to the land of
- Canaan

UST

- He
- Sarai
- Lot
- in {the city of} Haran
- to the region of
- Canaan
- When they arrived there
- When they arrived there

Genesis 12:6

ULT:
Then Abram passed through the land as far as the place of Shechem, to the terebinth tree of Moreh. And the Canaanites {were} in the land at that time.

UST:
they traveled through that region as far as the city of Shechem, to Moreh's oak tree. At that time the Canaanites were {still living} in that land,

Then Abram passed (ULT)

they traveled (UST)

Abram is the only one named here because he is in focus. However, your translation should not sound like he traveled alone in verse 6. Also make sure that the way you begin this verse in your translation fits with the way you ended verse 5. Alternate translation: [Abram went] or [Abram and his family went] or [they went]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

through the land (ULT)

through that region (UST)

See how you translated **land** in verse 5. Alternate translation: [through that land]

---

as far as (ULT)

as far as (UST)

Alternate translation: [until they arrived at]

---

the place of Shechem (ULT)

the city of Shechem (UST)

Alternate translation: [the sacred place at the city of Shechem]

---

to the terebinth tree of Moreh (ULT)

to Moreh's oak tree (UST)

Moreh is probably the name of the person who owned the land where the terebinth tree was. A terebinth tree is a large, broadleaf, flowering tree in the cashew family that can grow to a height of 5 to 12 meters (16 to 40 feet). The Hebrew words for "oak" and **terebinth** are similar, so many translations (including LXX) translate this as "oak tree" here. Notice, however, that oak trees and terebinth trees are from two different families of trees.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

And the Canaanites {were} in the land at that time (ULT)

At that time the Canaanites were {still living} in that land (UST)

For some languages it is clearer and more natural to put the time phrase **at that time** first in this sentence. Alternate translation: [At that time the Canaanites were still living in that region]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abram
- through the land
- Shechem
- the terebinth tree of
- And the Canaanites
- {were} in the land

UST

- they traveled
- through that region
- the city of Shechem
- s oak tree
- the Canaanites
- were {still living} in that land

Genesis 12:7

ULT:
Then Yahweh appeared to Abram and said, "To your offspring I will give this land." So he built an altar there to Yahweh, who had appeared to him.

UST:
but Yahweh came to Abram and said {to him}, "I will give this land to your descendants." So Abram built an altar {out of large stones} in that place {and burned sacrifices on it} to worship Yahweh, because Yahweh had appeared to him {there}.

Then Yahweh appeared to Abram (ULT)

but Yahweh came to Abram (UST)

Notice that the text does not specify in what form or in what way God appeared to Abram, so your translation should not do that either. Also, Yahweh's promise in verse 7 to give Canaan to Abram's descendants contrasts with the fact that the Canaanites were still occupying that region (verse 6). Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh made his presence known to Abram] or [but Yahweh visited Abram]

---

and said (ULT)

and said {to him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and promised to him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

To your offspring I will give this land (ULT)

I will give this land to your descendants (UST)

In the Hebrew text, the phrase "to your offspring" is emphasized by its position at the beginning of this quote. However, for some languages it may be clearer and more natural to

change the order of the clauses and say, “I will give this land to your descendants.” Alternate translation: [I will give this land to your offspring]

Support Reference: Information Structure

So he built an altar (ULT)

So Abram built an altar {out of large stones} (UST)

Consider what is the best way to refer to Abram here in your language. Alternate translation: [So he made an altar out of large stones] or [So he built a sacrifice mound with stones]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

there (ULT)

in that place (UST)

Alternate translation: [near the tree]

---

to Yahweh (ULT)

{and burned sacrifices on it} to worship Yahweh (UST)

Alternate translation: [and burned sacrifices on it to thank and worship Yahweh]

---

who had appeared to him (ULT)

because Yahweh had appeared to him {there} (UST)

See how you translated **appeared** earlier in verse 7. Alternate translation: [who had come to him there] or [because he had come to him there]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Yahweh
- Abram
- To your offspring
- land
- an altar
- to Yahweh

UST

- Yahweh
- Abram
- to your descendants
- land
- an altar {out of large stones}
- {and burned sacrifices on it} to worship Yahweh

Genesis 12:8

ULT:
Then from there he went on to the mountains to the east of Bethel and pitched his tents, {with} Bethel on the west and Ai on the east. And there he built an altar to Yahweh, and he called on the name of Yahweh.

UST:
From {the city of} Shechem, Abram {and his family} moved {south} to the hill country that was east of {the town of} Bethel. They set up their tents between Bethel to the west and {the town of} Ai to the east. There Abram built another altar {and burned sacrifices on it} to worship Yahweh, and he addressed Yahweh by {his} name as he worshiped him.

Then from there he went on (ULT)

From {the city of} Shechem, Abram {and his family} moved {south} (UST)

Alternate translation: [From the place of Shechem, he and his family moved south to]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

to the mountains to the east of Bethel (ULT)

to the hill country that was east of {the town of} Bethel (UST)

Alternate translation: [the mountainous region east of the town of Bethel]

---

and pitched his tents (ULT)

They set up their tents (UST)

Moses is using the phrase **pitched his tents** as a common expression of his culture to mean "set up his tents." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and put up his tents there] or [They set up their camp]

Support Reference: Idiom

{with} Bethel on the west and Ai on the east (ULT)

between Bethel to the west and {the town of} Ai to the east (UST)

Alternate translation: [Bethel was to the west of them and the town of Ai was to the east]

And there he built (ULT)

There Abram built (UST)

Alternate translation: [There he made]

---

an altar (ULT)

another altar (UST)

See how you translated **altar** in verse 7. Alternate translation: [another sacrifice mound]

---

to Yahweh (ULT)

{and burned sacrifices on it} to worship Yahweh (UST)

See how you translated **to Yahweh** in verse 7.

---

and he called on the name of Yahweh (ULT)

and he addressed Yahweh by {his} name as he worshiped him (UST)

See how you translated a similar clause in Genesis 4:26. Alternate translation: [and he praised him by name] or [he addressed him by his name as he praised him] or [he praised him]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- {with} Bethel
- of Bethel
- of Bethel
- his tents
- {with} Bethel
- and Ai
- an altar
- to Yahweh
- and he called
- Yahweh

UST

- between Bethel
- of {the town of} Bethel
- of {the town of} Bethel
- their tents
- between Bethel
- and {the town of} Ai
- another altar
- {and burned sacrifices on it} to worship Yahweh
- and he addressed Yahweh by {his} name as he worshiped him
- and he addressed Yahweh by {his} name as he worshiped him

Genesis 12:9

ULT:
Then Abram set out and continued to travel toward the Negev.

UST:
Then Abram {and his family} moved from place to place {southward} until they reached the Negev {Desert}.

Then Abram set out and continued to travel (ULT)

Then Abram {and his family} moved from place to place (UST)

Alternate translation: [After that, he and his family traveled in stages] or [Then he and his family moved from place to place]

---

toward the Negev (ULT)

southward} until they reached the Negev {Desert} (UST)

The Hebrew word **Negev** can mean "south" or "dry country," so some translations translate the meaning. But most translations transliterate the Hebrew name (as **Negev** or "Negeb") as they do with other names in the Bible. Alternate translation: [south toward the Negev Wilderness] or [southward until they reached the Southern Wilderness]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Abram
- toward the Negev

UST
- Abram {and his family}
- southward} until they reached the Negev {Desert}

Genesis 12:10

ULT:
Then there was a famine in the land, so Abram went down to Egypt to sojourn there because the famine {was} heavy in the land.

UST:
Now there was a serious food shortage in that region. It was so severe that Abram {and his family} {left there and} went down to {the country of} Egypt to live for a while.

Then there was (ULT)

Now there was (UST)

This clause gives the setting for the rest of the sentence. Translate this in a way that is natural in your language.

---

in the land (ULT)

in that region (UST)

Alternate translation: [in that area] or [in the Negev Desert]

---

so Abram went down (ULT)

Abram {and his family} {left there and} went down (UST)

The phrase **went down** refers to the fact that Egypt is lower in elevation than Canaan (verse 12:5). It is also located southwest of Canaan. Alternate translation: [so Abram and his family traveled southwest] or [so Abram and his family moved further south]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

to Egypt (ULT)

to {the country of} Egypt (UST)

Alternate translation: [to the land of Egypt]

---

to sojourn there (ULT)

to live for a while (UST)

Alternate translation: [to live there for a time]

---

because the famine {was} heavy (ULT)

It was so severe that (UST)

Alternate translation: [because the food shortage was very severe]

---

in the land (ULT)

in that region (UST)

For some languages it may be more natural to put **in the land** near the beginning of this verse and say, “Now in that region there was a famine that was so severe that Abram and his family left there and went down to the country of Egypt to live for a while.” Alternate translation: [in that land] or [in the Negev Desert so they could not survive there]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- a famine
- in the land
- Abram
- to Egypt
- the famine
- in the land

UST

- a serious food shortage
- in that region
- Abram {and his family}
- to {the country of} Egypt
- הָרָעָב (ORIG QUOTE)
- בָּאָרֶץ (ORIG QUOTE)

Genesis 12:11

ULT:
And it happened that as he was about to enter Egypt, then he said to Sarai his wife, "Behold please, I know that you {are} a woman beautiful in appearance.

UST:
Just before they arrived in Egypt, Abram said to his wife Sarai, "Please listen {to me}: you {are} a very beautiful woman.

And it happened that as he was about to enter Egypt (ULT)

Just before they arrived in Egypt (UST)

Alternate translation: [As they approached Egypt]

---

then he said to Sarai his wife (ULT)

Abram said to his wife Sarai (UST)

Alternate translation: [he told his wife Sarai]

Behold please (ULT)

Please listen {to me} (UST)

The author is using the term **Behold** to focus Sarai's attention on what he is about to say to her. Your language may have a comparable expression that you could use in your translation.
Alternate translation: [Listen please] or [Please listen to this:]

Support Reference: Metaphor

I know that you {are} a woman beautiful in appearance (ULT)

you {are} a very beautiful woman (UST)

Alternate translation: [I know that you are a very beautiful woman]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Egypt
- Sarai
- I know

UST

- in Egypt
- Sarai
- יָדַעְתִּי (ORIG QUOTE)

Genesis 12:12

ULT:
So it will happen when the Egyptians see you, then they will say, 'This {is} his wife,' and they will kill me but let you live.

UST:
When the people in Egypt see you {with me}, they will say that you are my wife. Then they will kill me and let you live {so that they can take you}.

So it will happen when (ULT)

When (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to begin this sentence with or without a conjunction (**So**). Alternate translation: [So when]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

---

the Egyptians (ULT)

the people in Egypt (UST)

Alternate translation: [the people of Egypt]

---

see you (ULT)

see you {with me} (UST)

Alternate translation: [notice you with me]

---

then they will say, ‘This {is} his wife (ULT)

they will say that you are my wife (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [they will know that you are my wife]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

---

and they will kill me but let you live (ULT)

Then they will kill me and let you live {so that they can take you} (UST)

The term translated as **and** indicates that what follows is a result of what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a result of what came before. Alternate translation: [Then they will kill me but let you live, so that they can have you]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the Egyptians
- and they will kill

UST

- the people in Egypt
- Then they will kill

Genesis 12:13

ULT:
Please say {that} you {are} my sister so that it will go well for me for your sake and my life will live because of you."

UST:
{So} please tell people {that} you {are} my sister so that they will treat me well because of you and let me live."

{that} you {are} my sister (ULT)

{that} you {are} my sister (UST)

If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this as a direct quotation. Consider whether an indirect quote or direct quote is best here in your language. Alternate translation, following a comma: ["I am his sister"]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

---

so that it will go well for me (ULT)

so that they will treat me well (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that I will be treated well] or [so that people will treat me well]

---

and my life will live because of you (ULT)

and let me live (UST)

For some languages it is not natural to include the phrase **because of you** here, because it repeats the same idea as **for your sake** in the previous clause. Alternate translation: [and my life will be spared by them] or [and they will spare my life] or [and they will let me live]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- it will go well

UST

- they will treat … well

Genesis 12:14

ULT:
Then it happened, when Abram came into Egypt, then the Egyptians saw the woman, that she {was} very beautiful.

UST:
That is {exactly} what happened: When Abram {and his family} arrived in {the country of} Egypt, the people there noticed that Sarai was {truly} very beautiful.

when Abram came into Egypt (ULT)

When Abram {and his family} arrived in {the country of} Egypt (UST)

Although Abram is in focus here, your translation should not sound like he was traveling alone. Alternate translation: [When Abram and his family entered the land of Egypt]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

then the Egyptians saw (ULT)

the people there noticed (UST)

Alternate translation: [the Egyptian people saw] or [the people living there observed]

---

the woman, that she {was} very beautiful (ULT)

that Sarai was {truly} very beautiful (UST)

Alternate translation: [that the woman with him was indeed very beautiful] or [that Sarai was indeed very beautiful]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abram
- into Egypt
- the Egyptians

UST

- Abram {and his family}
- in {the country of} Egypt
- the people there

Genesis 12:15

ULT:
And the officials of Pharaoh saw her, so they praised her to Pharaoh, and the woman was taken into Pharaoh's house.

UST:
When some officers under Pharaoh {the king of Egypt} noticed her, they highly recommended her to him. So he had them bring her to his palace {to be one of his wives}.

And the officials of Pharaoh saw her (ULT)

When some officers under Pharaoh {the king of Egypt} noticed her (UST)

The term **officials** is general and refers to leaders or rulers who were under Pharaoh and served him. Alternate translation: [Some of the officers who ruled under the Egyptian king spotted her] or [When some officials of Pharaoh the king of Egypt saw her]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

---

so they praised her to Pharaoh (ULT)

they highly recommended her to him (UST)

Alternate translation: [so they told him how beautiful she was]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

and the woman was taken (ULT)

So he had them bring her (UST)

If your language does not use a passive form like **was taken**, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and they brought the woman] or [So he had them bring Sarai]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

into Pharaoh's house (ULT)

to his palace {to be one of his wives} (UST)

Alternate translation: [into Pharoah's palace to become his wife]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the officials of
- Pharaoh
- so they praised
- Pharaoh
- into … s house
- Pharaoh

UST

- some officers under
- Pharaoh {the king of Egypt}
- they highly recommended
- him
- to his palace {to be one of his wives}
- to his palace {to be one of his wives}

Genesis 12:16

ULT:
Then he treated Abram well for her sake, so that he had flock{s} and herd{s} and male donkeys and male slaves and female slaves and female donkeys and camels.

UST:
The king thought that Abram was Sarai's brother, so he treated him well. He gave him many sheep and cattle, as well as men and women servants, male and female donkeys, and camels.

Then he treated Abram well for her sake, so that he had (ULT)

The king thought that Abram was Sarai's brother, so he treated him well. He gave him (UST)

The first pronoun **he**, used in **he treated**, refers to the king. The second use of the pronoun **he** refers to Abram. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [so that Abram had] or [and Abram acquired from him]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

flock{s} and herd{s} (ULT)

many sheep and cattle (UST)

Alternate translation: [flocks of sheep and herds of cattle]

---

and male donkeys and male slaves and female slaves and female donkeys (ULT)

as well as men and women servants, male and female donkeys (UST)

Alternate translation: [as well as men and women servants, and male and female donkeys]

---

and camels (ULT)

and camels (UST)

Alternate translation: [and larger load-bearing animals called camels]

Then he treated Abram well for her sake (ULT)

The king thought that Abram was Sarai's brother, so he treated him well (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Pharaoh treated Abram well because of her]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then … Abram
- he treated … well
- flock{s}
- and herd{s}
- and male donkeys
- and male slaves
- and female slaves
- and female donkeys
- and camels

UST

- he treated him well
- he treated him well
- many sheep
- and cattle
- as well as men and women servants, male and female donkeys
- as well as men and women servants, male and female donkeys
- as well as men and women servants, male and female donkeys
- as well as men and women servants, male and female donkeys
- and camels

Genesis 12:17

ULT:
But Yahweh struck Pharaoh and his house {with} great plagues on account of Sarai the wife of Abram.

UST:
But since {King} Pharaoh had taken Abram's wife Sarai, Yahweh afflicted the king and his family {with} severe illnesses.

{with} great plagues (ULT)

{with} severe illnesses (UST)

Alternate translation: [with severe diseases]

---

on account of Sarai the wife of Abram (ULT)

since {King} Pharaoh had taken Abram's wife Sarai (UST)

For many languages it is clearer and more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, "But since King Pharaoh had taken Abram's wife Sarai, Yahweh afflicted the king and his family with severe illnesses."

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Yahweh
- Pharaoh
- his house
- Sarai
- Abram

UST
- Yahweh
- the king
- his family
- Sarai

- Abram

Genesis 12:18

ULT:
So Pharaoh called for Abram and said, "What {is} this you have done to me? Why did you not tell me that she {was} your wife?

UST:
So the king summoned Abram {before him} and said {to him}, "You have treated me very badly! You should have told me that Sarai {is} your wife!

and said (ULT)

and said {to him} (UST)

Make sure that the way you translate this quote margin fits with the way that you translate the following quote. Alternate translation: [and asked him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

What {is} this you have done to me (ULT)

You have treated me very badly (UST)

Pharaoh uses rhetorical questions in verses 18 and 19 to express his anger at what Abram had done; he does not expect Abram to answer him. Some languages must use statements or exclamations here instead. Alternate translation: [You have treated me very badly!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

Why did you not tell me that she {was} your wife (ULT)

You should have told me that Sarai {is} your wife (UST)

Alternate translation: [You should have informed me that she is your wife!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- So … called
- Pharaoh
- for Abram

UST

- So … summoned … before him
- the king
- Abram

Genesis 12:19

ULT:
Why did you say, ‘She {is} my sister,’ so that I took her to me as a wife? Now then, behold, your wife. Take {her} and go!”

UST:
You should not have said that she {is} your sister, so that I ended up taking her to be my wife! So now, here is your wife. Take {her} and leave {my country}!”

Why did you say, ‘She {is} my sister (ULT)

You should not have said that she {is} your sister (UST)

Pharaoh uses this rhetorical question to scold Abram and express his anger at him. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Also consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [Why did you say that she is your sister?] or [You should not have pretended that she is your sister!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

so that I took her to me as a wife (ULT)

so that I ended up taking her to be my wife (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that I chose her to be a wife!] or [I believed you and took her to be my wife!]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

Now then (ULT)

So now (UST)

Alternate translation: [Now therefore]

---

behold, your wife (ULT)

here is your wife (UST)

Alternate translation: [here is your wife back]

---

behold, your wife (ULT)

here is your wife (UST)

Pharaoh is using the term **behold** to focus Abram's attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you could use in your translation. Alternate translation: [look, I return your wife]

Support Reference: Metaphor

Genesis 12:20

ULT:
Then Pharaoh commanded his men concerning him, and they sent him away and his wife and everything that {belonged} to him.

UST:
Then {King} Pharaoh ordered {some of} his soldiers to make sure that Abram left, so they forced him to leave {the country}, along with his wife and everything that he owned.

his men (ULT)

{some of} his soldiers (UST)

Alternate translation: [some of his men]

---

concerning him (ULT)

to make sure that Abram left (UST)

Throughout this verse, make sure it is clear in your translation who is being referred to.
Alternate translation: [about Abram] or [with regard to Abram]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

and they sent him away (ULT)

so they forced him to leave {the country} (UST)

Alternate translation: [so they deported him from their country] or [so they expelled him from Egypt]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

---

and everything that {belonged} to him (ULT)

and everything that he owned (UST)

The phrase **everything that belonged to him** represents all the possessions that Abram owned, including his slaves, animals, and everything else that he owned, but it does not refer to any one particular possession. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a more natural expression. Alternate translation: [and all that he had] or [all his possessions]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Pharaoh

UST
- {King} Pharaoh

Genesis 13

Genesis 13:1

ULT:
Then Abram went up from Egypt, he and his wife and everything that {belonged} to him, and Lot with him, to the Negev.

UST:
So Abram left {the country of} Egypt {and traveled} {back} to the Negev {Desert}. {He took} with him his wife and everything that they owned, and also {his nephew} Lot.

Then Abram went up from Egypt, he and his wife and everything that {belonged} to him, and Lot with him, to the Negev (ULT)

So Abram left {the country of} Egypt {and traveled} {back} to the Negev {Desert}. {He took} with him his wife and everything that they owned, and also {his nephew} Lot (UST)

For many languages it is more natural to put the phrase **to the Negev** earlier in this verse. Alternate translation: [Then Abram went up from Egypt and traveled back to the Negev Wilderness, along with his wife and everything that belonged to him. His nephew Lot also went with them]

Support Reference: Information Structure

Then Abram went up from Egypt (ULT)

So Abram left {the country of} Egypt (UST)

The Negev Wilderness (or Desert) is northeast in direction from Egypt and is higher in elevation, so **Abram went up from Egypt**. Compare how you translated "down" in 12:10 when Abram traveled in the opposite direction. Alternate translation: [So Abram went northeast from the country of Egypt] or [Then Abram departed from the land of Egypt]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abram
- from Egypt
- and Lot
- to the Negev

UST

- Abram
- {the country of} Egypt
- and also {his nephew} Lot
- and traveled} {back} to the Negev {Desert}

Genesis 13:2

ULT:
And Abram {was} very wealthy in livestock, in silver, and in gold.

UST:
{By that time} Abram {had become} very rich, so that he owned {many} livestock and {much} silver and gold.

And Abram (ULT)

{By that time} Abram (UST)

Consider what is the best way in your language to introduce this background information about Abram. Alternate translation: [Now] or [By then, Abram]

Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

---

in silver, and in gold (ULT)

and {much} silver and gold (UST)

In this context, “silver and gold” includes the metals themselves as well as objects made out of the metals, but not coins (since coins did not exist at that time). See how you translated **gold** in Genesis 2:11.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- And Abram
- in livestock
- in silver
- and in gold

UST
- {By that time} Abram
- so that he owned {many} livestock
- and {much} silver

- and gold

Genesis 13:3

ULT:
Then he went on his journeys from the Negev as far as Bethel, to the place where his tents had been at the beginning, between Bethel and Ai,

UST:
From the Negev {Desert} he {and his family} traveled from place to place {northward} {until they came} to {the town of} Bethel, to the place where he had lived in tents before, between {the towns of} Bethel and Ai.

from the Negev (ULT)

From the Negev {Desert} (UST)

See how you translated **the Negev**, the name of a desert place, in verse 1. Alternate translation: [From the Southern Desert]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

Then he went on his journeys (ULT)

he {and his family} traveled from place to place {northward} (UST)

It is assumed that his whole family is traveling with Abram. Consider whether or not you need to make that explicit in your language. Alternate translation: [Abram and his family moved from place to place northward] or [Abram and his family continued traveling northward]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

at the beginning (ULT)

before (UST)

Alternate translation: [previously] or [the first time he was there]

Then he went on his journeys from the Negev as far as Bethel, to the place where his tents had been at the beginning, between Bethel and Ai (ULT)

From the Negev {Desert} he {and his family} traveled from place to place {northward} {until they came} to {the town of} Bethel, to the place where he had lived in tents before, between {the towns of} Bethel and Ai (UST)

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to put the phrase **between Bethel and Ai** earlier in the sentence. Alternate translation: [Then from the Negev Desert, Abram and his family continued traveling northward until they came to the place between the towns of Bethel and Ai where they had camped in tents previously]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Bethel
- Bethel
- from the Negev
- Bethel
- his tents
- Ai

UST

- {the towns of} Bethel
- {the town of} Bethel
- From the Negev {Desert}
- {the town of} Bethel
- in tents
- Ai

Genesis 13:4

ULT:
to the place of the altar that he had made there at first, and there Abram called on the name of Yahweh.

UST:
{That was} the {same} place where he had previously built an altar. There {again} he {sacrificed animals on the altar and} worshiped Yahweh by name.

to the place of the altar that he had made there at first (ULT)

{That was} the {same} place where he had previously built an altar (UST)

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also see how you translated **altar** in Genesis 8:20 and Genesis 12:7–8. Alternate translation: [to the same site where he had made an altar before] or [That is the same site where he had first made an altar]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the altar
- and … called
- Abram
- Yahweh

UST

- where he had … built an altar
- There {again} he {sacrificed animals on the altar and} worshiped
- There {again} he {sacrificed animals on the altar and} worshiped
- Yahweh

Genesis 13:5

ULT:
Now Lot, who was traveling with Abram, also had flock{s} and herd{s} and tents.

UST:
Lot was traveling with {his uncle} Abram, and he {and his family} also owned many sheep and cattle, as well as {many} tents.

Now Lot, who was traveling with Abram, also had (ULT)

Lot was traveling with {his uncle} Abram, and he {and his family} also owned (UST)

The word **Now** introduces more background information for the new episode. For some languages it is more natural to leave **Now** implied and just use a paragraph break. Alternate translation: [Lot was traveling with his uncle, Abram, and he and his family also had]

Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Lot
- Abram
- flock{s}
- and herd{s}
- and tents

UST
- Lot
- {his uncle} Abram
- many sheep
- and cattle
- as well as {many} tents

Genesis 13:6

ULT:
But the land could not support them while they stayed together, because their possessions were great, so that they were not able to stay together.

UST:
In fact, there was not enough land to have enough food and water for both families {and their animals} if they lived in the same area. They each owned so many servants and animals that it was not possible for them to {all} live near each other.

But the land could not support them (ULT)

In fact, there was not enough land to have enough food and water for both families {and their animals} (UST)

Alternate translation: [As a result, the land could not provide them all with the necessary food and water] or [In fact, there was not enough land to provide adequate food and water for both families and all their animals]

---

while they stayed together (ULT)

if they lived in the same area (UST)

Alternate translation: [if they lived near each other]

---

because their possessions were great (ULT)

They each owned so many servants and animals (UST)

The phrase **their possessions** represents all that they owned in general, not one particular possession. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a more natural expression. Their livestock required much land to graze and much water to drink. The word “possessions” may also include their many servants. Alternate translation: [because their belongings were so

abundant] or [because they owned so many servants and livestock] or [They each owned so many servants and livestock]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

---

so that they were not able to stay together (ULT)

that it was not possible for them to {all} live near each other (UST)

The words translated as **so that** indicate that what follows is a result of what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a result of what came before. Also see how you translated **stayed together** earlier in this verse. Alternate translation:r [that they could not all live in the same area]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the land

UST

- there was … enough land to have enough food and water for both families {and their animals}

Genesis 13:7

ULT:
Then there was strife between the herdsmen of Abram's livestock and the herdsmen of Lot's livestock. And the Canaanites and the Perizzites were living in the land then.

UST:
As a result, the men who took care of Abram's livestock and the men who took care of Lot's livestock started to argue with each other. Besides that, the Canaanites and the Perizzites were {also} living in that land at that time.

Then there was (ULT)

As a result … started (UST)

Alternate translation: [At that time there was]

Then there was strife (ULT)

As a result … started to argue (UST)

The Hebrew word for **strife** is general in meaning and can include arguing and fighting. Some languages have a common expression for this that fits well here. Alternate translation: [there was arguing] or [Then quarreling erupted]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

And the Canaanites (ULT)

Besides that, the Canaanites (UST)

Alternate translation: [Also, the Canaanites] or [In addition, the Canaanites]

And the Canaanites and the Perizzites (ULT)

Besides that, the Canaanites and the Perizzites (UST)

See how you translated the names of people groups in Genesis 10, and see how you translated **the Canaanites** in Genesis 12:6. Alternate translation: [the Canaanite people and the Perizzite people] or [the descendants of Canaan and Perez]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

And the Canaanites and the Perizzites were living in the land then (ULT)

Besides that, the Canaanites and the Perizzites were {also} living in that land at that time (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to put this time phrase earlier in the sentence. Alternate translation: [At that time the Canaanites the and Perizzites were living in the land]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- strife
- the herdsmen of
- s livestock
- Abram
- the herdsmen of
- s livestock
- Lot
- And the Canaanites
- and the Perizzites
- in the land

UST

- to argue
- the men who took care of
- s livestock
- Abram
- the men who took care of
- s livestock
- Lot
- Besides that, the Canaanites

- and the Perizzites
- in that land

Genesis 13:8

ULT:
So Abram said to Lot, “Please do not let there be strife between me and you, or between my herdsmen and your herdsmen, because we {are} men, brothers.

UST:
Finally {one day} Abram said to Lot, “Please, since we {are} close relatives, we need to do something so that you and I and our herdsmen will not argue.

So Abram said to Lot (ULT)

Finally {one day} Abram said to Lot (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then one day Abram spoke to Lot, saying]

Please do not let there be (ULT)

Please … we need to do something so that you and I and our herdsmen will not argue (UST)

Alternate translation: [Please, we should not allow] or [We need to take action in order to prevent]

---

between me and you (ULT)

Please … we need to do something so that you and I and our herdsmen will not argue (UST)

Alternate translation: [between you and me] or [between us]

---

or between my herdsmen and your herdsmen (ULT)

Please … we need to do something so that you and I and our herdsmen will not argue (UST)

See how you translated **herdsmen** in verse 7. Alternate translation: [or between the men tending my livestock and the men tending your livestock] or [or between our herdsmen]

So Abram said to Lot, "Please do not let there be strife between me and you, or between my herdsmen and your herdsmen, because we {are} men, brothers (ULT)

Finally {one day} Abram said to Lot, "Please, since we {are} close relatives, we need to do something so that you and I and our herdsmen will not argue (UST)

For some languages it may be better to put the clause **because we are men, brothers** earlier in this verse. Alternate translation: [Abram spoke to lot, saying, "Please, since we are close relatives, we must do something so that you and I and our herdsmen will not argue]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abram
- Lot
- strife
- my herdsmen
- your herdsmen

UST

- Abram
- Lot
- Please … we need to do something so that you and I and our herdsmen will not argue
- Please … we need to do something so that you and I and our herdsmen will not argue
- Please … we need to do something so that you and I and our herdsmen will not argue

---

Genesis 13:9

ULT:
Is not the whole land before you? Please separate from me. If {you go to} the left, then I will go right, or if {you go to} the right, then I will go left."

UST:
Look, the entire land is available to you {to choose from}. Please {choose where you want to live, and} let's live in separate places. If {you choose} {the land to} the left {of here}, then I will take {the land to} the right. Or if {you choose} {the land to} the right {of here}, then I will take {the land to} the left."

Is not the whole land before you (ULT)

Look, the entire land is available to you {to choose from} (UST)

Abram is using a rhetorical question to emphasize his point. He does not expect an answer from Lot. If that is not clear, you can translate this as a statement. Alternate translation: [You can choose to live anywhere in this entire land!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

Please separate from me (ULT)

Please {choose where you want to live, and} let's live in separate places (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation of verse 9 that Abram is being kind to Lot rather than being mean or rude.

Support Reference: Imperatives — Other Uses

If {you go to} the left (ULT)

If {you choose} {the land to} the left {of here} (UST)

Alternate translation: [if you decide to live in the land to our left]

---

then I will go right (ULT)

then I will take {the land to} the right (UST)

Alternate translation: [then I will choose the land to the right] or [then I will live in the land to our right]

---

or if {you go to} the right (ULT)

Or if {you choose} {the land to} the right {of here} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Or if you decide to live in the land to our right]

---

then I will go left (ULT)

then I will take {the land to} the left (UST)

Alternate translation: [then I will choose the land to the left] or [then I will live in the land to our left]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the … land

UST

- the … land

Genesis 13:10

ULT:
Then Lot lifted his eyes and saw all the plain of the Jordan as you go {toward} Zoar, that all of it {was} well-watered, like Yahweh's garden, like the land of Egypt, before Yahweh destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah.

UST:
Lot looked {all} around and he noticed that the entire Jordan {River} Valley, all the way to {the town of} Zoar, had plenty of water. {It was lush and green} like the garden that Yahweh had planted or like the country of Egypt. {That is what it was like} before Yahweh destroyed {the cities of} Sodom and Gomorrah, {which were also in that valley}.

Then Lot lifted his eyes (ULT)

Lot looked {all} around (UST)

Moses is using **lifted his eyes** as a common expression of his culture to mean "looked around." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [So Lot looked all around] or [Lot observed the land carefully]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and saw all the plain of the Jordan as you go {toward} Zoar, that all of it (ULT)

and he noticed that the entire Jordan {River} Valley, all the way to {the town of} Zoar (UST)

The word **Jordan** is the name of a river. The **plain of the Jordan** is the wide, flat valley through which the Jordan River flows between the Sea of Galilee and the Dead Sea. Alternate translation: [and he observed that the whole Jordan River Valley, all the way to the town of Zoar,]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

{was} well-watered (ULT)

had plenty of water (UST)

Alternate translation: [had a lot of water]

---

like Yahweh's garden (ULT)

{It was lush and green} like the garden that Yahweh had planted (UST)

See how you translated **garden** in Genesis 3:23–24. This phrase refers to the Garden of Eden. You could put that information in a footnote.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Lot
- the Jordan
- destroyed
- Yahweh
- Sodom
- Gomorrah
- Yahweh
- like the land of
- Egypt
- {toward} Zoar

UST

- Lot looked {all} around
- that the entire Jordan {River} Valley
- destroyed
- Yahweh
- {the cities of} Sodom
- Gomorrah, {which were also in that valley}
- that Yahweh had planted
- or like the country of
- Egypt
- {the town of} Zoar

Genesis 13:11

ULT:
So Lot chose for himself all the plain of the Jordan, and Lot traveled to the east, and they separated from each other.

UST:
So Lot chose the entire Jordan {River} Valley for himself. Then he {left Abram and} moved to the east {to live there}. After that, Abram and Lot lived in separate places.

and Lot traveled (ULT)

Then he {left Abram and} moved (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to use Lot's name or a pronoun to refer to him here. Alternate translation: [and he moved] or [Then Lot left Abram and moved]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

and they separated from each other (ULT)

After that, Abram and Lot lived in separate places (UST)

Consider what is the best way to refer to Abram and Lot at this point in the paragraph. Alternate translation: [So in this way they lived separately from each other] or [That is how Abram and Lot began living in separate places]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

So Lot chose for himself all the plain of the Jordan (ULT)

So Lot chose the entire Jordan {River} Valley for himself (UST)

See how you translated **plain of the Jordan** in verse 10. Alternate translation: [Then Lot chose the whole Jordan River Plain for himself] or [Then Lot decided to live in the valley that surrounded the Jordan River]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Lot
- the Jordan
- Lot

UST

- Lot
- the … Jordan {River} Valley
- Then he {left Abram and} moved

Genesis 13:12

ULT:
Abram settled in the land of Canaan, and Lot settled in the cities of the plain and moved his tents as far as Sodom.

UST:
Abram stayed {where he was} in the region of Canaan, while Lot lived {in another part of the region} among the cities in the {Jordan River} valley and {eventually} moved his tents to {the city of} Sodom {and stayed there}.

Abram settled (ULT)

Abram stayed {where he was} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Abram settled where he was] or [Abram continued to live]

---

in the land of Canaan (ULT)

in the region of Canaan (UST)

Alternate translation: [in that part of the land of Canaan]

---

and Lot settled (ULT)

while Lot lived (UST)

Alternate translation: [but Lot lived]

---

in the cities of the plain (ULT)

{in another part of the region} among the cities in the {Jordan River} valley (UST)

As Lot traveled, he probably lived in several different cities in the Jordan River Valley until he eventually settled in the city of Sodom Genesis 14:12. Alternate translation: [in another part of the land in the cities of the Jordan River valley] or [in another part of the land in the cities in the valley surrounding the Jordan River]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and moved his tents as far as (ULT)

and {eventually} moved his tents to (UST)

Alternate translation: [He eventually pitched his tents in] or [and eventually moved his tents near]

Sodom (ULT)

the city of} Sodom {and stayed there} (UST)

Alternate translation: [the city of Sodom, and he settled there]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abram
- in the land of
- Canaan
- and Lot
- and moved his tents
- Sodom

UST

- Abram
- in the region of

- Canaan
- while Lot
- and {eventually} moved his tents
- the city of} Sodom {and stayed there}

Genesis 13:13

ULT:
Now the men of Sodom {were} exceedingly wicked and sinful against Yahweh.

UST:
But the people {who lived} in {the city of} Sodom {were} extremely wicked and were {always} sinning against Yahweh.

Now the men of Sodom (ULT)

But the people {who lived} in {the city of} Sodom (UST)

The conjunction "Now" introduces background information that builds suspense for what happens to the people of Sodom later in Genesis (chapters 18–19). Consider what is the best way to begin this verse in your language.

Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

Now the men of Sodom (ULT)

But the people {who lived} in {the city of} Sodom (UST)

The phrase **the men of Sodom** probably has a general meaning here that includes all the people of Sodom, though especially the men.

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

---

and sinful against Yahweh (ULT)

and were {always} sinning against Yahweh (UST)

Some translations treat the phrase **wicked and sinful** as a hendiadys that means "wicked sinners," but it is best to keep the two parts of this phrase separate (like the Hebrew text does)

to emphasize the people's evil character and behavior. Alternate translation: [were terrible sinners against Yahweh] or [were always rebelling against Yahweh]

{were} exceedingly wicked (ULT)

{were} extremely wicked (UST)

Alternate translation: [were very evil]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Sodom
- were … wicked
- and sinful
- against Yahweh

UST

- {the city of} Sodom
- were … wicked
- and were {always} sinning
- against Yahweh

Genesis 13:14

ULT:
Then Yahweh said to Abram, after Lot had separated from him, "Lift up your eyes please from the place where you {are}, and look northward and southward and eastward and westward,

UST:
After Lot had left Abram, Yahweh said to Abram, "Look {all} around you from the place where you {live}. Look north, south, east, and west.

Lift up your eyes please (ULT)

Look {all} around you (UST)

The Hebrew word for **please** is used to show politeness when making a proposal or to soften a command. It can also be translated as "now" or omitted, depending on the context. Your translation here should not sound like God is begging. See how you translated the common expression "lifted his eyes" in verse 10. Alternate translation: [Look around now]

Support Reference: Imperatives — Other Uses

Lift up your eyes please from the place where you {are}, and look (ULT)

Look {all} around you from the place where you {live}. Look (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to put this phrase first in this quote. Alternate translation: [From where you are standing, lift up your eyes please and look all around you,]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

northward and southward and eastward and westward (ULT)

north, south, east, and west (UST)

Alternate translation: [in all directions: north, south, east, and west] or [around you in every direction]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then Yahweh
- Abram
- Lot
- and southward

UST

- Yahweh
- Abram
- Lot
- south

Genesis 13:15

ULT:
because all the land that you see I will give to you and to your offspring forever.

UST:
All the land that you see I will give to you and your descendants {to own} forever.

because all the land that you see (ULT)

All the land that you see (UST)

Alternate translation: [All that land, everything in sight]

I will give to you and to your offspring (ULT)

I will give to you and your descendants (UST)

See how you translated **offspring** in Genesis 12:7.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the land
- and to your offspring
- forever

UST
- the land
- and your descendants
- {to own} forever

Genesis 13:16

ULT:
And I will make your offspring like the dust of the earth, which if anyone were able to count the dust of the earth, your offspring could also be counted.

UST:
In fact, I will give you so many descendants that they will be as {numerous as} the {specks of} dust on the earth. No one will be able to count how many descendants you have, just as no one can count how many {specks of} dust there are.

And I will make your offspring like the dust of the earth, which if anyone were able to count the dust of the earth, your offspring could also be counted (ULT)

In fact, I will give you so many descendants that they will be as {numerous as} the {specks of} dust on the earth. No one will be able to count how many descendants you have, just as no one can count how many {specks of} dust there are (UST)

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to change the order of the last two clauses. Alternate translation: [No one will be able to count how many offspring you have, just as no one can count how many particles of dirt there are]

Support Reference: Information Structure

And I will make your offspring (ULT)

In fact, I will give you so many descendants that they will be (UST)

Alternate translation: [For I will also cause your descendants to be] or [In fact, I will also give you so many offspring that they will seem]

---

like the dust of the earth (ULT)

as {numerous as} the {specks of} dust on the earth (UST)

See how you translated “dust” in Genesis 3:19. Alternate translation: [as numerous as the specks of dirt on the earth]

---

which if anyone were able to count (ULT)

just as no one can count how many {specks of} dust there are (UST)

The Hebrew text has a contrary-to-fact clause here which implies that it is impossible for anyone to count all the specks of dust. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [just as it is impossible to count] or [just as no one is able to count]

Support Reference: Connect — Contrary to Fact Conditions

---

like the dust of the earth (ULT)

as {numerous as} the {specks of} dust on the earth (UST)

The expression **the dust of the earth** contains extra information that may be unnatural to express in some languages. For some languages it is not natural to repeat “of the earth” here. If this is true of your language, you could shorten the expression, doing what is best in your language. Alternate translation: [to be as many as all the dirt specks] or [to be as plentiful as how many specks of dirt there are]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- your offspring
- the earth

- the earth
- your offspring

UST

- In fact, I will give you so many descendants that they will be
- the earth
- just as no one can count how many {specks of} dust there are
- No one will be able to count how many descendants you have

Genesis 13:17

ULT:
Get up and walk through the land, through its length and through its width, because to you I am giving it.”

UST:
{So now,} start walking through the land {in all directions}. Go throughout the entire land {and look it over}, because I am giving it {all} to you.”

Get up and walk (ULT)

{So now,} start walking (UST)

The phrase **Get up** may imply that Abram was sitting down, but it probably just means that God is telling him to start walking through the land. Alternate translation: [Now go walk]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

through the land (ULT)

through the land {in all directions} (UST)

Alternate translation: [all over the land]

---

through its length and through its width (ULT)

Go throughout the entire land {and look it over} (UST)

Speaker is referring to all of the land by naming two extremes, walking **through its length and through its width**. Alternate translation: [from end to end and side to side] or [Walk throughout the entire land, looking it over]

Support Reference: Merism

---

because to you I am giving it (ULT)

because I am giving it {all} to you (UST)

In the Hebrew text, the phrase **to you** is before the verb to emphasize that God is giving it to Abram. In your translation, communicate this emphasis in a way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [because you are the one I am giving it to] or [for it is to you that I am giving it]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- through the land

UST

- through the land {in all directions}

Genesis 13:18

ULT:
So Abram moved his tents and went and settled by the terebinth trees of Mamre that {were} near Hebron, and there he built an altar to Yahweh.

UST:
Then Abram {obeyed Yahweh and} moved his tents and settled near the oak trees {on the land} owned by {a man named} Mamre, near {the city of} Hebron. There he built an altar {out of stones} {and burned sacrifices on it} to {thank and} worship Yahweh.

So Abram moved his tents (ULT)

Then Abram {obeyed Yahweh and} moved his tents (UST)

Abram obeyed God, but we do not know if he did everything that God commanded (verse 17) before he moved his tents near Hebron (verse 18), or if moving his tents was the first step in obeying what God told him to do. It is best to keep this general in your translation (as the Hebrew text does). Also see how you translated the phrase **moved his tents** in verse 12.
Alternate translation: [Then Abram did what Yahweh commanded and moved his tents] or [Abram obeyed Yahweh and relocated his tents]

---

and went and settled (ULT)

and settled (UST)

Alternate translation: [and went to live]

---

by the terebinth trees of Mamre (ULT)

near the oak trees {on the land} owned by {a man named} Mamre (UST)

See how you translated **terebinth** in Genesis 12:6. Alternate translation: [near the terebinth trees on the land owned by a man named Mamre]

---

and there he built an altar (ULT)

There he built an altar {out of stones} (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 12:7–8

---

to Yahweh (ULT)

{and burned sacrifices on it} to {thank and} worship Yahweh (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 12:7 and how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 8:20 and 12:8. Alternate translation: [and offered sacrifices on it to thank and worship Yahweh]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- So … moved his tents
- Abram
- by the terebinth trees of
- near Hebron
- an altar
- to Yahweh

UST

- Then … {obeyed Yahweh and} moved his tents
- Abram
- near the oak trees {on the land} owned by
- near {the city of} Hebron
- an altar {out of stones}

- {and burned sacrifices on it} to {thank and} worship Yahweh

---

Genesis 14

Genesis 14:1

ULT:
Now it happened in the days of Amraphel king of Shinar, Arioch king of Ellasar, Chedorlaomer king of Elam, and Tidal king of the Goiim,

UST:
During that time Amraphel was the king over {the land of} Shinar, Arioch was the king over Ellasar, Chedorlaomer was the king over {the land of} Elam, and Tidal was the king over the Goiim {people}.

Now it happened in the days of (ULT)

During that time (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then it happened that during the time when]

Amraphel king of (ULT)

Amraphel was the king over (UST)

The term **king** refers to the highest ruler or leader over a kingdom, which at that time was often just a city, a small region or a people group. Translate this with the best word for that in your language. Also see how you translated **Shinar** in Genesis 10:10 and 11:2. Alternate translation: [Amraphel was the ruler over] or [King Amraphel was ruling]

Support Reference: Politeness

Shinar (ULT)

{the land of} Shinar (UST)

Alternate translation: [the region of Shinar]

Chedorlaomer king of (ULT)

Chedorlaomer was … king over {the … } (UST)

In Hebrew this king's name is pronounced **Chedorlaomer**. However in many translations it is spelled "Kedorlaomer." Be consistent with your choice throughout this chapter. Also, **Elam** refers to the land where the descendants of Shem's son Elam lived (Genesis 10:22). Alternate translation: [Chedorlaomer was the ruler over] or [King Chedorlaomer was ruling]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

Elam (ULT)

land … Elam … the (UST)

Alternate translation: [the land of the Elamites]

---

and Tidal king of (ULT)

and Tidal was … king over the (UST)

Most translation teams transliterate the name "Goyim" (as they do other names in the Bible). Some translations translate its meaning and say, "the nations." Alternate translation: [and Tidal was the ruler over] or [and King Tidal was ruling]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

the Goiim (ULT)

Goiim {people} (UST)

Most translation teams transliterate the name “Goyim” (as they do other names in the Bible). Some translations translate its meaning and say “the peoples.”

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- in the days of
- king of
- Shinar
- king of
- king of
- Elam
- king of

UST

- During that time
- was the king over
- {the land of} Shinar
- was the king over
- was … king over {the … }
- land … Elam … the
- was … king over the

Genesis 14:2

ULT:
they made war against Bera king of Sodom, and against Birsha king of Gomorrah, Shinab king of Admah, and Shemeber king of Zeboiim, and the king of Bela, which {is} Zoar.

UST:
Those {four} kings {joined forces and} went to war against {five other kings, including} Bera {who was} the king over {the city of} Sodom, Birsha {who was} the king over {the city of} Gomorrah, Shinab {who was} the king over {the city of} Admah, Shemeber {who was} the king over {the city of} Zeboyim, and the king over {the town of} Bela, which {is also called} Zoar.

they made war against (ULT)

Those {four} kings {joined forces and} went to war against (UST)

Alternate translation: [those four kings became allies and made war] or [those four kings joined forces and went to war]

Bera king of (ULT)

{five other kings, including} Bera {who was} the king over (UST)

Alternate translation: [Bera who was the ruler over] or [King Bera who was ruling]

---

and against Birsha king of (ULT)

Birsha {who was} the king over (UST)

Alternate translation: [Birsha who was the ruler over] or [King Birsha who was ruling]

Shinab king of (ULT)

Shinab {who was} the king over (UST)

Alternate translation: [Shinab who was the ruler over] or [King Shinab who was ruling]

---

and Shemeber king of (ULT)

Shemeber {who was} the king over (UST)

Alternate translation: [Shemeber who was the ruler over] or [King Shemeber who was ruling]

---

and the king of (ULT)

and the king over (UST)

Alternate translation: [and the ruler over] or [and the ruler who was ruling]

---

which {is} Zoar (ULT)

which {is also called} Zoar (UST)

This town is first mentioned in Genesis 13:10, but it was not actually named Zoar until later (Genesis 19:22). You may want to put that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [which is now called Zoar] or [which was later called Zoar] or [that is, Zoar]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- king of

- Sodom
- king of
- Gomorrah
- king of
- king of
- and the king of
- {is} Zoar

UST

- {who was} the king over
- {the city of} Sodom
- {who was} the king over
- {the city of} Gomorrah
- {who was} the king over
- {who was} the king over
- and the king over
- Zoar

Genesis 14:3

ULT:
All these joined together in the Valley of Siddim, which {is now} the Sea of Salt.

UST:
Those {five kings} all united their armies {as allies} {and fought against the four kings} in the Siddim Valley, where the Salt Sea {is now}.

All these (ULT)

Those {five kings} all (UST)

Consider whether it is necessary to make it explicit in your translation that **these** refers to the five kings just mentioned in verse 2. Alternate translation: [These five kings all]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

joined together (ULT)

united their armies {as allies} {and fought against the four kings} (UST)

Alternate translation: [combined their forces as partners and made war against the four kings]

---

which {is now} the Sea of Salt (ULT)

where the Salt Sea {is now} (UST)

The Hebrew word for “sea” can also refer to a large lake. The Salt Sea, also known as the Dead Sea, is about 31 miles (50 kilometers) long and 9 miles (15 kilometers) wide. Use a term in your language for a body of water that size. Alternate translation: [which later became the Salt Sea]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the Sea of

UST

- where the Salt Sea {is now}

Genesis 14:4

ULT:
{For} twelve years they had served Chedorlaomer, but the thirteenth year they rebelled.

UST:
{For} twelve years the five kings had paid tribute to {King} Chedorlaomer, but in the thirteenth year they started to rebel {against him}.

{For} twelve years (ULT)

{For} twelve years (UST)

This paragraph (verses 4–9) is a flashback that tells the events that led up to the war (verses 1–3). Consider what is the best way in your language to introduce this background information. Alternate translation: [This is what happened: For twelve years] or [This is why they were fighting: During twelve years]

Support Reference: Background Information

---

they had served (ULT)

the five kings had paid tribute to (UST)

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to the five kings (listed in verse 2) at this point in the paragraph. Alternate translation: [the five kings had paid taxes to] or [the five kings had been subject to] or [they had been ruled by]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

but the thirteenth year (ULT)

but in the thirteenth year (UST)

Alternate translation: [but sometime in the thirteenth year]

---

they rebelled (ULT)

they started to rebel {against him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [they began to revolt against him]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- years
- they had served
- year
- they rebelled

UST

- {For} twelve years
- the five kings had paid tribute to
- but in the thirteenth year
- they started to rebel {against him}

Genesis 14:5

ULT:
Then in the fourteenth year, Chedorlaomer and the kings who {were} with him went and struck the Raphaites in Ashteroth-Karnaim and the Zuzites in Ham and the Emites in Shaveh-Kiriathaim

UST:
Then during the fourteenth year {King} Chedorlaomer and the {three} kings who {were} his allies {united their armies and} went {to war} {against all their enemies}. {First} they defeated the Raphaites in {the city of} Ashteroth-Karnaim, then the Zuzites in {the city of} Ham, the Emites in {the city of} Shaveh-Kiriathaim,

Chedorlaomer (ULT)

{King} Chedorlaomer (UST)

Alternate translation: [King Chedorlaomer]

---

who {were} with him (ULT)

who {were} his allies (UST)

Alternate translation: [who were allied with him] or [who were his partners]

---

went (ULT)

united their armies and} went {to war} {against all their enemies} (UST)

Verses 5–7 list more enemies of King Chedorlaomer; these are in addition to the five kings mentioned in verses 2–4. Consider whether or not to make it explicit in your translation here that they were fighting all their enemies. Alternate translation: [combined their armies and went to fight against all their enemies]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and struck (ULT)

{First} they defeated (UST)

Alternate translation: [First, they conquered]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

the Raphaites (ULT)

the Raphaites (UST)

See how you translated the names of people groups in Genesis 10:4, 13–18, and see the note about that at 10:4. Alternate translation: [the Rapha people]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

and the Zuzites (ULT)

then the Zuzites (UST)

Alternate translation: [and the Zuzites] or [and the Zuz people]

---

the Emites (ULT)

the Emites (UST)

Alternate translation: [the Em people]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- year

- and the kings

UST

- Then during the fourteenth year
- and the {three} kings

Genesis 14:6

ULT:
and the Horites in their hill country of Seir as far as El Paran, which {is} by the wilderness.

UST:
and the Horites {who lived} in the Seir Mountains {all the way} to {the city of} El Paran, which {is located} near the desert.

and the Horites (ULT)

and the Horites (UST)

Alternate translation: [and the Hor people]

---

in their hill country of Seir (ULT)

{who lived} in the Seir Mountains (UST)

Alternate translation: [who lived in the hill country of the region of Seir] or [who lived in the Seir Hills]

---

which {is} by (ULT)

which {is located} near (UST)

Alternate translation: [which is located beside] or [which is on the edge of]

---

the wilderness (ULT)

the desert (UST)

A wilderness is a dry, rocky area where few plants grow and few people live. See how you translated “wilderness” in Genesis 12:9 and 13:1,3 (if you made that explicit in those verses). Alternate translation: [a desert]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- El
- the wilderness

UST

- {the city of} El
- the desert

Genesis 14:7

ULT:
Then they turned back and came to En Mishpat, which {is} Kadesh, and they struck the entire territory of the Amalekites and also the Amorites, who were living in Hazezon Tamar.

UST:
Next those {four} kings {and their armies} turned around and went to {the city of} En Mishpat, which {is also called} Kadesh. They conquered the entire territory where the Amalekites lived, as well as the Amorites, who lived in {the city of} Hazezon Tamar.

Then they turned back (ULT)

Next those {four} kings {and their armies} turned around (UST)

Alternate translation: [Next the four kings and their armies]

Then they turned back (ULT)

Next those {four} kings {and their armies} turned around (UST)

Alternate translation: [started to return home]

---

which {is} Kadesh (ULT)

which {is also called} Kadesh (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 2. Alternate translation: [which is now called Kadesh] or [which was later called Kadesh] or [that is, Kadesh]

---

and they struck (ULT)

They conquered (UST)

Alternate translation: [They defeated]

---

the entire territory of the Amalekites (ULT)

the entire territory where the Amalekites lived (UST)

Alternate translation: [the whole area where the Amalekites lived] or [… where the Amalek people group lived]

---

and also the Amorites (ULT)

as well as the Amorites (UST)

Be consistent here with how you translated **Amorites** in Genesis 10:16. Alternate translation: [as well as the Amor people group]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the Amalekites
- the Amorites
- in Hazezon

UST

- the Amalekites
- the Amorites
- in {the city of} Hazezon

Genesis 14:8

ULT:
Then the king of Sodom, and the king of Gomorrah, and the king of Admah, and the king of Zeboiim, and the king of Bela, which {is} Zoar, went out into the Valley of Siddim and arranged themselves for battle

UST:
Then the king over {the city of} Sodom, the king over {the city of} Gomorrah, the king over {the city of} Admah, the king over {the city of} Zeboiim, and the king over {the town of} Bela, which {is also called} Zoar, marched out {with their armies} into the Siddim Valley and got ready to fight

Then … went out (ULT)

Then … marched out {with their armies} (UST)

Verse 8 is talking about the same battle that is mentioned in verse 2, except it leaves out the names of the kings. Make sure in your translation that it does not sound like a different battle.

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

---

the king of Sodom, and the king of Gomorrah, and the king of Admah, and the king of Zeboiim, and the king of Bela (ULT)

the king over {the city of} Sodom, the king over {the city of} Gomorrah, the king over {the city of} Admah, the king over {the city of} Zeboiim, and the king over {the town of} Bela (UST)

Be consistent in verse 8 with how you spelled the names of these cities in verse 2 and in Genesis 10:19. Alternate translation: [the kings over the cities of Sodom, Gomorrah, Admah, and Bela]

---

which {is} Zoar (ULT)

which {is also called} Zoar (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 2. Alternate translation: [which is now called Zoar] or [that is, Zoar]

Then … went out (ULT)

Then … marched out {with their armies} (UST)

Alternate translation: [went out with their armies]

---

into the Valley of Siddim (ULT)

into the Siddim Valley (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 3.

---

and arranged themselves for battle (ULT)

and got ready to fight (UST)

The phrase **and arranged themselves for battle** could mean: (1) that they took their positions for battle. Alternate translation: [and prepared to fight]; (2) that they joined together in battle. Alternate translation: [began to wage war]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the king of
- Sodom

- and the king of
- Gomorrah
- and the king of
- and the king of
- {is} Zoar

UST

- the king over
- {the city of} Sodom
- the king over
- {the city of} Gomorrah
- the king over
- the king over
- {is also called} Zoar

Genesis 14:9

ULT:
against Chedorlaomer king of Elam, and Tidal king of Goiim, and Amraphel king of Shinar, and Arioch king of Ellasar, four kings against the five.

UST:
against Chedorlaomer {who was} the king over {the land of} Elam, Tidal {who was} the king over the Goiim, Amraphel {who was} the king over {the land of} Shinar, and Arioch {who was} the king over {the kingdom of} Ellasar. {Then} the four kings attacked the five {kings} {and started defeating them}.

against Chedorlaomer king of (ULT)

against Chedorlaomer {who was} the king over (UST)

The same kings (and the places they ruled) that are listed here in verse 9 are listed in verse 1, but in a different order. Be consistent here with how you spelled the names there. Alternate translation: [against Chedorlaomer who was the ruler over] or [against King Chedorlaomer who was ruling]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

Elam (ULT)

{the land of} Elam (UST)

Alternate translation: [the region of Elam]

---

and Tidal king of (ULT)

Tidal {who was} the king over (UST)

Alternate translation: [Tidal who was the ruler over] or [King Tidal who was ruling]

Goiim (ULT)

the Goiim (UST)

Be consistent here with how you translated this people group name in verse 1. Alternate translation: [the Goyim people]

---

and Amraphel king of (ULT)

Amraphel {who was} the king over (UST)

Alternate translation: [Amraphel who was the ruler over] or [King Amraphel, who was ruling]

Shinar (ULT)

{the land of} Shinar (UST)

Alternate translation: [the region of Shinar]

---

and Arioch king of (ULT)

and Arioch {who was} the king over (UST)

Alternate translation: [and Arioch, who was the ruler over] or [and King Arioch, who was ruling]

Ellasar (ULT)

{the kingdom of} Ellasar (UST)

Alternate translation: [the city of Ellasar]

---

four kings against (ULT)

{Then} the four kings attacked (UST)

Alternate translation: [It was four kings who started fighting against] or [Then those four kings attacked]

---

the five (ULT)

the five {kings} {and started defeating them} (UST)

It is implied in verse 10 that the four kings were gaining the victory over the five kings. If that is not clear, you could make that explicit here.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- king of
- Elam
- king of
- king of
- Shinar
- king of
- kings

UST
- {who was} the king over
- {the land of} Elam
- {who was} the king over
- {who was} the king over

- {the land of} Shinar
- {who was} the king over
- kings

Genesis 14:10

ULT:
Now the Valley of Siddim {had} many tar pits, and the kings of Sodom and Gomorrah fled, and they fell there. And those who remained fled to the hill country.

UST:
Now there were many tar pits in the Siddim Valley. As the kings over {the cities of} Sodom and Gomorrah {and their soldiers} were running away {from the battle}, some {of their soldiers} died there {in the tar pits}. Those who escaped ran away to the mountains {to hide}.

Now the Valley of Siddim {had} many tar pits (ULT)

Now there were many tar pits in the Siddim Valley (UST)

The word **Now** indicates a change of topic and introduces background information. For some languages it is more natural to omit that word and just use a paragraph break. Also be consistent here with how you translated **the Valley of Siddim** in verses 3 and 8, and how you translated **tar** in Genesis 11:3. Alternate translation: [The Siddim Valley was full of tar pits] or [There were many tar pits in the Siddim Valley]

Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

---

and the kings of Sodom and Gomorrah fled (ULT)

As the kings over {the cities of} Sodom and Gomorrah {and their soldiers} were running away {from the battle} (UST)

It is assumed here that the kings were accompanied by their armies. If that is not understood, you could make that explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: [The kings of the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah and their armies ran away from the battle]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and they fell there (ULT)

some {of their soldiers} died there {in the tar pits} (UST)

The idiom **they fell there** could mean: (1) that they died there because of the tar pits. Alternate translation: [some of their soldiers were died from falling into the tar pits] or [they fell into the tar pits and died] or (2) that some jumped into the tar pits to hide, but died in the pit. Alternate translation: [and those who tried to hide in the tar pits died there]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and they fell there (ULT)

some {of their soldiers} died there {in the tar pits} (UST)

By **they**, the author means the king of **Gomorrah** but not the king of **Sodom**, so use the exclusive form of that word in your translation if your language marks that distinction. Notice that the king of Sodom is still alive in verse 17, so the pronoun **they** probably does not include him here, depending on how you translate **fell there**.

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

And those who remained (ULT)

Those who escaped (UST)

The phrase **And those who remained** could mean: (1) those who were left. Alternate translation: [And those who had not died]; (2) the other three kings and their armies. Alternate translation: [And the three other kings and their armies]

---

to the hill country (ULT)

to the mountains {to hide} (UST)

See how you translated **hill country** in verse 6. Alternate translation: [to the hills to hide there]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- {had} many
- pits
- the kings of
- Sodom
- and Gomorrah

UST

- there were many … pits
- there were many … pits
- the kings over {the cities of} Sodom and Gomorrah {and their soldiers}
- the kings over {the cities of} Sodom and Gomorrah {and their soldiers}
- the kings over {the cities of} Sodom and Gomorrah {and their soldiers}

Genesis 14:11

ULT:
Then they took all the possessions of Sodom and Gomorrah and all their food, and left.

UST:
Then the four kings seized all the {people's} belongings in {the cities of} Sodom and Gomorrah, including all their food, and carried it away.

Then they took (ULT)

Then the four kings seized (UST)

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to the four kings at this point in the paragraph. Alternate translation: [Then the four kings took by force]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

all the possessions of Sodom and Gomorrah (ULT)

all the {people's} belongings in {the cities of} Sodom and Gomorrah (UST)

The phrase **Sodom and Gomorrah** refers here to the people who lived in those cities. Consider what is the best way to refer to those people here in your language. Alternate translation: [all the possessions from the people of the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

and all their food (ULT)

including all their food (UST)

Alternate translation: [even all their food] or [as well as all their food]

---

and left (ULT)

and carried it away (UST)

Alternate translation: [and left with it all] or [and carried it all away with them] or [and went on their way]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then they took
- Sodom
- and Gomorrah

UST

- Then the four kings seized
- in {the cities of} Sodom
- and Gomorrah

Genesis 14:12

ULT:
And they took Lot and his possessions, the son of Abram's brother, when they left, since he was living in Sodom.

UST:
They also carried off Abram's nephew Lot and his belongings, since he was living in {the city of} Sodom.

And they took (ULT)

They also carried off (UST)

Alternate translation: [They also took with them] or [The four kings also captured]

And they took Lot and his possessions, the son of Abram's brother, when they left, since he was living in Sodom (ULT)

They also carried off Abram's nephew Lot and his belongings, since he was living in {the city of} Sodom (UST)

For some languages it may be more clear or more natural to put this phrase first in this sentence. Alternate translation: [Since Abram's nephew Lot was also living in the city of Sodom, the four kings captured him too, along with his possessions]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- And they took
- Lot
- Abram
- in Sodom

UST
- They also carried off
- Lot

- Abram
- in {the city of} Sodom

Genesis 14:13

ULT:
Then someone who escaped came and reported to Abram the Hebrew. And he was living by the terebinth trees of Mamre the Amorite, the brother of Eshcol and the brother of Aner, and they {were} owners of a covenant with Abram.

UST:
But someone {from Sodom} escaped {from the battle} and went to Abram the Hebrew and reported {to him} {what had happened}. {At that time} Abram was {still} living near the oak trees that were owned by Mamre the Amorite, {who was} the brother of Eshcol and Aner. Those {three} men had made a pact with Abram {to be his allies}.

And he (ULT)

{At that time} Abram (UST)

The words **And he** introduce background information about Abram as part of the setting for what happens next. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [Now at that time he] or [At that time he]

Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

---

was living by the terebinth trees of Mamre (ULT)

was {still} living near the oak trees that were owned by Mamre (UST)

See how you translated this clause in Genesis 13:18. Alternate translation: [was still living by the oak trees that were owned by Mamre] or [was still living by the oak trees on the land owned by Mamre]

---

the Amorite (ULT)

the Amorite (UST)

See how you translated “Amorites” in verse 7. Alternate translation: [who was a member of the Amorite people group]

---

the brother of Eshcol and the brother of Aner (ULT)

{who was} the brother of Eshcol and Aner (UST)

Alternate translation: [whose brothers were Eshcol and Aner]

---

owners of a covenant with Abram (ULT)

had made a pact with Abram {to be his allies} (UST)

Alternate translation: [partners in a covenant with Abram to be his allies] or [allies in a pact they made together, pledging that they would help each other against their enemies]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and reported
- to Abram
- the Hebrew
- by the terebinth trees of
- the Amorite
- a covenant with
- Abram

UST

- and reported {to him} {what had happened}
- to Abram
- the Hebrew
- near the oak trees that were owned by
- the Amorite

- had made a pact with Abram {to be his allies}
- had made a pact with Abram {to be his allies}

Genesis 14:14

ULT:
And when Abram heard that his relative had been taken captive, then he led out his 318 trained men who had been born in his house, and he pursued {his enemies} as far as Dan.

UST:
When Abram heard that {the four kings} had captured his nephew {Lot}, he called together 318 of his servants who had been born in his household and were skilled warriors. Then {together with his allies} they chased after {the four kings and their armies} all the way to {the town of} Dan.

And when Abram heard (ULT)

When Abram heard (UST)

Alternate translation: [When Abram found out] or [And when Abram learned]

---

that his relative had been taken captive (ULT)

that {the four kings} had captured his nephew {Lot} (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Alternate translation: [that the enemy had captured his nephew]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

then he led out (ULT)

he called together (UST)

Alternate translation: [he assembled for battle] or [he summoned for battle]

---

his 318 trained men who had been born in his house (ULT)

318 of his servants who had been born in his household and were skilled warriors (UST)

It is clear from verse 15 that these men were Abram's servants. Alternate translation: [318 of the servants who had been born in his household and were trained warriors] or [318 of his servants born in his household whom he had trained to fight]

---

and he pursued {his enemies} (ULT)

Then {together with his allies} they chased after {the four kings and their armies} (UST)

In this sentence the pronoun **he** refers to Abram and all those who had united with him as his allies. Alternate translation: [Then he and his men and his allies went after the invaders] or [Then, together with his allies, they all pursued the four kings and their armies]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

as far as (ULT)

all the way to (UST)

Alternate translation: [until they caught up with them at]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abram
- had been taken captive
- who had been born in
- his house
- Dan

UST

- Abram
- {the four kings} had captured
- his servants who had been born in his household
- his servants who had been born in his household
- {the town of} Dan

Genesis 14:15

ULT:
Then he divided against them during the night, he and his servants, and struck them and pursued them to Hobah, which {is} north of Damascus.

UST:
There during the night Abram and his men divided {into groups}, {surprise} attacked the {four} kings {and their soldiers}, and defeated them. Then they chased them as far as {the town of} Hobah, which {is located} north of {the city of} Damascus.

Then he divided against them during the night, he and his servants (ULT)

There during the night Abram and his men divided {into groups}, {surprise} attacked the {four} kings {and their soldiers} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then during the night he and his servants divided into groups and unexpectedly assaulted the four kings and their soldiers]

---

and struck them (ULT)

and defeated them (UST)

Alternate translation: [and routed them]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and pursued them (ULT)

Then they chased them (UST)

Alternate translation: [and followed after them]

---

to Hobah (ULT)

as far as {the town of} Hobah (UST)

Alternate translation: [all the way to the town of Hobah]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and his servants
- of Damascus

UST

- and his men
- of {the city of} Damascus

Genesis 14:16

ULT:
And he brought back all the possessions, and he also brought back his relative Lot and his possessions, and also the women and the {other} people.

UST:
As a result, Abram recovered all the {people's} belongings {that the four kings had taken}. He also rescued his nephew Lot and his belongings, as well as the women and {all} the other people {whom the kings had captured}.

And he brought back (ULT)

As a result, Abram recovered (UST)

Alternate translation: [As a result, he got back] or [He recovered]

---

and he also brought back (ULT)

He also rescued (UST)

Alternate translation: [He also got back] or [He also recovered]

---

and his possessions (ULT)

and his belongings (UST)

Alternate translation: [and all that he owned]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Lot

UST

- Lot

Genesis 14:17

ULT:
Then the king of Sodom came out to meet him in the Valley of Shaveh, which {is} the King's Valley, after he returned from striking Chedorlaomer and the kings who {were} with him.

UST:
After Abram defeated {King} Chedorlaomer and the {other} {three} kings who were Chedorlaomer's allies, he started to return {home}. When he reached the Shaveh Valley, which {is also called} the King's Valley, the king over {the city of} Sodom came there and welcomed him.

Then the king of Sodom came out (ULT)

the king over {the city of} Sodom came there (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then the king over the city of Sodom]

Then the king of Sodom came out (ULT)

the king over {the city of} Sodom came there (UST)

Consider whether **came** or "went" is more natural here in your language. Alternate translation: [Then the king over the city of Sodom went out]

Support Reference: Go and Come

---

to meet him (ULT)

and welcomed him (UST)

Alternate translation: [to greet Abram] or [and welcomed the victor]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

in the Valley of Shaveh (ULT)

When he reached the Shaveh Valley (UST)

Alternate translation: [in the Shaveh Valley]

---

after he returned (ULT)

After … he started to return {home} (UST)

When Abram reached the Shaveh Valley, he was still about 20 miles (30 kilometers) north of his home, which was near the city of Hebron (Gen 13:18). Alternate translation: [as he was returning home] or [as he was going back home]

---

from striking (ULT)

Abram defeated (UST)

See how you translated “struck” in verse 15. Alternate translation: [after defeating] or [after he defeated]

Support Reference: Idiom

Chedorlaomer (ULT)

{King} Chedorlaomer (UST)

Be consistent here with how you spelled this name previously in this chapter; see verses 1, 4–5, 9, 17. Alternate translation: [King Chedorlaomer and his army]

---

and the kings (ULT)

and the {other} {three} kings (UST)

Alternate translation: [and the armies of the other three kings]

Then the king of Sodom came out to meet him in the Valley of Shaveh, which {is} the King's Valley, after he returned from striking Chedorlaomer and the kings who {were} with him (ULT)

After Abram defeated {King} Chedorlaomer and the {other} {three} kings who were Chedorlaomer's allies, he started to return {home}. When he reached the Shaveh Valley, which {is also called} the King's Valley, the king over {the city of} Sodom came there and welcomed him (UST)

For some languages it may be better to put the clauses of this verse in the order that the events actually happened. Alternate translation: [After Abram defeated King Chedorlaomer and the other three kings who were Chedorlaomer's allies, Abram started to return home. When Abram reached the Shaveh Valley, that is, the King's Valley, the king over the city of Sodom went there and greeted him]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the king of
- Sodom
- the kings
- the King

UST

- the king over
- {the city of} Sodom
- the {other} {three} kings
- the King

Genesis 14:18

ULT:
Then Melchizedek the king of Salem brought out bread and wine. And he {was} a priest to God Most High.

UST:
Melchizedek {who was} the king over {the city of} Salem {also came there, and he} brought food and wine {for Abram and his men to eat and drink}. {King} Melchizedek {was also} a priest who served the God who is greater {than all other gods}.

Then Melchizedek the king of Salem (ULT)

Melchizedek {who was} the king over {the city of} Salem {also came there, and he} (UST)

Salem is the short name for the city of Jerusalem (See: Psalm 76:2). The Shaveh Valley, where Melchizedek met Abram, was located just east of Jerusalem. You could put some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [Then Melchizedek who was the king over the city of Salem, also went there, and he]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then Melchizedek
- Then Melchizedek
- the king of
- bread
- and wine
- a priest
- to God
- Most High

UST

- Melchizedek
- Melchizedek
- {who was} the king over
- food and wine {for Abram and his men to eat and drink}
- food and wine {for Abram and his men to eat and drink}
- a priest
- who served the God

- who is greater {than all other gods}

Genesis 14:19

ULT:
And he blessed him and said, "May Abram be blessed by God Most High, the Possessor of heaven and earth.

UST:
So he blessed Abram by saying {to him}, "May the greatest God, who owns heaven and earth, bless you.

And he blessed him and said (ULT)

So he blessed Abram by saying {to him} (UST)

Make sure your translation of **blessed him and said** refers to the same event, not two separate events. Alternate translation: [He blessed Abram, saying] or [So Melchizedek blessed Abram, saying]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

May Abram be blessed (ULT)

May the greatest God … bless you (UST)

Alternate translation: [I pray that you, Abram, will be blessed]

May Abram be blessed by God Most High, the Possessor of heaven and earth (ULT)

May the greatest God, who owns heaven and earth, bless you (UST)

For some languages it may be better to switch the order of phrases in this sentence. Alternate translation: [May the greatest God, who owns heaven and earth, bless Abram] or [I pray that the most powerful God, who created heaven and earth, will bless you, Abram]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

the Possessor of heaven and earth (ULT)

who owns heaven and earth (UST)

The Hebrew word for **Possessor** also means “Creator,” which is used in many translations. Whichever one you do not use in the text you could put in a footnote. Alternate translation: [who is the Owner of heaven and earth] or [who created heaven and earth]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And he blessed him
- May … be blessed
- Abram
- by God
- Most High
- heaven
- and earth

UST

- So he blessed Abram
- May the greatest God … bless you
- May the greatest God … bless you
- May the greatest God … bless you
- May the greatest God … bless you
- heaven
- and earth

Genesis 14:20

ULT:
And praised be God Most High, who delivered your enemies into your hand!" Then he gave to him a tenth of everything.

UST:
Praise the greatest God, because he enabled you to defeat your enemies!" Then Abram gave {King} Melchizedek ten percent of everything {that he had recovered in the battle}.

And praised be (ULT)

Praise (UST)

See how you translated "Praised be" in Genesis 9:26. Alternate translation: [Give praise to] or [Let everyone praise]

---

who delivered your enemies into your hand (ULT)

because he enabled you to defeat your enemies (UST)

The phrase **delivered your enemies into your hand** is a common expression. Consider whether your language has a similar common expression that fits well here. Alternate translation: [because he gave you victory over your enemies!]

Support Reference: Idiom

Then he gave to him (ULT)

Then Abram gave {King} Melchizedek (UST)

The pronoun **he** refers to Abram and the pronoun **him** refers to Melchizekek. If this is not clear for your readers, you could use the persons' names here, as modelled by the UST.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

a tenth (ULT)

ten percent (UST)

Alternate translation: [one tenth]

---

of everything (ULT)

of everything {that he had recovered in the battle} (UST)

The author assumes that his readers will understand that **everything** means all that Abram recovered and brought back with him to return to Sodom. It does not mean everything that exists. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [of everything that he had captured in the battle] or [of all the plunder he had brought back from the battle]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And praised be
- God
- Most High
- delivered
- your enemies
- a tenth

UST

- Praise
- the … God
- greatest
- because he enabled you to defeat your enemies
- because he enabled you to defeat your enemies
- ten percent

Genesis 14:21

ULT:
Then the king of Sodom said to Abram, "Give to me the people, but the possessions take for yourself."

UST:
After that, the king over {the city of} Sodom said to Abram, "{Please} return to me the people {whom you rescued}, but keep for yourself {their} belongings {that you recovered}."

Then the king of Sodom said to Abram (ULT)

After that, the king over {the city of} Sodom said to Abram (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then the king of Sodom requested of Abram] or [After that, the king over the city of Sodom urged Abram]

Give to me (ULT)

{Please} return to me (UST)

Make sure in your translation that the king of Sodom's request to Abram sounds polite, not rude or demanding. Alternate translation: [Please give to me]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

the people (ULT)

the people {whom you rescued} (UST)

Alternate translation: [my people whom you saved] or [the people from Sodom whom you rescued]

---

but the possessions take for yourself (ULT)

but keep for yourself {their} belongings {that you recovered} (UST)

Alternate translation: [but the plunder you should keep for yourself] or [but take for yourself the belongings that you recovered]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the king of
- Sodom

UST

- the king over
- {the city of} Sodom

Genesis 14:22

ULT:
But Abram said to the king of Sodom, "I raise my hand to Yahweh, God Most High, the possessor of heaven and earth,

UST:
But Abram replied to him, "I raise my hand {and swear} to Yahweh, {who is} the greatest God {and} the One who owns heaven and earth,

I raise my hand to Yahweh (ULT)

I raise my hand {and swear} to Yahweh (UST)

It was the custom that when a person made an oath, he raised his hand as an appeal to God to witness his oath, to hold him accountable, and to punish him if he were to break his oath. If this would not be clear to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action in the text or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [As a witness to this oath, I call on Yahweh]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

I raise my hand to Yahweh (ULT)

I raise my hand {and swear} to Yahweh (UST)

The phrase **I raise my hand to Yahweh** begins an oath formula. Use a natural way in your language to express an oath. Alternate translation: [I pledge before Yahweh]

Support Reference: Oath Formulas

God Most High (ULT)

{who is} the greatest God (UST)

Alternate translation: [who is the highest God]

---

the possessor of heaven and earth (ULT)

{and} the One who owns heaven and earth (UST)

Alternate translation: [and the owner of heaven and earth] or [and the one who created heaven and earth]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abram
- the king of
- Sodom
- Yahweh
- God
- Most High
- heaven
- and earth

UST

- Abram
- him
- him
- Yahweh
- {who is} the … God
- greatest
- heaven
- and earth

Genesis 14:23

ULT:
if from a thread even to the strap of a sandal, or if I take from anything that {belongs} to you, so that you will not say, 'I made Abram rich.'

UST:
{that} I will not {accept} anything that is yours {or your people's}, not even a {piece of} string or the strap from a sandal. That way you can never say that you {were the one who} made me rich.

if from a thread even to the strap of a sandal (ULT)

not even a {piece of} string or the strap from a sandal (UST)

Abram is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You could supply these words from later in the sentence if it would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [if I take anything from a thread even to the strap of a sandal]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

---

if from a thread even to the strap of a sandal, or if I take from anything that {belongs} to you (ULT)

{that} I will not {accept} anything that is yours {or your people's}, not even a {piece of} string or the strap from a sandal (UST)

According to custom, Abram is leaving out the part of his oath that tells what Yahweh will do to him if he does the things that he mentions in his oath. Because of the power of spoken words, people left that part to be understood silently. You could supply these words if it would be clearer and not offensive in your language. Alternate translation: [if from a thread even to the strap of a sandal, or I take from anything that belongs to you, may Yahweh punish me severely] or [if from a thread even to the strap of a sandal, or I take from anything that belongs to you, may Yahweh punish me severely, may Yahweh strike me dead]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

---

from a thread even to the strap of a sandal (ULT)

a {piece of} string or the strap from a sandal (UST)

In order to make the point that he does not want anything from the king of Sodom, Abram is mentioning things that are so small and insignificant that no one would want them. Alternate translation: [even a thread or the strap from a sandal] or [even something as small as a piece of string or a sandal strap]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

---

or if I take from anything (ULT)

{that} I will not {accept} anything (UST)

This clause emphasizes Abram's point by repeating the meaning of the previous phrase in different words. Consider what is the best way to emphasize a point in your language. Alternate translation: [No, I will not keep anything]

Support Reference: Parallelism

---

if from a thread even to the strap of a sandal, or if I take from anything that {belongs} to you (ULT)

{that} I will not {accept} anything that is yours {or your people's}, not even a {piece of} string or the strap from a sandal (UST)

For some languages, it may be clearer and more natural to put this phrase earlier in this verse. Alternate translation: [that I will not keep anything that belongs to you or your people, not even something as small as a piece of thread or a sandal strap]

Support Reference: Information Structure

I made Abram rich (ULT)

that you {were the one who} made me rich (UST)

In the clause **I made Abram rich**, the Hebrew pronoun that refers to the king of Sodom is emphatic. Consider what is the best way to communicate that emphasis in your language. Also consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [I am the one who made Abram wealthy!]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- a sandal
- Abram

UST

- a sandal
- that you {were the one who} made me rich

Genesis 14:24

ULT:
I {will take} nothing, except what the young men have eaten and the share of the other men who went with me: Aner, Eshcol, and Mamre. Let them take their share."

UST:
{So} I {will} only {keep} what my warriors ate and the part {of the plunder} that Aner, Eshcol, and Mamre deserve for being my allies. {Please} let them have their part {of the plunder}."

I {will take} nothing, except (ULT)

So} I {will} only {keep} (UST)

If, in your language, it would appear that Abram was making a statement here and then contradicting it, you could reword this to avoid using an exception clause. Consider what is the best way in your language to translate this exception sentence. Alternate translation: [So I will keep nothing more than] or [So I will only accept]

Support Reference: Connect — Exception Clauses

---

what the young men have eaten (ULT)

what my warriors ate (UST)

These young men were Abram's trained servants or warriors who are mentioned in verses 14–15. Alternate translation: [what my servants who fought with me have eaten] or [what my men ate]

---

and the share of the other men who went with me: Aner, Eshcol, and Mamre (ULT)

and the part {of the plunder} that Aner, Eshcol, and Mamre deserve for being my allies (UST)

Alternate translation: [and the share of the plunder that Aner, Eshcol, and Mamre deserve for being my allies] or [and what Aner, Eshcol, and Mamre deserve for helping me in the battle]

Let them take (ULT)

{Please} let them have (UST)

Abram is being polite, but make sure in your translation that he does not sound like he is begging, especially since he is a mighty warrior. Alternate translation: [Please let them take] or [Please give them]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

their share (ULT)

their part {of the plunder} (UST)

Alternate translation: [their share of the plunder] or [their part of what we recovered]

Genesis 15

Genesis 15:1

ULT:
After those things, the word of Yahweh came to Abram in a vision, saying, "Do not be afraid, Abram! I {am} a shield for you; your reward will be very great."

UST:
After that, Yahweh said to Abram in a vision, "Abram, do not be afraid. I will protect you, {and} I will give you a very great reward."

After those things (ULT)

After that (UST)

Alternate translation: [After those events happened]

I {am} a shield for you (ULT)

I will protect you (UST)

God is like **a shield** to Abram since he protects him. Consider what is the best way to translate this image in your language. Alternate translation: [I am your shield] or [I protect you like a shield] or [I will shield you]

Support Reference: Metaphor

---

your reward will be very great (ULT)

{and} I will give you a very great reward (UST)

The clause **your reward will be very great** could mean: (1) "and your reward from me will be very great." Alternate translation: [and I will give you a very great reward]; (2) "and I am your

very valuable reward." The context (verse 2) shows that the first interpretation is what Abram understood God to be saying.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Yahweh
- Abram
- in a vision
- Do … be afraid
- Abram
- a shield
- your reward

UST

- Yahweh
- Abram
- in a vision
- do … be afraid
- Abram
- will protect you
- {and} I will give you a very great reward

Genesis 15:2

ULT:
But Abram said, "My Lord Yahweh, what will you give to me, since I go childless, and the son of the inheritance of my house {is} the Damascan, Eliezer?"

UST:
But Abram said {to him}, "Yahweh my Master, even if you reward me greatly, {that will not benefit me}, since I still have no children. So {when I die,} the one who will inherit all that I have {is} {my servant} Eliezer {who is} {a foreigner} from {the city of} Damascus."

But Abram said (ULT)

But Abram said {to him} (UST)

The way you translate this quote margin may depend on how you translate the following rhetorical question. Alternate translation: [But Abram asked him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

My Lord Yahweh (ULT)

Yahweh my Master (UST)

The phrase **My Lord** means that Yahweh owns Abram and has complete authority over him, just as a master (at that time) had complete authority over his servant or slave. Alternate translation: [My Master Yahweh] or [Yahweh my Lord]

Support Reference: Politeness

My Lord Yahweh, what will you give to me, since I go childless, and the son of the inheritance of my house {is} the Damascan, Eliezer (ULT)

Yahweh my Master, even if you reward me greatly, {that will not benefit me}, since I still have no children. So {when I die,} the one who will inherit all that I have {is} {my servant} Eliezer {who is} {a foreigner} from {the city of} Damascus (UST)

Abram uses this rhetorical question to show that he is lamenting that he has no children. Make sure in your translation that he does not sound rude. Alternate translation: [My Lord Yahweh, any reward that you give to me that would not benefit me, because the son of the inheritance of my house {is} the Damascan, Eliezer!] or [My Lord Yahweh, even if you reward me greatly, that will not help me since my heir is my servant Eliezer of Damascus.]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

and the son of the inheritance of (ULT)

So {when I die,} the one who will inherit (UST)

The phrase **son of the inheritance** is used here as a common expression meaning “inheritor” or “heir”; it does not refer to an actual son. Consider whether or not your language has a similar expression. Alternate translation: [for after I die, the heir of] or [Because when I die, the one who will own]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

my house (ULT)

all that I have (UST)

This phrase refers here to all of Abram’s belongings. Alternate translation: [my estate] or [all that I own]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

{is} the Damascan, Eliezer (ULT)

{is} {my servant} Eliezer {who is} {a foreigner} from {the city of} Damascus (UST)

In the Hebrew text, Abram emphasizes the fact that Eliezer was from Damascus, which means he was a foreigner from a foreign city, not a blood relative. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Also, note how you translated “the city of Damascus” in Genesis 14:15. Alternate translation: [is my foreign servant, Eliezer, who is from Damascus]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abram
- My Lord
- Yahweh
- my house
- {is} the Damascan

UST

- Abram
- my Master
- Yahweh
- all that I have
- {who is} {a foreigner} from {the city of} Damascus

Genesis 15:3

ULT:
Then Abram said, "Behold, to me you have given no seed, and behold, a servant of my house is my heir!"

UST:
Then Abram continued, "That's right, you have not given me any children, so that now {when I die}, {one of} my household servants will inherit everything I own!"

Then Abram said (ULT)

Then Abram continued (UST)

Some languages omit these words because the same speaker is still speaking to the same audience. Alternate translation: [And he added]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Behold (ULT)

That's right (UST)

Some translations omit this phrase to prevent Abram from sounding rude. Alternate translation: [Look]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

to me you have given no seed (ULT)

you have not given me any children (UST)

In the Hebrew text **to me** is before **you have given no seed** to emphasize Abram's lack of an heir related to him. Do what is natural in your language. [you have given no offspring to me]

---

and behold (ULT)

so that now {when I die} (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that now after I die]

---

a servant of my house (ULT)

{one of} my household servants (UST)

Alternate translation: [a servant from my household]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abram
- seed
- my house
- is … heir

UST

- Abram
- any children
- {one of} my household servants
- will inherit

Genesis 15:4

ULT:
Then behold, the word of Yahweh {came} to him, saying, "That {man} will not be your heir, but rather a son who comes from your bowels, he will be your heir."

UST:
But immediately Yahweh said to Abram, "{No,} your servant {Eliezer} will not inherit your property, rather it will be your very own {biological} son who will inherit it."

Then behold (ULT)

But immediately (UST)

Alternate translation: [Immediately]

---

the word of Yahweh {came} to him, saying (ULT)

Yahweh said to Abram (UST)

See how you translated this common expression in verse 1. It may be necessary to translate it differently here because of the different context. Alternate translation: [Yahweh told him]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

a son who comes from your bowels, he (ULT)

it will be your very own {biological} son who (UST)

The phrase **comes from your bowels** is a common expression that refers to fathering a child. Make sure your translation of this clause does not imply that Abram would give birth to a son. Alternate translation: [a son whom you father]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Yahweh
- will … be your heir
- will be your heir

UST

- Yahweh
- will … inherit your property
- will inherit it

Genesis 15:5

ULT:
Then he brought him outside and said, “Please look at the heavens and count the stars, if you are able to count them.” Then he said to him, “So will your offspring be.”

UST:
Then Yahweh took Abram outside {his tent} and said {to him}, “Look {up} at the {night} sky and count how many stars there are, if {in fact} you are able to count them {all}.” {While Abram was looking at the stars,} Yahweh said to him, “That is how many descendants you will have.”

Then he brought him (ULT)

Then Yahweh took Abram (UST)

Consider what is the clearest way in your language to refer to Yahweh and Abram at this point in the paragraph. Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh led Abram]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

outside (ULT)

outside {his tent} (UST)

Abram was probably inside a tent, not inside a house. But if possible, it is best to leave this implied in a translation (as the Hebrew text does).

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

Please look (ULT)

Look {up} (UST)

See how you translated “please” in Genesis 13:14. Make sure your translation does not sound as though God is begging Abram. Alternate translation: [Now look upward]

Support Reference: Imperatives — Other Uses

---

and count the stars, if you are able to count them (ULT)

and count how many stars there are, if {in fact} you are able to count them {all} (UST)

God's point here is that there are so many stars that no one could ever count them all. He is not questioning Abram's ability to count. Consider what is the best way to translate this contrary-to-fact statement in your language. Alternate translation: [and try to count how many stars there are, if in fact, anyone could possibly count all of them] or [There are so many stars that no one could ever count them all]

Support Reference: Connect — Contrary to Fact Conditions

Then he said to him (ULT)

{While Abram was looking at the stars,} Yahweh said to him (UST)

Throughout this chapter, make sure it is clear in your translation who is speaking to whom. Always use pronouns and nouns in a way that is clear and natural in your language. Alternate translation: [While Abram was looking at the stars, Yahweh said to Abram] or [So as Abram looked up at the stars, Yahweh told him]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- at the heavens
- your offspring

UST
- at the {night} sky
- descendants you will have

Genesis 15:6

ULT:
And he trusted in Yahweh, and he counted it to him {as} righteousness.

UST:
Abram trusted Yahweh, and because of that, Yahweh considered him to be righteous.

And he trusted (ULT)

Abram trusted (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Abram is the subject in the first phrase of this verse, not Yahweh (who was the last subject in verse 5). Many translations omit the conjunction **And** here. Alternate translation: [Abram believed Yahweh] or [He believed what Yahweh said to him]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

and he counted it to him {as} righteousness (ULT)

and because of that, Yahweh considered him to be righteous (UST)

Notice that Yahweh, referred to as **he**, is now the subject again. Make sure it is clear in your translation who is speaking to whom here and throughout this section. Alternate translation: [and so Yahweh credited it to Abram as righteousness] or [and because of that, Yahweh reckoned Abram to be righteous] or [so Yahweh considered Abram to have a right relationship with him]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- And he trusted
- in Yahweh
- {as} righteousness

UST

- Abram trusted
- Yahweh
- and because of that, Yahweh considered him to be righteous

Genesis 15:7

ULT:
Then he said to him, "I {am} Yahweh who brought you out of Ur of the Chaldeans to give to you this land to possess it."

UST:
Then Yahweh said to him, "I am Yahweh who brought you {here} from {the city of} Ur that the Chaldeans rule, to give this land to you to own."

Then he said to him (ULT)

Then Yahweh said to him (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh said to Abram]

I {am} Yahweh who brought you out of Ur of (ULT)

I am Yahweh who brought you {here} from {the city of} Ur (UST)

Alternate translation: [I am Yahweh who led you here from the city of Ur]

Support Reference: Go and Come

---

the Chaldeans (ULT)

that the Chaldeans rule (UST)

See how you translated "Ur of the Chaldeans" in Genesis 11:28, 31, and see the note about that there. Alternate translation: [which is ruled by the Chaldeans] or [that the Chaldeans rule] or [where the Chaldeans live]

---

to possess it (ULT)

to own (UST)

Alternate translation: [as your homeland] or [to be your own]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- {am} Yahweh
- of Ur of
- the Chaldeans
- land
- to possess it

UST

- am Yahweh
- from {the city of} Ur
- that the Chaldeans rule
- land
- to own

Genesis 15:8

ULT:
Then he said, “My Lord Yahweh, how will I know that I will possess it?”

UST:
But Abram asked {him}, “Yahweh my Master, how can I be sure that this land will be mine?”

Then he said (ULT)

But Abram asked {him} (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Abram is the one speaking here, not Yahweh. Alternate translation: [Then Abram said to him] or [But he asked Yahweh]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

My Lord Yahweh (ULT)

Yahweh my Master (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 2. Alternate translation: [My Master Yahweh] or [Yahweh my Lord]

---

how will I know (ULT)

how can I be sure (UST)

Alternate translation: [how can I be certain]

---

that I will possess it (ULT)

that this land will be mine (UST)

Alternate translation: [that I will possess this territory?]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- My Lord
- Yahweh
- will I know
- I will possess it

UST

- my Master
- Yahweh
- can I be sure
- this land will be mine

Genesis 15:9

ULT:
Then he said to him, "Bring to me a three-year-old heifer and a three-year-old she-goat and a three-year-old ram and a turtledove and a young pigeon."

UST:
Yahweh replied, "Bring me a heifer, a female goat and a male sheep, each of which is three years old, as well as a dove and a young pigeon."

Then he said to him (ULT)

Yahweh replied (UST)

Alternate translation: [Yahweh said to him]

---

a three-year-old heifer (ULT)

a heifer (UST)

Alternate translation: [a cow that is three years old]

---

and a three-year-old she-goat (ULT)

a female goat (UST)

Alternate translation: [a female goat that is three years old]

---

and a three-year-old ram (ULT)

and a male sheep, each of which is three years old (UST)

For some languages it may be more natural to shorten this list of animals and say, “Bring to me a young cow, a female goat, and a male sheep, each of which is three years old,” Alternate translation: [and a male sheep that is three years old]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- a … heifer
- and a … she-goat
- and a … ram
- and a turtledove

UST

- a heifer
- a female goat
- and a male sheep
- as well as a dove

Genesis 15:10

ULT:
So he brought all those to him. Then he cut them in two down the middle and laid the halves opposite to each other, but the birds he did not cut in two.

UST:
So {the next day} Abram brought all those {animals} to Yahweh {and killed them}. Then he cut the animals' bodies in half lengthwise and placed each half a short space across from the other half {in two rows}, except for the birds, which he did not cut in half.

So he brought (ULT)

So {the next day} Abram brought (UST)

Alternate translation: [Obeying Yahweh, during the following day Abram gathered]

---

all those to him (ULT)

all those {animals} to Yahweh {and killed them} (UST)

Some languages need to make explicit that Abram brought the animals and killed the animals first, before cutting them in half. Alternate translation: [all those animals to him and killed them]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

down the middle (ULT)

in half lengthwise (UST)

The author assumes that readers will know that Abram probably cut the animals down the middle lengthwise, which means that each half had one front leg and one back leg. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [into two parts lengthwise]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

but the birds he did not cut in two (ULT)

except for the birds, which he did not cut in half (UST)

The author uses the word **but** here to indicate a contrast between what he did to the bodies of the animals and what he did to the bodies of the birds. In your translation, indicate this contrast in a way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [but he did not divide the bodies of the birds in two] or [except for the birds, which he did not cut in two]

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

Genesis 15:11

ULT:
Then birds of prey came down on the carcasses, and Abram drove them away.

UST:
Then {some} vultures flew down {and landed} on the {animal} bodies {to eat them}, but Abram chased them away.

Then birds of prey came down (ULT)

Then {some} vultures flew down {and landed} (UST)

This phrase refers to large birds that eat dead animal meat. Examples of these birds include vultures, buzzards, condors, eagles, and crows. Alternate translation: [Then some birds of prey landed] or [Then some vultures swooped down and landed] or [Then some meat-eating birds]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Abram

UST
- Abram

Genesis 15:12

ULT:
And it happened, the sun was setting and a deep sleep fell on Abram, and behold, terror {and} great darkness fell on him.

UST:
Later, as the sun was going down, Abram fell into a deep sleep, and suddenly, it became completely dark, and he became terrified.

And it happened (ULT)

Later (UST)

The author is using the word translated as **And it happened** to introduce a new development in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new development.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

---

the sun was setting (ULT)

as the sun was going down (UST)

Alternate translation: [when the sun was going out of sight] or [as it began to become night]

---

and a deep sleep fell on Abram (ULT)

Abram fell into a deep sleep (UST)

See how you translated a similar common expression in Genesis 2:21. Alternate translation: [Abram went into a sound sleep] or [Abram went soundly asleep]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and behold (ULT)

and suddenly (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then suddenly]

---

terror {and} great darkness fell on him (ULT)

it became completely dark, and he became terrified (UST)

Alternate translation: [a great terrifying darkness came over him] or [terrible misery and fear came upon Abram]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abram
- terror

UST

- Abram fell into a deep sleep
- it became completely dark, and he became terrified

Genesis 15:13

ULT:
Then he said to Abram, "Know for certain that your offspring will be strangers in a land {that} {does} not {belong} to them, and they will serve them, and they will afflict them 400 years.

UST:
Then Yahweh said to him, "I want you to know that your descendants will live as foreigners in a country that is not their own. They will serve the people {of that country} {as slaves}, and those people will treat them cruelly for 400 years.

Know for certain that (ULT)

I want you to know that (UST)

Alternate translation: [You can be sure that]

---

will be strangers (ULT)

will live as foreigners (UST)

The author assumes that readers will know to whom he refers with the word **strangers**. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. The word **strangers** refers to people who live temporarily in a city, country, or region, but they do not settle there permanently. Alternate translation: [will live as sojourners]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

{that} {does} not {belong} to them (ULT)

that is not their own (UST)

Alternate translation: [that is not their home]

---

and they will serve them (ULT)

They will serve the people {of that country} {as slaves} (UST)

Make sure that your translation of these pronouns clearly communicates to whom they refer. Alternate translation: [Your descendants will serve the people in that land as slaves] or [Your offspring will be slaves for the people who live in that land]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

and they will afflict them (ULT)

and those people will treat them cruelly (UST)

Notice that in the final clause, the pronoun **they** refers to the citizens in the country where Abram's descendants will sojourn, and **them** refers to Abram's descendants. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: [and the citizens will oppress your offspring] or [and the people of that land will mistreat your descendants]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

Know for certain that your offspring will be strangers in a land {that} {does} not {belong} to them, and they will serve them, and they will afflict them 400 years (ULT)

I want you to know that your descendants will live as foreigners in a country that is not their own. They will serve the people {of that country} {as slaves}, and those people will treat them cruelly for 400 years (UST)

The final phrase refers to how long Abram's descendants would live in a land that is not theirs, not how long they would be oppressed, which was less than half of those 400 years. To make that clear in your translation, you could move this phrase earlier in the sentence. Alternate translation: [I want you to know that for 400 years your offspring will live in a land that is not their own, and the people of that country will oppress them]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- to Abram
- for certain
- Know
- your offspring
- in a land
- and they will serve them
- years

UST

- to him
- I want you to know
- I want you to know
- your descendants
- in a country
- They will serve the people {of that country} {as slaves}
- for 400 years

Genesis 15:14

ULT:
But also, the nation that they serve I will judge, and after that they will come out with great possessions.

UST:
But I will punish those people whom they serve. After that, your descendants will leave {that country} and take many riches with them.

But also (ULT)

But (UST)

Moses uses the word **But** here to indicate a contrast between **serve** and **come out**. In your translation, indicate this contrast in a way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [However]

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

---

the nation (ULT)

those people (UST)

Alternate translation: [the people of that nation] or [the people]

---

that they serve (ULT)

whom they serve (UST)

Alternate translation: [whom they serve as slaves] or [who made them slaves]

But also, the nation that they serve I will judge (ULT)

But I will punish those people whom they serve (UST)

For some languages it is clearer or more natural to put this clause earlier in this sentence. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [But I will also punish the people of the nation that they serve]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

and after that (ULT)

After that (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then]

---

they will come out (ULT)

your descendants will leave {that country} (UST)

Alternate translation: [your offspring will leave that land]

---

with great possessions (ULT)

and take many riches with them (UST)

See how you translated **possessions** in Genesis 14:16, 21. Alternate translation: [with much wealth]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the nation
- they serve
- will judge

UST

- those people
- they serve
- will punish

Genesis 15:15

ULT:
And you, you will go to your fathers in peace; you will be buried at a good old age.

UST:
As for you, after you have lived a good long life, you will die peacefully and join your ancestors {who have died before you}.

And you (ULT)

As for you (UST)

For emphasis in the Hebrew text, Moses places the pronoun **you** in an emphatic position in the sentence (before the verb) to change the topic. This adds emphasis to what he is saying. If your language uses explicit pronouns for emphasis, you may want to use that construction in your translation. Other languages may have other ways of bringing out this emphasis. Do what is clear and natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Now as for you]

Support Reference: [[figs-rpronouns]]

---

you will go to your fathers in peace (ULT)

you will die peacefully and join your ancestors {who have died before you} (UST)

This clause is a euphemism that refers to Abram's death. However, it is best to translate the clause as literally as possible, since it implies the important information that people are still alive after they have died on earth. Also, notice that the term **fathers** refers here to ancestors who have died, not those who are still alive on earth. Alternate translation: [you will be at peace when you die and join your forefathers who have gone before you]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

you will be buried at a good old age (ULT)

after you have lived a good long life (UST)

This clause is a euphemism that refers to Abram's death. Make sure in your translation that it does not sound like he will be buried alive. Alternate translation: [you will join your ancestors when you have grown very old]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

you will go to your fathers in peace; you will be buried at a good old age (ULT)

after you have lived a good long life, you will die peacefully and join your ancestors {who have died before you} (UST)

For some languages it may be more natural to change the order of this sentence. Alternate translation: [after you have lived a good long life, you will die peacefully and join your ancestors who have died before you]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- in peace
- you will be buried
- good

UST

- you will die peacefully and join your ancestors {who have died before you}
- after you have lived a good long life
- after you have lived a good long life

Genesis 15:16

ULT:
Then in the fourth generation they will come back here, because the sin of the Amorites {will} not {be} complete until then.”

UST:
Then four generations later, your descendants will return here {to live}, because that is when the Amorites will have sinned as much as I will allow {before I take away their land and give it to your descendants}.”

they will come back here (ULT)

your descendants will return here {to live} (UST)

Alternate translation: [your descendants will come back to this land and dwell here]

---

because the sin of the Amorites {will} not {be} complete until then (ULT)

because that is when the Amorites will have sinned as much as I will allow {before I take away their land and give it to your descendants} (UST)

God planned to give the Amorites’ land to Abram’s descendants because of the Amorites’ sin. Consider whether or not to include that implied information in your translation or in a footnote. Also, see how you translated the names of people groups in Genesis 10:13–18. Alternate translation: [for by then the Amorite people will have sinned to the limit will allow. Then I take away their land and give it to your descendants] or [and I will give them the land of the Amor people, whose sin will have reached its limit by then]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then in the … generation
- the sin of
- the Amorites

UST

- Then four generations later
- that is when the Amorites will have sinned as much as I will allow {before I take away their land and give it to your descendants}
- that is when the Amorites will have sinned as much as I will allow {before I take away their land and give it to your descendants}

Genesis 15:17

ULT:
And it happened, the sun went down and darkness came, and behold, {there was} a smoking fire pot and a flaming torch that passed between those pieces.

UST:
When the sun had set, it became {very} dark. Then suddenly a {clay} pot {appeared} {that was full} of burning coals and had smoke coming from it, and also a blazing torch, and they {both} went between the {animal} halves.

And it happened (ULT)

When (UST)

The author is using the word translated as **And it happened** to introduce a new development in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new development.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

---

the sun went down (ULT)

the sun had set (UST)

Alternate translation: [after the sun had gone down] or [after the sun had set]

---

and darkness came (ULT)

it became {very} dark (UST)

This Hebrew word for **darkness** implies that it was darker than normal, so that not even light from the moon and stars was visible. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and it was extremely dark]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and behold (ULT)

Then suddenly (UST)

Alternate translation: [and suddenly]

---

and a flaming torch (ULT)

and also a blazing torch (UST)

Alternate translation: [and also a burning firebrand]

---

between those pieces (ULT)

between the {animal} halves (UST)

Alternate translation: [between the two rows of animal parts]

Genesis 15:18

ULT:
On that day Yahweh cut a covenant with Abram, saying, "To your offspring I have given this land, from the river of Egypt to the great river, the Euphrates River,

UST:
At that time Yahweh made a {special} agreement with Abram and said, "I am giving your descendants this land, {which extends} from Egypt's river {in the south} to the great Euphrates River {in the north}.

On that day (ULT)

At that time (UST)

By **On that day**, the author refers generally here to a 24-hour day; it does not refer to daytime; it is still nighttime at this point (See: verse 17). You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [On that very day]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

Yahweh cut a covenant (ULT)

Yahweh made a {special} agreement (UST)

To **cut a covenant** means to make a covenant. The terminology refers to ancient rituals around making covenants, which is illustrated in Genesis 15. See the imagery and how you translated there. Alternate translation: [Yahweh established a formal, binding agreement]

Support Reference: Idiom

To your offspring I have given this land (ULT)

I am giving your descendants this land (UST)

In the Hebrew text, **To your offspring** is first in this quote to emphasize Abram's descendants. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [I am giving your offspring this land] or [I hereby give this land to your offspring]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

from the river of Egypt (ULT)

which extends} from Egypt's river {in the south} (UST)

This phrase probably refers to the Wadi El-Arish (not the Nile River), which is on the border between Egypt and Israel. It is best in a translation to leave this general, as the Hebrew text does.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

to the great river, the Euphrates River (ULT)

to the great Euphrates River {in the north} (UST)

Alternate translation: [to the big Euphrates River in the north]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- On … day
- Yahweh
- Abram
- a covenant
- To your offspring
- land
- Egypt
- Euphrates

UST

- At … time
- Yahweh
- Abram
- a {special} agreement
- your descendants
- land
- Egypt
- the great Euphrates River {in the north}

Genesis 15:19

ULT:
{the land of} the Kenites and the Kenizzites and the Kadmonites

UST:
{That includes} {the land which belongs to} the Kenites, the Kenizzites, the Kadmonites,

the land of (ULT)

That includes} {the land which belongs to} (UST)

Alternate translation: [including the land which is owned by]

{the land of} the Kenites and the Kenizzites and the Kadmonites (ULT)

{That includes} {the land which belongs to} the Kenites, the Kenizzites, the Kadmonites (UST)

In a list of people group names like this (verses 19–21), for some languages it is more natural to leave out **and the** most of the time, replacing those words with a comma. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Kenites, Kenizzites, Kadmonites]

Genesis 15:20

ULT:
and the Hittites and the Perizzites and the Rephaim

UST:
the Hittites, the Perizzites, the Rephaim,

and the Hittites and the Perizzites and the Rephaim (ULT)

the Hittites, the Perizzites, the Rephaim (UST)

Be consistent here with how you translated **the Hittites** in Genesis 10:15, **the Perizzites** in Genesis 13:7, and "the Raphaites" in Genesis 14:5. Alternate translation: [the Hittites, the Perizzites, the Raphaites] or [Hittites, Perizzites, Raphaites]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the Hittites
- the Perizzites

UST
- the Hittites
- the Perizzites

Genesis 15:21

ULT:
and the Amorites and the Canaanites and the Girgashites and the Jebusites.”

UST:
the Amorites, the Canaanites, the Girgashites, and the Jebusites.”

and the Amorites and the Canaanites and the Girgashites and the Jebusites (ULT)

the Amorites, the Canaanites, the Girgashites, and the Jebusites (UST)

Be consistent here with how you translated **the Amorites** in verse 18 and **Amorites**, **Canaanites**, **Girgashites**, and **Jebusites** in Genesis 10:15–18. Alternate translation: [Amorites, Canaanites, Girgashites, and Jebusites]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the Amorites
- the Canaanites
- the Girgashites
- the Jebusites

UST
- the Amorites
- the Canaanites
- the Girgashites
- the Jebusites

Genesis 16

Genesis 16:1

ULT:
Now Sarai, the wife of Abram, had not born {children} for him, but she had an Egyptian maidservant, and her name {was} Hagar.

UST:
Now Abram's wife Sarai had {still} not given birth {to any children} for him, but she owned an Egyptian servant woman whose name was Hagar.

Now Sarai, the wife of Abram (ULT)

Now Abram's wife Sarai (UST)

This verse begins a new topic by giving background information about Sarai. Some languages have a special conjunction for this. Other languages do not use a conjunction here.

Support Reference: Background Information

---

had not born {children} for him (ULT)

had {still} not given birth {to any children} for him (UST)

Sarai's barrenness is first mentioned in Genesis 11:30. Alternate translation: [still had not birthed any children for him]

---

an Egyptian maidservant (ULT)

an Egyptian servant woman (UST)

See how you translated “female slaves” in Genesis 12:16. Alternate translation: [an Egyptian slave woman] or [a female slave from the country of Egypt]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Now Sarai
- Abram
- had … born {children}
- an … maidservant
- Egyptian
- {was} Hagar

UST

- Now … Sarai
- Abram
- had … given birth {to any children}
- an … servant woman
- Egyptian
- Hagar

Genesis 16:2

ULT:
So Sarai said to Abram, "Behold please, Yahweh has prevented me from bearing {children}. Please go to my maidservant. Perhaps I can be built up from her." And Abram listened to the voice of Sarai.

UST:
So she told Abram, "Please listen {to this}: {As you know,} Yahweh has not allowed me to have {any} children, {so} please have {marital} relations with my servant woman {Hagar} {so that} maybe I can have a family through her {children}." Abram agreed to do what Sarai requested.

So Sarai said to Abram (ULT)

So she told Abram (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then she told Abram]

Behold please (ULT)

Please listen {to this} (UST)

Sarai is using the term **Behold** to focus Abram's attention on what she is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Also, see how you translated this phrase in Genesis 12:11. Alternate translation, as a complete sentence: [Hear me, please.] or [Please listen to me]

Support Reference: Metaphor

Yahweh has prevented me from bearing {children} (ULT)

{As you know,} Yahweh has not allowed me to have {any} children (UST)

Alternate translation: [Since Yahweh has not permitted me to bear any children] or [As you know, Yahweh has not permitted me to bear any children, so]

Please go to (ULT)

{so} please have {marital} relations with (UST)

See how you translated the idiom “went to” in Genesis 6:4. Alternate translation: [Please sleep with] or [Please have sexual relations with]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

my maidservant (ULT)

my servant woman {Hagar} (UST)

See how you translated **maidservant** in verse 1. Alternate translation: [my slave woman Hagar]

Perhaps (ULT)

{so that} maybe (UST)

Alternate translation: [Maybe] or [so that perhaps]

I can be built up from her (ULT)

I can have a family through her {children} (UST)

Alternate translation: [I can build a family through her children] or [she can have children for me so that I can build a family]

And Abram listened to the voice of Sarai (ULT)

Abram agreed to do what Sarai requested (UST)

The author is using the term **voice** to mean her words. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Abram heeded Sarai's request] or [So Abram listened to the request made by Sarai]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Sarai
- Abram
- Yahweh
- from bearing {children}
- my maidservant
- Abram
- Sarai

UST

- So she told
- Abram
- {As you know,} Yahweh
- to have {any} children
- my servant woman {Hagar}
- Abram agreed to do what Sarai requested
- Abram agreed to do what Sarai requested

Genesis 16:3

ULT:
So Sarai, the wife of Abram, took Hagar, her Egyptian maidservant, at the end of ten years that Abram had lived in the land of Canaan, and gave her to Abram her husband as a wife for him.

UST:
So Abram's wife Sarai gave her Egyptian servant Hagar to her husband Abram to be his {second} wife. {This happened} after Abram {and Sarai} had lived in the region of Canaan for ten years.

So Sarai, the wife of Abram, took (ULT)

So Abram's wife Sarai (UST)

In the Hebrew text, the phrase "Abram's wife" is repeated (in verses 1 and 3) to emphasize Sarai's relationship to Abram in contrast to the relationship of Hagar. For some languages it is redundant to repeat that phrase, and so they leave it implied here. However, if possible, it is best to keep this repetition in your translation. Alternate translation: [Then Sarai took]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

---

Hagar, her Egyptian maidservant (ULT)

her Egyptian servant Hagar (UST)

The word **Egyptian** is repeated (in verses 1 and 3) to emphasize the fact that Hagar was a foreigner. If possible, it is best to keep this repetition in your translation. Alternate translation: [her Egyptian servant woman Hagar] or [her servant Hagar]

---

and gave her to Abram her husband as a wife for him (ULT)

gave … to her husband Abram to be his {second} wife (UST)

For most languages it is clearer and more natural to change the order of the clauses in this verse and say, “So Abram’s wife Sarai gave her servant Hagar to her husband Abram to be his second wife. This happened after Abram and Sarai had lived in the land of Canaan for ten years.” Make sure your translation does not sound like verse 3 happened ten years after Abram agreed to sleep with Hagar. Alternate translation: [and she gave her servant to her husband Abram to be his second wife]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Sarai
- Abram
- Hagar
- Egyptian
- her … maidservant
- years
- Abram
- in the land of
- Canaan
- to Abram

UST

- Sarai
- Abram
- Hagar
- Egyptian
- her … servant
- for ten years
- Abram {and Sarai}
- in the region of
- Canaan
- to … Abram

Genesis 16:4

ULT:
Then he went to Hagar, and she conceived. And she saw that she had conceived, and her mistress was despised in her eyes.

UST:
Then Abram had {marital} relations with Hagar, and she became pregnant. But when she realized that she was pregnant, she started to disrespect her mistress {Sarai}.

Then he went to Hagar (ULT)

Then Abram had {marital} relations with Hagar (UST)

See how you translated the idiom "go to," the past tense of **went to**, in verse 2. Also, consider whether it is better in your language to refer to Abram by his name or by a pronoun here at the beginning of this paragraph. Alternate translation: [So Abram slept with Hagar] or [So he had sexual relations with Hagar]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

and she conceived (ULT)

and she became pregnant (UST)

If the connection between this statement and the previous one is not clear, you may want to use a different connecting word to show how this statement relates to what comes before it. Alternate translation: [and as a result she became pregnant] or [and so she conceived]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

And she saw that she had conceived (ULT)

But when she realized that she was pregnant (UST)

The word **saw** is used here as an idiom that means “realized” or “perceived.” Consider whether or not you have a similar idiom in your language that would work well here. Alternate translation: [She knew that she was pregnant]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and her mistress was despised in her eyes (ULT)

she started to disrespect her mistress {Sarai} (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Alternate translation: [and she despised her owner Sarai] or [and she treated her owner Sarai with contempt] or [she started to look down on her mistress Sarai]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

and her mistress was despised in her eyes (ULT)

she started to disrespect her mistress {Sarai} (UST)

The phrase **despised in her eyes** is an idiom that refers to Hagar’s attitude and disrespectful actions toward Sarai. Consider whether or not your language has a similar idiom. Alternate translation: [and her mistress was treated with contempt]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Hagar
- and she conceived
- she had conceived

UST

- Hagar
- and she became pregnant
- she was pregnant

Genesis 16:5

ULT:
Then Sarai said to Abram, "My wrong {is} on you! I myself put my maidservant into your arms, but she sees that she has conceived, and I am despised in her eyes! May Yahweh judge between me and you!"

UST:
So Sarai complained to Abram, "It is your fault that I am suffering! I gave my servant to you {to sleep with}, but now that she realizes that she is pregnant, she disrespects me! I ask Yahweh to judge whether it is you or I who is responsible {for this}!"

My wrong {is} on you (ULT)

It is your fault that I am suffering (UST)

Alternate translation: [I am being mistreated because of you!] or [It is your fault that I am being treated wrongly]

I myself put my maidservant into your arms (ULT)

I gave my servant to you {to sleep with} (UST)

The idiom **put my maidservant into your arms** refers to Abram's sexual relationship with Hagar. Make sure that your translation of this clause is not offensive to your readers. Alternate translation: [I gave my servant to you to be your wife] or [I allowed my servant to have marital relations with you]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

and I am despised in her eyes (ULT)

she disrespects me (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Also see how you translated a similar clause in verse 4. Alternate translation: [she despises me!] or [she treats me with disdain]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

May Yahweh judge between me and you (ULT)

I ask Yahweh to judge whether it is you or I who is responsible {for this} (UST)

Sarai assumes that Abram will know that as the head of the household, he is responsible to rebuke Hagar and require her to respect Sarai. You could say that explicitly or put that information in a footnote if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [I ask Yahweh to decide which one of us is responsible for this] or [May Yahweh decide who is wrong, you or me]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Sarai
- Abram
- My wrong
- my maidservant
- she has conceived
- May … judge
- Yahweh

UST

- Sarai
- Abram
- It is your fault that I am suffering
- my servant
- she is pregnant
- I ask … to judge

- Yahweh

Genesis 16:6

ULT:
Then Abram said to Sarai, "Behold, your maidservant {is} in your hand. Do to her what {is} good in your eyes." Then Sarai afflicted her, and she fled from her face.

UST:
Abram replied to her, "Listen, you are in charge of your servant. Do with her what{ever} you think is best." Then Sarai treated Hagar so harshly that she ran away {from home to get away} from her.

Then Abram said to Sarai (ULT)

Abram replied to her (UST)

Alternate translation: [But Abram said to her]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Behold (ULT)

Listen (UST)

Abram is using the term **Behold** to focus Sarai's attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [Look]

Support Reference: Metaphor

---

your maidservant {is} in your hand (ULT)

you are in charge of your servant (UST)

The phrase **in your hand** is an idiom that refers to having control or authority over someone. Consider whether or not your language has a similar idiom. Also see how you translated

maidservant in verses 1–3, 5. Alternate translation: [your slave woman is under your authority] or [you have authority over your slave]

Support Reference: Idiom

Do to her (ULT)

Do with her (UST)

Alternate translation: [So you can do to her]

---

what {is} good in your eyes (ULT)

what{ever} you think is best (UST)

The phrase **in your eyes** is an idiom that refers to Sarai's opinion. See how you translated a similar idiom ("in her eyes") in verses 4 and 5. Alternate translation: [whatever you decide is good] or [whatever pleases you]

Support Reference: Idiom

Then Sarai afflicted her (ULT)

Then Sarai treated Hagar so harshly (UST)

See how you translated "afflict" in Genesis 15:13. Alternate translation: [So Sarai oppressed her greatly] or [So Sarai treated her very badly]

---

and she fled from her face (ULT)

that she ran away {from home to get away} from her (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Hagar is the one who fled, not Sarai. Alternate translation: [and Hagar ran away from Sarai]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abram
- Sarai
- your maidservant
- what {is} good
- Sarai

UST

- Abram
- her
- you are in charge of your servant
- what{ever} you think is best
- Sarai

Genesis 16:7

ULT:
Then the angel of Yahweh found her at a spring of water in the wilderness, at the spring beside the road of Shur.

UST:
Then one of Yahweh's angels came to Hagar by a spring of water in the desert. It was the spring by the road to {the city of} Shur.

Then the angel of Yahweh found her (ULT)

Then one of Yahweh's angels came to Hagar (UST)

Make sure that the way you translate **found** does not sound like the angel encountered Hagar accidentally. Rather, he knew where she was and went to her intentionally. Also, this messenger from Yahweh was an angel, not a human being. Alternate translation: [But an messenger sent from Yahweh met Hagar]

---

at a spring of water (ULT)

by a spring of water (UST)

Alternate translation: [beside a spring of water] or [beside a spring]

---

in the wilderness (ULT)

in the desert (UST)

See how you translated **wilderness** in Genesis 14:6

---

at the spring (ULT)

It was the spring (UST)

Alternate translation: [She was at the spring]

---

beside the road of Shur (ULT)

by the road to {the city of} Shur (UST)

Alternate translation: [that was by the road that goes to the city of Shur] or [that was by the road near the city of Shur]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the angel of
- Yahweh
- a spring of
- in the wilderness
- the spring

UST

- one of … s angels
- Yahweh
- a spring of
- in the desert
- It was the spring

Genesis 16:8

ULT:
And he said, “Hagar, maidservant of Sarai, where have you come from, and where are you going?” And she said, “I am fleeing from the face of Sarai, my mistress.”

UST:
And the angel asked {her}, “Hagar, who serves Sarai, where are you coming from, and where are you headed?” She answered {him}, “I am running away from my mistress, Sarai.”

And he said (ULT)

And the angel asked {her} (UST)

The angel asked Hagar a question, so for some languages it is better to use a word like “asked” here. Consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin in your language. Alternate translation: [And the angel inquired of her] or [The angel asked her]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

I am fleeing from the face of Sarai, my mistress (ULT)

I am running away from my mistress, Sarai (UST)

See how you translated “fled from her face” in verse 6 and how you translated **mistress** in verse 4. Alternate translation: [I am running away from my owner, Sarai]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Hagar
- maidservant of
- Sarai
- Sarai

UST
- Hagar
- who serves

- Sarai
- Sarai

Genesis 16:9

ULT:
Then the angel of Yahweh said to her, "Return to your mistress and submit under her hands."

UST:
But Yahweh's angel told her, "Go back {home} to your mistress and {humbly} obey her {as her servant}."

Then the angel of Yahweh said to her (ULT)

But Yahweh's angel told her (UST)

Consider what is the best way to begin this verse in your translation after what Hagar said in verse 8. Alternate translation: [The angel told Hagar]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

Return to your mistress (ULT)

Go back {home} to your mistress (UST)

See how you translated "mistress" in verses 4 and 8. Alternate translation: [Go back to your owner]

---

and submit under her hands (ULT)

and {humbly} obey her {as her servant} (UST)

The angel is using **under her hands** as a common expression of this culture to mean "under her authority." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated a similar idiom ("in your hand") in verse 6. Alternate translation: [and humbly submit yourself to her authority]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the angel of
- Yahweh

UST

- s angel
- Yahweh

Genesis 16:10

ULT:
Then the angel of Yahweh said to her, "I will greatly increase your offspring, so that they cannot be counted, because of their abundance."

UST:
Then the angel added, "I {Yahweh} will give you so many descendants that no one will be able to count them all, because there will be so many of them."

Then the angel of Yahweh said to her (ULT)

Then the angel added (UST)

Some languages do not include the quote margins here and in verse 11, because the angel is still talking to Hagar. However, the repeated quote margins could be there to emphasize what the angel says next or to show that he paused or that he is changing the topic. Alternate translation: [Then the angel told her] or [Then he continued]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

I will greatly increase your offspring (ULT)

I {Yahweh} will give you so many descendants (UST)

The pronoun **I** refers to Yahweh here. So either the angel was representing Yahweh and speaking Yahweh's words to Hagar or it was Yahweh himself who had taken on the form of an angel. Alternate translation: [I, Yahweh, will greatly multiply the number of your offspring so that]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

because of their abundance (ULT)

because there will be so many of them (UST)

Alternate translation: [because of their large number]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the angel of
- Yahweh
- I will … increase
- your offspring

UST

- the angel
- the angel
- I {Yahweh} will give you so many descendants
- I {Yahweh} will give you so many descendants

Genesis 16:11

ULT:
Then the angel of Yahweh said to her, "Behold, {you are} pregnant, and you will bear a son, and you will call his name Ishmael, because Yahweh has listened to your misery.

UST:
Then the angel {also} told her, "Listen, {as you know,} you are pregnant. You will have a son, and you are to name him Ishmael, {which means 'God listens,'} because Yahweh listened to you when you were suffering {and has helped you}.

Behold, {you are} pregnant, and you will bear a son (ULT)

Listen, {as you know,} you are pregnant. You will have a son (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Hagar already knew that she was pregnant but did not know she would have a son or what she should name him. Alternate translation: [Look, as you know, you are expecting a child. You will bear a son] or [Look, you are pregnant with a son]

---

and you will call his name (ULT)

and you are to name him (UST)

Alternate translation: [give him the name]

Ishmael (ULT)

Ishmael, {which means 'God listens … } (UST)

Some translation teams make the meaning of Ishmael's name explicit in their translation. Other teams put the meaning of his name in a footnote. See what you did for similar cases in

Genesis 3:20, 4:1, 16, 25, 6:29, 10:25, and 11:9.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

because Yahweh has listened to (ULT)

because Yahweh listened to (UST)

If you included the meaning of Ishmael's name earlier in this verse, make sure it fits with how you translate this clause. Alternate translation: [because Yahweh heard] or [because Yahweh paid attention to]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

your misery (ULT)

you when you were suffering {and has helped you} (UST)

The word that means **listened to** implies here that God also took action to help Hagar. Alternate translation: [your cries of misery and has helped you]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the angel of
- Yahweh
- {you are} pregnant
- and you will bear
- and you will call
- Ishmael
- Yahweh
- your misery

UST
- the angel
- the angel
- {as you know,} you are pregnant
- You will have
- and you are to name him
- Ishmael, {which means 'God listens … }

- Yahweh
- you when you were suffering {and has helped you}

Genesis 16:12

ULT:
And he will be a wild donkey of a man, his hand against everyone and the hand of everyone against him, and he will live in the faces of all of his brothers.”

UST:
{When Ishmael grows up,} he will be {proud and free} {like} a wild donkey. He will fight against everyone, and everyone will fight against him. In fact, he will {even} be hostile toward all his relatives.”

And he (ULT)

{When Ishmael grows up,} he (UST)

The pronoun **he** is emphatic here to emphasize Ishmael. Make sure that your translation refers here to Ishmael, not Yahweh. Alternate translation: [As for Ishmael, when he grows up, he]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

will be a wild donkey of a man (ULT)

will be {proud and free} {like} a wild donkey (UST)

The angel compares Ishmael to a wild donkey. Consider whether or not your language can use a similar image or a comparison here. Alternate translation: [will be like a untamed donkey that no one can control] or [will not be ruled by anyone else]

Support Reference: Metaphor

---

his hand against everyone and the hand of everyone against him (ULT)

He will fight against everyone, and everyone will fight against him (UST)

Alternate translation: [He will be enemies with everyone]

---

and he will live in the faces of (ULT)

In fact, he will {even} be hostile toward (UST)

The rest of this verse forms a parallelism with the first half, emphasizing what Ishmael (and his descendants) will be like. Try to keep both parts of the parallelism in your translation, since each part has a different focus and the second part adds important information. Alternate translation: [Yes he will even fight against]

Support Reference: Parallelism

---

all of his brothers (ULT)

all his relatives (UST)

The word **brothers** is used here to refer to relatives in general. Consider what is the best way to translate this synecdoche in your language. Alternate translation: [all of his own relatives] or [all of his own family members]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- a man
- a wild donkey of

UST

- {proud and free} {like} a wild donkey
- {proud and free} {like} a wild donkey

Genesis 16:13

ULT:
Then she called the name of Yahweh who had spoken to her, "You {are} El Roi," because she said, "Have I really seen here the back of {the one who} sees me?"

UST:
After Yahweh spoke to Hagar, she called him El Roi, {which means "the God who sees."} {She named him that,} because she had exclaimed {to herself}, "I just now saw the back of {God who} sees me!"

Then she called the name of Yahweh who had spoken to her, "You {are} El Roi (ULT)

After Yahweh spoke to Hagar, she called him El Roi, {which means "the God who sees … } (UST)

Some translations transliterate (copy or borrow) the name **El Roi** from the Hebrew, some translate its meaning, and some do both. Decide what is best in your language.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

because she said (ULT)

She named him that,} because she had exclaimed {to herself} (UST)

Alternate translation: [She named him that, because she had said to herself]

Have I really seen here the back of {the one who} sees me (ULT)

I just now saw the back of {God who} sees me (UST)

Hagar's rhetorical question shows surprise and amazement. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your translation. Alternate translation: [How can it be that I was able to look at the back of the God who looks after me?] or [I just now saw the back of him who sees me!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then she called
- Yahweh
- to her

UST

- she called him
- After Yahweh
- to Hagar

Genesis 16:14

ULT:
For that {reason} they call the well Beer Lahai Roi. Behold, {it is} between Kadesh and Bered.

UST:
That is why the name of that well is Beer Lahai Roi, {which means "Well of the Living One, who sees me."} It is {still} there between {the cities of} Kadesh and Bered.

For that {reason} (ULT)

That is why (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 11:9.

---

they call the well (ULT)

the name of that well is (UST)

Frequently in the Hebrew text, this phrase has a general meaning and does not refer to someone specific. Also, this well is the same as the spring in verse 7. For some languages, it may be necessary to translate these words the same way so that it is clear that they refer to the same place. Alternate translation: [the well is named] or [people call that well] or [the name of the well is]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

Behold (ULT)

It is {still} there (UST)

The author is using the term **Behold** to focus his reader's attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [Look, that well is still there;]

Support Reference: Metaphor

{it is} between Kadesh and Bered (ULT)

between {the cities of} Kadesh and Bered (UST)

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Kadesh** in Genesis 14:7

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- they call
- the well

UST

- the name of that well is
- the name of that well is

Genesis 16:15

ULT:
Then Hagar bore a son for Abram, and Abram called the name of his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.

UST:
Then Hagar {returned home and} gave birth to a son for Abram, and Abram named his son Ishmael.

Then Hagar bore a son for Abram (ULT)

Then Hagar {returned home and} gave birth to a son for Abram (UST)

Alternate translation: [After that, she returned home and gave birth to a son for Abram]

---

and Abram called the name of his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael (ULT)

and Abram named his son Ishmael (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he called his son, whom she bore, Ishmael] or [and he named their son Ishmael]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then … bore
- Hagar
- for Abram
- and … called
- Abram
- bore
- Hagar
- Ishmael

UST

- Then … {returned home and} gave birth to
- Hagar
- for Abram
- and Abram named

- and Abram named
- his son
- his son
- Ishmael

Genesis 16:16

ULT:
And Abram {was} a son of 86 years when Hagar bore Ishmael for Abram.

UST:
Abram {was} 86 years old when Hagar had Ishmael for him.

And Abram {was} (ULT)

Abram {was} (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to omit the conjunction here.

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

---

a son of (ULT)

86 years old (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 5:32.

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- And Abram {was}
- 86 years
- 86 years
- when … bore
- Hagar
- Ishmael
- for Abram

UST
- Abram {was}
- 86 years old
- 86 years old
- when … had
- Hagar

- Ishmael
- for him

Genesis 17

Genesis 17:1

ULT:
Then Abram was a son of ninety-nine years, and Yahweh appeared to Abram and said to him, "I {am} God Almighty. Walk before me and be without blemish.

UST:
{Years} later, when Abram was ninety-nine years old, Yahweh came to him and told him, "I {am} God {who is} all-powerful. Live in a way that pleases me so that you will be blameless.

Then Abram was a son of ninety-nine years (ULT)

{Years} later, when Abram was ninety-nine years old (UST)

Thirteen years have passed between the last verse of chapter 16 and the first verse of chapter 17. Consider what is the best way in your language to begin this new section. See how you translated "was a son of … years" in Gen 5:32. Alternate translation: [It was thirteen years later that Abram was 99 years old]

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

---

and Yahweh appeared to Abram (ULT)

Yahweh came to him (UST)

See how you translated this clause in Gen 12:7. Alternate translation: [Yahweh appeared to him] or [Yahweh visited him]

I {am} God Almighty (ULT)

I {am} God {who is} all-powerful (UST)

Most translation teams translate the meaning of God's title here (**God Almighty**). A few teams transliterate the title as "El Shaddai" (as if it were a personal name) and put the meaning of the title in a footnote. Abram already knew that God's personal name is Yahweh (Genesis 12:8; 15:7–8), so he would have understood that God was using a title here (not a personal name). The title **God Almighty** emphasizes God's authority and power. You could include a transliteration of this title in a footnote. Alternate translation: [I am Almighty God] or [I am the all-powerful God]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

Walk before me (ULT)

Live in a way that pleases me (UST)

Walk before me is an idiom that means to habitually live according to God's will. Alternate translation: [Walk in my presence] or [Live according to my will]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and be (ULT)

so that you will be (UST)

Alternate translation: [and yes, you must be]

---

without blemish (ULT)

blameless (UST)

See how you translated this idiom in Genesis 6:9. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [without fault] or [upright]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abram
- ninety-nine years
- ninety-nine years
- Yahweh
- Abram
- {am} God
- Almighty
- without blemish

UST

- Abram
- ninety-nine years old
- ninety-nine years old
- Yahweh
- him
- {am} God
- {who is} all-powerful
- blameless

Genesis 17:2

ULT:
And I will make my covenant between me and you, and I will multiply you very greatly.”

UST:
I will establish my agreement with you, and I will increase {the number of} your descendants so that they are very numerous.”

and I will multiply you very greatly (ULT)

and I will increase {the number of} your descendants so that they are very numerous (UST)

Alternate translation: [and I will cause you to have very many descendants] or [and I will increase the number of your descendants so that they are exceedingly numerous]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- my covenant
- and I will multiply

UST

- my agreement
- and I will increase

Genesis 17:3

ULT:
Then Abram fell on his face, and God spoke with him, saying,

UST:
{When} Abram {heard that, he} bowed with his face to the ground {before God} {to show respect}, and God continued speaking to him,

Then Abram fell on his face (ULT)

When} Abram {heard that, he} bowed with his face to the ground {before God} {to show respect} (UST)

Make sure that the translation of this clause, **Abram fell on his face**, does not sound like Abram fell down accidentally. Rather, he intentionally threw himself to the ground out of deep respect for God. Alternate translation: [Then Abram prostrated himself before God]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

---

and God spoke with him, saying (ULT)

and God continued speaking to him (UST)

Some translations omit **saying** here because it is not natural in those languages. Alternate translation: [and God spoke to him and said] or [and God added]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Abram
- God

UST
- Abram

- God

Genesis 17:4

ULT:
"Me, behold, my covenant will be with you, and you shall be the father of an assembly of nations.

UST:
"Listen, this is what I will do to fulfill my agreement with you: I will make you a community of peoples.

Me, behold, my covenant will be with you, and you shall be (ULT)

Listen, this is what I will do to fulfill my agreement with you: I will make you (UST)

In the Hebrew text, the pronoun **Me** is emphatic both in form and in sentence position. **Me, behold** is similar to **Behold, me**, which means "I am about to." Use a natural way in your language to emphasize that Yahweh is the one doing this. Alternate translation: [As for me, I am about to fulfill my covenant with you, that you will be] or [On my part, I am about to fulfill my covenant with you: I will make you]

Support Reference: Metaphor

---

the father of (ULT)

of (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 4:20, 21, 10:21.

---

an assembly of nations (ULT)

a community … peoples (UST)

Alternate translation: [a large number of]

---

an assembly of nations (ULT)

a community … peoples (UST)

Alternate translation: [ethnic groups]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- my covenant
- an assembly of nations

UST

- my agreement
- peoples

Genesis 17:5

ULT:
And your name will not be called Abram anymore, but your name will be Abraham, because I have made you the father of a multitude of nations.

UST:
So your name will no longer be Abram. Rather, {from now on} it will be Abraham, because you will be the ancestor of many people groups.

And your name will not be called Abram anymore (ULT)

So your name will no longer be Abram (UST)

Alternate translation: [So your name will not be Abram anymore]

---

but your name will be Abraham (ULT)

Rather, {from now on} it will be Abraham (UST)

Alternate translation: [Instead, from now on it will be Abraham] or [Rather, I am changing it now to Abraham]

---

because I have made you (ULT)

because you will be (UST)

Yahweh is using the past tense to describe something that is going to happen in the future in order to show that the event will certainly happen. If it would be clearer in your language, you could use the future tense. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [because I will make you]

Support Reference: Irregular Use of Tenses

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- will … be called
- Abram
- Abraham
- nations

UST

- So … will no longer be
- Abram
- Abraham
- people groups

Genesis 17:6

ULT:
And I will make you very, very fruitful, and I will make you into nations, and kings will come from you.

UST:
Yes, I will give you many, many descendants, so that you will become {the ancestor of many} people groups. In fact, some of your descendants will be kings.

And I will make you very, very fruitful (ULT)

Yes, I will give you many, many descendants (UST)

This verse elaborates on the last part of verse 5; it does not refer to different events. Consider what is the best way to begin this sentence in your language. Alternate translation: [Yes, I will make you exceedingly fruitful] or [I will give you very many offspring]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

---

and I will make you into nations (ULT)

so that you will become {the ancestor of many} people groups (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that you will be the father of many ethnic groups] or [and I will cause your descendants to become many ethnic groups]

---

and kings will come from you (ULT)

In fact, some of your descendants will be kings (UST)

See how you translated “king” in Genesis 14:1–5. Alternate translation: [In fact, there will be kings who descend from you]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And I will make … fruitful
- into nations
- and kings

UST

- Yes, I will give you many, many descendants
- {the ancestor of many} people groups
- In fact … kings

Genesis 17:7

ULT:
And I will establish my covenant between me and you and your offspring after you throughout their generations as an eternal covenant, to be God to you and to your offspring after you.

UST:
I will establish my agreement with you and {all} your descendants {who live} after you for {all} generations to come. It will be an agreement that never ends, that I will be your God and {the God} of {all} your descendants.

And I will establish my covenant between me and you (ULT)

I will establish my agreement with you (UST)

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 2. The pronouns **you** and **your** are singular in this clause and also later in this verse. Alternate translation: [I will make my covenant with you]

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

---

to be God to you and to your offspring after you (ULT)

that I will be your God and {the God} of {all} your descendants (UST)

Alternate translation: [that I will be the God who takes care of you and all your descendants] or [that I will be the God whom you and all your descendants worship]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- my covenant
- your offspring
- throughout their generations
- as an … covenant
- eternal
- God
- and to your offspring

UST

- my agreement
- {all} your descendants
- for {all} generations to come
- It will be an agreement
- that never ends
- your God
- and {the God} of {all} your descendants

Genesis 17:8

ULT:
And I will give to you and to your offspring after you the land of your sojournings, all the land of Canaan, as an eternal possession, and I will be God to them.”

UST:
I will also give to you and your descendants this land where you have been living as a foreigner, {yes,} the entire region of Canaan. They will own it forever, and I will be their God.”

and I will be God to them (ULT)

and I will be their God (UST)

See how you translated the phrase “be God to you” in verse 7. Alternate translation: [and I will be the God who takes care of them] or [I will be the God whom they worship]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and to your offspring
- the land of
- the land of
- Canaan
- as an … possession
- eternal
- God

UST

- and your descendants
- this land
- the … region of
- Canaan
- They will own it
- forever
- their God

Genesis 17:9

ULT:
Then God said to Abraham, "And you, you must keep my covenant, you and your offspring after you throughout their generations.

UST:
Then God continued, "Now as for your part {in this agreement}, you must obey me. {That applies to} you as well as {all} your descendants for {all} generations to come.

Then God said to Abraham (ULT)

Then God continued (UST)

Some languages leave out this quote margin, because God is still speaking to the same person. See what you did for similar cases in Genesis 16:10–11.

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

And you (ULT)

Now as for your part {in this agreement} (UST)

In the Hebrew text, the pronoun **you** is emphatic both in form and in sentence position to shift the focus from talking about God's part in the covenant (verses 4–8) to talking about Abraham's part. Translate this phrase in a way that shows this change in focus. Alternate translation: [As for you] or [Now as for your part in my covenant] or [Your responsibility in my agreement is that]

---

you must keep my covenant (ULT)

you must obey me (UST)

Alternate translation: [you must fulfill all the requirements of my agreement]

---

throughout their generations (ULT)

for {all} generations to come (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 7, and a similar phrase in verse 8. Alternate translation: [including all generations to come] or [for all future generations]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- Abraham
- my covenant
- you must keep
- and your offspring
- throughout their generations

UST

- Then God continued
- Then God continued
- you must obey me
- you must obey me
- as well as {all} your descendants
- for {all} generations to come

Genesis 17:10

ULT:
This {is} my covenant which you must keep, between me and you and your offspring after you: Every male among you must be circumcised.

UST:
This is {what I require in} my agreement with you and your descendants, which you {all} must obey: You must circumcise all males {who live} among you.

which you must keep (ULT)

which you {all} must obey (UST)

The pronoun **you** is plural here because Yahweh is addressing Abraham and all his future offspring, even though they do not yet exist, so use the plural form in your translation if your language marks that distinction. Alternate translation: [which you and all of your future descendants]

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

---

between me and you and (ULT)

with you and (UST)

The pronoun **you** is plural here and probably refers to Abraham and his family or household. Alternate translation: [the covenant that is between me and you all, including] or [the covenant I have made with all of you, including]

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

---

your offspring after you (ULT)

your descendants (UST)

Notice that the pronouns **your** and **you** are singular here because they refer to Abraham. So use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction. Alternate translation: [your descendants who will live after you:] or [all your descendants:]

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

This {is} my covenant which you must keep, between me and you and your offspring after you (ULT)

This is {what I require in} my agreement with you and your descendants, which you {all} must obey (UST)

It may be clearer or more natural to change the order of some of the clauses in this sentence. Alternate translation: [This is what I require in my covenant with you and your descendants who will live after you, which you all must keep]

Support Reference: Information Structure

Every male among you must be circumcised (ULT)

You must circumcise all males {who live} among you (UST)

Circumcision involves cutting the foreskin off the penis of a boy or man. Translate this clause in a way that does not offend or embarrass people. Some languages may need to be more discreet and say something general like "must cut off the male skin" or "must follow the male skin-cutting custom." It may be necessary to include a footnote and an explanation in the glossary about this so that people understand what circumcision is, especially in areas where people cut their skin on other parts of the body for other reasons. Alternate translation: [You must cut off the male foreskin of every boy and man who lives among you]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- my covenant
- you must keep
- your offspring
- must be circumcised

UST

- {what I require in} my agreement
- you {all} must obey
- your descendants
- You must circumcise

Genesis 17:11

ULT:
Indeed, you must be circumcised {in} the flesh of your foreskins, and it will be the sign of the covenant between me and you.

UST:
Yes, you must circumcise the foreskins of {all the males among} you, and that {custom} will remind {you all} that {I made} this agreement with you.

Indeed, you must be circumcised {in} the flesh of your foreskins (ULT)

Yes, you must circumcise the foreskins of {all the males among} you (UST)

Notice that in the Hebrew text, the pronouns **you** and **your** are plural in this verse. Also, be consistent here with how you translated "circumcise" in verse 10. Alternate translation: [Yes, all the males among you must have your foreskins cut off] or [Indeed, you must cut off the foreskin of all the males among you]

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

---

and it will be the sign of the covenant between me and you (ULT)

and that {custom} will remind {you all} that {I made} this agreement with you (UST)

The pronoun **you** is plural here. Alternate translation: [and that practice will show you all that I made my covenant with you]

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Indeed, you must be circumcised
- the sign of
- the covenant

UST
- Yes, you must circumcise

- and that {custom} will remind {you all} that
- {I made} this agreement

Genesis 17:12

ULT:
So a son of eight days must be circumcised, every male among you throughout your generations, the one born in {your} house and the one bought with money from any son of a foreigner, who {is} not your offspring.

UST:
For all {future} generations you must circumcise {every} baby boy who is eight days old, {as well as} all {other} males among your people. {That includes} males from your own family as well as those who {are} not your descendants but {are servants whom you} bought from foreigners.

So a son of eight days must be circumcised (ULT)

you must circumcise {every} baby boy who is eight days old (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [You must circumcise every eight-day-old baby boy] or [So you must circumcise every eight-day-old baby boy]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

every male (ULT)

{as well as} all {other} males (UST)

The words **every male** could mean: (1) “and every other male.” Alternate translation: [as well as all other males]; (2) “yes, every male child.” The following context suggests that this phrase includes males of all ages, not just babies, since male slaves who were bought would especially include adult males.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

So a son of eight days must be circumcised, every male among you throughout your generations (ULT)

For all {future} generations you must circumcise {every} baby boy who is eight days old, {as well as} all {other} males among your people (UST)

It may be more natural to put this phrase at the beginning of this verse. Alternate translation: [For all future generations you must circumcise every baby boy who is eight days old, as well as all other males among your people]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

the one born in {your} house (ULT)

{That includes} males from your own family (UST)

This phrase refers to Abraham's future sons, including Isaac (Genesis 21:4) and his concubines' sons (25:6), and may also refer to the sons of Abraham's servants. Alternate translation: [including males who are born in your family] or [That includes those from your own family]

---

and the one bought with money from any son of a foreigner, who {is} not your offspring (ULT)

as well as those who {are} not your descendants but {are servants whom you} bought from foreigners (UST)

Alternate translation: [and those whom you buy from foreigners as slaves, and who are not your descendants] or [as well as those who are not your offspring but are slaves whom you have bought from foreigners]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- days

- must be circumcised
- throughout your generations
- the one born in
- {your} house
- money
- a foreigner
- your offspring

UST

- {every} baby boy who is eight days old
- you must circumcise
- For all {future} generations
- {That includes} males from your own family
- {That includes} males from your own family
- as well as … but {are servants whom you} bought
- from foreigners
- your descendants

Genesis 17:13

ULT:
He must surely be circumcised, the one born in your house and the one bought with your money. So my covenant will be in your flesh as an eternal covenant.

UST:
{Yes,} you must definitely circumcise {all of} them, {regardless of whether} they are sons from your own family or servants whom you have bought. That is how you must mark my agreement on your bodies to show that it is an agreement that never ends.

He must surely be circumcised (ULT)

{Yes,} you must definitely circumcise {all of} them (UST)

The author is repeating forms of the verb **circumcising** in order to intensify his expression of the idea that it conveys. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the intensification. Alternate translation: [Yes, you must surely circumcise all of them]

Support Reference: Reduplication

---

the one born in your house and the one bought with your money (ULT)

{regardless of whether} they are sons from your own family or servants whom you have bought (UST)

See how you translated these phrases in verse 12. It may be best to translate them in a slightly different way here because of the repetition. Alternate translation: [including those who are born in your household as well as those whom you buy as a slave] or [regardless of whether they are males from your own household or slaves whom you have bought]

---

in your flesh (ULT)

on your bodies (UST)

The word **flesh** refers here to the body in general. Translate this in a way that is clear and natural in your language.

Support Reference: Synecdoche

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- He must … be circumcised
- the one born in
- your house
- your money
- my covenant
- as an … covenant
- eternal

UST

- you must … circumcise {all of} them
- {regardless of whether} they are sons from your own family
- {regardless of whether} they are sons from your own family
- or servants whom you have bought
- my agreement
- to show that it is an agreement
- that never ends

Genesis 17:14

ULT:
And {as for} an uncircumcised male who is not circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin, indeed that person must be cut off from his people; he has broken my covenant."

UST:
In fact, if any man refuses to let you circumcise him, you must {send him away and} not allow him to associate with my people, {because} he has disobeyed {what I require in} my agreement."

And {as for} an uncircumcised male who is not circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin (ULT)

In fact, if any man refuses to let you circumcise him (UST)

In this context, **uncircumcised male** refers to men who refuse to be circumcised, not baby boys. Alternate translation: [But as for every man who is not circumcised] or [In fact, if a man refuses to let you circumcise him] or [If a man refuses to be circumcised]

---

indeed that person must be cut off from his people (ULT)

you must {send him away and} not allow him to associate with my people (UST)

The phrase **cut off from his people** is an idiom which means that the person is an outcast of society and can no longer associate closely with other people in that society. Consider whether or not your language has a similar idiom that would work well here. Alternate translation: [that person must be sent away and not be allowed to fellowship with his people] or [you must send him away and not allow him to fellowship with his people]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

he has broken (ULT)

{because} he has disobeyed (UST)

This phrase has the opposite meaning of “keep” or “obey” in verse 9. Consider whether or not your language has an idiom like **broken** that means to not do what has been agreed upon or to disobey what was commanded. Alternate translation: [because he has not kept]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And {as for} an uncircumcised
- is … circumcised
- my covenant

UST

- In fact, if any man
- refuses to let you circumcise him
- {what I require in} my agreement

Genesis 17:15

ULT:
Then God said to Abraham, "{As for} Sarai your wife, do not call her name Sarai, because her name {will be} Sarah.

UST:
God {also} told Abraham, "{As for} your wife Sarai, do not call her Sarai {anymore}. Rather, {from now on} her name will be Sarah.

Then God said to Abraham (ULT)

God {also} told Abraham (UST)

Alternate translation: [Later God also said to Abraham]

{As for} Sarai your wife (ULT)

{As for} your wife Sarai (UST)

This phrase is placed first in this quote in order to change the focus to Sarai and emphasize her. Consider what is the best way to do this in your language.

---

do not call her name Sarai (ULT)

do not call her Sarai {anymore} (UST)

Alternate translation: [her name will no longer be Sarai]

---

because her name {will be} Sarah (ULT)

Rather, {from now on} her name will be Sarah (UST)

Alternate translation: [because from now on her name will be Sarah] or [Rather, her name is now Sarah] or [Rather, from now on it will be Sarah]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- Abraham
- {As for} Sarai
- do … call
- Sarai
- Sarah

UST

- God
- Abraham
- Sarai
- do … call her … anymore
- Sarai
- Sarah

Genesis 17:16

ULT:
And I will bless her, and I will also give to you a son from her. Indeed, I will bless her and she will become nations; kings of peoples will come from her.”

UST:
I will bless her, and I will definitely enable her to bear a son for you. In fact, I will bless her so that she will {have many descendants that will} become {many} people groups, and some of her descendants will {even} be kings {who rule} over people groups.”

and I will also give to you a son from her (ULT)

and I will definitely enable her to bear a son for you (UST)

Alternate translation: [and I will definitely enable her to have a son for you] or [and I will definitely give you a son by her]

Indeed, I will bless her (ULT)

In fact, I will bless her (UST)

Alternate translation: [Yes, I will bless her]

---

and she will become nations (ULT)

so that she will {have many descendants that will} become {many} people groups (UST)

See how you translated **nations** in verses 4–6. Alternate translation: [so that she will become the mother of many ethnic groups] or [so much that she will have many descendants that will form new ethnic groups]

---

kings of peoples will come from her (ULT)

and some of her descendants will {even} be kings {who rule} over people groups (UST)

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 6. Alternate translation: [and kings over peoples will descend from her] or [and some of her descendants will even be kings who rule over many ethnic groups]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And I will bless
- Indeed, I will bless her
- nations
- kings of

UST

- I will bless
- In fact, I will bless her
- {many} people groups
- kings {who rule} over

Genesis 17:17

ULT:
Then Abraham fell on his face, and he laughed and said in his heart, "Will {a child} be born to a son of 100 years? And will Sarah, who is a daughter of ninety years, bear {a child}?"

UST:
{When} Abraham {heard that, he} bowed with his face to the ground {before God} {to respect him}, but he laughed {silently} and thought to himself, "How can a hundred-year-old man {like me} father a child? And how can Sarah, who is ninety years old, {still} have a baby?"

Then Abraham fell on his face (ULT)

When} Abraham {heard that, he} bowed with his face to the ground {before God} {to respect him} (UST)

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 3. Alternate translation: [When Abraham heard that, he bowed with his face to the ground before God to show respect] or [Then Abraham prostrated himself before God to show him respect]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

---

and he laughed and said in his heart (ULT)

but he laughed {silently} and thought to himself (UST)

The phrase **said in his heart** is an idiom that refers to something Abraham thought, but did not say out loud. Consider whether or not your language has a similar idiom that fits well here. Alternate translation: [but he laughed to himself and thought]

Support Reference: Idiom

Will {a child} be born to a son of 100 years (ULT)

How can a hundred-year-old man {like me} father a child (UST)

Abraham uses the rhetorical questions in verse 17 to express strong disbelief. If that is not clear in your language, you could translate the rhetorical questions as statements, with or without a tag question. Alternate translation: [A hundred-year-old man like myself cannot father a son!] or [It is impossible for a hundred-year-old man like me to father a son!] or [A hundred-year-old man like me cannot father a child, can he?]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

And will Sarah, who is a daughter of ninety years, bear {a child} (ULT)

And how can Sarah, who is ninety years old, {still} have a baby (UST)

Alternate translation: [Sarah, who is 90 years old, cannot still have a baby!] or [It certainly is not possible for a 90-year-old woman like Sarah to still bear a baby!] or [And a 90-year-old woman like Sarah cannot give birth to a baby, can she?]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abraham
- Sarah
- years
- will … bear {a child}

UST

- Abraham
- Sarah
- who is ninety years old
- {still} have a baby

Genesis 17:18

ULT:
Then Abraham said to God, "If only Ishmael might live before you!"

UST:
So Abraham said to God, "Please let Ishmael be the one whom you bless {as my heir}!"

Then Abraham said to God (ULT)

So Abraham said to God (UST)

Alternate translation: [So he said to God]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

If only Ishmael (ULT)

Please let Ishmael (UST)

Consider what is the best way to express this strong wish or hope in your language. Alternate translation: [Oh, that Ishmael]

---

might live before you (ULT)

be the one whom you bless {as my heir} (UST)

This idiom means to live under God's care and be blessed by him. Alternate translation: [live in your presence!]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abraham
- God
- Ishmael

UST

- Abraham
- God
- Ishmael

Genesis 17:19

ULT:
Then God said, "No, Sarah your wife is bearing a son for you, and you will call his name Isaac. And I will establish my covenant with him as an eternal covenant for his offspring after him.

UST:
God replied, "Yes, but {it is} your wife Sarah {who} will give birth to a son for you. You must name him Isaac. He {is the one} I will establish my agreement with, as a permanent agreement {that I will also keep} with {all} his descendants {who live} after him.

Then God said (ULT)

God replied (UST)

Alternate translation: [God said to him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

No (ULT)

Yes, but (UST)

Alternate translation: [No, rather] or [Yes, however]

Sarah your wife (ULT)

it is} your wife Sarah {who} (UST)

Here God emphasizes what he said in verse 16 about Sarah. Alternate translation: [as I said, your wife Sarah is the one who]

---

is bearing a son for you (ULT)

will give birth to a son for you (UST)

Alternate translation: [will bear you a son]

---

and you will call his name Isaac (ULT)

You must name him Isaac (UST)

See how you translated “call her name” in verse 15. Alternate translation: [and you must name him Isaac] or [You must give him the name Isaac]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

And I will establish my covenant with him (ULT)

He {is the one} I will establish my agreement with (UST)

Alternate translation: [I will make my covenant with him] or [It is with him that I will establish my covenant]

---

as an eternal covenant (ULT)

as a permanent agreement (UST)

Alternate translation: [as an unending covenant]

---

for his offspring after him (ULT)

{that I will also keep} with {all} his descendants {who live} after him (UST)

Alternate translation: [that will also be for all his offspring who live after him] or [that I will also keep with all his offspring who live after him]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- Sarah
- is bearing
- and you will call
- Isaac
- my covenant
- as an … covenant
- eternal
- for his offspring

UST

- God
- Sarah
- will give birth to
- You must name him
- Isaac
- my agreement
- as a … agreement
- permanent
- {that I will also keep} with {all} his descendants

Genesis 17:20

ULT:
And as for Ishmael, I have heard you. Behold, I will bless him, and I will make him fruitful and multiply him very greatly. He will father twelve rulers, and I will make him into a great nation.

UST:
I also heard what you asked me to do for Ishmael. {So} this is what I will do: I will {also} bless him, and I will give him many children and greatly increase {the number of} his descendants. {In fact,} he will be the father of twelve {sons who become} {powerful} leaders, and I will make him {the ancestor of} a large people group.

And as for Ishmael, I have heard you (ULT)

I also heard what you asked me to do for Ishmael (UST)

Alternate translation: [As for Ishmael, I have heard your request for him]

Behold (ULT)

{So} this is what I will do (UST)

Alternate translation: [So behold] or [So here is what I will do:]

---

and multiply him very greatly (ULT)

and greatly increase {the number of} his descendants (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that he has a great many descendants]

He will father (ULT)

{In fact,} he will be the father of (UST)

Alternate translation: [In fact, he will have]

---

twelve rulers (ULT)

twelve {sons who become} {powerful} leaders (UST)

Many translations have “princes” here, but these Ishmaelite rulers were not actually sons of a king, so it is better to use a more general term in your translation. Alternate translation: [twelve sons who become chiefs] or [twelve sons who will be great leaders]

---

and I will make him into a great nation (ULT)

and I will make him {the ancestor of} a large people group (UST)

Alternate translation: [and I will make him the father of a great ethnic group] or [and I will make him and his descendants become a great ethnic group]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And as for Ishmael
- I will bless
- and I will make … fruitful
- and multiply
- rulers
- into a … nation

UST

- also … for Ishmael
- I will {also} bless
- and I will give him many children
- and greatly increase {the number of} his descendants
- {powerful} leaders

- {the ancestor of} a … people group

Genesis 17:21

ULT:
However, my covenant I will establish with Isaac, whom Sarah will bear for you by this time in the next year.”

UST:
But I will establish my agreement with {your son} Isaac. Sarah will give birth to him at this time next year.”

However, my covenant I will establish (ULT)

But I will establish my agreement (UST)

In the Hebrew text, the phrase **my covenant** is put before the verb in order to change the topic to God’s covenant. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Also consider again how you translated **covenant** in verses 2, 4, 7, 9–11, 13–14, 19, 21. Alternate translation: [But I will make my covenant]

---

whom Sarah will bear for you (ULT)

Sarah will give birth to him (UST)

Also, see how you translated “is bearing … for you” in verse 19. Alternate translation: [whom Sarah will give birth to for you]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- my covenant
- Isaac
- will bear
- Sarah
- by … time
- in the … year

UST

- But … my agreement
- {your son} Isaac

- will give birth to
- Sarah
- at … time
- next year

Genesis 17:22

ULT:
Then he finished speaking with him, and God went up from Abraham.

UST:
After he had finished talking to Abraham, God left him and ascended {to heaven}.

Then he finished speaking with him (ULT)

After he had finished talking to Abraham (UST)

See how you translated “spoke with him” in verse 3. Alternate translation: [When God had finished speaking with Abraham]

---

and God went up from Abraham (ULT)

God left him and ascended {to heaven} (UST)

Consider whether to use a noun or a pronoun to refer to God and Abraham at each point in this verse. Do what is clear and natural in your language. Alternate translation: [he went up from Abraham to heaven] or [he left him and ascended to heaven] or [he left him]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- God
- Abraham

UST
- God
- him and ascended {to heaven}

Genesis 17:23

ULT:
Then Abraham took Ishmael his son and all those born in his house and everyone bought with his money, every male among the men of Abraham's house, and he circumcised the flesh of their foreskins on that very day, just as God had told him.

UST:
Then Abraham gathered his son Ishmael and all the {other} males who were born in his household and all {his male servants} whom he had bought, {yes,} every male in his household. Then on that same day he circumcised them, exactly as God had commanded him {to do}.

Then Abraham took (ULT)

Then Abraham gathered (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Abraham brought together]

---

and everyone bought with his money (ULT)

and all {his male servants} whom he had bought (UST)

Alternate translation: [as well as all the male slaves whom he had bought]

---

every male among the men of Abraham's house (ULT)

{yes,} every male in his household (UST)

The phrase **every male among the men of Abraham's house** refers to everyone mentioned in the first half of this verse, including all males of all ages, not just men.

---

and he circumcised the flesh of their foreskins on that very day (ULT)

Then on that same day he circumcised them (UST)

Alternate translation: [and on that same day he cut off their foreskins]

Then Abraham took Ishmael his son and all those born in his house and everyone bought with his money, every male among the men of Abraham's house, and he circumcised the flesh of their foreskins on that very day, just as God had told him (ULT)

Then Abraham gathered his son Ishmael and all the {other} males who were born in his household and all {his male servants} whom he had bought, {yes,} every male in his household. Then on that same day he circumcised them, exactly as God had commanded him {to do} (UST)

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to change the order of the clauses in this verse. Alternate translation: [Then that very day, Abraham did just as God had commanded him to do: He took Ishmael his son and all those born in his house and everyone bought with his money, every male among the men of Abraham's house, and he circumcised the flesh of their foreskins]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abraham
- Ishmael
- those born in
- his house
- his money
- s house
- Abraham
- and he circumcised
- day
- God

UST

- Abraham
- Ishmael
- the {other} males who were born in

- his household
- {his male servants} whom he had bought
- in his household
- in his household
- Then … he circumcised
- day
- God

Genesis 17:24

ULT:
And Abraham {was} a son of 99 years when he was circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin,

UST:
Abraham {was} 99 years old when he was circumcised,

And Abraham (ULT)

Abraham (UST)

The information in verses 24 and 25 is background information. Many languages have a specific conjunction or transitional phrase that is used to introduce this kind of information. Alternate translation: [Now Abraham]

Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

{was} a son of 99 years (ULT)

{was} 99 years old (UST)

Here, **a son of 99 years** is a common expression that means "was 99 years old." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [was ninety-nine years old]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

when he was circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin (ULT)

when he was circumcised (UST)

The expression **he was circumcised** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [when someone cut off his foreskin]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And Abraham
- years
- when he was circumcised

UST

- Abraham
- {was} 99 years old
- when he was circumcised

Genesis 17:25

ULT:
and Ishmael his son {was} a son of thirteen years when he was circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin.

UST:
and his son Ishmael was thirteen years old when {Abraham} circumcised him.

and Ishmael his son (ULT)

and his son Ishmael (UST)

Alternate translation: [His son Ishmael]

{was} a son of thirteen years (ULT)

was thirteen years old (UST)

Alternate translation: [was 13 years old]

---

when he was circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin (ULT)

when {Abraham} circumcised him (UST)

The expression **he was circumsized** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [when someone cut his foreskin off] or [when he circumcised him]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and Ishmael
- years
- when he was circumcised

UST

- and … Ishmael
- was thirteen years old
- when {Abraham} circumcised him

Genesis 17:26

ULT:
On that very day Abraham was circumcised, and Ishmael his son.

UST:
{So it was,} on that same day {both} Abraham and his son Ishmael were circumcised.

On that very day (ULT)

{So it was,} on that same day (UST)

Verses 26 and 27 repeat what happened in verse 23 to emphasize what happened. The author assumes that readers will know that Abraham and Ishmael were circumcised twice. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [So it was, on that very day]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

Abraham was circumcised, and Ishmael his son (ULT)

{both} Abraham and his son Ishmael were circumcised (UST)

The expression **was circumcised** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [someone circumcised Abraham, and Abraham circumcised his son Ishmael]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

Abraham was circumcised, and Ishmael his son (ULT)

{both} Abraham and his son Ishmael were circumcised (UST)

Moses is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [Abraham was circumcised, and Ishmael his son was circumcised.]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- day
- was circumcised
- Abraham
- and Ishmael

UST

- day
- were circumcised
- {both} Abraham
- and … Ishmael

Genesis 17:27

ULT:
And all the males of his house, the one born in his house and the one bought with money from the son of a foreigner, were circumcised with him.

UST:
And all the {other} males in Abraham's household, {including} those {who had been} born in his household as well as those {whom he had} bought {as servants} from foreigners, were also circumcised.

the one born in his house (ULT)

{including} those {who had been} born in his household (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verses 12 and 23.

---

and the one bought with money (ULT)

as well as those {whom he had} bought {as servants} (UST)

See how you translated a similar clause in verses 12 and 23. Alternate translation: [as well as those whom he had bought as slaves]

---

from the son of a foreigner (ULT)

from foreigners (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 12.

And all the males of his house, the one born in his house and the one bought with money from the son of a foreigner, were circumcised with him (ULT)

And all the {other} males in Abraham's household, {including} those {who had been} born in his household as well as those {whom he had} bought {as servants} from foreigners, were also circumcised (UST)

For some languages it may be better to move this phrase earlier in this verse. Also, consider again how you translated **circumcised** in verses 10–14, 23–27. Alternate translation: [And all the other males in his household were circumcised with him, the one born in his house and the one bought with money from the son of a foreigner]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- his house
- the one born in
- his house
- money
- a foreigner
- were circumcised

UST

- Abraham's household
- {including} those {who had been} born in
- his household
- as well as those {whom he had} bought {as servants}
- from foreigners
- were … circumcised

Genesis 18

Genesis 18:1

ULT:
Then Yahweh appeared to him by the terebinth trees of Mamre, and he was sitting {at} the opening of the tent in the heat of the day.

UST:
Then {one day} Yahweh appeared {again} to Abraham at the oak trees on Mamre's land, while he was sitting {at} the entrance of his tent during the hottest part of the day.

Then Yahweh appeared to him (ULT)

Then {one day} Yahweh appeared {again} to Abraham (UST)

See how you translated **appeared** in Genesis 12:7 and 17:1. Also, consider whether it is better to refer to Abraham here with a pronoun or with his name in your language. Alternate translation: [Then one day Yahweh came again to him] or [One day Yahweh visited Abraham again]

---

by the terebinth trees of Mamre (ULT)

at the oak trees on Mamre's land (UST)

See how you translated **terebinth trees** in Genesis 12:6 and also in Genesis 13:18, 14:13.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

---

and he was sitting (ULT)

while he was sitting (UST)

Alternate translation: [and Abraham was seated]

{at} the opening of the tent (ULT)

{at} the entrance of his tent (UST)

Moses assumes that readers will know about **the opening of the tent**, that the entrance to the tent could be closed by a large piece of cloth or animal skin which hung in the entryway. A tent did not have a solid wood door such as a house has. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [at the cloth-covered doorway of his tent] or [at the way by which to enter the tent]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

in the heat of the day (ULT)

during the hottest part of the day (UST)

Alternate translation: [during the warmest time of the day]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Yahweh
- by the terebinth trees of
- the tent
- the day

UST

- Yahweh
- at the oak trees on
- his tent

- the day

Genesis 18:2

ULT:
And he lifted his eyes and looked, and behold, three men were standing nearby him. And {when} he saw {them}, he ran from the entrance of the tent to meet them and bowed himself to the ground,

UST:
Abraham looked up and saw that there were three men standing a short distance away. As soon as he saw {them}, he {jumped up and} hurried {to them} to greet them. Then he bowed {before them} {with his face} to the ground {to show respect},

And he lifted his eyes and looked (ULT)

Abraham looked up (UST)

See how you translate this phrase in Gen 13:10. Alternate translation: [He looked up]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and behold, three men were standing (ULT)

and saw that there were three men standing (UST)

Alternate translation: [and indeed, he noticed that there were three men standing] or [and was surprised to see three men standing]

---

nearby him (ULT)

a short distance away (UST)

Translate this phrase in a way that fits with the fact that the men were far enough away from Abraham that he could run over to them (as he did in the next sentence). Alternate translation: [not too far away from him]

And {when} he saw {them} (ULT)

As soon as he saw {them} (UST)

Alternate translation: [When he saw them]

---

he ran from the entrance of the tent (ULT)

he {jumped up and} hurried {to them} (UST)

Alternate translation: [he got up from where he was and quicky went] or [he got up and ran to them]

---

to meet them (ULT)

to greet them (UST)

Alternate translation: [to welcome them]

---

and bowed himself to the ground (ULT)

Then he bowed {before them} {with his face} to the ground {to show respect} (UST)

Compare how you translated a phrase that has a similar meaning (“fell on his face”) in Genesis 17:3, 17. Alternate translation: [and he bowed low before them with his forehead to the ground to show respect] or [Then he prostrated himself on the ground in front of them to show respect]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the tent
- and bowed himself

- to the ground

UST

- he {jumped up and} hurried {to them}
- Then he bowed {before them} {with his face} to the ground {to show respect}
- Then he bowed {before them} {with his face} to the ground {to show respect}

Genesis 18:3

ULT:
and he said, "My lords, if I have found favor in your eyes, please do not pass by your servant.

UST:
and he said {to them}, "Sirs, if you consider me worthy {to be your host}, please do not leave here without letting me serve you {as my guests}.

and he said (ULT)

and he said {to them} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and said to them]

My lords (ULT)

Sirs (UST)

Abraham uses **lords** here as a polite address to the three men. The Hebrew word "lord" can also be a reference to God, but notice that at this point Abraham probably thought he was talking to men or angels. It was not until later that he realized that one of them was Yahweh (verse 14). Alternate translation: [My masters] or [Gentlemen]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

if I have found favor in your eyes (ULT)

if you consider me worthy {to be your host} (UST)

The pronoun **your** is singular here in the Hebrew text, and also in the next clause. It could be that Abraham is addressing each of the three men simultaneously, or that he is addressing their leader or spokesman. Alternate translation: [if you are satisfied with me] or [if you would honor me with your presence]

Support Reference: Forms of ‘You’ — Singular

---

please do not pass by your servant (ULT)

please do not leave here without letting me serve you {as my guests} (UST)

Abraham refers to himself as a servant here in order to show respect to his guests. Alternate translation: [please stay here for a while as my guests]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- My lords
- favor
- your servant

UST

- Sirs
- you consider me worthy {to be your host}
- leave here without letting me serve you {as my guests}

Genesis 18:4

ULT:
Please let a little water be brought. Then you can wash your feet, and rest yourselves under the tree.

UST:
Please let me bring {you} some water, so that you {all} can wash {the dust off} your feet, and then rest under {the shade of} this tree.

Please let a little water be brought (ULT)

Please let me bring {you} some water (UST)

Saying **a little** was a polite way of showing generosity. Make sure your translation does not sound here like Abraham was only offering the men a tiny bit of water; he or his servants were going to bring them enough water to wash their feet. Alternate translation: [Let my servants bring you some water]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

Then you can wash your feet (ULT)

so that you {all} can wash {the dust off} your feet (UST)

People wore sandals, and their feet would get dusty when they traveled. So it was customary to offer guests water to wash the dust off their feet. Also, notice that the pronouns **you** and **your** are plural here in the Hebrew text. Alternate translation: [That way you all can wash the dust off your feet]

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

---

and rest yourselves (ULT)

and then rest (UST)

Alternate translation: [and then relax here]

Genesis 18:5

ULT:
And I will bring a morsel of bread so that you can refresh your hearts before you go away, since you have come to your servant." And they said, "Alright, do as you have said."

UST:
Since you are here with me, let me {also} bring some food {for you} {to eat}. That way you can regain your strength before you continue on your way." They replied {to him}, "Okay, do what you have proposed."

And I will bring (ULT)

let me {also} bring (UST)

Alternate translation: [I will also get you] or [Let me also get you]

---

a morsel of (ULT)

some (UST)

Saying **a morsel** was a polite way of showing generosity. Make sure your translation does not sound here like Abraham was only offering the men a tiny bit of bread; he was going to give them plenty of food to eat. Alternate translation: [a little bit of]

---

bread (ULT)

food {for you} {to eat} (UST)

Since bread was a common staple of their diet, it is often used in the Bible to refer to food in general. Alternate translation: [bread for you to eat]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

so that you can refresh your hearts (ULT)

That way you can regain your strength (UST)

Notice that the pronouns **you** and **your** are plural in this quote in the Hebrew text and refer to Abraham's three guests. Alternate translation: [Then you can be refreshed]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

before you go away (ULT)

before you continue on your way (UST)

Alternate translation: [and then continue on your way] or [before you continue traveling]

---

since you have come to your servant (ULT)

Since you are here with me (UST)

For some languages it may be more natural to put this clause at the beginning of this verse and say, "Since you are here with me, let me also bring some food …" Alternate translation: [now that you have come to me] or [since you are here with me]

Support Reference: Information Structure

And they said (ULT)

They replied {to him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [So they said to him] or [The men replied to him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Alright (ULT)

Okay (UST)

The word used here in the Hebrew text shows agreement or acceptance. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Very well] or [That is good]

---

do as you have said (ULT)

do what you have proposed (UST)

Alternate translation: [do what you have suggested]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- bread
- your servant

UST

- food {for you} {to eat}
- with me

Genesis 18:6

ULT:
Then Abraham hurried into the tent to Sarah and said, "Hurry! {Prepare} three seahs of fine flour. Knead {it} and make loaves."

UST:
So Abraham quickly went to Sarah inside their tent and told her, "Quickly {get} three batches of our best flour and bake {some} bread."

into the tent to Sarah (ULT)

to Sarah inside their tent (UST)

Alternate translation: [to Sarah inside the tent]

---

and said (ULT)

and told her (UST)

Alternate translation: [and said to her]

Hurry! {Prepare} (ULT)

Quickly {get} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Quickly use] or [Quickly prepare]

---

three seahs of (ULT)

three batches (UST)

It is believed that **three seahs** was equivalent to over 20 liters. It was enough flour to make bread for many people, just as the calf (verse 7) provided enough meat for many people and showed generous hospitality. Besides Abraham's guests, others in his household may have also joined in eating the feast. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [three large scoops]

Support Reference: Biblical Volume

---

fine flour (ULT)

of our best flour (UST)

Alternate translation: [of good quality flour] or [of the best flour]

Knead {it} and make loaves (ULT)

and bake {some} bread (UST)

The Hebrew word for **loaves** here is often translated as "cakes," which probably refers to their flat, round shape (similar to biscuits). However, make sure your translation of this word does not sound like a dessert, because this bread was not sweet. Alternate translation: [Knead the dough and make it into loaves] or [and bake some loaves of flat bread] or [and make some bread]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abraham
- into the tent

- Sarah

UST

- Abraham
- inside their tent
- Sarah

Genesis 18:7

ULT:
Then Abraham ran to the herd and selected a tender and choice calf. Then he gave it to a servant and he hurried to prepare it.

UST:
Then he ran {outside} to his herd {of cattle} and chose one of his best calves that would be good to eat. Then he took it to one of his servants, and the servant quickly butchered it and cooked it.

and selected (ULT)

and chose (UST)

Alternate translation: [and picked out]

---

a tender and choice calf (ULT)

one of his best calves that would be good to eat (UST)

Alternate translation: [one of his best calves that would be tasty to eat]

Then he gave it (ULT)

Then he took it (UST)

The word **gave** means Abram brought the calf to his servant and put him in charge of preparing its meat for a meal. Make sure your translation does not sound like the calf was a gift.
Alternate translation: [Then he took the calf] or [Then he turned it over]

---

and he hurried to prepare it (ULT)

and the servant quickly butchered it and cooked it (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that this clause refers to the servant, not Abraham. Alternate translation: [and his servant quickly prepared it] or [who quickly slaughtered it and roasted it]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the herd
- Abraham
- a … calf
- and choice
- a servant

UST

- his herd {of cattle}
- he ran {outside}
- one of his best calves
- that would be good to eat
- one of his servants

Genesis 18:8

ULT:
Then he took curds and milk and the calf that he had prepared, and he set it before them. Then he stood by them under the tree and they ate.

UST:
Then Abraham brought {some} yogurt and milk and the meat that his servant had prepared, and he put it {all} before his {three} guests {to eat}. Then he stood nearby them {where they were sitting} under the tree {and served them} while they ate.

Then he took (ULT)

Then Abraham brought (UST)

Make sure that your translation of this phrase refers to Abraham, not his servant. Alternate translation: [Then he got]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

curds (ULT)

{some} yogurt (UST)

This term refers to churned, fermented milk that has curdled. Alternate translation: [some curds]

---

and milk (ULT)

and milk (UST)

Alternate translation: [along with milk] or [as well as milk]

---

and the calf (ULT)

and the meat (UST)

Alternate translation: [and the meat from the calf]

---

that he had prepared (ULT)

that his servant had prepared (UST)

Alternate translation: [that he had his servant prepare] or [that the servant had cooked]

---

and he set it before them (ULT)

and he put it {all} before his {three} guests {to eat} (UST)

Since verse 2 was the last time the three men were mentioned, it may be clearer and more natural to make them explicit here. Alternate translation: [and he served all of it to the three men to eat] or [and he set it all before his three guests to eat]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

and they ate (ULT)

{and served them} while they ate (UST)

As the host, Abraham stood nearby his guests in order to wait on them and make sure they had everything that they needed. Alternate translation: [and waited on them while they ate]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and the calf

UST

- and the meat

Genesis 18:9

ULT:
Then they said to him, “Where {is} Sarah your wife?” And he said, “Behold, in the tent.”

UST:
Then {one of} the men asked Abraham, “Where {is} your wife Sarah?” Abraham answered, “{She is} there in the tent.”

Then they said to him (ULT)

Then {one of} the men asked Abraham (UST)

The Hebrew text uses a plural pronoun here (**they**) to refer to one of the three men who spoke to Abraham on behalf of them all (See verse 10). Many languages can use **they** or “the men” in the same way. Make sure your translation of this quote margin does not sound like all three of the men spoke at the same time. Alternate translation: [Then one of the men asked him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

And he said (ULT)

Abraham answered (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Abraham is the one speaking here. Alternate translation: [He answered him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Behold, in the tent (ULT)

{She is} there in the tent (UST)

Alternate translation: [She is there inside the tent]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Sarah
- in the tent

UST

- Sarah
- in the tent

Genesis 18:10

ULT:
Then he said, "I will surely return to you at the time of life, and behold, Sarah your wife will have a son." And Sarah was listening {at} the opening of the tent, and it {was} behind him.

UST:
Then the man said {to Abraham}, "I will definitely come back {here} to visit you at this time next year. When I do, your wife Sarah will have a {baby} son." Now Sarah was listening inside the entrance of the tent, which was behind the man.

Then he said (ULT)

Then the man said {to Abraham} (UST)

This phrase refers to the man in verse 9 who spoke on behalf of himself and the other two men. We find out in verse 13 that the man was actually Yahweh. However, at this point Abraham and Sarah probably did not yet know who he was, so it is better to not specify who he was here, in order to keep that suspense in your translation. Alternate translation: [Then that man]

Then he said (ULT)

Then the man said {to Abraham} (UST)

Alternate translation: [said to him] or [spoke again to Abraham]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

I will surely return (ULT)

I will definitely come back {here} (UST)

Alternate translation: [I will certainly come back]

---

to you (ULT)

to visit you (UST)

Alternate translation: [to you here]

---

at the time of life (ULT)

at this time next year (UST)

For some languages it may be more natural to move this time phrase to the beginning of this quote and say, “Next year at this time I will surely return …” Alternate translation: [at this season next year] or [next year at this time]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and behold (ULT)

When I do (UST)

Alternate translation: [and when I do] or [At that time]

Sarah your wife will have a son (ULT)

your wife Sarah will have a {baby} son (UST)

This means that Sarah would have a son with her when Yahweh returns. It does not mean that she would give birth at that time. Alternate translation: [your wife Sarah will have a baby boy with her] or [your wife Sarah will already have a baby son]

And Sarah was listening (ULT)

Now Sarah was listening (UST)

This sentence gives information about something that was happening while the man was talking. Translate this in a way that makes that clear in your language. Alternate translation: [Now Sarah was eavesdropping] or [Sarah was eavesdropping]

Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

{at} the opening of the tent (ULT)

inside the entrance of the tent (UST)

See how you translated "the entrance of the tent" in verse 1. Alternate translation: [inside the doorway of the tent]

---

and it {was} behind him (ULT)

which was behind the man (UST)

Notice that the pronoun **it** refers to the entrance to the tent (where Sarah was). Alternate translation: [which was right behind]

{was} behind him (ULT)

was behind the man (UST)

The pronoun **him** is ambiguous here. It could refer to: (1) "the man" or (2) "Abraham" Alternate translation: [was behind Abraham]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Sarah … will have
- And Sarah
- the tent

UST

- Sarah will have
- Now Sarah
- the tent

Genesis 18:11

ULT:
Now Abraham and Sarah {were} old, advanced in days; the way of women had ceased to be with Sarah.

UST:
She and Abraham were {already} very old, so that Sarah was {far} past the age that she could have children.

Now Abraham and Sarah (ULT)

She and Abraham (UST)

This verse gives background information that is important to what happens next. Some languages use a conjunction such as **Now** here to introduce this kind of information, while other languages omit the conjunction, especially if **Now** is used to begin the last sentence in verse 10. Alternate translation: [Abraham and she] or [Sarah and Abraham]

Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

{were} old, advanced in days (ULT)

were {already} very old (UST)

Alternate translation: [were already quite old] or [were very elderly]

---

the way of women had ceased to be with Sarah (ULT)

so that Sarah was {far} past the age that she could have children (UST)

The Hebrew text has an idiom here that is a polite way of saying that Sarah had reached menopause and so was not able to have children. Other languages may have a similar idiom. Make sure your translation of this clause will not offend or embarrass people when it is read

aloud in public. Alternate translation: [so that she was much older than the normal age for bearing children] or [so that she was far past the time that she could bear children]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Now Abraham
- and Sarah
- with Sarah

UST

- Abraham
- She and
- so that Sarah was {far} past the age that she could have children

---

Genesis 18:12

ULT:
So Sarah laughed within herself and said, “After I am worn out, will I have pleasure? And my lord {is} old!”

UST:
So she laughed to herself {in disbelief} and said {to herself}, “It does not seem possible that I could experience the pleasure {of having a child} now that I am too old {to conceive}. Besides that, my husband is {also} {very} old!”

So Sarah laughed within herself (ULT)

So she laughed to herself {in disbelief} (UST)

See how you translated **laughed** in Genesis 17:17 where Abraham also laughed to himself.
Alternate translation: [So Sarah laughed to herself in disbelief]

---

and said (ULT)

and said {to herself} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and thought to herself] or [and asked herself]

After I am worn out (ULT)

now that I am too old {to conceive} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Since my body is now worn out] or [Now that I am too old to conceive]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

will I have pleasure (ULT)

It does not seem possible that I could experience the pleasure {of having a child} (UST)

Sarah uses a rhetorical question to express her strong emotion and disbelief. Consider whether or not it is best to use a rhetorical question here in your language. Alternate translation: [will I still have this pleasure?]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

And my lord {is} old (ULT)

Besides that, my husband is {also} {very} old (UST)

The phrase **my lord** is a title of respect that Sarah uses to refer to Abraham as her husband. Alternate translation: [Besides that, my master is also too old!]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Sarah
- pleasure
- And my lord

UST

- So she laughed … in disbelief
- It does not seem possible that I could experience the pleasure {of having a child}
- Besides that, my husband

Genesis 18:13

ULT:
Then Yahweh said to Abraham, "Why {is it} that Sarah laughed, saying, 'Will I really bear {a child} when I am old?'

UST:
But Yahweh asked Abraham, "Sarah should not have laughed and said {to herself} that she is too old to have a child!

Then Yahweh said to Abraham (ULT)

But Yahweh asked Abraham (UST)

The way you translate this quote margin will depend on whether you translate the rest of this verse as a rhetorical question or a statement. Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh asked Abraham]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Why {is it} that Sarah laughed, saying (ULT)

Sarah should not have laughed and said {to herself} (UST)

Yahweh uses rhetorical question in verses 13–14 to confront Sarah's disbelief and to emphasize that nothing is too difficult for God to do. Consider whether or not it is best to use rhetorical questions here in your language. Alternate translation: [Why did Sarah laugh to herself and say] or [Sarah should not have laughed and thought to herself] or [Sarah should not have laughed, thinking]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

Will I really bear {a child} when I am old (ULT)

that she is too old to have a child (UST)

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to make this embedded quote a direct or indirect quote. Make sure that your translation of **I** refers here to Sarah, not Yahweh. Alternate translation: [I am too old to bear a child!]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Yahweh
- Abraham
- Sarah
- Will I … bear {a child}

UST

- Yahweh
- Abraham
- Sarah
- that she is too old to have a child

Genesis 18:14

ULT:
Is anything too hard for Yahweh? At the appointed time I will return to you, at the time of life, and Sarah will have a son."

UST:
Nothing is too difficult for Yahweh {to do}! At the time that I have set, I will return to you {here}. {Yes, I will come} at this time next year, and Sarah will {already} have a son."

Is anything too hard for Yahweh (ULT)

Nothing is too difficult for Yahweh {to do} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Is there anything that is too hard for Yahweh to do?] or [Nothing is too hard for Yahweh to do!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

At the appointed time (ULT)

At the time that I have set (UST)

Alternate translation: [At the time that I have decided]

I will return to you (ULT)

I will return to you {here} (UST)

Consider how you translated this in verse 10. Alternate translation: [I will come back here to visit you]

---

at the time of life (ULT)

{Yes, I will come} at this time next year (UST)

See how you translated this idiom in verse 10. Also, for some languages it may be better to put this phrase right after the first time phrase in this verse and say, “At the time that I have decided, which will be this time next year, I will return here to visit you,” Alternate translation: [Yes, I will return at this time next year] or [—it will be at this time next year—]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

and Sarah will have a son (ULT)

and Sarah will {already} have a son (UST)

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 10. Alternate translation: [and Sarah will have a baby son with her] or [and Sarah will already have a baby boy]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Is … too hard
- for Yahweh
- At the appointed time
- and Sarah will have

UST

- is too difficult … to do
- for Yahweh
- At the time that I have set
- and Sarah will {already} have

Genesis 18:15

ULT:
But Sarah denied it by saying, “I did not laugh,” because she was afraid. But he said, “No, but you did laugh.”

UST:
{When Sarah heard that,} she was afraid, so she lied {to him} and said, “I did not laugh.” But Yahweh replied, “That is not true. You did laugh.”

But Sarah denied it (ULT)

so she lied {to him} (UST)

The Hebrew verb here includes the meaning of lying or deceiving. Alternate translation: [But Sarah lied to him]

---

by saying (ULT)

and said (UST)

Notice that the verbs **denied** and **saying** refer to the same event, not two separate events. Make sure that is clear in your translation.

I did not laugh,” because she was afraid (ULT)

{When Sarah heard that,} she was afraid … I did not laugh (UST)

Consider whether it is best in your language to translate this quote as a direct or indirect quote. Also, for some languages it may be clearer or more natural to change the order of the clauses in this sentence and say, “When Sarah heard that, she was afraid, so she lied to him and said, ‘I did not laugh.’” Alternate translation: [that she did not laugh. She said that, because she was afraid]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

But he said (ULT)

But Yahweh replied (UST)

Alternate translation: [But he replied to her]

No, but you did laugh (ULT)

That is not true. You did laugh (UST)

Consider whether Yahweh's reply to Sarah here should begin with **No** or "Yes" in your language. Alternate translation: [Yes, you did laugh]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Sarah
- she was afraid

UST

- so she lied {to him}
- {When Sarah heard that,} she was afraid

Genesis 18:16

ULT:
Then the men got up from there and looked down toward Sodom. And Abraham went with them to send them off.

UST:
{When they had finished eating,} the {three} men got up {to leave} and started walking down toward {the city of} Sodom. Abraham escorted them {for a while} to see them on their way.

Then the men got up from there (ULT)

When they had finished eating,} the {three} men got up {to leave} (UST)

Alternate translation: [After they had finished eating, the three men got up to leave]

---

and looked down toward Sodom (ULT)

and started walking down toward {the city of} Sodom (UST)

This phrase reflects the fact that the city of Sodom was lower in elevation than the city of Hebron, where Abraham was living. Alternate translation: [and started heading down toward the city of Sodom]

And Abraham went with them (ULT)

Abraham escorted them {for a while} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Abraham walked with them for a while] or [Abraham accompanied them for a while]

---

to send them off (ULT)

to see them on their way (UST)

Alternate translation: [as they were leaving]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Sodom
- And Abraham

UST

- {the city of} Sodom
- Abraham

Genesis 18:17

ULT:
And Yahweh said, "Should I hide from Abraham what I am doing?

UST:
Then Yahweh thought {to himself}, "Should I keep secret from Abraham what I am about to do {to the city of Sodom}?

And Yahweh said (ULT)

Then Yahweh thought {to himself} (UST)

The context implies that Yahweh said this to himself, without Abraham hearing him. See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 11:6. Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh said to himself]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Should I hide from Abraham (ULT)

Should I keep secret from Abraham (UST)

Alternate translation: [I will not conceal from Abraham] or [I will tell Abraham]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

what I am doing (ULT)

what I am about to do {to the city of Sodom} (UST)

Whether you end this sentence with a question mark or a period will depend on how you choose to translate this rhetorical question. Alternate translation: [what I am going to do to the city of Sodom]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And Yahweh
- from Abraham

UST

- Then Yahweh
- from Abraham

Genesis 18:18

ULT:
And Abraham will surely become a great and mighty nation, and in him all the nations of the earth will be blessed.

UST:
After all, he {and his descendants} will definitely become a great and powerful people group, and through them I will bless all the people groups in the world.

And Abraham will surely become (ULT)

After all, he {and his descendants} will definitely become (UST)

Some translations begin a new sentence here. Other translations continue the rhetorical question (or statement) in verse 17 to the end of verse 18 and say, "since Abraham will …" or "seeing that he will …" Alternate translation: [he will surely be the ancestor of] or [After all, Abraham and his descendants will surely multiply and become]

---

a great and mighty nation (ULT)

a great and powerful people group (UST)

See how you translated "great nation" in Genesis 12:2. Alternate translation: [a great and powerful ethnic group]

---

in him (ULT)

through them (UST)

This phrase refers to Abraham and his descendants, including ultimately the Messiah. See the note about this at Genesis 12:3. Alternate translation: [and through him] or [and because of him] or [and by means of him]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

and in him all the nations of the earth will be blessed (ULT)

and through them I will bless all the people groups in the world (UST)

The expression **will be blessed** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is God. Alternate translation: [and in him I will bless all the nations of the earth]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And Abraham
- a … nation
- and mighty
- and … will be blessed
- the nations of
- the earth

UST

- After all, he {and his descendants}
- people group
- and powerful
- and … I will bless
- the people groups in
- the world

Genesis 18:19

ULT:
For I have known him so that he will command his children and his house after him, and they will keep the way of Yahweh by doing righteousness and justice, so that Yahweh will bring about for Abraham what he has said to him.”

UST:
In fact, I have chosen him so that he will train his children and his descendants, so that they will live the way I want them to live and do what is right and treat people justly. Therefore I will do for him everything I have promised him {that I will do}.”

For (ULT)

In fact (UST)

Alternate translation: [Indeed]

I have known him (ULT)

I have chosen him (UST)

Consider whether or not your language has an idiom that fits well here. Alternate translation: [I have chosen Abraham]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

so that he will command his children (ULT)

so that he will train his children (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that he will guide his children]

---

and his house after him (ULT)

and his descendants (UST)

Alternate translation: [grandchildren, and other descendants who will live after him]

---

and they will keep the way of Yahweh (ULT)

so that they will live the way I want them to live (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Yahweh is speaking about himself here.

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

---

by doing righteousness and justice (ULT)

and do what is right and treat people justly (UST)

Alternate translation: [and do what is right and just in my eyes] or [and do what is right including treat people justly]

---

so that (ULT)

so that (UST)

Alternate translation: [So]

Yahweh will bring about (ULT)

I will do (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Yahweh is referring to himself here. Alternate translation: [I will accomplish]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

---

for Abraham what he has said to him (ULT)

for him everything I have promised him {that I will do} (UST)

The pronoun **he** refers to Yahweh here. Make sure the way you use nouns and pronouns throughout this verse makes it clear in your language who is speaking and who is being referred to. Alternate translation: [for him what I have promised him that I will do]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- I have known him
- his house
- Yahweh
- righteousness
- and justice
- Yahweh
- Abraham

UST

- I have chosen him
- and his descendants
- I want them to live
- what is right
- and treat people justly
- I
- him

Genesis 18:20

ULT:
Then Yahweh said, "Because the outcry of Sodom and Gomorrah is great, and because their sin is very grievous,

UST:
So Yahweh said {to Abraham}, "I have heard that {the people of} {the cities of} Sodom and Gomorrah have become very evil, and they are sinning very terribly.

Then Yahweh said (ULT)

So Yahweh said {to Abraham} (UST)

Alternate translation: [So Yahweh told Abraham]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Because the outcry of Sodom and Gomorrah is great, and because their sin is very grievous (ULT)

I have heard that {the people of} {the cities of} Sodom and Gomorrah have become very evil, and they are sinning very terribly (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that the phrase **Sodom and Gomorrah** refers to the people in those cities. Also, in the Hebrew text this sentence continues into verse 21. Alternate translation: [I have heard many terrible accusations against the people of the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah because they are sinning so grievously So] or [I have heard many people crying out against the people in the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah because they are committing very evil things]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Yahweh
- the outcry of

- Sodom
- and Gomorrah
- and … their sin

UST

- Yahweh
- I have heard that … have become very evil
- {the people of} {the cities of} Sodom and Gomorrah
- {the people of} {the cities of} Sodom and Gomorrah
- and they are sinning very terribly

Genesis 18:21

ULT:
I will go down now and see whether they have done altogether according to its outcry that has come to me. And if not, I will know.”

UST:
I must go down {to those cities} now to determine whether {or not} they are guilty of everything that I have heard against them. If {they are} not {guilty}, {then} I will know {it} {and I will not punish them}.”

I will go down now (ULT)

I must go down {to those cities} now (UST)

The cities of Sodom and Gomorrah were both lower in elevation than the city of Hebron. See what you did for a similar case in verse 16. Alternate translation: [I am going to those cities now]

---

and see (ULT)

to determine (UST)

Alternate translation: [to investigate] or [in order to find out]

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

---

whether they have done altogether according to its outcry (ULT)

whether {or not} they are guilty of everything (UST)

Alternate translation: [whether or not the people in those cities are guilty of everything] or [if the people there have done all the terrible sins]

---

that has come to me (ULT)

that I have heard against them (UST)

Alternate translation: [that I have heard about them] or [that I have heard they are guilty of]

And if not (ULT)

If {they are} not {guilty} (UST)

Alternate translation: [If those things are not true]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- whether … according to its outcry
- I will know

UST

- whether {or not}
- then} I will know {it} {and I will not punish them}

Genesis 18:22

ULT:
Then the men turned away from there and went toward Sodom, and Abraham was still standing before Yahweh.

UST:
Then the {other two} men left and continued walking toward {the city of} Sodom, while Abraham remained {there} with Yahweh.

Then the men turned away from there (ULT)

Then the {other two} men left (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then the other two men left from there]

---

toward Sodom (ULT)

toward {the city of} Sodom (UST)

Alternate translation: [and continued heading toward the city of Sodom] or [and headed toward the city of Sodom]

---

and Abraham was still standing (ULT)

while Abraham remained {there} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and Abraham stood there]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- toward Sodom
- and Abraham
- Yahweh

UST

- toward {the city of} Sodom
- while Abraham
- Yahweh

Genesis 18:23

ULT:
Then Abraham approached {him} and said, "Will you really sweep away the righteous with the wicked?

UST:
Then Abraham stepped closer {to Yahweh} and asked {him}, "Certainly you will not destroy righteous {people} {along} with wicked {people}, will you?

Then Abraham approached {him} (ULT)

Then Abraham stepped closer {to Yahweh} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Abraham came closer to him]

---

and said (ULT)

and asked {him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and said to him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Will you really sweep away (ULT)

Certainly you will not destroy … will you (UST)

Abraham uses a rhetorical question here to express his strong feelings and concern about what Yahweh told him. Consider whether or not it is clear and natural to use a rhetorical question here in your language. Make sure it does not sound like Abraham is angry or being rude. See how you translated a similar idiom ("wipe away") in Genesis 6:7. Alternate translation: [Would you indeed wipe out] or [Surely you would not destroy]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

the righteous (ULT)

righteous {people} (UST)

Alternate translation: [the good people in the city]

---

with (ULT)

{along} with (UST)

Alternate translation: [together with] or [when you destroy]

Will you really sweep away the righteous with the wicked (ULT)

Certainly you will not destroy righteous {people} {along} with wicked {people}, will you (UST)

The way you translate this rhetorical question will determine what punctuation mark you end this sentence with. If you use an exclamation point here, make sure it does not sound like Abraham was angry, shouting, or being disrespectful. Alternate translation: [Please do not sweep away the righteous with the wicked.] or [Surely you would not sweep away the righteous with the wicked!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abraham
- you … sweep away
- the righteous
- the wicked

UST

- Abraham
- Certainly you will not destroy … will you
- righteous {people}
- wicked {people}

Genesis 18:24

ULT:
Suppose there are fifty righteous in the city. Will you really sweep away and not spare the place for the sake of the fifty righteous who {are} in it?

UST:
What {will you do} if there are fifty righteous {people} {living} in the city {of Sodom}? Will you really {still} destroy {all the people in} the city rather than let them all live because of the fifty upright {people} who live there?

Suppose (ULT)

What {will you do} if (UST)

Abraham says **Suppose** to introduce an imaginary situation to help explain his request to God. Use a natural method in your language for introducing an imaginary situation. Alternate translation: [Perhaps you would find that]

Support Reference: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

Will you really sweep away (ULT)

Will you really {still} destroy (UST)

Abraham is using the question form to persuade God not to destroy a city that may contain innocent people. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. See how you translated this phrase in verse 23. Alternate translation: [Surely you will not still kill all the people]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

and not spare the place (ULT)

{all the people in} the city rather than let them all live (UST)

Alternate translation: [and not preserve the city]

---

for the sake of (ULT)

because of (UST)

Alternate translation: [in order to save]

Will you really sweep away and not spare the place for the sake of the fifty righteous who {are} in it (ULT)

Will you really {still} destroy {all the people in} the city rather than let them all live because of the fifty upright {people} who live there (UST)

Abraham is using the question form to speak to God about preserving the innocent. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [Surely you will not really sweep away and not spare the place for the sake of the fifty righteous who are in it!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- righteous
- Will you … sweep away
- and not
- righteous

UST

- righteous {people}
- Will you really {still} destroy
- {all the people in} the city rather than let them all live

- upright {people}

Genesis 18:25

ULT:
Far be it from you to do something like that, killing the righteous with the wicked, so that the righteous are like the wicked! Far be it from you! Will the one who judges all the earth not do justice?"

UST:
Certainly you would never do such a thing as kill righteous {people} {together} with evil {people}, so that you are treating them both the same way! Certainly you would never do such a thing! As the Judge over everyone on the earth, certainly you will treat people justly."

Far be it from you (ULT)

Certainly you would never (UST)

This idiom expresses emphatically that Abraham does not believe Yahweh would do this. Consider whether or not your language has a similar idiom. Make sure that Abraham sounds respectful in your translation. Alternate translation: [Surely you would never] or [It seems impossible that you would ever] or [I hope that you would never]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

the righteous (ULT)

righteous {people} (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 23. Alternate translation: [good people]

---

with (ULT)

{together} with (UST)

Alternate translation: [along with] or [when you destroy]

---

the wicked (ULT)

evil {people} (UST)

See how you translated **the wicked** in verse 23. Alternate translation: [wicked people]

---

so that the righteous are like the wicked (ULT)

so that you are treating them both the same way (UST)

If exclamation points are used in this chapter, make sure it does not sound like Abraham is angry, shouting, or being disrespectful. Alternate translation: [so that good people are punished by you as if they were evil!]

Far be it from you (ULT)

Certainly you would never (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase at the beginning of this verse. Alternate translation: [Surely you would never do such a thing!] or [It seems impossible that you would ever do such a thing!] or [I hope that you would never do such a thing!]

Will the one who judges all the earth not do justice (ULT)

As the Judge over everyone on the earth, certainly you will treat people justly (UST)

Alternate translation: [You are the one who judges all the people on the earth. Surely you will do what is right!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the righteous
- the wicked
- the righteous
- like the wicked
- Will the one who judges
- the earth
- justice

UST

- righteous {people}
- evil {people}
- so that you are treating them both the same way
- so that you are treating them both the same way
- As the Judge over
- the earth
- certainly you will treat people justly

Genesis 18:26

ULT:
Then Yahweh said, "If I find in Sodom fifty righteous in the city, then I will spare the whole place for their sake."

UST:
Yahweh replied {to him}, "If there are fifty righteous {people} {living} in the city of Sodom, then I will spare the whole city {and everyone who lives there} because of them."

Then Yahweh said (ULT)

Yahweh replied {to him} (UST)

Make sure that the various quote margins in this long conversation (verses 23–32) are clear and natural in your translation. Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh answered him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

---

in Sodom fifty righteous in the city (ULT)

fifty righteous {people} {living} in the city of Sodom (UST)

Alternate translation: [50 godly people living in the city of Sodom]

Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

---

then I will spare the whole place (ULT)

then I will spare the whole city {and everyone who lives there} (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Yahweh is referring here to the city of Sodom as well as the people who live there, not just the city. Alternate translation: [then I will spare the entire city and everyone who lives there] or [then I will not destroy the city or anyone in it]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

for their sake (ULT)

because of them (UST)

Alternate translation: [for the sake of those righteous people] or [in order to save those good people]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Yahweh
- in Sodom
- righteous
- then I will spare

UST

- Yahweh
- {living} in the city of Sodom
- righteous {people}
- then I will spare

Genesis 18:27

ULT:
Then Abraham spoke up and said, "Behold, please, I have taken it upon myself to speak to my Lord, although I {am} dust and ashes.

UST:
Then Abraham spoke up {again} and asked {Yahweh}, "My Lord, please excuse me for speaking to you so boldly, even though I am {as insignificant as} dirt and ashes {compared to you}.

Then Abraham spoke up (ULT)

Then Abraham spoke up {again} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Abraham responded]

---

and said (ULT)

and asked {Yahweh} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and said to him] or [and asked him]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

Behold, please, I have taken it upon myself to speak to (ULT)

please excuse me for speaking to you so boldly (UST)

The idiom **taken it upon myself** means that Abraham has decided to do something and is acting boldly. Consider whether or not your language has an idiom that fits well here. Alternate translation: [Listen, please, since I have been bold to speak to you] or [Please excuse me for speaking to you so boldly]

Support Reference: Idiom

I have taken it upon myself to speak to my Lord (ULT)

My Lord, please excuse me for speaking to you so boldly (UST)

Even though Abraham realizes by now that he is talking to Yahweh directly, he is speaking of him in the third person as **my lord** to show respect. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in a respectful form in the second person. Use a respectful term in your translation that is appropriate for him to use when he refers to Yahweh here and in the rest of this chapter. Alternate translation: [my Master] or [Master]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

---

although I (ULT)

even though I (UST)

Alternate translation: [in spite of the fact that]

---

although I {am} dust and ashes (ULT)

even though I am {as insignificant as} dirt and ashes {compared to you} (UST)

See how you translated **dust** in Genesis 2:7 and 3:19. Alternate translation: [I am as unimportant as dust and ashes compared to you] or [I am nothing compared to you] or [I have no status compared to you]

Support Reference: Metaphor

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Abraham
- my Lord

UST
- Abraham

- My Lord

Genesis 18:28

ULT:
Suppose the fifty righteous lack five? Will you destroy the whole city because of five?" And he said, "I will not destroy it if I find forty-five there."

UST:
{But} what {will you do} if there are only forty-five righteous {people} {in the city} instead of fifty? Will you destroy the whole city {and everyone in it} if there are five people too few {who are righteous}?" Yahweh answered, "I will not destroy the city if there are forty-five {righteous people} {living} there."

Suppose (ULT)

{But} what {will you do} if (UST)

See how you translated this term in verse 24. Alternate translation: [But suppose that]

---

the fifty righteous lack five (ULT)

there are only forty-five righteous {people} {in the city} instead of fifty (UST)

Alternate translation: [there are five fewer than 50 righteous people living in the city?] or [there are only 45 righteous people in the city instead of 50?]

Will you destroy the whole city (ULT)

Will you destroy the whole city {and everyone in it} (UST)

See how you translated "the whole place" in verse 26. Alternate translation: [Will you still destroy the whole city and everyone in it]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

because of five (ULT)

if there are five people too few {who are righteous} (UST)

Alternate translation: [because the number of righteous people is five persons low?]

And he said (ULT)

Yahweh answered (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Yahweh is speaking here, not Abraham. Alternate translation: [And Yahweh said to him] or [Yahweh answered him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

I will not destroy it if I find forty-five there (ULT)

I will not destroy the city if there are forty-five {righteous people} {living} there (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation what "45" refers to. Alternate translation: [I will not destroy the city if there are 45 righteous people living there] or [if I find 45 righteous people living in the city, I will not destroy it]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the … righteous
- Will you destroy
- I will … destroy it

UST

- righteous {people} {in the city}
- Will you destroy

- I will … destroy the city

Genesis 18:29

ULT:
Then he continued again to speak to him and said, "Suppose forty are found there?" And he said, "I will not do it for the sake of the forty."

UST:
Then Abraham spoke again to Yahweh and asked, "What {will you do} if there are {only} forty {righteous people} in the city? {Will you destroy it then?}" Yahweh answered, "I will not destroy {the city}, in order to save the forty {righteous people}."

Then he continued again to speak to him (ULT)

Then Abraham spoke again to Yahweh (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then he spoke again to him]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

and said (ULT)

and asked (UST)

Alternate translation: [and asked him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Suppose (ULT)

What {will you do} if (UST)

Alternate translation: [Suppose that]

---

forty are found (ULT)

there are {only} forty {righteous people} (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Alternate translation: [only 40 righteous people are found by you] or [you find only 40 righteous people] or [there are only 40 righteous people]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

there (ULT)

in the city? {Will you destroy it then … } (UST)

Alternate translation: [living there?] or [living in the city? Will you destroy it then?]

And he said (ULT)

Yahweh answered (UST)

Alternate translation: [And Yahweh replied] or [He answered him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

---

for the sake of (ULT)

in order to save (UST)

Alternate translation: [because of]

---

the forty (ULT)

the forty {righteous people} (UST)

Alternate translation: [the 40 righteous people] or [those 40 people]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

Genesis 18:30

ULT:
Then he said, “Please do not let my Lord be angry, and let me speak: Suppose thirty are found there?” And he said, “I will not do it if I find thirty there.”

UST:
Then Abraham pleaded {with him}, “My Lord, please do not be angry {with me}, but let me ask {you} {another question}: What {will you do} if there are {only} thirty {righteous people} {living} there?” He replied, “I will not destroy {the city} if there are thirty {righteous people} there.”

Then he said (ULT)

Then Abraham pleaded {with him} (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Abraham is speaking here, not Yahweh. Alternate translation: [Then Abraham asked him] or [Then Abraham pleaded with Yahweh]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

Please do not let my Lord be angry (ULT)

My Lord, please do not be angry {with me} (UST)

Even though Abraham is addressing Yahweh directly, he is speaking of him in the third person as **my Lord** to show respect. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in a respectful form in the second person. Alternate translation: [My Master, please do not be angry at me]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

---

and let me speak (ULT)

but let me ask {you} {another question} (UST)

Alternate translation: [but let me say something else:] or [rather let me ask you another question:]

Suppose (ULT)

What {will you do} if (UST)

Alternate translation: [Suppose that]

---

thirty are found (ULT)

there are {only} thirty {righteous people} (UST)

If you use the numeral “30” here in your translation, make sure that it will not get confused with the verse number. Alternate translation: [only 30 righteous people are found] or [you find only 30 righteous people] or [there are only 30 righteous people]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

---

there (ULT)

{living} there (UST)

Alternate translation: [living in the city?]

And he said (ULT)

He replied (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Yahweh is speaking here, not Abraham. Alternate translation: [Yahweh replied] or [He answered him]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

I will not do it if I find thirty there (ULT)

I will not destroy {the city} if there are thirty {righteous people} there (UST)

See how you translated a similar sentence at the end of verse 28. Alternate translation: [I will not destroy the city if I find 30 righteous people living there] or [If I find 30 righteous people living in the city, I will not destroy it]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- my Lord

UST

- My Lord, please do not be angry {with me}

Genesis 18:31

ULT:
Then he said, “Behold, please, I have taken it upon myself to speak to my Lord. Suppose twenty are found there?” And he said, “I will not destroy it for the sake of the twenty.”

UST:
Then Abraham asked {him}, “My Lord, please excuse me for speaking to you so boldly. What {will you do} if there are {only} twenty {righteous people} {living} in the city?” Yahweh replied, “I will not destroy the city, in order to save the twenty {righteous people}.”

Then he said (ULT)

Then Abraham asked {him} (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Abraham is speaking here, not Yahweh. Alternate translation: [Then Abraham said to him] or [Then Abraham asked Yahweh]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Behold, please, I have taken it upon myself to speak to my Lord (ULT)

My Lord, please excuse me for speaking to you so boldly (UST)

See how you translated this clause in verse 27. Alternate translation: [Listen, please, since I have been bold to speak to you, my Lord] or [My Lord please excuse me for speaking to you so boldly]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

Suppose (ULT)

What {will you do} if (UST)

Alternate translation: [Suppose that]

---

twenty are found (ULT)

there are {only} twenty {righteous people} (UST)

Alternate translation: [only 20 righteous people are found by you] or [you find only 20 righteous people] or [there are only 20 righteous people]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

---

there (ULT)

{living} in the city (UST)

Alternate translation: [living there?]

And he said (ULT)

Yahweh replied (UST)

Alternate translation: [He replied] or [Then he answered him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

---

for the sake of (ULT)

in order to save (UST)

Alternate translation: [because of]

---

the twenty (ULT)

the twenty {righteous people} (UST)

Alternate translation: [the 20 righteous people] or [those 20 people]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- my Lord
- I will … destroy it

UST

- My Lord, please excuse me for speaking to you so boldly
- I will … destroy the city

Genesis 18:32

ULT:
Then he said, “Please do not let my Lord be angry, and let me speak just once more: Suppose ten are found there?” And he said, “I will not destroy it for the sake of the ten.”

UST:
Then Abraham said, “My Lord, please do not be angry {with me}, but let me ask {you} just one more thing: What {will you do} if there are {only} ten {righteous people} in the city?” Yahweh answered {him}, “I will not destroy {the city}, in order to save the ten {righteous people}.”

Then he said (ULT)

Then Abraham said (UST)

Alternate translation: [Finally he said to him] or [Then he asked him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Please do not let my Lord be angry (ULT)

My Lord, please do not be angry {with me} (UST)

Consider again how you translated **my Lord** in verses 27, 30–32. Contrast that to verse 3, where Abraham probably used the term before he realized that he was talking to Yahweh.
Alternate translation: [My Master, please do not be angry at me]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

---

and let me speak just once more (ULT)

but let me ask {you} just one more thing (UST)

Alternate translation: [rather, let me say one more thing:] or [and let me ask you just one more thing]

Suppose (ULT)

What {will you do} (UST)

Consider again how you translated the term **Suppose** in verses 24 and 28 and how you translated the sentence "Suppose only …righteous people are found there?" in verses 29–32. Alternate translation: [Suppose that]

---

ten are found (ULT)

if there are {only} ten {righteous people} (UST)

Consider again how you translated **found** and "find" in verses 26, 28–32. Alternate translation: [only ten righteous people are found] or [you find only ten righteous people]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

there (ULT)

in the city (UST)

Alternate translation: [living there?] or [living in the city? Will you destroy it then?]

And he said (ULT)

Yahweh answered {him} (UST)

Consider again how you referred to Yahweh and Abraham in your translation throughout this dialogue (verses 23–32). It is a good idea to read this conversation aloud at a regular speed and listen to make sure that all quote margins are natural and clear in your language. Alternate translation: [And Yahweh replied] or [He answered him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

---

for the sake of (ULT)

in order to save (UST)

Consider again how you translated this phrase in verses 24, 26, 29, 31, 32. Alternate translation: [because of]

---

the ten (ULT)

the ten {righteous people} (UST)

Consider again whether you used words or numerals for the numbers throughout verses 24–32. Also consider again how you translated “righteous people” and “righteous people” in verses 23–32. Alternate translation: [those ten righteous people]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- my Lord
- I will … destroy it

UST

- My Lord, please do not be angry {with me}

- I will … destroy {the city}

Genesis 18:33

ULT:
Then Yahweh left as soon as he finished speaking to Abraham, and Abraham returned to his place.

UST:
When Yahweh had finished talking with Abraham, he left {him}, and Abraham returned home.

Then Yahweh left as soon as he finished speaking to Abraham (ULT)

When Yahweh had finished talking with Abraham, he left {him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh left Abraham as soon as he finished speaking with him]

---

and Abraham returned to his place (ULT)

and Abraham returned home (UST)

Alternate translation: [and Abraham went home]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Yahweh
- Abraham
- and Abraham

UST
- Yahweh
- Abraham
- and Abraham

Genesis 19

Genesis 19:1

ULT:
Then the two angels came to Sodom in the evening, and Lot was sitting at the gate of Sodom. And Lot saw them, and he got up to meet them and bowed down {with} nose to the ground.

UST:
That evening the two angels arrived at {the city of} Sodom, while Lot was sitting at the gate of the city. When Lot saw them, he stood up and greeted them and {then} bowed {before them} with {his} face to the ground {to show respect}.

Then the two angels came to Sodom in the evening (ULT)

That evening the two angels arrived at {the city of} Sodom (UST)

See how you translated "angel" in Genesis 16:7–11.

---

at the gate of Sodom (ULT)

at the gate of the city (UST)

Cities like Sodom had stone walls built around them, with entrance gates (that were closed at night) to protect the people in the city from enemies. Alternate translation: [by the gate of the city] or [at the city gate]

And Lot saw them, and he got up (ULT)

When Lot saw them, he stood up (UST)

Some languages have a special dual pronoun that can be used throughout verses 1–19 to refer to the two angels. Alternate translation: [When Lot saw them, he got up]

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

---

to meet them (ULT)

and greeted them (UST)

Alternate translation: [to greet them]

---

and bowed down {with} nose to the ground (ULT)

and {then} bowed {before them} with {his} face to the ground {to show respect} (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 18:2. Alternate translation: [and then bowed before them with his forehead to the ground to show respect] or [and then kneeled in front of them and bowed his forehead to the ground to show them respect]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Sodom
- Lot
- the … angels
- to Sodom
- and Lot
- at the gate of
- and bowed down
- to the ground

UST

- the city
- Lot
- the … angels
- at {the city of} Sodom
- while Lot
- at the gate of
- and {then} bowed {before them}

- to the ground {to show respect}

Genesis 19:2

ULT:
Then he said, “Behold, please, my lords: Please turn aside to the house of your servant and spend the night, and wash your feet. Then you can get up early and go on your way.” But they said, “No, rather we will spend the night in the street.”

UST:
Then he said {to them}, “Sirs, please listen {to this}: Please come to my house so that I can serve you and you can lodge for the night {there}. {That way} too {you can} wash {the dust off} your feet. Then {tomorrow morning} you can get up early and continue traveling.” But the two angels replied, “Thank you, but we will {just} stay in the public square tonight.”

Behold, please, my lords (ULT)

Sirs, please listen {to this} (UST)

See how you translated **Behold, please** in Genesis 18:27. Also see how you translated “my lord” in Genesis 18:3. At this point, Lot probably did not know that these were angels, because they looked like men. Alternate translation: [Listen to me please, my lords] or [Sirs please listen to this:]

Support Reference: Politeness

Please turn aside to (ULT)

Please come to (UST)

Lot is being urgent here (using **please** twice), probably because he knows how dangerous the city is. Translate this quote in a way that communicates this urgency. Alternate translation: [Please stop in at]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

the house of your servant and spend the night (ULT)

my house so that I can serve you and you can lodge for the night {there} (UST)

Lot refers to himself as **your servant** here to show respect to the two men and to politely offer to host them as his guests.

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

---

and spend the night, and wash your feet (ULT)

and you can lodge for the night {there}. {That way} too {you can} wash {the dust off} your feet (UST)

See how you translated **wash your feet** in Genesis 18:4. Alternate translation: [You can wash the dust off your feet and stay for the night there]

Then you can get up early (ULT)

Then {tomorrow morning} you can get up early (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then early in the morning you can get up]

---

and go on your way (ULT)

and continue traveling (UST)

Alternate translation: [and continue on your way]

But they said (ULT)

But the two angels replied (UST)

Alternate translation: [The two angels said to him]

No, rather (ULT)

Thank you, but (UST)

Abraham is responding to the angels with the courteous expression that a person in this culture would use to respond to a superior. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. The angels' reply should sound polite and respectful in your translation, not rude or disrespectful. For example, in some cultures it is not polite to say **No** too directly. Alternate translation: [No, thank you, rather] or [That is kind of you, but]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

we will spend the night in the street (ULT)

we will {just} stay in the public square tonight (UST)

This refers to a public, outdoor place inside the city, perhaps the open place inside the city gate where people would meet. Alternate translation: [we will just stay in the city square tonight] or [we plan to stay the night in the square]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- my lords
- the house of
- your servant

UST

- Sirs
- my house so that I can serve you

- my house so that I can serve you

Genesis 19:3

ULT:
But he urged them strongly, so that they turned aside with him and entered into his house. Then he prepared a feast for them, and he baked unleavened bread, and they ate.

UST:
However Lot continued to urgently invite them until they {finally agreed and} went with him to his house. Then Lot prepared a big meal for them, including {some} flat bread, and they {sat down and} ate {the meal}.

But he urged them strongly (ULT)

However Lot continued to urgently invite them (UST)

Alternate translation: [But Lot insisted urgently] or [However he continued to urge them earnestly] or [However he continued to urgently invite them]

---

so that they turned aside with him (ULT)

until they {finally agreed and} went with him (UST)

Alternate translation: [until he finally convinced them and they went with him]

---

and entered into his house (ULT)

to his house (UST)

Alternate translation: [to his house and entered it]

Then he prepared a feast for them (ULT)

Then Lot prepared a big meal for them (UST)

Lot probably had his wife or servants prepare the meal (as Abraham did in Genesis 18:6–7). It is common in the Bible to say that a leader or head of household (as here) did something, when in reality he had it done by someone else who was under his authority. Alternate translation: [Then he made a big meal for them] or [Then Lot had a big meal prepared for them]

---

and he baked unleavened bread (ULT)

including {some} flat bread (UST)

Alternate translation: [including some bread without yeast in it]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- his house
- a feast
- and … unleavened bread

UST

- his house
- a big meal
- including {some} flat bread

Genesis 19:4

ULT:
Before they lay down, then the men of the city, the men of Sodom, surrounded the house, from the young and to the old, all the people from the edge{s}.

UST:
{But} {after supper,} before they could lie down {to sleep}, {all} the men in the city of Sodom surrounded Lot's house, including men of all ages. {In fact,} all the people from every part {of the city were there}.

Before they lay down (ULT)

But} {after supper,} before they could lie down {to sleep} (UST)

Alternate translation: [But after the meal, before they could lie down to sleep] or [After that, before they could go to bed for the night]

---

then the men of the city, the men of Sodom (ULT)

{all} the men in the city of Sodom (UST)

Alternate translation: [all the men of the city of Sodom]

---

from the young and to the old (ULT)

including men of all ages (UST)

The phrase **from the young and to the old** refers to all the men of the city of Sodom, including the young and the old and everyone in between. Consider what is the best way to translate this phrase in your language. Alternate translation: [from the youngest to the oldest]

Support Reference: Merism

---

all the people from the edge{s} (ULT)

In fact,} all the people from every part {of the city were there} (UST)

This phrase is generalization or exaggeration used to emphasize that a very large number of people from the city were there. Consider whether or not your language can do the same thing. Alternate translation: [In fact, all the people from every section of the city were there] or [so that people from the entire city were there] or [In fact, everyone from all parts of the city had come there]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Sodom
- the house

UST

- {all} the men in the city of Sodom
- Lot's house

Genesis 19:5

ULT:
Then they called to Lot and said to him, "Where {are} the men who came to you tonight? Bring them out to us so that we can know them!"

UST:
Then they shouted to Lot, "Where {are} the {two} men who came to lodge with you tonight? Bring them outside to us so that we can have relations with them!"

Then they called (ULT)

Then they shouted (UST)

Here the author is using the pronoun **they** in a general sense, not to refer to specific people. Use an expression for this that would be natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Then the mob of people called out] or [Then the men shouted]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

who came to you tonight (ULT)

who came to lodge with you tonight (UST)

Alternate translation: [who came to your house tonight?]

Bring them out to us (ULT)

Bring them outside to us (UST)

Alternate translation: [Bring them to us out here] or [We demand that you bring them out here to us]

---

so that we can know them (ULT)

so that we can have relations with them (UST)

In Hebrew the verb **know** is often used as an idiom that means “have sex with” (as in Genesis 4:1, 25). Here it refers to homosexual activities and raping the two men. Translate this in a way that is not too offensive to be read aloud in public. Alternate translation: [so that we can have sex with them!]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then they called
- Lot
- so that we can know

UST

- Then they shouted
- to Lot
- so that we can have relations

Genesis 19:6

ULT:
Then Lot went out to them at the entrance and shut the door behind him,

UST:
But Lot went outside near the doorway {to talk} to them, and he closed the door {of the house} behind him.

Then Lot went out to them at the entrance (ULT)

But Lot went outside near the doorway {to talk} to them (UST)

Alternate translation: [But Lot went outside near the entrance to talk to them]

---

and shut the door behind him (ULT)

and he closed the door {of the house} behind him (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he shut the door of the house behind him]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Lot

UST
- Lot

Genesis 19:7

ULT:
and he said, “Please, my brothers, do not do evil!

UST:
Then he pleaded {with them}, “I beg you, my friends, do not do such an evil thing!

and he said (ULT)

Then he pleaded {with them} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then he said to them] or [and he pleaded with them]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Please, my brothers (ULT)

I beg you, my friends (UST)

The phrase **my brothers** is used here as a polite address that implies a close relationship. Lot uses this common expression to try to get the men of Sodom to not harm his guests. The men were not his actual brothers. For some languages it is more natural to put **my brothers** (or “my friends”) first in this quote. Alternate translation: [No, please, my friends] or [I beg you, my brothers] or [No, my brothers please]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

do not do evil (ULT)

do not do such an evil thing (UST)

Alternate translation: [do not do this evil!] or [do not do such an wicked thing!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- do evil

UST

- do … do such an evil thing

Genesis 19:8

ULT:
Behold, please: I have two daughters who have not known a man. Please let me bring them out to you, and you do to them as {is} good in your eyes. But do not do anything to these men, because for that {reason} they have come under the shadow of my rafters."

UST:
Listen {to this} please: My two daughters have never had {marital} relations with a man. Allow me to bring them out to you {instead} so that you can do with them whatever you want. But do not harm these men, because they are my guests and I am responsible for their safety."

Behold, please (ULT)

Listen {to this} please (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 2. Alternate translation: [Listen to me please:] or [Please listen to me]

---

have not known a man (ULT)

have never had {marital} relations with a man (UST)

See how you translated the idiom "knew" in verse 5 and Genesis 4:1, though it may need to be translated in different ways depending on the context. Alternate translation: [have not had sexual relations with a man] or [have never slept with a man] or [are virgins]

Support Reference: Euphemism

Please let me bring them out to you, and you do to them (ULT)

Allow me to bring them out to you {instead} so that you can do with them (UST)

Alternate translation: [Allow me to bring them out to you instead so that you may do to them] or [If you will let me bring them out here to you, then you may do to them]

---

as {is} good in your eyes (ULT)

whatever you want (UST)

See how you translated a similar clause in Genesis 16:6. Alternate translation: [whatever you like] or [whatever pleases you]

But do not do anything to these men (ULT)

But do not harm these men (UST)

Alternate translation: [But you must not do anything to harm these men] or [But do not violate these men]

---

because for that {reason} they have come under the shadow of my rafters (ULT)

because they are my guests and I am responsible for their safety (UST)

Alternate translation: [because they have come under the shelter of my roof] or [because they are my guests and I am responsible for their well-being]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- have … known

UST

- have never had {marital} relations with

Genesis 19:9

ULT:
But they said, “Get back!” Then they said, “This one came to sojourn, and now he is judging {us}! We will treat you worse than them!” Then they pressed hard against the man Lot and came near to break down the door.

UST:
But the men of Sodom shouted {at him}, “Get out of our way!” Then they complained {to each other}, “This guy came {here} as a foreigner, and now he thinks that he can judge {us}!” {Then they shouted at Lot,} “We will do worse things to you than {we do} to your {two} guests!” Then they started shoving hard against Lot and surged forward to break through the door {of his house}.

But they said (ULT)

But the men of Sodom shouted {at him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [But the men of Sodom responded to him] or [But the men of Sodom shouted at Lot]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Get back (ULT)

Get out of our way (UST)

Alternate translation: [Stand aside!] or [Get out of the way!]

Then they said (ULT)

Then they complained {to each other} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then they said to each other]

This one came (ULT)

This guy came {here} (UST)

The phrase “this one” shows disdain and disrespect for Lot. If possible, use a similar term in your language here.

---

to sojourn (ULT)

as a foreigner (UST)

See how you translated **sojourn** in Genesis 12:10. Here it has the negative meaning that Lot does not belong there. Alternate translation: [to live temporarily] or [as a outsider]

We will treat you worse than them (ULT)

{Then they shouted at Lot,} “We will do worse things to you than {we do} to your {two} guests (UST)

Here the crowd switches from talking to each other to shouting at Lot. Decide whether or not that needs to be explicit in your translation.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

Then they pressed hard against the man Lot (ULT)

Then they started shoving hard against Lot (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then they started shoving hard against him]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

and came near to break down the door (ULT)

and surged forward to break through the door {of his house} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and moved forward to break down the door of his house]

---

and now he is judging {us} (ULT)

and now he thinks that he can judge {us} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and now he wants to judge us!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and … he is judging {us}
- We will treat … worse
- Lot

UST

- and … he thinks that he can judge {us}
- {Then they shouted at Lot,} “We will do worse things to you
- against Lot

Genesis 19:10

ULT:
But the men reached out their hand{s} and brought Lot into the house to them and shut the door.

UST:
But Lot's {two} guests {opened the door}, reached outside and {quickly} pulled him {back} into the house with them and closed the door.

and brought Lot (ULT)

and {quickly} pulled him (UST)

Alternate translation: [and quickly pulled Lot]

---

and shut the door (ULT)

and closed the door (UST)

Alternate translation: [and slammed the door shut]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Lot
- into the house

UST
- him
- {back} into the house

Genesis 19:11

ULT:
Then they struck the men who {were at} the entrance of the house with blindness, from the small and to the great, so that they became weary {trying} to find the door.

UST:
Then those two men {who were angels} caused the men who {were at} the door of the house to be blind, including every last one of them, so that they exhausted themselves {groping around} trying to find the door.

Then they struck the men who {were at} the entrance of the house with blindness (ULT)

Then those two men {who were angels} caused the men who {were at} the door of the house to be blind (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then those two guests who were angels caused the men of Sodom who were outside the door of the house to be blind]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

from the small and to the great (ULT)

including every last one of them (UST)

This phrase **from the small and to the great** refers to all the men who were outside the house, including the young and the old and everyone in between. See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 4. Alternate translation: [from the youngest to the oldest]

Support Reference: Merism

---

so that they became weary {trying} to find the door (ULT)

so that they exhausted themselves {groping around} trying to find the door (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that they wearied themselves fumbling around trying to find the door] or [so that they could not see the door and gave up trying to find it]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the house

UST

- the house

Genesis 19:12

ULT:
Then the men said to Lot, "Who else {belongs} to you here, a son-in-law or your sons or your daughters or anyone {else} who {belongs} to you in the city? Take {them} out from this place,

UST:
Then the {two} angels asked Lot, "Do you have any other relatives here in Sodom? {If you have} sons-in-law or sons or daughters or any {other} members of your family here, {then} {quickly} get them away from this city,

Then the men said to Lot (ULT)

Then the {two} angels asked Lot (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then the two men asked Lot]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Who else {belongs} to you here (ULT)

Do you have any other relatives here in Sodom (UST)

Alternate translation: [What other family members do you have here] or [Do you have any other relatives here in this city]

---

or anyone {else} who {belongs} to you (ULT)

or any {other} members of your family (UST)

Alternate translation: [or any other relatives]

---

in the city (ULT)

here (UST)

Alternate translation: [in this city]

Take {them} out (ULT)

{then} {quickly} get them away (UST)

Alternate translation: [then quickly take them out]

---

from this place (ULT)

from this city (UST)

Make sure that the way you translate this phrase fits well with the ways that you refer to the city of Sodom earlier in this verse and in the next verse. It may help to read the entire verse aloud to make sure everything is clear and sounds natural in your language. Alternate translation: [from here]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Lot

UST

- Lot

Genesis 19:13

ULT:
because we are destroying this place. For their outcry before Yahweh {is} great, so Yahweh has sent us to destroy it.”

UST:
because we are about to destroy it. Yahweh has heard that the people of this city are guilty of serious sins, so he has sent us to destroy the city.”

because we are destroying (ULT)

because we are about to destroy (UST)

The pronoun **we** refers here only to the two angels, not Lot or anyone else. Alternate translation: [because we are going to destroy]

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’

---

this place (ULT)

it (UST)

The way you translate this phrase will depend on how you translated the end of verse 12.

For their outcry before Yahweh {is} great (ULT)

Yahweh has heard that the people of this city are guilty of serious sins (UST)

The pronoun **their** refers to the people of Sodom, not Lot’s relatives, who were the last ones referred to (verse 12). It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. See how you translated **outcry** in Genesis 18:20–21. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [Yahweh has heard that the people of this city are guilty of terrible sins] or [Yahweh has heard serious accusations against the people who live here]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

to destroy it (ULT)

to destroy the city (UST)

Make sure the way you translate this phrase fits with how you translated the first part of this sentence. Alternate translation: [to destroy them and their city]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- are destroying
- {is} great
- their outcry
- Yahweh
- Yahweh

UST

- are about to destroy
- Yahweh has heard that the people of this city are guilty of serious sins
- Yahweh has heard that the people of this city are guilty of serious sins
- Yahweh has heard that the people of this city are guilty of serious sins
- so he has sent us

Genesis 19:14

ULT:
Then Lot went out and spoke to his sons-in-law who were to take his daughters, and he said, “Get up, get out of this place, because Yahweh is destroying the city!” But it seemed like he was joking in the eyes of his sons-in-law.

UST:
So Lot went to his {future} sons-in-law who were engaged to his daughters, and he warned them, “Hurry up {and} leave this city, because Yahweh is about to destroy it!” But his sons-in-law thought that he was joking, {so they ignored him}.

Then Lot went out and spoke to (ULT)

So Lot went to (UST)

Alternate translation: [So Lot went and spoke to] or [So Lot went to speak to] or [So went to]

---

who were to take his daughters (ULT)

who were engaged to his daughters (UST)

The word **take** is used here as an idiom that means to marry. Consider whether or not it is best in your language to translate this as an idiom in your language. Alternate translation: [who were going to marry his daughters]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and he said (ULT)

and he warned them (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he said to them] or [and he urged them] or [He told them]

Get up (ULT)

Hurry up {and} (UST)

This phrase communicates urgency here. Alternate translation: [Come on! We must]

---

get out of (ULT)

leave (UST)

Alternate translation: [get away from] or [flee from]

---

because Yahweh is destroying (ULT)

because Yahweh is about to destroy (UST)

See how you translated “are destroying” in verse 13. Alternate translation: [because Yahweh is going to destroy]

---

the city (ULT)

it (UST)

Alternate translation: [the place!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Lot
- is destroying
- Yahweh

UST

- Lot
- is about to destroy
- Yahweh

Genesis 19:15

ULT:
Then when the dawn came, the angels urged Lot, saying, "Get up, take your wife and your two daughters who are here, so that you are not swept away in the punishment of the city."

UST:
Early the next morning, the {two} angels urged Lot, "Hurry up {and} take your wife and your two daughters {out of the city} so that you will not die when {God} punishes {the people of} the city."

Then when the dawn came (ULT)

Early the next morning (UST)

Dawn is the time before sunrise when it starts getting light. Alternate translation: [Very early the next morning]

Get up (ULT)

Hurry up {and} (UST)

Alternate translation: [You must quickly]

---

take your wife and your two daughters who are here (ULT)

take your wife and your two daughters {out of the city} (UST)

Alternate translation: [get your wife and two daughters away from the city] or [leave the city with your wife and two daughters]

---

so that you are not swept away (ULT)

so that you will not die (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Also, see how you translated the idiom “sweep away” in Genesis 18:23–24. Alternate translation: [so that you will not be destroyed] or [or else you will be destroyed]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

in the punishment of the city (ULT)

when {God} punishes {the people of} the city (UST)

Alternate translation: [when the people of the city are punished by God] or [when God punishes the people in the city]

---

the angels urged Lot, saying (ULT)

the {two} angels urged Lot (UST)

See how you translated **angels** in verse 1. Alternate translation: [the two messengers urged Lot]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the angels
- Lot
- you are … swept away

UST

- the {two} angels
- Lot
- you will … die

Genesis 19:16

ULT:
But he lingered, so the men grabbed his hand and the hand of his wife and the hand{s} of his two daughters, because of Yahweh's mercy for him, and brought him out and set him outside the city.

UST:
Lot hesitated, but Yahweh was being merciful to him, so the {two} men took hold of Lot's hand and the hands of his wife and two daughters and led them out of the city.

so the men grabbed his hand and the hand of his wife and the hand{s} of his two daughters (ULT)

so the {two} men took hold of Lot's hand and the hands of his wife and two daughters (UST)

Alternate translation: [so the two men took hold of his hand and the hands of his wife and two daughters] or [so they took him and his wife and two daughters by the hand]

---

and brought him out and set him (ULT)

and led them (UST)

Alternate translation: [and led him safely]

---

because of Yahweh's mercy for him (ULT)

but Yahweh was being merciful to him (UST)

For some languages it may be better to put this phrase last in verse 16 so that it does not interrupt the flow of the sentence. Or it may be better to put this phrase earlier in the sentence and say, "Lot hesitated, but Yahweh was being merciful to him, so the two men took hold of Lot's hand and the hands of his wife and two daughters and led them out of the city." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: [because Yahweh was being kind to him]

Support Reference: Information Structure

But he lingered (ULT)

Lot hesitated (UST)

Consider what is the best way to refer to Lot at this point in the paragraph in your language.
Alternate translation: [But Lot did not leave immediately] or [Lot delayed]

Support Reference: Pronouns

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- so … grabbed
- Yahweh

UST

- so … took hold of
- Yahweh

Genesis 19:17

ULT:
And it happened when they had brought them out to the outside, then he said, "Flee for your life! Do not look behind you, and do not stop anywhere in the plain! Escape to the mountain{s} so that you are not swept away!"

UST:
As {soon as} the angels had taken them outside {the city}, one of them said {to Lot}, "Run away from here as fast as you can! Do not look behind you, and do not delay in the valley for any reason! Go quickly to the hill country, or else you will die!"

And it happened when they had brought them out to the outside (ULT)

As {soon as} the angels had taken them outside {the city} (UST)

See how you translated **brought** in verse 16. Alternate translation: [As soon as the angels had led them outside the city]

Support Reference: Go and Come

---

then he said (ULT)

one of them said {to Lot} (UST)

Alternate translation: [one of them said to them] or [one of the angels said to Lot]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Flee for your life (ULT)

Run away from here as fast as you can (UST)

Alternate translation: [Run for your lives!] or [Run to save your lives!]

Do not look behind you (ULT)

Do not look behind you (UST)

Alternate translation: [Do not look behind you at Sodom] or [Do not look back at the city]

---

and do not stop anywhere in the plain (ULT)

and do not delay in the valley for any reason (UST)

This plain or valley was a wide, flat area between mountains. See how you translated “plain” in Genesis 13:10–12. Alternate translation: [and do not delay anywhere in the plain] or [and do not stop in the plain for any reason!]

Escape (ULT)

Go quickly (UST)

Alternate translation: [Hurry]

---

to the mountain{s} (ULT)

to the hill country (UST)

The phrase **to the mountains** could mean: (1) “to the hills.” Alternate translation: [to that mountain range]; (2) “to that mountain.” Alternate translation: [to that mountain]

---

so that you are not swept away (ULT)

or else you will die (UST)

See how you translated this clause in verse 15. Alternate translation: [so that you will not be destroyed!] or [so that you will not die!]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- you are … swept away

UST

- you will die

Genesis 19:18

ULT:
Then Lot said to them, “Please, no, my lords!

UST:
But Lot replied to them, “I beg you, sirs, do not {make us do that}.

Then Lot said to them (ULT)

But Lot replied to them (UST)

Some languages have a special dual pronoun for **them** that fits well here. Alternate translation: [But Lot pleaded with them]

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

Please, no, my lords (ULT)

I beg you, sirs, do not {make us do that} (UST)

See how you translated “my lords” in verse 2. Alternate translation: [Please, my masters, do not make us go that far!]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Lot
- my lords

UST
- Lot
- sirs

Genesis 19:19

ULT:
Behold, please: Your servant has found favor in your eyes, and you have magnified your mercy that you have shown to me by saving my life. But I am not able to escape to the mountain{s}, because the disaster will overtake me and I will die.

UST:
Listen {to me} please: You have treated me well even though I am unimportant, and you have been very kind to me and saved my life. But I am not able to run {all the way} to the mountains before the disaster occurs and kills me.

Behold, please (ULT)

Listen {to me} please (UST)

Lot is using the term **Behold** to focus his listeners' attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [Listen to this please:] or [Please listen to me]

Support Reference: Metaphor

Your servant has found favor in your eyes (ULT)

You have treated me well even though I am unimportant (UST)

The phrase "your servant" does not mean that Lot is actually a servant for the angels, but rather, it is a humble way for Lot to refer to himself and show respect to them. See how you translated that phrase in verse 2. Also see how you translated the idiom "found favor in … eyes" in Genesis 6:8 and 18:3. Alternate translation: [I, your servant, have been treated well by you] or [You have treated me kindly even though I am unimportant]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

But I am not able to escape to the mountain{s} (ULT)

But I am not able to run {all the way} to the mountains (UST)

See how you translated **the mountains** in verse 17. Alternate translation: [But I am not able to flee all the way to the hills] or [But there is no way that I can make it safely all the way to the hills] or [But the hills are too far away for me to make it there safely]

---

because the disaster will overtake me and I will die (ULT)

before the disaster occurs and kills me (UST)

The word **disaster** is talked about as if it could act in human ways. Consider whether or not it would be clear and natural to do that here in your language. Alternate translation: [before the disaster catches up with me and kills me] or [before the disaster strikes and kills me]

Support Reference: Personification

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Your servant
- favor
- the disaster

UST

- You have treated me well even though I am unimportant
- You have treated me well even though I am unimportant
- the disaster

Genesis 19:20

ULT:
Behold, please: That town there {is} near to flee to, and it {is} a little one. Please let me escape there. Is it not a little one? Then my life will live."

UST:
{So} listen {to this} please: That town up ahead {is} near {enough} to run to {in time}, and it {is} {just} a small {town}. Please let us run there, {and do not destroy it}. {After all,} it is very small. Then we can stay alive."

Behold, please (ULT)

{So} listen {to this} please (UST)

Consider again how you translated **Behold, please** in verses 2, 8, 19–20. It may be necessary to translate it in slightly different ways, depending on the context.

That town there (ULT)

That town up ahead (UST)

The Hebrew word for **town** here (and in verses 21–23) can refer to either a city or a town, depending on the context. Many translations have "town," or even "village," here because the place was very small (verses 20, 22). Many other translations have "city" here instead, but that does not fit the context. Alternate translation: [That town over there]

{is} near to flee to (ULT)

is} near {enough} to run to {in time} (UST)

Alternate translation: [is close enough to run to in time]

---

and it {is} a little one (ULT)

and it {is} {just} a small {town} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and it is only a small town] or [and it is little]

Please let me escape there (ULT)

Please let us run there, {and do not destroy it} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Please let us flee there, and do not destroy it]

Is it not a little one (ULT)

{After all,} it is very small (UST)

This rhetorical question implies that it will not matter if such a small town like Zoar is not destroyed. Consider whether or not a rhetorical question works well here in your language. Alternate translation: [After all, it is only a small place]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

Then my life will live (ULT)

Then we can stay alive (UST)

Lot says “my life,” but he is probably also including his family who is with him. Alternate translation: [Then I can stay alive] or [If you let us go there, then my family and I will live] or [If you allow that, our lives will be spared]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

Genesis 19:21

ULT:
Then he said to him, "Behold, I have also lifted up your face concerning this thing, so I will not overthrow the town that you are talking about.

UST:
The angel replied to Lot, "Alright, I will allow you to go to the {small} town that you are talking about, and I will not destroy it.

Then he said (ULT)

The angel replied (UST)

This phrase probably refers to the same angel who spoke to Lot in verse 17. Make sure it does not sound like Lot is the one speaking here. Alternate translation: [The angel said]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

Behold (ULT)

Alright (UST)

Alternate translation: [Listen] or [Here is what I will do:]

I have also lifted up your face concerning this thing (ULT)

I will allow you to go to (UST)

Consider what is the best way in your language to translate the idiom **lifted up your face** here. Alternate translation: [I will grant your request] or [I will permit you to do what you have requested]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

so I will not overthrow (ULT)

and I will not destroy it (UST)

Alternate translation: [so I will not overturn]

---

the town that you are talking about (ULT)

the {small} town that you are talking about (UST)

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to put this clause earlier in the sentence and say, “I will allow you to go to the small town that you are talking about, and I will not destroy it.” Alternate translation: [the small town that you mentioned]

Support Reference: Information Structure

Genesis 19:22

ULT:
Hurry up, escape there, because I am not able to do a thing until you go there.” For that {reason} they called the name of the town Zoar.

UST:
{But} hurry up {now and} run there, because I cannot destroy anything until you get there.” Since Lot said the town was small, the name of the town is Zoar {which means “small”}.

Hurry up (ULT)

But} hurry up {now and} (UST)

Alternate translation: [But go quickly now and]

---

escape there (ULT)

run there (UST)

Consider again how you translated **escape** in verses 17, 19–20, 22. Alternate translation: [flee there] or [flee to that town]

---

because I am not able to do (ULT)

because I cannot destroy (UST)

This clause implies that Yahweh will not allow the angel to destroy anything until Lot and his family arrive safely in the town of Zoar. Alternate translation: [because I am not allowed to do anything] or [because I must wait to do anything] or [because God will not allow me to do anything]

---

until you go there (ULT)

until you get there (UST)

Alternate translation: [until you reach there safely] or [until you are safely there]

For that {reason} (ULT)

Since Lot said the town was small (UST)

This phrase refers back to what Lot said in verse 20, not what the angel just said. Alternate translation: [That is why] or [Since Lot said the town was little]

---

they called the name of the town (ULT)

the name of the town is (UST)

See how you translated **they called the name** in Genesis 11:9 and 16:14. Alternate translation: [the town was called] or [they called that town]

Zoar (ULT)

Zoar {which means "small … } (UST)

If this implied information is included in your translation or in a footnote, be consistent here with how you translated the word "little" or "small" in verse 20.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- they called
- Zoar

UST

- the name of … is
- Zoar {which means “small … }

Genesis 19:23

ULT:
The sun rose over the land and Lot came to Zoar.

UST:
The sun was rising over the land as Lot {and his family} reached {the town of} Zoar.

The sun rose over the land (ULT)

The sun was rising over the land (UST)

Make sure that the way verse 23 begins in your translation fits with the way verse 15 begins, which refers to the same day.

---

and Lot (ULT)

as Lot {and his family} (UST)

In that culture the father was often the only one mentioned and the other family members were assumed to be with him. Alternate translation: [when Lot and his family]

Support Reference: Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship

---

came to Zoar (ULT)

reached {the town of} Zoar (UST)

Alternate translation: [arrived in the town of Zoar] or [reachedthe town of Zoar]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the land

- and Lot
- to Zoar

UST

- the land
- as Lot {and his family}
- {the town of} Zoar

Genesis 19:24

ULT:
Then Yahweh rained down on Sodom and Gomorrah brimstone and fire from Yahweh out of the heavens,

UST:
Then Yahweh caused fire and burning rocks to fall like {heavy} rain from the sky on {the cities of} Sodom and Gomorrah.

Then Yahweh rained down on Sodom and Gomorrah brimstone and fire (ULT)

Then Yahweh caused fire and burning rocks to fall like {heavy} rain … on {the cities of} Sodom and Gomorrah (UST)

The word **brimstone** refers to sulfur, which is a type of rock that is highly flammable. When it burns, it produces smoke, intense heat, and a bad smell like rotten eggs. Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh poured down burning sulfur and fire on the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah] or [Then Yahweh caused fire and burning sulfur to pour down on the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah]

---

from Yahweh out of the heavens (ULT)

from the sky (UST)

Some translations omit the phrase **from Yahweh** since Yahweh is already mentioned earlier as the one doing this. Also, for some languages it may be better to change the order of phrases in this verse and say, “Then Yahweh caused fire and burning sulfur to fall like heavy rain from the heavens on the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah.” Alternate translation: [from himself in heaven] or [from out of the sky]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Then Yahweh

- Sodom
- Gomorrah
- Yahweh
- the heavens

UST

- Then Yahweh
- {the cities of} Sodom
- Gomorrah
- יְהוָה (ORIG QUOTE)
- the sky

Genesis 19:25

ULT:
and he overthrew those cities and all of the plain, including all the inhabitants of the cities and the vegetation of the ground.

UST:
In that way, he {completely} destroyed those {two} cities and the rest of the valley, including everyone who lived in the cities and {all} the plants in the area.

and he overthrew (ULT)

In that way, he {completely} destroyed (UST)

See how you translated a phrase with a similar meaning ("swept away") in verses 15 and 17. Alternate translation: [and (so) Yahweh completely destroyed] or [In that way, Yahweh completely destroyed] or [That is how Yahweh completely destroyed]

---

and all of the plain (ULT)

and the rest of the valley (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah were also in the plain, not separate from it. Alternate translation: [and the whole valley] or [and the rest of the plain]

---

including all the inhabitants of the cities (ULT)

including everyone who lived in the cities (UST)

This phrase refers to Sodom and Gomorrah and at least two other cities in the valley (Deuteronomy 29:23). Alternate translation: [including all the people who lived in the cities of that valley] or [including everyone who lived in the cities there]

---

and the vegetation (ULT)

and {all} the plants (UST)

Alternate translation: [and even all the plants]

---

and the vegetation of the ground (ULT)

and {all} the plants in the area (UST)

Alternate translation: [that were growing on the land] or [of the area]

Genesis 19:26

ULT:
But his wife from behind him looked back, and she became a pillar of salt.

UST:
But Lot's wife, {who was} {walking} behind him, glanced back {at the city}, and {immediately} she turned into a statue of {solid} salt {rock}.

But his wife from behind him looked back (ULT)

But Lot's wife, {who was} {walking} behind him, glanced back {at the city} (UST)

Alternate translation: [… looked back at Sodom]

---

and she became (ULT)

and {immediately} she turned into (UST)

Alternate translation: [and immediately her body turned into] or [and immediately Yahweh turned her into]

---

a pillar of salt (ULT)

a statue of {solid} salt {rock} (UST)

Alternate translation: [a column of solid salt rock and she died] or [salt rock that was in the shape of a column]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- a pillar of

UST

- a statue of

Genesis 19:27

ULT:
Abraham got up early in the morning and went to the place where he had stood before Yahweh,

UST:
Early that same morning, Abraham got up and returned to the place where he had stood with Yahweh {the previous day}.

Abraham got up early in the morning (ULT)

Early that same morning, Abraham got up (UST)

Some translations translate this as the next morning, but it is more likely that this was the same day when Lot arrived in Zoar and Yahweh destroyed the cities in the valley (verse 23).
Alternate translation: [Meanwhile, Abraham got up early that same morning]

---

and went to the place (ULT)

and returned to the place (UST)

Alternate translation: [and returned to the spot]

---

where he had stood before Yahweh (ULT)

where he had stood with Yahweh {the previous day} (UST)

Alternate translation: [where he had been with Yahweh the previous day]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Abraham

- Yahweh

UST

- Abraham
- with Yahweh

Genesis 19:28

ULT:
and he looked down toward Sodom and Gomorrah and toward all the surface of the land of the plain. And he saw that, behold, smoke was rising from the land like smoke from a furnace.

UST:
He looked down at {the cities of} Sodom and Gomorrah and all {the rest of} the valley. There in front of him, he saw that {lots of thick} smoke was billowing up over the land like smoke from a {huge} fire.

and he looked down (ULT)

He looked down (UST)

Also, make sure it is clear that Abraham, not Yahweh, is being referred to here. Alternate translation: [Then he looked down]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

toward (ULT)

at (UST)

Alternate translation: [in the direction of]

---

and toward all the surface of the land of the plain (ULT)

and all {the rest of} the valley (UST)

Alternate translation: [and all the rest of the plain]

And he saw that, behold (ULT)

There in front of him, he saw that (UST)

Alternate translation: [And he was amazed to see that]

---

smoke was rising from the land (ULT)

{lots of thick} smoke was billowing up over the land (UST)

Alternate translation: [lots of thick smoke was billowing up from the land] or [a large amount of smoke was …]

---

like smoke from a furnace (ULT)

like smoke from a {huge} fire (UST)

During that time period, a furnace was heated by fire. Alternate translation: [like smoke that comes from the fire in a large oven]

Support Reference: Simile

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Sodom
- and Gomorrah
- the land of
- the land

UST

- {the cities of} Sodom
- and Gomorrah
- the valley
- the land

Genesis 19:29

ULT:
So it was, when God destroyed the cities of the plain, that God remembered Abraham and sent Lot out of the middle of the overthrow, when he overthrew the cities which Lot had lived in.

UST:
When God destroyed the cities in the valley, he did not forget Abraham {or his request}. So he saved Lot from the catastrophe that he had sent to {completely} destroy the cities where Lot had been living.

So it was, when God destroyed (ULT)

When God destroyed (UST)

See how you translated **destroyed** in verses 13–14, 17. Alternate translation: [So it was that when God destroyed]

---

the cities of the plain (ULT)

the cities in the valley (UST)

Consider again how you translated “plain” in Genesis 13:10–12; 19:17, 25, 28, 29. Alternate translation: [the cities on the plain] or [the cities in the plain]

---

that God remembered Abraham (ULT)

he did not forget Abraham {or his request} (UST)

Make sure your translation of this clause does not imply that God forgot Abraham. See how you translated **God remembered** in Genesis 8:1. Alternate translation: [he kept Abraham and his request in mind]

---

and sent Lot out of the middle of (ULT)

So he saved Lot from (UST)

Alternate translation: [and brought Lot safely away from] or [So he rescued Lot from]

---

the overthrow (ULT)

the catastrophe (UST)

Alternate translation: [the disaster]

---

when he overthrew the cities (ULT)

that he had sent to {completely} destroy the cities (UST)

Alternate translation: [when he completely destroyed the cities] or [that he had used to completely destroy the cities]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- when … destroyed
- God
- God
- Abraham
- Lot
- Lot

UST

- When … destroyed
- God
- אֱלֹהִים (ORIG QUOTE)
- Abraham {or his request}
- Lot
- Lot

Genesis 19:30

ULT:
Then Lot went up from Zoar and settled in the mountain{s}, and his two daughters {were} with him, because he was afraid to settle in Zoar. So he lived in a cave, he and his two daughters.

UST:
After that, Lot was afraid to stay in {the town of} Zoar, so he and his two daughters moved from there to the mountains, where they lived in a cave.

Then Lot went up from Zoar and settled in the mountain{s}, and his two daughters {were} with him (ULT)

After that, Lot … so he and his two daughters moved from there to the mountains (UST)

Be consistent here with how you translated **the mountains** in verses 17 and 19. Alternate translation: [After that, Lot moved with his two daughters from the town of Zoar up into the hills and settled there] or [Sometime later, Lot and his two daughters left the town of Zoar and moved to the hills]

---

because he was afraid to settle in Zoar (ULT)

was afraid to stay in {the town of} Zoar (UST)

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to put this clause earlier in this sentence and say, “Lot was afraid to settle in the town of Zoar, so he and his two daughters moved from there to the mountains, where they lived in a cave.” Also, be consistent with how you spelled **Zoar** throughout the book of Genesis. See 13:10; 14:2, 8; 19:22–23, 30. Alternate translation: [because he was afraid to stay in the town of Zoar]

Support Reference: Information Structure

So he lived in a cave, he and his two daughters (ULT)

so he and his two daughters … where they lived in a cave (UST)

Alternate translation: [So he and his two daughters lived in a cave in the hills]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Lot
- from Zoar
- he was afraid
- in Zoar

UST

- Lot
- from there
- was afraid
- in {the town of} Zoar

Genesis 19:31

ULT:
Then the firstborn said to the younger, "Our father is old, and there is not a man on the earth to come to us as {is} the way of all the earth.

UST:
Then {one day} {his} older {daughter} said to {his} younger {daughter}, "Our father is elderly, and there are not any men around here to marry us, which {is} the custom {that people have} everywhere else in the world.

Then the firstborn said to (ULT)

Then {one day} {his} older {daughter} said to (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then one day his oldest daughter said to]

---

the younger (ULT)

his} younger {daughter} (UST)

Alternate translation: [his younger one] or [her younger sister] or [her sister]

Our father is old (ULT)

Our father is elderly (UST)

In some cultures, it is not polite to call someone **old**. Translate this clause in a way that is accurate and acceptable in your language area. Alternate translation: [Our father is getting along in years]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

and there is not a man (ULT)

and there are not any men (UST)

Alternate translation: [and there is no man]

---

on the earth (ULT)

around here (UST)

Lot's daughter is exaggerating here, to emphasize her point. Alternate translation: [in this land]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

---

to come to us (ULT)

to marry us (UST)

See how you translated the idiom "went to" in Genesis 6:4, which is the same meaning as **come to** here. Alternate translation: [to be with us]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

as {is} the way of all the earth (ULT)

which {is} the custom {that people have} everywhere else in the world (UST)

Alternate translation: [as is the way of all the people on the earth] or [which is normal for people all over the earth]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- on the earth
- the earth

UST

- around here
- the world

Genesis 19:32

ULT:
Come on, let us get our father to drink wine, and let us lie with him so that we will give life to offspring through our father.”

UST:
{So} come on, we should get our father drunk on wine. Then we can have {sexual} relations with him so that we can continue our family line with him.”

Come on (ULT)

{So} come on (UST)

See how you translated this in Genesis 14:7.

---

let us get our father to drink wine (ULT)

we should get our father drunk on wine (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this proposal or suggestion in your language.

---

and let us lie with him (ULT)

Then we can have {sexual} relations with him (UST)

Alternate translation: [and then we should sleep with him] or [Then we can have physical relations with him]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

so that we will give life to (ULT)

so that we can continue (UST)

Alternate translation: [That way we can have descendants] or [so that we can preserve our family line]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

---

through our father (ULT)

with him (UST)

Alternate translation: [by our father] or [through him]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- wine
- offspring

UST

- wine
- our family line

Genesis 19:33

ULT:
So they got their father to drink wine on that night, and the firstborn went and lay with her father, but he did not know when she lay down or when she got up.

UST:
So that night Lot's daughters got their father drunk on wine. Then the older {daughter} went {to him} and had relations with him. But {he was so drunk that} he was not {even} aware that she got in bed {with him} or that she left.

So they got their father to drink wine on that night (ULT)

So that night Lot's daughters got their father drunk on wine (UST)

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to Lot's daughters at this point in the paragraph. Alternate translation: [So his daughters got their father drunk on wine that very night]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

and the firstborn went (ULT)

Then the older {daughter} went {to him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then his oldest daughter went to him]

---

and lay with her father (ULT)

and had relations with him (UST)

Make sure that the way you translate the euphemism **lay with** will not be too offensive to be read aloud in public. Alternate translation: [and slept with him]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

when she lay down or when she got up (ULT)

that she got in bed {with him} or that she left (UST)

Alternate translation: [that she had been with him]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- wine
- he did … know

UST

- wine
- he was … {even} aware

Genesis 19:34

ULT:
And it happened on the next day that the firstborn said to the younger, "Behold, last night I lay with my father. Let us get him to drink wine again tonight. Then you go lie with him so that we will give life to offspring through our father."

UST:
The next day {Lot's} older {daughter} said to {his} younger {daughter}, "Listen, last night I had {sexual} relations with our father. Tonight we should get him drunk on wine again. Then you {also} should go {and} have relations with him so that we can continue our family line with him."

And it happened on the next day (ULT)

The next day (UST)

The author is using the word translated as **And it happened** to introduce a new development in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new development. Alternate translation: [The following day, it happened]

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

---

the younger (ULT)

his} younger {daughter} (UST)

The author is using the adjective **younger** as a noun to mean a certain person. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this adjective with an equivalent phrase. See how you translated this phrase in verse 31. Alternate translation: [his secondborn] or [her younger sister] or [her sister]

Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

Behold, last night (ULT)

Listen, last night (UST)

For some languages it may be more natural to put this time phrase (**last night**) last in this sentence.

Support Reference: Information Structure

I lay with my father (ULT)

I had {sexual} relations with our father (UST)

See how you translated **lay with** in verse 33. Alternate translation: [I slept with our father] or [I had physical relations with our father]

Support Reference: Euphemism

Let us get him to drink wine again tonight (ULT)

Tonight we should get him drunk on wine again (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to put the time word **tonight** first or last in this clause. Alternate translation: [Tonight we should get him drunk again]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

lie with him (ULT)

have relations with him (UST)

Alternate translation: [sleep with him]

---

so that we will give life (ULT)

so that we can continue (UST)

See how you translated the last clause in verse 32, which is the same as the rest of verse 34. Alternate translation: [so that we can have descendants] or [so that we can preserve our family line]

---

through our father (ULT)

with him (UST)

Alternate translation: [by our father] or [through him]

Support Reference: Pronouns

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- wine
- to offspring

UST

- wine
- our family line

Genesis 19:35

ULT:
So on that night also they got their father to drink wine. Then the younger went and lay with him, but he did not know when she lay down or when she got up.

UST:
So that night Lot's daughters got their father drunk on wine again. Then the younger {daughter} went {to him} and had relations with him. And {once again} {he was so drunk that} he was not aware that she got in bed {with him} or that she left.

Then the younger went and lay with him (ULT)

Then the younger {daughter} went {to him} and had relations with him (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then his younger daughter went to him and slept with him] or [Then his younger daughter went to him and had sexual relations with him]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

but he did not know (ULT)

And {once again} {he was so drunk that} he was not aware (UST)

See how you translated the last clause in verse 33, which is similar to the rest of verse 35.
Alternate translation: [but he was not even aware] or [But he was completely unaware]

---

when she lay down or when she got up (ULT)

that she got in bed {with him} or that she left (UST)

Alternate translation: [that she had been with him]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- wine
- he did … know

UST

- wine
- {he was so drunk that} he was … aware

Genesis 19:36

ULT:
So both of the daughters of Lot conceived from their father.

UST:
In that way, both of Lot's daughters became pregnant from {having relations with} their father.

So both of the daughters of Lot conceived (ULT)

In that way, both of Lot's daughters became pregnant (UST)

Alternate translation: [As a result, both sisters got pregnant]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- So … conceived
- Lot

UST
- In that way … became pregnant
- Lot

Genesis 19:37

ULT:
Then the firstborn bore a son, and she called his name Moab. He {is} the father of the Moabites to this day.

UST:
Later his older {daughter} gave birth to a son, and she named him Moab, {which means "from my father."} He {became} the ancestor of the Moabite people {who are still living} today.

Then the firstborn bore a son (ULT)

Later his older {daughter} gave birth to a son (UST)

Alternate translation: [Months later, the oldest daughter had a son]

Moab (ULT)

Moab, {which means "from my father … } (UST)

You can include the meaning of this name in your translation text or in a footnote. Some translations put this implied information in parentheses.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

He {is} the father of (ULT)

He {became} the ancestor of (UST)

Alternate translation: [He was the ancestor of]

---

the Moabites to this day (ULT)

the Moabite people {who are still living} today (UST)

The phrase, **to this day** or "today" refers to the time when Moses wrote the book of Genesis, which was hundreds of years after Lot and his daughters lived and died. Alternate translation: [the people group who are called the Moabites today]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then … bore
- and she called
- Moab
- the Moabites
- this day

UST

- Later … gave birth to
- and she named him
- Moab, {which means "from my father … }
- the Moabite people
- today

Genesis 19:38

ULT:
Then the younger, she also bore a son, and she called his name Ben-Ammi. He {is} the father of the sons of Ammon to this day.

UST:
Lot's younger {daughter} also gave birth to a son, and she named him Ben-Ammi, {which means "son of my people."} He {became} the ancestor of the Ammonite people {who are still living} today.

bore a son (ULT)

gave birth to a son (UST)

See how you translated the last half of verse 37, which is the same as the rest of verse 38, except for the names. Alternate translation: [had a son]

---

and she called his name (ULT)

and she named him (UST)

Alternate translation: [and she called him] or [whom she named]

Ben-Ammi (ULT)

Ben-Ammi, {which means "son of my people … } (UST)

You can include the meaning of this name in your translation text or in a footnote. Some translations put this implied information in parentheses.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

He {is} the father of (ULT)

He {became} the ancestor of (UST)

Alternate translation: [He was the forefather of]

---

the sons of Ammon to this day (ULT)

the Ammonite people {who are still living} today (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 37. Alternate translation: [the people group who are called the Ammonites today]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- bore
- and she called
- Ammon
- this day

UST

- gave birth to
- and she named him
- the Ammonite people
- today

Genesis 20

Genesis 20:1

ULT:
Then Abraham traveled from there to the land of the Negev, and he settled between Kadesh and Shur and sojourned in Gerar.

UST:
Meanwhile Abraham {and his family} left from the place where they were living {and moved south} to the Negev {Desert} area. There they lived between {the cities of} Kadesh and Shur, and they stayed for a while in {the city of} Gerar.

Then Abraham traveled (ULT)

Meanwhile Abraham {and his family} left (UST)

Consider what is the best way to introduce this new episode in your language, where the focus shifts to Abraham. Alternate translation: [Then Abraham and his family left]

---

from there (ULT)

from the place where they were living (UST)

Abraham and Sarah had been living by the trees of Mamre, near the city of Hebron (Genesis 13:18; 18:1). Alternate translation: [from the place where he were living] or [from near the city of Hebron]

---

to the land of the Negev (ULT)

{and moved south} to the Negev {Desert} area (UST)

See how you translated “the Negev Wilderness” in Genesis 12:9 (note); 13:1, 3. Alternate translation: [and went south to the Negev Desert area]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

and he settled between Kadesh and Shur (ULT)

There they lived between {the cities of} Kadesh and Shur (UST)

Also, be consistent here with how you spelled **Kadesh** in Genesis 14:7 and **Shur** in 16:7. Alternate translation: [There he lived between the cities of Kadesh and Shur]

---

and sojourned in Gerar (ULT)

and they stayed for a while in {the city of} Gerar (UST)

See how you translated "sojourn" in Genesis 12:10. Also be consistent here with how you translated **Gerar** in Genesis 10:19. Alternate translation: [and they stayed there for a while as foreigners, in the city of Gerar] or [and they stayed in the city of Gerar for a while]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abraham
- to the land of
- the Negev
- Kadesh
- in Gerar

UST

- Abraham {and his family}
- {and moved south} to the Negev {Desert} area
- {and moved south} to the Negev {Desert} area
- {the cities of} Kadesh
- in {the city of} Gerar

Genesis 20:2

ULT:
And Abraham said about Sarah his wife, "She {is} my sister." So Abimelech the king of Gerar sent for Sarah and took her.

UST:
{While they were there,} Abraham told {people} that his wife Sarah {was} his sister. So {one day} Abimelech, {who was} the king of Gerar, had {some of his servants} bring Sarah {to his home} {to be his wife}.

And Abraham said about Sarah his wife, "She {is} my sister (ULT)

{While they were there,} Abraham told {people} that his wife Sarah {was} his sister (UST)

Sarah was Abraham's younger sister (Genesis 19:19). Some languages use special words for **sister** and "brother" in Genesis 12:13, 19; 20:2, 5, 12–13, 16, to distinguish when someone is younger or older than his or her sibling. Alternate translation: [While they were there, he told people that his wife Sarah was his sister] or [While they were there, he told people that Sarah was his sister, not his wife]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

So Abimelech the king of Gerar sent for Sarah and took her (ULT)

So {one day} Abimelech, {who was} the king of Gerar, had {some of his servants} bring Sarah {to his home} {to be his wife} (UST)

The city of Gerar was the Philistines' capital city where King Abimelech ruled from (Genesis 21:2, 32; 26:1). Alternate translation: [So one day Abimelech, who was the king over the city of Gerar, had some of his servants bring Sarah to his home to be his wife] or [So one day King Abimelech, who ruled the Philistines from the city of Gerar, had Sarah brought to him to be his wife]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abraham
- Sarah
- Abimelech
- the king of
- Gerar
- Sarah

UST

- Abraham
- Sarah
- Abimelech
- {who was} the king of
- Gerar
- Sarah

Genesis 20:3

ULT:
But God came to Abimelech in a dream {in} the night and said to him, "Behold, you are dead because of the woman whom you have taken, because she is married to a husband!"

UST:
But that night God appeared to {King} Abimelech in a dream and warned him, "Listen, you are about to die because the woman whom you have taken {to be your wife} is {already} married to someone else!"

But God came to Abimelech in a dream (ULT)

But … God appeared to {King} Abimelech in a dream (UST)

For some languages it is necessary to use an honorific title for a king each time (or most of the time) that he is referred to by name, in order to show him proper respect. Do what is best in your language throughout this chapter. Alternate translation: [But God appeared to King Abimelech in a dream]

Support Reference: Politeness

{in} the night (ULT)

that night (UST)

It may be more natural to put this time phrase earlier in this sentence and say, "But that night God appeared to King Abimelech in a dream …" Alternate translation: [during the night] or [by night]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

and said to him (ULT)

and warned him (UST)

Alternate translation: [and told him]

Behold, you are dead (ULT)

Listen, you are about to die (UST)

God is using the present tense to describe something that is going to happen in the future in order to warn that the event could happen soon. If it would be clearer in your language, you could use the future tense. Make sure that the way you translate this clause does not make it sound like King Abimelech is already dead. Alternate translation: [Hear me warn you, you are a dead man]

Support Reference: Irregular Use of Tenses

---

because of the woman whom you have taken, because she (ULT)

because the woman whom you have taken {to be your wife} (UST)

See how you translated “took” in verse 2.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- Abimelech
- in a dream

UST

- God
- {King} Abimelech
- in a dream

Genesis 20:4

ULT:
Now Abimelech had not gone near to her, so he said, "My Lord, will you kill even a righteous nation?

UST:
However, Abimelech had not {yet} slept with Sarah, so he asked {God}, "Lord, will you kill {me and} my people even if {we are} innocent?

Now Abimelech (ULT)

However, Abimelech (UST)

Consider what is the best way in your language to introduce this background information. Alternate translation: [Now King Abimelech]

Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

---

had not gone near to her (ULT)

had not {yet} slept with Sarah (UST)

Translate this clause in a way that will not be offensive or embarrassing in your language when it is read aloud in public. See how you translated a different phrase in Genesis 19:31 ("come to us") that has the same meaning. Alternate translation: [had not yet slept with her] or [had not had marital relations with Sarah]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

so he said (ULT)

so he asked {God} (UST)

The way you translate this quote margin will depend on how you translate the rhetorical question that follows it.

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

My Lord (ULT)

Lord (UST)

See how you translated this title of respect for God in Genesis 18:27, 30–32. Alternate translation: [My Master] or [Master]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

will you kill even a righteous nation (ULT)

will you kill {me and} my people even if {we are} innocent (UST)

King Abimelech uses a rhetorical question here to express his desperate concern. Abimelech is saying in a dramatic way that if God kills him, he will destroy the innocent nation that Abimelech leads as their king. Make sure in your translation that he sounds humble and not angry or rude. Alternate translation: [please do not kill me and the people I rule, since we are righteous.]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

righteous (ULT)

{we are} innocent (UST)

Consider again how you translated the word **righteous** in the book of Genesis. See 6:9, 7:1, 18:23–26, 28; 20:4. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [we are actually righteous]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Now Abimelech
- My Lord
- a … nation
- righteous
- will you kill

UST

- However, Abimelech
- Lord
- {me and} my people
- {we are} innocent
- will you kill

Genesis 20:5

ULT:
Did not he himself say to me, ‘She {is} my sister’? And she herself also said, ‘He {is} my brother.’ I did this in the integrity of my heart and in the innocence of my hands!”

UST:
Abraham himself told me that Sarah was his sister. And she herself also said that he was her brother. {So} I took her {to be my wife} with a pure conscience, and I did not know that I was doing anything wrong!”

Did not he himself say to me, ‘She {is} my sister (ULT)

Abraham himself told me that Sarah was his sister (UST)

Abimelech uses another rhetorical question here as he continues to defend his actions. Also, see how you translated **sister** in verse 2. Alternate translation: [He himself told me that she was his sister!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

And she herself also said, ‘He {is} my brother (ULT)

And she herself also said that he was her brother (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [And Sarah herself also claimed that he was her brother]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

I did this (ULT)

So} I took her {to be my wife} (UST)

Alternate translation: [So I did what I did]

---

in the integrity of my heart (ULT)

with a pure conscience (UST)

Alternate translation: [with a clear conscience] or [with pure motives]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and in the innocence of my hands (ULT)

and I did not know that I was doing anything wrong (UST)

Abimilech's statement, **in the innocence of my hands**, means that he was not aware of any wrongdoing in his actions. If you use an exclamation point here in your translation, make sure it does not mean that King Abimelech is angry or being rude; rather, he is desperate. Alternate translation: [and with clean hands!]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- in the integrity of
- and in the innocence

UST

- with a pure conscience
- and I did not know that I was doing anything wrong

Genesis 20:6

ULT:
Then God said to him in the dream, "Yes, I know that in the integrity of your heart you did this, and indeed I kept you from sinning against me. For that {reason} I did not allow you to touch her.

UST:
God replied to him in the dream, "Yes, I realize that {it was} with a pure conscience that you took Sarah {to be your wife}. In fact, I {am the one who} kept you from sinning against me. That is why I did not let you sleep with her.

Yes, I know that (ULT)

Yes, I realize that (UST)

Alternate translation: [Yes, I know that it was] or [I am aware that it was]

---

in the integrity of your heart (ULT)

{it was} with a pure conscience that (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 5. Alternate translation: [with a clear conscience] or [with pure motives]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

you did this (ULT)

you took Sarah {to be your wife} (UST)

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to put this phrase before the previous one and say, "Yes, I realize that you did this with pure motives …" Alternate translation: [that you did this] or [that you took her to be your wife]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

and indeed I kept you from sinning against me (ULT)

In fact, I {am the one who} kept you from sinning against me (UST)

In the Hebrew text, **I** is an emphatic pronoun. Try to communicate that emphasis in a natural way in your translation. Alternate translation: [and in fact, it is I who kept you from doing this sin against me] or [In fact, I am the one who prevented you from sinning against me]

I did not allow you (ULT)

I did not let you (UST)

Alternate translation: [I did not permit you to]

---

to touch her (ULT)

sleep with her (UST)

See how you translated the idiom “gone near to her” in verse 4, which has a meaning that is similar to the idiom here. Also, for some languages it may be better to change the order of these clauses and say, “I am the one who did not allow you to touch her so that you would not sin against me.” Alternate translation: [have sexual relations with her] or [do anything to her]

Support Reference: Information Structure

Then God said to him in the dream (ULT)

God replied to him in the dream (UST)

Alternate translation: [God answered King Abimelech in the dream]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- in the dream
- know
- in the integrity of
- from sinning

UST

- God
- in the dream
- realize
- {it was} with a pure conscience that
- from sinning

Genesis 20:7

ULT:
So now, return the wife of the man because he {is} a prophet, and he will pray for you, and you will live. But if you do not return her, know that you will surely die, you and all who {belong} to you!"

UST:
Now then, you must give Abraham's wife back {to him}. He is a spokesman {for me}, so he will ask me to be merciful to you, so that you will not die. However, if you refuse to give Sarah back {to him}, you can be sure that you and all your people will definitely die!"

return the wife of the man (ULT)

you must give Abraham's wife back {to him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [return her to her husband Abraham]

---

because he {is} a prophet (ULT)

He is a spokesman {for me} (UST)

Also, a prophet is someone who speaks for someone else. In this case, Abraham serves as an intercessor and speaks for God and prays what God wants him to say (verses 7, 17). Avoid a translation of this term that focuses on telling the future, which is only one of the things that a prophet might do. Alternate translation: [He is a prophet for me]

---

and he will pray for you (ULT)

so he will ask me to be merciful to you (UST)

Alternate translation: [so he will ask me to be kind to you]

---

and you will live (ULT)

so that you will not die (UST)

Alternate translation: [and I will let you live]

But if you do not (ULT)

However, if you refuse (UST)

Alternate translation: [But if you will not]

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

---

return her (ULT)

to give Sarah back {to him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [give her back to him]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

know that (ULT)

you can be sure that (UST)

Alternate translation: [you need to know that] or [be aware that]

---

you will surely die, you and all who {belong} to you (ULT)

you and all your people will definitely die (UST)

The phrase **all who belong to you** refers to King Abimelech's people, whom he referred to in verse 4. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: [you and all your people will surely die!] or [I will surely kill you and all your people!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- a prophet
- and he will pray
- know

UST

- He is a spokesman {for me}
- so he will ask me to be merciful to you
- you can be sure

Genesis 20:8

ULT:
So Abimelech got up early in the morning and called for all of his servants, and he told all those things in their ears, and the men were very afraid.

UST:
Early the next morning {King} Abimelech got up and called together all of his officials. He told them everything that had happened, and they were very afraid {that God would punish them}.

and called (ULT)

and called together (UST)

Alternate translation: [summoned]

---

for all of his servants (ULT)

all of his officials (UST)

Alternate translation: [all his officials and other servants]

---

and he told all those things in their ears (ULT)

He told them everything that had happened (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then he told them about everything that God had said to him in the dream] or [He told told them everything that had happened]

Support Reference: Idiom

So Abimelech got up early in the morning (ULT)

Early the next morning {King} Abimelech got up (UST)

Alternate translation: [So the next morning King Abimelech got up early]

---

and the men were very afraid (ULT)

and they were very afraid {that God would punish them} (UST)

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to King Abimelech's servants at each point in this verse. Alternate translation: [and they felt terrified] or [When they heard that, they were very afraid that God would kill them] or [As soon as they heard that, the men were very afraid of what might happen next]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abimelech
- and called
- his servants
- and … were … afraid

UST

- {King} Abimelech
- and called together
- his officials
- and … were … afraid {that God would punish them}

Genesis 20:9

ULT:
Then Abimelech called for Abraham and said to him, "What have you done to us? And how have I sinned against you so that you brought a great sin on me and on my kingdom? You have done deeds to me that should not be done!"

UST:
Then the king summoned Abraham and scolded him {by saying}, "You have treated us very badly! I never did anything wrong to you, and yet you have caused me and the people whom I rule to be guilty of sinning terribly! You have wronged me in ways that should never be done {to anyone}!"

Then Abimelech called for Abraham and said to him, "What have you done to us? And how have I sinned against you so that you brought a great sin on me and on my kingdom? You have done deeds to me that should not be done (ULT)

Then the king summoned Abraham and scolded him {by saying}, "You have treated us very badly! I never did anything wrong to you, and yet you have caused me and the people whom I rule to be guilty of sinning terribly! You have wronged me in ways that should never be done {to anyone} (UST)

In this verse, the pronouns **him** and **you** refer to **Abraham**, while the pronouns **I**, **me**, and **us** refer to **Abimilech**. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [Then Abimelech called for Abraham and said to him, "What have you done to us? And how have I sinned against you, Abraham, so that you brought a great sin on me, King Abimelech, and on my kingdom? Abraham, you have done deeds to me that should not be done]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

and said to him (ULT)

and scolded him {by saying} (UST)

The way you translate this quote margin will depend on how you translate the rhetorical question that follows it. Alternate translation: [and asked him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

What have you done to us (ULT)

You have treated us very badly (UST)

Abimelech uses two rhetorical questions here to express his anger and to rebuke Abraham for what he had done. Consider whether or not a rhetorical question is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [You have treated us unjustly!] or [What you have done to us is not right!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

And how have I sinned against you so that (ULT)

I never did anything wrong to you, and yet (UST)

Alternate translation: [What did I do wrong to you so that] or [I never did anything wrong to you, but yet]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

you brought a great sin on me and on my kingdom (ULT)

you have caused me and the people whom I rule to be guilty of sinning terribly (UST)

Make sure your punctuation here fits with how you translate this rhetorical question. Alternate translation: [you brought on me and my people the guilt of a terrible sin!] or [you have caused me and the kingdom that I rule to be guilty of sinning terribly!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

You have done deeds to me that should not be done (ULT)

You have wronged me in ways that should never be done {to anyone} (UST)

Alternate translation: [No one should ever wrong someone the way you have wronged me!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then … called
- Abimelech
- for Abraham
- have I sinned
- my kingdom
- a … sin

UST

- Then … summoned
- the king
- Abraham
- I never did anything wrong to you
- and the people whom I rule
- to be guilty of sinning terribly

Genesis 20:10

ULT:
Then Abimelech said to Abraham, "What were you looking for when you did this thing?"

UST:
Finally, {King} Abimelech asked him, "What motivated you to do what you did?"

Then Abimelech said to Abraham (ULT)

Finally, {King} Abimelech asked him (UST)

For some languages it is more natural here to omit this quote margin, because the same person is still talking to the same person. However, the words emphasize what King Abimelech says next and may indicate that there was a pause between what he said in verse 9 and in verse 10. Alternate translation: [Then Abilelech continued by asking Abraham]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

What were you looking for when you did (ULT)

What motivated you to do (UST)

Alternate translation: [What did you expect to benefit from doing] or [What were your reasons for doing]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

this thing (ULT)

what you did (UST)

Alternate translation: [this terrible thing?]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abimelech
- Abraham

UST

- {King} Abimelech
- him

Genesis 20:11

ULT:
And Abraham answered, “Because I said, ‘Surely there is no fear of God in this place, so they will kill me because of my wife.’

UST:
Abraham answered {him}, “{I did it,} because I thought that there was certainly no one in this city who revered God, so {I was afraid} they would kill me to get my wife {for themselves}.

And Abraham answered (ULT)

Abraham answered {him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Abraham replied to him]

Because (ULT)

{I did it,} because (UST)

Alternate translation: [I did it because]

I said, ‘Surely there is no fear of God in this place, so they will kill me because of my wife (ULT)

I thought that there was certainly no one in this city who revered God, so {I was afraid} they would kill me to get my wife {for themselves} (UST)

The **fear of God** is an important theme in the Bible. It is a complex term that means to recognize how holy and powerful God is and to deeply respect and honor him by obeying and worshiping him. Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [I thought that there was certainly no one in this place who obeyed God, so I was afraid that they would kill me in order to take my wife for themselves]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abraham
- fear of
- God
- so they will kill me

UST

- Abraham
- no one … who revered
- God
- so {I was afraid} they would kill me

Genesis 20:12

ULT:
And also she truly {is} my sister, the daughter of my father but not the daughter of my mother, and she became my wife.

UST:
Besides that, Sarah actually {is} my half-sister. We have the same father, but different mothers, and {after we grew up,} we got married.

And also (ULT)

Besides that (UST)

Alternate translation: [In addition to that]

---

she truly {is} my sister (ULT)

Sarah actually {is} my half-sister (UST)

Alternate translation: [it is true that she is my sister] or [she actually is my sister]

---

the daughter of my father but not the daughter of my mother (ULT)

We have the same father, but different mothers (UST)

Alternate translation: [because she and I have the same father, but not the same mother]

---

and she became my wife (ULT)

and {after we grew up,} we got married (UST)

Alternate translation: [and when we were old enough, I married her]

Genesis 20:13

ULT:
And it happened when God caused me to wander from the house of my father, then I said to her, ‘This {is} your kindness that you can do for me: At every place where we go, say about me, “He {is} my brother.”’”

UST:
{Years} later when God told me to leave my father’s family, I asked her to do me a favor and tell people wherever we go that I {am} her brother.”

And it happened (ULT)

{Years} later (UST)

Alternate translation: [It happened that]

---

when God caused me to wander (ULT)

when God told me to leave (UST)

Alternate translation: [when God commanded me to leave] or [when God led me to travel away from]

---

from the house of my father (ULT)

my father’s family (UST)

See how you translated “house of … father” in Genesis 12:1. Alternate translation: [the place where my father and other relatives were living]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

then I said to her (ULT)

I asked her (UST)

Alternate translation: [I told her]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

This {is} your kindness that you can do for me: At every place where we go, say about me, “He {is} my brother (ULT)

to do me a favor and tell people wherever we go that I {am} her brother (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate these embedded quotes as direct or indirect quotes. Alternate translation: [to please do me a special favor and tell people wherever we go that I am her brother]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- from the house of
- your kindness

UST

- God
- s family
- to do me a favor

Genesis 20:14

ULT:
Then Abimelech took flocks and herds and men slaves and women slaves and gave them to Abraham, and he returned Sarah his wife to him.

UST:
Then {King} Abimelech brought {many} sheep and cattle and male and female servants {to Abraham} and gave {them all} to him. He {also} gave Abraham's wife Sarah back to him.

flocks and herds (ULT)

{many} sheep and cattle (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 12:16. Alternate translation: [flocks of sheep and herds of cattle]

---

and men slaves and women slaves (ULT)

and male and female servants {to Abraham} (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 12:16. Alternate translation: [and men and women slaves to Abraham] or [and male and female slaves to Abraham]

---

and gave them to Abraham (ULT)

and gave {them all} to him (UST)

Alternate translation: [and gave them all to Abraham]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

and he returned Sarah his wife to him (ULT)

He {also} gave Abraham's wife Sarah back to him (UST)

Also, see how you translated "return" twice in verse 7. Alternate translation: [He also gave back to Abraham his wife Sarah]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abimelech
- flocks
- and herds
- and men slaves
- and women slaves
- to Abraham
- Sarah

UST

- {King} Abimelech
- {many} sheep
- and cattle
- and male and female servants {to Abraham}
- and male and female servants {to Abraham}
- to him
- Sarah

Genesis 20:15

ULT:
Then Abimelech said, “Behold, my land {is} before you. Settle wherever {is} good in your eyes.”

UST:
Then {King} Abimelech said {to him}, “Look, my land {is} available to you. Live {wherever} you decide {is} best.”

Then Abimelech said (ULT)

Then {King} Abimelech said {to him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then he said to him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Behold (ULT)

Look (UST)

Alternate translation: [Listen]

---

my land {is} before you (ULT)

my land {is} available to you (UST)

See how you translated the idiom “before your face” in Genesis 13:9. Alternate translation: [my land is in front of you]

Support Reference: Idiom

Settle (ULT)

Live (UST)

See how you translated this verb in verse 1. Alternate translation: [You may live] or [I invite you to live]

---

wherever {is} good in your eyes (ULT)

{wherever} you decide {is} best (UST)

See how you translated the idiom **good in your eyes** in Genesis 19:8. You may need to translate this phrase in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [wherever you decide is best for you] or [wherever you want]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abimelech
- my land
- wherever {is} good

UST

- {King} Abimelech
- my land
- {wherever} you decide {is} best

Genesis 20:16

ULT:
And to Sarah he said, "Behold, I have given 1,000 {shekels of} silver to your brother. Behold, that {is} for you a covering of the eyes before all who {are} with you, so that you are vindicated for everything."

UST:
Then he {turned} to Sarah {and} said, "Listen, I have given 12 {kilos of} silver to your brother. I am doing this so that everyone knows you did nothing wrong, and to compensate you for everything {that has happened to you}."

Behold (ULT)

Listen (UST)

Alternate translation: [Look] or [Listen to this:]

I have given 1,000 {shekels of} silver to your brother (ULT)

I have given 12 {kilos of} silver to your brother (UST)

Coins did not exist at that time. Rather, people paid each other with shekels of silver or gold shekels, which was a weight measurement. A thousand shekels of silver was about 25 pounds (11.5 kilos) of silver. Many translation teams like to keep the same numbers that are in the Hebrew text in their translation, and then in a footnote give the equivalent amount in their own currency. Other teams put the equivalent amount in the text and put the literal phrase in a footnote. Alternate translation: [I have given 1,000 pieces of silver to your brother] or [I have given your brother 1,000 pieces of silver]

Support Reference: Biblical Money

Behold, that {is} (ULT)

I am doing this (UST)

Alternate translation: [I am doing this] or [The reason I am doing that is]

---

for you a covering of the eyes before all who {are} with you (ULT)

so that everyone knows you did nothing wrong (UST)

The phrase **a covering of the eyes** is an idiom which means that King Abimelech's payment to Abraham "covered" (that is, "protected") Sarah's good reputation and showed that she was innocent. Alternate translation: [to show everyone that you are innocent of any wrongdoing] or [to show to everyone that you are an honorable woman]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

so that you are vindicated for everything (ULT)

and to compensate you for everything {that has happened to you} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and to make it clear that you are not at fault for anything that happened]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

And to Sarah he said (ULT)

Then he {turned} to Sarah {and} said (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then King Abimelech said to Sarah]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And to Sarah
- silver

UST

- Then he {turned} to Sarah
- {kilos of} silver

Genesis 20:17

ULT:
Then Abraham prayed to God, and God healed Abimelech and his wife and his slave women, so that they bore children,

UST:
Then Abraham asked God {to be merciful to the king}. So God healed {King} Abimelech, as well as his wife and his female servants, and they were able to have children {again}.

and God healed Abimelech (ULT)

So God healed {King} Abimelech (UST)

Alternate translation: [So God healed him]

---

and his wife and his slave women (ULT)

as well as his wife and his female servants (UST)

Alternate translation: [and the king's wife and his slave women]

---

so that they bore children (ULT)

and they were able to have children {again} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and they were able to conceive and bear children again]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then … prayed
- Abraham
- God
- God

- Abimelech
- and his slave women
- so that they bore children

UST

- Then … asked … to be merciful to the king
- Abraham
- God
- God
- {King} Abimelech
- and his female servants
- and they were able to have children {again}

Genesis 20:18

ULT:
because Yahweh had completely closed up every womb in the house of Abimelech because of Sarah, the wife of Abraham.

UST:
{Previously} Yahweh had kept all the women in Abimelech's household from conceiving because he had taken Abraham's wife Sarah.

because Yahweh (ULT)

{Previously} Yahweh (UST)

Alternate translation: [because previously Yahweh]

---

had completely closed up every womb in the house of Abimelech (ULT)

had kept all the women in Abimelech's household from conceiving (UST)

Consider again how often you need to use the honorific title "King" with Abimelech's name in this chapter in your language.

Support Reference: Politeness

---

because of (ULT)

because he had taken (UST)

Alternate translation: [on account of] or [to punish him for taking]

Sarah, the wife of Abraham (ULT)

Abraham's wife Sarah (UST)

For some languages, it may be more natural to change the order of the clauses in this sentence (which begins in verse 17) and say, "Before this, Yahweh had completely closed up every womb in the household of King Abimelech because he had taken Abraham's wife Sarah. Then Abraham prayed …" If the order is changed, it will be necessary to combine these two verses and to put the verse numbers "17–18" in front of the sentence. Some translation teams have decided that they will never combine verses like that. Other teams have decided that occasionally it is acceptable to do that if it makes the meaning clearer.

Support Reference: Verse Bridges

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Yahweh
- womb
- in the house of
- Abimelech
- Sarah
- Abraham

UST

- Yahweh
- the women
- in … s household
- Abimelech
- Sarah
- Abraham

Genesis 21

Genesis 21:1

ULT:
Then Yahweh visited Sarah as he had said, and Yahweh did for Sarah as he had said,

UST:
Then Yahweh blessed Sarah {just} as he had said {he would}. Yes, he did for her {exactly} what he had promised {to do}.

Then Yahweh visited Sarah as he had said (ULT)

Then Yahweh blessed Sarah {just} as he had said {he would} (UST)

The word **visited** is used here as an idiom that means God blessed Sarah and was kind to her (by enabling her to have a son). The same idiom is used in 1 Samuel 21:Samuel and Luke 1:68. Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh blessed Sarah as he had promised that he would] or [Then Yahweh was gracious to Sarah, just as he had promised he would be]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and Yahweh did for Sarah (ULT)

Yes, he did for her (UST)

The two halves of verse 1 form a parallelism to emphasize what God did for Sarah. In your translation it is best, if possible, to keep both parts of the parallelism, since each part has a different emphasis. Alternate translation: [Yes, Yahweh did for her]

Support Reference: Parallelism

---

as he had said (ULT)

just} as he had said {he would} (UST)

Alternate translation: [just as he had said he would do]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then Yahweh
- Sarah
- Yahweh
- for Sarah

UST

- Then Yahweh
- Sarah
- Yes, he did
- for her

Genesis 21:2

ULT:
so that Sarah conceived and bore a son for Abraham in his old age, at the appointed time which God had told him.

UST:
So Sarah became pregnant and at the time {God had} appointed, she gave birth to a son for Abraham when he was old, just as God had promised him {that she would}.

so that Sarah conceived (ULT)

So Sarah became pregnant (UST)

Translate this clause in a way that is not offensive or awkward, especially when read aloud in public. Alternate translation: [So she became pregnant] or [As a result, Sarah conceived]

---

and bore a son (ULT)

and … she gave birth to a son (UST)

Alternate translation: [and gave birth to a son] or [and had a son]

---

which God had told him (ULT)

just as God had promised him {that she would} (UST)

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to change the order of the clauses in this sentence and say, “So Sarah became pregnant, and at the time God had set, she gave birth to a son for Abraham when he was old, just as God had promised him that she would.” Alternate translation: [when God had told him it would happen]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- so that … conceived
- and bore
- Sarah
- for Abraham
- at the appointed time
- God

UST

- So … became pregnant
- and … she gave birth to
- Sarah
- for Abraham
- at the time {God had} appointed
- God

Genesis 21:3

ULT:
And Abraham called the name of his son who was born to him, whom Sarah bore for him, Isaac.

UST:
Then Abraham named his son Isaac, {the son} whom Sarah had given birth to.

And Abraham called the name of his son who was born to him (ULT)

Then Abraham named his son (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Abraham called his son]

---

whom Sarah bore for him, Isaac (ULT)

Isaac, {the son} whom Sarah had given birth to (UST)

Many translations include the meaning of Isaac's name, either in the text or in a footnote.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And … called
- Abraham
- who was born
- bore
- Sarah
- Isaac

UST

- Then Abraham named
- Then Abraham named
- הַנּוֹלַד (ORIG QUOTE)
- had given birth to
- Sarah

- Isaac

Genesis 21:4

ULT:
And Abraham circumcised his son Isaac, a son of eight days, just as God had commanded him.

UST:
Also, when Isaac was eight days old, Abraham circumcised him, which was exactly what God had commanded him {to do}.

his son Isaac (ULT)

him (UST)

Consider what is the best way to refer to Isaac at this point in the paragraph, in your language. Alternate translation: [his son]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

And Abraham circumcised his son Isaac, a son of eight days, just as God had commanded him (ULT)

Also, when Isaac was eight days old, Abraham circumcised him, which was exactly what God had commanded him {to do} (UST)

For some languages it may be more natural to put this phrase first in this verse. Alter and say, “Also, when Isaac was eight days old, Abraham circumcised him,” Alternate translation: [who was eight days old] or [when he was eight days old]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

just as God had commanded him (ULT)

which was exactly what God had commanded him {to do} (UST)

Alternate translation: [He did exactly what God had commanded him to do]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And … circumcised
- Abraham
- Isaac
- days
- God

UST

- circumcised
- Abraham
- him
- Also, when Isaac was eight days old
- God

Genesis 21:5

ULT:
And Abraham {was} a son of 100 years when Isaac his son was born to him.

UST:
Abraham {was} 100 years old when his son Isaac was born.

And Abraham {was} a son of 100 years (ULT)

Abraham {was} 100 years old (UST)

See how you translated this clause in Genesis 17:17.

Support Reference: Idiom

---

when Isaac his son was born to him (ULT)

when his son Isaac was born (UST)

Alternate translation: [when Isaac was born]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- And Abraham
- years
- when … was born
- Isaac

UST
- Abraham
- {was} 100 years old
- when … was born
- Isaac

Genesis 21:6

ULT:
And Sarah said, “God has brought laughter to me! Everyone who hears will laugh with me!”

UST:
{When he was born,} Sarah exclaimed, “God has made me laugh {for joy}! Everyone who hears {about this} will laugh {for joy} with me!”

And Sarah said (ULT)

{When he was born,} Sarah exclaimed (UST)

Alternate translation: [When Isaac was born, Sarah said]

God has brought laughter to me (ULT)

God has made me laugh {for joy} (UST)

Alternate translation: [God has enabled me to rejoice and laugh!]

Everyone who hears (ULT)

Everyone who hears {about this} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Everyone who finds out what he has done for me]

---

will laugh with me (ULT)

will laugh {for joy} with me (UST)

Alternate translation: [will rejoice and laugh with me!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Sarah
- God

UST

- Sarah
- God

Genesis 21:7

ULT:
And she said, "Who would have said to Abraham {that} Sarah would nurse children? Yet I have born a son in his old age!"

UST:
She also exclaimed, "No one would have {even thought of} telling Abraham {that} I would have children. Yet I have given birth to a son {for him} when he is old!"

And she said (ULT)

She also exclaimed (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then she added] or [She also said]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Who would have said to Abraham (ULT)

No one would have {even thought of} telling Abraham (UST)

Sarah uses a rhetorical question here to express great joy and amazement. Some languages must use a statement or exclamation here instead. Alternate translation: [No one would have ever told Abraham] or [No one would have ever thought of telling Abraham]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

{that} Sarah would nurse children (ULT)

{that} I would have children (UST)

Alternate translation: [that I would bear children]

Yet (ULT)

Yet (UST)

Alternate translation: [But yet] or [In spite of that]

I have born a son (ULT)

I have given birth to a son {for him} (UST)

See how you translated “bear” in Genesis 18:13. Alternate translation: [I have had a son for him]

---

in his old age (ULT)

when he is old (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 2. You may need to translate it in a different way here because of the slightly different context. Alternate translation: [even though he is old!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- to Abraham
- Sarah
- I have born

UST

- Abraham
- {that} I would have children
- I have given birth to

Genesis 21:8

ULT:
Then the child grew and was weaned, and Abraham made a great feast on the day Isaac was weaned.

UST:
Isaac grew as a child and reached the age when his mother stopped nursing him. When that happened, Abraham held a big feast {to celebrate}.

Then the child grew (ULT)

Isaac grew as a child (UST)

Alternate translation: [The boy Isaac grew]

---

and was weaned (ULT)

and reached the age when his mother stopped nursing him (UST)

Children in that culture were often weaned around the age of three. Translate **weaned** in a way that will not embarrass or offend people. Alternate translation: [and his mother weaned him] or [and reached the age when his mother stopped breast-feeding him]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

and Abraham made a great feast on the day Isaac was weaned (ULT)

When that happened, Abraham held a big feast {to celebrate} (UST)

Alternate translation: [When that happened, Abraham held a elaborate feast to celebrate] or [On that same day, Abraham had his servants prepare an elaborate feast to celebrate]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abraham
- a … feast
- on the day
- Isaac

UST

- Abraham
- a … feast {to celebrate}
- When that happened
- When that happened

Genesis 21:9

ULT:
And Sarah saw {that} the son of Hagar the Egyptian, whom she had born for Abraham, was mocking.

UST:
But {during the feast} Sarah noticed that {Ishmael,} the son of {her} Egyptian {handmaid} Hagar and Abraham, was making fun of {Isaac}.

And Sarah saw (ULT)

But {during the feast} Sarah noticed (UST)

Alternate translation: [But at the feast Sarah saw]

{that} the son of Hagar the Egyptian, whom she had born for Abraham (ULT)

that {Ishmael,} the son of {her} Egyptian {handmaid} Hagar and Abraham (UST)

Also see how you translated “have born” in verse 8. Alternate translation: [that the son whom Hagar, her handmaid from the country of Egypt, had given birth to for Abraham]

---

was mocking (ULT)

was making fun of {Isaac} (UST)

Alternate translation: [was mocking Isaac] or [was laughing at Isaac]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Sarah
- Hagar
- the Egyptian

- she had born
- for Abraham
- was mocking

UST

- Sarah
- Hagar
- her} Egyptian {handmaid} … and Abraham
- her} Egyptian {handmaid} … and Abraham
- her} Egyptian {handmaid} … and Abraham
- was making fun of {Isaac}

Genesis 21:10

ULT:
So she said to Abraham, “Drive away that slave woman and her son, because the son of that slave woman will not inherit with my son, with Isaac!”

UST:
So she {was angry and} told Abraham, “Get rid of that servant woman and her son! Her son must never share {any part of} what my son Isaac inherits {from you}!”

So she said to Abraham (ULT)

So she {was angry and} told Abraham (UST)

Alternate translation: [So she was upset and told Abraham]

Drive away (ULT)

Get rid of (UST)

Alternate translation: [Send away]

---

that slave woman (ULT)

that servant woman (UST)

See how you translated “slave women” in Genesis 20:17. Some languages may have a single word (as Hebrew does) that means this. Alternate translation: [that female slave]

---

and her son (ULT)

and her son (UST)

Alternate translation: [along with her son!]

---

because the son of that slave woman (ULT)

Her son (UST)

Alternate translation: [The son of that slave woman]

---

will not inherit with my son, with Isaac (ULT)

must never share {any part of} what my son Isaac inherits {from you} (UST)

Alternate translation: [will never inherit any part of what our son Isaac inherits from you!] or [will not get anything from you! Only my son Isaac should inherit your estate!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- to Abraham
- Drive away
- slave woman
- will … inherit
- slave woman
- Isaac

UST

- Abraham
- Get rid of
- servant woman
- must … what … inherits {from you}
- Her son
- share {any part of} … my son Isaac

Genesis 21:11

ULT:
And the matter was very distressing in the eyes of Abraham on account of his son.

UST:
Abraham was very upset about that, because {Ishmael} was {also} his son {and he cared about him too}.

And the matter was very distressing in the eyes of Abraham (ULT)

Abraham was very upset about that (UST)

Alternate translation: [Abraham felt very grieved about that] or [What Sarah said grieved Abraham very much]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

on account of his son (ULT)

because {Ishmael} was {also} his son {and he cared about him too} (UST)

Alternate translation: [because of his son Ishmael] or [because he also cared about his son Ishmael]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- And … was … distressing
- Abraham

UST
- Abraham was very upset about that
- Abraham was very upset about that

Genesis 21:12

ULT:
But God said to Abraham, "Do not be distressed in your eyes because of the boy and because of your slave woman. All that Sarah says to you, listen to her voice, because in Isaac, offspring will be called yours.

UST:
But God told him, "Do not be upset about the boy or your servant woman. {Rather,} listen to everything Sarah tells you {to do}, {and do it,} because Isaac is the one who will be the ancestor of your descendants {whom I promised to you}.

But God said to Abraham (ULT)

But God told him (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then God said to him] or [Then God told him]

Do not be distressed in your eyes (ULT)

Do not be upset (UST)

See how you translated "distressing" in verse 11. Alternate translation: [Do not be sad] or [Do not let yourself be upset]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

because of the boy and because of your slave woman (ULT)

about the boy or your servant woman (UST)

Ishmael was about 17 years old at this time, so in verses 12–16 use terms for him in your language that fit with that fact. Alternate translation: [about the boy or your slave woman]

All that Sarah says to you, listen to her voice (ULT)

Rather,} listen to everything Sarah tells you {to do}, {and do it … } (UST)

The word **listen** means to hear and do what is being asked. Also, the phrase **her voice** refers to Sarah and what she said. Alternate translation: [Rather, listen to whatever Sarah tells you to do, and do it] or [Do everything that Sarah told you to do]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

---

because in Isaac, offspring will be called yours (ULT)

because Isaac is the one who will be the ancestor of your descendants {whom I promised to you} (UST)

Alternate translation: [because it is in Isaac that the descendants I promised you will be reckoned] or [because Isaac is the one who will be the ancestor of the descendants that I promised to give you] or [because the offspring that I promised to you will come from Isaac]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- Abraham
- Do … be distressed
- your slave woman
- Sarah
- in Isaac
- will be called
- offspring

UST

- God
- him
- Do … be upset
- your servant woman
- Sarah
- Isaac is the one who will be the ancestor of your descendants {whom I promised to you}
- Isaac is the one who will be the ancestor of your descendants {whom I promised to you}
- Isaac is the one who will be the ancestor of your descendants {whom I promised to you}

Genesis 21:13

ULT:
And the son of the slave woman I will also make into a nation, because he {is} your offspring."

UST:
But I will also make your servant woman's son become {the ancestor of} a {large} people group, because he is your son."

And the son of the slave woman I will also make (ULT)

But I will also make your servant woman's son (UST)

Alternate translation: [But I will also make the son of your servant woman]

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

---

into a nation (ULT)

become {the ancestor of} a {large} people group (UST)

Alternate translation: [become the ancestor of an important people group]

---

because he {is} your offspring (ULT)

because he is your son (UST)

For some languages, it may be clearer or more natural to put this "because …" clause earlier in this sentence and say, "And/But because/since the son of your slave/servant woman is your offspring/son, I will also make him into a great/important/large people/ethnic group." Alternate translation: [since he is your descendant]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the slave woman
- into a nation
- your offspring

UST

- your servant woman
- become {the ancestor of} a {large} people group
- your son

Genesis 21:14

ULT:
Then Abraham got up early in the morning, and took bread and a skin of water and gave them to Hagar, putting them on her shoulder. Then {he gave her} the child and sent her away, and she left and wandered in the wilderness of Beersheba.

UST:
Early the next morning Abraham got up, brought {some} food and a leather container {full} of water to Hagar {and} put them on her back. Then he sent her off with the boy, and they left and wandered {around} in the desert near {the city of} Beersheba.

Then Abraham got up early in the morning (ULT)

Early the next morning Abraham got up (UST)

Alternate translation: [So Abraham got up early the next morning]

---

and took bread (ULT)

brought {some} food (UST)

This phrase may refer to bread or more generally to food. Alternate translation: [got some food]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

---

and a skin of water (ULT)

and a leather container {full} of water (UST)

The word **skin** refers here to an animal skin or hide. Alternate translation: [and a leather bag full of water] or [and a full water bag made of animal hide] or [and a water bag full of water]

---

and gave them to Hagar, putting them on her shoulder (ULT)

to Hagar {and} put them on her back (UST)

Alternate translation: [to Hagar and put them on her shoulder]

Then {he gave her} the child and sent her away (ULT)

Then he sent her off with the boy (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then he sent her and the boy away] or [Then he sent her off with the youth]

---

and she left and wandered (ULT)

and they left and wandered {around} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and she left and wandered around] or [and they wandered around]

---

in the wilderness of Beersheba (ULT)

in the desert near {the city of} Beersheba (UST)

Sometimes in the Bible a place is identified by the well-known name it will be called later. That is the case in this verse, since Beersheba is not given its name until verse 31. Alternate translation: [in the Beersheba Desert] or [in the desert near the city that was later called Beersheba]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Beersheba
- Abraham
- bread
- Hagar
- in the wilderness of
- Beersheba

UST

- {the city of} Beersheba
- Abraham
- {some} food
- to Hagar
- in the desert near
- {the city of} Beersheba

Genesis 21:15

ULT:
And when the water from the skin was gone, then she threw the child under one of the bushes,

UST:
When they had finished {all} the water in the container, she left her son under {the shade of} a bush.

And when the water from the skin was gone (ULT)

When they had finished {all} the water in the container (UST)

See how you translated **skin** in verse 14. Alternate translation: [When they had drunk all the water that they had in the water container] or [When there was no more water in the water skin] or [When the water bag was empty]

---

then she threw (ULT)

she left (UST)

Make sure your translation of this idiom does not mean that Hagar literally threw Ishmael through the air. Alternate translation: [Hagar hurriedly put]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

the child (ULT)

her son (UST)

Alternate translation: [the boy]

---

under one of the bushes (ULT)

under {the shade of} a bush (UST)

Alternate translation: [under the shade of one of the bushes there] or [under the shade of a nearby bush]

Genesis 21:16

ULT:
and she went and sat down by herself at a distance, as far away as they shoot a bow, because she said, “Do not let me look on the death of the child!” And {as} she sat at a distance, then she lifted her voice and sobbed.

UST:
She thought {to herself}, “I cannot {bear to} watch my son die.” So she went {away from him} and sat down by herself, about as far away as someone can shoot an arrow. Then she started crying loudly.

and she went and sat down by herself at a distance (ULT)

So she went {away from him} and sat down by herself (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then she went away from him and sat down by herself]

---

as far away as they shoot a bow (ULT)

about as far away as someone can shoot an arrow (UST)

If you do not translate the text literally, the literal text could be put in a footnote. Alternate translation: [about as far away as someone can shoot a bow] or [about a hundred yards away]

Support Reference: Biblical Distance

---

because she said (ULT)

She thought {to herself} (UST)

Alternate translation: [because she said to herself] or [She said to herself]

Do not let me look on the death of the child (ULT)

I cannot {bear to} watch my son die (UST)

Consider whether it is better to use a noun (**death**) or a verb ("die") in your translation here. Also, see how you translated **child** in verses 14 and 15. Alternate translation: [I cannot bear to see my son die!]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

And {as} she sat at a distance, then she lifted her voice and sobbed (ULT)

Then she started crying loudly (UST)

For some languages it may be more natural to change the order of the clauses in this verse (so that the events are in the order that they actually occurred) and say, "She thought to herself, 'I cannot bear to watch/see my son die.' So she went away from him and sat down by herself, about as far away as someone can shoot an arrow. Then she started crying loudly." Alternate translation: [As she sat there, she started sobbing loudly] or [Then she started sobbing loudly]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- a bow
- and sobbed

UST

- an arrow
- Then she started crying loudly

Genesis 21:17

ULT:
And God heard the voice of the boy, so the angel of God called to Hagar from heaven and said to her, "What {troubles} you, Hagar? Do not be afraid, because God has listened to the voice of the boy where he {is} there.

UST:
God {also} heard the boy crying, so one of his angels called to Hagar from heaven and said, "What is the matter, Hagar? Do not be afraid. God has heard the boy crying over there {and will take care of him}.

And God heard the voice of the boy (ULT)

God {also} heard the boy crying (UST)

Alternate translation: [God also heard the youth crying]

What {troubles} you, Hagar (ULT)

What is the matter, Hagar (UST)

For some languages it is necessary to put **Hagar** first in this quote. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Hagar, why are you upset?]

Do not be afraid, because God has listened to the voice of the boy where he {is} there (ULT)

Do not be afraid. God has heard the boy crying over there {and will take care of him} (UST)

The phrase **has listened to** means that God heard the boy and that he will help him. Alternate translation: [Do not be afraid, because God has heard the cries of the boy where he is lying and will take care of him] or [Do not be afraid. God has heard the youth crying over there and will

take care of him] or [God has heard the youth crying over there, so do not be afraid because he will take care of you both]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

so the angel of God called to Hagar from heaven and said to her (ULT)

so one of his angels called to Hagar from heaven and said (UST)

See how you translated the key term **angel** in Gen 16:7. Alternate translation: [so one of his messengers called to Hagar from heaven and said] or [so he had one of his messengers call to Hagar from heaven and say]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- so … called
- the angel of
- God
- Hagar
- heaven
- Hagar
- Do … be afraid
- God

UST

- God
- so … called
- one of his angels
- one of his angels
- Hagar
- heaven
- Hagar
- Do … be afraid
- God

Genesis 21:18

ULT:
Get up, lift the boy, and hold on to him with your hand, because I will make him into a great nation."

UST:
{So} go help the boy to get up, and take care of him, because I {Yahweh} will make him become {the ancestor of} a large people group."

Get up, lift the boy (ULT)

{So} go help the boy to get up (UST)

Alternate translation: [So go help the youth to stand up] or [So now, go to your son, help him get up]

---

and hold on to him with your hand (ULT)

and take care of him (UST)

Alternate translation: [and lead him by the hand to help him walk]

---

because I will make him (ULT)

because I {Yahweh} will make him (UST)

The pronoun **I** refers to Yahweh here. So either Yahweh had taken on the form of an angel, or the angel was representing Yahweh and speaking for him. See what you did for a similar case in Genesis 16:10. Also, see how you translated "make … into a great nation" in verse 13. Also see 18:18, which is similar. Alternate translation: [because Yahweh will make his descendants become]

---

into a great nation (ULT)

become {the ancestor of} a large people group (UST)

See how you translated **nation** in verse 13. Alternate translation: [an large ethnic group]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- into a … nation

UST
- become {the ancestor of} a … people group

Genesis 21:19

ULT:
Then God opened her eyes and she saw a well of water. So she went and filled the skin {with} water and gave the boy a drink.

UST:
Then God enabled Hagar to see a water well. So she went over {to the well}, filled her {water} container {with} water, and gave her son some water to drink.

Then God opened her eyes and she saw (ULT)

Then God enabled Hagar to see (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then God helped her to see]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

a well of water (ULT)

a water well (UST)

See how you translated **well** in Genesis 16:14. Alternate translation: [a well]

So she went (ULT)

So she went over {to the well} (UST)

Alternate translation: [So she walked over to the well]

---

and filled the skin {with} water (ULT)

filled her {water} container {with} water (UST)

See how you translated **skin** in verses 14–15. Alternate translation: [filled the water bag with water]

---

and gave the boy a drink (ULT)

and gave her son some water to drink (UST)

Alternate translation: [and gave Ishmael a drink from it]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- a well of

UST

- God
- a water well

Genesis 21:20

ULT:
And God was with the boy, and he grew up. And he lived in the wilderness and became a great bowman.

UST:
As the boy grew up, God was with him {and helped him}. He lived in the {Paran} Desert and learned to hunt skillfully with a bow {and arrows}.

And God was with the boy (ULT)

God was with him {and helped him} (UST)

This clause means that God guided, helped, protected, and blessed Ishmael, that is, he took care of him. Consider whether or not your language has an idiom that fits well here. Also consider again how you translated "boy/youth" in verses 12, 17–20. Alternate translation: [God was with the boy and blessed him]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and he grew up. And he lived (ULT)

As the boy grew up … He lived (UST)

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to change the order of the clauses in this verse and say, "As the boy/youth grew up/older, God was with him and blessed him." Alternate translation: [as he grew up]

Support Reference: Information Structure

And he lived in the wilderness (ULT)

He lived in the {Paran} Desert (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to specify here in verse 20 that the name of the wilderness is Paran, rather than wait until verse 21, so that it is clear that both verses refer to the same wilderness. See how you translated **the wilderness** in verse 14. Alternate translation: [And he lived in the desert of Paran] or [He lived in the Paran Wilderness]

---

and became a great bowman (ULT)

and learned to hunt skillfully with a bow {and arrows} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and became a skilled bowhunter]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- in the wilderness
- a … bowman

UST

- God
- in the {Paran} Desert
- to hunt skillfully with a bow {and arrows}

Genesis 21:21

ULT:
And {while} he was living in the wilderness of Paran, then his mother took a wife for him from the land of Egypt.

UST:
While he was there, his mother found a wife for him {who was} from the country of Egypt.

And {while} he was living in the wilderness of Paran (ULT)

While he was there (UST)

See how you translated **wilderness** in verse 20. Alternate translation: [While he was living in the Paran Wilderness] or [While he was living in that desert]

---

then his mother took a wife for him (ULT)

his mother found a wife for him (UST)

Alternate translation: [his mother chose a wife for him] or [his mother arranged for him to marry a woman]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

from the land of Egypt (ULT)

{who was} from the country of Egypt (UST)

See how you translated **the land of Egypt** in Genesis 13:10. Alternate translation: [who came from the country of Egypt] or [who was Egyptian]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- in the wilderness of
- Paran
- from the land of
- Egypt

UST

- While he was there
- While he was there
- {who was} from the country of
- Egypt

Genesis 21:22

ULT:
And it happened at that time that Abimelech and Phicol, the commander of his army, spoke to Abraham, saying, "God {is} with you in all that you do.

UST:
Meanwhile, one day {King} Abimelech {came} with his army captain Phicol to Abraham {and} said to him, "{I have noticed that} God {is} with you {and helps you} in everything that you do.

And it happened at that time (ULT)

Meanwhile, one day (UST)

Consider what is the best way to introduce a new episode here in your language. Alternate translation: [Around that same time]

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

God {is} with you in all that you do (ULT)

{I have noticed that} God {is} with you {and helps you} in everything that you do (UST)

Alternate translation: [I have noticed that God is with you and blesses you in everything that you do]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Abimelech
- the commander of
- Abraham
- God

UST
- {King} Abimelech

- his army captain
- to Abraham
- {I have noticed that} God

Genesis 21:23

ULT:
So now, swear to me here by God if you will deal falsely with me or with my children or with my descendants. According to the kindness that I have done to you, do to me and to the land which you are sojourning in."

UST:
Now then, {please} vow to me here in God's presence that you will never {again} deceive me or my children or my descendants. {Instead,} just as I have treated you kindly, {vow that} you will {also} be kind to me and {my people in} this country where you are living."

So now, swear (ULT)

Now then, {please} vow (UST)

This is an imperative, but it communicates a polite request rather than a command. Use a form in your language that communicates a polite request. It may be helpful to add an expression such as "please" to make this clear. See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 20:7. Alternate translation: [So now, please swear]

Support Reference: Imperatives — Other Uses

---

swear to me here by God (ULT)

{please} vow to me here in God's presence (UST)

To "swear … by God" means that Abraham would be accountable to God, asking him to be his witness and to punish him if he breaks his oath to King Abimelech. It does not mean that Abraham used swear words or other foul language. If this custom is not familiar to many people in your language area, you could put this information in a footnote. See how you translated a similar sentence in Genesis 14:22. Alternate translation: [solemnly promise me here with God as your witness]

Support Reference: Oath Formulas

---

if you will deal falsely with me (ULT)

that you will never {again} deceive me (UST)

According to custom, Abimelech is leaving out the part of the oath that tells what Yahweh will do to Abraham if he violates the oath. Because of the power of spoken words, people left that part to be understood silently. You could supply these words if it would be clearer and not offensive in your language. Alternate translation: [that he should punish you severely if you will deal falsely with me]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

According to the kindness that I have done to you (ULT)

{Instead,} just as I have treated you kindly (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **kindness**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [Rather, just as I have treated you kindly] or [But just as I have been kind to you]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

---

do to me and to the land (ULT)

{vow that} you will {also} be kind to me and {my people in} this country (UST)

In this context, the phrase **the land** refers to the people who live in the land. Alternate translation: [vow that you will also be kind to me and the people in this land]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

which you are sojourning in (ULT)

where you are living (UST)

Alternate translation: [where you are sojourning] or [where you are living as a foreigner]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- swear
- by God
- with me
- or with my descendants
- According to the kindness
- the land

UST

- {please} vow
- in God's presence
- me
- or my descendants
- {Instead,} just as I have treated you kindly
- and {my people in} this country

Genesis 21:24

ULT:
And Abraham said, "I swear."

UST:
Abraham replied {to him}, "I vow {that I will do those things}."

I swear (ULT)

I vow {that I will do those things} (UST)

See how you translated **swear** in verse 23. Alternate translation: [I swear that I will do those things] or [I solemnly promise that I will do that]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

And Abraham said (ULT)

Abraham replied {to him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Abraham said to Abimelech]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Abraham
- swear

UST
- Abraham
- vow {that I will do those things}

Genesis 21:25

ULT:
Then Abraham complained to Abimelech on account of the well of water that the servants of Abimelech had seized.

UST:
Then Abraham {also} confronted {King} Abimelech about a water well that Abimelech's servants had taken control of {from Abraham's servants}.

Then Abraham complained to (ULT)

Then Abraham {also} confronted (UST)

Alternate translation: [But then he confronted] or [Then he also protested to]

---

on account of (ULT)

about (UST)

Alternate translation: [regarding]

---

the well of water (ULT)

a water well (UST)

See how you translated **well of water** in verse 19. Alternate translation: [a well of water] or [the water well] or [a well]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Then … complained to
- Abraham
- Abimelech

- the well of
- had seized
- the servants of
- Abimelech

UST

- Then … {also} confronted
- Abraham
- {King} Abimelech
- a water well
- had taken control of {from Abraham's servants}
- s servants
- Abimelech

Genesis 21:26

ULT:
Then Abimelech said, “I do not know who has done this thing. And also you did not tell me, and also I have not heard about it until today.”

UST:
But Abimelech responded, “I have no idea who did that. Besides that, you did not tell me {about it} {before}, and so today is the first that I have heard about it.”

who has done this thing (ULT)

who did that (UST)

Alternate translation: [who took your well from you] or [who took control of your well]

---

you did not tell me (ULT)

you did not tell me {about it} {before} (UST)

Alternate translation: [you did not inform me about that before] or [you never told me about this]

---

and also (ULT)

and so (UST)

Alternate translation: [furthermore] or [and finally]

I have not heard about it until today (ULT)

today is the first that I have heard about it (UST)

Alternate translation: [I knew nothing about it until today] or [today is the first time that I have heard about it]

And also (ULT)

Besides that (UST)

Here Abimelech is introducing an additional explanation of his innocence in this matter. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: [Furthermore]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abimelech
- I do … know
- did … tell
- today

UST

- Abimelech
- I have no idea
- did … tell me {about it} {before}
- today is the first that I have heard about it

Genesis 21:27

ULT:
Then Abraham took sheep and cattle, and he gave them to Abimelech, and the two of them cut a covenant.

UST:
Then Abraham gave {some of his} sheep and cattle to Abimelech, and he and Abimelech made a {peace} treaty {with one another}.

and the two of them cut a covenant (ULT)

and he and Abimelech made a {peace} treaty {with one another} (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 15:18. Alternate translation: [and he and Abimelech made a peace agreement with one another]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abraham
- sheep
- and cattle
- to Abimelech
- a covenant

UST

- Abraham
- {some of his} sheep
- and cattle
- to Abimelech
- a {peace} treaty {with one another}

Genesis 21:28

ULT:
Then Abraham set apart seven ewe lambs of the flock by themselves.

UST:
Abraham {also} separated seven female lambs from the rest of the flock.

Then Abraham set apart (ULT)

Abraham {also} separated (UST)

Alternate translation: [Abraham also isolated]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Abraham
- ewe lambs of
- the flock

UST
- Abraham
- female lambs from
- the rest of the flock

Genesis 21:29

ULT:
So Abimelech said to Abraham, “What {are} they, these seven ewe lambs that you have set apart by themselves?”

UST:
So Abimelech asked him, “Why did you separate those seven lambs {from the rest of the flock}?”

What {are} they, these seven ewe lambs that you have set apart by themselves (ULT)

Why did you separate those seven lambs {from the rest of the flock} (UST)

See how you translated **set apart** in verse 28. Alternate translation: [What is the reason that you set apart those seven lambs?] or [Why did you put those seven lambs off by themselves?] or [Why did you isolate those seven lambs from the rest of the sheep?]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Abimelech
- Abraham
- ewe lambs

UST
- Abimelech
- him
- lambs

Genesis 21:30

ULT:
And he said, "Because you must take the seven ewe lambs from my hand, so that it can be a witness for me that I dug this well."

UST:
Abraham replied, "Because I want you to accept them from me, to show {everyone} that you agree with me that I dug this well {and it belongs to me}."

And he said (ULT)

Abraham replied (UST)

Alternate translation: [Abraham answered him]

---

so that it can be a witness for me (ULT)

to show {everyone} that you agree with me (UST)

Alternate translation: [to verify to everyone]

---

that I dug this well (ULT)

that I dug this well {and it belongs to me} (UST)

Alternate translation: [that I dug this well and so it is mine] or [that I am the one who dug this well and it belongs to me]

Because you must take the seven ewe lambs (ULT)

Because I want you to accept them (UST)

Alternate translation: [Those seven lambs are for you to accept] or [Because I want you to take them]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the … ewe lambs
- well

UST
- them
- well

Genesis 21:31

ULT:
For that {reason} he called that place Beersheba, because there the two of them swore an oath.

UST:
{Abimelech accepted the lambs,} so Abraham named that place Beersheba, {which means "Well of the Seven" or "Well of the Vow,"} because that's where they both vowed {to live at peace with one another}.

For that {reason} (ULT)

{Abimelech accepted the lambs,} so (UST)

Alternate translation: [That is why] or [So]

---

he called that place (ULT)

Abraham named that place (UST)

The phrase **he called** often means that people in general gave a city or other place a certain name. Here it could be that Abraham named the place Beersheba, and then later other people called it the same name, and it became well known by that name. See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 19:22. Alternate translation: [Abraham called that place] or [they call that place] or [that place was called]

Beersheba (ULT)

Beersheba, {which means "Well of the Seven" or "Well of the Vow … } (UST)

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Beersheba** in verse 14. Also, if you include the meaning of the name in your translation or in a footnote, make sure that the way you translate

“vow” or **oath** here matches the way you translate **oath** later in this verse. Alternate translation: [Well of the Oath]

---

because there (ULT)

because that’s where (UST)

Alternate translation: [because it was there that] or [because that is where]

---

swore an oath (ULT)

vowed {to live at peace with one another} (UST)

See how you translated “swear” in verses 23–24. Alternate translation: [made a vow to each other] or [solemnly promised each other to live in peace]

---

the two of them (ULT)

they both (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 27. Alternate translation: [he and Abimelech both]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Beersheba
- he called
- Beersheba
- swore an oath

UST

- Beersheba, {which means “Well of the Seven” or “Well of the Vow … }
- Abraham named
- Beersheba, {which means “Well of the Seven” or “Well of the Vow … }

- vowed {to live at peace with one another}

Genesis 21:32

ULT:
So they cut the covenant at Beersheba. Then Abimelech and Phicol, the commander of his army, got up and returned to the land of the Philistines.

UST:
After Abraham and {King} Abimelech made their {peace} treaty at Beersheba, Abimelech and his army captain Phicol left {from there} and went back to {their homes in} the Philistines' territory {that Abimelech ruled over}.

So they cut the covenant at Beersheba (ULT)

After Abraham and {King} Abimelech made their {peace} treaty at Beersheba (UST)

See how you translated the idiom "cut … covenant" in 15:18. Alternate translation: [After Abraham and King Abimelech established their peace agreement at Beersheba]

Support Reference: Idiom

Then Abimelech and Phicol, the commander of his army, got up (ULT)

Abimelech and his army captain Phicol left {from there} (UST)

See how you translated **got up** in verse 22. Alternate translation: [Abimelech and Phicol, his army commander left from there] or [Abimelech and his army commander Phicol left Abraham]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- at Beersheba
- the covenant
- at Beersheba
- Abimelech
- the commander of
- the land of

- the Philistines

UST

- at Beersheba
- their {peace} treaty
- at Beersheba
- Abimelech
- his army captain
- their homes in} the Philistines' territory {that Abimelech ruled over}
- their homes in} the Philistines' territory {that Abimelech ruled over}

Genesis 21:33

ULT:
Then he planted a tamarisk tree at Beersheba, and there he called on the name of Yahweh, the God of eternity.

UST:
Then Abraham planted an {evergreen} tree {named} tamarisk at {the place called} Beersheba, and there he worshiped Yahweh, {who is} the God who lives forever.

a tamarisk tree (ULT)

an {evergreen} tree {named} tamarisk (UST)

The tamarisk tree (also known as salt-cedar) is a small-leaved evergreen tree that grows up to 30 feet (9 meters) high and provides shade. It grows well in desert areas that have salty soil. You could put some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [a salt-cedar tree] or [an evergreen tree named salt-cedar]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

---

and there he called on the name of Yahweh (ULT)

and there he worshiped Yahweh (UST)

See how you translated this clause in Genesis 12:8 and a similar clause in 13:4. Alternate translation: [and he praised Yahweh by name there] or [and he addressed Yahweh there by his name as he praised him] or [and there he praised Yahweh]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- at Beersheba
- Then he planted
- at Beersheba
- and … he called

- Yahweh
- the God
- of eternity

UST

- at {the place called} Beersheba
- Then Abraham planted
- at {the place called} Beersheba
- and there he worshiped Yahweh
- and there he worshiped Yahweh
- {who is} the God
- who lives forever

Genesis 21:34

ULT:
Then Abraham sojourned in the land of the Philistines many days.

UST:
After that, Abraham lived {there} in the Philistines' territory for many years.

Then Abraham sojourned (ULT)

After that, Abraham lived {there} (UST)

See how you translated "sojourning" in verse 23. Alternate translation: [After that, he stayed there]

---

in the land of the Philistines (ULT)

in the Philistines' territory (UST)

Alternate translation: [in the territory that was occupied by the Philistines] or [in the territory where the Philistines lived]

---

many days (ULT)

for many years (UST)

Abraham lived in the Philistines' territory for around 25 years, so keep that in mind as you translate this phrase. For some languages it is clearer or more natural to put this time phrase earlier in this sentence and say, "… lived there for many years in the land …"

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abraham
- in the land of
- the Philistines
- days

UST

- Abraham
- in the … territory
- Philistines
- for … years

Genesis 22

Genesis 22:1

ULT:
Then it happened after those things that God tested Abraham. And he said to him, "Abraham!" And he said, "Behold me."

UST:
Sometime later God {decided to} test Abraham. So he called to him, "Abraham!" Abraham replied, "Yes, {Lord}?"

Then it happened after those things (ULT)

Sometime later (UST)

This is the beginning of a new episode that takes place around twelve years after Abraham and King Abimelech made their treaty (chapter 21). See how you translated "after those events" in Genesis 15:1; it may be necessary to translate this phrase in a slightly different way here because of the different context. Alternate translation: [Sometime after those things happened] or [Several years later]

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

---

that God tested Abraham (ULT)

God {decided to} test Abraham (UST)

Make sure your translation of this clause does not sound like the test was over. Rather it introduces what the following episode is about. Alternate translation: [God wanted to test Abraham]

And he said (ULT)

So he called (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation who is speaking here. Alternate translation: [Abraham replied to him]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

Behold me (ULT)

Yes, {Lord} (UST)

Abraham is responding to God with the courteous expression that a person in this culture would use to tell a superior that he had heard a summons and was ready and willing to obey. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [Yes, Master?] or [What is it, Lord]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- that God
- tested
- Abraham
- Abraham

UST

- God
- {decided to} test
- Abraham
- Abraham

Genesis 22:2

ULT:
Then he said, "Please take your son, your only {son} whom you love, Isaac, and go yourself to the land of Moriah, and sacrifice him there as a burnt offering on one of the mountains that I will tell to you."

UST:
Then God commanded {him}, "Take your son {with you}, {yes,} your only son Isaac whom you love, and travel {with him} to the region of Moriah. There you are to burn him up {on an altar} as a sacrifice {to me}, on one of the mountains that I will show to you."

Then he said (ULT)

Then God commanded {him} (UST)

Translate this quote margin in a way that fits this context well. Alternate translation: [Then God said to him] or [Then God told him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Please take your son (ULT)

Take your son {with you} (UST)

See how you translated "please" when God is talking to a person in Genesis 13:14; 15:5. Your translation of **take** here should not imply the use of force. See how you translated "took" in Genesis 11:31 and 12:5.

Please take your son, your only {son} whom you love (ULT)

Take your son {with you}, {yes,} your only son … whom you love (UST)

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. Hebrew poetry was based on this kind of repetition, and it would be good to show this to your readers by including both phrases in your

translation rather than combining them. It may be clearer in your language to connect the phrases with a word other than **and** in order to show that the second phrase is repeating the first one, not saying something additional. Alternate translation: [Please take your son, yes, your only son whom you love]

Support Reference: Parallelism

---

and go yourself (ULT)

and travel {with him} (UST)

It is understood that he was to take Isaac with him. If this is not clear in your language, you could make that information explicit. Alternate translation: [and go with him]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

to the land of Moriah (ULT)

to the region of Moriah (UST)

Alternate translation: [to the region called Moriah] or [to the Moriah Region]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

and sacrifice him there as a burnt offering (ULT)

There you are to burn him up {on an altar} as a sacrifice {to me} (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 8:20. Alternate translation: [and offer him there to me as a burnt offering] or [There you are to burn him up on an altar as a offering to me]

---

on one of the mountains (ULT)

on one of the mountains (UST)

Alternate translation: [on top of one of the mountains] or [on top of a mountain]

---

that I will tell to you (ULT)

that I will show to you (UST)

Alternate translation: [that I will point out to you]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- you love
- Isaac
- the land of
- as a burnt offering

UST

- you love
- Isaac
- the region of
- as a sacrifice {to me}

Genesis 22:3

ULT:
So Abraham got up early in the morning and saddled his donkey. Then he took two of his young men with him and Isaac his son, and he cut wood for the burnt offering. Then he got up and left for the place that God had told to him.

UST:
So the next morning Abraham got up early and put a {pack} saddle on his donkey {to get it ready} {for the trip}. Then he got his son Isaac and two of his servants, and they chopped {some} {fire}wood that they would use to burn the sacrifice {and loaded it on the donkey}. Then they started traveling to the place that God had told Abraham {to go to}.

So Abraham got up early in the morning (ULT)

So the next morning Abraham got up early (UST)

See how you translated **got up early in the morning** in Genesis 20:8. Alternate translation: [So the next morning, Abraham got up early] or [Early the next morning Abraham got up]

Then he took two of his young men with him and Isaac his son (ULT)

Then he got his son Isaac and two of his servants (UST)

Alternate translation: [He took two of his servants with him and his son Isaac] or [Then he took his son Isaac and two of his servants]

---

and he cut wood (ULT)

and they chopped {some} {fire}wood (UST)

The reason Abraham is the only one mentioned in this clause and in the next sentence is that he is in focus. He did not travel alone and he probably did not chop the wood alone. Decide whether or not you need to make that explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: [and he split some firewood with them] or [and they chopped some firewood together]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

for the burnt offering (ULT)

that they would use to burn the sacrifice {and loaded it on the donkey} (UST)

Some languages must translate this noun phrase using a verb. Do what is natural in your language. See what you did in verse 2. Alternate translation: [to use for the burnt offering and loaded it on the donkey] or [that they would use to burn the offering and loaded it on the donkey]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

Then he got up and left for the place (ULT)

Then they started traveling to the place (UST)

In this context, **got up** is used as an idiom that means Abraham started an activity. It does not mean that he was sitting down and literally stood up. Alternate translation: [Then he set out with them for the place] or [Then they started traveling to the mountain]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

that God had told to him (ULT)

that God had told Abraham {to go to} (UST)

Alternate translation: [that God had told him to go to]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abraham
- his donkey

- his young men
- Isaac
- for the burnt offering
- God

UST

- Abraham
- his donkey
- his servants
- Isaac
- that they would use to burn the sacrifice {and loaded it on the donkey}
- God

Genesis 22:4

ULT:
On the third day Abraham lifted his eyes and he saw the place from a distance.

UST:
Three days later Abraham looked {ahead} and in the distance he could see the mountain {where they were headed}.

On the third day (ULT)

Three days later (UST)

Alternate translation: [After walking for three days]

Abraham lifted his eyes (ULT)

Abraham looked {ahead} (UST)

See how you translated the idiom **lifted his eyes** in Genesis 18:2. It may be necessary to translate it differently here, because of the different context. Alternate translation: [he looked up]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and he saw the place from a distance (ULT)

and in the distance he could see the mountain {where they were headed} (UST)

Consider where it is best in your language to put the location phrase **from a distance** or "in the distance." Alternate translation: [and he could see the place where they were headed in the distance] or [and in the distance he could see the place where they were going]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- On the … day
- Abraham

UST

- days later
- Abraham looked {ahead}

Genesis 22:5

ULT:
Then Abraham said to his young men, "Stay here by yourselves with the donkey, and I and the boy will go over there and bow down. Then we will come back to you."

UST:
Then he told his servants, "You {two} stay here with the donkey, while my son and I go {to the mountain} over there and worship {God}. Then we will come back to you."

Then Abraham said to his young men (ULT)

Then he told his servants (UST)

Be consistent here with how you translated **young men** in verse 3. Alternate translation: [Then Abraham told his servants]

Stay here by yourselves with the donkey (ULT)

You {two} stay here with the donkey (UST)

Some languages have special dual pronouns (that refer to only two people) that can be used in verse 5 to refer to Abraham's two servants.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

---

and I and the boy will go (ULT)

while my son and I go (UST)

See how you translated **the boy** in Genesis 21:12, 17–20. We do not know for sure how old Isaac was at this time, but estimates range between 18 and 37 years old. Make sure your translation of **boy** allows for that fact. Alternate translation: [while the young man and I go]

---

over there (ULT)

{to the mountain} over there (UST)

Alternate translation: [over there to that mountain]

---

and bow down (ULT)

and worship {God} (UST)

In that culture, people had the custom of bowing down to worship God. Make sure it is clear in your translation why Abraham and Isaac would bow down. Alternate translation: [and bow down to worship God]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

Then we will come back to you (ULT)

Then we will come back to you (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then we will return to you here] or [After that, we will come back here to you]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abraham
- his young men
- the donkey
- and bow down

UST

- Then he told
- his servants
- the donkey

- and worship {God}

Genesis 22:6

ULT:
Then Abraham took the wood for the burnt offering and put {it} on Isaac his son, and he took in his hand{s} the fire {pot} and the knife. Then the two of them went on together,

UST:
Then Abraham took the wood for the burnt offering {off the donkey} and loaded {it} on his son Isaac{'s shoulder} {to carry}. He {himself} carried a fire {pot} {with hot coals in it} and a knife {to kill the sacrifice}. Then the two of them walked on together.

Then Abraham took the wood for the burnt offering (ULT)

Then Abraham took the wood for the burnt offering {off the donkey} (UST)

See how you translated "firewood" and **burnt offering** in verse 3. Alternate translation: [Then he took the firewood for the burnt offering off the donkey] or [Then he took the firewood that they would use to burn the sacrifice]

---

and put {it} on Isaac his son (ULT)

and loaded {it} on his son Isaac{'s shoulder} {to carry} (UST)

The Hebrew text does not specify exactly where Abraham put the wood on Isaac. Only specify that in a translation if it is necessary in your language. Alternate translation: [and gave it to his son Isaac to carry]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and he took in his hand{s} (ULT)

He {himself} carried (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he himself carried]

---

the fire {pot} (ULT)

a fire {pot} {with hot coals in it} (UST)

The **fire** can either refer to hot coals (in a pot) or to a flint stone and wood chips that they would use to start the fire on the altar. Make sure that your translation of this phrase does not mean that Abraham was holding fire or hot coals in his bare hands. Alternate translation: [a fire pot with hot embers in it] or [the other things to make a fire]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

and the knife (ULT)

and a knife {to kill the sacrifice} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and a sacrifice knife]

Then the two of them went on together (ULT)

Then the two of them walked on together (UST)

Some languages have a dual pronoun that could be used here. Alternate translation: [Then Abraham and Isaac walked on together] or [Then they continued walking toward the mountain]

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abraham
- the burnt offering
- Isaac

UST

- Abraham
- the burnt offering

- Isaac{’s shoulder} {to carry}

Genesis 22:7

ULT:
and Isaac spoke to Abraham his father and said, “My father?” And he said, “Behold me, my son.” Then he said, “Behold the fire and the wood, but where {is} the lamb for the burnt offering?”

UST:
{As they walked,} Isaac said to Abraham, “Father?” Abraham replied, “Yes, my son?” Then Isaac asked {him}, “I see {that we have} the fire {coals} and the {fire}wood, but where {is} the lamb that {we} will burn as a sacrifice {to God}?”

and Isaac spoke to Abraham his father and said (ULT)

{As they walked,} Isaac said to Abraham (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin in your language. Alternate translation: [and as they went Isaac said to his father Abraham]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

And he said (ULT)

Abraham replied (UST)

Consider what is the best way to refer to Abraham at this point in the paragraph in your language. Alternate translation: [Abraham said to him]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

Behold me, my son (ULT)

Yes, my son (UST)

See how you translated the idiom **Behold me** in verse 1. Alternate translation: [What is it, my son?]

Support Reference: Idiom

Then he said (ULT)

Then Isaac asked {him} (UST)

Make sure that the way you translate this quote margin fits well with what Isaac says next.

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Behold (ULT)

I see {that we have} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Here is]

---

the fire and the wood (ULT)

the fire {coals} and the {fire}wood (UST)

Alternate translation: [the fire pot and the firewood] or [what we need to make a fire to burn the sacrifice]

---

for the burnt offering (ULT)

that {we} will burn as a sacrifice {to God} (UST)

Alternate translation: [for us to use as the burnt offering?] or [for us to burn as our sacrifice to God?] or [that we will burn as our offering to God?]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Isaac
- Abraham
- the lamb
- for the burnt offering

UST

- Isaac
- Abraham
- the lamb
- that {we} will burn as a sacrifice {to God}

Genesis 22:8

ULT:
And Abraham said, "God will see for himself the lamb for the burnt offering, my son." Then the two of them went on together.

UST:
Abraham answered {him}, "My son, God himself will provide a lamb for us to burn as a sacrifice {to him}." Then they continued walking together {toward the mountain}.

And Abraham said (ULT)

Abraham answered {him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Abraham said to him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

God will see for himself (ULT)

God himself will provide (UST)

God will see for himself is an idiom that means God will provide the lamb. Make sure this meaning is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: [God himself will see to it that there is]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

my son (ULT)

My son (UST)

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to put this address first in this quote and say, "My son, God himself will …"

Support Reference: Information Structure

Then the two of them went on (ULT)

Then they continued walking … toward the mountain (UST)

See how you translated **the two of them** in verse 6. Alternate translation: [So the two of them walked on together] or [So they continued walking together toward the mountain]

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abraham
- God
- the lamb
- for the burnt offering

UST

- Abraham
- God himself
- a lamb
- for us to burn as a sacrifice {to him}

Genesis 22:9

ULT:
Then they came to the place that God had told to him, and there Abraham built the altar and arranged the wood. Then he bound Isaac his son and laid him on the altar, on top of the wood.

UST:
When they reached the place that God had told him {to go to}, Abraham built a {stone} altar there and put the wood {on top of it}. Then he tied his son Isaac{'s arms and legs} {with rope} and laid him on top of the wood on the altar.

Then they came to (ULT)

When they reached (UST)

Alternate translation: [After they got to] or [After they arrived at] or [After they reached]

---

the place that God had told to him (ULT)

the place that God had told him {to go to} (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 3. Alternate translation: [the mountain that God had told him to go to]

---

and arranged the wood (ULT)

and put the wood {on top of it} (UST)

Abraham arranged the wood on top of the altar so that it would burn well. Make sure your translation of this phrase does not sound like he lit the fire yet; he did not do that until verse 13 when he sacrificed the ram. Alternate translation: [and laid the wood on top of it]

---

and laid him on the altar, on top of the wood (ULT)

and laid him on top of the wood on the altar (UST)

Consider which order of these phrases is the clearest and most natural in your language.
Alternate translation: [and put him on top of the wood that was on the altar]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- Abraham
- the altar
- Then he bound
- Isaac
- the altar

UST

- God
- Abraham
- a {stone} altar
- Then he tied … with rope
- Isaac{'s arms and legs}
- the altar

Genesis 22:10

ULT:
Then Abraham reached out his hand and took the knife to kill his son.

UST:
Then he picked up the knife {in order} to kill his son.

Then Abraham reached out his hand and took the knife (ULT)

Then he picked up the knife (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to use a noun or a pronoun to refer to Abraham here. See how you translated **knife** in verse 6. Alternate translation: [Then he took the knife in his hand]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

to kill his son (ULT)

{in order} to kill his son (UST)

In the process of sacrificing, the first step was to kill the sacrifice and then burn up the body on the altar. If necessary, you could make that information explicit in your translation or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [in order to kill his son before sacrificing his body on the altar]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Abraham
- to kill

UST
- Then he picked up
- {in order} to kill

Genesis 22:11

ULT:
But an angel of Yahweh called to him from heaven and said, “Abraham! Abraham!” And he said, “Behold me.”

UST:
But one of Yahweh’s angels called to him from heaven, “Abraham! Abraham!” And he replied, “Yes, {Lord}?”

But an angel of Yahweh called (ULT)

But one of Yahweh’s angels called (UST)

Make sure in your translation that it does not sound like Abraham killed Isaac. See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 21:17. Alternate translation: [But before Abraham could use the knife, an angel from Yahweh called]

---

to him from heaven and said, “Abraham! Abraham (ULT)

to him from heaven, “Abraham! Abraham (UST)

The angel repeats Abraham’s name to communicate urgency and that he wants him to stop and listen. Make sure your translation does not sound like the angel was angry or criticizing Abraham.

And he said (ULT)

And he replied (UST)

Alternate translation: [Abraham replied to the angel]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Behold me (ULT)

Yes, {Lord} (UST)

See how you translated **Behold me** in verse 1. Alternate translation: [What is it, Master?] or [Yes, Master?]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- But … called
- an angel of
- Yahweh
- heaven
- Abraham
- Abraham

UST

- But … called
- one of … s angels
- Yahweh
- heaven
- Abraham
- Abraham

Genesis 22:12

ULT:
Then he said, "Do not reach out your hand against the boy! And {do} not do anything to him, because now I know that you fear God, since you have not withheld your son, your only {son}, from me."

UST:
Then the angel told {him}, "Do not harm your son or do anything {else} to him. Now I know that you revere me, since you {obeyed me and} did not refuse to sacrifice your son to me, {even though he is} your only son."

Then he said (ULT)

Then the angel told {him} (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that the angel is speaking here, not Abraham. Alternate translation: [Then the angel said]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

Do not reach out your hand against (ULT)

Do not harm (UST)

Consider whether your language has an idiom that has the same meaning as the Hebrew idiom here. Alternate translation: [Do not lay your hands on] or [Do not kill]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

the boy (ULT)

your son (UST)

See how you translated this in verse 5. Alternate translation: [the young man]

And {do} not do anything to him (ULT)

or do anything {else} to him (UST)

The angel repeats the previous command (using different words) in order to emphasize that Abraham should not hurt Isaac. Most languages can do something similar. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Do not do anything to harm him] or [You must not do anything to harm him] or [You must not harm him in any way]

Support Reference: Parallelism

---

because now I know (ULT)

Now I know (UST)

Yahweh is the one talking here, represented by the angel who speaks on his behalf, or perhaps God is appearing to Abraham as an angel. Alternate translation: [Now I see] or [You have shown me]

---

since you have not withheld your son, your only {son}, from me (ULT)

since you {obeyed me and} did not refuse to sacrifice your son to me, {even though he is} your only son (UST)

Alternate translation: [because you obeyed me and did not hold back your son from me, yes your only son] or [because you obeyed me and did not refuse to sacrifice your son to me, even though he is your only son]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- I know
- fear
- God

UST

- I know
- you revere me
- you revere me

Genesis 22:13

ULT:
Then Abraham lifted his eyes and looked, and behold, a ram {was} behind {him}, caught in the thicket by its horns. So Abraham went and took the ram, and sacrificed it as a burnt offering instead of his son.

UST:
Then Abraham looked around and there behind {him} he saw a ram that had its horns stuck in a bush. So he {released Isaac,} went {over to the ram} and untangled it. {Then he killed it} and burned it {on the altar} as a sacrifice {to God} in place of his son.

Then Abraham lifted his eyes and looked (ULT)

Then Abraham looked around (UST)

See how you translated **lifted his eyes and looked** in Genesis 18:2.

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and behold, a ram {was} behind {him} (ULT)

and there behind {him} he saw a ram (UST)

A ram is an adult male sheep or goat. See how you translated this term in Genesis 15:9.
Alternate translation: [and suddenly he saw a ram behind him]

---

caught in the thicket by its horns (ULT)

that had its horns stuck in a bush (UST)

Alternate translation: [that had caught its horns in the thicket] or [that had its horns caught in a bush]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

So Abraham went and took the ram (ULT)

So he {released Isaac,} went {over to the ram} and untangled it (UST)

For some languages it may be necessary to explicitly state that Abraham untied Isaac and took him off the altar before he sacrificed the ram. Alternate translation: [So after releasing Isaac, he took the ram from the thicket] or [So he untied Isaac, went over to the ram and untangled it]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and sacrificed it as a burnt offering (ULT)

Then he killed it} and burned it {on the altar} as a sacrifice {to God} (UST)

Animals that were sacrificed to God as burnt offerings were killed first before they were burned on an altar. Make sure your translation does not sound like the ram was burned alive. If that is not clear, you could make some of the above implied information explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: [Then he killed the ram and burned it on the altar as a offering to God]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

instead of his son (ULT)

in place of his son (UST)

Alternate translation: [as a substitute for his son]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the ram
- Abraham
- a ram
- by its horns
- Abraham

- as a burnt offering

UST

- and untangled it
- Then Abraham looked around
- a ram
- its horns
- So he {released Isaac,} went {over to the ram}
- as a sacrifice {to God}

Genesis 22:14

ULT:
So Abraham called the name of that place Yahweh-Yireh, as it is said {to} this day, "On the mountain of Yahweh it will be seen."

UST:
That is why Abraham named that place Yahweh-Yireh, {which means "Yahweh will provide"}. {Even} today people {still} say, "On Yahweh's mountain he will provide what you need."

So Abraham called the name of that place (ULT)

That is why Abraham named that place (UST)

Make sure it is clear that what Yahweh did in verse 13 is the reason that Abraham gave that place the name **Yahweh-Yireh** in verse 14. Alternate translation: [That is why Abraham called that place] or [Because God provided the ram, Abraham called that place]

Yahweh-Yireh (ULT)

Yahweh-Yireh, {which means "Yahweh will provide … } (UST)

If you include the meaning of this name in your translation text or in a footnote, be consistent with how you translate the verb "see/provide" in verse 8 (and later in verse 14), which the name is based on.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

as it is said {to} this day (ULT)

{Even} today people {still} say (UST)

This refers to the time period when Moses was writing this book. If that is not clear, you could put that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [Even now people still say]

---

it will be seen (ULT)

he will provide what you need (UST)

See how you translated this idiom in verse 8. Alternate translation: [it will be provided by him] or [he will see to it that we have what we need] or [he will provide what we need]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- So … called
- Abraham
- Yahweh
- {to} this day
- Yahweh

UST

- That is why Abraham named
- That is why Abraham named
- Yahweh-Yireh, {which means “Yahweh will provide … }
- {Even} today people {still} say
- Yahweh

Genesis 22:15

ULT:
Then the angel of Yahweh called to Abraham a second {time} from heaven

UST:
Then Yahweh's angel called to Abraham from heaven again.

Then the angel of Yahweh called to Abraham a second {time} from heaven (ULT)

Then Yahweh's angel called to Abraham from heaven again (UST)

See how you translated "called … from heaven" in verse 11, and how you translated **angel** in verses 11–12.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then … called
- the angel of
- Yahweh
- Abraham
- heaven

UST

- Then … called
- s angel
- Yahweh
- Abraham
- heaven

Genesis 22:16

ULT:
and said, "I swear by myself, a declaration of Yahweh, that it is because you have done this thing and have not withheld your son, your only {son},

UST:
He said, "This is what Yahweh declares {to you}: 'With myself {as my own witness}, I vow {to you} that since you have obeyed me and did not hold back your son {from me}, {yes,} your only son,

I swear by myself, a declaration of Yahweh (ULT)

This is what Yahweh declares {to you}: 'With myself {as my own witness}, I vow {to you} (UST)

See how you translated **swear** in Genesis 21:23–24.

---

that it is because you have done this thing (ULT)

that since you have obeyed me (UST)

Alternate translation: [that since you have done what I said] or [that since you obeyed me]

---

and have not withheld your son (ULT)

and did not hold back your son {from me} (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 12. Alternate translation: [and did not refuse to sacrifice your son to me] or [were willing to give your son to me]

---

your only {son} (ULT)

{yes,} your only son (UST)

See how you translated this in verse 12. Alternate translation: [even though he is your only son]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- I swear
- a declaration of
- Yahweh

UST

- I vow {to you}
- This is what … declares {to you}
- Yahweh

Genesis 22:17

ULT:
that I will greatly bless you, and I will greatly multiply your offspring as the stars of the heavens and as the sand that {is} on the shore of the sea, and your offspring will possess the gate{s} of their enemies.

UST:
I will abundantly bless you. In fact, I will give you so many descendants {that they will be} {as numerous} as the stars in the sky and {as numerous} as the {grains of} sand on the seashore. They will defeat their enemies and rule over them.

that I will greatly bless you (ULT)

I will abundantly bless you (UST)

Alternate translation: [I will surely bless you] or [I will surely cause you to prosper greatly]

---

and I will greatly multiply your offspring (ULT)

In fact, I will give you so many descendants {that they will be} (UST)

Alternate translation: [I will greatly increase the number of your descendants so that they will be] or [In fact, I will give you so many offspring that they will be]

---

as the stars of the heavens (ULT)

{as numerous} as the stars in the sky (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that God is comparing the number of stars and grains of sand to the number of descendants Abraham will have. There will be so many that no one can count them all (as in Genesis 13:16 and 15:6). Alternate translation: [as many as the stars in the sky]

Support Reference: Simile

---

and as the sand that {is} on the shore of the sea (ULT)

and {as numerous} as the {grains of} sand on the seashore (UST)

Alternate translation: [and as many as the grains of sand on the seashore]

---

and your offspring will possess the gate{s} of their enemies (ULT)

They will defeat their enemies and rule over them (UST)

Cities often had high stone walls surrounding them to protect the people inside. The gates in the walls were the only way to go in or out of a city. The idiom “possess the gates of … enemies” refers to taking control of the cities and conquering the people living there. Consider what is the best way to translate this idiom in your language. Alternate translation: [and they will conquer the cities of all their enemies] or [They will conquer all their enemies and rule over them] or [Your offspring will …]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- I will … bless you
- I will … multiply
- your offspring
- the heavens
- and … will possess
- your offspring
- the gate{s} of
- their enemies

UST

- I will … bless you
- In fact, I will give you so many descendants {that they will be}
- In fact, I will give you so many descendants {that they will be}
- the sky
- They will defeat their enemies and rule over them

- They will defeat their enemies and rule over them
- They will defeat their enemies and rule over them
- They will defeat their enemies and rule over them

Genesis 22:18

ULT:
And in your offspring all the nations of the earth will be blessed, because you listened to my voice.”

UST:
Through your descendants {I} will bless all the people groups on the earth. {I will do that} because you obeyed me.’”

in your offspring (ULT)

Through your descendants (UST)

See how you translated **offspring** in verse 17. Alternate translation: [In your offspring] or [Because of your offspring] or [By means of your offspring]

---

because you listened to my voice (ULT)

{I will do that} because you obeyed me (UST)

Make sure your translation of **my voice** refers to what God commanded Abraham. Alternate translation: [because you heeded my command]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And … will be blessed
- in your offspring
- the nations of
- the earth

UST

- {I} will bless
- Through your descendants
- the people groups on

- the earth

Genesis 22:19

ULT:
Then Abraham returned to his young men, and they got up and went together to Beersheba. And Abraham stayed at Beersheba.

UST:
After that, Abraham returned {with Isaac} to his {two} servants. Then together they {all} traveled {back} {home} to {the city of} Beersheba, and Abraham {and his family} stayed there.

Then Abraham returned (ULT)

After that, Abraham returned {with Isaac} (UST)

Make sure your translation does not sound like Abraham returned alone (without Isaac). Alternate translation: [Afterwards Abraham and Isaac went back]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

to his young men (ULT)

to his {two} servants (UST)

Be consistent here with how you translated **young men** in verses 3 and 5. Alternate translation: [to the two servants]

---

and they got up and went together to Beersheba (ULT)

Then together they {all} traveled {back} {home} to {the city of} Beersheba (UST)

At that time, Abraham and his family were living in Beersheba (Genesis 21:31–34). So in your translation, it should not sound like Beersheba was a new destination; they were returning home. Alternate translation: [Then they returned home together to the city of Beersheba]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

And Abraham stayed at Beersheba (ULT)

and Abraham {and his family} stayed there (UST)

Make sure your translation does not sound like Abraham was living alone in Beersheba apart from his family. Alternate translation: [and Abraham continued to live there with his family] or [where Abraham and his family continued to live]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- at Beersheba
- Beersheba
- Abraham
- his young men
- Beersheba
- Abraham
- at Beersheba

UST

- there
- {the city of} Beersheba
- Abraham … with Isaac
- his {two} servants
- {the city of} Beersheba
- Abraham {and his family}
- there

Genesis 22:20

ULT:
Then it happened after those things that it was told to Abraham, saying, "Behold, Milcah, she too, has born sons for Nahor your brother:

UST:
Sometime later someone told Abraham, "I have news {for you}: Your brother Nahor and {his wife} Milcah also have {some} sons,

Then it happened after those things (ULT)

Sometime later (UST)

This phrase introduces a new topic. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language.

Alternate translation: [Sometime after that]

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

---

that it was told to Abraham, saying (ULT)

someone told Abraham (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language.

Support Reference: Active or Passive

Behold (ULT)

I have news {for you} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Listen] or [I have some news for you:]

Milcah, she too, has born sons for Nahor your brother (ULT)

Your brother Nahor and {his wife} Milcah also have {some} sons (UST)

For some languages it may be better to use an indirect quote in this verse and say, “Sometime later Abraham found out that his brother Nahor and Nahor’s wife Milcah had some sons,” Alternate translation: [Milcah the wife of your brother Nahor has born some sons for him] or [your brother Nahor and his wife Milcah also have some sons]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- that it was told
- to Abraham
- has born
- for Nahor

UST

- someone told Abraham
- someone told Abraham
- Your brother Nahor and {his wife} Milcah also have {some} sons
- Your brother Nahor and {his wife} Milcah also have {some} sons

---

Genesis 22:21

ULT:
Uz his firstborn and Buz his brother and Kemuel, the father of Aram,

UST:
The oldest son {is} Uz, {the second is} Buz, and {the third is} Kemuel, {who is} the father of Aram.

Uz his firstborn and Buz his brother and Kemuel (ULT)

The oldest son {is} Uz, {the second is} Buz, and {the third is} Kemuel (UST)

Alternate translation: [including their oldest son Uz, then Buz and Kemuel] or [The first one is Uz, the second is Buz, and the third is Kemuel]

---

the father of Aram (ULT)

{who is} the father of Aram (UST)

Alternate translation: [who fathered Aram] or [whose son is Aram]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- his firstborn
- Aram

UST
- The oldest son
- Aram

Genesis 22:22

ULT:
and Kesed and Hazo and Pildash and Jidlaph and Bethuel.”

UST:
{They also have sons named} Kesed, Hazo, Pildash, Jidlaph, and Bethuel.”

and (ULT)

They also have sons named (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that the people listed in verse 22 were sons of Nahor and Milcah, not sons of Kemuel (verse 21).

Kesed and Hazo and Pildash and Jidlaph and Bethuel (ULT)

Kesed, Hazo, Pildash, Jidlaph, and Bethuel (UST)

Consider whether it is best in your language to use a conjunction between each name in this list (like Hebrew does), or only before the last name in the list. See what you did for a similar list of names in Genesis 10:26–29.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Bethuel

UST
- Bethuel

Genesis 22:23

ULT:
And Bethuel fathered Rebekah. Those {are} the eight {sons} Milcah bore for Nahor, the brother of Abraham.

UST:
Bethuel had {a daughter named} Rebekah. Those {are} the eight {sons} {that} Milcah had for Abraham's brother Nahor.

And Bethuel fathered Rebekah (ULT)

Bethuel had {a daughter named} Rebekah (UST)

Some translations put this sentence in parentheses to show that it is a separate comment by the author and not part of the previous quote. Also, see how you translated **fathered** in Genesis 11:27. Alternate translation: [Bethuel was the father of Rebekah]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- And Bethuel
- Rebekah
- for Nahor
- Abraham

UST
- Bethuel
- {a daughter named} Rebekah
- for … Nahor
- Abraham

Genesis 22:24

ULT:
And his concubine, and her name {was} Reumah, and she also bore Tebah and Gaham and Tahash and Maacah.

UST:
Besides that, Nahor and his servant-wife Reumah also had {some sons, including} Tebah, Gaham, Tahash, and Maacah.

And his concubine, and her name {was} Reumah, and she also bore (ULT)

Besides that, Nahor and his servant-wife Reumah also had {some sons … } (UST)

Alternate translation: [In addition to that, Nahor and his concubine Reumah also had some sons, including]

Tebah and Gaham and Tahash and Maacah (ULT)

{ … including} Tebah, Gaham, Tahash, and Maacah (UST)

See how you connected the list of names in verse 22.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Maacah
- And his concubine
- and … bore

UST

- Maacah
- Besides that, Nahor and his servant-wife Reumah also had {some sons … }
- Besides that, Nahor and his servant-wife Reumah also had {some sons … }

Genesis 23

Genesis 23:1

ULT:
Now the life of Sarah was 127 years; the years of the life of Sarah.

UST:
Sarah lived to be 127 years old. That is how old she was

Now the life of Sarah was 127 years (ULT)

Sarah lived to be 127 years old (UST)

Alternate translation: [Sarah lived 127 years]

---

the years of the life of Sarah (ULT)

That is how old she was (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to combine the last part of verse 1 with the beginning of verse 2 and say, “That is how old she was when she died in Kiriath Arba …” Alternate translation: [Yes, that is how long she lived] or [That is how old she lived to be]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Sarah
- 127 years
- 127 years
- 127 years
- the years of
- Sarah

UST
- Sarah

- 127 years old
- 127 years old
- 127 years old
- That is how old she was
- That is how old she was

Genesis 23:2

ULT:
Then Sarah died in Kiriath Arba, which {is} Hebron, in the land of Canaan. And Abraham went to mourn for Sarah and to weep for her.

UST:
when she died in {the city of} Kiriath Arba, which is {now called} Hebron, in the region of Canaan. Abraham went {to her} and cried and mourned for her.

Then Sarah died (ULT)

when she died (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then she died] or [before she died]

---

in Kiriath Arba (ULT)

in {the city of} Kiriath Arba (UST)

You can spell this name as two words, as in the Hebrew text, or combine them into one word with or without a hyphen. Be consistent with how you spell this name throughout the Bible. Alternate translation: [in the city of Kiriath-arba]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

which {is} Hebron (ULT)

which is {now called} Hebron (UST)

The city of Kiriath Arba was later named Hebron (Joshua 14:15). Alternate translation: [which is also named Hebron] or [also known as Hebron] or [that is, Hebron]

---

in the land of Canaan (ULT)

in the region of Canaan (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to put a general location before a specific location and say, “in the land of Canaan, in the city of Kiriath Arba, which is Hebron.” Alternate translation: [in the land called Canaan]

Support Reference: Information Structure

And Abraham went (ULT)

Abraham went {to her} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Abraham came to her] or [Abraham came to her side]

---

to mourn for Sarah and to weep for her (ULT)

and cried and mourned for her (UST)

For some languages it is necessary to translate this sentence using a verb form that expresses completion or past tense so that it is clear that Abraham actually did this. Alternate translation: [to mourn and cry for her]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Sarah
- Hebron
- in the land of
- Canaan
- Abraham
- to mourn
- for Sarah
- and to weep for her

UST

- when she died
- Hebron
- in the region of
- Canaan
- Abraham
- and cried
- for her
- and mourned

Genesis 23:3

ULT:
Then Abraham got up from beside his dead one, and he spoke to the sons of Heth, saying,

UST:
Later he stood up from {mourning} beside her and {went} to {the leaders of} the Hittites {at the city gates} and said to them,

Then Abraham got up from beside (ULT)

Later he stood up from {mourning} beside (UST)

Alternate translation: [Later he got up from mourning beside] or [After a while, Abraham left]

---

his dead one (ULT)

her (UST)

Alternate translation: [her body]

---

and he spoke to the sons of Heth, saying (ULT)

and {went} to {the leaders of} the Hittites {at the city gates} and said to them (UST)

The phrase **sons of Heth** refers to the descendants of Canaan's son Heth (Genesis 10:15; 15:20) who are also known as the Hittites. Consider what is the best way to refer to them here in your language. Also, for some languages it is necessary to make it explicit here in verse 3 that Abraham went to the city gates to meet with the Hittites, rather than wait until verse 10 for that information. Alternate translation: [and he went to the elders of the Hittites at the city gates and said to them]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abraham
- Heth

UST

- אַבְרָהָֽם (ORIG QUOTE)
- the leaders of} the Hittites {at the city gates}

Genesis 23:4

ULT:
"I {am} a foreigner and a sojourner among you. Give to me property for a burial place among you, so that I can bury my dead from before me."

UST:
"{As you know,} I {am} a foreigner who is living among you {so I do not own any property here}. {Please} sell me some of your land so I have a place to bury {the body of} my wife who has died."

I {am} (ULT)

As you know,} I {am} (UST)

The leaders of the city already knew that Abraham was a foreigner, so make sure your translation of this sentence does not sound like he is telling them something that they did not know. Alternate translation: [I am coming to you as] or [Since I am]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

a foreigner and a sojourner (ULT)

a foreigner who is living … so I do not own any property here (UST)

See how you translated **foreigner** in Genesis 15:13. Alternate translation: [a outsider who has settled] or [a outsider who is living]

---

among you (ULT)

among you (UST)

It is implied by Abraham and understood by the Hittites that Abraham's status as a foreigner means he owns no property. Consider whether or not to make this implied information explicit

in your translation. Alternate translation: [among you and I have no land of my own] or [in your land and I do not own any property here]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

Give to me (ULT)

{Please} sell me (UST)

Make sure that the way you translate this phrase sounds polite, not rude or demanding. Alternate translation: [Please give me] or [Please let me buy]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

property for a burial place among you (ULT)

some of your land (UST)

Alternate translation: [some land among you] or [some of your property]

---

so that I can bury my dead from before me (ULT)

so I have a place to bury {the body of} my wife who has died (UST)

Translate this clause in a way that shows respect for the person who has died. Alternate translation: [so I have a place to take my dead wife and bury her] or [where I can bury the body of my wife who has died] or [so that I can give my deceased wife a proper burial]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- a burial place
- so that I can bury

UST

- some of your land
- so I have a place to bury

Genesis 23:5

ULT:
Then the sons of Heth replied to Abraham, saying to him,

UST:
{The leaders of} the Hittites responded to Abraham,

Then the sons of Heth replied to Abraham, saying to him (ULT)

{The leaders of} the Hittites responded to Abraham (UST)

See how you translated **the sons of Heth** in verse 3. Alternate translation: [The elders of the Hittites replied to him] or [When the leaders of the Hittites heard that, they responded]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Heth
- to Abraham

UST
- {The leaders of} the Hittites
- to Abraham

Genesis 23:6

ULT:
"Listen to us, my lord. You {are} a mighty prince among us. Bury your dead in the choicest of our burial places. Each of us will not withhold from you his burial place to bury your dead."

UST:
"Sir, {please} listen to what we propose: You are a powerful man {living} among us. {So} {you may} bury {the body of} your wife who has died in {any} one of our best burial sites. All of us are willing for you to use {any of} our burial sites to bury her."

Listen to us, my lord (ULT)

Sir, {please} listen to what we propose (UST)

Abraham was not their actual lord or master. Rather, the Hittites are addressing him in a respectful manner. Alternate translation: [Please listen to our proposal, my lord]

Support Reference: Politeness

You {are} a mighty prince (ULT)

You are a powerful man (UST)

You {are} a mighty prince could mean: (1) "You are a powerful leader" Alternate translation: [You are an important man]; (2) "You are a man of God." The interpretation that you do not follow in your translation could be put in a footnote.

---

among us (ULT)

{living} among us (UST)

Alternate translation: [who lives among our people]

Bury (ULT)

{So} {you may} bury (UST)

Make sure that the reply of the Hittites sounds polite here in your translation. Alternate translation: [So you may put]

---

your dead (ULT)

{the body of} your wife who has died (UST)

Alternate translation: [your dead wife]

---

our burial places (ULT)

in {any} one of our best burial sites (UST)

For some languages it may be better to change the order of the phrases in this sentence and say, “So please choose any one of our best burial sites and bury/put your dead/deceased wife there.” Alternate translation: [places to bury people who have died] or [tombs]

Support Reference: Information Structure

Each of us will not withhold from you his burial place to bury (ULT)

All of us are willing for you to use {any of} our burial sites to bury (UST)

The sons of Heth are using a figure of speech here that emphasizes a positive meaning by using a negative word, **not**, together with a mild expression that is the opposite of the intended meaning. If it would be helpful in your language, you could emphasize the positive meaning in a strong way. Alternate translation: [Each of us is happy to give you some of his land where you can bury]

Support Reference: Litotes

---

your dead (ULT)

{the body of} your wife who has died (UST)

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to Sarah's dead body here since it was just mentioned in the previous sentence. Alternate translation: [your dead wife]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- my lord
- a … prince
- mighty
- our burial places
- Bury
- his burial place
- to bury

UST

- Sir
- a powerful man
- a powerful man
- in {any} one of our best burial sites
- {So} {you may} bury
- {any of} our burial sites
- to bury

Genesis 23:7

ULT:
Then Abraham got up and bowed to the people of the land, to the sons of Heth,

UST:
Abraham stood up and bowed {in respect} in front of {the leaders of} the Hittites, who owned the land {in the area}.

Then Abraham got up (ULT)

Abraham stood up (UST)

The verb **got up** reflects the fact that Abraham and the leaders/elders of the Hittites were all sitting as they talked to each other. Alternate translation: [So Abraham got up]

---

and bowed (ULT)

and bowed {in respect} (UST)

We do not know how far Abraham bowed down. He may have bowed his upper body from a standing position, or he may have knelt down and touched his forehead to the ground with his arms outstretched. Alternate translation: [and bowed low to the ground in respect] or [and kneeled and touched his forehead to the ground in respect]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

---

to the people of the land, to the sons of Heth (ULT)

in front of {the leaders of} the Hittites, who owned the land {in the area} (UST)

The phrase **people of the land** is a term that refers to the leaders of that region who owned land in the area and were the ones to decide whether a foreigner could acquire land. Alternate

translation: [in front of the elders of the Hittites, who owned the land in the area] or [before the elders over the Hittites]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abraham
- and bowed
- the land
- Heth

UST

- Abraham
- and bowed {in respect}
- in front of {the leaders of} the Hittites, who owned the land {in the area}
- in front of {the leaders of} the Hittites, who owned the land {in the area}

Genesis 23:8

ULT:
and he said to them, saying, "If it is your will to bury my dead from before me, listen to me and intercede for me with Ephron, the son of Zohar,

UST:
Then he said to them, "If you are willing {for me} to bury my deceased {wife} {here}, {please} help me by asking Ephron the son of Zohar

and he said to them, saying (ULT)

Then he said to them (UST)

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to have two verbs or just one verb in this quote margin. Alternate translation: [and said to them]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

---

to bury my dead from before me (ULT)

for me} to bury my deceased {wife} {here} (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 4. Alternate translation: [for me to bury my dead wife here] or [to allow me to bury the body of my wife who has died] or [to let me give my deceased wife a proper burial here]

---

listen to me and intercede for me with Ephron, the son of Zohar (ULT)

{please} help me by asking Ephron the son of Zohar (UST)

Alternate translation: [please appeal to Ephron the son of Zohar on my behalf]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- to bury

UST

- for me} to bury my deceased {wife} {here}

Genesis 23:9

ULT:
so that he will give to me the cave of Machpelah, which {belongs} to him, which {is} at the end of his field. For full price let him give it to me among you as property for a burial place."

UST:
to sell me his cave that is at the edge of his field in the Machpelah {area}. Ask him to sell it to me for its full price, with {all of} you {here} to witness {the sale}. That way I will have a place where I can bury {my wife who has died}."

so that he will give to me (ULT)

to sell me (UST)

Alternate translation: [to give to me]

---

the cave of Machpelah, which {belongs} to him, which {is} at the end of his field (ULT)

his cave that is at the edge of his field in the Machpelah {area} (UST)

Machpelah is the name of the area or neighborhood where Ephron's cave and field were located (verse 17). Alternate translation: [his cave that is at the end of his field in the Machpelah area]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

For full price let him give it to me (ULT)

Ask him to sell it to me for its full price (UST)

Alternate translation: [Ask him to give it to me for its full value] or [Ask him to sell it to me and I will pay him the full amount that it is worth]

---

among you (ULT)

with {all of} you {here} to witness {the sale} (UST)

Alternate translation: [in front of you all] or [with all of you present to witness the sale]

---

as property for a burial place (ULT)

That way I will have a place where I can bury {my wife who has died} (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that I will have land to bury the body of my deceased wife] or [That way I will have a place here where I can bury the body of my wife who has died]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- For … price
- a burial place

UST

- for its full price
- where I can bury {my wife who has died}

Genesis 23:10

ULT:
Now Ephron was sitting among the sons of Heth, so Ephron the Hittite responded to Abraham in the ears of the sons of Heth, for everyone who had come {to} the gate of his city, saying,

UST:
Now Ephron the Hittite was sitting {there at the meeting} among the {other} Hittite leaders, so he replied to Abraham as the {other} leaders listened, including everyone who had gathered {there} at the city gate. He said,

Now Ephron was sitting among the sons of Heth (ULT)

Now Ephron the Hittite was sitting {there at the meeting} among the {other} Hittite leaders (UST)

Alternate translation: [Now Ephron the Hittite was sitting there at the meeting among the other Hittite elders] or [Ephron was one of the Hittite elders who had gathered there at the meeting]

---

so Ephron the Hittite responded to Abraham (ULT)

so he replied to Abraham (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he replied to Abraham]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

---

in the ears of the sons of Heth (ULT)

as the {other} leaders listened (UST)

Alternate translation: [in the hearing of the elders of the Hittites] or [as the other elders listened]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

for everyone who had come {to} the gate of his city (ULT)

including everyone who had gathered {there} at the city gate (UST)

The pronoun **his** refers back to **everyone** who had gathered at the city gate, not just one person. Also, in that culture, the leaders of a city would hold their meetings at the city gates, where they would make decisions on important matters such as the one Abraham brought before them. You could include that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [including everyone who had gathered there at their city gate]

---

saying (ULT)

He said (UST)

Alternate translation: [This is what he said:]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Heth
- the Hittite
- to Abraham
- Heth
- {to} the gate of

UST

- the {other} Hittite leaders
- הַחִתִּי (ORIG QUOTE)
- to Abraham
- as the {other} leaders listened
- at the city gate

Genesis 23:11

ULT:
"No, my lord. Listen to me: I give to you the field, and I give to you the cave that {is} in it. I give it to you before the eyes of the sons of my people. Bury your dead."

UST:
"That's not necessary, sir. {Please} accept this offer: I {hereby} give you the {entire} field, including the cave that {is} in it. I am giving it to you {now} as the leaders of my people watch. {You may} bury your deceased {wife} {there}."

No, my lord (ULT)

That's not necessary, sir (UST)

Make sure your translation of this phase sounds polite. In some cultures it is rude to say **No** too directly. Alternate translation: [That is not necessary, sir] or [Sir, there is no need for that]

Support Reference: Politeness

Listen to me (ULT)

{Please} accept this offer (UST)

Alternate translation: [Please listen to my proposal:] or [Please accept this proposal:] or [Please listen to what I am proposing:]

I give to you the field (ULT)

I {hereby} give you the {entire} field (UST)

Ephron is making a formal proposal or offer. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [I hereby offer you the entire field]

---

and I give to you the cave that {is} in it (ULT)

including the cave that {is} in it (UST)

Alternate translation: [as well as the cave that is in it]

---

before the eyes of the sons of my people (ULT)

as the leaders of my people watch (UST)

Alternate translation: [in the sight of the elders of my people] or [as the elders of my people listen as witnesses] or [and all the elders of my people here are witnesses of this]

Bury your dead (ULT)

You may} bury your deceased {wife} {there} (UST)

Alternate translation: [You can bury your dead wife there] or [Please go ahead and bury your dead wife on that land]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- my lord
- Bury

UST

- sir
- {You may} bury

Genesis 23:12

ULT:
Then Abraham bowed before the people of the land,

UST:
Then Abraham bowed {again} before the leaders who owned the land {in the area}.

Then Abraham bowed (ULT)

Then Abraham bowed {again} (UST)

See how you translated **bowed** in verse 7. Alternate translation: [Once again, Abraham bowed]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

---

the people of the land (ULT)

the leaders who owned the land {in the area} (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 7. You could translate this in a slightly different way here since these people have been referred to repeatedly before this. Alternate translation: [in front of the people who owned the land in the area] or [to the elders of the Hittites]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Then … bowed
- Abraham
- the land

UST
- Then … bowed {again}
- Abraham
- the leaders who owned the land {in the area}

Genesis 23:13

ULT:
and he spoke to Ephron in the ears of the people of the land, saying, "But if you would, please listen to me. I will give the price of the field. Take it from me, and I will bury my dead there."

UST:
As they listened, he said to Ephron, "Rather {than that}, since you are willing {to let me have the field}, please accept my offer. I want to pay {you} the {full} price for the field. {Please} let me buy it from you, so that {it will be mine and} I can bury {my wife} there who has died."

and he spoke to Ephron in the ears of the people of the land, saying (ULT)

As they listened, he said to Ephron (UST)

See how you translated **in the ears of** in verse 10. Alternate translation: [and he said to Ephron while the rest of the elders listened] or [As they all listened, he said to Ephron]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

But (ULT)

Rather {than that} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Instead of doing that]

---

if you would, please (ULT)

since you are willing {to let me have the field} (UST)

In verses 9–15, Abraham and Ephron are bargaining indirectly with each other according to the customs of that culture and time. Keep that in mind as you translate their conversation. Alternate translation: [if you are willing]

---

listen to me (ULT)

please accept my offer (UST)

Alternate translation: [please accept my proposal] or [please listen to what I am offering]

I will give the price of the field (ULT)

I want to pay {you} the {full} price for the field (UST)

Alternate translation: [I will give you the full price of what the field is worth] or [I want to give you the full price of the field]

Take it from me (ULT)

{Please} let me buy it from you (UST)

Alternate translation: [Please take my money]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

and I will bury my dead there (ULT)

so that {it will be mine and} I can bury {my wife} there who has died (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that I can bury the body of my dead wife there] or [so that the field will be mine and I can bury my wife there who has died] or [then I will have a place to bury the body of my deceased wife]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the land
- the price of
- and I will bury

UST

- As they listened
- the {full} price for
- so that {it will be mine and} I can bury

Genesis 23:14

ULT:
Then Ephron answered Abraham, saying to him,

UST:
Ephron responded to Abraham,

Then Ephron answered Abraham, saying to him (ULT)

Ephron responded to Abraham (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Ephron said to Abraham]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Abraham

UST
- to Abraham

Genesis 23:15

ULT:
"My lord, listen to me. Land {worth} 400 shekels of silver, between me and you, what {is} that? So bury your dead."

UST:
"Sir, {please} listen to me. The land {is worth} about five kilos of silver. {However} since you and I are friends, there is no need for that. {Go ahead and} bury your deceased {wife} {there}."

My lord (ULT)

Sir (UST)

See how you translated this respectful form of address in verses 6 and 11.

Support Reference: Politeness

---

listen to me (ULT)

{please} listen to me (UST)

See how you translated this clause in verse 13. Make sure Ephron sounds polite here in your translation.

Support Reference: Politeness

Land {worth} 400 shekels of silver (ULT)

The land {is worth} about five kilos of silver (UST)

People paid each other with **shekels of silver** or gold, which was a weight measurement. Four hundred shekels of silver was about 10 pounds (4.5 kilos) of silver. Many translation teams like to keep the same numbers that are in the Hebrew text in their translation, and then in a footnote give the equivalent amount in their own currency. Other teams put the equivalent amount in the

text and put the literal phrase in a footnote. See how you translated **shekels of silver** in Genesis 20:16. Alternate translation: [If I were selling that land, I would charge 400 shekels of silver]

Support Reference: Biblical Money

---

between me and you (ULT)

{However} since you and I are friends (UST)

Alternate translation: [However, since you and I are friends] or [But as far as you and I are concerned]

---

what {is} that (ULT)

there is no need for that (UST)

Alternate translation: [what significance is that?] or [that is not important.] or [I would not ask you to pay that.]

So bury your dead (ULT)

Go ahead and} bury your deceased {wife} {there} (UST)

Consider again how you translated “bury … dead” in verses 4, 6, 8, 11, 13, and 15. Alternate translation: [So go ahead and bury your dead wife there]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- My lord
- Land {worth}
- silver
- bury

UST

- Sir
- The land {is worth}
- silver
- {Go ahead and} bury

Genesis 23:16

ULT:
So Abraham listened to Ephron, and Abraham weighed out to Ephron the price that he had mentioned in the ears of the sons of Heth, 400 shekels of silver, the currency among the merchants.

UST:
Abraham agreed with Ephron's price, and he paid Ephron the {amount of} silver that he had suggested while {the rest of} the Hittites listened. {Abraham weighed the} 400 shekels of silver using the standard weights that sellers used {at that time}.

So Abraham listened to Ephron (ULT)

Abraham agreed with Ephron's price (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Abraham did not just hear what Ephron said, but also acted on it.

---

and Abraham weighed out to Ephron (ULT)

and he paid Ephron (UST)

Alternate translation: [so he paid him]

---

the price that he had mentioned (ULT)

the {amount of} silver that he had suggested (UST)

Alternate translation: [the amount of silver that he had stated]

---

in the ears of the sons of Heth (ULT)

while {the rest of} the Hittites listened (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 10. You might need to translate it differently here because of the different context. Alternate translation: [in the hearing of the other Hittite elders] or [as the rest of the elders of the Hittites watched and listened]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

400 shekels of silver (ULT)

{Abraham weighed the} 400 shekels of silver (UST)

Alternate translation: [which was 400 shekels of silver]

---

the currency among the merchants (ULT)

using the standard weights that sellers used {at that time} (UST)

Alternate translation: [using the same kind of weights that merchants used to accurately weigh silver] or [using the standard shekel that traders used at that time]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abraham
- Abraham
- the price
- Heth
- silver

UST

- Abraham
- אַבְרָהָם (ORIG QUOTE)
- the {amount of} silver
- {the rest of} the Hittites

- silver

Genesis 23:17

ULT:
So the field of Ephron that {was} in Machpelah which {was} before Mamre, the field and the cave that {was} in it, and every tree that {was} in the field, that {was} within all of its surrounding borders, was deeded

UST:
So Ephron sold his field {to Abraham}, including the cave that {was} in the field, as well as all the trees that {were} inside its boundaries. The field was in the Machpelah {area} near {the city of} Mamre. {Ephron sold that field}

So the field of Ephron … was deeded (ULT)

So Ephron sold his field {to Abraham} (UST)

Verses 17–18 are a summary of the transaction between Ephron and Abraham. Make sure your translation of these verses does not sound like this was a second time that the field was sold. Alternate translation: [That is how the field that belonged to Ephron]

---

that {was} in Machpelah (ULT)

was in the Machpelah {area} (UST)

Alternate translation: [that was in the Machpelah area]

---

which {was} before Mamre (ULT)

near {the city of} Mamre. {Ephron sold that field} (UST)

Mamre was another name for the city of Hebron (verse 19). The name probably came from Abraham's friend and ally who lived there (Genesis 13:18; 14:13). Alternate translation: [east of the city of Mamre]

---

the field and the cave that {was} in it (ULT)

including the cave that {was} in the field … The field (UST)

Alternate translation: [including both the field and the cave that was in it]

---

in the field, that {was} within all of its surrounding borders (ULT)

inside its boundaries (UST)

Alternate translation: [in the field, whatever was inside its borders] or [anywhere inside the borders of the field]

So … was deeded (ULT)

So … sold … to Abraham (UST)

For some languages it may be better to break up this long sentence, change the order of the phrases in this verse, and say, “So Ephron sold his field to Abraham, including the cave that was in the field, as well as all the trees that were inside its boundaries. The field was in the Machpelah area near the city of Mamre. Ephron sold the/that field …” Alternate translation: [was legally sold by Ephron] or [Ephron sold all of that]

Support Reference: Information Structure

Genesis 23:18

ULT:
to Abraham as his possession before the eyes of the sons of Heth, before everyone who had come to the gate of his city.

UST:
to Abraham, and it became his property while the Hittites watched, including everyone who had gathered at the city gate.

to Abraham as his possession (ULT)

to Abraham, and it became his property (UST)

Alternate translation: [to Abraham as his property] or [to Abraham, and it became his possession]

---

before the eyes of the sons of Heth (ULT)

while the Hittites watched (UST)

See how you translated the idiom **before the eyes of** in verse 11. Alternate translation: [in the sight of the elders of the Hittites] or [while the leaders of the Hittites watched as witnesses]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

before everyone who had come to the gate of his city (ULT)

including everyone who had gathered at the city gate (UST)

For some languages it may be more natural to change the order of some of the clauses in this verse and say, "… to Abraham in front of the leaders of the Hittites who had gathered at the city gates, so that they all witnessed that the land was now Abraham's property." Also, see how

you translated a similar clause in verse 10. Alternate translation: [including everyone who had gathered at their city gate] or [That included everyone who had met together at their city gates]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- to Abraham
- Heth
- to the gate of

UST

- to Abraham
- the Hittites
- at the city gate

Genesis 23:19

ULT:
Then after that, Abraham buried Sarah his wife in the cave of the field of Machpelah before Mamre, which {is} Hebron, in the land of Canaan.

UST:
After that, Abraham put {the body of} his wife Sarah in the cave in that field in the Machpelah {area} east of {the city of} Mamre, that is, Hebron, in the region of Canaan.

Then after that (ULT)

After that (UST)

Alternate translation: [After he bought the field]

Abraham buried Sarah his wife (ULT)

Abraham put {the body of} his wife Sarah (UST)

Alternate translation: [he placed the body of his wife Sarah]

---

in the cave of the field of Machpelah (ULT)

in the cave in that field in the Machpelah {area} (UST)

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Machpelah** in verses 9 and 17. Alternate translation: [in the cave in the field in the Machpelah area]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

before Mamre (ULT)

east of {the city of} Mamre (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 17. Also, be consistent here with how you spelled this name in verse 17 and in Genesis 14:13, 24; 18:1. Alternate translation: [near the city of Mamre]

---

which {is} Hebron (ULT)

that is, Hebron (UST)

Alternate translation: [which is also called Hebron] or [also known as Hebron]

---

in the land of Canaan (ULT)

in the region of Canaan (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 2. Alternate translation: [in the land called Canaan]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- buried
- Abraham
- Sarah
- Hebron
- in the land of
- Canaan

UST

- put
- Abraham
- the body of … Sarah
- Hebron
- in the region of

- Canaan

Genesis 23:20

ULT:
So the field and the cave that {was} in it were deeded to Abraham as property for a burial place from the sons of Heth.

UST:
So {that is how} that field, including the cave that {was} in the field, was {officially} sold to Abraham by the Hittites, so that he had a place where he could bury {his wife who had died}.

So the field and the cave that {was} in it were deeded to Abraham (ULT)

So {that is how} that field, including the cave that {was} in the field, was {officially} sold to Abraham (UST)

Verse 20 is a concluding summary of chapter 23 and repeats parts of verses 17–18. Make sure that the way you translate this does not sound like Abraham bought another property from the Hittites. Alternate translation: [So that is how that field, including the cave that was in the field, were legally sold to Abraham] or [So in that way, the field of Ephron, including …]

---

as property for a burial place from the sons of Heth (ULT)

by the Hittites, so that he had a place where he could bury {his wife who had died} (UST)

Consider again how you translated **a burial place** in verses 4, 9, and 20, and how you translated **the sons of Heth** in verses 3, 5, 7, 10, 16, 18, and 20. Alternate translation: [by the Hittites as a burial site]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- to Abraham
- a burial place
- Heth

UST

- to Abraham
- where he could bury {his wife who had died}
- the Hittites

Genesis 24

Genesis 24:1

ULT:
Now Abraham was old, advanced in days, and Yahweh had blessed Abraham in all {things}.

UST:
Abraham had lived a long time and was {now} {very} old, and Yahweh had blessed him in every way.

Now Abraham was old, advanced in days (ULT)

Abraham had lived a long time and was {now} {very} old (UST)

Verse 1 gives the setting for the new episode and begins with a doublet that emphasizes how old Abraham was. Try to preserve this emphasis in a way that is natural in your translation. Alternate translation: [Abraham was very old now. He had lived many years] or [Now Abraham had become very old]

Support Reference: Doublet

---

in all {things} (ULT)

in every way (UST)

Alternate translation: [in everything he had done]

---

and Yahweh had blessed Abraham (ULT)

and Yahweh had blessed him (UST)

See how you translated “bless” in Gen 12:2–3. Alternate translation: [and Yahweh had caused him to prosper]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Now Abraham
- in days
- and Yahweh
- had blessed
- Abraham

UST

- Abraham
- and was {now} {very} old
- and Yahweh
- had blessed
- him

Genesis 24:2

ULT:
Then Abraham said to his oldest servant of his house, who was in charge of everything that {belonged} to him, "Please put your hand under my thigh,

UST:
{One day} Abraham said to his chief household servant, who managed his entire estate for him, "Please put your hand under my thigh {to show that you will do what I ask}.

Then Abraham said to (ULT)

{One day} Abraham said to (UST)

Consider what is the best way to introduce the first event in this episode in your language.
Alternate translation: [One day he told]

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

---

his oldest servant of his house (ULT)

his chief household servant (UST)

Alternate translation: [the oldest servant in his household] or [his senior household servant]

---

who was in charge of everything (ULT)

who managed his entire estate for him (UST)

Alternate translation: [who managed everything that he owned] or [who took care of his entire estate for him]

Please put your hand under my thigh (ULT)

Please put your hand under my thigh {to show that you will do what I ask} (UST)

You can make the meaning of this custom explicit in your translation, or you can put that information in a footnote. What Abraham asks his servant to do here is part of the vow-making process in verse 3. Alternate translation: [Please put your hand under my leg to show that you will do what I ask]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abraham
- his … servant of
- his house
- who was in charge

UST

- Abraham
- his … servant
- household
- who managed

Genesis 24:3

ULT:
and I will have you swear by Yahweh, the God of the heavens and the God of the earth, that you will not take a wife for my son from the daughters of the Canaanites whom I am living among,

UST:
I want you to vow {to me}, with Yahweh the God who rules the heavens and the earth as your witness, that you will not arrange for my son {Isaac} to marry {any of} the Canaanite women who live around us here.

and I will have you swear (ULT)

I want you to vow {to me} (UST)

Decide the best way to translate this command in your language. Also, see how you translated **swear** in Genesis 21:23, and see the note about that there. Alternate translation: [and vow to me] or [and make an unbreakable promise to me]

Support Reference: Imperatives — Other Uses

---

by Yahweh, the God of the heavens and the God of the earth (ULT)

with Yahweh the God who rules the heavens and the earth as your witness (UST)

See how you translated "the heavens and the earth" in Genesis 1:1. Alternate translation: [with Yahweh as your witness, the God who rules the heavens and the earth]

---

that you will not take a wife for my son (ULT)

that you will not arrange for my son {Isaac} to marry (UST)

For some languages it is clearer and more natural to make "Isaac" explicit here in verse 3 rather than wait until the end of verse 4. Also, see how you translated the idiom "took a wife

for” in Genesis 21:21. Alternate translation: [that you will not get a woman for my son Isaac to marry from among]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

from the daughters of the Canaanites whom I am living among (ULT)

{any of} the Canaanite women who live around us here (UST)

Make sure your translation does not sound like Abraham was living by himself among the Canaanites; his family and servants also lived among them with him. Alternate translation: [the Canaanite women whom we live among]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and I will have you swear
- by Yahweh
- the God of
- the heavens
- and the God of
- the earth
- the Canaanites

UST

- I want you to vow {to me}
- with Yahweh … as your witness
- the God who rules
- the heavens
- and
- the earth
- {any of} the Canaanite women

Genesis 24:4

ULT:
but you will go to my country and to my relatives, and take a wife for my son, for Isaac.”

UST:
Rather, you must go to the country where I grew up, to my relatives {who live there}, and find a wife for him {from there}.”

but you will go (ULT)

Rather, you must go (UST)

Alternate translation: [Instead, you must go] or [Instead, I want you to go]

Support Reference: Imperatives — Other Uses

---

to my country (ULT)

to the country where I grew up (UST)

Alternate translation: [to my home country] or [to the region where I grew up] or [to the country that I came from]

---

and to my relatives (ULT)

to my relatives {who live there} (UST)

Alternate translation: [to my kinfolk who live there]

---

and take a wife for my son, for Isaac (ULT)

and find a wife for him {from there} (UST)

The way you refer to Isaac here will depend on how you referred to him in verse 3. Alternate translation: [and find a wife from there for my son Isaac to marry] or [and get a wife from among them for him to marry] or [and arrange for him to marry one of their daughters]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- my country
- my relatives
- for Isaac

UST

- the country where I grew up
- my relatives {who live there}
- for him {from there}

Genesis 24:5

ULT:
Then the servant said to him, "Suppose the woman is not willing to come with me to this land? Should I take your son back to the country that you came from?"

UST:
But {Abraham's} servant asked him, "What {should I do} if the {young} woman {I find} refuses to come {back} with me to this land {to live}? Do you want me to take your son back {there} to your home country {to marry her} {and live there}?"

Then the servant said to him (ULT)

But {Abraham's} servant asked him (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin in your language so that it fits the context well. Alternate translation: [Then the servant asked Abraham]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Suppose (ULT)

What {should I do} if (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 18:24, 28, 29. Alternate translation: [Suppose that]

Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

---

the woman (ULT)

the {young} woman {I find} (UST)

Alternate translation: [the young woman I choose] or [when I find that young woman, she]

---

is not willing (ULT)

refuses (UST)

Alternate translation: [does not want]

---

to come with me (ULT)

to come {back} with me … to live (UST)

Alternate translation: [to go back with me] or [to follow me back]

---

to this land (ULT)

to this land (UST)

Alternate translation: [to live in this land?]

Should I take your son back (ULT)

Do you want me to take your son back {there} (UST)

Alternate translation: [In that case, should I take your son] or [Do you want me to then take your son back there]

---

to the country that you came from (ULT)

to your home country {to marry her} {and live there} (UST)

Alternate translation: [to live in your home country?]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the servant
- land
- the country

UST

- {Abraham's} servant
- land
- your home country {to marry her} {and live there}

Genesis 24:6

ULT:
Then Abraham said to him, “Be sure that you do not take my son back there.

UST:
Abraham answered him, “{No,} be sure that you never take my son back there {to live},

Then Abraham said to him (ULT)

Abraham answered him (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin at this point in the conversation.
Alternate translation: [Then Abraham replied to his servant] or [Abraham replied]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Be sure that you do not take my son back (ULT)

{No,} be sure that you never take my son back (UST)

Alternate translation: [No, make sure that you never take my son back] or [No, you must definitely not take my son back]

---

there (ULT)

there {to live} (UST)

Alternate translation: [to my home land to live]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Abraham

- Be sure

UST

- Abraham
- {No,} be sure

Genesis 24:7

ULT:
Yahweh, the God of the heavens, who took me from the house of my father and from the land of my relatives and who spoke to me and who swore to me, saying, 'To your offspring I will give this land,' he will send his angel before you, and you will take a wife for my son from there.

UST:
{because} Yahweh, the God who rules the heavens, brought me {here} from my father's household and from the land where {the rest of} my relatives live, and he vowed to me that he will give this land to my descendants. He will send one of his angels ahead of you {to help you}, so that you will find a woman from my home land for my son {to marry}.

Yahweh, the God of the heavens (ULT)

{because} Yahweh, the God who rules the heavens (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that verse 7 gives the reason for verse 6. Also, see how you translated **the God of the heavens** in verse 3. Alternate translation: [because Yahweh, the God who created the heavens]

---

and from the land of my relatives (ULT)

and from the land where {the rest of} my relatives live (UST)

Alternate translation: [and from the land where the rest of my family live]

---

and who spoke to me and who swore to me, saying (ULT)

and he vowed to me that (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he made an vow to me and said] or [and he made an unbreakable promise to me and said]

To your offspring I will give this land (ULT)

he will give this land to my descendants (UST)

The phrase **this land** refers to the land of Canaan here, not the land where Abraham's relatives lived. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Also, consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote with a direct quote or an indirect quote. Alternate translation: [I will give this land to your offspring] or [that he will give this land where we live to my descendants]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

and you will take (ULT)

so that you will find (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that you will be able to find] or [so that you can get]

---

a wife for my son from there (ULT)

a woman from my home land for my son {to marry} (UST)

See how you translated "take/find a wife for" in verses 3–4. Alternate translation: [a wife from there for my son to marry] or [a wife from my home land for my son to marry]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Yahweh
- the God of
- the heavens
- from the house of
- and from the land of
- my relatives
- swore
- To your offspring

- land
- his angel

UST

- {because} Yahweh
- the God who rules
- the heavens
- from … s household
- and from the land where … live
- {the rest of} my relatives
- and he vowed to me that
- to my descendants
- land
- one of his angels

Genesis 24:8

ULT:
But if the woman is not willing to come with you, then you are clear from this oath of mine. Only do not take my son back there!”

UST:
But if the woman {you find} refuses to come back {here} with you, then you will be free from {keeping} this vow that you are making to me {now}. But {no matter what happens,} never take my son back to my home country!”

But if the woman (ULT)

But if the woman {you find} (UST)

Alternate translation: [However, if the woman you find]

---

is not willing (ULT)

refuses (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 5. Alternate translation: [does not want]

---

to come with you (ULT)

to come back {here} with you (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase (“to come with me”) in verse 5. Alternate translation: [to follow you back here]

Only (ULT)

But {no matter what happens … } (UST)

Alternate translation: [Just]

---

do not take my son back there (ULT)

never take my son back to my home country (UST)

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 6. Alternate translation: [you must not take my son back to my home land!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- from … oath of mine

UST

- from {keeping} … vow that you are making to me {now}

Genesis 24:9

ULT:
Then the servant put his hand under the thigh of Abraham his master and swore to him concerning this matter.

UST:
So {Abraham's} servant put his hand under his master's thigh and vowed to him that he would do what Abraham had requested him to do.

Then the servant put his hand under the thigh of Abraham his master (ULT)

So {Abraham's} servant put his hand under his master's thigh (UST)

The servant putting **his hand under the thigh of Abraham his master** was a symbolic action by which the servant showed that he swore to do everything possible to carry out the wishes of his master. This action was reserved for only the most serious oaths and occurred only twice in Scripture, both times in Genesis. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action in the text of your translation or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [Abraham's servant indicated his total allegiance as he placed his hand under his master's thigh]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

---

and swore to him (ULT)

and vowed to him (UST)

See how you translated **swore** in verse 7 and "swear" in verse 3. Alternate translation: [and made an vow to him] or [and made an unbreakable promise to him]

---

concerning this matter (ULT)

that he would do what Abraham had requested him to do (UST)

Some languages need to make explicit what **this matter** refers to. Alternate translation: [that he would do what he had told him to do] or [that he would go find a wife for Isaac]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the servant
- Abraham
- his master
- and swore

UST

- {Abraham's} servant
- his master
- his master
- and vowed

Genesis 24:10

ULT:
Then the servant took ten camels from the camels of his master and left, and all {kinds of} good {things} from his master {were} in his hand, and he got up and went to Aram Naharaim, to the city of Nahor.

UST:
Then he got ten of his master's camels ready {for the trip}, and after he loaded them with all kinds of valuable things from his master {to use as gifts}, he left {with some other servants} and made the {long} trip to {the region of} Aram Naharaim, to the city where Nahor lived.

Then the servant took ten camels from the camels of his master (ULT)

Then he got ten of his master's camels ready {for the trip} (UST)

Make sure that your translation of **took** does not imply that the servant stole the camels or valuable things from Abraham. Rather, the **good things** that he loaded on the camels included things that he would give as gifts to Isaac's relatives (verse 53). Also, see how you translated **camels** in Genesis 12:16.

---

and left, and all {kinds of} good {things} from his master {were} in his hand, and he got up (ULT)

and after he loaded them with all kinds of valuable things from his master {to use as gifts}, he left {with some other servants} (UST)

For some languages, it is best to make it explicit here in verse 10 that other servants went with Abraham's chief servant, rather than have them appear suddenly in verse 32.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and went to (ULT)

and made the {long} trip to (UST)

This was about a 800 kilometer (500 mile) trip and would take camels about seventeen days to complete. Alternate translation: [and made the long journey to] or [Then he traveled to]

---

to the city of Nahor (ULT)

to the city where Nahor lived (UST)

Nahor lived in the city of Haran (Genesis 11:31–32). That information could be put in a footnote. Make sure your translation of this phrase does not sound like Nahor owned the city.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the servant
- camels
- from the camels of
- his master
- good {things} from
- his master
- Naharaim
- Nahor

UST

- Then he got … ready {for the trip}
- s camels
- s camels
- his master
- valuable things
- from his master {to use as gifts}
- Naharaim
- Nahor

Genesis 24:11

ULT:
Then he made the camels kneel down outside the city by the well of water at evening time, at the time the women who draw water come out.

UST:
{When they arrived there,} Abraham's servant had the camels kneel down {to rest} outside the city near the well {that was there}. It was evening time, when the {young} women {of the city} were starting to come out {to the well} to draw water.

by the well of water (ULT)

near the well {that was there} (UST)

Each town or city had a well where people from the city came to get their water. See how you translated **well of water** in Genesis 21:19. You might need to translate this in a slightly different way here because of the different context. Alternate translation: [near its well] or [by the public well that was there]

---

at the time the women who draw water come out (ULT)

when the {young} women {of the city} were starting to come out {to the well} to draw water (UST)

In that time and culture, there was no running water in homes so people had to go out to the city well to get water for their families. Alternate translation: [the time when the young women of the city came out to draw water from the well for their families] or [when the young women of the city were starting to come out to the well to get water for their families]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the camels
- the well of

UST

- the camels
- the well {that was there}

Genesis 24:12

ULT:
Then he said, "Yahweh, God of my master Abraham, please cause it to happen before me today that you show kindness toward my master Abraham.

UST:
Then Abraham's servant prayed, "{Dear} Yahweh, {who is} the God {who takes care} of my master Abraham, please help me succeed today and {in that way} be kind to my master.

please cause it to happen before me today that you show kindness toward my master Abraham (ULT)

please help me succeed today and {in that way} be kind to my master (UST)

For some languages it may be clearer and more natural to change the order of the clauses in this sentence: [please be gracious to my master by helping me succeed today] or [please show your kindness to my master today by helping me find a woman for his son to marry]

Support Reference: Information Structure

Then he said (ULT)

Then Abraham's servant prayed (UST)

The term **said** introduces a direct quotation. In your translation, use a natural way of introducing direct quotations in your language. It may not be necessary to represent this term explicitly. Alternate translation: [Then he began to pray, saying]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

God of my master Abraham (ULT)

{who is} the God {who takes care} of my master Abraham (UST)

The servant is using this possessive form to mean that God is the deity whom his master worships. The possessive form does not mean that Abraham owns God. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the God whom my master worships]

Support Reference: Possession

---

please cause it to happen before me today (ULT)

please help me succeed today (UST)

Alternate translation: [please help me do what I have come here to do today]

God of my master Abraham (ULT)

{who is} the God {who takes care} of my master Abraham (UST)

Alternate translation: [who is the God whom my master Abraham serves]

Yahweh (ULT)

{Dear} Yahweh (UST)

Consider what is the best way to begin this prayer in your language. Alternate translation: [Oh Yahweh]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Yahweh
- God of
- my master
- Abraham
- today
- kindness
- my master
- Abraham

UST

- {Dear} Yahweh
- {who is} the God {who takes care} of
- my master
- Abraham
- today
- and {in that way} be kind to
- my master
- אַבְרָהָם (ORIG QUOTE)

Genesis 24:13

ULT:
Behold, I am standing by this spring of water, and the daughters of the people of the city are coming out to draw water.

UST:
As you see, I am standing by this well, and young women from the city are coming {here} to draw water.

Behold, I am standing by (ULT)

As you see, I am standing by (UST)

Abraham is using the term **Behold** to focus his listeners' attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [Look, here I am, standing near] or [As you know, I am standing here beside]

Support Reference: Metaphor

---

this spring of water (ULT)

this well (UST)

Alternate translation: [this spring-fed well]

---

are coming out to draw water (ULT)

are coming {here} to draw water (UST)

See how you translated "draw water" in verse 11. Alternate translation: [are coming out here to get water]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- this spring of

UST

- this well

Genesis 24:14

ULT:
And let it be {that} the young woman whom I say to her, 'Please let down your jar so that I may drink,' and she says, 'Drink and I will also water your camels,' {let} her {be the one} you have appointed for your servant, for Isaac. And by her I will know that you have shown kindness toward my master."

UST:
{Please} make it happen {that} when I say to one of the young women, 'Please lower your jug so that I can have a drink,' she will say {to me}, 'Have a drink and I will also draw water for your camels.' {Then I will know that} she {is the one} you have chosen to be the wife of Isaac who serves you, and that you have been kind to my master."

the young woman whom I say to her (ULT)

when I say to one of the young women (UST)

The phrase **young woman** is actually a single word in Hebrew (like the old English words "damsel" and "maiden") and refers to a young woman who is old enough to get married, but has never been married before. Some languages have a single word for this; other languages prefer a phrase.

Please let down your jar (ULT)

Please lower your jug (UST)

The water containers that people used were usually made out of clay. Alternate translation: [Please lower your water jug]

---

so that I may drink (ULT)

so that I can have a drink (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that I can drink some water] or [so that I can take a drink of water]

---

and she says (ULT)

she will say {to me} (UST)

Alternate translation: [if she says to me]

Drink and I will also water your camels (ULT)

Have a drink and I will also draw water for your camels (UST)

For some languages it is clearer and more natural to make one or both of the two embedded direct quotes in this verse into indirect quotes. For example you could say, “Please make it happen that when I ask one of the young women to lower her jug so that I can have a drink of water, she will offer me a drink and will also offer to draw water for my camels.” Alternate translation: [Have a drink, and I will also get water for your camels]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

for your servant, for Isaac (ULT)

to be the wife of Isaac who serves you (UST)

Alternate translation: [as a wife for your servant Isaac]

And by her I will know that you have shown kindness toward my master (ULT)

and that you have been kind to my master (UST)

Alternate translation: [And if that happens, I will be sure that you are acting kindly toward my master]

And let it be {that} (ULT)

Please} make it happen {that} (UST)

Make sure that your translation of the servant's request to God sounds polite.

Support Reference: Politeness

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- your camels
- you have appointed
- for your servant
- for Isaac
- I will know
- kindness
- my master

UST

- for your camels
- { … the one} you have chosen
- to be the wife of Isaac who serves you
- to be the wife of Isaac who serves you
- and that
- you have been kind to
- my master

Genesis 24:15

ULT:
And it happened before he had finished speaking, then behold, Rebekah was coming out, who was born to Bethuel, the son of Milcah, the wife of Nahor, the brother of Abraham. And her water jar {was} on her shoulder.

UST:
Before Abraham's servant had {even} finished praying, he saw {a young woman named} Rebekah coming out {of the city} carrying a water jug on her shoulder. She was the daughter of Bethuel, {who was} the son of Milcah and Abraham's brother Nahor.

And it happened before he had finished speaking (ULT)

Before Abraham's servant had {even} finished praying (UST)

The author is using the word translated as **And it happened** to introduce a new development in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new development.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

---

then behold (ULT)

he saw (UST)

This phrase spotlights Rebekah and shows that she is the center of attention. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [just then he saw] or [suddenly he saw]

Rebekah was coming out (ULT)

a young woman named} Rebekah coming out {of the city} (UST)

Here the author is introducing **Rebekah** as a new participant in the story. Your language may have its own way of introducing new participants that you can use in your translation. Consider

what is the best way in your language to introduce Rebekah here for the first time in this episode. Some translations use an exclamation point to help show the excitement.

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

---

who was born to Bethuel (ULT)

She was the daughter of Bethuel (UST)

Alternate translation: [Her father was Bethuel]

And her water jar {was} on her shoulder (ULT)

carrying a water jug on her shoulder (UST)

For some languages it may be more natural to put this clause earlier in this verse and say, "Rebekah was coming out of the city with/carrying her/a water jar/jug on her shoulder." Alternate translation: [She was carrying a water jug on her shoulder] or [She had a water jug on her shoulder]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Rebekah
- was born
- to Bethuel
- Nahor
- Abraham

UST

- {a young woman named} Rebekah
- She was the daughter of Bethuel
- She was the daughter of Bethuel
- and … Nahor
- Abraham

Genesis 24:16

ULT:
And the young woman {was} a very beautiful-looking virgin, and a man had not known her. And she went down to the spring and filled her jar and came up.

UST:
She was a very beautiful unmarried young woman, who had never had {marital} relations with a man. She walked down to the well, filled her jug {with water} and came {back} up {carrying it on her shoulder}.

And the young woman {was} a very beautiful-looking virgin (ULT)

She was a very beautiful unmarried young woman (UST)

See how you translated **young woman** in verses 14 and 15. Alternate translation: [Rebekah was a very beautiful unmarried young woman]

---

and a man had not known her (ULT)

who had never had {marital} relations with a man (UST)

See how you translated the idiom “not known a man” in Genesis 19:8. Alternate translation: [whom no man had ever slept with] or [who had never slept with a man] or [who had never had sexual relations with a man]

Support Reference: Idiom

And she went down (ULT)

She walked down (UST)

Notice that the spring or well was at a place that was lower than the place where Abraham’s servant was standing. Alternate translation: [She went down]

---

to the spring (ULT)

to the well (UST)

See how you translated **spring** in verse 13. Alternate translation: [to the spring-fed well]

---

and filled her jar (ULT)

filled her jug {with water} (UST)

Alternate translation: [filled her jar with water]

---

and came up (ULT)

and came {back} up {carrying it on her shoulder} (UST)

If it is not clear, you may need to make it explicit in your translation that Rebekah still had the jar with her when she came up from the well or spring, especially since she lowers it from her shoulder in verse 18. Alternate translation: [and came back up with it on her shoulder]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- was … beautiful
- a … virgin
- had … known her

UST

- beautiful
- unmarried
- who had never had {marital} relations with a man

Genesis 24:17

ULT:
Then the servant ran to meet her and said, “Please let me drink a little water from your jar.”

UST:
Then {Abraham’s} servant ran to meet her and said {to her}, “Please let me have a little water to drink from your jug.”

Then the servant ran to meet her (ULT)

Then {Abraham’s} servant ran to meet her (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then the servant ran up to her]

---

and said (ULT)

and said {to her} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and requested]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Please let me drink a little water from your jar (ULT)

Please let me have a little water to drink from your jug (UST)

Alternate translation: [Please let me have a little water to drink from your jar] or [Please give me a little drink from your jar]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the servant

UST

- {Abraham’s} servant

Genesis 24:18

ULT:
And she said, “Drink, my lord.” Then she hurried and lowered her jar to her hand{s} and gave him a drink.

UST:
She replied, “{Please} have a drink, sir.” Then she quickly lowered her jug {from her shoulder} to her hands and let him drink {some water} {from it}.

Drink, my lord (ULT)

{Please} have a drink, sir (UST)

Make sure that Rebekah’s reply is polite and respectful in your language, though the way she addresses Abraham’s servant should not make it sound like she is his slave. Also see how you translated **my lord** in Genesis 23:6, 11, 15. Alternate translation: [Certainly, sir, you may have a drink]

Support Reference: Politeness

Then she hurried and lowered her jar to her hand{s} (ULT)

Then she quickly lowered her jug {from her shoulder} to her hands (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then she quickly lowered her jar from her shoulder to her hands]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and gave him a drink (ULT)

and let him drink {some water} {from it} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and let him have a drink]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- my lord

UST

- sir

Genesis 24:19

ULT:
And {after} she finished giving him a drink, then she said, "I will also draw water for your camels until they have finished drinking."

UST:
After that, she said {to him}, "I will also draw water for your camels until they have had enough to drink."

And {after} she finished giving him a drink (ULT)

After that (UST)

Alternate translation: [After he finished drinking]

---

then she said (ULT)

she said {to him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [she offered to him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

I will also draw water for your camels (ULT)

I will also draw water for your camels (UST)

Alternate translation: [Let me also get water for all your camels]

---

until they have finished drinking (ULT)

until they have had enough to drink (UST)

Alternate translation: [until they are done]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- for your camels

UST

- for your camels

Genesis 24:20

ULT:
Then she hurried and emptied her jar into the trough and ran back to the well to draw water, and she drew water for all his camels.

UST:
Then she quickly emptied {the rest of the water from} her jug into the {animal drinking} trough {that was there} and ran back {and forth} to the well to draw {more water}, until she had drawn {enough} for all of the camels.

Then she hurried and emptied her jar (ULT)

Then she quickly emptied {the rest of the water from} her jug (UST)

See how you translated **Then she hurried and** in verse 18. Alternate translation: [So she quickly poured the rest of the water from her jug]

---

into the trough (ULT)

into the {animal drinking} trough {that was there} (UST)

The drinking **trough** was a long, open, stone container that several animals could drink from at the same time. Alternate translation: [into the animal drinking place that was there] or [into the stone container that was there for animals to drink out of]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

---

and ran back to the well to draw water (ULT)

and ran back {and forth} to the well to draw {more water} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and ran back and forth to the well to get more water]

---

and she drew water for all his camels (ULT)

until she had drawn {enough} for all of the camels (UST)

Alternate translation: [until she had brought enough for all of the camels]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the well
- his camels

UST

- the well
- the camels

Genesis 24:21

ULT:
And the man watched her silently to know whether Yahweh had made his journey succeed or not.

UST:
Meanwhile {Abraham's} servant silently watched Rebekah {and waited} to find out whether or not Yahweh had made him successful on his journey {to find a wife for Isaac}.

And the man watched her silently (ULT)

Meanwhile {Abraham's} servant silently watched Rebekah {and waited} (UST)

Starting in verse 21 the Hebrew text takes Rebekah and Laban's perspective and refers to Abraham's servant as **the man**. This continues until verse 34, when the servant tells everyone that he is Abraham's servant. For some languages this is confusing (because it sounds like two different people), so for those languages it is necessary to refer to him as "Abraham's servant" or "the servant" throughout this chapter.

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

---

to know whether Yahweh had made his journey succeed or not (ULT)

to find out whether or not Yahweh had made him successful on his journey {to find a wife for Isaac} (UST)

Alternate translation: [to find out whether or not Yahweh had made him successful on his trip to find a wife for Isaac] or [to see for sure if Yahweh had given him success on his trip]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- to know
- whether … had made … succeed
- Yahweh

UST

- to find out
- whether … had made him successful
- Yahweh

Genesis 24:22

ULT:
Then it happened, when the camels had finished drinking, then the man took out a gold nose ring, its weight a beka, and two gold bracelets for her arms, their weight ten shekels.

UST:
Finally, when the camels had finished drinking, the servant {gave Rebekah} a gold nose ring that weighed 6 grams, and two gold bracelets for her wrists that weighed 110 grams {each}.

Then it happened, when the camels had finished drinking (ULT)

Finally, when the camels had finished drinking (UST)

Alternate translation: [After all the camels had drunk as much water as they wanted and Rebekah had stopped drawing water]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

then the man took out a gold nose ring, its weight a beka (ULT)

the servant {gave Rebekah} a gold nose ring that weighed 6 grams (UST)

This one **beka** was about 1/5 of an ounce (6 grams) of gold. The **ten shekels** was about 4 ounces (110 grams) of gold. In your translation, you could use the ancient measurement and spell the words beka and shekels the way they sound in your language. You could also use the metric measurements given in the UST or use the measurement that your language and culture customarily use. Alternatively, you could use the ancient measurement and put a modern measurement in parentheses in the text or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [the servant brought out a gold nose ring weighing one beka and gave it to her] or [the servant gave her a gold nose ring that weighed one beka]

Support Reference: Biblical Weight

---

and two gold bracelets (ULT)

and two gold bracelets (UST)

Alternate translation: [He also gave her two gold bracelets]

---

their weight ten shekels (ULT)

that weighed 110 grams {each} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Each bracelet weighed ten shekels]

Support Reference: Biblical Weight

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the camels
- gold
- gold

UST

- the camels
- gold
- gold

Genesis 24:23

ULT:
And he said, "Whose daughter {are} you? Please tell me. Is there a place at the house of your father for us to lodge?"

UST:
Then he asked {her}, "Please tell me who your father {is}. {Also,} is there room at his house for me and my men to spend the night {there}?"

And he said (ULT)

Then he asked {her} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then he said to her] or [Then he asked Rebekah]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Whose daughter {are} you? Please tell me (ULT)

Please tell me who your father {is} (UST)

The phrase **Please tell me** can go: (1) with the previous question ("Whose daughter are you?"); or (2) with the following question ("Is there a place … to lodge?"). Since Abraham's servant's goal was to find a wife for Isaac who was one of Abraham's relatives, the first interpretation seems most likely.

Is there a place at the house of your father (ULT)

{Also,} is there room at his house (UST)

If you made **your father** explicit in the previous sentence, it may be more natural to refer to him with the pronoun "his" in this sentence. Alternate translation: [Also, is there enough room in his house] or [Also, does your father have any room in his house]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

for us (ULT)

for me and my men (UST)

The pronoun **us** includes other servants who came with Abraham's chief servant (as verse 32 shows). If your language has inclusive and exclusive forms of this pronoun, you should use the exclusive form here.

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

---

to lodge (ULT)

to spend the night {there} (UST)

Alternate translation: [to stay there tonight?]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- at the house of

UST

- at … house

Genesis 24:24

ULT:
Then she said to him, "I {am} the daughter of Bethuel, the son of Milcah, whom she bore for Nahor."

UST:
Rebekah answered him, "My father {is} Bethuel, {and he is} one of Nahor and Milcah's sons."

Then she said to him (ULT)

Rebekah answered him (UST)

Alternate translation: [She answered him] or [She replied]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

I {am} the daughter of Bethuel (ULT)

My father {is} Bethuel (UST)

Alternate translation: [Bethuel is my father]

---

the son of Milcah, whom she bore for Nahor (ULT)

{and he is} one of Nahor and Milcah's sons (UST)

Make sure the way you translate this does not sound like Bethuel was the only son of Milcah and Nahor; they had eight sons (Genesis 22:21–22). Also, in some cultures the father's name is normally given first; in other cultures the mother's name is normally first. Alternate translation: [who is a son of Milcah and Nahor] or [and his parents are Nahor and Milcah]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Bethuel
- she bore
- for Nahor

UST

- My father {is} Bethuel
- {and he is} one of Nahor and Milcah’s sons
- {and he is} one of Nahor and Milcah’s sons

Genesis 24:25

ULT:
Then she said to him, "Plenty of both straw and fodder {are} with us. {There is} also a place to lodge."

UST:
Then she added, "We have plenty of both straw and {other} feed {at our house} {for the camels to eat}, {and there is} also {enough} room {for you all} to stay {there} tonight."

Then she said to him (ULT)

Then she added (UST)

Some languages leave this quote margin implied here, because the same person is still talking to the same person. Other languages can keep the quote margin (like the Hebrew text does), to emphasize what Rebekah says next. The quote margin may also indicate that Rebekah paused before she said what she says in verse 25. Alternate translation: [Then she continued]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Plenty of both straw and fodder {are} with us (ULT)

We have plenty of both straw and {other} feed {at our house} {for the camels to eat} (UST)

The term **fodder** refers to dry feed that is prepared for animals to eat; it can include chopped hay and grains such as oats and barley. Alternate translation: [We have plenty of both straw and other feed at our house for your camels to eat]

{There is} also a place (ULT)

and there is} also {enough} room {for you all} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and there is also enough room in his house for all of you]

---

to lodge (ULT)

to stay {there} tonight (UST)

See how you translated this in verse 23. Alternate translation: [to spend the night there]

Genesis 24:26

ULT:
Then the man bowed down and prostrated himself before Yahweh,

UST:
Then the servant bowed to the ground and worshiped Yahweh,

Then the man bowed down and prostrated himself before Yahweh (ULT)

Then the servant bowed to the ground and worshiped Yahweh (UST)

See how you translated **bowed** in Genesis 18:2; 19:1. The word **prostrated** means he bowed low to the ground and touched his face or forehead to the ground with outstretched arms, in an act of worship. When combined with **bowed down** as in this verse, it is usually translated as "worshiped."

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then … bowed down
- and prostrated himself
- before Yahweh

UST

- Then … bowed to the ground
- and worshiped
- Yahweh

Genesis 24:27

ULT:
and said, “Praised be Yahweh, the God of my master Abraham, who has not abandoned his kindness and his faithfulness toward my master. {As for} me, Yahweh has led me on the road {to} the home of the relatives of my master!”

UST:
by saying, “Praise Yahweh, the God {who takes care} of my master Abraham! He has never stopped being kind and faithful to my master, and he has guided me on {my} journey {here} {to} the home of my master’s relatives!”

and said (ULT)

by saying (UST)

The servant is worshiping God by bowing down and by what he says in verse 27. Alternate translation: [He said]

Praised be Yahweh (ULT)

Praise Yahweh (UST)

See how you translated this in Genesis 9:26. Alternate translation: [I praise Yahweh]

---

the God of my master Abraham (ULT)

the God {who takes care} of my master Abraham (UST)

See how you translated **God of my master Abraham** in verse 12. Alternate translation: [who is the God whom my master Abraham worships]

Support Reference: Possession

---

who has not abandoned his kindness and his faithfulness toward my master (ULT)

He has never stopped being kind and faithful to my master (UST)

In **not abandoned**, Abraham's servant is using a figure of speech that emphasizes a positive meaning by using a negative word, **not**, together with a mild expression that is the opposite of the intended meaning. If it would be helpful in your language, you could emphasize the positive meaning in a strong way. Alternate translation: [who has always been kind and faithful to my master]

Support Reference: Litotes

{As for} me, Yahweh has led me on the road (ULT)

and he has guided me on {my} journey {here} (UST)

The last part of verse 27 is what Abraham's servant is praising God for; it is an example of how God has been kind and faithful to Abraham. Alternate translation: [and he has guided me on the road here] or [Yes, he guided me on my trip here]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Praised be
- Yahweh
- the God of
- my master
- Abraham
- has … abandoned
- his kindness
- and his faithfulness
- my master
- Yahweh
- {to} the home of
- my master

UST

- Praise
- Yahweh
- the God {who takes care} of
- my master

- Abraham
- has … stopped being
- kind
- and faithful
- my master
- he
- {to} the home of
- my master

Genesis 24:28

ULT:
Then the young woman ran and announced to the household of her mother about those things.

UST:
Then Rebekah hurried {home} and told her mother's family about what had happened.

Then the young woman ran (ULT)

Then Rebekah hurried {home} (UST)

See how you translated **young woman** previously in this chapter, and consider what is the best way to refer to Rebekah here. Alternate translation: [Then Rebekah ran home]

---

and announced (ULT)

and told (UST)

Alternate translation: [and reported to] or [and shared the news with]

---

about those things (ULT)

about what had happened (UST)

Alternate translation: [about what the man had said to her]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and announced
- to the household of

UST

- and told
- s family

Genesis 24:29

ULT:
Now Rebekah had a brother, and his name {was} Laban, and Laban ran to the man outside at the spring.

UST:
Rebekah had a brother whose name {was} Laban, and he rushed out to the well where Abraham's servant was.

Now Rebekah had a brother (ULT)

Rebekah had a brother (UST)

Laban was Rebekah's older brother. Some languages have a specific term for "older brother" that fits well here. Also, consider what is the best way to introduce this background information in your language. Alternate translation: [Now it so happened that Rebekah had a brother]

Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

---

and his name {was} Laban (ULT)

whose name {was} Laban (UST)

Alternate translation: [named Laban]

---

and Laban ran (ULT)

and he rushed (UST)

Consider what is the best way to refer to Laban here in your language. Alternate translation: [and he ran] or [He ran]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

to the man outside at the spring (ULT)

out to the well where Abraham's servant was (UST)

Alternate translation: [out to the spring where the man was] or [to where the man was standing beside the well]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Now Rebekah had
- {was} Laban
- Laban
- the spring

UST

- Rebekah had
- Laban
- לָבָן (ORIG QUOTE)
- the well

Genesis 24:30

ULT:
And it was when he had seen the nose ring and the bracelets on the arms of his sister, and when he had heard the words of Rebekah his sister, saying, "This {is} what the man said to me," then he went to the man, and behold, he was standing by the camels at the spring.

UST:
As soon as Laban had seen the nose ring {that his sister was wearing} and the bracelets on her arms and had heard her announce what the servant had said to her, he went {out} to meet him. He found him standing with {his} camels at the well.

And it was when he had seen (ULT)

As soon as Laban had seen (UST)

Verse 30 is a flashback of what had happened before Laban ran to the well (verse 29). Consider what is the best way to express this in your language. For some languages it may be necessary to combine verses 29–30 and put the sentences in the order that things actually happened. For example, "Now Rebekah had a brother named Laban. When he saw the nose ring and the bracelets she was wearing and heard her tell what the man had said to her, he hurried out to meet the man. He found/saw him standing with his camels beside the well." If you do this, you would mark these combined verses as 29–30. Alternate translation: [This is how it was When he had seen] or [As soon as he had seen]

Support Reference: Verse Bridges

---

the nose ring and the bracelets on the arms of his sister (ULT)

the nose ring {that his sister was wearing} and the bracelets on her arms (UST)

Some languages have a specific term for "younger sister" that fits well here. Also see how you translated **nose ring** and **bracelets** in verse 22. Alternate translation: [the nose ring and the bracelets that his sister was wearing]

---

and when he had heard the words of Rebekah his sister, saying, “This {is} what the man said to me (ULT)

and had heard her announce what the servant had said to her (UST)

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to use a direct quote or indirect quote here. If you want to make it clear who **the man** refers to, you should still translate it generally, for example, “the man I met at the well” because when Rebekah said this, she did not yet know who he was. Alternate translation: [and had heard her tell what the man at the well had said to her]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

---

then he went to the man (ULT)

he went {out} to meet him (UST)

Alternate translation: [he went out to where the man was]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

and behold, he was standing (ULT)

He found him standing (UST)

The word **behold** emphasizes what follows it. Alternate translation: [and there he was, standing] or [He saw him standing]

---

by the camels at the spring (ULT)

with {his} camels at the well (UST)

Alternate translation: [with his camels at the spring] or [near the well with his camels]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Rebekah
- the camels
- the spring

UST

- her announce
- {his} camels
- the well

Genesis 24:31

ULT:
Then he said, “Come, blessed of Yahweh. Why are you standing out here? For I have prepared the house and a place for the camels.”

UST:
Then Laban said {to him}, “Come {with me}, you whom Yahweh has blessed. There is no need for you to stand out here. I have gotten our house ready {for you and your men to stay with us} and {there is also} a place for {your} camels {to stay}.”

Then he said (ULT)

Then Laban said {to him} (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Laban is the one talking here. Consider whether or not to include whom he is speaking to in this quote margin. Alternate translation: [Then Laban said to the man]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Come (ULT)

Come {with me} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Please come stay with us]

Why are you standing out here (ULT)

There is no need for you to stand out here (UST)

Laban is being polite here, not accusing or critical. For some languages a rhetorical question does not fit here.

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

For I have prepared the house (ULT)

I have gotten our house ready {for you and your men to stay with us} (UST)

Consider whether or not it is necessary in your translation to make any implied information explicit in this sentence. Alternate translation: [because the house is ready for you and your men to lodge there]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and a place (ULT)

and {there is also} a place (UST)

Alternate translation: [and we also have room there]

---

for the camels (ULT)

for {your} camels {to stay} (UST)

Alternate translation: [where your camels can stay]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- blessed of
- Yahweh
- the house
- for the camels

UST

- you whom … has blessed
- Yahweh
- our house
- for {your} camels {to stay}

Genesis 24:32

ULT:
So the man went to the house. Then he unloaded the camels and gave straw and fodder to the camels, and water to wash his feet and the feet of the men who {were} with him.

UST:
So Abraham's servant went home {with Laban}. {When they arrived there,} Laban unloaded the camels, and he gave straw and {other} feed to them {to eat}. {He} also {gave} water {to the servant} and the men who {were} with him to wash their feet.

So the man went to the house (ULT)

So Abraham's servant went home {with Laban} (UST)

The Hebrew verb can be translated as **went** or "came," depending on the perspective that is taken. Do what is most natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Then the man went home with Laban]

Support Reference: Go and Come

Then he unloaded the camels (ULT)

{When they arrived there,} Laban unloaded the camels (UST)

The pronoun **he** probably refers to Laban. Since Laban was the host, it is most likely that he (or some of his servants) took care of the camels for his guests. Alternate translation: [There Laban took the loads off the camels]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

and gave straw and fodder to the camels (ULT)

and he gave straw and {other} feed to them {to eat} (UST)

See how you translated **straw and fodder** in verse 25. Alternate translation: [and fed them straw and other fodder]

---

and water to wash his feet and the feet of the men who {were} with him (ULT)

{He} also {gave} water {to the servant} and the men who {were} with him to wash their feet (UST)

Make sure your translation does not sound like Abraham's chief servant washed the feet of the other servants who were with him; each person washed off his own feet. See how you translated "wash the dust off your feet" in Genesis 19:2.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- to the house
- the camels
- to the camels

UST

- home
- the camels
- to them {to eat}

Genesis 24:33

ULT:
Then food was set before him to eat, but he said, "I will not eat until I have spoken my words." So he said, "Speak."

UST:
Then {Laban's family} served them a meal to eat, but the servant said {to them}, "Before I can eat, I need to tell {you} why I am here." Laban responded {to him}, "{Please} tell {us} {what you have to say}."

Then food was set before him to eat (ULT)

Then {Laban's family} served them a meal to eat (UST)

Consider whether it is best in your language to use a passive or active construction here.
Alternate translation: [Then they brought the servant and his men some food]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

but he said (ULT)

but the servant said {to them} (UST)

Alternate translation: [but the man said to them]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

I will not eat until I have spoken my words (ULT)

Before I can eat, I need to tell {you} why I am here (UST)

Alternate translation: [I will not eat anything until I have told you my message] or [Before I can eat anything, I need to tell you why I am here]

So he said (ULT)

Laban responded {to him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [So Laban replied]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Speak (ULT)

Please} tell {us} {what you have to say} (UST)

Make sure the way you translate this sounds polite. Alternate translation: [Please tell us what you want to say] or [Go ahead and tell us your message]

Support Reference: Politeness

Genesis 24:34

ULT:
Then he said, “I {am} a servant of Abraham.

UST:
So the servant told {them}, “I am Abraham’s servant.

Then he said (ULT)

So the servant told {them} (UST)

Consider again how you referred to “the man” in verses 21, 22, 26, 29–34, and see the note about that at verse 21. Alternate translation: [Then the man told them]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- a servant of
- Abraham

UST
- s servant
- Abraham

Genesis 24:35

ULT:
And Yahweh has greatly blessed my master, so that he has become great. And he has given him flock{s} and herd{s}, and silver and gold, and men slaves and women slaves, and camels and donkeys.

UST:
Yahweh has abundantly blessed my master, so that he has become wealthy. Yahweh has given him {many} sheep and cattle, {much} silver and gold, {many} male and female servants, and {many} camels and donkeys.

so that he has become great (ULT)

so that he has become wealthy (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that he is wealthy] or [and as a result, he is very wealthy]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

And he has given him flock{s} and herd{s} (ULT)

Yahweh has given him {many} sheep and cattle (UST)

This is the beginning of a list of what Yahweh had given Abraham. Consider the most natural way to list items in your language. Also, see how you translated **flocks and herds** in Genesis 13:5.

---

and silver and gold (ULT)

{much} silver and gold (UST)

See how you translated **silver and gold** in Genesis 13:2.

---

and men slaves and women slaves (ULT)

{many} male and female servants (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 20:14. Alternate translation: [many men and women slaves] or [many male and female slaves]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And Yahweh
- has … blessed
- my master
- flock{s}
- and herd{s}
- and silver
- and gold
- and men slaves
- and women slaves
- and camels
- and donkeys

UST

- Yahweh
- has … blessed
- my master
- {many} sheep
- and cattle
- {much} silver
- and gold
- {many} male and female servants
- {many} male and female servants
- and {many} camels
- and donkeys

Genesis 24:36

ULT:
And Sarah, the wife of my master, bore a son for my master after her old age, and he has given to him everything that {belongs} to him.

UST:
Besides that, my master's wife Sarah gave birth to a son for him when she was old, and my master has given him everything that he owns.

after her old age (ULT)

when she was old (UST)

Alternate translation: [in her old age] or [when she was very old]

---

everything that {belongs} to him (ULT)

everything that he owns (UST)

Alternate translation: [all of his property]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And … bore
- Sarah
- my master
- for my master

UST

- Besides that … gave birth to
- Sarah
- my master
- for him

Genesis 24:37

ULT:
And my master made me swear, saying, ‘You must not take a wife for my son from the daughters of the Canaanites whose land I am living in,

UST:
{Before I came here,} my master made me vow {to do something for him}. He said, ‘You must not arrange for my son {Isaac} to marry {any of} the Canaanite women whose land we have been living in.

saying (ULT)

He said (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he said to me] or [This is what he said to me:]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

You must not take a wife for my son (ULT)

You must not arrange for my son {Isaac} to marry (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 3. Alternate translation: [You must not get a woman for my son to marry]

---

from the daughters of the Canaanites (ULT)

{any of} the Canaanite women (UST)

Alternate translation: [from among the Canaanite women]

---

whose land I am living in (ULT)

whose land we have been living in (UST)

As in verse 3, make sure your translation does not sound like Abraham lived by himself among the Canaanites; his family and servants also lived among them with him. Alternate translation: [whom we live among in this land]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And … made me swear
- my master
- the Canaanites
- whose land … in

UST

- Before I came here … made me vow {to do something for him}
- my master
- {any of} the Canaanite women
- whose land we have been living in

Genesis 24:38

ULT:
but rather you must go to the house of my father, and to my clan, and take a wife for my son.'

UST:
Rather, go to my father's family, to my {own} relatives, and find a wife for my son {from among them}.'

but rather (ULT)

Rather (UST)

After you translate a section, it is a good habit to read through it at normal speed as you pay attention to where it is best to begin new sentences so that sentences and paragraphs flow well and it is easy for people to read. Alternate translation: [Instead]

---

you must go to the house of my father (ULT)

go to my father's family (UST)

See how you translated **house of my father** in verse 7.

---

and take a wife for my son (ULT)

and find a wife for my son {from among them} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and find a wife from among them for my son to marry]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the house of

- my clan

UST

- s family
- my {own} relatives

Genesis 24:39

ULT:
Then I said to my master, ‘Suppose the woman will not come with me?’

UST:
So I asked my master, ‘What {should I do} if the {young} woman {I find} refuses to come {back} {here} with me?’

Suppose (ULT)

What {should I do} if (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 5. Alternate translation: [Suppose that]

Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

---

the woman (ULT)

the {young} woman {I find} (UST)

Alternate translation: [the young woman I choose] or [when I find that young woman, she]

---

will not come with me (ULT)

refuses to come {back} {here} with me (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 5. Alternate translation: [does not want to go back with me?]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- my master

UST

- my master

Genesis 24:40

ULT:
And he said to me, ‘Yahweh, whom I walk before, will send his angel with you and make your journey succeed, so that you will take a wife for my son from my clan, and from the house of my father.

UST:
He answered me, ‘Yahweh whom I serve will send one of his angels with you. He will make you succeed on your journey, so that you will find a wife for my son from {among} my relatives, {someone} from my father’s family.

And he said to me (ULT)

He answered me (UST)

Alternate translation: [He told me] or [He replied to me]

Yahweh, whom I walk before (ULT)

Yahweh whom I serve (UST)

See how you translated “walk/live before” in Genesis 17:1. This idiom implies that Abraham lived according to God’s will. Alternate translation: [Yahweh, whose presence I walk in] or [Yahweh whom I obey]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

will send his angel (ULT)

will send one of his angels (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 7.

---

with you (ULT)

with you (UST)

Alternate translation: [to go with you] or [to accompany you]

---

and make … succeed (ULT)

He will make you succeed on your journey (UST)

Alternate translation: [to make your journey successful]

---

so that you will take a wife for my son from my clan (ULT)

so that you will find a wife for my son from {among} my relatives (UST)

See how you translated **clan** in verse 38, and consider again how you translated **take a wife for my son** in verses 3, 4, 7, 37–38. Alternate translation: [so that you can get a wife for my son from among my relatives] or [so that you can arrange for my son to marry a woman who is one of my relatives]

---

and from the house of my father (ULT)

{someone} from my father's family (UST)

See how you translated **house of my father** in verse 38.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Yahweh
- his angel

- and make … succeed
- from my clan
- and from the house of

UST

- Yahweh
- one of his angels
- He will make you succeed on your journey
- from {among} my relatives
- {someone} from … s family

Genesis 24:41

ULT:
Then you will be clear from my oath: When you go to my clan, and if they will not give her to you, then you will be clear from my oath.'

UST:
At that time you will be free from {keeping} the vow {you are making} to me: If you find a wife for Isaac but my family refuses to let her go with you, then you will be free from {keeping} your vow to me.'

Then (ULT)

At that time (UST)

The word **Then** is a special Hebrew word that can mean "at that time" and implies here that the servant's question (in verse 39) is now being addressed specifically. Alternate translation: [At this time] or [But if this happens] or [There is a situation when]

---

you will be clear from my oath (ULT)

you will be free from {keeping} the vow {you are making} to me (UST)

Alternate translation: [you will be released from keeping your vow you are making to me:] or [you will not have to fulfill the vow to me:]

When you go to my clan, and if they will not give her to you (ULT)

If you find a wife for Isaac but my family refuses to let her go with you (UST)

Alternate translation: [After you go to my clan and find a woman for Isaac, if they are not willing to let her go with you] or [If you find a wife for Isaac but my family refuses to let the woman you have chosen leave with you]

---

then you will be clear from my oath (ULT)

then you will be free from {keeping} your vow to me (UST)

See how you translated **clear from** earlier in this verse and in verse 8. Alternate translation: [you will be released from keeping the vow that you are making to me] or [you will not have to keep the unbreakable promise you are making to me]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- from my oath
- my clan
- from my oath

UST

- from {keeping} the vow {you are making} to me
- If you find a wife for Isaac but my family
- from {keeping} your vow to me

Genesis 24:42

ULT:
Then today I came to the spring, and I said, 'Yahweh, God of my master Abraham, if it is your will, please make my journey succeed that I have come on.

UST:
Then today when I came to {your city's} well, I prayed, '{Dear} Yahweh, {who is} the God {who takes care} of my master Abraham, if you are willing, please give me success on this journey that I have made.

Then today I came to the spring (ULT)

Then today when I came to {your city's} well (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that the servant is now talking about himself. He is no longer quoting Abraham (whose words ended in verse 41).

---

and I said, 'Yahweh (ULT)

I prayed, '{Dear} Yahweh (UST)

See how you began the prayer in verse 12.

God of my master Abraham (ULT)

{who is} the God {who takes care} of my master Abraham (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 12. Alternate translation: [the God whom my master Abraham serves]

Support Reference: Possession

---

if it is your will (ULT)

if you are willing (UST)

Alternate translation: [if you agree]

---

please make my journey succeed (ULT)

please give me success on this journey (UST)

See how you translated this clause in verses 21 and 40. Alternate translation: [please give me success during this trip] or [please make me successful on this trip]

---

that I have come on (ULT)

that I have made (UST)

Alternate translation: [that I have undertaken]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- today
- the spring
- Yahweh
- God of
- my master
- Abraham
- make … succeed

UST

- today
- {your city's} well
- {Dear} Yahweh
- {who is} the God {who takes care} of
- my master
- Abraham

- give me success on this journey

Genesis 24:43

ULT:
Behold, I am standing by {this} spring of water. And let it be {that} the young woman who comes out to draw {water} and I say to her, "Please give me a little water to drink from your jar,"

UST:
As you see, I am standing {here} near {this} well. {Please} make it happen {that} when a young woman comes out {of the city} to draw water and I ask her, "Please let me drink a little water from your jug,"

Behold, I am standing by (ULT)

As you see, I am standing {here} near (UST)

See how you translated this in verse 13. Alternate translation: [Look here I am, standing beside] or [As you know, I am standing here near]

Support Reference: Politeness

{this} spring of water (ULT)

{this} well (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 13. Alternate translation: [this spring-fed well]

And let it be {that} (ULT)

Please} make it happen {that} (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 14.

Support Reference: Politeness

---

and I say to her, “Please give me a little water to drink from your jar (ULT)

and I ask her, “Please let me drink a little water from your jug (UST)

This direct quote is within a direct quote that is within another direct quote. For some languages, it may be clearer or more natural to use an indirect quote here. Decide what is best in your language. Alternate translation: [and I ask her to let me drink some water from her water jar]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the young woman

UST

- a young woman

Genesis 24:44

ULT:
and she says to me, “Both you drink and I will also draw water for your camels,” {let} her {be} the wife whom Yahweh has chosen for the son of my master.’

UST:
if she replies, “{Yes,} have a drink and I will also draw water for your camels,” {then} {let} her {be} the woman whom {you} Yahweh have chosen to be the wife of my master’s son.’

and she says to me, “Both you drink and I will also draw water for your camels (ULT)

if she replies, “{Yes,} have a drink and I will also draw water for your camels (UST)

See how you translated the embedded direct quote in verse 43. Alternate translation: [if she gives me a drink and also offers to draw water for my camels]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

{let} her {be} the wife whom Yahweh has chosen for the son of my master (ULT)

{then} {let} her {be} the woman whom {you} Yahweh have chosen to be the wife of my master’s son (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Abraham’s servant is still talking directly to Yahweh in this clause. For example, you could make **you** explicit in this clause.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- for your camels
- has chosen
- Yahweh
- my master

UST
- for your camels

- have chosen
- {you} Yahweh
- my master

Genesis 24:45

ULT:
Before I had finished speaking in my heart, then behold, Rebekah was coming out and her jar {was} on her shoulder. And she went down to the spring and drew water, and I said to her, 'Please give me a drink.'

UST:
Before I had {even} finished praying quietly, suddenly I saw Rebekah coming out {of the city} carrying her {empty} {water} jug on her shoulder. She walked down to the well and filled her jug with water, so I asked her, 'May I please have a drink {of water}?'

Before I had finished (ULT)

Before I had {even} finished (UST)

Alternate translation: [Before I could even finish]

---

speaking in my heart (ULT)

praying quietly (UST)

Alternate translation: [praying to God in my heart] or [praying to God quietly]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

then behold (ULT)

suddenly I saw (UST)

Alternate translation: [just then I saw] or [there was]

Rebekah was coming out (ULT)

Rebekah coming out {of the city} (UST)

See how you translated the first half of verse 15, which is very similar to the first half of verse 45.

---

and her jar {was} on her shoulder (ULT)

carrying her {empty} {water} jug on her shoulder (UST)

Alternate translation: [with her empty water jar on her shoulder]

And she went down to the spring and drew water (ULT)

She walked down to the well and filled her jug with water (UST)

Consider again how you translated **spring** (verses 13, 16, 29–30, 42–43 and 45) and "well" (verses 11 and 20) in this chapter. Both terms refer to the same source of water. See the note about this at verse 13. Alternate translation: [She walked down to the spring and filled up her jar with water]

---

and I said to her, 'Please give me a drink (ULT)

so I asked her, 'May I please have a drink {of water} (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this embedded quote in your language. Alternate translation: [so I asked her to please give me a drink]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Rebekah
- to the spring

UST

- Rebekah
- to the well

Genesis 24:46

ULT:
And she hurried and lowered her jar from her and said, ‘Drink and I will also water your camels.’ So I drank, and she also watered the camels.

UST:
She quickly lowered her jug from her {shoulder} and said, ‘Have a drink, and I will also draw water for your camels.’ So I took a drink {from her jug}, and she also gave water to my camels.

And she hurried and lowered her jar (ULT)

She quickly lowered her jug (UST)

Consider again how you translated **jar** in verses 14–18, 20, 43, 45–46. Alternate translation: [She quickly lowered her jar] or [She quickly brought her jar down]

---

from her (ULT)

from her {shoulder} (UST)

Alternate translation: [off her shoulder]

---

and said, ‘Drink (ULT)

and said, ‘Have a drink (UST)

Make sure Rebekah sounds polite here in your translation.

Support Reference: Politeness

---

and I will also water your camels (ULT)

and I will also draw water for your camels (UST)

See how you translated this clause in verse 14. Also see verse 18, which is similar. Alternate translation: [and I will also give water to your camels] or [and I will also get water for your camels]

So I drank (ULT)

So I took a drink {from her jug} (UST)

Alternate translation: [So I drank some water from her jar] or [So I took a drink from her jar]

---

and she also watered the camels (ULT)

and she also gave water to my camels (UST)

Alternate translation: [and she also drew water to my camels]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- your camels
- the camels

UST

- your camels
- my camels

Genesis 24:47

ULT:
Then I asked her and said, 'Whose daughter {are} you?' And she said, 'The daughter of Bethuel, a son of Nahor whom Milcah bore for him.' Then I put the ring on her nose and the bracelets on her arms.

UST:
Then I asked her, 'Who {is} your father?' She answered, 'My father is Bethuel, {who is} one of Nahor and Milcah's sons.' After that I gave her a nose ring and bracelets to wear.

Whose daughter {are} you (ULT)

Who {is} your father (UST)

See how you translated this question in verse 23.

And she said (ULT)

She answered (UST)

Alternate translation: [She answered me] or [She replied]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

The daughter of Bethuel (ULT)

My father is Bethuel (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 24. Alternate translation: [I am the daughter of Bethuel]

---

a son of Nahor whom Milcah bore for him (ULT)

{who is} one of Nahor and Milcah's sons (UST)

Alternate translation: [who is a son of Nahor and his wife Milcah] or [and his parents are Nahor and Milcah]

Then I put the ring on her nose and the bracelets on her arms (ULT)

After that I gave her a nose ring and bracelets to wear (UST)

See how you translated "nose ring," **bracelets**, and **arms** in verse 22. Alternate translation: [So I put the nose ring on her nose and the bracelets on her wrists] or [After that I gave her the nose ring and bracelets to wear]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Bethuel
- Nahor
- bore

UST

- is Bethuel
- {who is} one of Nahor and Milcah's sons
- {who is} one of Nahor and Milcah's sons

Genesis 24:48

ULT:
And I bowed down and prostrated myself before Yahweh, and I praised Yahweh, the God of my master Abraham, who led me on the right way to take the daughter of my master's brother for his son.

UST:
Then I bowed {to the ground} and worshiped and praised Yahweh, the God {who takes care} of my master Abraham, because he guided me right where I should go to find the granddaughter of my master's brother {to be the wife} for my master's son.

And I bowed down and prostrated myself before Yahweh, and I praised Yahweh (ULT)

Then I bowed {to the ground} and worshiped and praised Yahweh (UST)

See how you translated "bowed down and prostrated himself" in verse 26, and see the note about that there. Alternate translation: [Next I bowed to the ground and worshiped and praised Yahweh]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

---

the God of my master Abraham (ULT)

the God {who takes care} of my master Abraham (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verses 12 and 42. Alternate translation: [the God whom my master Abraham serves]

Support Reference: Possession

---

to take (ULT)

to find (UST)

Alternate translation: [to get]

---

the daughter of my master's brother (ULT)

the granddaughter of my master's brother (UST)

The phrase **the daughter of my master's brother** could mean: (1) "the granddaughter of my master's brother." Alternate translation: [Nahor's granddaughter]; (2) "the daughter of my master's relative." Alternate translation: [Bethuel's daughter] Abraham's brother Nahor was the father of Bethuel and the grandfather of Rebekah (Genesis 11:26; 22:20–23).

Support Reference: Kinship

---

for his son (ULT)

{to be the wife} for my master's son (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that this refers to Abraham's son, not Nahor's or Bethuel's son.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And I bowed down
- and prostrated myself
- before Yahweh
- and I praised
- Yahweh
- the God of
- my master
- Abraham
- my master

UST

- Then I bowed {to the ground}
- and worshiped
- and worshiped
- and praised
- Yahweh
- the God {who takes care} of
- my master
- Abraham
- my master

Genesis 24:49

ULT:
And now if it is your will to show kindness and faithfulness to my master, tell me. But if not, tell me, so that I will turn to the right or to the left."

UST:
So now, {please} tell me whether or not you are willing to be kind and faithful to my master {by letting her come with me}, so that I can decide what to do {next}."

And now if it is your will (ULT)

So now … whether … you are willing (UST)

Throughout this verse "you" is plural, so use the plural form in your translation if your language marks that distinction. Alternate translation: [So now if you are willing]

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

---

to show kindness and faithfulness to my master (ULT)

to be kind and faithful to my master {by letting her come with me} (UST)

By **show kindness and faithfulness to my master**, Abraham's servant means they would send their daughter with him to become the bride of his master's son. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [to let her come with me, and in that way show your kindness and faithfulness to my master] or [to be kind and faithful to my master by sending her with me]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

so that I will turn to the right or to the left (ULT)

so that I can decide what to do {next} (UST)

Consider whether your language has the same idiom that Hebrew has here, or a similar idiom, with the same meaning, or whether you need to say this without an idiom. Alternate translation: [so that I can know which way to turn] or [so that I can know what to do next]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- kindness
- and faithfulness
- to my master

UST

- kind
- and faithful
- to my master {by letting her come with me}

Genesis 24:50

ULT:
Then Laban and Bethuel answered and said, "The thing has come from Yahweh; we are not able to tell you bad or good.

UST:
Then Laban and Bethuel answered {Abraham's servant}, "{It is clear that} Yahweh has made {all} this happen, {so} it is not our place to tell you anything different.

The thing has come from Yahweh (ULT)

{It is clear that} Yahweh has made {all} this happen (UST)

Alternate translation: [We can clearly see that Yahweh has made all this happen] or [It is obvious that all this is the will of Yahweh]

---

we are not able (ULT)

{so} it is not our place (UST)

Some languages have a dual pronoun that is used here. Alternate translation: [so it is not our right] or [so we have no right]

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

---

to tell you bad or good (ULT)

to tell you anything different (UST)

Alternate translation: [to tell you anything different from what he has done] or [to decide anything against what he has decided]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Laban
- and Bethuel
- from Yahweh
- bad
- good

UST

- Laban
- and Bethuel
- {It is clear that} Yahweh has made {all} this happen
- anything different
- anything different

Genesis 24:51

ULT:
Behold, Rebekah {is} before you. Take her and go, and let her be the wife of the son of your master, as Yahweh has spoken."

UST:
Look, here {is} Rebekah. Take {her with you} and return {home} so that she can marry your master's son as Yahweh has guided."

Behold, Rebekah {is} before you (ULT)

Look, here {is} Rebekah (UST)

Alternate translation: [See Rebekah is in front of you]

Take her and go (ULT)

Take {her with you} and return {home} (UST)

Alternate translation: [You may take her with you and go home]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

as Yahweh has spoken (ULT)

as Yahweh has guided (UST)

Alternate translation: [just as Yahweh has decided it should be]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Rebekah
- your master

- Yahweh

UST

- here {is} Rebekah
- your master
- Yahweh

Genesis 24:52

ULT:
Then it happened, when the servant of Abraham heard their words, that he bowed down to the ground before Yahweh.

UST:
When Abraham's servant heard what they said, he bowed to the ground {and thanked} Yahweh.

Then it happened, when the servant of Abraham heard their words (ULT)

When Abraham's servant heard what they said (UST)

The phrase **Then it happened** introduces the climax of the chapter, when the servant responds to hearing that Yahweh has fulfilled his prayer to find a wife for Isaac. Alternate translation: [And so]

Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

---

that he bowed down to the ground before Yahweh (ULT)

he bowed to the ground {and thanked} Yahweh (UST)

See how you translated **bowed down** in verse 48. Notice that here in verse 52, the phrase **to the ground** is explicit and emphasized. Alternate translation: [he bowed low to the ground and praised Yahweh]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the servant of
- Abraham
- that he bowed down
- to the ground
- before Yahweh

UST

- s servant
- Abraham
- he bowed
- to the ground
- {and thanked} Yahweh

Genesis 24:53

ULT:
Then the servant brought out jewelry of silver and jewelry of gold, and clothing, and gave them to Rebekah. And he gave valuable things to her brother and to her mother.

UST:
Then he took out {expensive gifts, including} silver and gold jewelry, and {also} {beautiful} clothing, and gave {them} to Rebekah. He {also} gave {valuable} gifts to her brother and mother.

Then the servant brought out (ULT)

Then he took out {expensive gifts, including} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then he brought out]

---

jewelry of silver and jewelry of gold, and clothing, and gave them to Rebekah (ULT)

silver and gold jewelry, and {also} {beautiful} clothing, and gave {them} to Rebekah (UST)

Alternate translation: [silver and gold jewelry and other expensive gifts, including beautiful clothing, and gave them to Rebekah] or [valuable gifts, including silver and gold jewelry, and also beautiful clothing, and gave them to Rebekah]

And he gave valuable things (ULT)

He {also} gave {valuable} gifts (UST)

Alternate translation: [He also gave expensive gifts]

---

to her brother and to her mother (ULT)

to her brother and mother (UST)

Alternate translation: [to her mother and brother]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the servant
- silver
- gold
- to Rebekah

UST

- Then he took out {expensive gifts, including}
- silver
- gold
- to Rebekah

Genesis 24:54

ULT:
Then he and the men who {were} with him ate and drank and lodged. Then in the morning they got up, and he said, "Send me to my master."

UST:
Then Abraham's servant and his men ate {supper} and slept {there} that night. {Early} the next morning after everyone got up, Abraham's servant said {to Rebekah's family}, "{Please} let me return {home} {now} to my master."

Then he and the men who {were} with him ate and drank and lodged (ULT)

Then Abraham's servant and his men ate {supper} and slept {there} that night (UST)

See how you translated **lodged** in verses 23, 25, and 31.

Send me to my master (ULT)

{Please} let me return {home} {now} to my master (UST)

This is an imperative, but it communicates a polite request rather than a command. Use a form in your language that communicates a polite request. It may be helpful to add an expression such as "please" to make this clear. Alternate translation: [Please let us return home now to my master]

Support Reference: Imperatives — Other Uses

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- to my master

UST
- to my master

Genesis 24:55

ULT:
But her brother and her mother said, "Let the young woman stay with us a few days, at least ten. After that she will go."

UST:
But Rebekah's brother and her mother replied, "{Please} let the young woman stay {here} with us {for another} ten days or so. Then you can go and take her {with you}."

Let the young woman stay with us (ULT)

{Please} let the young woman stay {here} with us (UST)

Alternate translation: [Please let the young woman remain here with us] or [Please let Rebekah remain here with us]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

a few days, at least ten (ULT)

{for another} ten days or so (UST)

Alternate translation: [around ten more days]

After that she will go (ULT)

Then you can go and take her {with you} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then she can go with you] or [Then you can leave and take her with you]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- a few days

UST

- {for another} ten days or so

Genesis 24:56

ULT:
But he said to them, "Do not detain me, since Yahweh has made my journey succeed. Send me off so that I will go to my master."

UST:
But the servant said to them, "{Please} do not delay me. Now that Yahweh has made my journey successful, let me go so that I can return to my master."

But he said to them (ULT)

But the servant said to them (UST)

Some languages have a dual pronoun that could be used here. However the servant is probably still addressing the whole family.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

Do not detain me, since Yahweh has made my journey succeed. Send me off (ULT)

{Please} do not delay me. Now that Yahweh has made my journey successful, let me go (UST)

See how you translated "make my journey succeed" in verse 42. Alternate translation: [Please do not detain me. Since Yahweh has made me successful on my journey, send us off] or [Please do not detain me, now that Yahweh has given me success on my journey. Let us leave]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- since Yahweh
- has made … succeed
- to my master

UST
- Now that Yahweh
- has made … successful

- to my master

Genesis 24:57

ULT:
Then they said, "Let's call for the young woman and ask her mouth."

UST:
So they replied, "Let's call Rebekah and ask her what she wants to do."

Then they said (ULT)

So they replied (UST)

Alternate translation: [They replied to him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Let's call for the young woman (ULT)

Let's call Rebekah (UST)

Consider again how you translated **young woman** in verses 14–16, 28, 43, 55, and 57, and see the note about this at verse 14. You may need to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context.

---

and ask her mouth (ULT)

and ask her what she wants to do (UST)

Alternate translation: [and ask her to tell us what she wants to do] or [and ask her if she is willing to go now]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Let’s call

UST

- Let’s call

Genesis 24:58

ULT:
So they called for Rebekah and said to her, “Will you go with this man?” And she said, “I will go.”

UST:
So they called for her and asked her, “Do you want to go {now} with this man?” She answered {them}, “{Yes,} I will go {now}.”

So they called for Rebekah (ULT)

So they called for her (UST)

Consider whether it is better to use a name or a pronoun to refer to Rebekah here in your language, especially considering how you referred to her in verses 53, 55, and 57. Alternate translation: [Then they summoned her]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

Will you go with this man (ULT)

Do you want to go {now} with this man (UST)

Alternate translation: [Are you willing to go now with this man?]

I will go (ULT)

Yes,} I will go {now} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Yes, I am willing to go now]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- So they called
- for Rebekah

UST

- So they called
- for her

Genesis 24:59

ULT:
Then they sent off Rebekah their sister and her nurse and the servant of Abraham and his men.

UST:
So they {agreed to} send their sister Rebekah and her {personal} servant {who had helped raise her}, with Abraham's servant and his companions.

Then they sent off Rebekah their sister (ULT)

So they {agreed to} send their sister Rebekah (UST)

Notice that Rebekah does not actually leave until verse 61. If this is not clear in your translation, you could include the implied information that they agreed or decided to send her with Abraham's servant. Alternate translation: [So they decided to send their sister Rebekah]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and her nurse (ULT)

and her {personal} servant {who had helped raise her} (UST)

The term **nurse** refers here to a servant woman who probably nursed Rebekah as a baby, took care of her as she was growing up, and still served her now.

---

and the servant of Abraham and his men (ULT)

with Abraham's servant and his companions (UST)

Alternate translation: [with Abraham's servant and his men]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Rebekah
- the servant of
- Abraham

UST

- Rebekah
- s servant
- Abraham

Genesis 24:60

ULT:
And they blessed Rebekah and said to her, "Our sister, may you become thousands of myriads, and may your offspring possess the gates of {those} hating them!"

UST:
They blessed Rebekah by saying to her, "Sister, we pray that God will give you countless thousands {of descendants}, and that he will help them conquer {all} their enemies and rule over them!"

And they blessed Rebekah and said to her (ULT)

They blessed Rebekah by saying to her (UST)

The phrase **and said** introduces a direct quotation. In your translation, use a natural way of introducing direct quotations in your language. It may not be necessary to represent this phrase explicitly. Make sure your translation of **they blessed Rebekah and said to her** refers to the same event, not two separate events. Alternate translation: [And they blessed Rebekah by saying to her]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Our sister (ULT)

Sister (UST)

This is a term of endearment that family members used to refer to Rebekah even though she was not the actual sister of all of them. This practice is common in many cultures. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Dear little sister]

---

may you become (ULT)

we pray that God will give you (UST)

Alternate translation: [may you become the mother of] or [we pray that you will have]

---

thousands of myriads (ULT)

countless thousands {of descendants} (UST)

Alternate translation: [thousands and thousands of descendants] or [many thousands of descendants]

---

and may your offspring possess (ULT)

and that he will help them conquer (UST)

Alternate translation: [and we pray that your descendants will defeat] or [and we pray that God will help them defeat]

---

the gates of {those} hating them (ULT)

{all} their enemies and rule over them (UST)

See how you translated the phrase **possess the gates** in Genesis 22:17. Alternate translation: [the cities of all their enemies!]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And they blessed
- Rebekah
- and may … possess
- your offspring
- the gates of
- {those} hating them

UST

- They blessed
- Rebekah
- and that he will help them conquer
- and that he will help them conquer
- {all} their enemies and rule over them
- {all} their enemies and rule over them

Genesis 24:61

ULT:
Then Rebekah got up and her maids, and they mounted the camels and went with the man. So the servant took Rebekah and left.

UST:
After Rebekah and her servants {who were going with her} packed their things, they got up on the camels {they were going to ride} and went with Abraham's servant. So {Abraham's} servant took Rebekah {with him} and started the journey {back} {home}.

Then Rebekah got up and her maids (ULT)

After Rebekah and her servants {who were going with her} packed their things (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Rebekah and her maids who were going with her got ready to go, and] or [After Rebekah and her maids who were going with her packed their things]

---

and went with the man (ULT)

and went with Abraham's servant (UST)

Consider again how you translated **the man** in verses 21, 22, 26, 29, 30, 32, 61. See the note about this at verse 21.

So the servant took Rebekah (ULT)

So {Abraham's} servant took Rebekah {with him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [So he took her with him]

---

and left (ULT)

and started the journey {back} {home} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and left to return home]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Rebekah
- the camels
- the servant
- Rebekah

UST

- Rebekah
- the camels {they were going to ride}
- {Abraham's} servant
- Rebekah

Genesis 24:62

ULT:
Meanwhile Isaac came from going to Beer Lahai Roi, and he was living in the land of the Negev.

UST:
Meanwhile Isaac returned {home} from visiting {the place called} Beer Lahai Roi. {At that time} he was living in the Negev {Wilderness}.

Meanwhile Isaac came from going to (ULT)

Meanwhile Isaac returned {home} from visiting (UST)

Alternate translation: [While they were traveling, Isaac returned home from a trip he had made to]

Beer Lahai Roi (ULT)

{the place called} Beer Lahai Roi (UST)

See how you translated the name of this place in Genesis 16:14. Alternate translation: [the well called Beer Lahai Roi]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

and he was living (ULT)

{At that time} he was living (UST)

Alternate translation: [so he was back home where he lived]

---

in the land of the Negev (ULT)

in the Negev {Wilderness} (UST)

See how you translated **the land of the Negev** in Genesis 20:1, and **the Negev** in Genesis 12:9; 13:1, 3. Alternate translation: [in the Negev Desert region] or [in the Negev Desert]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Meanwhile Isaac
- in the land of
- the Negev

UST

- Meanwhile Isaac
- in
- the Negev {Wilderness}

Genesis 24:63

ULT:
And Isaac went to meditate in the field as it was turning toward evening, and he lifted his eyes and saw that, behold, camels were coming.

UST:
{One day} as it was becoming evening, he went to the field to pray. {As he was praying,} he looked up and suddenly he saw {in the distance} {some} camels coming {toward him}.

And Isaac went to meditate in the field (ULT)

One day … he went to the field to pray (UST)

What Isaac does in verse 63 happened sometime after he returned from Beer Lahai Roi, but the Hebrew text does not say exactly when. So introduce this new event in a general way that is not too specific. Alternate translation: [One day he went out in the field to pray] or [After he had returned home, one day he was meditating out in the fields]

---

as it was turning toward evening (ULT)

as it was becoming evening (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to put this time phrase earlier in this sentence and say, "One day as it was becoming evening, Isaac/he went …" or "One evening, Isaac/he went …" Alternate translation: [as it was becoming dusk] or [late in the afternoon]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

and saw that, behold (ULT)

and suddenly he saw {in the distance} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and saw in the distance that there were]

---

camels were coming (ULT)

some} camels coming {toward him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [some camels heading toward him] or [some camels approaching him]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Isaac
- to meditate
- camels

UST

- יִצְחָק (ORIG QUOTE)
- to pray
- {some} camels

Genesis 24:64

ULT:
And Rebekah lifted her eyes and saw Isaac. Then she dismounted from the camel,

UST:
Rebekah {also} looked up and saw Isaac. Immediately she got down from the camel {that she was riding},

And Rebekah lifted her eyes and saw Isaac (ULT)

Rebekah {also} looked up and saw Isaac (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Rebekah, as she looked ahead of her, saw Isaac]

Then she dismounted (ULT)

Immediately she got down (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then she quickly jumped down]

---

from the camel (ULT)

from the camel {that she was riding} (UST)

Consider again how you translated **camel** throughout chapter 24. Alternate translation: [off the camel that she was riding]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Rebekah
- Isaac
- the camel

UST

- Rebekah {also} looked up
- Isaac
- the camel {that she was riding}

Genesis 24:65

ULT:
and she said to the servant, "Who {is} that man in the field who is coming to meet us?" And the servant said, "He {is} my master." So she took the veil and covered herself.

UST:
and asked {Abraham's} servant, "Who is that man in the field who is walking {this way} to greet us?" The servant answered {her}, "He {is} my master {Isaac}." So she covered her face with a veil {to show modesty}.

Who {is} that man in the field who is coming to meet us (ULT)

Who is that man in the field who is walking {this way} to greet us (UST)

Alternate translation: [Who is that man walking towards us in the field?]

And the servant said, "He {is} my master (ULT)

The servant answered {her}, "He {is} my master {Isaac} (UST)

Abraham and Isaac were both the servant's masters, especially since Abraham had already given Isaac all of his possessions (verse 36), which included his servants. Consider again how you translated "master/owner" throughout chapter 24.

So she took the veil and covered herself (ULT)

So she covered her face with a veil {to show modesty} (UST)

In that culture a bride-to-be wore a large veil to cover her entire body, especially her face, to show modesty and submission to her husband. Alternate translation: [So she took her veil and covered her face with it to show modesty] or [So she covered herself with her veil to show modesty]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the servant
- the servant
- {is} my master
- the veil

UST

- {Abraham's} servant
- The servant
- is} my master {Isaac}
- So she covered her face with a veil {to show modesty}

Genesis 24:66

ULT:
Then the servant reported to Isaac all the things that he had done.

UST:
Then the servant told Isaac everything that he had done {on the journey}.

Then the servant reported to Isaac (ULT)

Then the servant told Isaac (UST)

Alternate translation: [When they reached Isaac, the servant told him]

---

all the things that he had done (ULT)

everything that he had done {on the journey} (UST)

Alternate translation: [all that he had done during the trip] or [all that had happened on his journey]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the servant
- to Isaac

UST
- the servant
- Isaac

Genesis 24:67

ULT:
Then Isaac brought her into the tent of Sarah his mother, and he took Rebekah, and she became a wife to him. And Isaac loved her, and he was comforted after his mother.

UST:
Then Isaac took Rebekah into the tent where his mother Sarah had lived, and he married her, so that she became his wife. Isaac loved her, and he was happy again after {mourning for} his mother {who had died}.

Then Isaac brought her (ULT)

Then Isaac took Rebekah (UST)

Alternate translation: [So Isaac took Rebekah]

---

into the tent of Sarah his mother (ULT)

into the tent where his mother Sarah had lived (UST)

Make sure your translation of this phrase does not sound like Sarah still lived there; she had died three years previously (Genesis 23:1–2). Alternate translation: [into the tent where his mother Sarah had lived before she died]

---

and he was comforted (ULT)

and he was happy again (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he was consoled by her] or [and she made him happy again]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

after his mother (ULT)

after {mourning for} his mother {who had died} (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation here why Isaac needed comforting.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Isaac
- into the tent of
- Sarah
- Rebekah
- And … loved her
- Isaac

UST

- Isaac
- into the tent
- where … Sarah had lived
- and he married her
- Isaac loved her
- and he was happy again

Genesis 25

Genesis 25:1

ULT:
Then Abraham added and took a wife, and her name {was} Keturah.

UST:
Then Abraham got married again, and his wife's name {was} Keturah.

Then Abraham added and took a wife, and her name {was} Keturah (ULT)

Then Abraham got married again, and his wife's name {was} Keturah (UST)

Abraham probably married Keturah after Sarah died (Genesis 23:1–2) and after Isaac married Rebekah (Genesis 24:67). Make sure your translation of this verse does not sound like Abraham had two wives named Keturah. Alternate translation: [Then Abraham married another woman, who was named Keturah]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Abraham

UST
- Abraham

Genesis 25:2

ULT:
And she bore for him Zimran and Jokshan and Medan and Midian and Ishbak and Shuah.

UST:
She had sons with him {whom they named} Zimran, Jokshan, Medan, Midian, Ishbak, and Shuah.

And she bore for him (ULT)

She had sons with him {whom they named} (UST)

See how you translated **bore for him** in Genesis 21:3; 24:47. Alternate translation: [Keturah gave birth to sons for him whose names were] or [She bore sons for him whom they named] or [They had sons together whom they named]

Zimran and Jokshan and Medan and Midian and Ishbak and Shuah (ULT)

Zimran, Jokshan, Medan, Midian, Ishbak, and Shuah (UST)

See how you used commas and conjunctions in similar lists of names in Genesis 22:22, 24.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- And she bore
- Midian

UST
- She had sons with him {whom they named}
- Midian

Genesis 25:3

ULT:
And Jokshan fathered Sheba and Dedan. And the descendants of Dedan were the Asshurites and the Letushites and the Leummites.

UST:
{Her son} Jokshan had {sons named} Sheba and Dedan. Dedan's descendants became {people groups named} the Asshurites, Letushites, and Leummites.

And Jokshan fathered (ULT)

{Her son} Jokshan had (UST)

See how you translated **fathered** in Genesis 11:27. Alternate translation: [Jokshan was the father of]

Sheba and Dedan (ULT)

{sons named} Sheba and Dedan (UST)

Alternate translation: [sons whom they named Sheba and Dedan]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

And the descendants of Dedan were the Asshurites and the Letushites and the Leummites (ULT)

Dedan's descendants became {people groups named} the Asshurites, Letushites, and Leummites (UST)

See how you translated the names of people groups in Genesis 10:4, 13–14, 16–18, and see the note about that at 10:4.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Sheba
- the Asshurites

UST

- {sons named} Sheba
- the Asshurites

Genesis 25:4

ULT:
And the sons of Midian {were} Ephah and Epher and Hanoch and Abida and Eldaah. All of those {were} the descendants of Keturah.

UST:
{Keturah's son} Midian had sons {named} Ephah, Epher, Hanoch, Abida, and Eldaah. All of those {were} Keturah's descendants {whom she had with Abraham}.

Ephah and Epher and Hanoch and Abida and Eldaah (ULT)

Ephah, Epher, Hanoch, Abida, and Eldaah (UST)

Consider what is the best way to connect the names in this list in your language.

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

All of those {were} the descendants of Keturah (ULT)

All of those {were} Keturah's descendants {whom she had with Abraham} (UST)

This phrase refers back to all the people listed in verses 2–4, which includes Keturah's six sons, seven grandsons and three great grandsons. Make sure you spelled **Keturah** consistently in verses 1–4. Alternate translation: [All those were the descendants of Keturah and Abraham]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- and Hanoch
- Midian {were}

UST
- Hanoch
- {Keturah's son} Midian

Genesis 25:5

ULT:
And Abraham gave everything that {belonged} to him to Isaac.

UST:
Abraham gave everything that he owned to Isaac.

And Abraham gave everything that {belonged} to him to Isaac (ULT)

Abraham gave everything that he owned to Isaac (UST)

Some languages have a specific word such as “left” or “willed” that means to give something as an inheritance. In that time and culture, a father would give his children their inheritance before he died. Alternate translation: [Abraham willed everything that he owned to Isaac] or [And Isaac inherited all that Abraham owned]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Abraham
- to Isaac

UST
- Abraham
- to Isaac

Genesis 25:6

ULT:
And to the sons of the concubines who {belonged} to Abraham, Abraham gave gifts, and while he was still alive he sent them eastward to the land of Kedem, away from Isaac his son.

UST:
He also gave {valuable} gifts to the sons that his servant wives had {with him}, but after that he made them move away to the east country {so that they would live} far away from his son Isaac.

And to the sons of the concubines who {belonged} to Abraham, Abraham gave gifts (ULT)

He also gave {valuable} gifts to the sons that his servant wives had {with him} (UST)

See how you translated "concubine" in Genesis 22:24. The word **gifts** in this clause is very general and can include domestic animals, servants, gold, silver, and other things. Alternate translation: [Abraham also gave valuable gifts to the sons he had with his concubines] or [Abraham also gave (valuable gifts) to the sons that his servant wives had for him]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

and while he was still alive he sent them eastward to the land of Kedem (ULT)

but after that he made them move away to the east country (UST)

The Hebrew word **Kedem** means "east" and refers to the region east of Canaan and the Dead Sea. Consider whether it is best in your language to transliterate (copy) the Hebrew name or to translate the meaning. Alternate translation: [then while he was still alive he sent them eastward to the region in the East] or [but after that he sent them to the east country] or [and after that he made them move away to the east country]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

away from Isaac his son (ULT)

{so that they would live} far away from his son Isaac (UST)

Alternate translation: [to be far away from his son Isaac] or [so that they would be far away from his son Isaac]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the concubines
- {belonged} to Abraham
- Abraham
- Isaac
- the land of

UST

- his servant wives had {with him}
- his servant wives had {with him}
- He … gave
- Isaac
- to the east country

Genesis 25:7

ULT:
And these {are} the days of the years of the life of Abraham that he lived: 175 years.

UST:
Abraham lived to be 175 years old.

And these {are} the days of the years of the life of Abraham that he lived: 175 years (ULT)

Abraham lived to be 175 years old (UST)

Alternate translation: [Abraham lived a total of 175 years]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the days of
- the years of
- Abraham
- 175 years
- 175 years
- 175 years

UST
- Abraham lived to be
- Abraham lived to be
- Abraham lived to be
- 175 years old
- 175 years old
- 175 years old

Genesis 25:8

ULT:
Then Abraham exhaled and died at a good old age, elderly and full, and he was gathered to his people.

UST:
Then he took his last breath and died at a very old age. After he had lived a long and satisfying life, he joined his ancestors {who had already died}.

Then Abraham exhaled (ULT)

Then he took his last breath (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then he breathed out for the last time] or [Then he took his final breath]

---

and died at a good old age (ULT)

and died at a very old age (UST)

Alternate translation: [and died at a ripe old age] or [and died when he was very old]

---

elderly and full (ULT)

After he had lived a long and satisfying life (UST)

The idiom **full** refers to a long life that was blessed by God. Consider what is the best way to translate this idiom in your language. Alternate translation: [an old man who had lived a full life, and] or [After he had lived a long and blessed life]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and he was gathered to (ULT)

he joined (UST)

The phrase **gathered to his people** is a euphemism that refers to dying but also implies that God took his spirit to be with his ancestors who had already died. It is best to translate this phrase fairly literally since it teaches about life after death. Alternate translation: [he was taken by God to be with] or [God took his spirit to be with]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

his people (ULT)

his ancestors {who had already died} (UST)

Make sure your translation of this phrase does not sound like these ancestors were still alive. They had already died before Abraham died. Alternate translation: [his relatives who had already died] or [his ancestors who had gone before him] or [his deceased relatives]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Abraham
- good

UST
- אַבְרָהָם (ORIG QUOTE)
- at a very old age

Genesis 25:9

ULT:
Then Isaac and Ishmael his sons buried him in the cave of Machpelah, in the field of Ephron the son of Zohar the Hittite, which {was} before Mamre,

UST:
His sons Isaac and Ishmael put his body in the cave of Machpelah {which was} in the field that had belonged to Ephron the son of Zohar the Hittite, east of {the city of} Mamre.

Then Isaac and Ishmael his sons buried him (ULT)

His sons Isaac and Ishmael put his body (UST)

Alternate translation: [His sons Isaac and Ishmael buried his body]

---

in the cave of Machpelah (ULT)

in the cave of Machpelah (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 23:9, and see the note about that there. Also see how you translated similar phrases in Genesis 23:17, 19. Alternate translation: [in the cave of the Machpelah area]

---

in the field of Ephron the son of Zohar the Hittite (ULT)

{which was} in the field that had belonged to Ephron the son of Zohar the Hittite (UST)

Ephron no longer owned the field (See: verse 10).

---

which {was} before Mamre (ULT)

east of {the city of} Mamre (UST)

For some languages it is clearer or more natural to put this phrase earlier in this verse. Also see how you translated **before Mamre** in Genesis 23:17, 19. Alternate translation: [near the city of Mamre]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then … buried
- Isaac
- and Ishmael
- the Hittite

UST

- put
- Isaac
- and Ishmael
- the Hittite

Genesis 25:10

ULT:
the field that Abraham had bought from the sons of Heth. There Abraham was buried, and Sarah his wife.

UST:
{That is} the {same} field that Abraham had bought from the Hittites. That is {the cave} where his sons buried his body next to {the body of} his wife Sarah {whom he had buried there before}.

from the sons of Heth (ULT)

from the Hittites (UST)

The Hebrew text has two different ways to refer to the Hittites; compare the phrase here with verse 9 where a single Hebrew word is used to refer to this people group. See how you translated **the sons of Heth** in Genesis 23:20.

There Abraham was buried, and Sarah his wife (ULT)

That is {the cave} where his sons buried his body next to {the body of} his wife Sarah {whom he had buried there before} (UST)

Abraham had already buried Sarah's body in the cave (Genesis 23:19). Make sure your translation of this sentence does not sound like Sarah was buried there a second time. Alternate translation: [Abraham was buried in that cave, where his wife Sarah had also been buried] or [That is where Sarah had been buried, and they buried Abraham next to her]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Abraham
- Heth
- was buried
- Abraham

- and Sarah

UST

- Abraham
- the Hittites
- his sons buried
- his body
- next to {the body of} his wife Sarah {whom he had buried there before}

Genesis 25:11

ULT:
And it happened after the death of Abraham, then God blessed Isaac his son. And Isaac lived near Beer Lahai Roi.

UST:
After Abraham died, God blessed his son Isaac, who lived near {the well} Beer Lahai Roi.

then God blessed Isaac his son (ULT)

God blessed his son Isaac (UST)

Use the phrase order in your language that is most natural in this context.

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

And Isaac lived near (ULT)

who lived near (UST)

Alternate translation: [who settled near] or [Isaac lived in the region near]

Beer Lahai Roi (ULT)

{the well} Beer Lahai Roi (UST)

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Beer Lahai Roi** in Genesis 24:62. Alternate translation: [the well called Beer Lahai Roi]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abraham
- then … blessed
- God
- Isaac
- Isaac

UST

- Abraham
- blessed
- God
- Isaac
- יִצְחָק (ORIG QUOTE)

Genesis 25:12

ULT:
Now these {are} the generations of Ishmael the son of Abraham, whom Hagar the Egyptian, the maidservant of Sarah, had born for Abraham.

UST:
What follows {is} a record of the descendants of Abraham's son Ishmael, the son Abraham had with Sarah's Egyptian slave woman Hagar.

Now these {are} the generations of (ULT)

What follows {is} a record of the descendants of (UST)

Consider what is the best way in your language to introduce the new topic that begins here. See how you translated this clause in Genesis 11:10. Alternate translation: [Here is the genealogy of] or [Here is the list of the descendants of] or [What follows is the record of the descendants of]

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the generations of
- Ishmael
- Abraham
- had born
- Hagar
- the Egyptian
- the maidservant of
- Sarah
- for Abraham

UST

- a record of the descendants of
- Ishmael
- Abraham
- had with … Hagar
- had with … Hagar
- Egyptian
- s … slave woman
- Sarah

- Abraham

Genesis 25:13

ULT:
And these {are} the names of the sons of Ishmael, by their names according to their births: the firstborn of Ishmael {was} Nebaioth, then Kedar and Adbeel and Mibsam

UST:
Here is {a list of} the names of Ishmael's sons, {given} in the order that they were born: His oldest {son} {was} Nebaioth, followed by Kedar, Adbeel, Mibsam,

by their names according to their births (ULT)

{given} in the order that they were born (UST)

Alternate translation: [listed in the order that they were born:]

---

the firstborn of Ishmael {was} Nebaioth (ULT)

His oldest {son} {was} Nebaioth (UST)

Alternate translation: [His oldest child was Nebaioth]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

then Kedar and Adbeel and Mibsam (ULT)

followed by Kedar, Adbeel, Mibsam (UST)

Alternate translation: [After him came Kedar, Adbeel, Mibsam]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- then Kedar
- Ishmael

- according to their births
- the firstborn of
- Ishmael

UST

- followed by Kedar
- Ishmael
- they were born
- oldest {son}
- His

Genesis 25:14

ULT:
and Mishma and Dumah and Massa,

UST:
Mishma, Dumah, Massa,

(There are no notes for this verse)

Genesis 25:15

ULT:
Hadad and Tema, Jetur, Naphish, and Kedermah.

UST:
Hadad, Tema, Jetur, Naphish, and Kedermah.

Hadad and Tema, Jetur, Naphish, and Kedermah (ULT)

Hadad, Tema, Jetur, Naphish, and Kedermah (UST)

See how you translated a similar list of names in verses 2–4.

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

Genesis 25:16

ULT:
Those {were} the sons of Ishmael, and those {are} their names by their settlements and by their camps, twelve rulers according to their tribes.

UST:
Those were Ishmael's {twelve} sons, who became the leaders of twelve tribes that were named after them, and each tribe lived in its {own} towns and villages.

and those {are} their names by their settlements and by their camps, twelve rulers according to their tribes (ULT)

who became the leaders of twelve tribes that were named after them, and each tribe lived in its {own} towns and villages (UST)

The Hebrew words for **settlements** and **camps** overlap in meaning. Both refer to temporary or permanent places where people settled, surrounded by some sort of wall or fence. Also, many translations have "princes" here instead of "rulers," but these Ishmaelite rulers were not actually sons of a king. See how you translated **rulers** in Genesis 17:20. Alternate translation: [who became the rulers of twelve tribes that were named after them, and each tribe lived in its own settlements and camps] or [Each of them became the ruler of a tribe that was named after him, and each tribe had its own villages and tent settlements]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Ishmael
- rulers
- according to their tribes

UST

- Ishmael
- who became the leaders of twelve … and each tribe lived in its {own} towns and villages
- tribes that were named after them

Genesis 25:17

ULT:
And these {are} the years of the life of Ishmael: 137 years. Then he exhaled and died, and he was gathered to his people.

UST:
Ishmael lived a total of 137 years. Then he took his last breath and died, and he joined his ancestors {who had died before him}.

And these {are} the years of the life of Ishmael: 137 years (ULT)

Ishmael lived a total of 137 years (UST)

See how you translated a similar sentence in verse 7.

Then he exhaled and died (ULT)

Then he took his last breath and died (UST)

See how you translated **exhaled** in verse 8. Alternate translation: [Then Ishmael breathed out for the last time and died] or [Then Ishmael took his final breath and died]

---

and he was gathered to (ULT)

and he joined (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 8. Alternate translation: [and he was taken by God to be with] or [and God took his spirit to be with the spirits of]

---

his people (ULT)

his ancestors {who had died before him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [his relatives who had already died] or [his relatives who had gone before him] or [his deceased relatives]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the years of
- Ishmael
- 137 years
- 137 years
- 137 years

UST

- lived a total of
- Ishmael
- 137 years
- 137 years
- 137 years

Genesis 25:18

ULT:
And they settled from Havilah to Shur that {is} near Egypt as you go toward Asshur. He fell in the face of all his brothers.

UST:
His descendants lived {throughout the area that extended} from {the region of} Havilah to {the wilderness of} Shur that {is} east of {the country of} Egypt as you head {from there} to {the city of} Asshur. They lived as enemies against all their relatives.

from Havilah to Shur (ULT)

{throughout the area that extended} from {the region of} Havilah to {the wilderness of} Shur (UST)

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Havilah** in Genesis 2:11; 10:7, 29 and **Shur** in Genesis 16:7; 20:1. The name **Shur** means "wall." The Wilderness of Shur may have been named after a city or fortification named Shur that was located near the eastern border of Egypt (Genesis 16:7). Alternate translation: [throughout the area that extended from the region of Havilah to the desert of Shur]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

that {is} near Egypt (ULT)

that {is} east of {the country of} Egypt (UST)

Alternate translation: [that is east of the land of Egypt]

---

as you go (ULT)

as you head {from there} (UST)

Alternate translation: [as you go from there] or [as one goes]

---

toward Asshur (ULT)

to {the city of} Asshur (UST)

Assyria and its capital city Asshur were far east of Shur. Consider again how you spelled **Asshur** in Genesis 2:14; 10:11, 22, and 25:3, 18. Alternate translation: [to the city of Asshur in Assyria] or [in the direction of the land of Assyria]

He fell in the face of all his brothers (ULT)

They lived as enemies against all their relatives (UST)

The meaning of this idiom is uncertain. It could mean: (1) “He lived in hostility toward all his brothers.” Alternate translation: [They lived as enemies against all their relatives] See how you translated a different idiom in 16:12 that probably has this meaning. Or it could mean: (2) “They settled in the presence of all their relatives.” Alternate translation: [They settledlived among all their relatives]; (3) “He died in the presence of all his brothers.” Alternate translation: [Ishmael died in the presence of his brothers] or [Ishmael died while all his brothers were still alive]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Egypt
- toward Asshur

UST

- {the country of} Egypt
- to {the city of} Asshur

Genesis 25:19

ULT:
And these {are} the generations of Isaac the son of Abraham: Abraham fathered Isaac,

UST:
Here {is} {more of} the history about Abraham's son Isaac and his descendants: {After} Abraham had Isaac,

And these {are} the generations of Isaac the son of Abraham (ULT)

Here {is} {more of} the history about Abraham's son Isaac and his descendants (UST)

We have already heard about much of Isaac's history in previous chapters; now we are told even more. See how you translated **these are the generations of** in verse 12 and Genesis 6:9.

Abraham fathered Isaac (ULT)

{After} Abraham had Isaac (UST)

See how you translated **fathered** in verse 3. Alternate translation: [After Abraham had his son Isaac]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the generations of
- Isaac
- Abraham
- Abraham
- Isaac

UST
- {more of} the history about … Isaac and his descendants
- {more of} the history about … Isaac and his descendants
- Abraham
- {After} Abraham

- Isaac

Genesis 25:20

ULT:
then Isaac was a son of forty years when he took Rebekah for himself as a wife, the daughter of Bethuel the Aramean from Paddan Aram, the sister of Laban the Aramean.

UST:
Isaac {grew up and} married Rebekah when he was forty years old. {She was} a daughter of Bethuel, {who was} an Aramean from {the region of} Paddan Aram, and her brother was Laban {who was also} an Aramean.

then Isaac was a son of forty years when he took Rebekah for himself as a wife (ULT)

Isaac {grew up and} married Rebekah when he was forty years old (UST)

See how you translated "was a son of … years" in Genesis 21:5. Alternate translation: [Isaac grew up and married Rebekah when he was 40 years old]

---

the daughter of Bethuel the Aramean from Paddan Aram (ULT)

{She was} a daughter of Bethuel, {who was} an Aramean from {the region of} Paddan Aram (UST)

Alternate translation: [She was a daughter of Bethuel, who was an Aramean from the land of Paddan Aram]

---

the sister of Laban (ULT)

and her brother was Laban (UST)

Alternate translation: [and she was a sister of Laban]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Aram
- Isaac
- years
- Rebekah
- Bethuel
- the Aramean
- from Paddan
- Laban
- the Aramean

UST

- Aram
- Isaac {grew up and}
- when he was forty years old
- Rebekah
- Bethuel
- {who was} an Aramean
- from {the region of} Paddan
- was Laban
- {who was also} an Aramean

Genesis 25:21

ULT:
And Isaac entreated Yahweh on behalf of his wife because she {was} barren. So Yahweh was entreated by him, and Rebekah his wife conceived.

UST:
However {for many years} Rebekah was not able to become pregnant, so Isaac prayed that Yahweh would give her children. Yahweh did what Isaac prayed for, so that she became pregnant {with twins}.

And Isaac entreated Yahweh on behalf of his wife because she {was} barren (ULT)

However {for many years} Rebekah was not able to become pregnant, so Isaac prayed that Yahweh would give her children (UST)

Isaac and Rebekah had been married for almost 20 years and they still had no children. See how you translated **barren** in Genesis 11:30. Also, it may be clearer to change the order of the clauses in this sentence to put them in the order in which they happened. Alternate translation: [Isaac prayed earnestly to Yahweh for his wife to have children because she was barren] or [But for many years Rebekah was not able to get pregnant, so Isaac prayed that Yahweh would give her children]

Support Reference: Information Structure

So Yahweh was entreated by him (ULT)

Yahweh did what Isaac prayed for (UST)

Alternate translation: [Yahweh did what he prayed for]

---

and Rebekah his wife conceived (ULT)

so that she became pregnant {with twins} (UST)

For some languages it is clearer to include here the fact that Rebekah was pregnant with two babies, rather than wait until verse 22. Alternate translation: [so that Rebekah became pregnant with twins]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And … entreated
- Isaac
- Yahweh
- {was} barren
- Yahweh
- and … conceived
- Rebekah

UST

- so … prayed
- Isaac
- that Yahweh
- However {for many years} Rebekah was not able to become pregnant
- Yahweh
- so that she became pregnant {with twins}
- רִבְקָה (ORIG QUOTE)

Genesis 25:22

ULT:
And the children struggled against each other inside her, so she said, “Why {is this} so? Why {am} I {like} this?” And she went to inquire of Yahweh.

UST:
But the {two} babies wrestled with each other inside her, so she asked, “Why is this happening to me?” Then she asked Yahweh about it.

And the children struggled against each other inside her (ULT)

But the {two} babies wrestled with each other inside her (UST)

Alternate translation: [And the two babies inside her kept pushing against each other] or [After a while the twins wrestled with each other inside her]

---

so she said (ULT)

so she asked (UST)

Alternate translation: [so Rebekah asked]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Why {is this} so? Why {am} I {like} this (ULT)

Why is this happening to me (UST)

Alternate translation: [What is happening inside me?]

And she went to inquire of Yahweh (ULT)

Then she asked Yahweh about it (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then she went to Yahweh to ask him what was happening] or [Then she prayed to Yahweh about it]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- to inquire of
- Yahweh

UST

- about it
- Yahweh

Genesis 25:23

ULT:
And Yahweh said to her, "Two nations {are} inside your womb, and two peoples will be divided from inside your womb. And one people will be stronger than the other people, and the older will serve the younger."

UST:
Yahweh answered her, "{The ancestors of} two {future} people groups {are} inside you. They will be enemies {starting now} even before they are born. One of them will be more powerful than the other, so that the older {son's descendants} will serve the younger {son's descendants}."

And Yahweh said to her (ULT)

Yahweh answered her (UST)

Alternate translation: [He answered her]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Two nations {are} inside your womb (ULT)

{The ancestors of} two {future} people groups {are} inside you (UST)

Many translations put Yahweh's words in poetry format in this verse. If your translation team decides to do this, look at a Bible version that does this to know where to divide the clauses.
Alternate translation: [Inside you are the ancestors of two people groups] or [The two babies inside your womb will become the fathers of two nations]

---

and two peoples (ULT)

They (UST)

Alternate translation: [Those two people groups] or [Those two ancestors]

---

will be divided (ULT)

will be enemies (UST)

Alternate translation: [will be hostile against each other] or [will be rivals]

---

from inside your womb (ULT)

{starting now} even before they are born (UST)

Alternate translation: [starting now even while they are still inside you]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Yahweh
- nations
- {are} inside your womb
- will serve

UST

- Yahweh
- {future} people groups
- {are} inside you
- will serve

Genesis 25:24

ULT:
Then her days were fulfilled to deliver, and behold, twins {were} inside her womb.

UST:
Later when it was time {for Rebekah} to give birth, sure enough, {there were} twin boys inside her!

Then her days were fulfilled to deliver (ULT)

Later when it was time {for Rebekah} to give birth (UST)

Alternate translation: [Later when it was time for her to give birth]

---

and behold, twins {were} inside her womb (ULT)

sure enough, {there were} twin boys inside her (UST)

Alternate translation: [sure enough, there were twin sons inside her!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- her days
- to deliver
- {were} inside her womb

UST

- Later when it was time {for Rebekah}
- to give birth
- inside her

Genesis 25:25

ULT:
And the first came out red; all of him {was} like a garment of hair, so they called his name Esau.

UST:
The first {one} who was born was completely covered with thick red hair. So his parents named him Esau, {which means "hairy."}

And the first came out red; all of him {was} like a garment of hair (ULT)

The first {one} who was born was completely covered with thick red hair (UST)

Alternate translation: [When the first baby came out, he was covered with thick red hair so that he was as hairy as a fur robe] or [The first baby who was born was completely covered with thick red hair]

Support Reference: Simile

---

so they called his name (ULT)

So his parents named him (UST)

The Hebrew text has **they** here, which probably refers to Esau's parents and may include people in general after his parents named him. Alternate translation: [So he was named]

Esau (ULT)

Esau, {which means "hairy … } (UST)

Consider whether or not to include the meaning of Esau's name in the text or in a footnote.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- so they called
- Esau

UST

- So his parents named him
- Esau, {which means “hairy … }

Genesis 25:26

ULT:
Then after that, his brother came out, and his hand was grabbing on to the heel of Esau, so he called his name Jacob. And Isaac {was} a son of sixty years when she bore them.

UST:
Next his brother was born, with his hand grabbing on {tightly} to Esau's heel. So they named him Jacob, {which means "heel-grabber."} Isaac {was} sixty years old when Esau and Jacob were born.

his brother came out (ULT)

his brother was born (UST)

Some languages have a specific term for a younger brother that fits here. See what you did in Genesis 4:2.

---

so he called his name (ULT)

So they named him (UST)

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 25 that probably has the same meaning.
Alternate translation: [So they called him] or [So he was named]

Jacob (ULT)

Jacob, {which means "heel-grabber … } (UST)

If you decide to include the meaning of Jacob's name in the text or in a footnote, make sure it matches the way you translate **grabbing** earlier in this sentence.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

And Isaac {was} a son of sixty years (ULT)

Isaac {was} sixty years old (UST)

See how you translated the idiom “was a son of … years” in verse 20.

Support Reference: Idiom

---

when she bore them (ULT)

when Esau and Jacob were born (UST)

Alternate translation: [when Rebekah gave birth to them]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Esau
- so he called
- Jacob
- And Isaac
- years
- when she bore

UST

- Esau
- So they named him
- Jacob, {which means “heel-grabber … }
- Isaac
- {was} sixty years old
- when … were born

Genesis 25:27

ULT:
Then the boys grew up, and Esau became a man who knew hunting, a man of the field, and Jacob {was} a quiet man who stayed among the tents.

UST:
When the boys grew up, Esau became a skilled hunter and he enjoyed {being} in the open country, but Jacob had a quiet personality and {preferred} to work at home.

Then the boys grew up (ULT)

When the boys grew up (UST)

Alternate translation: [As the boys grew up]

---

and Esau became a man who knew hunting (ULT)

Esau became a skilled hunter (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase (“mighty hunter”) in Genesis 10:9. Alternate translation: [Esau became a expert hunter] or [Esau became good at hunting animals for food]

---

a man of the field (ULT)

and he enjoyed {being} in the open country (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he preferred being in the open country] or [and he was an outdoorsman]

---

and Jacob {was} a quiet man (ULT)

but Jacob had a quiet personality (UST)

Make sure that it is clear in your translation that Esau and Jacob are being contrasted. Alternate translation: [but Jacob was a quiet man] or [Jacob, on the other hand, had a mild-mannered personality]

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

---

who stayed among the tents (ULT)

and {preferred} to work at home (UST)

Alternate translation: [and worked close to home] or [and liked to be at home]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Esau
- who knew
- and Jacob
- among the tents

UST

- Esau
- a skilled hunter
- but Jacob
- and {preferred} to work at home

Genesis 25:28

ULT:
And Isaac loved Esau, because {he liked} game meat in his mouth, but Rebekah loved Jacob.

UST:
Isaac's favorite son was Esau, because he liked to eat the meat of wild animals {that Esau hunted}, whereas Rebekah's favorite son was Jacob.

And Isaac loved Esau (ULT)

Isaac's favorite son was Esau (UST)

The author assumes that readers will know that both parents loved both sons. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. The translation should not sound as though Isaac and Rebekah did not love both of their sons. Rather, they each had their favorite son. Alternate translation: [Isaac loved Esau most]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

And Isaac loved Esau, because {he liked} game meat in his mouth (ULT)

Isaac's favorite son was Esau, because he liked to eat the meat of wild animals {that Esau hunted} (UST)

Make sure your translation of **he liked** refers here to Isaac, not Esau. For some languages it is clearer or more natural to put this clause first in this sentence. Alternate translation: [Isaac liked to eat the meat of wild animals, so he favored Esau]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

but Rebekah loved Jacob (ULT)

whereas Rebekah’s favorite son was Jacob (UST)

See how you translated a similar clause earlier in this verse. Alternate translation: [but Rebekah loved Jacob most]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And … loved
- Isaac
- Esau
- but Rebekah
- loved
- Jacob

UST

- Isaac’s favorite son was
- Isaac’s favorite son was
- Esau
- whereas Rebekah’s favorite son was
- whereas Rebekah’s favorite son was
- Jacob

Genesis 25:29

ULT:
Now Jacob was cooking stew, and Esau came in from the field, and he {was} exhausted.

UST:
{One day} when Jacob was making {some} soup, Esau came home from {hunting out in} the open country and he {felt} weak {and hungry}.

Now Jacob was cooking stew (ULT)

{One day} when Jacob was making {some} soup (UST)

According to verse 34, this stew (or thick soup) was made out of lentils, which are a type of bean; it may also have had pieces of meat in it. Consider what is the best way in your language to introduce the first event in this episode (following the background information in verses 27–28). Alternate translation: [Once Jacob was making some stew] or [One day when Jacob was making some stew]

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

---

and Esau came in from the field (ULT)

Esau came home from {hunting out in} the open country (UST)

See how you translated **field** in verse 27. Alternate translation: [Esau came home from working out in the fields]

---

and he {was} exhausted (ULT)

and he {felt} weak {and hungry} (UST)

The Hebrew word for **exhausted** means Esau was very tired (perhaps even feeling faint) from his hunting or work, as well as hungry and thirsty from lack of food. Some languages have an

idiom for this that fits well here. Alternate translation: [and he felt weak from hunger] or [and he was weak and hungry] or [very tired and hungry]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- Esau

UST

- Jacob
- Esau

Genesis 25:30

ULT:
Then Esau said to Jacob, "Please let me devour some of that very red stuff because I {am} exhausted!" For that {reason} they called his name Edom.

UST:
So Esau requested from Jacob, "Please let me have some of that very red soup because I {feel} weak {and hungry}!" That is why Esau's nickname was Edom, {which means "red."}

Then Esau said to Jacob (ULT)

So Esau requested from Jacob (UST)

Consider what is the best way in your language to translate this quote margin. Alternate translation: [So Esau asked Jacob]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Please let me devour (ULT)

Please let me have (UST)

Alternate translation: [Please let me eat]

---

some of that very red stuff (ULT)

some of that very red soup (UST)

Alternate translation: [some of that dark red stew you are making]

---

because I {am} exhausted (ULT)

because I {feel} weak {and hungry} (UST)

See how you translated **exhausted** in verse 29. Alternate translation: [because I am weak from hunger!] or [because I am hungry and weak!]

For that {reason} (ULT)

That is why (UST)

Alternate translation: [Because he said that]

---

they called his name (ULT)

Esau's nickname was (UST)

Frequently in the Hebrew text, this phrase has a general meaning and does not refer to someone specific. Alternate translation: [he is also called] or [they called him]

Edom (ULT)

Edom, {which means "red … } (UST)

You could include the meaning of **Edom** in your translation or in a footnote so that it is clear why Esau was given that name.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Esau
- Jacob
- they called
- Edom

UST

- Esau
- from Jacob
- Esau’s nickname was
- Edom, {which means “red … }

Genesis 25:31

ULT:
But Jacob said, “On this day sell your birthright to me.”

UST:
But Jacob replied, “First trade your rights as the oldest son to me {for the soup,} {then I will give you some}.”

But Jacob said (ULT)

But Jacob replied (UST)

Alternate translation: [But Jacob said to him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

On this day (ULT)

First (UST)

Alternate translation: [Today right now] or [Right now]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- On this day
- your birthright

UST

- Jacob
- First
- your rights as the oldest son

Genesis 25:32

ULT:
And Esau said, "Behold, I am about to die! So for what use {is} that to me, a birthright?"

UST:
Esau responded, "Look, I am about to die {from hunger}! So my birthright is of no use to me {right now}."

And Esau said (ULT)

Esau responded (UST)

Alternate translation: [Esau said to him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Behold, I am about to die (ULT)

Look, I am about to die {from hunger} (UST)

Esau is using exaggeration here to emphasize how hungry he is. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [Listen, I am so hungry that I feel like I am going to die!]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

So for what use {is} that to me, a birthright (ULT)

So my birthright is of no use to me {right now} (UST)

Esau uses a rhetorical question to emphasize his point about how hungry he is. Consider whether or not a rhetorical question works well here in your language. Alternate translation: [So how will my birthright benefit me if I die?] or [So my birthright is of no benefit to me right now!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Esau
- a birthright

UST

- Esau
- my birthright

Genesis 25:33

ULT:
But Jacob said, "Swear to me on this day!" So he swore to him and sold his birthright to Jacob.

UST:
Jacob insisted, "{First} make a vow to me today {before God} {that your rights are now mine}!" So Esau vowed to Jacob that he had traded his rights as the oldest son to him {for the soup}.

Swear to me on this day (ULT)

First} make a vow to me today {before God} {that your rights are now mine} (UST)

See how you translated "swear to me by God" in Genesis 21:23. Alternate translation: [First make an oath to me today before God that your rights are now mine!] or [You must first promise to me right now that you give your rights to me]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

So he swore to him (ULT)

So Esau vowed to Jacob (UST)

Make sure the way you translate this clause fits well with what Jacob just said. Alternate translation: [So he vowed to him] or [So Esau made an unbreakable vow to him]

---

and sold his birthright to Jacob (ULT)

that he had traded his rights as the oldest son to him {for the soup} (UST)

See how you translated "sell your birthright" in verse 31. Also see how Hebrews 12:16 is translated, which refers to the same event. Alternate translation: [that he had sold his rights as

the firstborn son to Jacob for the stew] or [that he was selling his firstborn-son-rights to him in exchange for the stew]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- Swear
- on this day
- So he swore
- his birthright
- to Jacob

UST

- Jacob
- {First} make a vow … before God} {that your rights are now mine}
- today
- So Esau vowed
- his rights as the oldest son
- to him {for the soup}

Genesis 25:34

ULT:
Then Jacob gave to Esau bread and lentil stew, and he ate and drank, and got up and left. So Esau despised his birthright.

UST:
Then Jacob gave Esau {some of} the lentil soup with {some} bread, and Esau {quickly} ate the meal and left. In that way, Esau treated his birthright {carelessly} as if it had no value.

Then Jacob gave to Esau bread and lentil stew (ULT)

Then Jacob gave Esau {some of} the lentil soup with {some} bread (UST)

Consider again how you translated "stew" in verses 29 and 34. Lentils are small, round, flat, reddish-brown legume seeds that grow inside a pod (similar to peas or beans). If lentils are not known in your area, you could describe them as "a type of legume called lentils." Alternate translation: [Then Jacob gave Esau some bread and some of the lentil stew] or [Then Jacob gave Esau some of the lentil stew with some bread]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

---

and he ate and drank, and got up and left (ULT)

and Esau {quickly} ate the meal and left (UST)

Consider what is the most natural way to translate this series of actions that happened quickly one after the other and shows how carelessly Esau treated his birthright. Alternate translation: [and Esau ate, drank, stood up, and left] or [and Esau hurriedly ate the meal and left]

So Esau despised his birthright (ULT)

In that way, Esau treated his birthright {carelessly} as if it had no value (UST)

See how you translated **birthright** in verses 31–33. Alternate translation: [So Esau showed that he did not value his rights as the firstborn son] or [In that way, Esau treated his birthright flippantly, as if it had little value]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then Jacob
- to Esau
- bread
- So … despised
- Esau
- his birthright

UST

- Then Jacob
- Esau
- with {some} bread
- In that way … treated … {carelessly} as if it had no value
- Esau
- his birthright

Genesis 26

Genesis 26:1

ULT:
Then there was a famine in the land, besides the earlier famine that was in the days of Abraham. So Isaac went to Abimelech, the king of the Philistines, to Gerar.

UST:
Now there was {another} severe food shortage in the region. {This was} a different shortage from the one that had happened {years} before, while Abraham was still alive. So Isaac {and his family} went to {the city of} Gerar to {ask for help from} King Abimelech, who ruled over the Philistines.

Then there was (ULT)

Now there was (UST)

Consider what is the best way in your language to begin this new episode.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

---

a famine (ULT)

{another} severe food shortage (UST)

See how you translated **famine** in Genesis 12:10. Alternate translation: [another famine] or [another extreme lack of food] or [another time of severe food shortage]

---

besides the earlier famine that was (ULT)

{This was} a different shortage from the one that had happened {years} before (UST)

Alternate translation: [in addition to the previous one that occurred] or [This was a different famine from the one that had happened years before]

So Isaac went (ULT)

So Isaac {and his family} went (UST)

In your translation it should not sound like Isaac went alone to the city of Gerar; the rest of his family lived with him.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

to Abimelech, the king of the Philistines, to Gerar (ULT)

to {the city of} Gerar to {ask for help from} King Abimelech, who ruled over the Philistines (UST)

Be consistent here with how you translated "the city of Gerar" in Genesis 10:19; 20:1–2 and **Philistines** in Genesis 10:14; 21:32, 34. Alternate translation: [went for help to the Philistine king Abimelech, who lived in the city of Gerar]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- a famine
- in the land
- the … famine
- in the days of
- Abraham
- Isaac
- Abimelech
- the king of

- the Philistines
- to Gerar

UST

- {another} severe food shortage
- in the region
- {This was} a … shortage
- while Abraham was still alive
- while Abraham was still alive
- Isaac {and his family}
- Abimelech
- King … who ruled over
- the … Philistines
- to … { … city of} Gerar … the

Genesis 26:2

ULT:
Then Yahweh appeared to him and said, "Do not go down to Egypt; live in the land that I tell you.

UST:
Then Yahweh appeared to Isaac and commanded {him}, "Do not go to {the country of} Egypt, {rather} stay in this land where I tell you {to live}.

Then Yahweh appeared to him (ULT)

Then Yahweh appeared to Isaac (UST)

See how you translated **appeared** in Genesis 12:7. Also consider whether it is more natural in your language to refer to Isaac here with his name or a pronoun. Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh came to Isaac]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

and said (ULT)

and commanded {him} (UST)

Consider what is the best way in your language to translate this quote margin. Alternate translation: [and said to him] or [and told him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Do not go down (ULT)

Do not go (UST)

Egypt was lower in elevation and also south of the land of the Philistines. Many translations leave that information implied. Alternate translation: [Do not go south] or [Do not travel]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

to Egypt (ULT)

to {the country of} Egypt (UST)

Alternate translation: [to the land of Egypt]

---

live in the land that I tell you (ULT)

rather} stay in this land where I tell you {to live} (UST)

Alternate translation: [but rather live in the land wherever I tell you to live] or [but rather live wherever I tell you to live]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Yahweh
- to Egypt
- in the land

UST

- Yahweh
- to {the country of} Egypt
- in this land

Genesis 26:3

ULT:
Sojourn in this land, and I will be with you and bless you. For to you and to your offspring I will give all these lands, and I will confirm the oath that I swore to Abraham your father.

UST:
Live {as a foreigner} in this region, and I will stay with you and prosper you. In fact, I will give all the {surrounding} regions to you and your descendants, and I will continue {to keep} the vow that I made to your father Abraham

Sojourn (ULT)

Live {as a foreigner} (UST)

See how you translated this term in Genesis 12:10 and 19:9. You may need to translate it in slightly different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [You must live for a while] or [Stay temporarily as a foreigner]

---

and I will be with you (ULT)

and I will stay with you (UST)

This clause means that God will guide, help, and protect Isaac and provide for his needs. Alternate translation: [and I will be right beside you]

---

and bless you (ULT)

and prosper you (UST)

Alternate translation: [cause you and your family to prosper]

For to you and to your offspring I will give all these lands (ULT)

In fact, I will give all the {surrounding} regions to you and your descendants (UST)

Starting here (and continuing through verse 4) Yahweh explains how he will bless Isaac. Begin this sentence in a way that makes that clear in your translation. Alternate translation: [Indeed, I will give all the surrounding lands to you and your offspring]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

---

and I will confirm (ULT)

and I will continue {to keep} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and I will continue to fulfill]

---

the oath that I swore to Abraham your father (ULT)

the vow that I made to your father Abraham (UST)

Consider again how you translated **oath** in Genesis 24:8. It may be necessary to translate this word differently in different contexts. Alternate translation: [the promise that I made to your father Abraham]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- in … land
- and bless you
- and to your offspring
- lands
- I swore
- to Abraham

UST

- in … region
- and prosper you

- and your descendants
- the {surrounding} regions
- I made
- to … Abraham

Genesis 26:4

ULT:
And I will multiply your offspring as the stars of the heavens, and I will give to your offspring all these lands. And in your offspring all the nations of the earth will be blessed,

UST:
that I will make your descendants as numerous as the stars in the sky. I will also give them all these regions. In fact, through your descendants {I} will bless all the people groups on the earth.

And I will multiply (ULT)

that I will make … as numerous (UST)

Verse 4 gives the details of the oath that is referred to in verse 3. Alternate translation: [Yes, I will multiply] or [that I will multiply]

---

your offspring as the stars of (ULT)

your descendants … as the stars in (UST)

See how you translated a similar clause in Genesis 22:17. Alternate translation: [increase the number of your offspring so that they are as numerous as] or [make your offspring as many as] or [give you so many offspring that they will be as numerous as]

Support Reference: Simile

---

as the stars of the heavens (ULT)

as the stars in the sky (UST)

Alternate translation: [as the number of stars in the sky]

---

to your offspring (ULT)

them (UST)

Alternate translation: [to your descendants] or [to them]

---

all these lands (ULT)

all these regions (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 3.

---

in your offspring (ULT)

through your descendants (UST)

See how you translated this phrase and the following clause in Genesis 22:18. Alternate translation: [In fact, through your offspring] or [And because of your offspring] or [In fact, by means of your offspring]

And in your offspring all the nations of the earth will be blessed (ULT)

In fact, through your descendants {I} will bless all the people groups on the earth (UST)

The expression **will be blessed** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is God. Alternate translation: [And in your offspring I will bless all the people groups on earth]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And I will multiply
- your offspring
- the heavens
- to your offspring
- lands
- And … will be blessed
- in your offspring
- the nations of
- the earth

UST

- that I will make … as numerous
- your descendants
- the sky
- them
- regions
- In fact … {I} will bless
- through your descendants
- the people groups on
- the earth

Genesis 26:5

ULT:
because Abraham obeyed my voice and kept my requirements, my commands, my decrees, and my laws.”

UST:
{I will do all that} because Abraham obeyed me and did everything that I ever commanded {him} {to do}.”

because (ULT)

{I will do all that} because (UST)

Verse 5 gives the reason that Yahweh will do everything that he says in verses 3 and 4. Alternate translation: [all because]

Abraham obeyed my voice (ULT)

Abraham obeyed me (UST)

The phrase **my voice** stands for what Yahweh said to Abraham and also represents Yahweh himself. Alternate translation: [Abraham always did what I told him]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

and kept my requirements, my commands, my decrees, and my laws (ULT)

and did everything that I ever commanded {him} {to do} (UST)

This clause is another way of saying **obeyed my voice** (found in the previous clause), and emphasizes that Abraham always obeyed God in everything. Notice that the terms in this clause have much overlap in meaning. Alternate translation: [Yes, he kept all my requirements, including all my commands, decrees, and laws]

Support Reference: Parallelism

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abraham
- my decrees
- and my laws

UST

- Abraham
- and did everything that I ever commanded {him} {to do}
- and did everything that I ever commanded {him} {to do}

Genesis 26:6

ULT:
So Isaac stayed in Gerar.

UST:
Then Isaac {did what God said and} settled {with his family} in {the city of} Gerar.

So Isaac stayed in Gerar (ULT)

Then Isaac {did what God said and} settled {with his family} in {the city of} Gerar (UST)

In your translation it should not sound like Isaac lived alone; the rest of his family lived with him. Alternate translation: [So Isaac obeyed what God commanded and stayed with his family in the city of Gerar]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Isaac
- in Gerar

UST

- Isaac
- in {the city of} Gerar

Genesis 26:7

ULT:
Then the men of the place asked about his wife, and he said, "She {is} my sister," because he was afraid to say, "{She is} my wife." {He thought,} "Lest the men of the place kill me on account of Rebekah, because she {is} beautiful of appearance."

UST:
Now Rebekah {was} very beautiful, so the men in that city started asking {Isaac} about her. Isaac was afraid they might kill him in order to have her, so he {lied and} told {them} she {was} his sister.

Then the men of the place asked about his wife (ULT)

so the men in that city started asking {Isaac} about her (UST)

Alternate translation: [After a while the men from that place started asking him about Rebekah] or [When the men from there started asking him about Rebekah]

---

and he said (ULT)

so he {lied and} told {them} (UST)

Alternate translation: [he said to them] or [he deceived them by saying]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

She {is} my sister (ULT)

she {was} his sister (UST)

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to use a direct quote or an indirect quote here. Alternate translation: [that she was his sister]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

---

because he was afraid to say, "{She is} my wife (ULT)

Isaac was afraid (UST)

See how you handled the previous quote in this sentence. Alternate translation: [He was afraid to say that she was his wife]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

{He thought,} "Lest the men of the place kill me (ULT)

they might kill him (UST)

See how you translated **the men of the place** earlier in this verse. Also consider whether it is better in your language to use a direct or indirect quote here, and see what you did earlier in this verse. Alternate translation: [He thought that the men of that city might kill him] or [He was afraid that the men in that place would kill him]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

---

on account of Rebekah (ULT)

in order to have her (UST)

Alternate translation: [because of Rebekah] or [so that they could take Rebekah]

---

because she {is} beautiful of appearance (ULT)

Now Rebekah {was} very beautiful (UST)

For some languages it may be better to put this clause first in this verse and say, "Now Rebekah was very beautiful, so the men in that city started asking Isaac about her. Isaac was

afraid they might kill him in order to take/have her, so he lied and told them she was his sister."
Alternate translation: [because she is very beautiful]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- he was afraid
- kill me
- Rebekah
- beautiful of

UST

- Isaac was afraid
- they might kill him
- in order to have her
- Now Rebekah {was} very beautiful

Genesis 26:8

ULT:
Then it happened, when the days had been long for him there, then Abimelech the king of the Philistines looked down from a window and saw that, behold, Isaac was laughing with Rebekah his wife.

UST:
{One day} after Isaac had lived there a long time, the Philistines' King Abimelech looked down from a window {of his palace} and saw to his surprise that Isaac was showing affection to his wife Rebekah.

Then it happened, when the days had been long for him there (ULT)

{One day} after Isaac had lived there a long time (UST)

Alternate translation: [One day when he and his family had been there a long time]

---

then Abimelech the king of the Philistines looked down (ULT)

the Philistines' King Abimelech looked down (UST)

Alternate translation: [Abimelech who was king over the Philistines looked out] or [King Abimelech looked out]

---

from a window (ULT)

from a window {of his palace} (UST)

Alternate translation: [from a window of his house]

---

and saw that, behold (ULT)

and saw to his surprise (UST)

In this context, **behold** means that King Abimelech was surprised at what he saw. Alternate translation: [and was surprised to see]

Isaac was laughing with Rebekah his wife (ULT)

that Isaac was showing affection to his wife Rebekah (UST)

There is a word play here in Hebrew (since **Isaac** and **laughing** come from the same root word). Isaac may have been laughing or flirting with Rebekah or physically touching her in an affectionate or intimate way, as a husband would do with his wife. Alternate translation: [that Isaac was flirting with his wife Rebekah]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the days
- Abimelech
- the king of
- the Philistines
- Isaac
- Rebekah

UST

- {One day} after Isaac had lived there a long time
- Abimelech
- the … King
- Philistines
- that Isaac
- Rebekah

Genesis 26:9

ULT:
So Abimelech called for Isaac and said, “Behold, she {is} really your wife! So how could you say, ‘She {is} my sister’?” And Isaac said to him, “Because I said, ‘I might die because of her.’”

UST:
So Abimelech summoned Isaac and scolded {him}, “It is obvious that Rebekah {is} actually your wife! So why did you tell us that she {is} your sister?” Isaac answered him, “{I said that} because I thought someone might kill me in order to have her {as a wife}.”

So Abimelech called for Isaac (ULT)

So Abimelech summoned Isaac (UST)

King Abimelech probably sent a servant to tell Isaac to come talk to him. Alternate translation: [So King Abimelech summoned Isaac] or [Then King Abimelech sent someone to bring Isaac to him]

---

and said (ULT)

and scolded {him} (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin in your language. Alternate translation: [and said to him] or [and scolded him by saying]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Behold, she {is} really your wife (ULT)

It is obvious that Rebekah {is} actually your wife (UST)

The word “behold” emphasizes what follows it. Consider what is the best way in your language to translate this term in this context. Alternate translation: [It is clear that she is actually your wife!]

So how could you say, ‘She {is} my sister (ULT)

So why did you tell us that she {is} your sister (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded direct quote (**She is my sister**) as a direct or indirect quote.

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

And Isaac said to him (ULT)

Isaac answered him (UST)

Consider what is the best way in your language to translate this quote margin.

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Because I said, ‘I might die because of her (ULT)

I said that} because I thought someone might kill me in order to have her {as a wife} (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [Because I thought that I might die because of her] or [I said that because I was afraid that someone might kill me in order to take her as a wife]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- So … called
- Abimelech
- for Isaac
- Isaac

UST

- So … summoned
- Abimelech
- Isaac
- Isaac

Genesis 26:10

ULT:
Then Abimelech said, "What {is} this you have done to us? One of the people might easily have lain with your wife, and you would have brought guilt on us!"

UST:
Then Abimelech scolded {him} {further}, "You have treated us very badly! Sooner or later, one of my men could have slept with your wife, and you would have caused us to be guilty {of adultery}!"

Then Abimelech said (ULT)

Then Abimelech scolded {him} {further} (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin in your language to fit this context.

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

What {is} this you have done to us (ULT)

You have treated us very badly (UST)

King Abimelech uses a rhetorical question here to show strong emotion and to emphasize that what Isaac did was wrong and should not have been done. Alternate translation: [Why did you treat us this way?] or [You should not have done this to us!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

One of the people might easily have lain with your wife (ULT)

Sooner or later, one of my men could have slept with your wife (UST)

See how you translated the idiom "lay with" in Genesis 19:32–35. It may be necessary to translate this in slightly different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation:

[Sooner or later, one of the men whom I rule could have slept with your wife] or [… had physical relations with your wife] or [… committed adultery with your wife]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

and you would have brought guilt on us (ULT)

and you would have caused us to be guilty {of adultery} (UST)

The pronoun **us** in this verse refers to King Abimelech and the Philistines whom he ruled; it does not include Isaac. Alternate translation: [with the result that you would have brought punishment on us!]

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abimelech
- guilt

UST

- Abimelech
- and you would have caused us to be guilty {of adultery}

Genesis 26:11

ULT:
Then Abimelech ordered all the people by saying, “Whoever touches this man or his wife will surely be killed!”

UST:
Then {King} Abimelech warned all {his} people, “I will definitely execute anyone who harms Isaac or his wife!”

Then Abimelech ordered all the people by saying (ULT)

Then {King} Abimelech warned all {his} people (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then King Abimelech told all his people]

Whoever touches this man or his wife will surely be killed (ULT)

I will definitely execute anyone who harms Isaac or his wife (UST)

In this context **touches** is used as an idiom that means “harms in any way.” Many languages have a similar idiom that fits well here. Alternate translation: [If anyone harms this man Isaac or his wife in any way, I will surely have that person executed!] or [I will surely execute anyone who harms Isaac or his wife in any way!]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Abimelech

UST
- {King} Abimelech

Genesis 26:12

ULT:
Then Isaac sowed seeds in that land, and in that year he obtained a hundredfold, and Yahweh blessed him.

UST:
Isaac planted crops in that area, and that year he gathered {a huge harvest that was} a hundred times {more than what he had planted}. Yahweh continued to bless him,

Then Isaac sowed seeds in that land (ULT)

Isaac planted crops in that area (UST)

The phrase "sow seeds" means to plant seeds by scattering them by hand on the ground in order to grow crops. If this method of planting is not known in your language area, you could translate this more generally and say, "planted seeds/crops" or "planted large fields with seeds/crops." Alternate translation: [Isaac planted crops in that land]

---

and in that year he obtained a hundredfold (ULT)

and that year he gathered {a huge harvest that was} a hundred times {more than what he had planted} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and during that year he reaped a huge harvest that was a hundred times more than what he had planted] or [and that year he harvested a very large crop]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then … sowed seeds
- Isaac
- in … land
- and … he obtained
- in … year
- and … blessed him
- Yahweh

UST

- planted crops
- Isaac
- in … area
- and … he gathered
- year
- continued to bless him
- Yahweh

Genesis 26:13

ULT:
And the man became great, and he continued to become even greater until he was exceedingly great.

UST:
so that he became richer and richer until he was extremely wealthy.

And the man became great, and he continued to become even greater (ULT)

so that he became richer and richer (UST)

Alternate translation: [In that way Isaac kept getting more and more wealthy] or [so that he grew richer and richer]

---

until he was exceedingly great (ULT)

until he was extremely wealthy (UST)

Alternate translation: [until eventually he was very rich]

Genesis 26:14

ULT:
And he had possession of flocks and possession of herds and many servants. So the Philistines envied him,

UST:
He owned many sheep and cattle and {he also owned} many servants. As a result, the Philistines were jealous of Isaac.

And he had possession of flocks and possession of herds (ULT)

He owned many sheep and cattle (UST)

See how you translated **flocks** and **herds** in Genesis 24:35. Alternate translation: [He had many flocks of sheep and herds of cattle] or [He had many sheep and cattle]

So the Philistines envied him (ULT)

As a result, the Philistines were jealous of Isaac (UST)

Alternate translation: [Because of that, the Philistines envied him] or [As a result, the Philistines were envious of him]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- flocks
- herds
- and … servants
- So … envied
- the Philistines

UST
- many sheep
- cattle
- and {he also owned} … servants
- As a result … were jealous

- the Philistines

Genesis 26:15

ULT:
and the Philistines stopped up all the wells that the servants of his father had dug in the days of Abraham his father and filled them with dirt.

UST:
So they filled up with dirt all the wells that the servants of his father Abraham had dug while he was {still} alive.

and the Philistines stopped up all the wells that the servants of his father had dug in the days of Abraham his father and filled them with dirt (ULT)

So they filled up with dirt all the wells that the servants of his father Abraham had dug while he was {still} alive (UST)

See how you translated “well” in Genesis 21:30–31.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the wells
- the servants of
- in the days of
- Abraham
- the Philistines

UST

- the wells
- the servants of
- while he was {still} alive
- while he was {still} alive
- they filled up with

Genesis 26:16

ULT:
Then Abimelech said to Isaac, "Go away from us, because you are more powerful than we {are}."

UST:
Then {King} Abimelech said to Isaac, "{Please} move away from us, because you are so powerful {that you are a threat} to us."

Then Abimelech said to Isaac (ULT)

Then {King} Abimelech said to Isaac (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin in your language. Alternate translation: [Finally King Abimelech said to him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Go away from us (ULT)

{Please} move away from us (UST)

Although King Abimelech is asking Isaac to leave, he is still trying to be polite. Alternate translation: [We want you to move somewhere else away from us]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

because you are more powerful than we {are} (ULT)

because you are so powerful {that you are a threat} to us (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this quote and say, "You are so powerful that we are afraid of you and want you to move away from us." Alternate translation: [because you are too powerful for us]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Abimelech
- Isaac
- you are … powerful

UST

- {King} Abimelech
- Isaac
- you are so powerful {that you are a threat} to us

Genesis 26:17

ULT:
So Isaac went from there and camped in the Valley of Gerar and settled there.

UST:
So Isaac moved from {the city of} Gerar and pitched his tents in the Gerar Valley and stayed there {for a while}.

So Isaac went from there (ULT)

So Isaac moved from {the city of} Gerar (UST)

In your translation it should not sound like Isaac moved by himself from the city of Gerar; his family moved with him. See what you did for similar cases in verses 1 and 6. Alternate translation: [So Isaac moved away from the city of Gerar with his family]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and camped (ULT)

and pitched his tents (UST)

Alternate translation: [and set up his tents]

---

in the Valley of Gerar (ULT)

in the Gerar Valley (UST)

Alternate translation: [in the valley near Gerar]

---

and settled there (ULT)

and stayed there {for a while} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and lived there for a while]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Isaac
- Gerar

UST

- Isaac
- in the Gerar Valley

Genesis 26:18

ULT:
Then Isaac returned and dug out the water wells that they had dug in the days of Abraham his father and {that} the Philistines had stopped up after the death of Abraham, and he called them names like the names that his father had called them.

UST:
Then Isaac {had his servants} dig the dirt out of the wells that Abraham's servants had dug and {that} the Philistines had {just} filled {with dirt}. He gave the wells the same names that his father had given them.

Then Isaac returned and dug out the water wells that they had dug in the days of Abraham his father (ULT)

Then Isaac {had his servants} dig the dirt out of the wells that Abraham's servants had dug (UST)

Isaac had his servants re-dig the wells; he did not do that work by himself.

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

and {that} the Philistines had stopped up after the death of Abraham (ULT)

and {that} the Philistines had {just} filled {with dirt} (UST)

Be consistent with how you spelled or translated **Philistines** in the book of Genesis. See 10:14; 21:32, 34; 26:1, 8, 14–15, 18. Alternate translation: [that the Philistines had plugged up with dirt after Abraham had died]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

and he called them names like the names (ULT)

He gave the wells the same names (UST)

Alternate translation: [He gave those wells the same names] or [He named the wells with the same names]

---

that his father had called them (ULT)

that his father had given them (UST)

Alternate translation: [that his father had named them]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Isaac
- the … wells
- in the days of
- Abraham
- the Philistines
- Abraham
- and he called
- had called

UST

- Isaac
- the wells
- Abraham's servants had dug
- Abraham's servants had dug
- the Philistines
- אַבְרָהָם (ORIG QUOTE)
- He gave
- had given

Genesis 26:19

ULT:
Then the servants of Isaac dug in the valley and found a well of living water there.

UST:
Next Isaac's servants dug {at a new place} in the valley and discovered a source of fresh water there.

and found a well of living water there (ULT)

and discovered a source of fresh water there (UST)

The phrase **living water** is an idiom that means the well was spring fed and was a source of continually flowing, fresh water to drink. Alternate translation: [and struck a spring of flowing water there]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the servants of
- Isaac
- a well of

UST
- s servants
- Isaac
- a source of

Genesis 26:20

ULT:
But the herdsmen of Gerar quarreled with the herdsmen of Isaac, saying, "The water {belongs} to us!" So he called the name of the well Esek, because they disputed with him.

UST:
But the herdsmen from {the city of} Gerar argued with Isaac's herdsmen and said, "That well is ours!" So Isaac named the well Esek, {which means "argument,"} because they argued with him {about it}.

The water {belongs} to us (ULT)

That well is ours (UST)

Consider whether it is best in your language to use a direct quote or an indirect quote here. Alternate translation: [That water is ours!] or [that the well belonged to them] or [that they owned that water]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

So he called the name of the well (ULT)

So Isaac named the well (UST)

Alternate translation: [So Isaac named that well]

Esek (ULT)

Esek, {which means "argument … } (UST)

If you include the meaning of this well's name in your translation text or in a footnote, make sure it fits with how you translate **disputed** in the next clause. This word is different from the word for **quarreled** used earlier in verse 20, but it has the same meaning.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

because they disputed with him (ULT)

because they argued with him {about it} (UST)

The herdsmen from Gerar disputed with Isaac indirectly (verse 20b) when they quarreled with his herdsmen (verse 20a). Make sure in your translation that the two halves of this verse do not contradict each other. Alternate translation: [because they disputed with his herdsmen about it]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- But … quarreled
- the herdsmen of
- Gerar
- the herdsmen of
- Isaac
- So he called
- the well

UST

- But … argued
- the herdsmen from
- {the city of} Gerar
- s herdsmen
- Isaac
- So Isaac named
- the well

Genesis 26:21

ULT:
Then they dug another well, but they quarreled over it too, so he called its name Sitnah.

UST:
Then Isaac's servants dug another well, but Gerar's herdsmen argued {with them} about that one too, so Isaac named it Sitnah, {which means "hostility."}

but they quarreled over it too (ULT)

but Gerar's herdsmen argued {with them} about that one too (UST)

Be consistent here with how you translated **quarreled** in the first part of verse 20. Alternate translation: [but once again the herdsmen from Gerar disputed with them about that well too]

---

so he called its name (ULT)

so Isaac named it (UST)

Alternate translation: [so he named it] or [So he named the well]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- well
- but they quarreled
- so he called

UST

- well
- but Gerar's herdsmen argued {with them}
- so Isaac named

Genesis 26:22

ULT:
Then he moved from there and he dug another well, and they did not quarrel over it, so he called its name Rehoboth, and he said, "Because now Yahweh has made space for us, and we will be fruitful in the land."

UST:
Then Isaac {and his family} moved from there and he {had his servants} dig a third well. {This time} Gerar's herdsmen did not argue about it, so he named it Rehoboth, {which means "space,"} because he said, "Finally Yahweh has provided space for us, so that we will prosper in the land."

Then he moved from there (ULT)

Then Isaac {and his family} moved from there (UST)

In your translation it should not sound like Isaac moved by himself.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and he dug (ULT)

and he {had his servants} dig (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 18. Alternate translation: [and he had his men dig] or [and his servants dug]

---

another well (ULT)

a third well (UST)

Alternate translation: [a new well]

---

and they did not quarrel over it (ULT)

{This time} Gerar's herdsmen did not argue about it (UST)

Alternate translation: [but this time the herdsmen of Gerar did not quarrel about it] or [This time Gerar's herdsmen did not quarrel about it]

---

so he called its name (ULT)

so he named it (UST)

See how you translated this clause in verses 20 and 21. Alternate translation: [so he named the well] or [so he gave it the name]

Rehoboth (ULT)

Rehoboth, {which means "space … } (UST)

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Rehoboth** in Genesis 10:11.

---

has made space for us (ULT)

has provided space for us (UST)

Alternate translation: [has provided room for us] or [given my family enough room to live]

---

and we will be fruitful in the land (ULT)

so that we will prosper in the land (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that we will flourish here in this land]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- so he called
- Yahweh
- and we will be fruitful
- in the land

UST

- so he named it
- Yahweh
- so that we will prosper
- in the land

Genesis 26:23

ULT:
Then from there he went up to Beersheba.

UST:
From there Isaac {and his family} went south to {the city of} Beersheba.

Then from there he went up to Beersheba (ULT)

From there Isaac {and his family} went south to {the city of} Beersheba (UST)

The word **up** refers to the fact that Beersheba is higher in elevation from where they were; it is also south in direction. Some translations leave that information implied. Alternate translation: [From there he and his family moved south to the city of Beersheba] or [One day he and his family moved from there to the city of Beersheba]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- to Beersheba
- to Beersheba

UST
- to {the city of} Beersheba
- to {the city of} Beersheba

Genesis 26:24

ULT:
And Yahweh appeared to him during that night and said, "I {am} the God of Abraham your father. Do not be afraid, because I {am} with you. And I will bless you and multiply your offspring for the sake of Abraham my servant."

UST:
That night Yahweh appeared to him and said {to him}, "I {am} the God whom your father Abraham serves. Do not be afraid, because I {will always be} with you. I will bless you and make your descendants numerous, just as {I promised} to Abraham, who serves me."

And Yahweh appeared to him during that night and said (ULT)

That night Yahweh appeared to him and said {to him} (UST)

See how you translated **Yahweh appeared to him** in verse 2. Alternate translation: [That night Yahweh came to him and said to him]

I {am} the God of Abraham your father (ULT)

I {am} the God whom your father Abraham serves (UST)

Alternate translation: [I am the God whom your father Abraham worships] or [I am the God who takes care of your father Abraham]

Do not be afraid, because I {am} with you (ULT)

Do not be afraid, because I {will always be} with you (UST)

Some languages can do as the Hebrew text does and put the result clause ("do not be afraid") before the reason (**I am with you**). Other languages prefer to put the reason before the result. Alternate translation: [I will always be with you, so do not be afraid]

Support Reference: Information Structure

And I will bless you (ULT)

I will bless you (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 3. Alternate translation: [I will prosper you]

---

and multiply your offspring (ULT)

and make your descendants numerous (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 4. Alternate translation: [and multiply the number of your offspring] or [and make your offspring numerous] or [and give you many offspring]

---

for the sake of (ULT)

just as {I promised} to (UST)

Alternate translation: [because of my promise to] or [in order to keep my promise to]

Abraham my servant (ULT)

Abraham, who serves me (UST)

Alternate translation: [my servant Abraham]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Yahweh
- {am} the God of
- Abraham
- Do … be afraid
- And I will bless you
- and multiply
- your offspring
- Abraham
- my servant

UST

- Yahweh
- {am} the God whom … serves
- Abraham
- Do … be afraid
- I will bless you
- and make … numerous
- your descendants
- Abraham
- who serves me

Genesis 26:25

ULT:
Then he built an altar there and called on the name of Yahweh. And he pitched his tents there, and the servants of Isaac dug a well there.

UST:
So Isaac built an altar there {at Beersheba} and worshiped Yahweh by name. He also set up his tents there, and his servants started digging {another} well there {too}.

And he pitched his tents there (ULT)

He also set up his tents there (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 17. Alternate translation: [He also set up his camp there]

---

and the servants of Isaac dug a well there (ULT)

and his servants started digging {another} well there {too} (UST)

Notice that they did not finish digging this well until verse 32. Keep that in mind as you translate this clause.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- an altar
- and called
- Yahweh
- his tents
- the servants of
- Isaac
- a well

UST

- an altar
- and worshiped … by name
- Yahweh
- his tents

- his servants
- his servants
- {another} well

Genesis 26:26

ULT:
Then Abimelech came to him from Gerar, and Ahuzzath his friend, and Phicol the commander of his army.

UST:
Then {King} Abimelech went to Isaac from {the city of} Gerar with his adviser Ahuzzath and his army commander Phicol.

Then Abimelech came to him from Gerar (ULT)

Then {King} Abimelech went to Isaac from {the city of} Gerar (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then King Abimelech came to him from the city of Gerar]

---

and Ahuzzath his friend (ULT)

with his adviser Ahuzzath (UST)

King Abimelech's friend Ahuzzath was probably his adviser.

---

and Phicol the commander of his army (ULT)

and his army commander Phicol (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 21:22, 32. Alternate translation: [and his army captain Phicol]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then Abimelech
- from Gerar
- his friend

- the commander of

UST

- Then {King} Abimelech
- from {the city of} Gerar
- his adviser
- his army commander

Genesis 26:27

ULT:
And Isaac said to them, "Why have you come to me, since you hate me, and you sent me away from you?"

UST:
Isaac asked them, "Why have you come to me, {especially} since you have been hostile toward me and forced me to move away from you?"

Why have you come to me (ULT)

Why have you come to me (UST)

Isaac probably wants to know why King Abimelech and his men are there, but this may also be a rhetorical question that shows his strong emotion. Alternate translation: [Why did you come here]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

since you hate me (ULT)

{especially} since you have been hostile toward me (UST)

Alternate translation: [especially since you have treated me hatefully] or [especially since you have been hateful toward me]

---

and you sent me away from you (ULT)

and forced me to move away from you (UST)

Alternate translation: [and forced me to go away from you!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Isaac

UST

- Isaac

Genesis 26:28

ULT:
And they said, "We have clearly seen that Yahweh has been with you, so we said, 'There should be an oath between us'—between us and you. So let us cut a covenant with you,

UST:
They answered {him}, "It is very obvious to us that Yahweh is with you {and blessing you}, and we decided that we should make a vow with you {to live in peace with one another}. So {please} let us make a {peace} treaty with you,

And they said (ULT)

They answered {him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [They replied]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

We have clearly seen (ULT)

It is very obvious to us (UST)

Make sure your translation of the pronoun **we** does not include Isaac here. Alternate translation: [It is very clear to us]

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

---

that Yahweh has been with you (ULT)

that Yahweh is with you {and blessing you} (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in verses 3 and 24. Alternate translation: [that Yahweh is with you and prospering you]

---

so we said (ULT)

and we decided (UST)

Alternate translation: [so we said to each other] or [so we decided]

There should be an oath between us'—between us and you (ULT)

that we should make a vow with you {to live in peace with one another} (UST)

In the Hebrew text, the first **us** in this sentence includes Isaac, but the second **us** excludes him. Notice that in the first two alternate translations, the pronouns **us** and **we** exclude him, but in the third alternate, the pronoun **we** includes him. Alternate translation: [that there should be an vow between us and you] or [that we should make a vow to each other]

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

So let us cut a covenant (ULT)

So {please} let us make a {peace} treaty (UST)

See how you translated **cut a covenant** in 15:18. Alternate translation: [So please let us make a peace agreement]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

with you (ULT)

with you {and blessing you} (UST)

Alternate translation: [with each other]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Yahweh
- an oath
- a covenant

UST

- Yahweh
- a vow with you {to live in peace with one another}
- a {peace} treaty

Genesis 26:29

ULT:
that you will not do evil against us, just as we did not touch you, and just as we did only good to you and sent you away in peace. Now you are blessed by Yahweh.”

UST:
that you will never harm us, just as we never harmed you, but only treated you well and sent you away in peace. {As a result,} Yahweh has now blessed you.”

that you will not do evil against us (ULT)

that you will never harm us (UST)

Here, **that you will not do evil against us** specifies the details of the covenant or treaty that they want Isaac to make with them. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

just as we did not touch you (ULT)

just as we never harmed you (UST)

See how you translated **touch** or “harm” in verse 11. Alternate translation: [just as we never harmed you in any way]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and just as we did only good to you (ULT)

but only treated you well (UST)

Alternate translation: [but only treated you kindly]

---

and sent you away in peace (ULT)

and sent you away in peace (UST)

Alternate translation: [and sent you away peacefully] or [and in a peaceful manner asked you to leave]

Now you are blessed by Yahweh (ULT)

{As a result,} Yahweh has now blessed you (UST)

Alternate translation: [Now because of that, Yahweh has greatly prospered you] or [As a result, Yahweh has now greatly prospered you]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- evil
- good
- in peace
- are blessed by
- Yahweh

UST

- that you will never harm us
- well
- in peace
- has … blessed
- Yahweh

Genesis 26:30

ULT:
Then he made a feast for them, and they ate and drank.

UST:
Then Isaac prepared a feast, and they {all} ate and drank {together}.

and they ate and drank (ULT)

and they {all} ate and drank {together} (UST)

In your translation it should not sound like the feast was only for King Abimelech and his men; Isaac ate with them.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- a feast

UST
- a feast

Genesis 26:31

ULT:
Then they got up early in the morning and swore to each other. Then Isaac sent them on their way, and they left from him in peace.

UST:
Early the next morning they got up and made vows to one another {that they would keep their treaty}. Then Isaac said goodbye to them, and they went home from him in peace.

Then they got up early in the morning (ULT)

Early the next morning they got up (UST)

See how you translated **got up early in the morning** in Genesis 20:8; 21:14, 22:3.

Then Isaac sent them on their way (ULT)

Then Isaac said goodbye to them (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Isaac told them goodbye]

---

and they left from him in peace (ULT)

and they went home from him in peace (UST)

Alternate translation: [and they left him on peaceful terms and returned home]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and swore
- Isaac
- in peace

UST

- and made vows … that they would keep their treaty
- Isaac
- in peace

Genesis 26:32

ULT:
Then it happened on that day, the servants of Isaac came and told him about the matter of the well that they had dug and said to him, "We have found water!"

UST:
That {same} day Isaac's servants came to inform him about the well that they had been digging and announced, "We have struck water!"

Then it happened on that day (ULT)

That {same} day (UST)

Alternate translation: [On that same day] or [Later that same day]

---

about the matter of the well that they had dug (ULT)

about the well that they had been digging (UST)

This is the same well that Isaac's servants started digging in verse 25.

---

and said to him (ULT)

and announced (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin in your language.

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

We have found water (ULT)

We have struck water (UST)

See how you translated **found** in verse 19. Alternate translation: [We have reached water!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- on … day
- the servants of
- Isaac
- and told
- the well

UST

- {same} day
- s servants
- Isaac
- to inform
- the well

Genesis 26:33

ULT:
So he called it Shibah. For that {reason} the name of the city {is} Beersheba to this day.

UST:
So Isaac named the well Shebah, {which means "vow."} That is why {even} today the name of that city {is} still Beersheba, {which means "well of the vow."}

So he called it Shibah (ULT)

So Isaac named the well Shebah, {which means "vow … } (UST)

The name of this well can be spelled **Shibah** or "Shebah."

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

the name of the city {is} Beersheba to this day (ULT)

even} today the name of that city {is} still Beersheba, {which means "well of the vow … } (UST)

See how you translated **Beersheba** and its meaning in Genesis 21:31.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- {is} Beersheba
- So he called
- {is} Beersheba
- day

UST
- is … Beersheba, {which means "well of the vow … }
- So Isaac named
- is … Beersheba, {which means "well of the vow … }
- {even} today

Genesis 26:34

ULT:
And Esau was a son of forty years, and he took {as} a wife Judith the daughter of Beeri the Hittite, and Basemath the daughter of Elon the Hittite.

UST:
When Esau was forty years old, he married {two} Hittite women: Judith, whose father was Beeri, and Basemath, whose father was Elon.

And Esau was a son of forty years (ULT)

When Esau was forty years old (UST)

Consider again how you translated "a son of … years" in the book of Genesis. See 5:32; 11:10; 12:4; 16:16; 17:1, 17, 24–25; 25:20–21 and 26:34. Alternate translation: [Now Esau was 40 years old, and] or [When Esau was 40 years old]

---

and he took {as} a wife Judith the daughter of Beeri the Hittite, and Basemath the daughter of Elon the Hittite (ULT)

he married {two} Hittite women: Judith, whose father was Beeri, and Basemath, whose father was Elon (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Basemath was Esau's second wife, not Beeri's wife. Alternate translation: [he married a woman named Judith, who was the daughter of a Hittite man named Beeri, and he also married a woman named Basemath, who was the daughter of a Hittite man named Elon]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Esau
- years
- the Hittite
- the Hittite

UST

- Esau
- forty years old
- הַחִתִּֽי (ORIG QUOTE)
- הַחִתִּֽי (ORIG QUOTE)

Genesis 26:35

ULT:
And they were a grief of mind to Isaac and Rebekah.

UST:
Isaac and Rebekah were very distressed that their son had married foreign women {rather than a woman from their own religion and people}.

And they were a grief of mind to Isaac and Rebekah (ULT)

Isaac and Rebekah were very distressed that their son had married foreign women {rather than a woman from their own religion and people} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Those foreign women caused Isaac and Rebekah to be very distressed]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- mind
- to Isaac
- and Rebekah

UST
- were very distressed that their son had married foreign women {rather than a woman from their own religion and people}
- Isaac
- and Rebekah

Genesis 27

Genesis 27:1

ULT:
Then it happened, when Isaac was old and his eyes were too dim to see, then he called Esau, his older son, and said to him, "My son." And he said to him, "Behold me."

UST:
One day when Isaac was an old man and he could no longer see, he sent for his older son Esau and said to him, "My son." Esau answered him, "Yes, {sir}?"

Then it happened, when (ULT)

One day when (UST)

The events in chapter 27 happened about 23 years after the end of chapter 26. Make sure your translation begins this verse in a way that fits with that fact. Alternate translation: [Now when]

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

Isaac was old (ULT)

Isaac was an old man (UST)

Alternate translation: [Isaac was very old]

---

and his eyes were too dim to see (ULT)

and he could no longer see (UST)

Isaac was either totally blind or so blind that he could not recognize people anymore (See: verses 18–27, 32–33). Alternate translation: [and his eyes were so weak that he could not see] or [and he was almost blind]

---

then he called (ULT)

he sent for (UST)

Isaac probably told a servant to go and tell Esau to come to him. Alternate translation: [he called for] or [he summoned]

And he said to him (ULT)

Esau answered him (UST)

Consider what is the best way in your language to translate this quote margin. Alternate translation: [Esau replied]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Behold me (ULT)

Yes, {sir} (UST)

See how you translated the phrase **Behold me** in Genesis 22:1, 7, 11. Alternate translation: [Here I am] or [Yes, sir what is it?]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- then he called
- Esau

UST

- he sent for
- Esau

Genesis 27:2

ULT:
Then he said, “Behold, please, I am old; I do not know the day of my death.

UST:
Then Isaac told {him}, “Please listen {closely}: I am an old man {now} {and} I do not know when I will die.

Then he said (ULT)

Then Isaac told {him} (UST)

Consider what is the best way in your language to translate this quote margin.

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Behold, please (ULT)

Please listen {closely} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Listen carefully, please:] or [Please listen carefully:]

I am old (ULT)

I am an old man {now} (UST)

See how you translated **old** or “an old man” in verse 1. Alternate translation: [I am very old]

I do not know the day of my death (ULT)

{and} I do not know when I will die (UST)

Alternate translation: [and I might die soon] or [and I might not live much longer]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- I do … know
- the day of

UST

- I do … know
- when

Genesis 27:3

ULT:
So now, please take your weapons, your quiver, and your bow, and go out {in} the field and hunt game for me.

UST:
So then, get your bow and arrows, go out in the open country and hunt {some} deer {meat} for me.

please take your weapons, your quiver, and your bow (ULT)

get your bow and arrows (UST)

Consider what is the most natural way to refer to a bow and arrows in your language. Alternate translation: [take your hunting gear, your quiver of arrows, and your bow] or [take your bow and arrows]

---

and go out (ULT)

go out (UST)

Alternate translation: [then go out]

{in} the field (ULT)

in the open country (UST)

See how you translated **the field** in Genesis 25:27. Alternate translation: [to the fields] or [to the open country]

---

and hunt game for me (ULT)

and hunt {some} deer {meat} for me (UST)

See how you translated **game** in Genesis 25:28. Alternate translation: [and hunt some wild animal meat for me] or [and go hunting for me]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and your bow

UST

- your bow and arrows

Genesis 27:4

ULT:
Then prepare tasty food for me such as I love, and bring it to me so I can eat it, so that my soul can bless you before I die.”

UST:
Next {use the meat to} cook a delicious meal for me the way that I like it, and bring it to me to eat so that I can bless you before I die.”

Then prepare (ULT)

Next {use the meat to} cook (UST)

For some languages it may be necessary to make explicit more of the steps that Esau needs to take to prepare the meal, so that it does not sound like the animal would be eaten alive or uncooked. Alternate translation: [Then use the meat to cook] or [Next butcher the deer and cook]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

tasty food for me (ULT)

a delicious meal for me (UST)

Alternate translation: [some tasty food for me] or [a tasty meal for me]

---

such as I love (ULT)

the way that I like it (UST)

Alternate translation: [the kind I like best] or [just the way that I like it]

---

my soul can bless you before I die (ULT)

I can bless you before I die (UST)

Isaac uses the phrase **my soul** to refer to himself. Alternate translation: [before I die I can ask God to prosper you]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- I love
- can bless you

UST

- I like it
- I can bless you

Genesis 27:5

ULT:
And Rebekah was listening while Isaac spoke to Esau his son. Then Esau went {to} the field to hunt game to bring it back.

UST:
Rebekah overheard what Isaac said to his son Esau. So after Esau had gone out to the open country to hunt,

And Rebekah was listening while Isaac spoke to Esau his son (ULT)

Rebekah overheard what Isaac said to his son Esau (UST)

Your language may have its own term or expression for this relationship. The phrase **his son** probably recalls the fact that Esau was Isaac's favorite son (Genesis 25:28). However, make sure that your translation of this phrase does not imply that Esau was not also Rebekah's son. Alternate translation: [Rebekah overheard what Isaac said to their son Esau] or [Rebecca listened to what Isaac said as he spoke to his son Esau]

Support Reference: Kinship

Then Esau went {to} the field to hunt game to bring it back (ULT)

So after Esau had gone out to the open country to hunt (UST)

See how you translated **the field** and **hunt game** in verse 3. Alternate translation: [So after Esau went out to the country to get wild animal meat] or [So after Esau had left to go hunting in the open country]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And Rebekah
- Isaac
- Esau
- Esau

UST

- Rebekah
- Isaac
- Esau
- Esau

Genesis 27:6

ULT:
Then Rebekah said to Jacob her son, saying, "Behold, I heard your father speaking to Esau your brother, saying,

UST:
she said to her son Jacob, "Listen, I {just} overheard your father tell your brother Esau

Then Rebekah said to Jacob her son, saying (ULT)

she said to her son Jacob (UST)

The phrase **her son** probably recalls the fact that Jacob was Rebekah's favorite son (Genesis 25:28). See how you translated "his son" in verse 5. Alternate translation: [Rebekah said to their son Jacob]

Support Reference: Kinship

Behold (ULT)

Listen (UST)

Alternate translation: [Listen to this:]

I heard your father (ULT)

I {just} overheard your father (UST)

Alternate translation: [I just heard your father]

---

speaking to Esau your brother, saying (ULT)

tell your brother Esau (UST)

Some languages have a special term for “older brother” that is used here. Alternate translation: [say to your brother Esau]

Support Reference: Kinship

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then Rebekah
- Jacob
- Esau

UST

- she
- Jacob
- Esau

Genesis 27:7

ULT:
'Bring game for me and prepare tasty food for me so that I can eat it and I can bless you in the presence of Yahweh, before my death.'

UST:
to get him {some} deer {meat} and {use it to} cook a delicious meal for him to eat. Then before he dies, he wants to bless Esau with Yahweh as his witness.

Bring game for me (ULT)

to get him {some} deer {meat} (UST)

Consider whether it is best in your language to translate Rebekah's quote of Isaac in verse 7 as a direct quote or an indirect quote. Alternate translation: [to bring him some wild deer meat]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

and prepare tasty food for me so that I can eat it (ULT)

and {use it to} cook a delicious meal for him to eat (UST)

See how you translated this clause in verse 4. Alternate translation: [and use it to cook a tasty meal for him to eat]

---

and I can bless you in the presence of Yahweh, before my death (ULT)

Then before he dies, he wants to bless Esau with Yahweh as his witness (UST)

Be consistent in translating the parts of verse 7 as either a direct quote (using first person pronouns) or an indirect quote (using third person pronouns). Alternate translation: [Then before he dies, he will ask Yahweh to bless Esau]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and I can bless you
- Yahweh

UST

- Then … he … wants to bless Esau
- with Yahweh as his witness

Genesis 27:8

ULT:
So now, my son, listen to my voice, to what I command you.

UST:
So then, my son, listen to me and do what I tell you {to do}.

So now, my son (ULT)

So then, my son (UST)

See how you translated **So now** in verse 3. Also, make sure it is clear that Rebekah is no longer quoting Isaac's words (whether directly or indirectly). If necessary, you could begin this verse with: "Rebekah continued," or "Then Rebekah said to Jacob," Alternate translation: [Now son]

---

listen to my voice (ULT)

listen to me (UST)

See how you translated **my voice** in Genesis 26:5.

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

to what I command you (ULT)

and do what I tell you {to do} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and obey me]

Genesis 27:9

ULT:
Please go to the flock and bring to me from there two good kids of the goats so that I will prepare from them tasty food for your father such as he loves.

UST:
Please go {out} to our flock {of goats} and get for me two of the best young goats. I will {use the meat from them to} cook a delicious meal for your father, {just} the way that he likes it.

Please go to the flock (ULT)

Please go {out} to our flock {of goats} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Go to our flock of goats]

---

and bring to me from there (ULT)

and get for me (UST)

Alternate translation: [and bring me]

---

two good kids of the goats (ULT)

two of the best young goats (UST)

Alternate translation: [two fine kid goats] or [two of our best kid goats]

---

so that I will prepare from them (ULT)

I will {use the meat from them to} cook (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that I can use the meat from them to cook] or [I will use their meat to cook]

---

tasty food for your father (ULT)

a delicious meal for your father (UST)

See how you translated "prepare some tasty food for" in verses 4 and 7. Alternate translation: [some savory food for your father] or [a tasty meal for your father]

---

such as he loves (ULT)

{just} the way that he likes it (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 4. Alternate translation: [the kind he likes best]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the flock
- kids of
- the goats
- good
- he loves

UST

- our flock {of goats}
- the … young goats
- the … young goats
- best
- he likes it

Genesis 27:10

ULT:
Then you take it to your father, and he will eat {it}, so that he will bless you before his death."

UST:
Then you can take the meal to your father to eat, so that he will bless you before he dies."

Then you take it to your father (ULT)

Then you can take the meal to your father (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then you can take the food to your father]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- he will bless you

UST
- he will bless you

Genesis 27:11

ULT:
Then Jacob said to Rebekah his mother, "Behold, Esau my brother {is} a hairy man, but I {am} a smooth man.

UST:
But Jacob responded to his mother, "As you know, my brother Esau has hairy skin, but I have smooth skin.

Then Jacob said (ULT)

But Jacob responded (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Jacob replied]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

---

to Rebekah his mother (ULT)

to his mother (UST)

Alternate translation: [to her]

Behold (ULT)

As you know (UST)

Alternate translation: [Look] or [Remember that]

Esau my brother (ULT)

my brother Esau (UST)

See how you translated **brother** in verse 11.

{is} a hairy man (ULT)

has hairy skin (UST)

See how you talked about Esau's hairy body in Genesis 25:25. Alternate translation: [has a lot of hair on his body]

---

but I {am} a smooth man (ULT)

but I have smooth skin (UST)

Alternate translation: [but I have non-hairy skin] or [but I am not hairy]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- Rebekah
- Esau

UST

- Jacob
- רִבְקָה (ORIG QUOTE)
- Esau

Genesis 27:12

ULT:
Suppose my father touches me? Then I will be in his eyes as a deceiver, and I will bring a curse on me and not a blessing."

UST:
What if my father feels my skin? He will {recognize me and} realize that I am trying to deceive him. Then he will curse me instead of blessing me."

Suppose (ULT)

What if (UST)

Alternate translation: [What would happen if] or [I am afraid of what will happen if]

---

my father touches me (ULT)

my father feels my skin (UST)

If this sentence is translated as a statement, you could end it with a period or an exclamation point to show that Jacob is worried. Alternate translation: [my father feels my arms]

Then I will be in his eyes as a deceiver (ULT)

He will {recognize me and} realize that I am trying to deceive him (UST)

Make sure that your translation of verse 12 describes a hypothetical situation, not something that had happened yet. Some languages have a special verb form (such as "would") to communicate this. Alternate translation: [Certainly he would recognize me and know that I am trying to trick him]

Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

---

and I will bring a curse on me and not a blessing (ULT)

Then he will curse me instead of blessing me (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then I would cause myself to be cursed instead of blessed]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- as a deceiver
- a curse
- a blessing

UST

- I am trying to deceive him
- Then he will curse me
- instead of blessing me

Genesis 27:13

ULT:
But his mother said to him, "Let your curse be on me, my son. Just listen to my voice, and go get {them} for me."

UST:
But his mother replied, "{If that happens,} may God curse me instead of you, my son. Just listen to me, and go get {two goats} for me!"

But his mother said to him (ULT)

But his mother replied (UST)

Alternate translation: [But his mother responded]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Let your curse be on me, my son (ULT)

{If that happens,} may God curse me instead of you, my son (UST)

His mother is using this possessive form to mean the curse Jacob fears his father might say against him. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Make sure that your translation of **your curse** does not sound like Jacob cursed someone. Also, for some languages it is more natural to put an address like **my son** first in this quote. Alternate translation: [My son, if your father curses you, may that curse fall on me and not on you]

Support Reference: Possession

Just listen to my voice (ULT)

Just listen to me (UST)

Alternate translation: [Please just do what I say]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

and go get {them} for me (ULT)

and go get {two goats} for me (UST)

Alternate translation: [and go and bring two goats to me]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Let your curse be

UST

- {If that happens,} may God curse me instead of you

Genesis 27:14

ULT:
So he went and got {them} and brought {them} to his mother. Then his mother prepared tasty food such as his father loved.

UST:
So Jacob went {to the flock} and selected {two goats} and took {them} to her. Then she cooked a delicious meal the way that his father liked it.

So he went (ULT)

So Jacob went {to the flock} (UST)

Alternate translation: [So Jacob went to their flock]

---

and got {them} (ULT)

and selected {two goats} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and got the goats] or [chose two goats]

---

and brought {them} to his mother (ULT)

and took {them} to her (UST)

Alternate translation: [and brought them to her]

Then his mother prepared (ULT)

Then she cooked (UST)

In some languages it is necessary to specify that the animal was killed and cut up before being cooked. See what you did for a similar case in verse 4. Alternate translation: [Then she had them butchered and she made] or [Then she used the butchered meat from the goats to cook]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

tasty food (ULT)

a delicious meal (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verses 4, 7 and 9. Alternate translation: [some savory food] or [a tasty meal]

---

such as his father loved (ULT)

the way that his father liked it (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in verses 4 and 9. Alternate translation: [just the way that his father liked it]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- loved

UST

- liked it

Genesis 27:15

ULT:
Then Rebekah took the best clothes of Esau her older son that {were} with her in the house and put them on Jacob her younger son.

UST:
She also got her older son Esau's finest clothes that she had in the house and had her younger son Jacob put them on.

Then Rebekah took (ULT)

She also got (UST)

Alternate translation: [She also took out]

---

and put them on Jacob her younger son (ULT)

and had her younger son Jacob put them on (UST)

Your translation should not sound like Rebekah dressed Jacob herself as if he were a little child. She probably gave him the clothes and asked him to put them on himself. Alternate translation: [and gave them to her younger son Jacob to put on]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Rebekah
- Esau
- in the house
- Jacob

UST
- רִבְקָה (ORIG QUOTE)
- Esau
- in the house
- Jacob

Genesis 27:16

ULT:
And she put the skins of the kid goats over his hands and over the smooth part of his neck.

UST:
And she used the goat skins to cover Jacob's arms and the part of his neck that had no hair {on it}.

And she put the skins of the kid goats over his hands and over (ULT)

And she used the goat skins to cover Jacob's arms and (UST)

See how you translated **skins** in Genesis 3:21. The skins still had the goat hair or fur on them.

---

the smooth part of his neck (ULT)

the part of his neck that had no hair {on it} (UST)

See how you translated **smooth** in verse 11. Alternate translation: [the non-hairy part of his neck]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- kid
- the … goats

UST
- And … the goat skins
- And … the goat skins

Genesis 27:17

ULT:
Then she gave the tasty food and the bread that she had made into the hand{s} of Jacob her son,

UST:
Then she handed the delicious meal to Jacob, including some bread that she had baked.

Then she gave the tasty food and the bread that she had made into the hand{s} of Jacob her son (ULT)

Then she handed the delicious meal to Jacob, including some bread that she had baked (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Rebekah gave to him the savory goat meat dish and some bread she had made] or [Then she gave the tasty food to him, including some bread that she had made]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the bread
- Jacob

UST
- some bread
- Jacob

Genesis 27:18

ULT:
and he went to his father and said, “My father.” And he said, “Behold me. Who {are} you, my son?”

UST:
He took the meal to his father and said, “Father.” His father answered, “Yes? Which of my sons {are} you?”

and he went to his father (ULT)

He took the meal to his father (UST)

Alternate translation: [Jacob took the meal to his father]

---

and said, “My father.” And he said (ULT)

and said, “Father.” His father answered (UST)

His father answered/replied.

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Behold me. Who {are} you, my son (ULT)

Yes? Which of my sons {are} you (UST)

See how you translated **Behold me** in verse 1. It may be necessary to translate this in a different way here because the context is different. Alternate translation: [Here I am, my son. Who are you?] or [Yes? Which one of my sons are you?]

Genesis 27:19

ULT:
Then Jacob said to his father, "I {am} Esau, your firstborn. I have done as you told me. Please get up, sit and eat some of my game, so that your soul will bless me."

UST:
Jacob replied to his father, "I am Esau, your oldest son. I have done what you requested me {to do}. {So now} please sit up and eat some of the deer {meat} that I have cooked {for you}, so that you can bless me."

Then Jacob said to his father (ULT)

Jacob replied to his father (UST)

Alternate translation: [Jacob lied to his father]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

I {am} Esau, your firstborn (ULT)

I am Esau, your oldest son (UST)

The author assumes that readers will know that the **firstborn** son had special rights, inheriting his father's authority and the largest portion of his father's estate. Jacob is deceitfully claiming those rights by using this term. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. See how you translated this term in Genesis 25:13. Alternate translation: [I am Esau, your firstborn son]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

I have done as you told me (ULT)

I have done what you requested me {to do} (UST)

Alternate translation: [I have done what you told me to do]

Please get up, sit and eat some of my game (ULT)

So now} please sit up and eat some of the deer {meat} that I have cooked {for you} (UST)

See how you translated "game meat" in verses 3, 5 and 7. Alternate translation: [So now, please sit up and eat some of the game meat that I have prepared for you]

---

so that your soul will bless me (ULT)

so that you can bless me (UST)

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 4.

Support Reference: Synecdoche

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- {am} Esau
- your firstborn
- will bless me

UST

- Jacob
- am Esau
- your oldest son
- you can bless me

Genesis 27:20

ULT:
Then Isaac said to his son, “How {is} this you were quick to find {it}, my son?” And he said, “Because Yahweh your God caused {it} to happen before me.”

UST:
But Isaac asked him, “How were you able to find {the deer} so quickly, my son?” Jacob answered, “Yahweh, {who is} the God who takes care of you, helped me to succeed.”

How {is} this you were quick to find {it}, my son (ULT)

How were you able to find {the deer} so quickly, my son (UST)

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to put the address **my son** first in this quote. Alternate translation: [How were you able to get the animal so quickly, my son?]

And he said (ULT)

Jacob answered (UST)

Alternate translation: [Jacob answered him]

Because Yahweh your God (ULT)

Yahweh, {who is} the God who takes care of you (UST)

Alternate translation: [I was successful because Yahweh, the God you worship]

---

caused {it} to happen before me (ULT)

helped me to succeed (UST)

See how you translated this clause in Genesis 24:12. Alternate translation: [helped me to hunt it] or [brought it to me]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Isaac
- Yahweh
- your God

UST

- Isaac
- Yahweh
- {who is} the God who takes care of you

Genesis 27:21

ULT:
Then Isaac said to Jacob, "Please come close, so that I can touch you, my son, {and know} whether you are really my son Esau or not."

UST:
Then Isaac said to him, "My son, please come here so that I can feel you and make sure that you are really my son Esau."

Then Isaac said to Jacob (ULT)

Then Isaac said to him (UST)

Alternate translation: [But Isaac said to him]

Please come close, so that I can touch you, my son (ULT)

My son, please come here so that I can feel you (UST)

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to put the address **my son** first or earlier in this quote. Also see what you did in verses 13 and 20. Alternate translation: [Please come close to me, my son, so that I can touch you] or [My son, please come here so that I can touch you]

{and know} whether you are really my son Esau or not (ULT)

and make sure that you are really my son Esau (UST)

Alternate translation: [and be sure that you are really my son Esau] or [I want to know for sure whether or not you really are my son Esau]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Isaac
- Jacob
- Esau

UST

- Isaac
- him
- and make sure that you are really my son Esau

Genesis 27:22

ULT:
So Jacob went close to Isaac his father, and he touched him and said, "The voice {is} the voice of Jacob, but the hands {are} the hands of Esau."

UST:
So Jacob stepped closer to his father Isaac, and his father felt him and thought {to himself}, "{Hmm,} his voice {sounds like} Jacob's voice, but {his} arms {feel like} Esau's arms."

So Jacob went close to Isaac his father (ULT)

So Jacob stepped closer to his father Isaac (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Jacob came close to his father Isaac]

---

and he touched him (ULT)

and his father felt him (UST)

See how you translated "touch" or "feel" in verses 12 and 21. Alternate translation: [and his father touched him] or [and his father felt his arms]

---

and said (ULT)

and thought {to himself}, "{Hmm … } (UST)

Alternate translation: [and said to himself]

The voice {is} the voice of Jacob (ULT)

his voice {sounds like} Jacob's voice (UST)

Alternate translation: [Hmm, he talks like Jacob]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

but the hands {are} the hands of Esau (ULT)

but {his} arms {feel like} Esau's arms (UST)

In Hebrew, the word for "hand" is the same word as for "arm." Isaac probably felt Esau's hands and arms. Alternate translation: [but he feels like Esau]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- Isaac
- Jacob
- Esau

UST

- Jacob
- Isaac
- Jacob
- Esau

Genesis 27:23

ULT:
So he did not recognize him, because his hands were hairy like the hands of Esau his brother, and he was about to bless him.

UST:
So Isaac was not able to identify who Jacob was because his arms felt hairy like his brother Esau's. Isaac was about to bless Jacob,

So he did not recognize him, because his hands were hairy like the hands of Esau his brother (ULT)

So Isaac was not able to identify who Jacob was because his arms felt hairy like his brother Esau's (UST)

Be consistent here with how you translated **hands** or "arms" in verses 16 and 22. Also consider whether it is more natural in your language to change the original order of clauses in this sentence.

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

and he was about to bless him (ULT)

Isaac was about to bless Jacob (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Isaac was prepared to bless him] or [Isaac was getting ready to bless him]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Esau
- and he was about to bless him

UST
- Esau's

- Isaac was about to bless Jacob

Genesis 27:24

ULT:
But he said, "{Are} you really my son Esau?" And he said, "I {am}."

UST:
but {first} {he wanted to be completely sure, so} he asked {him}, "Are you really my son Esau?" Jacob answered, "{Yes,} I am."

But he said (ULT)

but {first} {he wanted to be completely sure, so} he asked {him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [But he still was not certain, so he asked him] or [but first he wanted to be completely certain, so he asked him]

{Are} you really my son Esau (ULT)

Are you really my son Esau (UST)

Alternate translation: [Are you truly my son Esau?]

And he said (ULT)

Jacob answered (UST)

Alternate translation: [Jacob answered him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

I {am} (ULT)

{Yes,} I am (UST)

Alternate translation: [Yes, I am Esau] or [Yes, Father I am]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Esau

UST

- Esau

Genesis 27:25

ULT:
Then he said, “Bring {the food} to me, and I will eat some of my son’s game, so that my soul will bless you.” Then he brought {it} to him, and he ate; and he brought wine to him, and he drank.

UST:
So Isaac said {to him}, “Serve me {the meal} so that I can eat some of your deer meat and bless you.” Then Jacob served {the meal} to his father and he ate {it}. Jacob also served him wine and he drank {it}.

Then he said (ULT)

So Isaac said {to him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [So his father said to him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Bring {the food} to me (ULT)

Serve me {the meal} (UST)

Your translation of Isaac’s request should sound polite, not rude or demanding. It should also not sound like he was begging or pleading. Alternate translation: [Please bring me the food]

Support Reference: Politeness

Then he brought {it} to him, and he ate (ULT)

Then Jacob served {the meal} to his father and he ate {it} (UST)

Alternate translation: [So Jacob brought the meal to his father, and he ate it]

---

and he brought wine to him, and he drank (ULT)

Jacob also served him wine and he drank {it} (UST)

See how you translated **wine** in Genesis 19:32–35. Alternate translation: [Jacob also brought him wine, and he drank it]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- will bless you
- wine

UST

- and bless you
- wine

Genesis 27:26

ULT:
Then Isaac his father said to him, “Please come close and kiss me, my son.”

UST:
Then Isaac said to Jacob, “Come here and kiss me, my son.”

Then Isaac his father said to him (ULT)

Then Isaac said to Jacob (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Isaac said to him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Please come close (ULT)

Come here (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 21. Alternate translation: [Come near to me]

---

and kiss me, my son (ULT)

and kiss me, my son (UST)

It was a Hebrew custom for relatives and close friends to greet each other with a kiss on each cheek. Also consider whether it is more natural in your language to put the address **my son** first in this quote.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Isaac

- and kiss

UST

- Isaac
- and kiss

Genesis 27:27

ULT:
So he went close and kissed him. And he smelled the smell of his clothes, so he blessed him and said, "See, the smell of my son {is} like the smell of a field that Yahweh has blessed!

UST:
So Jacob went over {to his father} and kissed him {on the cheeks}. {As he did that,} his father recognized the fragrance of Esau's clothes, so he blessed him and said, "Ahh, my son, you smell {wonderful} like the fragrance of a field that Yahweh has caused to flourish!

So he went close (ULT)

So Jacob went over {to his father} (UST)

See how you translated **went close** in verse 22. Alternate translation: [Then Jacob came close to his father]

---

and kissed him (ULT)

and kissed him {on the cheeks} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and kissed him on his cheek]

---

and said (ULT)

and said (UST)

Alternate translation: [by saying to him] or [He said to him]

See, the smell of my son is (ULT)

Ahh, my son, you smell (UST)

Some translations put the words of Isaac's blessing in poetry format (beginning here and through verse 29). Be consistent here with how your translation team decides to format passages like this. Alternate translation: [Ah, my son smells]

---

that Yahweh has blessed (ULT)

that Yahweh has caused to flourish (UST)

Alternate translation: [that Yahweh has caused to be very productive!]

---

so he blessed him (ULT)

so he blessed him (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then he blessed him]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and kissed
- so he blessed him
- has blessed
- Yahweh

UST

- and kissed
- so he blessed him
- has caused to flourish
- Yahweh

Genesis 27:28

ULT:
And may God give to you from the dew of the heavens and from the fatness of the earth, and an abundance of grain and wine.

UST:
I ask God to provide you {and your descendants} {plenty of} rain from the sky {for your crops and animals} and riches from the earth, including abundant harvests and {much} wine.

And may God give to you (ULT)

I ask God to provide you {and your descendants} (UST)

In the Hebrew text, **you** is singular in verses 28–29 and refers to both Jacob and his descendants. If necessary, you could make that explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: [May God give you and your descendants] or [I pray that God will give you and your descendants]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

from the dew of the heavens and from the fatness of the earth (ULT)

{ … plenty of} rain from the sky {for your crops and animals} and riches from the earth (UST)

Alternate translation: [plenty of dew from the heavens for your crops and animals and riches from the soil] or [plenty of rain and rich soil]

---

and an abundance of grain and wine (ULT)

including abundant harvests and {much} wine (UST)

Alternate translation: [including an abundance of food and drink] or [so that you have abundant food and much wine]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- the heavens
- the earth
- grain
- and wine

UST

- God
- the sky {for your crops and animals}
- the earth
- harvests
- and {much} wine

Genesis 27:29

ULT:
May peoples serve you, and may nations bow down to you. Be master over your brothers, and may the sons of your mother bow down to you. {May} those {who} curse you be cursed, and {may} those {who} bless you be blessed."

UST:
I also ask God to cause nations to serve and honor you {and your descendants}. You will rule over your brother's descendants, and they will {submit to you and} bow down to you. Whoever curses you {God} will curse, but whoever blesses you {he} will bless."

May peoples serve you, and may nations bow down to you (ULT)

I also ask God to cause nations to serve and honor you {and your descendants … } (UST)

If possible in your language, it is best to keep both halves of this parallelism, which is used to emphasize what Isaac is saying to Jacob. Alternate translation: [May people groups serve you and your descendants, and may they bow down to you in respect]

Support Reference: Parallelism

Be master (ULT)

You will rule (UST)

Alternate translation: [May you rule] or [You will even rule]

---

over your brothers (ULT)

over your brother's descendants (UST)

Jacob only had one brother, so this phrase refers here to Esau and his descendants. Alternate translation: [over your brother and his descendants]

---

and may the sons of your mother bow down to you (ULT)

and they will {submit to you and} bow down to you (UST)

This clause is another way of referring to Jacob's authority over Esau and his descendants. Consider again how you translated the singular **you** in verses 28–29. You could use a plural **you** here or you could say "you and your descendants." Alternate translation: [and they will bow down to you in submission] or [Yes, they too will submit to you and bow down to you]

Support Reference: Parallelism

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- May … serve you
- and may … bow down
- master
- and may … bow down
- those {who} curse you
- May … be cursed
- and … those {who} bless you
- may … be blessed

UST

- I also ask God to cause … to serve
- and honor
- You will rule
- and they will {submit to you and} bow down
- Whoever curses you
- {God} will curse
- but whoever blesses you
- {he} will bless

Genesis 27:30

ULT:
Then it happened, just as Isaac finished blessing Jacob, and it happened, scarcely had Jacob just left from the presence of Isaac his father, then Esau his brother came in from his hunt.

UST:
As soon as Isaac had finished blessing Jacob, and right after Jacob had left his father's presence, Jacob's brother Esau returned {home} from hunting.

came in from his hunt (ULT)

returned {home} from hunting (UST)

Alternate translation: [came back from hunting]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Isaac
- blessing
- Jacob
- Jacob
- then Esau

UST
- Isaac
- blessing
- Jacob
- Jacob
- Esau

Genesis 27:31

ULT:
Then he too prepared tasty food, and he brought {it} to his father and said to his father, "Let my father get up and eat from his son's game so that your soul can bless me."

UST:
Then he too cooked a delicious meal, and he took {it} to his father {Isaac} and said to him, "Father, {please} sit up and eat some of your son's deer meat so that you can bless me."

Then he too prepared tasty food (ULT)

Then he too cooked a delicious meal (UST)

Consider again how you translated **prepared tasty food** in verses 4, 7, 9, 14, 31 and **tasty** in verse 17. Alternate translation: [Then Esau also cooked a tasty meal with the meat he had hunted]

---

and he brought {it} to his father (ULT)

and he took {it} to his father {Isaac} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he carried it to his father Isaac]

---

and said to his father (ULT)

and said to him (UST)

Alternate translation: [and requested]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Let my father get up (ULT)

Father, {please} sit up (UST)

Esau's request to his father should sound polite in your translation, not rude or demanding.

Support Reference: Politeness

---

and eat from his son's game (ULT)

and eat some of your son's deer meat (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Esau is referring to himself in this phrase. Alternate translation: [and eat some of my wild animal meat]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

---

so that your soul can bless me (ULT)

so that you can bless me (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in verses 4, 19, 25, and 31. Alternate translation: [and then you can bless me]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- can bless me

UST

- you can bless me

Genesis 27:32

ULT:
But Isaac his father said to him, "Who {are} you?" And he said, "I {am} your son, your firstborn Esau."

UST:
But his father asked him, "Which son {are} you?" Esau answered, "I {am} your oldest son Esau."

But Isaac his father said to him (ULT)

But his father asked him (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to make **Isaac** explicit in verse 31 and leave it implied here in verse 32. Alternate translation: [Then his father asked him] or [But his father exclaimed]

Who {are} you (ULT)

Which son {are} you (UST)

Isaac knew from what Esau just said in verse 31 that one of his sons was talking to him. Also, Isaac is very upset, so some translations add an exclamation point after the question mark to help communicate that. Alternate translation: [Which of my sons are you?!]

And he said (ULT)

Esau answered (UST)

Alternate translation: [Esau answered him] or [Esau replied]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

I {am} your son, your firstborn Esau (ULT)

I {am} your oldest son Esau (UST)

See how you translated **firstborn** in verse 19. Alternate translation: [I am your firstborn son Esau] or [I am Esau, your oldest son]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Isaac
- your firstborn
- Esau

UST

- יִצְחָק (ORIG QUOTE)
- oldest
- Esau

Genesis 27:33

ULT:
Then Isaac trembled a very great tremble, and he said, "Then who {was} it that hunted game and brought {it} to me? And I ate from {it} all just before you came, and I blessed him. Indeed, he will be blessed."

UST:
Then Isaac {became so upset that his body} shook very violently, and he asked {Esau}, "Who {was} it then that hunted deer meat and brought a meal to me? I finished eating it just before you came, and I blessed him. So God will definitely bless him."

Then Isaac trembled a very great tremble (ULT)

Then Isaac {became so upset that his body} shook very violently (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Isaac became so upset that he shook very violently] or [Then Isaac was very upset, so that he began to shake all over]

Then who {was} it (ULT)

Who {was} it then (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then where is the one]

---

that hunted game and brought {it} to me (ULT)

that hunted deer meat and brought a meal to me (UST)

Consider again how you translated **game** in Genesis 27:3, 5, 7, 19, 25, 31 and 33. It may be necessary to translate it in slightly different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [who hunted game meat and brought a meal to me?] or [who brought to me a meal made from wild animal meat?]

And I ate from {it} all just before you came (ULT)

I finished eating it just before you came (UST)

Alternate translation: [Just before you came to me, I finished eating the meal] or [I finished eating it just before you came here]

---

and I blessed him. Indeed, he will be blessed (ULT)

and I blessed him. So God will definitely bless him (UST)

The expression **he will be blessed** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is God. Alternate translation: [and then I blessed him. And God will surely bless him] or [Then I asked God to bless him, so God will definitely bless him]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then … trembled
- Isaac
- a … tremble
- and I blessed him
- blessed

UST

- Then Isaac {became so upset that his body} shook very violently
- Then Isaac {became so upset that his body} shook very violently
- Then Isaac {became so upset that his body} shook very violently
- and I blessed him
- So God will definitely bless him

Genesis 27:34

ULT:
When Esau heard the words of his father, then he cried out a great and exceedingly bitter cry and said to his father, "Bless me, me too, my father!"

UST:
When Esau heard what his father said, he shouted out with a very loud and distressed shout and begged his father, "{Please} bless me too, father!"

When Esau heard the words of his father (ULT)

When Esau heard what his father said (UST)

Alternate translation: [When Esau heard what his father said to him]

---

then he cried out a great and exceedingly bitter cry (ULT)

he shouted out with a very loud and distressed shout (UST)

Alternate translation: [he burst out with an extremely loud and bitter cry] or [he was so upset that he yelled out loudly]

---

and said to his father (ULT)

and begged his father (UST)

Alternate translation: [and begged him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Bless me, me too, my father (ULT)

{Please} bless me too, father (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to put the address “My father” or “Father” first in this sentence. Alternate translation: [Father, please bless me too!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Esau
- then he cried out
- a … cry
- Bless me

UST

- Esau
- he shouted out
- with a … shout
- {Please} bless me

Genesis 27:35

ULT:
And he said, “Your brother came in deceit and took your blessing.”

UST:
But his father responded, “Your brother came {to me} and tricked {me} and stole the blessing that I was planning to give you.”

And he said (ULT)

But his father responded (UST)

Alternate translation: [But his father replied to him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Your brother came in deceit and took your blessing (ULT)

Your brother came {to me} and tricked {me} and stole the blessing that I was planning to give you (UST)

Alternate translation: [Your brother came to me and deceived me and stole the blessing that I was planning to give you] or [Your brother deceived me so that I blessed him instead of you!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- in deceit
- your blessing

UST
- and tricked {me}
- the blessing that I was planning to give you

Genesis 27:36

ULT:
Then he said, “Is it because his name is called Jacob that he has defrauded me these two times? He took my birthright, and behold, now he has taken my blessing!” Then he said, “Have you not reserved a blessing for me?”

UST:
Then Esau exclaimed, “The name Jacob fits him exactly, because he has tricked me like this two times {now}! {First} he stole my rights as the oldest son, and now look {what he has done}: he has stolen my blessing!” Then Esau begged {his father}, “Is there still a way you can {ask God to} bless me?”

Then he said (ULT)

Then Esau exclaimed (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Esau exclaimed angrily] or [When Esau heard that, he said angrily]

Is it because his name is called Jacob that he has defrauded me these two times (ULT)

The name Jacob fits him exactly, because he has tricked me like this two times {now} (UST)

Esau uses a rhetorical question here to show his strong emotion. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. To help readers understand why Esau said this about Jacob, you could include a footnote such as the following: The name **Jacob** means “heel-grabber” and can imply deception. He was given that name because when he was born he was grabbing hold of Esau’s heel (Genesis 25:26). Alternate translation: [It is no wonder that he is called Jacob, since he has cheated me two times!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

He took my birthright, and behold, now (ULT)

First} he stole my rights as the oldest son, and now look {what he has done} (UST)

Alternate translation: [First he stole my rights as the oldest son, and now see what he has done:] or [Not only did he take my birthright, but now see what he has done:]

---

he has taken my blessing (ULT)

he has stolen my blessing (UST)

Alternate translation: [he has also stolen my blessing!] or [he has tricked you into blessing him instead of me!]

Then he said (ULT)

Then Esau exclaimed (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then he begged his father] or [Then he pleaded with his father]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- is called
- Jacob
- my birthright
- my blessing
- a blessing

UST

- The name Jacob fits him exactly
- The name Jacob fits him exactly
- First … my rights as the oldest son
- my blessing
- Is there still a way you can {ask God to} bless me

Genesis 27:37

ULT:
But Isaac responded and said to Esau, "Behold, I have made him master over you, and I have given all his brothers to him as servants. And I have sustained him with grain and wine. So then, what can I do for you, my son?"

UST:
Isaac answered, "Listen, I have {already} appointed Jacob to be your master. In fact, I have asked {God to make it so} that you and all your descendants will serve him {and his descendants}. Besides that, I have {also} blessed him with {abundant} harvests and wine. So then, there is no way left for me to bless you, my son!"

But Isaac responded and said to Esau (ULT)

Isaac answered (UST)

Alternate translation: [Isaac replied to Esau] or [Isaac answered him]

---

and I have given all his brothers to him as servants (ULT)

In fact, I have asked {God to make it so} that you and all your descendants will serve him {and his descendants} (UST)

See how you translated **brothers** in verse 29. Alternate translation: [In fact, I said that you and all your descendants will serve him] or [In fact, I have asked God to make it so that you and your descendants will serve him and his descendants]

And I have sustained him with grain and wine (ULT)

Besides that, I have {also} blessed him with {abundant} harvests and wine (UST)

See how you translated **grain and wine** in verse 28. Alternate translation: [Besides that, I have also supplied him with abundant food and wine] or [I have also asked God to supply him with plenty of food and wine]

Support Reference: Metonymy

So then, what can I do for you, my son (ULT)

So then, there is no way left for me to bless you, my son (UST)

Isaac uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that there is no blessing left for Esau. Alternate translation: [So, my son, there is no blessing left for you!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Isaac
- to Esau
- master
- as servants
- And … with grain
- and wine

UST

- Isaac
- לְעַשֵּׂו (ORIG QUOTE)
- I have {already} appointed Jacob to be your master
- will serve him {and his descendants}
- Besides that … with {abundant} harvests
- and wine

Genesis 27:38

ULT:
But Esau said to his father, “Is there one blessing that you have, my father? Bless me, me too, my father!” Then Esau lifted his voice and sobbed.

UST:
But Esau continued to beg his father {and say}, “Father, is there not {just} one more way that you can bless {me}? {Please} bless me too, father!” Then Esau started crying loudly.

But Esau said to his father (ULT)

But Esau continued to beg his father {and say} (UST)

Alternate translation: [But Esau continued to beg his father and said] or [But again Esau begged]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Is there one blessing that you have, my father (ULT)

Father, is there not {just} one more way that you can bless {me} (UST)

It may be more natural to put **my father** or “Father” first in this quote. See what you did in verse 34.

Bless me, me too, my father (ULT)

{Please} bless me too, father (UST)

See how you translated this sentence in verse 34. Alternate translation: [Father, please bless me too!]

Then Esau lifted his voice and sobbed (ULT)

Then Esau started crying loudly (UST)

See how you translated “lifted … voice and sobbed” in Genesis 21:16. Alternate translation: [Then Esau started sobbing loudly]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Esau
- Is there … blessing
- Bless me
- Esau
- and sobbed

UST

- Esau
- is there not {just} one more way that you can bless {me}
- {Please} bless me
- Then Esau started crying loudly
- Then Esau started crying loudly

Genesis 27:39

ULT:
Then Isaac his father responded and said to him, "Behold, your dwelling will be away from the fatness of the earth and away from the dew of the heavens from above.

UST:
Finally his father said to him, "Listen, you {and your descendants} will live in a place where the land is not good {for farming} and where there is not much rain.

Then Isaac his father responded and said to him (ULT)

Finally his father said to him (UST)

Alternate translation: [So his father Isaac said to him] or [His father replied]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Behold, your dwelling will be (ULT)

Listen, you {and your descendants} will live (UST)

What Isaac says in verses 39–40 applies to Esau and his descendants. See what you did for a similar case in verses 28–29.

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

away from the fatness of the earth and away from the dew of the heavens from above (ULT)

in a place where the land is not good {for farming} and where there is not much rain (UST)

This could mean: (1) "in a place where the ground is not fertile and where there is very little rain." Alternate translation: [in a place where the land is not good for farming and where there is not much rain] or (2) [of the fatness of the earth and of the dew of the heavens from above.]

Alternate translation: [in a place where the land is good for farming and where there is plenty of rain] See how you translated **fatness of the earth** and **dew of the heavens** in verse 28.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Isaac
- the earth
- the heavens

UST

- יִצְחָק (ORIG QUOTE)
- in a place where the land is not good {for farming}
- and where there is not much rain

Genesis 27:40

ULT:
And you will live by your sword, and you will serve your brother. But it will happen when you become restless, then you will break his yoke off of your neck.”

UST:
You {and your descendants} will have to fight battles to stay alive, and you will serve your brother {and his descendants}. But when you rebel {against them}, you will get free from their control over you.”

And you will live by your sword (ULT)

You {and your descendants} will have to fight battles to stay alive (UST)

The phrase **live by your sword** is an idiom that means Esau and his descendants will have violent conflict with others, often in order to survive. Alternate translation: [You and your descendants will survive by using your swords to protect yourselves] or [You and your descendants will continually be fighting battles with other peoples]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and you will serve your brother (ULT)

and you will serve your brother {and his descendants} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and you and your descendants will serve your brother and his descendants] or [and you and your descendants will be servants for your brother and his descendants]

But it will happen when you become restless (ULT)

But when you rebel {against them} (UST)

Consider again how you translated the singular **you** in verses 39–40. You could use a plural **you** here or you could say “you and your descendants.” See what you did for a similar case in verses 28–29. Alternate translation: [But when you revolt against him]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

then you will break his yoke off of your neck (ULT)

you will get free from their control over you (UST)

The verbal image **break his yoke off of your neck** means that Esau and his descendants will be free from the control of Jacob and his descendants. A yoke is a wooden collar that is placed around the necks of work animals to control them as they pull a plow or cart. Alternate translation: [you will get free from his rule over you] or [you will no longer be under his rule]

Support Reference: Metaphor

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- your sword
- you will serve
- your neck

UST

- You {and your descendants} will have to fight battles to stay alive
- you will serve
- over you

Genesis 27:41

ULT:
Then Esau hated Jacob because of the blessing that his father had blessed him with, and Esau said in his heart, "The days of the mourning of my father are near; then I will kill Jacob my brother."

UST:
After that Esau held a grudge against Jacob because their father had blessed him. So Esau thought to himself, "Soon my father will die; then after we {bury him and} mourn for him, I will kill my brother Jacob."

Then Esau hated Jacob (ULT)

After that Esau held a grudge against Jacob (UST)

Alternate translation: [After that, Esau held a grudge against Jacob] or [Esau continued to be very angry at Jacob]

---

because of the blessing that his father had blessed him with (ULT)

because their father had blessed him (UST)

The author is repeating forms of the verb **blessed** in order to intensify his expression of the idea that it conveys. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the intensification. Alternate translation: [because his father had given his blessing to Jacob] or [because their father had blessed Jacob instead of him]

Support Reference: Reduplication

---

and Esau said in his heart (ULT)

So Esau thought to himself (UST)

Alternate translation: [So Esau said to himself]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

---

then I will kill (ULT)

I will kill (UST)

Alternate translation: [I am going to kill] or [I plan to kill]

The days of the mourning of my father are near (ULT)

Soon my father will die; then after we {bury him and} mourn for him (UST)

In that culture, they had the custom of mourning the death of a loved one for a certain period of time, anywhere from a week to a month or more. See how you translated "mourn" in Gen 23:2. Alternate translation: [Soon my father will die, and we will have a time of mourning for him, then]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Esau
- Jacob
- had blessed him with
- Esau
- The days of
- the mourning of
- then I will kill
- Jacob

UST

- Esau
- Jacob
- because their father had blessed him
- Esau
- Soon my father will die; then after we {bury him and} mourn for him
- Soon my father will die; then after we {bury him and} mourn for him
- I will kill
- Jacob

Genesis 27:42

ULT:
But the words of Esau her older son were told to Rebekah, so she sent and called for Jacob her younger son and said to him, "Behold, Esau your brother is consoling himself about you, planning to kill you.

UST:
But Rebekah heard about what her oldest son Esau was planning, so she sent for her youngest son Jacob and told him, "Listen, your brother Esau is planning to take revenge on you and kill you.

But the words of Esau her older son were told to Rebekah (ULT)

But Rebekah heard about what her oldest son Esau was planning (UST)

It was probably a servant who told Rebekah about Esau's plan to kill Jacob. Alternate translation: [Then someone told Rebekah what Esau was saying so] or [Then Rebekah heard about what her older son Esau was planning, so] or [When Rebekah heard what Esau was planning to do]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

so she sent and called for Jacob her younger son (ULT)

so she sent for her youngest son Jacob (UST)

Alternate translation: [she sent for her younger son Jacob to come to her] or [she sent a messenger to tell Jacob to come to her] or [she summoned her son Jacob]

---

and said to him (ULT)

and told him (UST)

Alternate translation: [and warned him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

> **Behold, Esau your brother is consoling himself about you, planning to kill you (ULT)**
>
> **Listen, your brother Esau is planning to take revenge on you and kill you (UST)**

Alternate translation: [Look your brother Esau is making himself feel better by planning to kill you]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- But … were told
- to Rebekah
- Esau
- and called
- for Jacob
- Esau
- planning to kill you

UST

- But … heard about
- Rebekah
- Esau
- so she sent for
- Jacob
- Esau
- and kill you

Genesis 27:43

ULT:
So now, my son, listen to my voice and get up, flee for yourself to Laban my brother in Haran!

UST:
So then, my son, listen to me: Hurry {and} escape to {the city of} Haran to my brother Laban!

So now, my son (ULT)

So then, my son (UST)

See how you translated **So now** in verses 3 and 8. Alternate translation: [Now son]

---

listen to my voice (ULT)

listen to me (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verses 8 and 13. It may be necessary to translate it differently here because of the context. Alternate translation: [do what I tell you:]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

and get up, flee for yourself (ULT)

Hurry {and} escape (UST)

Alternate translation: [get ready immediately and flee] or [Hurry and flee] or [Flee immediately]

---

to Laban my brother in Haran (ULT)

to {the city of} Haran to my brother Laban (UST)

For some languages, it is more natural to put the location (Haran) before the person who lives there (Laban). Alternate translation: [to my brother Laban who lives in the city of Haran!] or [to the city of Haran, to the house of my brother Laban!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Laban
- in Haran

UST

- Laban
- to {the city of} Haran

Genesis 27:44

ULT:
And stay with him for a few days until the fury of your brother turns away,

UST:
Live with him for a short time until your brother is no longer angry {with you}.

And stay with him for a few days (ULT)

Live with him for a short time (UST)

Alternate translation: [Stay with him for a short time]

---

until the fury of your brother turns away (ULT)

until your brother is no longer angry {with you} (UST)

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to end this sentence here or to continue the sentence into verse 45. Also, the phrase **turns away** is used here as an idiom that means "becomes less" or "goes away." Alternate translation: [until your brother is no longer furious with you]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- for … days
- the fury of

UST
- for a short time
- is no longer angry {with you}

Genesis 27:45

ULT:
until the anger of your brother turns away from you and he forgets what you have done to him. Then I will send and get you from there. Why should I also lose both of you {in} one day?"

UST:
When he is not angry with you anymore and he forgets what you did to him, I will send word that it is safe for you to come {back home} from there. I do not want to lose both of you {on} the same day!"

until the anger of your brother turns away from you (ULT)

When he is not angry with you anymore (UST)

Notice that the Hebrew word for **anger** here is different from the stronger word ("fury") in verse 44. Alternate translation: [until his anger against you is gone] or [After a while, when your brother is no longer angry with you]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and he forgets what you have done to him (ULT)

and he forgets what you did to him (UST)

Rebekah is not saying that Esau would totally forget what Jacob did, but that at some point he would not hold it against him anymore. Alternate translation: [and he no longer thinks about what you did]

Then I will send and get you from there (ULT)

I will send word that it is safe for you to come {back home} from there (UST)

Alternate translation: [I will send someone to tell you when it is safe to come back home]

Why should I also lose both of you {in} one day (ULT)

I do not want to lose both of you {on} the same day (UST)

Rebekah knew that if Esau were to kill Jacob, he himself would have been killed for that crime. Consider whether it is best in your language to use a rhetorical question or an exclamation to emphasize Rebekah's concern. Alternate translation: [I do not want both my sons to be killed!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- in … day

UST

- {on} the … day

Genesis 27:46

ULT:
Then Rebekah said to Isaac, "I am disgusted with my life because of the daughters of Heth! If Jacob takes a wife from the daughters of Heth like these, from daughters of the land, what {would} life {be} to me?"

UST:
Then Rebekah complained to Isaac, "My life is {very} miserable because of our Hittite daughters-in-law {whom Esau married}! If Jacob were to {also} marry a local Hittite woman like that, I would not want to keep on living!"

Then Rebekah said to Isaac (ULT)

Then Rebekah complained to Isaac (UST)

Alternate translation: [Soon after that, Rebekah said to Isaac]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

I am disgusted with my life (ULT)

My life is {very} miserable (UST)

Rebekah is exaggerating how she feels to influence Isaac to do what she wants. Alternate translation: [I do not enjoy living] or [I am very upset]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

---

because of the daughters of Heth (ULT)

because of our Hittite daughters-in-law {whom Esau married} (UST)

To show that Rebekah is speaking with strong emotion, you could use an exclamation point at the end of this sentence and the following one. Alternate translation: [because of the Hittite women whom Esau married!]

If Jacob takes a wife from the daughters of Heth like these, from daughters of the land (ULT)

If Jacob were to {also} marry a local Hittite woman like that (UST)

Alternate translation: [If Jacob also marries a Hittite woman from around here]

---

what {would} life {be} to me (ULT)

I would not want to keep on living (UST)

Rebekah uses a rhetorical question and an extreme statement to emphasize how upset she would be if Jacob married a Hittite woman. Alternate translation: [my life will not be worth living!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Rebekah
- Isaac
- Heth
- Jacob
- Heth
- the land

UST

- Rebekah

- Isaac
- our Hittite daughters-in-law {whom Esau married}
- Jacob
- a local Hittite woman like that
- a local Hittite woman like that

Genesis 28

Genesis 28:1

ULT:
Then Isaac called for Jacob and blessed him, and commanded him and said to him, "Do not take a wife from the daughters of Canaan.

UST:
So Isaac summoned Jacob, blessed him and told him, "You must not marry a Canaanite woman.

Then Isaac called for Jacob (ULT)

So Isaac summoned Jacob (UST)

Alternate translation: [So Isaac sent for Jacob to come to him] or [Because of what Rebekah said, Isaac summoned Jacob]

---

and blessed him (ULT)

blessed him (UST)

For some languages it may be necessary to make it explicit that Jacob arrived. Alternate translation: [Then he blessed him] or [After he came, Isaac blessed him]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and commanded him and said to him (ULT)

and told him (UST)

Alternate translation: [and instructed him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Do not take a wife from the daughters of Canaan (ULT)

You must not marry a Canaanite woman (UST)

If the word “woman” is used here in your translation, make sure it refers to a virgin woman who has never been married, or is general enough to include that. Alternate translation: [Do not marry a woman who is a descendant of Canaan] or [You must not take a wife from among the Canaanite women] or [Do not marry a Canaanite woman]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then … called
- Isaac
- Jacob
- and blessed
- Canaan

UST

- So … summoned
- Isaac
- Jacob
- blessed
- a Canaanite woman

Genesis 28:2

ULT:
Get up, go to Paddan Aram, to the home of Bethuel the father of your mother, and take a wife for yourself from there, from the daughters of Laban the brother of your mother.

UST:
{Instead} you must go right away to {the region of} Paddan Aram, to the home of your mother's father, Bethuel, and marry one of your uncle Laban's daughters.

Get up, go (ULT)

{Instead} you must go right away (UST)

See how you translated "get up" in Genesis 27:43. Alternate translation: [Rather get up and go]

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

---

to Paddan Aram (ULT)

to {the region of} Paddan Aram (UST)

Be consistent here with how you translated **Paddan Aram** in Genesis 25:20. Alternate translation: [to the land of Paddan Aram]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

and take a wife for yourself from there (ULT)

and marry (UST)

Alternate translation: [and find a woman from there to marry]

---

from the daughters of Laban the brother of your mother (ULT)

one of your uncle Laban's daughters (UST)

Laban was Rebekah's older brother. Some languages have a special term for this that is used here.

Support Reference: Kinship

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Aram
- to Paddan
- to the home of
- Bethuel
- Laban

UST

- Aram
- to {the region of} Paddan
- to the home of
- Bethuel
- Laban

Genesis 28:3

ULT:
And may God Almighty bless you and make you fruitful and multiply you so that you become an assembly of peoples.

UST:
I pray that God, {who is} all-powerful, will bless you and give you many children and increase {the number of} your descendants, so that you become {the ancestor of} a community of peoples.

and make you fruitful (ULT)

and give you many children (UST)

Alternate translation: [and enable you to have many children]

---

and multiply you (ULT)

and increase {the number of} your descendants (UST)

See how you translated **fruitful and multiply** in Genesis 17:20. It may need to be translated in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [so that you have many descendants and]

---

so that you become an assembly of peoples (ULT)

so that you become {the ancestor of} a community of peoples (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that you become the ancestor of many ethnic groups] or [so that many people groups will descend from you] or [so that they become many ethnic groups]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And … God
- Almighty
- may … bless
- and make you fruitful
- and multiply you
- an assembly of

UST

- God
- {who is} all-powerful
- I pray that … will bless
- and give you many children
- and increase {the number of} your descendants
- {the ancestor of} a community of peoples

Genesis 28:4

ULT:
And may he give the blessing of Abraham to you, to you and to your offspring with you, so that you possess the land of your sojournings, which God gave to Abraham."

UST:
I {also} pray that he will bless you and your descendants the same way that he blessed Abraham, so that you will own this land where you have been living as a foreigner, {the same land} which God gave to him."

so that you possess the land of (ULT)

so that you will own this land (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that you will own the land] or [so that you will take possession of the land]

---

your sojournings (ULT)

where you have been living as a foreigner (UST)

See how you translated **land of your sojournings** in Genesis 17:8; it may be necessary to translate this differently here because of the different context. Alternate translation: [where you have been residing as a outsider] or [where you and your ancestors have been living as outsiders]

---

which God gave to Abraham (ULT)

{the same land} which God gave to him (UST)

Alternate translation: [the same land which God promised to him]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the blessing of
- Abraham
- and to your offspring
- so that you possess
- the land of
- God

UST

- I {also} pray that he will bless you and your descendants the same way that he blessed Abraham
- I {also} pray that he will bless you and your descendants the same way that he blessed Abraham
- I {also} pray that he will bless you and your descendants the same way that he blessed Abraham
- so that you will own
- this land
- God

Genesis 28:5

ULT:
Then Isaac sent Jacob, and he went to Paddan Aram, to Laban, the son of Bethuel the Aramean and the brother of Rebekah, the mother of Jacob and Esau.

UST:
Then Isaac sent Jacob {on his way}, so Jacob started traveling to Laban{'s house which was} in {the region of} Paddan Aram. {Laban was} the son of Bethuel the Aramean and {also} the brother of Rebekah, {who was} Jacob and Esau's mother.

Then Isaac sent Jacob (ULT)

Then Isaac sent Jacob {on his way} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Isaac said good-bye to Jacob]

---

and he went (ULT)

so Jacob started traveling (UST)

Make sure your translation of this phrase does not sound like Jacob had already arrived at Paddan Aram. Alternate translation: [and he left to go] or [and Jacob started traveling]

---

to Paddan Aram, to Laban (ULT)

to Laban{'s house which was} in {the region of} Paddan Aram (UST)

Consider whether is more natural in your language to refer to Paddan Aram first or to Laban first in this sentence. Also see how you translated **to Paddan Aram** in verses 2 and 5. Alternate translation: [to the land of Paddan Aram, to Laban]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

the son of Bethuel the Aramean (ULT)

{Laban was} the son of Bethuel the Aramean (UST)

Also, be consistent with how you spelled the name **Bethuel** in the book of Genesis. See 22:22–23; 24:15, 24, 47, 50; 25:20; 28:2, 5. Alternate translation: [who was the son of Bethuel the Aramean]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Aram
- and Esau
- Isaac
- Jacob
- to Paddan
- Laban
- Bethuel
- the Aramean
- Rebekah
- Jacob

UST

- { … which was} in {the region of} Paddan Aram
- and Esau
- Isaac
- Jacob
- { … which was} in {the region of} Paddan Aram
- Laban{'s house … }
- Bethuel
- the Aramean
- Rebekah
- Jacob

Genesis 28:6

ULT:
Now Esau saw that Isaac had blessed Jacob and had sent him to Paddan Aram to take a wife for himself from there, {and that} when he blessed him, then he commanded him, saying, "Do not take a wife from the daughters of Canaan,"

UST:
Now Esau had seen Isaac bless Jacob and send him to {the region of} Paddan Aram to marry a woman from there. As Isaac was blessing him, {Esau heard} him tell Jacob not to marry a Canaanite woman.

to take a wife for himself from there (ULT)

to marry a woman from there (UST)

Alternate translation: [to marry a wife from among his relatives there]

{and that} when he blessed him, then he commanded him, saying (ULT)

As Isaac was blessing him, {Esau heard} him tell Jacob (UST)

See how you translated **commanded** in verse 1. Alternate translation: [and that as Isaac was blessing Jacob, he told him] or [As Isaac was blessing Jacob, Esau heard him direct him]

Do not take a wife from the daughters of Canaan (ULT)

not to marry a Canaanite woman (UST)

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to translate this direct quote as an indirect quote. Alternate translation: [You must not take a woman who is a descendant of Canaan] or [that he must not choose a wife from among the Canaanite women]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Aram
- Esau
- had blessed
- Isaac
- Jacob
- to Paddan
- {and that} when he blessed
- Canaan

UST

- Aram
- Esau
- bless
- Isaac
- Jacob
- to {the region of} Paddan
- As Isaac was blessing
- a Canaanite woman

Genesis 28:7

ULT:
and {that} Jacob listened to his father and to his mother and went to Paddan Aram.

UST:
{Esau also saw that} Jacob obeyed their father and mother and started traveling to Paddan Aram.

and {that} Jacob listened to his father and to his mother (ULT)

{Esau also saw that} Jacob obeyed their father and mother (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he also observed that Jacob obeyed his father and mother] or [Esau also noticed that Jacob obeyed his parents]

---

and went to Paddan Aram (ULT)

and started traveling to Paddan Aram (UST)

Alternate translation: [and immediately left to go to Paddan Aram]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Aram
- Jacob
- to Paddan

UST
- Aram
- Jacob
- to Paddan

Genesis 28:8

ULT:
Then Esau saw that the daughters of Canaan were displeasing in the eyes of Isaac his father.

UST:
That is when Esau realized that his father Isaac did not approve of {his sons marrying} Canaanite women.

Then Esau saw that (ULT)

That is when Esau realized that (UST)

Alternate translation: [That is how Esau understood that]

---

the daughters of Canaan were displeasing in the eyes of Isaac his father (ULT)

his father Isaac did not approve of {his sons marrying} Canaanite women (UST)

Alternate translation: [his father Isaac did not want his sons to marry Canaanite women]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Esau
- were displeasing
- Canaan
- Isaac

UST

- Esau
- did not approve of {his sons marrying} Canaanite women
- did not approve of {his sons marrying} Canaanite women
- Isaac

Genesis 28:9

ULT:
So Esau went to Ishmael and he took as a wife Mahalath, the daughter of Ishmael, Abraham's son, the sister of Nebaioth, in addition to his wives {who belonged} to him.

UST:
So in addition to the {two} wives he already had, Esau went to {the family of} Abraham's son Ishmael and married Ishmael's daughter Mahalath, whose brother was Nebaioth.

So Esau went to Ishmael (ULT)

So … Esau went to {the family of} … Ishmael (UST)

Most likely Ishmael was already dead by this time, so that Esau went to the region where Ishmael's children and other descendants were living. Alternate translation: [Then Esau traveled to the clan of Ishmael]

---

the sister of Nebaioth (ULT)

whose brother was Nebaioth (UST)

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Nebaioth** in Genesis 25:13. Since Nebaioth was Ishmael's oldest child, Mahalath was his younger sister, probably from the same mother. Use a kinship term here in your language for **sister** or "brother" that fits with those facts. Alternate translation: [and who was the younger sister of Nebaioth] or [and whose older brother was Nebaioth]

Support Reference: Kinship

---

in addition to his wives {who belonged} to him (ULT)

in addition to the {two} wives he already had (UST)

For some languages it may be better to change the order of some of the clauses in this sentence and say, “So, in addition to the two wives he already had, Esau went to the family of Abraham’s son Ishmael and married Ishmael’s daughter Mahalath, whose brother was Nebaioth.” Alternate translation: [besides the two wives he already had]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Esau
- Ishmael
- Ishmael
- Abraham

UST

- Esau
- Ishmael
- Ishmael
- Abraham

Genesis 28:10

ULT:
And Jacob left from Beersheba and set out for Haran.

UST:
{After} Jacob left from {his family's home} {in the city of} Beersheba, he started traveling to {the city of} Haran.

And Jacob left from Beersheba and set out (ULT)

{After} Jacob left from {his family's home} {in the city of} Beersheba, he started traveling (UST)

Verse 10 refers back to verse 5, where Jacob had left his parents' home in Beersheba to go to Paddan Aram. Make sure your translation does not sound like he left a second time here in verse 10. Alternate translation: [Meanwhile Jacob had left the city of Beersheba and was traveling]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

for Haran (ULT)

to {the city of} Haran (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Jacob was heading toward the same place that his father had told him to go to in verse 2. The author assumed here that his audience knew that Haran was a city located in the Paddan Aram region. It may be helpful to include a map in your translation that shows the locations of the city of Haran and the region of Paddan Aram. Alternate translation: [toward the city of Haran in the region of Paddan Aram]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- from Beersheba

- Jacob
- from Beersheba
- for Haran

UST

- from {his family's home} {in the city of} Beersheba
- Jacob
- from {his family's home} {in the city of} Beersheba
- to {the city of} Haran

Genesis 28:11

ULT:
Then he reached a {certain} place, and he stopped there because the sun had gone. And he took {one} of the stones of the place and put it under his head, and he lay down in that place.

UST:
{That evening} he reached a {good} place {to sleep}, so he stopped there {for the night} because the sun had set. He chose {one} of the stones that was there and used it as a pillow. Then he lay down and went to sleep.

Then he reached a {certain} place, and he stopped there (ULT)

That evening} he reached a {good} place {to sleep}, so he stopped there {for the night} (UST)

Alternate translation: [That evening he reached a good place to camp so he stayed the night there] or [Late that evening he came to a place where he stayed for the night]

---

because the sun had gone (ULT)

because the sun had set (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to put the information in this clause first in this sentence and say, “After the sun went down, he reached a good place to camp/sleep, so he stopped/ stayed there for the night.” Alternate translation: [because the sun had gone down]

Support Reference: Information Structure

And he took {one} of the stones of the place (ULT)

He chose {one} of the stones that was there (UST)

The way you translate “stone” should refer to something that would be large enough to support Jacob’s head, but not so large that it would be too heavy for him to lift. For example in

English, a pebble is too small and a boulder is too big. Alternate translation: [He picked out a large flat stone that he found there]

---

and put it under his head (ULT)

and used it as a pillow (UST)

Alternate translation: [and rested his head on it as a pillow] or [and used it as a headrest] or [to use as a pillow]

---

and he lay down in that place (ULT)

Then he lay down and went to sleep (UST)

Alternate translation: [then he lay down there and went to sleep] or [Then he lay down there on the ground and went to sleep] or [then he went to sleep there]

Genesis 28:12

ULT:
And he dreamed, and behold, a stairway was set up on the earth and its top reached to the heavens, and behold, angels of God were ascending and descending on it.

UST:
While he was dreaming, he saw a stairway. The bottom of the stairway was on the ground and its top reached up to heaven, and he saw God's angels going up and coming down on the stairway.

And he dreamed (ULT)

While he was dreaming (UST)

Alternate translation: [And as he dreamed] or [As he slept, he had a dream and]

---

and behold, a stairway was set up on the earth (ULT)

he saw a stairway. The bottom of the stairway was on the ground (UST)

This **stairway** was wide enough for there to be angels moving up and down on it at the same time. Alternate translation: [he saw a staircase whose base was resting on the ground] or [he saw a staircase. The base of the stairway was on the ground]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

---

and its top reached to the heavens (ULT)

and its top reached up to heaven (UST)

Alternate translation: [and the top of it went all the way up into the sky]

---

and behold, angels of God were ascending and descending on it (ULT)

and he saw God's angels going up and coming down on the stairway (UST)

See how you translated "angel" in Genesis 24:7, 40. Alternate translation: [and there were angels of God who were going up and down on the stairway]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And he dreamed
- on the earth
- to the heavens
- angels of
- God

UST

- While he was dreaming
- on the ground
- to heaven
- s angels
- God

Genesis 28:13

ULT:
And behold, Yahweh was standing above it, and he said, "I {am} Yahweh, the God of Abraham your grandfather and the God of Isaac. The land that you are lying on I will give to you and to your offspring.

UST:
And there standing at the top {of the stairway} was Yahweh, and he said {to Jacob}, "I {am} Yahweh, the God whom your ancestors Abraham and Isaac serve. I will give you and your descendants this land that you are lying on.

And behold, Yahweh was standing above it (ULT)

And there standing at the top {of the stairway} was Yahweh (UST)

The phrase **standing above it** could mean: (1) "at the top of the stairway." Alternate translation: [Then suddenly Yahweh was standing at the top of the stairway] or [And Yahweh was also there, standing at the top of the stairway]; (2) "beside him." Alternate translation: [And look, the Lord was standing beside him] The interpretation that is not followed in your translation could be put in a footnote.

---

the God of Abraham your grandfather and the God of Isaac (ULT)

the God whom your ancestors Abraham and Isaac serve (UST)

Abraham was Jacob's grandfather and ancestor. Alternate translation: [the God whom your forefathers Abraham and Isaac serve] or [the God who takes care of your forefathers Abraham and Isaac]

The land that you are lying on I will give to you and to your offspring (ULT)

I will give you and your descendants this land that you are lying on (UST)

In the Hebrew text, “the land that you are lying on” comes first in this sentence in order to emphasize it and show its importance. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [The land where you are lying I am giving to you and your descendants] or [I will give you and your descendants this land that you are sleeping on]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Yahweh
- {am} Yahweh
- the God of
- Abraham
- and the God of
- Isaac
- The land
- and to your offspring

UST

- Yahweh
- {am} Yahweh
- the God
- whom your ancestors Abraham and Isaac serve
- whom your ancestors Abraham and Isaac serve
- whom your ancestors Abraham and Isaac serve
- this land
- and your descendants

Genesis 28:14

ULT:
And your offspring will be like the dust of the earth, and you will spread out to the west and to the east and to the north and to the south. And in you and in your offspring all the families of the earth will be blessed.

UST:
They will be {as numerous} as the dust {specks} on the ground, so that they live throughout this land in every direction. Because of you and your descendants, I will bless all the families in the world.

And your offspring will be (ULT)

They will be (UST)

Alternate translation: [And your descendants will be] or [You will have so many descendants that they will be]

---

like the dust of the earth (ULT)

{as numerous} as the dust {specks} on the ground (UST)

See how you translated **dust** in Genesis 13:16. Alternate translation: [as many as the dust specks on the ground]

Support Reference: Simile

---

and you will spread out (ULT)

so that they live throughout this land (UST)

In this clause **you** refers to Jacob's descendants. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: [and your people will spread out] or [so that they expand their territory]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

to the west and to the east and to the north and to the south (ULT)

in every direction (UST)

See how you translated the names of the directions “west,” “east,” “north,” and **south** in Genesis 13:14. Notice that they are in a different order there. Alternate translation: [to the west, east, north, and south] or [to the north, south, east, and west]

---

in you and in your offspring (ULT)

Because of you and your descendants (UST)

Be consistent here with how you translated **your offspring** in Genesis 22:18 and 26:4. Alternate translation: [In you and your offspring] or [Because of you and your offspring] or [By means of you and your offspring]

And … all the families of the earth will be blessed (ULT)

I will bless all the families in the world (UST)

The expression **will be blessed** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is God. Alternate translation: [And … I will bless all the clans in the world]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- your offspring

- the earth
- and to the south
- And … will be blessed
- the families of
- and in your offspring

UST

- They will be
- the ground
- in every direction
- I will bless
- the families in
- and your descendants

Genesis 28:15

ULT:
And behold, I {am} with you, and I will watch over you in every {place} that you go, and I will bring you back to this land. For I will not leave you until I have done what I have spoken to you."

UST:
Remember that I {will always be} with you. I will protect you wherever you go, and I will lead you back to this land. In fact, I will never leave you and I will do everything that I have promised you {that I will do}."

And behold (ULT)

Remember that (UST)

Alternate translation: [Listen to this:]

I {am} with you (ULT)

I {will always be} with you (UST)

See how you translated **I am with you** in Genesis 26:24 and "I will be with you" in Genesis 26:3. Alternate translation: [I will always stay with you] or [I promise to always be with you and help you]

---

and I will watch over you (ULT)

I will protect you (UST)

Alternate translation: [I will guard you] or [I will take care of you]

---

in every {place} that you go (ULT)

wherever you go (UST)

Alternate translation: [everywhere that you go] or [wherever you live]

---

and I will bring you back to this land (ULT)

and I will lead you back to this land (UST)

Alternate translation: [and I will guide you back to this land]

For I will not leave you (ULT)

In fact, I will never leave you (UST)

Alternate translation: [In fact, I will never abandon you]

---

until I have done what I have spoken to you (ULT)

and I will do everything that I have promised you {that I will do} (UST)

Make sure your translation of **until** does not sound like God will only be with Jacob up to the time that he fulfills his promises. Rather the focus is on the period of time between now when God is speaking to Jacob and the time later on when Jacob would see the fulfillment of God's promises to him.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- and I will watch over you
- I will … leave you

UST

- I will protect you
- I will … leave you

Genesis 28:16

ULT:
Then Jacob woke up from his sleep and said, “Surely Yahweh is in this place, but I did not know {it}!”

UST:
Suddenly Jacob woke up from his dream and exclaimed {to himself}, “Yahweh definitely lives in this place, but I did not know {it} {before now}!”

Then Jacob woke up from his sleep and said (ULT)

Suddenly Jacob woke up from his dream and exclaimed {to himself} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Suddenly Jacob woke up from his dream and said to himself] or [When Jacob woke up from his dream, he said to himself]

Surely Yahweh is in this place (ULT)

Yahweh definitely lives in this place (UST)

Alternate translation: [Certainly Yahweh is here in this place] or [Yahweh definitely lives here]

---

but I did not know {it} (ULT)

but I did not know {it} {before now} (UST)

Alternate translation: [but I did not realize it before now!] or [but I was not aware of that before!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Jacob

- Yahweh
- did … know {it}

UST

- Jacob
- Yahweh
- did … know {it} {before now}

Genesis 28:17

ULT:
So he was afraid and said, “How awesome this place is! This is nothing other than the house of God, and this {is} the gateway of heaven!”

UST:
He was afraid, so he {also} exclaimed, “This is a terrifying place! This can only be God’s house! It {must be} the entrance to heaven!”

So he was afraid and said (ULT)

He was afraid, so he {also} exclaimed (UST)

Alternate translation: [He was afraid, so he also said]

How awesome this place is (ULT)

This is a terrifying place (UST)

The word **awesome** refers here to the terror that Jacob was feeling from being in the holy presence of Almighty God. Alternate translation: [This is an awesome place!] or [This place is terrifying!]

This is nothing other than the house of God (ULT)

This can only be God’s house (UST)

Alternate translation: [It must be the house where God himself lives!]

---

and this {is} the gateway of heaven (ULT)

It {must be} the entrance to heaven (UST)

Alternate translation: [It can only be the gateway to heaven!] or [It must be the gateway to heaven!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- So he was afraid
- awesome … is
- the house of
- God
- the gateway of
- heaven

UST

- He was afraid
- This is a terrifying place
- s house
- God
- the entrance to
- heaven

Genesis 28:18

ULT:
Then in the morning Jacob got up early, and he took the stone that he had put under his head and stood it up {as} a pillar, and he poured oil on its top.

UST:
Early the next morning Jacob got up, took the stone that he had used as a pillow and set it up {on its end} to mark the place {where God had appeared to him}. Then he poured {some} {olive} oil on top of the stone {to dedicate the place to God}.

Then in the morning Jacob got up early (ULT)

Early the next morning Jacob got up (UST)

Alternate translation: [Jacob got up early the next morning]

---

and he took the stone that he had put under his head (ULT)

took the stone that he had used as a pillow (UST)

See how you translated **stone** and **under his head** in verse 11. Alternate translation: [took the stone that he had used as a headrest]

---

and stood it up (ULT)

and set it up {on its end} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and stood it up on its end]

{as} a pillar (ULT)

to mark the place {where God had appeared to him} (UST)

The word **pillar** refers here to a stone that is used to commemorate something. In this case, Jacob used a stone to mark and help him remember the place where God had appeared to him. Alternate translation: [as a marker] or [as a memorial stone] or [to mark that place where God had appeared to him]

---

and he poured oil on its top (ULT)

Then he poured {some} {olive} oil on top of the stone {to dedicate the place to God} (UST)

In Bible times people poured olive oil on a person's head or on objects (as here) to dedicate that person or object to God. Make sure that the way you translate **oil** does not refer to motor oil. Alternate translation: [Then he poured some olive oil on top of the pillar to dedicate the place to God]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- and stood … up
- {as} a pillar
- oil

UST

- Jacob
- and set it up {on its end}
- to mark the place {where God had appeared to him}
- {some} {olive} oil

Genesis 28:19

ULT:
And he called the name of that place Bethel, even though Luz {had been} the name of the town at first.

UST:
He named that place Bethel, {which means "house of God."} Previously the name of that town had been Luz.

And he called the name of that place Bethel (ULT)

He named that place Bethel, {which means "house of God … } (UST)

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Bethel** in Genesis 12:8 and 13:3.

---

even though Luz {had been} the name of the town at first (ULT)

Previously the name of that town had been Luz (UST)

Alternate translation: [even though originally that town was called Luz] or [Originally the name of that town had been Luz]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Bethel
- And he called
- Bethel

UST

- Bethel, {which means "house of God … }
- He named
- Bethel, {which means "house of God … }

Genesis 28:20

ULT:
Then Jacob vowed a vow, saying, "If God will be with me and watch over me on this road that I am walking on and give to me bread to eat and clothes to wear,

UST:
Then Jacob made a vow {to God} and said, "God, if {you} will stay with me and protect me as I travel on this journey and if you provide me food to eat and clothes to wear,

Then Jacob vowed a vow, saying (ULT)

Then Jacob made a vow {to God} and said (UST)

See how you translated a clause that has a similar meaning ("swear to …") in Genesis 21:23, 31. Alternate translation: [Then he made a pledge to God and said]

If God will be with me (ULT)

God, if {you} will stay with me (UST)

Since Jacob is making this vow to God, for some languages it is more natural to address God directly (as "you") throughout verses 20–22, rather than only in the last half of verse 22 (as the Hebrew text does). Alternate translation: [God, if you will be with me]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

---

and watch over me (ULT)

and protect me (UST)

See how you translated **watch over** in verse 15. Alternate translation: [and guard me] or [and take care of me]

---

on this road that I am walking on (ULT)

as I travel on this journey (UST)

The way you translate this phrase should reflect that fact that Jacob's journey from his home to the city of Haran was about 725 kilometers (450 miles) long. Alternate translation: [on this long journey I am taking] or [as I travel on this long journey]

---

and give to me bread to eat and clothes to wear (ULT)

and if you provide me food to eat and clothes to wear (UST)

In this context **bread** refers to food in general, not just bread. Alternate translation: [and if you give me food to eat and clothes to wear] or [and if you provide me with food and clothes]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then … vowed
- Jacob
- a vow
- God
- and watch over me
- bread

UST

- Then Jacob made a vow {to God}
- Then Jacob made a vow {to God}
- Then Jacob made a vow {to God}
- God
- and protect me
- food

Genesis 28:21

ULT:
and {if} I return in peace to the home of my father, then Yahweh will be God to me,

UST:
so that I return safely to my father's home, then Yahweh, {you} will be the God whom I serve.

and {if} I return in peace (ULT)

so that I return safely (UST)

Alternate translation: [and if I come back safely]

---

to the home of my father (ULT)

to my father's home (UST)

This phrase especially refers to Jacob's father's family members, not just the physical home.
Alternate translation: [to my family]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

then Yahweh will be God to me (ULT)

then Yahweh, {you} will be the God whom I serve (UST)

Alternate translation: [then Yahweh, you will be the God whom I worship] or [then I will serve you Yahweh as my God]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- in peace
- the home of
- Yahweh
- God

UST

- safely
- s home
- Yahweh
- the God whom I serve

Genesis 28:22

ULT:
and this stone that I have stood up {as} a pillar will be the house of God, and all that you give to me I will tithe a tenth to you."

UST:
This stone that I have set up will be your house and mark the place {that you appeared to me}, and I will give back to you a tenth of everything that you give to me."

and this stone that I have stood up {as} a pillar will be the house of God (ULT)

This stone that I have set up will be your house and mark the place {that you appeared to me} (UST)

See how you translated **as a pillar** in verse 18. Alternate translation: [This stone that I have set up will be your house and will mark this place where you appeared to me] or [and this memorial stone that I set up will remind people that you live here]

---

and all that you give to me I will tithe a tenth to you (ULT)

and I will give back to you a tenth of everything that you give to me (UST)

Consider again how you translated the way Jacob refers to Yahweh in verses 20–22; see the note about this at verse 20. Also see how you translated **tithe** in Genesis 14:20. Alternate translation: [and everything that you give to me, I will give a tenth of it back to you] or [and I will give back to you ten percent of everything that you give to me]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- {as} a pillar
- the house of
- God
- a tenth

UST

- and mark the place {that you appeared to me}
- your house
- your house
- I will give back … a tenth of

Genesis 29

Genesis 29:1

ULT:
Then Jacob lifted his feet and went to the land of the sons of the east.

UST:
Then Jacob left {Bethel} and continued traveling {until he came} to the land in the east where various people from that land lived.

Then Jacob lifted his feet and went (ULT)

Then Jacob left {Bethel} and continued traveling {until he came} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Jacob continued traveling until he came]

---

to the land of the sons of the east (ULT)

to the land in the east where various people from that land lived (UST)

This land was located east of the land of Canaan and included the region of Paddan Aram where Jacob's uncle Laban lived in the city of Haran (Genesis 27:43; 28:5). See how you translated **east** in Genesis 28:14. Alternate translation: [to the land in the east where various ethnic groups lived] or [to the region that was east of the land of Canaan where the eastern ethnic groups lived]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Jacob
- to the land of

UST
- Then Jacob left {Bethel} and continued traveling

- to the land

Genesis 29:2

ULT:
And he looked, and behold, a well {was} in the field, and behold, three flocks of sheep were lying there near it, because from that well the flocks were watered, and the stone over the mouth of the well {was} large.

UST:
{When he arrived there,} he looked {around}, and he saw a well in an {open} field. There were three flocks of sheep lying near the well {waiting for water}. That was the well that flocks drank water from, but there was a {heavy,} large stone covering the top of the well.

And he looked (ULT)

When he arrived there,} he looked {around} (UST)

Jacob was now near the city of Haran (verse 4), which was in the land east of Canaan (verse 1). Alternate translation: [Then he looked around] or [When he got there, he looked around] or [When he arrived at a place near the city of Haran, he looked around]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and behold, a well {was} in the field (ULT)

and he saw a well in an {open} field (UST)

The word **field** refers to an open area of land, not a fenced-in area. See how you translated this term in Genesis 25:27, 29. Alternate translation: [and he saw a well in an open area] or [and there in an open field was a well]

---

and behold, three flocks of sheep were lying there (ULT)

There were three flocks of sheep lying (UST)

Alternate translation: [He saw three flocks of sheep that were lying down] or [There were three flocks of sheep lying down]

---

near it (ULT)

near the well {waiting for water} (UST)

Alternate translation: [beside it] or [beside the well waiting for water]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

because from that well the flocks were watered (ULT)

That was the well that flocks drank water from (UST)

Alternate translation: [because that was the well where the shepherds got water for the flocks] or [That was the well that sheep drank water from]

---

and the stone over the mouth of the well {was} large (ULT)

but there was a {heavy,} large stone covering the top of the well (UST)

The implication is that **the stone** would have been very large and heavy and probably had been cut into a circular shape to cover the round opening of the well. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [but the stone covering the top of the well was large and heavy] or [but there was a heavy large stone over the opening of the well]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- a well
- flocks of
- sheep
- well
- the flocks
- the well

UST

- a well
- flocks of
- sheep
- That was the well that … from
- flocks
- the well

Genesis 29:3

ULT:
And all the flocks would be gathered there, then they would roll the stone from over the mouth of the well and water the sheep. Then they would return the stone to its place over the mouth of the well.

UST:
{Every day} shepherds would bring all the flocks {of sheep} there. They would {work together to} remove the stone from the top of the well and draw water for the sheep. Then they would put the stone back over the top of the well.

And all the flocks would be gathered there, then they would roll the stone (ULT)

{Every day} shepherds would bring all the flocks {of sheep} there. They would {work together to} remove the stone (UST)

Verse 3 tells what happened regularly every day. Consider what is the best way to communicate this in your language. Also, be consistent here with how you translated **stone** in verse 2. Alternate translation: [Every day shepherds would bring all their flocks of sheep there. They would work together to roll the stone] or [After all the shepherds brought their flocks there, together they would remove the stone]

---

from over the mouth of the well (ULT)

from the top of the well (UST)

Alternate translation: [off the top of the well]

---

and water the sheep (ULT)

and draw water for the sheep (UST)

See how you translated “watered” in verse 2, and how you translated a different word that has a similar meaning (“draw water”) in Genesis 24:19–20. Alternate translation: [and get water from it for the sheep to drink]

Then they would return the stone to its place (ULT)

Then they would put the stone back (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then they would roll the stone back]

---

from over the mouth of the well (ULT)

from the top of the well (UST)

Alternate translation: [over the opening of the well]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the flocks
- the well
- the sheep
- the well

UST

- the flocks {of sheep}
- the well
- the sheep
- the well

Genesis 29:4

ULT:
Then Jacob said to them, "My brothers, where {are} you from?" And they said, "We {are} from Haran."

UST:
Jacob asked the shepherds, "My friends, where do you live?" They replied, "We {are} from {the city of} Haran."

Then Jacob said to them (ULT)

Jacob asked the shepherds (UST)

Alternate translation: [Jacob greeted the shepherds]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

My brothers (ULT)

My friends (UST)

This is a polite, friendly idiom used as a greeting; it does not mean that the shepherds were actually Jacob's relatives. Many languages have a similar greeting. Alternate translation: [Friends]

Support Reference: Idiom

And they said (ULT)

They replied (UST)

Alternate translation: [They replied to him] or [They answered him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

We {are} from Haran (ULT)

We {are} from {the city of} Haran (UST)

Your translation should not sound like the city of Haran was far away from there; it was nearby. Alternate translation: [We live in the city of Haran]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- {are} from Haran

UST

- Jacob
- {are} from {the city of} Haran

Genesis 29:5

ULT:
Then he said to them, "Do you know Laban, the grandson of Nahor?" And they said, "We know him."

UST:
So Jacob asked them, "Do you know Laban, Nahor's grandson?" They answered, "{Yes,} we do."

Then he said to them (ULT)

So Jacob asked them (UST)

Consider what is the most natural way in your language to translate quote margins in a conversation that goes back and forth quickly like the one in verses 4–8. After the conversation gets started, it often sounds more life-like and natural to shorten the quote margins and leave implied some of the references to the people who are being talked to (as long as it is still clear who is talking to whom).

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

Do you know Laban, the grandson of Nahor (ULT)

Do you know Laban, Nahor's grandson (UST)

Consider what is the best way to order this question in your language.

Support Reference: Information Structure

And they said (ULT)

They answered (UST)

Alternate translation: [They replied]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

We know him (ULT)

{Yes,} we do (UST)

Hebrew does not have a single word for “Yes,” but rather repeats words from what was asked. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Yes, we know him]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Do you know
- Laban
- Nahor
- We know him

UST

- Do you know
- Laban
- Nahor
- {Yes,} we do

Genesis 29:6

ULT:
Then he said to them, “Are {things} well for him?” And they said, “{Things are} well. And behold, Rachel his daughter is coming with the sheep.”

UST:
So Jacob asked, “Is he doing well?” They answered {him}, “{Yes,} {he is} well. In fact, here comes his daughter Rachel {now}, bringing {his} sheep.”

Then he said to them (ULT)

So Jacob asked (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Jacob asked]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Are {things} well for him (ULT)

Is he doing well (UST)

Jacob is asking about Laban’s general well-being, not just his health. Alternate translation: [Are things going well for him?]

{Things are} well (ULT)

{Yes,} {he is} well (UST)

Alternate translation: [Yes, things are good for him]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Are {things} well

- {Things are} well
- Rachel
- the sheep

UST

- Is he doing well
- {Yes,} {he is} well
- Rachel
- {his} sheep

Genesis 29:7

ULT:
Then he said, “Behold, the day {is} still large. {It is} not time for the livestock to be gathered. Water the sheep, and go pasture {them}.”

UST:
Then Jacob urged {them}, “Look, the sun is still bright, and {it is} too early to gather the flocks {for the night}. {You ought to} draw water for them and take {them} back out {to the fields} to graze {some more}.”

Then he said (ULT)

Then Jacob urged {them} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Jacob said to them]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Behold, the day {is} still large (ULT)

Look, the sun is still bright (UST)

This is an idiom that means there are still many more hours of daytime left. Consider whether your language has an idiom for this. Alternate translation: [Look, it is still the middle of the day] or [Look, the sun is still high in the sky] or [There is still a lot of daylight left]

Support Reference: Idiom

{It is} not time for the livestock to be gathered (ULT)

and {it is} too early to gather the flocks {for the night} (UST)

Alternate translation: [so it is too soon to gather the flocks for the night]

Water the sheep (ULT)

{You ought to} draw water for them (UST)

For some languages it sounds too rude for Jacob to make a direct command here, so it is better to make this a suggestion or even a rhetorical question. Alternate translation: [You ought to get water for them] or [It seems like you should water your sheep] or [So why not water your sheep]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

and go pasture {them} (ULT)

and take {them} back out {to the fields} to graze {some more} (UST)

Alternate translation: [then take them back out to the fields to graze some more] or [then you can take them out to eat more grass]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the day
- the livestock
- the sheep
- pasture {them}

UST

- the sun is still bright
- the flocks
- them
- to graze {some more}

Genesis 29:8

ULT:
But they said, "We cannot, until all the flocks are gathered and they roll the stone from over the mouth of the well. Then we will water the sheep."

UST:
But they replied, "We can not {do that} until all the shepherds are here with their flocks. Then {together} we will move the stone away from the top of the well and draw water for the sheep."

But they said (ULT)

But they replied (UST)

Alternate translation: [But they said to him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

We cannot (ULT)

We can not {do that} (UST)

Alternate translation: [We have to wait]

---

until all the flocks are gathered (ULT)

until all the shepherds are here with their flocks (UST)

Alternate translation: [until all the shepherds have brought their flocks here]

---

and they roll the stone (ULT)

Then {together} we will move the stone (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that the ones who are talking here are also shepherds. See how you translated this phrase in verse 3. Alternate translation: [and we all remove the stone]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

---

from over the mouth of the well (ULT)

away from the top of the well (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verses 2 and 3. Alternate translation: [off the top of the well]

Then we will water the sheep (ULT)

and draw water for the sheep (UST)

Alternate translation: [and draw water for the flocks]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the flocks
- the well
- the sheep

UST

- until all the shepherds are here with their flocks
- the well
- the sheep

Genesis 29:9

ULT:
He was still talking with them when Rachel came with the sheep that {belonged} to her father, because she was tending them.

UST:
While Jacob was still talking with the shepherds, Rachel arrived {at the well} with her father {Laban}'s sheep; it was her job to take care of them.

He was still talking with them (ULT)

While Jacob was still talking with the shepherds (UST)

Alternate translation: [While Jacob was still talking to the shepherds]

---

because she was tending them (ULT)

it was her job to take care of them (UST)

Alternate translation: [because she was the one who tended them]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- when Rachel
- the sheep
- was tending them

UST
- Rachel
- sheep
- it was her job to take care of them

Genesis 29:10

ULT:
Then it happened, when Jacob saw Rachel, the daughter of Laban his mother's brother, and the sheep of Laban his mother's brother, then Jacob went over and rolled the stone from over the mouth of the well, and watered the sheep of Laban his mother's brother.

UST:
As soon as Jacob saw Rachel the daughter of his uncle Laban with her father's sheep, he walked over {to the well}, removed the stone that covered it, and drew water for his uncle's sheep.

Then it happened, when (ULT)

As soon as (UST)

Alternate translation: [When]

---

then Jacob went over (ULT)

he walked over {to the well} (UST)

Alternate translation: [he went over to the well]

---

and rolled the stone from over the mouth of the well (ULT)

removed the stone that covered it (UST)

Alternate translation: [and took the stone off the top of the well] or [removed the stone that was covering it]

---

and watered (ULT)

and drew water for (UST)

See how you translated **watered** in verses 2–3, 7–8, and in 24:14, 20. Alternate translation: [and got water for]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- Rachel
- Laban
- the sheep of
- Jacob
- the well
- the sheep of
- Laban

UST

- Jacob
- Rachel
- Laban
- s sheep
- יַעֲקֹב (ORIG QUOTE)
- that covered it
- s sheep
- לָבָן (ORIG QUOTE)

Genesis 29:11

ULT:
Then Jacob kissed Rachel and lifted his voice and cried.

UST:
Then he kissed Rachel {on her cheek} and {he was so happy that} he started crying.

Then Jacob kissed Rachel (ULT)

Then he kissed Rachel {on her cheek} (UST)

In that culture it was common to greet a relative with a kiss on the cheek (or both cheeks). However, if it would be offensive in your culture for Jacob to kiss Rachel here, you could translate this more generally (See: the second alternate translation above). Also see how you translated "kiss" in Genesis 27:26–27. Alternate translation: [Then he kissed Rachel on the cheek] or [Then he greeted Rachel enthusiastically as one of his relatives]

---

and lifted his voice and cried (ULT)

and {he was so happy that} he started crying (UST)

See how you translated the idiom **lifted his voice** in Genesis 27:38. However, here Jacob is crying because he is happy, not upset. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: [and he started crying loudly because he was so happy]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Then … kissed
- Jacob
- Rachel

UST
- Then he kissed … on her cheek
- יַעֲקֹב (ORIG QUOTE)

- Rachel

Genesis 29:12

ULT:
Then Jacob told Rachel that he {was} a relative of her father and that he {was} a son of Rebekah. Then she ran and told her father.

UST:
Then he told her that he {was} her father's nephew, the son of {her aunt} Rebekah. So she ran home and told her father {the news}.

Then Jacob told Rachel (ULT)

Then he told her (UST)

Consider what is the most natural way in your language to refer to Jacob and Rachel in this context.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

that he {was} a relative of her father and that he {was} a son of Rebekah (ULT)

that he {was} her father's nephew, the son of {her aunt} Rebekah (UST)

Consider whether it is best in your language to use an indirect quote here or a direct quote. Alternate translation: [that her father Laban was his uncle and that her aunt Rebekah was his mother]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

Then she ran and told her father (ULT)

So she ran home and told her father {the news} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then she ran home and told her father the news] or [So she ran home to her father and informed him about Jacob]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then … told
- Jacob
- Rachel
- Rebekah
- and told

UST

- Then he told
- יַעֲקֹב (ORIG QUOTE)
- her
- {her aunt} Rebekah
- and told … the news

Genesis 29:13

ULT:
And it happened, when Laban heard the news about Jacob the son of his sister, then he ran to meet him. Then he embraced him and kissed him and brought him to his house. Then he told Laban all these things,

UST:
When Laban heard about his sister's son Jacob, he ran {out} to greet him. Then he hugged him and kissed him {on the cheeks} and took him to his house. Then Jacob told Laban {about himself and} everything that had happened,

And it happened, when Laban heard (ULT)

When Laban heard (UST)

Alternate translation: [When Laban found out] or [As soon as Laban heard]

---

the news about Jacob the son of his sister (ULT)

about his sister's son Jacob (UST)

Alternate translation: [that his nephew Jacob was there]

---

then he ran to meet him (ULT)

he ran {out} to greet him (UST)

Alternate translation: [he ran out to meet him]

Then he embraced him (ULT)

Then he hugged him (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then he hugged Jacob] or [He gave him a hug]

---

and kissed him (ULT)

and kissed him {on the cheeks} (UST)

See how you translated **kissed** in verse 11. Alternate translation: [and kissed him on his cheeks] or [and greeted him warmly as one of his relatives]

---

and brought him to his house (ULT)

and took him to his house (UST)

Alternate translation: [and took him back to his house] or [and took him home]

Then he told Laban all these things (ULT)

Then Jacob told Laban {about himself and} everything that had happened (UST)

Laban's response in verse 14 implies that Jacob told him about himself here in verse 13. Alternate translation: [Then he told Laban about himself and everything that had happened]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Laban

- Jacob
- him
- his house
- Laban

UST

- Laban
- Jacob
- him
- his house
- Laban

Genesis 29:14

ULT:
and Laban said to him, “You {are} indeed my bone and my flesh!” Then he stayed with him a month of days.

UST:
and Laban exclaimed to him, “There is no doubt that you {are} a close relative of my family!” After Jacob had stayed with Laban {and worked for him} {for} an entire month,

and Laban said to him (ULT)

and Laban exclaimed to him (UST)

Alternate translation: [and Laban responded]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

You {are} indeed my bone and my flesh (ULT)

There is no doubt that you {are} a close relative of my family (UST)

This is an idiom that means Jacob is a close, biological relative of Laban. Consider whether your language has a similar idiom. Alternate translation: [You are definitely my own flesh and blood!] or [You are definitely my close relative!]

Support Reference: Idiom

Then he stayed with him (ULT)

After Jacob had stayed with Laban {and worked for him} (UST)

Your choice here in verse 14 will determine whether or not this sentence continues into verse 15. Alternate translation: [Then Jacob stayed and served for Laban]

---

a month of days (ULT)

{for} an entire month (UST)

Alternate translation: [for thirty days]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Laban
- a month of
- days

UST

- Laban
- {for} an entire month
- {for} an entire month

Genesis 29:15

ULT:
Then Laban said to Jacob, "Because you {are} my relative, should you then serve me for nothing? Tell me, what {are} your wages?"

UST:
Laban said to him, "{Just} because you are my nephew, {that does not mean that} you should {have to} work for me for free! Tell me what you want me to pay you."

Then Laban said to Jacob (ULT)

Laban said to him (UST)

Alternate translation: [Laban asked him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Because you {are} my relative, should you then serve me for nothing (ULT)

{Just} because you are my nephew, {that does not mean that} you should {have to} work for me for free (UST)

See how you translated **relative** in verse 12. This rhetorical question expects the implied answer "No, of course not!" Consider whether it is more natural in your language to use a statement here instead. Alternate translation: [Just because you are my nephew, does that mean that you should work for me without pay?] or [Even though you are my relative that does not mean that you should have to work for me for free!] or [You should not have to work for me for nothing just because you are my nephew!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

Tell me, what {are} your wages (ULT)

Tell me what you want me to pay you (UST)

Alternate translation: [So tell me what your wages should be] or [So tell me what you want me to pay you for your work]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Laban
- to Jacob
- should you then serve me

UST

- Laban
- to him
- {that does not mean that} you should {have to} work for me

Genesis 29:16

ULT:
Now Laban had two daughters. The name of the older {was} Leah, and the name of the younger {was} Rachel.

UST:
Now Laban had two daughters: The name of the older {one} {was} Leah, and the younger {one} was Rachel.

Now Laban had two daughters (ULT)

Now Laban had two daughters (UST)

Verses 16–17 introduce background information for what happens in the verses that follow that. Translate this in a way that is natural and clear in your language. Alternate translation: [Now it so happened that Laban had two daughters:]

Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

The name of the older {was} Leah, and the name of the younger {was} Rachel (ULT)

The name of the older {one} {was} Leah, and the younger {one} was Rachel (UST)

Alternate translation: [The name of the older daughter was Leah, and the younger daughter was Rachel] or [The older one was named Leah and the younger daughter was named Rachel]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Now Laban had
- {was} Leah
- {was} Rachel

UST
- Now Laban had
- {was} Leah

- was Rachel

Genesis 29:17

ULT:
And the eyes of Leah {were} delicate, but Rachel was lovely of form and beautiful of appearance.

UST:
Leah had pretty eyes, but Rachel was extremely beautiful in every way.

And the eyes of Leah {were} delicate (ULT)

Leah had pretty eyes (UST)

The word translated as **delicate** can have: (1) a positive meaning of "pretty," as in the UST. (2) a negative meaning of "weak," Alternate translation: [And Leah's eyes were dull]

---

but Rachel was lovely of form and beautiful of appearance (ULT)

but Rachel was extremely beautiful in every way (UST)

Alternate translation: [whereas Rachel was extremely beautiful in every way]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Leah
- but Rachel

UST

- Leah had pretty eyes
- but Rachel

Genesis 29:18

ULT:
And Jacob loved Rachel, so he said, "I will serve you seven years for Rachel your younger daughter."

UST:
Jacob was in love with Rachel, so he said {to Laban}, "I will work seven years for you if you will let me marry your younger daughter Rachel."

And Jacob loved Rachel (ULT)

Jacob was in love with Rachel (UST)

Alternate translation: [Jacob had fallen in love with Rachel]

---

so he said (ULT)

so he said {to Laban} (UST)

Alternate translation: [so he responded to Laban]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

I will serve you seven years (ULT)

I will work seven years for you (UST)

Jacob is offering seven years of work as the dowry or bride-price for Rachel. Translate this sentence in a way that reflects that.

---

for Rachel your younger daughter (ULT)

if you will let me marry your younger daughter Rachel (UST)

Alternate translation: [in exchange for your younger daughter Rachel as my wife] or [if you will give me your younger daughter Rachel to be my wife]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And … loved
- Jacob
- Rachel
- I will serve you
- years
- for Rachel

UST

- was in love with
- Jacob
- Rachel
- I will work … for you
- years
- if you will let me marry … Rachel

Genesis 29:19

ULT:
And Laban said, "{It is} better for me to give her to you than for me to give her to another man. Stay with me."

UST:
Laban replied, "{I agree to your terms.} I would {much} rather give her to you {to marry} than give her to someone else. {So} stay here {and work for me}."

{It is} better for me to give her to you than for me to give her to … man (ULT)

{I agree to your terms.} I would {much} rather give her to you {to marry} than give her to someone else (UST)

Alternate translation: [I agree to your terms. I would much rather give her to you to marry than give her to some other man]

Stay with me (ULT)

So} stay here {and work for me} (UST)

Alternate translation: [So stay and work with me]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Laban
- {It is} better

UST
- Laban
- {I agree to your terms.} I would {much} rather give … to marry

---

Genesis 29:20

ULT:
So Jacob served seven years for Rachel, but in his eyes they were like a few days because of his love for her.

UST:
So Jacob worked seven years {for Laban} so that he could marry Rachel, but he loved her so {much} that to him the time seemed {to pass quickly} like {only} a few days.

So Jacob served seven years for Rachel (ULT)

So Jacob worked seven years {for Laban} so that he could marry Rachel (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Jacob worked seven years for Laban so that he could have Rachel]

---

but in his eyes they were like a few days because of his love for her (ULT)

but he loved her so {much} that to him the time seemed {to pass quickly} like {only} a few days (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to switch the order of the clauses in this sentence so that the cause is mentioned before the effect (See: the second alternate translation above). Do what is most clear and natural in your language. Alternate translation: [but to him it seemed like only a few days had passed because he loved her so much] or [but he loved her so much that to him the years seemed to pass quickly like only a few days]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- So … served
- Jacob
- for Rachel
- years
- like … days
- because of his love for

UST

- So … worked … for Laban
- Jacob
- so that he could marry Rachel
- years
- but … to him the time seemed {to pass quickly} like {only} a few days
- he loved her so {much} that

Genesis 29:21

ULT:
Then Jacob said to Laban, “Give {me} my wife, because my days are completed, so that I may go to her.”

UST:
{When the seven years were over,} Jacob said to Laban, “{Please} let me marry {your daughter} {Rachel} {now} so that I can live with her {as} my wife, because I have finished my {seven} years {of work} {for you}.”

Then Jacob said to Laban (ULT)

{When the seven years were over,} Jacob said to Laban (UST)

Alternate translation: [After that, Jacob requested of Laban]

Give {me} my wife, because my days are completed, so that I may go to her (ULT)

Please} let me marry {your daughter} {Rachel} {now} so that I can live with her {as} my wife, because I have finished my {seven} years {of work} {for you} (UST)

Consider what is the best order for the clauses in this sentence in your language. Also make sure that Jacob’s request here sounds polite in your translation, not rude or demanding. It should also not sound like he was begging or pleading. Alternate translation: [Please let me marry your daughter Rachel now so that I can live with her as my wife, because I have finished my seven years of service for you] or [I have fulfilled the seven years of service that we agreed on, so please let me have your daughter Rachel so that I can marry her and live with her]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- Laban
- my days

UST

- Jacob
- Laban
- I have finished my {seven} years {of work} {for you}

Genesis 29:22

ULT:
Then Laban gathered all the people of the place and made a feast.

UST:
So Laban invited all the local people and held a {wedding} feast.

Then Laban gathered all the people of the place and made a feast (ULT)

So Laban invited all the local people and held a {wedding} feast (UST)

Consider what is the best way to order these events in your language. Alternate translation: [Then Laban gathered all the local people and held a wedding feast] or [Then Laban prepared a marriage feast and invited everyone who lived in town to attend]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Laban
- a feast

UST
- Laban
- a {wedding} feast

Genesis 29:23

ULT:
But it happened in the evening that he took Leah his daughter and brought her to him, and he went to her.

UST:
But that evening Laban {tricked Jacob and} brought his daughter Leah {to Jacob's tent} {instead of Rachel}, so that he had marital relations with her.

But it happened in the evening (ULT)

But that evening (UST)

Alternate translation: [However this is what happened that evening:]

---

that he took Leah his daughter and brought her to him (ULT)

Laban {tricked Jacob and} brought his daughter Leah {to Jacob's tent} {instead of Rachel} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Laban took Leah to Jacob instead of Rachel]

---

and he went (ULT)

so that he had marital relations (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that **he** refers here to Jacob, not Laban. Alternate translation: [so he] or [so that Jacob]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

and he went to her (ULT)

so that he had marital relations with her (UST)

Make sure that your translation of **he** refers here to Jacob, not Laban. See how you translated the euphemism **went to** in Genesis 16:4 (and "go to" in Genesis 16:2 and 29:21). Translate this in a way that is natural, clear, and acceptable for reading in public. Alternate translation: [so that he had sexual relations with Leah] or [so he slept with Leah] or [spent the night with her]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Leah

UST

- Leah … instead of Rachel

Genesis 29:24

ULT:
And Laban gave to her Zilpah his maidservant, to Leah his daughter, {to be} a maidservant.

UST:
Laban also gave his female servant Zilpah to Leah {to be} {her} {personal} servant.

And Laban gave (ULT)

Laban also gave (UST)

It is not clear in the Hebrew text when Laban gave Zilpah to Leah, so it is probably best to keep it that way in your translation. Some translations say that Laban "had already given" Zilpah to Leah before the wedding night. However according to Jewish history (outside the Bible), it was on the wedding night that Laban did this as part of his plan to deceive Jacob: Zilpah was younger than Bilhah, so everyone would expect her to be given to Rachel as the younger sister; seeing Zilpah (instead of Bilhah) would help Jacob think that his veiled bride was Rachel. Since we do not know for sure which interpretation is right, it is probably best to be like the Hebrew text and not specify when Laban gave Zilpah to Leah. Some translations put this verse in parentheses because it seems to interrupt the telling of the main events.
Alternate translation: [In addition, Laban gave]

---

to her Zilpah his maidservant, to Leah his daughter (ULT)

his female servant Zilpah to Leah (UST)

Alternate translation: [to Leah a female servant named Zilpah]

{to be} a maidservant (ULT)

{to be} {her} {personal} servant (UST)

Alternate translation: [to be her personal attendant] or [to serve her] or [to attend to her]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Zilpah
- Laban
- his maidservant
- to Leah
- {to be} a maidservant

UST

- Zilpah
- Laban
- his female servant
- לְלֵאָֽה (ORIG QUOTE)
- {to be} {her} {personal} servant

Genesis 29:25

ULT:
Then it happened in the morning, that behold, she {was} Leah! So he said to Laban, "What {is} this you have done to me? Was {it} not for Rachel that I served with you? So why have you deceived me?"

UST:
But the next morning Jacob was shocked to see that it was Leah {he had married}! So he complained to Laban, "You have treated me very badly! {You know that} Rachel is the one I served you for! So why did you trick me?"

Then it happened in the morning (ULT)

But the next morning (UST)

Alternate translation: [The next morning]

---

that behold, she {was} Leah (ULT)

Jacob was shocked to see that it was Leah {he had married} (UST)

Translate **behold** in a way that shows Jacob's surprise at finding out that he had married Leah instead of Rachel. Also, make sure that your translation of **she** refers here to Leah, not Zilpah (who was mentioned in verse 24). Alternate translation: [Jacob saw that his new wife was Leah!] or [Jacob was shocked to discover that it was Leah he had married!]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

So he said to Laban (ULT)

So he complained to Laban (UST)

Some languages use an honorific title such as "his father-in-law" here now that Jacob is married. Alternate translation: [So he complained to his father-in-law] or [So he rebuked Laban and said]

Support Reference: Politeness

What {is} this you have done to me (ULT)

You have treated me very badly (UST)

In this verse, Jacob uses rhetorical questions to communicate how angry and upset he is. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Also see how you translated this question in Genesis 12:18, 20:9, 26:10. Alternate translation: [Why have you treated me like this?]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

Was {it} not for Rachel that I served with you (ULT)

{You know that} Rachel is the one I served you for (UST)

Alternate translation: [You know very well that I worked for you in order to marry Rachel!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

So why have you deceived me (ULT)

So why did you trick me (UST)

See how you translated a different word (“deceit”) that has a similar meaning in Genesis 27:35. Alternate translation: [So why did you deceive me?] or [Tell me why you tricked me!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- {was} Leah
- Laban
- for Rachel

- that I served
- have you deceived me

UST

- Jacob was shocked to see that it was Leah {he had married}
- Laban
- {You know that} Rachel is the one I served you for
- {You know that} Rachel is the one I served you for
- did you trick me

Genesis 29:26

ULT:
But Laban said, "It is not done so in our place to give the younger before the firstborn.

UST:
Laban replied, "It is not our custom here for the younger {daughter} to marry before the older {daughter} {marries}.

But Laban said (ULT)

Laban replied (UST)

Alternate translation: [But Laban said to him] or [Laban responded]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

It is not done so in our place (ULT)

It is not our custom here (UST)

For some languages it is necessary to say what the custom is, rather than what it is not. For example, you could say, "Our custom/practice here is to wait until the firstborn/oldest daughter is married before we let the younger daughters/ones get married." Alternate translation: [It is not customary In our land] or [It is not the custom here]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

to give the younger (ULT)

for the younger {daughter} to marry (UST)

Alternate translation: [to give the younger daughter in marriage] or [to marry off the younger daughter]

---

before the firstborn (ULT)

before the older {daughter} {marries} (UST)

Alternate translation: [before the oldest one marries]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Laban
- the firstborn

UST

- Laban
- the older {daughter} {marries}

Genesis 29:27

ULT:
Fulfill the week of this {one}, then we will also give you this {one} for service that you will serve with me for another seven years."

UST:
{So then,} {keep Leah as your wife and} finish this week of celebrating your marriage to her. Then our family will also give you {my} younger daughter {to marry} if you will work for me for another seven years."

Fulfill the week of this {one} (ULT)

{So then,} {keep Leah as your wife and} finish this week of celebrating your marriage to her (UST)

For some languages it may be necessary to make explicit the fact that it is assumed that Leah would still remain his wife. Only make this information explicit if it is necessary to avoid wrong meaning. Alternate translation: [So then, complete this week of celebrating your wedding to my daughter Leah]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

then we will also give you this {one} (ULT)

Then our family will also give you {my} younger daughter {to marry} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then our family will also give you my other daughter to marry] or [Then you may also marry my other daughter]

---

for service that you will serve with me (ULT)

if you will work for me (UST)

See how you translated **serve** in verses 15, 18, 20, 21 and 25. Alternate translation: [in exchange for working for me]

---

for another seven years (ULT)

for another seven years (UST)

Alternate translation: [for seven more years]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the week of
- you will serve
- years

UST

- this week of celebrating your marriage to her
- if you will work
- years

Genesis 29:28

ULT:
So Jacob did so, and he fulfilled the week {for} that {one}. Then he gave to him Rachel his daughter as a wife for him.

UST:
So Jacob {agreed with Laban and} did what he said: he finished celebrating his marriage to Leah that week. Then Laban gave him his daughter Rachel to marry.

So Jacob did so (ULT)

So Jacob {agreed with Laban and} did what he said (UST)

Alternate translation: [So that is what Jacob did:]

---

and he fulfilled the week {for} that {one} (ULT)

he finished celebrating his marriage to Leah that week (UST)

See how you translated "fulfill" in verse 27. Alternate translation: [he completed his wedding week with Leah]

Then he gave to him Rachel his daughter as a wife for him (ULT)

Then Laban gave him his daughter Rachel to marry (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Laban gave Jacob his daughter Rachel to marry] or [Then Laban gave his daughter Rachel to Jacob to be his wife]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Jacob

- the week
- Rachel

UST

- Jacob
- he finished celebrating his marriage to Leah that week
- Rachel

Genesis 29:29

ULT:
And Laban gave Bilhah his maidservant to Rachel his daughter as a maidservant for her.

UST:
Laban {also} gave his servant Bilhah to Rachel to be her servant.

And Laban gave (ULT)

Laban {also} gave (UST)

See how you translated verse 24, which is similar to verse 29. Alternate translation: [he also gave] or [In addition, Laban gave]

Bilhah his maidservant to Rachel his daughter (ULT)

his servant Bilhah to Rachel (UST)

Alternate translation: [his female servant Bilhah to his daughter Rachel] or [Rachel a female servant named Bilhah]

---

as a maidservant for her (ULT)

to be her servant (UST)

Alternate translation: [to be her personal servant] or [to serve her]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Bilhah
- Laban
- to Rachel

- his maidservant
- as a maidservant

UST

- Bilhah
- Laban
- to Rachel
- his servant
- to be her servant

Genesis 29:30

ULT:
Then he also went to Rachel, and he also loved Rachel more than Leah. And he served him for another seven years.

UST:
Then Jacob had marital relations with Rachel, and he loved her more than {he loved} Leah. Then he {started} working for Laban for seven more years.

Then he also went to Rachel (ULT)

Then Jacob had marital relations with Rachel (UST)

See how you translated **went to** in verse 23. Alternate translation: [Then Jacob slept with Rachel]

Support Reference: Euphemism

And he served him (ULT)

Then he {started} working for Laban (UST)

At this point Jacob begins another seven years of work, but he does not finish the work until Genesis 30:25–26. Alternate translation: [Then he worked for Laban]

---

for another seven years (ULT)

for seven more years (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 27.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Rachel
- Rachel
- and he … loved
- more than Leah
- And he served
- years

UST

- her
- Rachel
- and he loved
- more than {he loved} Leah
- Then he {started} working
- years

Genesis 29:31

ULT:
Now Yahweh saw that Leah was hated, so he opened her womb, but Rachel {was} barren.

UST:
Now Yahweh knew that Jacob did not love Leah, so he made it possible for her to have children, but Rachel was not able to conceive.

Now Yahweh saw (ULT)

Now Yahweh knew (UST)

Alternate translation: [Meanwhile Yahweh knew] or [During that time, Yahweh saw]

---

that Leah was hated (ULT)

that Jacob did not love Leah (UST)

Jacob did not actually hate Leah. Rather, this is an extreme statement that emphasizes how much he loved Rachel compared to Leah (verse 30). Alternate translation: [that Leah was loved less than Rachel] or [that Jacob did not love Leah very much]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

---

so he opened her womb (ULT)

so he made it possible for her to have children (UST)

Alternate translation: [so he made it so that she could conceive]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

but Rachel {was} barren (ULT)

but Rachel was not able to conceive (UST)

See how you translated **barren** in Genesis 11:30 and 25:21. Alternate translation: [but he did not enable Rachel to have children]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Yahweh
- Leah
- her womb
- but Rachel
- {was} barren

UST

- Yahweh
- Jacob did not love Leah
- so he made it possible for her to have children
- but Rachel
- was not able to conceive

Genesis 29:32

ULT:
Then Leah conceived and bore a son, and she called his name Reuben, because she said, "Because Yahweh has looked on my misery, surely now my husband will love me."

UST:
Then Leah became pregnant and gave birth to a son. She named him Reuben, {which means "See, a son!"} because she exclaimed, "Now that Yahweh has seen that I am suffering {and helped me}, surely my husband will love me!"

and bore a son (ULT)

and gave birth to a son (UST)

Alternate translation: [and had a son]

---

and she called his name Reuben (ULT)

She named him Reuben, {which means "See, a son … } (UST)

You could include the meaning of Reuben's name in your translation (or in a footnote), so that people understand why Leah gave him that name. If you do that, make sure the meaning of Reuben's name matches the way you translate "looked/seen" later in this verse.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

because she said (ULT)

because she exclaimed (UST)

Alternate translation: [because when he was born she had said]

Because Yahweh has looked on my misery, surely now my husband will love me (ULT)

Now that Yahweh has seen that I am suffering {and helped me}, surely my husband will love me (UST)

Consider what is the best way to order these clauses in your language. Also see how you translated **misery** in Gen 16:11. Alternate translation: [Now that Yahweh has seen that I am suffering and has helped me, surely my husband will love me!] or [Surely my husband will love me now, since Yahweh has seen that I am suffering and has helped me]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then … conceived
- Leah
- and bore
- and she called
- Reuben
- Yahweh
- on my misery
- will love me

UST

- Then … became pregnant
- Leah
- and gave birth to
- She named him
- Reuben, {which means “See, a son … }
- Yahweh
- that I am suffering
- will love me

Genesis 29:33

ULT:
Then she conceived again and bore a son, and she said, "Because Yahweh heard that I am hated, then he gave to me this {son} also." So she called his name Simeon.

UST:
Then Leah became pregnant again and gave birth to {another} son. She exclaimed, "Since Yahweh heard that my husband does not love me, he has given me this child also." So she named him Simeon, {which means "he hears."}

and bore a son (ULT)

and gave birth to {another} son (UST)

Alternate translation: [and had another son]

---

and she said (ULT)

She exclaimed (UST)

Alternate translation: [so she exclaimed]

Because Yahweh heard that I am hated (ULT)

Since Yahweh heard that my husband does not love me (UST)

See how you translated **hated** in verse 31. Also consider whether it is better in your language to use an active or passive verb here. Alternate translation: [Yahweh heard that I am not loved, so]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

then he gave to me this {son} also (ULT)

he has given me this child also (UST)

Alternate translation: [he has given me this son too!] or [he has given me another son]

So she called his name (ULT)

So she named him (UST)

Alternate translation: [So she named that son] or [So she gave him the name]

Simeon (ULT)

Simeon, {which means “he hears … } (UST)

If you include the meaning of Simeon’s name in your translation (or in a footnote), make sure it matches the way you translated **heard** earlier in this verse.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then she conceived
- and bore
- Yahweh
- So she called
- Simeon

UST

- Then Leah became pregnant
- and gave birth to
- Yahweh
- So she named him
- Simeon, {which means “he hears … }

Genesis 29:34

ULT:
Then she conceived again and bore a son, and she said, “This time now my husband will be joined to me, because I have born three sons for him.” For that {reason} he called his name Levi.

UST:
Then Leah became pregnant {yet} again and gave birth to another son, and she exclaimed, “Now finally my husband will want to be with me because I have given him three sons!” That is why his name was Levi, {which means “be with.”}

Then she conceived again (ULT)

Then Leah became pregnant {yet} again (UST)

Alternate translation: [Once again Leah became pregnant]

---

and bore a son (ULT)

and gave birth to another son (UST)

Alternate translation: [and had another son]

---

and she said (ULT)

and she exclaimed (UST)

Alternate translation: [She exclaimed]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

---

will be joined to me (ULT)

will want to be with me (UST)

Many languages have an idiom that is similar to the Hebrew idiom and fits well here. Alternate translation: [will become attached to me]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

because I have born three sons for him (ULT)

because I have given him three sons (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this quote and say, “I have born/had three sons for my husband, so now finally he will become attached to me.” Alternate translation: [because I have had three sons for him]

Support Reference: Information Structure

For that {reason} (ULT)

That is why (UST)

Alternate translation: [Because she had said that]

---

he called his name (ULT)

his name was (UST)

Although this phrase could mean that Jacob named Levi, most translations translate this in a general or indefinite way that does not specify who named him. Alternate translation: [he was named]

Levi (ULT)

Levi, {which means “be with … } (UST)

If you include the meaning of Levi’s name in your translation (or in a footnote), make sure it matches the way you translated **be joined** earlier in this verse.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then she conceived
- and bore
- I have born
- he called
- Levi

UST

- Then Leah became pregnant
- and gave birth to
- I have given
- his name was
- Levi, {which means “be with … }

Genesis 29:35

ULT:
Then she conceived again and bore a son, and she said, “This time I will praise Yahweh.” For that {reason} she called his name Judah. Then she stopped bearing.

UST:
Once again Leah became pregnant and gave birth to another son, and she exclaimed, “Now I will praise Yahweh!” That is why she named him Judah, {which means “praise.”} Then Leah stopped having children {for a while}.

Then she conceived again (ULT)

Once again Leah became pregnant (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Leah became pregnant again]

---

and bore a son (ULT)

and gave birth to another son (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 34. Alternate translation: [and had a son]

---

and she said (ULT)

and she exclaimed (UST)

Alternate translation: [She said]

This time I will praise Yahweh (ULT)

Now I will praise Yahweh (UST)

Alternate translation: [Now I will praise Yahweh for giving me this son!]

For that {reason} (ULT)

That is why (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 34. You may need to translate it in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [Because she praised Yahweh]

---

she called his name (ULT)

she named him (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 33. Alternate translation: [she named that son] or [she gave him the name]

Judah (ULT)

Judah, {which means "praise … } (UST)

See how you translated **praise** earlier in this verse.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

Then she stopped bearing (ULT)

Then Leah stopped having children {for a while} (UST)

Leah had more children at a later time. So it was only temporarily that she stopped having children. Alternate translation: [Then Leah stopped bearing babies for a while] or [After that, Leah did not give birth to any more babies for a while]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then she conceived
- and bore
- I will praise
- Yahweh
- she called
- Judah
- bearing

UST

- Once again Leah became pregnant
- and gave birth to
- I will praise
- Yahweh
- she named him
- Judah, {which means “praise … }
- having children

Genesis 30

Genesis 30:1

ULT:
Now Rachel saw that she was not bearing {children} for Jacob, so Rachel envied her sister, and she said to Jacob, "Give me children, and if not, I will die!"

UST:
Meanwhile {when} Rachel realized that she was not able to bear {any} {children} for Jacob, she was jealous of her sister, and she demanded of Jacob, "Help me have children, or else I want to die!"

Now Rachel saw that she was not bearing {children} for Jacob (ULT)

Meanwhile {when} Rachel realized that she was not able to bear {any} {children} for Jacob (UST)

Alternate translation: [Now when Rachel saw that she was not able to have any children for Jacob]

---

so Rachel envied her sister (ULT)

she was jealous of her sister (UST)

Alternate translation: [she was envious of her sister Leah]

---

and she said to Jacob (ULT)

and she demanded of Jacob (UST)

Use a quote margin here in your language that fits the context well. Alternate translation: [and she pleaded with Jacob]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Give me children, and if not (ULT)

Help me have children, or else (UST)

Alternate translation: [Help me get pregnant! Otherwise]

I will die (ULT)

I want to die (UST)

Rachel is using an extreme statement to show how desperate and deeply ashamed she feels about not having children. You could include a footnote here in your translation that explains how in that culture it was considered very shameful for a woman to be barren (See: Genesis 30:23). Alternate translation: [I have no reason to live!]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Rachel
- she was … bearing {children}
- for Jacob
- so … envied
- Rachel
- Jacob

UST

- Rachel
- she was … able to bear {any} {children}
- for Jacob
- she was jealous
- רָחֵל (ORIG QUOTE)
- Jacob

Genesis 30:2

ULT:
And Jacob's anger burned against Rachel, and he said, "Am I in the place of God, who has kept the fruit of the womb from you?"

UST:
Jacob became very angry with Rachel and responded, "I am not God! He is the one who has prevented you from having children!"

And Jacob's anger burned against Rachel, and he said (ULT)

Jacob became very angry with Rachel and responded (UST)

Some languages have an idiom that is similar to the Hebrew idiom here. Alternate translation: [Jacob became very angry with Rachel and said]

Support Reference: Idiom

Am I in the place of God, who has kept the fruit of the womb from you (ULT)

I am not God! He is the one who has prevented you from having children (UST)

Jacob uses a rhetorical question here to show that he is upset with Rachel and to strongly emphasize his point. Do what is best in your language to communicate this. Alternate translation: [I am not in the place of God, who has kept you from having children!] or [I am not God! He is the one who has kept you from having children!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- against Rachel
- God
- the fruit of
- the womb

UST

- Jacob
- with Rachel
- God
- has prevented you from having children
- has prevented you from having children

Genesis 30:3

ULT:
Then she said, "Behold my slave woman Bilhah. Go to her so that she will bear {children} on my knees, and I also will be built up from her."

UST:
Then Rachel told {him}, "You can have my servant woman Bilhah {as a wife}. Have {marital} relations with her so that she will have children for me, so that I too can have a family."

Then she said (ULT)

Then Rachel told {him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Rachel replied to him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Behold my slave woman Bilhah (ULT)

You can have my servant woman Bilhah {as a wife} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Here is my servant woman Bilhah] or [You can take my servant woman Bilhah as a wife]

Go to her (ULT)

Have {marital} relations with her (UST)

See how you translated this euphemism in Genesis 16:2. Alternate translation: [Sleep with her]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

so that she will bear {children} (ULT)

so that she will have children (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that she can give birth to children] or [so that she can have children]

---

on my knees (ULT)

for me (UST)

The idiom **bear children on my knees** means that Bilhah's children would be considered Rachel's children. It may come from the custom of immediately putting a newborn child on the lap of the father and mother to symbolize that the child belonged to them. Alternate translation: [for me who will sit on my lap] or [as my surrogate]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and I also will be built up from her (ULT)

so that I too can have a family (UST)

See how you translated **built up from her** in Genesis 16:2. Alternate translation: [so that from her children I too can build a family] or [so that I too can build a family]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Bilhah
- my slave woman
- so that she will bear {children}

UST

- Bilhah
- my servant woman
- so that she will have children

Genesis 30:4

ULT:
And she gave to him Bilhah her maidservant as a wife, and Jacob went to her.

UST:
So Rachel gave Jacob her servant Bilhah to be {another} wife {for him}, and Jacob had {marital} relations with her.

And she gave to him Bilhah her maidservant (ULT)

So Rachel gave Jacob her servant Bilhah (UST)

See how you translated **maidservant** in Genesis 29:24, 29. Also see how you translated a different word ("servant woman") in verse 3 that has the same meaning. Some translations use the same term in both verses to prevent confusion. Alternate translation: [So Rachel gave Jacob her maid Bilhah]

---

as a wife (ULT)

to be {another} wife {for him} (UST)

Make sure your translation does not sound like Bilhah replaced Rachel as Jacob's wife; Bilhah was an additional wife. Alternate translation: [as his wife] or [to be a wife for him]

---

and Jacob went to her (ULT)

and Jacob had {marital} relations with her (UST)

See how you translated "go to" in verse 3 and **went to** in Genesis 16:3. Alternate translation: [and Jacob slept with her]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Bilhah
- her maidservant
- Jacob

UST

- Bilhah
- her servant
- Jacob

Genesis 30:5

ULT:
Then Bilhah conceived and bore a son for Jacob,

UST:
Then Bilhah became pregnant and had a son for Jacob,

and bore a son for Jacob (ULT)

and had a son for Jacob (UST)

Alternate translation: [and gave birth to a son for Jacob]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Bilhah
- Then … conceived
- and bore
- for Jacob

UST

- Bilhah
- Then … became pregnant
- and had
- for Jacob

Genesis 30:6

ULT:
and Rachel said, “God has vindicated me, and indeed, he has listened to my voice and given to me a son!” For that {reason} she called his name Dan.

UST:
and Rachel exclaimed, “God has judged in my favor! Yes indeed, he has answered my prayer and given me a son!” That is why she named the baby Dan, {which means “he judged in my favor.”}

and Rachel said (ULT)

and Rachel exclaimed (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Rachel said]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

---

and indeed, he has listened to my voice and given to me a son (ULT)

Yes indeed, he has answered my prayer and given me a son (UST)

Alternate translation: [Yes indeed, he has heard my request and given me a son!]

For that {reason} (ULT)

That is why (UST)

Alternate translation: [Because of that]

---

she called his name (ULT)

she named the baby (UST)

The pronoun **his** refers to Bilhah's son. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Make sure it is clear here in your translation that Bilhah's son is the one being named, not God (who was the subject of the previous sentence). See how you translated **called his name** in Genesis 29:32. Alternate translation: [she called him] or [she gave him the name] or [she named her baby]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

Dan (ULT)

Dan, {which means "he judged in my favor … } (UST)

If you include the meaning of Dan's name in your translation (or in a footnote), make sure it matches the way you translated "he has vindicated" earlier in this verse.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Rachel
- God
- she called
- Dan

UST

- Rachel
- God
- she named the baby
- Dan, {which means "he judged in my favor … }

Genesis 30:7

ULT:
Then Bilhah the maidservant of Rachel conceived again and bore a second son for Jacob.

UST:
Then Rachel's servant Bilhah became pregnant again and had a second son for Jacob.

Then Bilhah the maidservant of Rachel conceived again (ULT)

Then Rachel's servant Bilhah became pregnant again (UST)

See how you translated verse 5 which is very similar to verse 7.

---

and bore a second son for Jacob (ULT)

and had a second son for Jacob (UST)

Alternate translation: [and gave birth to a second son for Jacob]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Bilhah
- Then … conceived
- and bore
- the maidservant of
- Rachel
- for Jacob

UST

- Bilhah
- Then … became pregnant
- and had
- s servant
- Rachel
- for Jacob

Genesis 30:8

ULT:
So Rachel said, "{With} mighty wrestlings I have wrestled with my sister. Indeed I have prevailed!" And she called his name Naphtali.

UST:
Then Rachel exclaimed, "I have had a difficult contest with my sister, and {now} I have defeated her!" Then she named that son Naphtali, {which means "my contest."}

So Rachel said (ULT)

Then Rachel exclaimed (UST)

Alternate translation: [So Rachel exclaimed]

{With} mighty wrestlings I have wrestled with my sister (ULT)

I have had a difficult contest with my sister (UST)

This quotation of Rachel's words could mean: (1) "I have had a difficult struggle with my sister." Alternate translation: ["I have struggled hard against my sister]; That would be the meaning if the Hebrew word "elohim" in this phrase is used as an adjective that means "mighty/powerful." (2) "I have wrestled with God because of my sister," which could refer to a struggle against her sister praying to God for children. That would be the meaning if the word "elohim" in this phrase means "God."

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

Indeed I have prevailed (ULT)

and {now} I have defeated her (UST)

Alternate translation: [and I have won!] or [but now I have defeated her!] or [but now I am winning!]

Naphtali (ULT)

Naphtali, {which means “my contest … } (UST)

As always, if you include the meaning of a name in your translation or in a footnote, make sure that it matches the text that the name is based on.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Rachel
- mighty
- And she called
- Naphtali

UST

- Rachel
- I have had a difficult contest
- Then she named that son
- Naphtali, {which means “my contest … }

Genesis 30:9

ULT:
Now Leah saw that she had ceased from bearing {children}, so she took Zilpah her maidservant and gave her to Jacob as a wife.

UST:
Now when Leah realized that she had stopped having children, she brought her servant Zilpah {to Jacob} and gave her to him to be {another} wife {for him}.

Now Leah saw that she had ceased from bearing {children} (ULT)

Now when Leah realized that she had stopped having children (UST)

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 1. Alternate translation: [When Leah saw that she had stopped bearing children]

---

so she took Zilpah her maidservant (ULT)

she brought her servant Zilpah {to Jacob} (UST)

Alternate translation: [she took her servant Zilpah to Jacob]

---

and gave her to Jacob as a wife (ULT)

and gave her to him to be {another} wife {for him} (UST)

See how you translated "gave … as a wife" in verse 4. Alternate translation: [and gave her to him as his wife] or [and gave her to Jacob to be another wife for him]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Zilpah

- Leah
- from bearing {children}
- her maidservant
- to Jacob

UST

- Zilpah
- Leah
- having children
- her servant
- to him

Genesis 30:10

ULT:
Then Zilpah the maidservant of Leah bore a son for Jacob,

UST:
Then Zilpah had a son for Jacob,

Then Zilpah the maidservant of Leah bore a son for Jacob (ULT)

Then Zilpah had a son for Jacob (UST)

See how you translated verses 5–8, which are very similar in structure to verses 10–13.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Zilpah
- Then … bore
- the maidservant of
- Leah
- for Jacob

UST

- Zilpah
- Then … had
- שִׁפְחַת (ORIG QUOTE)
- לֵאָה (ORIG QUOTE)
- for Jacob

Genesis 30:11

ULT:
and Leah said, “What good fortune!” So she called his name Gad.

UST:
and Leah exclaimed, “I am so fortunate!” So she named him Gad, {which means “fortunate.”}

What good fortune (ULT)

I am so fortunate (UST)

Alternate translation: [What good luck!] or [I am very lucky!]

So she called his name (ULT)

So she named him (UST)

Alternate translation: [So she called him] or [So she called him] or [So she gave him the name]

Gad (ULT)

Gad, {which means “fortunate … } (UST)

If you include the meaning of Gad’s name in your translation or in a footnote, make sure it matches the way you translated **good fortune** earlier in this verse.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Leah
- So she called

- Gad

UST

- Leah
- So she named him
- Gad, {which means “fortunate … }

Genesis 30:12

ULT:
Then Zilpah the maidservant of Leah bore a second son for Jacob,

UST:
Then Leah's servant Zilpah had a second son for Jacob,

(There are no notes for this verse)

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Zilpah
- Then … bore
- the maidservant of
- Leah
- for Jacob

UST

- Zilpah
- Then … had
- s servant
- Leah
- for Jacob

Genesis 30:13

ULT:
and Leah said, "How blessed I am! For women will call me blessed." So she called his name Asher.

UST:
and Leah exclaimed, "{God} has truly blessed me! Now {other} women will know that {God} has blessed me." So she named that son Asher, {which means "blessed."}

How blessed I am (ULT)

{God} has truly blessed me (UST)

Although many translations have "happy" in this verse instead of **blessed**, the Hebrew noun (and the verb it is based on) is more general and has to do with a person's blessed state (which results in joy and happiness). The same Hebrew word is used in Psalm 1:1, and the equivalent Greek word is used in Luke 1:48 and Matthew 5:3–11. Alternate translation: [I am truly blessed!] or [God has greatly blessed me!]

So she called his name (ULT)

So she named that son (UST)

Alternate translation: [So she named him] or [So she gave him the name]

Asher (ULT)

Asher, {which means "blessed … } (UST)

The word **Asher** is the name of a Leah's baby boy. If you include the meaning of Asher's name in your translation or in a footnote, make sure it matches the way you translated **blessed** earlier in this verse.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

For women will call me blessed (ULT)

Now {other} women will know that {God} has blessed me (UST)

Alternate translation: [Now other women will say that I am blessed by God] or [Now other women will say that God has blessed me]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Leah
- So she called
- Asher

UST

- Leah
- So she named that son
- Asher, {which means “blessed … }

Genesis 30:14

ULT:
Then in the days of the wheat harvest, Reuben went out and found mandrakes in the field, and he brought them to Leah his mother. Then Rachel said to Leah, "Please give to me some of your son's mandrakes."

UST:
Then {one day} during the season when people were harvesting wheat, Leah's son Reuben went out in a field and found {some} fertility plants, and he gave them to his mother. {When Rachel found out about the plants,} she begged Leah, "Please give me some of the fertility plants that your son found."

Then in the days of the wheat harvest, Reuben went out (ULT)

Then {one day} during the season when people were harvesting wheat, Leah's son Reuben went out (UST)

Wheat is a type of grain that is ground into flour to make bread, which was one of the people's main foods. The harvest time for wheat in that part of the world is in March and April. Alternate translation: [One day during …]

---

and found mandrakes in the field (ULT)

in a field and found {some} fertility plants (UST)

The roots of mandrake plants were used to help people be more fertile. If **mandrakes** are not known in your language area, you could describe them as a kind of fertility plant. You could also put information about mandrakes in a footnote or glossary. Alternate translation: [and found some love plants called mandrakes in a field] or [in a field and found some love plants there]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

---

and he brought them to Leah his mother (ULT)

and he gave them to his mother (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he took them to his mother] or [and he took the plants to his mother]

Then Rachel said to Leah (ULT)

{When Rachel found out about the plants,} she begged Leah (UST)

Alternate translation: [When Rachel found out about the plants, she asked Leah]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Reuben
- in the days of
- the … harvest
- wheat
- Leah
- Rachel
- Leah

UST

- Leah's son Reuben
- during the season when people were harvesting wheat
- during the season when people were harvesting wheat
- during the season when people were harvesting wheat
- לֵאָה (ORIG QUOTE)
- {When Rachel found out about the plants,} she begged
- Leah

Genesis 30:15

ULT:
But she said to her, “Is it a small matter you have taken my husband? And would you also take my son’s mandrakes?” Then Rachel said, “Therefore he may lie with you tonight for your son’s mandrakes.”

UST:
But Leah replied to her, “{No!} It was {bad} enough that you stole my husband {from me}! And {now} you even want to take my son’s fertility plants!” Rachel replied, “Alright then, Jacob can sleep with you tonight if you will give me your son’s fertility plants.”

Is it a small matter you have taken my husband (ULT)

No!} It was {bad} enough that you stole my husband {from me} (UST)

Leah uses two rhetorical questions in verse 15 to scold Rachel and show how upset she is with her. Consider whether or not rhetorical questions are the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [No! It was bad enough that you took my husband from me!] or [You already took my husband from me!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

Then Rachel said (ULT)

Rachel replied (UST)

Alternate translation: [Rachel said to her]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Therefore (ULT)

Alright then (UST)

Rachel's response shows that she realizes that even though Leah was scolding her, she was also bargaining with her. Alternate translation: [Very well]

---

he may lie with you tonight (ULT)

Jacob can sleep with you tonight (UST)

Alternate translation: [I will let him stay with you tonight] or [Jacob can stay with you tonight] or [Jacob can spend tonight with you]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

for your son's mandrakes (ULT)

if you will give me your son's fertility plants (UST)

See how you translated "in exchange for" in Genesis 29:18.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Rachel

UST
- Rachel

Genesis 30:16

ULT:
Then Jacob came from the field in the evening, and Leah went out to meet him and said, "You must come to me, because I have surely hired you with my son's mandrakes." So he lay with her during that night,

UST:
That evening when Jacob came {home} from {working in} the field, Leah went out to greet him and told {him}, "You must sleep with me {tonight}, because I have traded my son's fertility plants for time with you." So Jacob spent that night with Leah.

Then Jacob came from the field in the evening (ULT)

That evening when Jacob came {home} from {working in} the field (UST)

Consider where it is best in your language to put the time phrase in this clause. Also see how you translated **field** in verse 14. Alternate translation: [So as Jacob came back that evening from working in the fields] or [That evening as Jacob was coming home from working in the fields]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

and Leah went out to meet him (ULT)

Leah went out to greet him (UST)

Alternate translation: [Leah came out to greet him]

---

and said (ULT)

and told {him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and she said to him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

You must come to me (ULT)

You must sleep with me {tonight} (UST)

Alternate translation: [You must lie with me tonight] or [You must spend tonight with me]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

because I have surely hired you with my son's mandrakes (ULT)

because I have traded my son's fertility plants for time with you (UST)

See how you translated **mandrakes** in verses 14 and 15.

So he lay with her during that night (ULT)

So Jacob spent that night with Leah (UST)

Alternate translation: [So that night Jacob slept with her] or [So Jacob spent that night with her]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- Leah

UST

- Jacob
- Leah

Genesis 30:17

ULT:
and God listened to Leah, and she conceived and bore a fifth son for Jacob.

UST:
God answered {the prayers of} Leah, so that she became pregnant and had a fifth son for Jacob.

and God listened to Leah (ULT)

God answered {the prayers of} Leah (UST)

See how you translated **listened to** in verse 6. Alternate translation: [God heard Leah and answered her prayers] or [God did what Leah had been asking him to do]

---

and bore a fifth son for Jacob (ULT)

and had a fifth son for Jacob (UST)

Alternate translation: [and gave birth to a fifth son for Jacob]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Leah
- God
- and she conceived
- and bore
- for Jacob

UST

- {the prayers of} Leah
- God
- so that she became pregnant
- and had
- for Jacob

Genesis 30:18

ULT:
Then Leah said, "God has given {me} my reward because I gave my maidservant to my husband." So she called his name Issachar.

UST:
Then she said, "God has rewarded me for giving my servant to my husband {as a wife}." So she named that son Issachar, {which means "reward."}

Then Leah said (ULT)

Then she said (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then she exclaimed]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

God has given {me} my reward (ULT)

God has rewarded me (UST)

Some languages must translate the noun **reward** as a verb.

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

---

because I gave my maidservant to my husband (ULT)

for giving my servant to my husband {as a wife} (UST)

Alternate translation: [for giving my servant to my husband as another wife]

So she called his name (ULT)

So she named that son (UST)

Make sure the way you translate **his name** refers here to Leah's baby son, not to her husband or God (who were both mentioned earlier in this verse). Alternate translation: [So she called him] or [So she gave him the name]

Issachar (ULT)

Issachar, {which means "reward … } (UST)

See how you translated **reward** earlier in this verse.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Leah
- God
- my maidservant
- So she called
- Issachar

UST

- לֵאָה (ORIG QUOTE)
- God has rewarded me
- my servant
- So she named that son
- Issachar, {which means "reward … }

Genesis 30:19

ULT:
Then Leah conceived again and bore a sixth son for Jacob.

UST:
Then Leah became pregnant again and had a sixth son for Jacob.

and bore a sixth son for Jacob (ULT)

and had a sixth son for Jacob (UST)

Alternate translation: [and gave birth to a sixth son for Jacob]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Then … conceived
- Leah
- and bore
- for Jacob

UST
- Then … became pregnant
- Leah
- and had
- for Jacob

Genesis 30:20

ULT:
And Leah said, “God has presented me a good present. This time my husband will honor me because I have born six sons for him.” So she called his name Zebulun.

UST:
Then she said, “God has given me a valuable gift, {so that} now my husband will honor me because I have had six sons for him.” So she named their son Zebulun, {which means “honor.”}

And Leah said (ULT)

Then she said (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then she exclaimed]

God has presented me a good present (ULT)

God has given me a valuable gift (UST)

Alternate translation: [God has given me a precious gift]

This time my husband will honor me (ULT)

{so that} now my husband will honor me (UST)

Alternate translation: [so now my husband will honor me]

---

because I have born six sons for him (ULT)

because I have had six sons for him (UST)

Alternate translation: [because I have given him six sons]

So she called his name (ULT)

So she named their son (UST)

Make sure the way you translate **his name** refers here to Leah's baby son, not to her husband (who was mentioned in the previous sentence). Alternate translation: [So she called him] or [So she named that son] or [So she gave him the name]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Leah
- God
- good
- will honor me
- I have born
- So she called
- Zebulun

UST

- לֵאָה (ORIG QUOTE)
- God
- valuable
- will honor me
- I have had
- So she named their son
- Zebulun, {which means "honor … }

Genesis 30:21

ULT:
Then later she bore a daughter and called her name Dinah.

UST:
{Sometime} after that, Leah had a daughter and named her Dinah.

Then later (ULT)

{Sometime} after that (UST)

Alternate translation: [Sometime later]

---

she bore a daughter (ULT)

Leah had a daughter (UST)

Alternate translation: [Leah gave birth to a daughter] or [she had a daughter]

---

and called her name Dinah (ULT)

and named her Dinah (UST)

Alternate translation: [and called her Dinah] or [whom she named Dinah]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- she bore
- and called

UST
- Leah had

- and named her

Genesis 30:22

ULT:
Then God remembered Rachel, and God listened to her and opened her womb.

UST:
God had not forgotten Rachel, so he answered her {prayers} and made it possible for her to have children.

Then God remembered Rachel (ULT)

God had not forgotten Rachel (UST)

Make sure that your translation of this phrase does not imply that God forgot about Rachel. See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 8:1. Alternate translation: [God had kept Rachel in mind]

---

and God listened to her (ULT)

so he answered her {prayers} (UST)

See how you translated **listened to** in verses 6 and 17. Alternate translation: [so he heard her requests] or [so he did what she had been asking him to do]

---

and opened her womb (ULT)

and made it possible for her to have children (UST)

See how you translated this idiom in Genesis 29:31. Alternate translation: [and made it so that she could conceive]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- Rachel
- God
- her womb

UST

- God
- Rachel
- אֱלֹהִים (ORIG QUOTE)
- and made it possible for her to have children

Genesis 30:23

ULT:
Then she conceived and bore a son, and she said, “God has taken away my disgrace!”

UST:
Then she became pregnant and had a son, and she exclaimed, “God has made it so that I am no longer ashamed!”

Then she conceived (ULT)

Then she became pregnant (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that finally she conceived] or [So Rachel became pregnant]

---

and bore a son (ULT)

and had a son (UST)

Alternate translation: [and gave birth to a son]

---

and she said (ULT)

and she exclaimed (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then she said]

God has taken away my disgrace (ULT)

God has made it so that I am no longer ashamed (UST)

Alternate translation: [God has removed my shame] or [God has made it so that I am no longer barren and humiliated!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then she conceived
- and bore
- God
- my disgrace

UST

- Then she became pregnant
- and had
- God has made it so that I am no longer ashamed
- God has made it so that I am no longer ashamed

Genesis 30:24

ULT:
And she called his name Joseph, saying, "May Yahweh add another son to me."

UST:
She named her son Joseph, {which means "may he give another,"} {because} she said, "I pray that Yahweh will give me another son."

And she called his name (ULT)

She named her son (UST)

Alternate translation: [She called her son] or [She gave him the name]

Joseph (ULT)

Joseph, {which means "may he give another … } (UST)

If you include the meaning of Joseph's name here in your translation or in a footnote, make sure it matches the way you translate what Rachel says next.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

saying (ULT)

{because} she said (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to put the last half of verse 24 first in the verse and say, "She also said, 'May Yahweh add/give another son to me.' So she named that/her son Joseph, which means 'may he add/give another.'"

Support Reference: Information Structure

May Yahweh add another son to me (ULT)

I pray that Yahweh will give me another son (UST)

Alternate translation: [I ask that Yahweh will give me another son] or [I ask Yahweh to give me another son]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And she called
- Joseph
- Yahweh

UST

- She named her son
- Joseph, {which means “may he give another … }
- Yahweh

Genesis 30:25

ULT:
Then it happened, after Rachel bore Joseph, then Jacob said to Laban, "Send me off, so that I may go to my place and to my land.

UST:
After Rachel had Joseph, Jacob requested of Laban, "{Please} allow me to leave {here}, so that I can return to my {own} home in my {own} country.

Then it happened, after Rachel bore Joseph (ULT)

After Rachel had Joseph (UST)

Alternate translation: [Soon after Rachel gave birth to Joseph]

---

then Jacob said to Laban (ULT)

Jacob requested of Laban (UST)

Alternate translation: [Jacob went to Laban and said to him]

Send me off (ULT)

Please} allow me to leave {here} (UST)

Make sure that your translation of Jacob's request here sounds polite, not rude or disrespectful. It should also not sound like he is begging or pleading. See how you translated the same request in Genesis 24:54. Alternate translation: [Please send me on my way]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

so that I may go to my place and to my land (ULT)

so that I can return to my {own} home in my {own} country (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that I may return to my own home in my own country] or [so that I can go to my homeland]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- bore
- Rachel
- Joseph
- Jacob
- Laban
- and to my land

UST

- had
- Rachel
- Joseph
- Jacob
- Laban
- in my {own} country

Genesis 30:26

ULT:
Give me my wives and my children for whom I have served you, so that I may go. For you yourself know my service that I have served you."

UST:
Let me take my wives and my children, whom I have earned by working for you, so that I can leave {with them}. You yourself know how {well} I have worked for you."

Give me my wives and my children (ULT)

Let me take my wives and my children (UST)

Alternate translation: [Let me have my wives and my children]

---

for whom I have served you (ULT)

whom I have earned by working for you (UST)

Alternate translation: [whom I have finished serving you for]

---

so that I may go (ULT)

so that I can leave {with them} (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that I may leave with them] or [and let me go with them] or [so that I can take them with me]

For you yourself know (ULT)

You yourself know (UST)

Alternate translation: [because you yourself know]

---

my service that I have served you (ULT)

how {well} I have worked for you (UST)

Jacob is repeating forms of the verb **served** in order to intensify his expression of the idea that it conveys. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the intensification. Alternate translation: [that I have served you very well] or [how faithfully I have worked for you]

Support Reference: Reduplication

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- I have served
- you … know
- I have served you

UST

- I have earned by working
- You … know
- how {well} I have worked for you

Genesis 30:27

ULT:
Then Laban said to him, "Please {stay}, if I have found favor in your eyes. I have learned by divination that Yahweh has blessed me because of you."

UST:
But Laban responded to him, "Please be kind to me {and stay}, {because} I have found out from observing signs that Yahweh has blessed me because you {are here with me}."

Then Laban said to him (ULT)

But Laban responded to him (UST)

Alternate translation: [But Laban responded to Jacob]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Please {stay}, if I have found favor in your eyes (ULT)

Please be kind to me {and stay} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Please stay, if I have pleased you] or [Please do me a favor and do not go]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

that Yahweh has blessed me (ULT)

that Yahweh has blessed me (UST)

Alternate translation: [that Yahweh has caused me to prosper]

---

because of you (ULT)

because you {are here with me} (UST)

Alternate translation: [because you have been working for me]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Laban
- favor
- I have learned by divination
- that … has blessed me
- Yahweh

UST

- Laban
- Please be kind to me {and stay}
- {because} I have found out from observing signs
- that … has blessed me
- Yahweh

Genesis 30:28

ULT:
Then he said, “Name your wages to me, and I will give {them}.”

UST:
Then he added, “Tell me what you want your pay to be, and that is what I will pay you.”

Then he said (ULT)

Then he added (UST)

Some translations delete this quote margin, since the same person is still speaking to the same person as in the previous verse. However it could be that there was a pause in the conversation, or the author may want to show that there is a change in topic or emphasize what is said next. So if possible, it is best to keep the quote margin here in your translation. Alternate translation: [Then he said to him] or [Then Laban added]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Name your wages to me, and I will give {them} (ULT)

Tell me what you want your pay to be, and that is what I will pay you (UST)

See how you translated **wages** in Genesis 29:15. Alternate translation: [Tell me what you want your wages to be, and that is what I will give you] or [Tell me what you want me to pay you, and I will give that to you] or [Set your wages, and that is what they will be]

Genesis 30:29

ULT:
And he said to him, "You yourself know how I have served you and how your livestock have been with me.

UST:
Jacob replied to him, "You yourself know how {hard} I have worked for you and how {well} your animals have prospered under my care.

And he said to him (ULT)

Jacob replied to him (UST)

Alternate translation: [Jacob said to him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

You yourself know how I have served you (ULT)

You yourself know how {hard} I have worked for you (UST)

See how you translated "you yourself know" in verse 26. Alternate translation: [You yourself know how well I have worked for you]

---

and how your livestock have been (ULT)

and how {well} your animals have prospered (UST)

Alternate translation: [and how well your flocks have fared]

---

with me (ULT)

under my care (UST)

Alternate translation: [ever since I have been taking care of them] or [while I have been tending them]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- You … know
- I have served you
- your livestock

UST

- You … know
- I have worked for you
- and … your animals

Genesis 30:30

ULT:
For {there was} little that was yours before me, and it has prospered to abundance, and Yahweh has blessed you at my feet. But now, when will I also do something for my household?"

UST:
The few that you owned before I came have multiplied dramatically. Yes, Yahweh has blessed you because of me. But now, I need to also provide for my {own} family!"

For {there was} little that was yours before me, and it has prospered to abundance (ULT)

The few that you owned before I came have multiplied dramatically (UST)

Alternate translation: [Before I came, you had very little wealth, but now you are prospering abundantly] or [The few animals that you owned before I came have increased greatly] or [Before I worked for you, you owned very few animals, but now you have a huge number of animals]

---

at my feet (ULT)

because of me (UST)

Alternate translation: [because I am here] or [because I have been working for you]

Support Reference: Idiom

But now, when will I also do something for my household (ULT)

But now, I need to also provide for my {own} family (UST)

Jacob uses a rhetorical question here to express his strong feelings. Alternate translation: [But now I need to also provide for my own household]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

and Yahweh has blessed you (ULT)

Yes, Yahweh has blessed you (UST)

See how you translated **blessed** in verse 27. Alternate translation: [That is how Yahweh has prospered you] or [Yes, Yahweh has prospered you]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and … has blessed
- Yahweh
- for my household

UST

- Yes … has blessed
- Yahweh
- for my {own} family

Genesis 30:31

ULT:
Then he said, “What should I give to you?” And Jacob said, “Do not give anything to me. If you will do this thing for me, I will continue tending your flock{s} watching over {them}:

UST:
So Laban asked {him}, “What can I pay you {to persuade you} {to stay here}?” Jacob answered, “Do not pay me anything. Just do this {one} thing for me, and I will continue taking care of your flock{s}:

Then he said (ULT)

So Laban asked {him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [So Laban asked Jacob] or [Laban responded]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

What should I give to you (ULT)

What can I pay you {to persuade you} {to stay here} (UST)

Alternate translation: [What do you want me to give you so that you will stay and work for me?] or [What can I give you to persuade you to stay here?]

And Jacob said (ULT)

Jacob answered (UST)

Alternate translation: [Jacob replied]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Do not give anything to me (ULT)

Do not pay me anything (UST)

Alternate translation: [Do not give me anything] or [You do not need to give me anything]

If you will do this thing for me (ULT)

Just do this {one} thing for me, and (UST)

Alternate translation: [But if you will do this one thing for me]

I will continue tending your flock{s} watching over {them} (ULT)

I will continue taking care of your flock{s} (UST)

See how you translated “watches over” in Genesis 28:20. Alternate translation: [I will continue to tend and watch over your flocks:] or [I will keep taking care of your flocks:]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- tending
- your flock{s}
- watching over {them}

UST

- Jacob
- taking care of
- your flock{s}
- אָשְׁמֹר (ORIG QUOTE)

Genesis 30:32

ULT:
I will pass through all your flock{s} today to remove from there every speckled and spotted lamb and every dark-colored lamb among the sheep, and the spotted and speckled {young} among the goats. And that will be my wages.

UST:
Let me look through all your flock{s} today and separate out from them all the lambs that are speckled, spotted or dark-colored, and {all} the young goats that are spotted or speckled. They will be my pay.

I will pass through all your flock{s} today (ULT)

Let me look through all your flock{s} today (UST)

Alternate translation: [Let me go through all your flocks today] or [Today I will go through all your sheep and goats]

---

to remove from there (ULT)

and separate out from them (UST)

Alternate translation: [and take away from them]

---

every speckled and spotted lamb and every dark-colored lamb among the sheep (ULT)

all the lambs that are speckled, spotted or dark-colored (UST)

The Hebrew word for **speckled** refers to small spots, whereas **spotted** refers to medium-sized and bigger spots. In that part of the world, most sheep were white and most goats were solid brown or black. So Jacob was asking for the irregular animals for himself, including white sheep with dark marks, dark-colored goats with light marks and dark-colored lambs. You could

put some of this information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [all the lambs that have speckles or spots, or that are dark-colored]

---

and the spotted and speckled {young} among the goats (ULT)

and {all} the young goats that are spotted or speckled (UST)

Alternate translation: [and all the kid goats that are spotted or speckled]

And that will be my wages (ULT)

They will be my pay (UST)

Alternate translation: [They will be my wages] or [Those animals will be my wages]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- your flock{s}
- today
- lamb
- lamb
- among the sheep
- among the goats

UST

- your flock{s}
- today
- the lambs
- שֶׂה (ORIG QUOTE)
- בַּכְּשָׂבִים (ORIG QUOTE)
- and {all} the young goats that are spotted or speckled

Genesis 30:33

ULT:
So my righteousness will testify for me in future days when you go over my wages in front of you: any that is not speckled and spotted among the goats and dark-colored among the sheep, it was stolen {if it is} with me."

UST:
That way {too}, in the future it will be easy {for you} to know whether {or not} I am being honest whenever you check the animals you have paid me. {If you see that I have} any {sheep or} goats that are not speckled or spotted or any lambs {that are not} dark-colored, {you will know that} I stole them {from you}."

So my righteousness will testify for me in future days (ULT)

That way {too}, in the future it will be easy {for you} to know whether {or not} I am being honest (UST)

The phrase **my righteousness** is referred to here as if it can testify like a person can. Some languages cannot personify righteousness like that. Alternate translation: [Also, in the future you will know whether or not I am being honest] or [That way too, in the future it will be easy for everyone to know whether or not I am being honest]

Support Reference: Personification

---

when you go over my wages in front of you (ULT)

whenever you check the animals you have paid me (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to move this clause earlier in this sentence and say, "Also, in the future, whenever you check the animals you have paid/given me, you will know whether or not I am being honest." Do what is best in your own language. Alternate translation: [whenever you check the animals you have given me]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

any that is not speckled and spotted among the goats and dark-colored among the sheep (ULT)

{If you see that I have} any {sheep or} goats that are not speckled or spotted or any lambs {that are not} dark-colored (UST)

Alternate translation: [If you see that I have any sheep or goats that are not speckled or spotted or any sheep that are not dark-colored] or [If you see any sheep or goats among my flocks that do not have speckles or spots or any sheep that are not dark-colored]

---

it was stolen {if it is} with me (ULT)

you will know that} I stole them {from you} (UST)

Alternate translation: [it will be obvious that I stole them from you]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- my righteousness
- in … days
- among the goats
- among the sheep

UST

- That way {too} … it will be easy {for you} to know whether {or not} I am being honest
- in the future
- {sheep or} goats
- or any lambs {that are not} dark-colored

Genesis 30:34

ULT:
And Laban said, “Behold, let it be according to your word.”

UST:
Laban replied, “I agree, let’s do exactly as you have suggested.”

And Laban said (ULT)

Laban replied (UST)

Alternate translation: [Laban said to him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Behold (ULT)

I agree (UST)

Alternate translation: [Yes] or [I agree with that;]

---

let it be according to your word (ULT)

let’s do exactly as you have suggested (UST)

Alternate translation: [we will do exactly what you have said]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Laban

UST

- Laban

Genesis 30:35

ULT:
Then on that day he removed the male goats that were streaked and spotted, and all the female goats that were speckled and spotted, any that {had} white on it, and all the dark-colored {ones} among the lambs. Then he gave {them} into the hand of his sons,

UST:
But that {same} day, Laban separated {from his flocks} {all} the he-goats that had stripes or spots, and all the she-goats that had speckles or spots, all that {had any} white {marks} on them, together with all the dark-colored lambs. Then he told his sons to take care of {them},

Then on that day he removed (ULT)

But that {same} day, Laban separated {from his flocks} (UST)

Make sure your translation of **he** in this clause refers to Laban, not Jacob (as verse 36 confirms). Also, what Laban does in verse 35 does not follow the agreement he just made with Jacob in verses 32–34. Alternate translation: [But that very day, he removed from his flocks]

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

---

the male goats that were streaked and spotted, and all the female goats that were speckled and spotted (ULT)

{all} the he-goats that had stripes or spots, and all the she-goats that had speckles or spots (UST)

Alternate translation: [all the he-goats that had streaks or spots, and all the she-goats that had speckles or spots]

---

any that {had} white on it (ULT)

all that {had any} white {marks} on them (UST)

The goats were normally dark brown or black, so if they had streaks or spots on them those marks would be white. In the Hebrew text, there is a pun (play-on-words) in verses 35 and 37: the name “Laban” means **white**, so verse 35 literally says that any goats with “Laban” (**white**) on them became Jacob’s. You could include that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [any that had any white marks on them]

Then he gave {them} into the hand of his sons (ULT)

Then he told his sons to take care of {them} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then he had his sons tend them] or [Then he put his sons in charge of them]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- on … day
- the male goats
- the female goats
- among the lambs

UST

- that {same} day
- {all} the he-goats
- the she-goats
- lambs

Genesis 30:36

ULT:
and he put a three-day journey between himself and Jacob. And Jacob was tending the rest of Laban's flock{s}.

UST:
and he {and his sons} took {those animals} a three-day walking-distance away from Jacob. Meanwhile Jacob continued taking care of the rest of Laban's flock{s}.

and he put a three-day journey between himself and Jacob (ULT)

and he {and his sons} took {those animals} a three-day walking-distance away from Jacob (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he and his sons took those animals a three-day walking distance away from Jacob]

And Jacob was tending the rest of Laban's flock{s} (ULT)

Meanwhile Jacob continued taking care of the rest of Laban's flock{s} (UST)

See how you translated **tending** in verse 31 and Genesis 13:7.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- day
- Jacob
- And Jacob
- was tending
- s flock{s}
- Laban

UST
- day
- Jacob
- Meanwhile Jacob
- continued taking care of
- s flock{s}

- Laban

Genesis 30:37

ULT:
Then Jacob took for himself fresh-cut branches of poplar and almond and plane trees, and peeled white stripes in them, exposing the white that {was} inside the branches.

UST:
Then Jacob cut {some} branches from poplar {trees}, almond {trees}, and chestnut {trees}, and made white streaks on them {by peeling off long strips of bark}, which exposed the white {wood} that was inside the branches.

of poplar and almond and plane trees (ULT)

from poplar {trees}, almond {trees}, and chestnut {trees} (UST)

If the three kinds of trees are not known in your language area, you could transliterate the names of the trees or be more general and leave out the names. Alternate translation: [from poplar trees, almond trees, and plane trees] or [from three different kinds of trees]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

---

and peeled white stripes in them (ULT)

and made white streaks on them {by peeling off long strips of bark} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and peeled off long pieces of bark] or [and made white stripes on them by stripping off long pieces of bark]

---

exposing the white that {was} inside the branches (ULT)

which exposed the white {wood} that was inside the branches (UST)

Alternate translation: [which showed the white wood under the bark] or [so that the white wood that was inside the branches was exposed]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob

UST

- Jacob

Genesis 30:38

ULT:
Then he put the branches that he had peeled in the troughs, in the water troughs where the flock{s} came to drink, in front of the flock{s}. And they were in heat when they came to drink,

UST:
Then he put those {streaked} branches in all the drinking troughs that the flock{s} would come to drink from, so that the flock{s} would see the branches. {That way, whenever} the animals that were ready to mate came {to the troughs} to drink,

Then he put the branches that he had peeled in the troughs, in the water troughs (ULT)

Then he put those {streaked} branches in all the drinking troughs (UST)

See how you translated "trough" in Genesis 24:20. Alternate translation: [Then he set those striped branches in all the stone drinking tubs]

---

where the flock{s} came to drink (ULT)

that the flock{s} would come to drink from (UST)

The way you translate this should allow for the fact that the animals came to the watering troughs repeatedly or regularly throughout the day, not just one time.

---

in front of the flock{s} (ULT)

so that the flock{s} would see the branches (UST)

Alternate translation: [in front of them] or [so that the flocks would see the branches there]

And they were in heat when they came to drink (ULT)

{That way, whenever} the animals that were ready to mate came {to the troughs} to drink (UST)

The way you translate this clause will determine whether you begin the next verse with a conjunction (“and” or “so”) or without a conjunction. Alternate translation: [The flocks often mated when they came to the tubs to drink] or [That way, whenever the animals that were ready to breed came to the tubs to drink]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the flock{s}
- the flock{s}

UST

- the flock{s}
- the flock{s}

Genesis 30:39

ULT:
and the flock{s} would mate by the branches, and the flock{s} would bear streaked, speckled, and spotted {young}.

UST:
they would see the branches as they were mating. As a result, they would have {young that were} striped or speckled or spotted.

and the flock{s} would mate by the branches (ULT)

they would see the branches as they were mating (UST)

Make sure your translation of the verbs in this verse refers to a repeated or habitual activity, not a one-time event. Alternate translation: [so they would mate in front of the branches] or [they would mate where they could see the branches] or [they would see the branches as they were breeding]

---

and the flock{s} would bear streaked, speckled, and spotted {young} (ULT)

As a result, they would have {young that were} striped or speckled or spotted (UST)

See how you translated **speckled** and **spotted** in verses 32–33 and 35. Also consider what is the most natural way in your language to refer to the flocks in verses 38 and 39. Alternate translation: [As a result, they would bear offspring that were streaked or speckled or spotted]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the flock{s}
- and … would bear
- the flock{s}

UST
- they would see the branches as they were mating

- As a result, they would have {young … }
- הַצֹּאן (ORIG QUOTE)

Genesis 30:40

ULT:
Then Jacob set apart the lambs, and he made the faces of the flock{s} look at the streaked and all the dark-colored {animals} in the flock{s} of Laban. And he put flocks for himself by themselves, and he did not put them with the flock{s} of Laban.

UST:
Then Jacob separated those young animals {from Laban's flocks} {to form new flocks for himself}, and he put {the rest of} the flock{s} with the striped and dark-colored {animals} in Laban's flock{s} {so that they would mate and have young that were striped or dark-colored}. In that way, {over time} he created separate flocks {of sheep and goats} for himself that he kept separate from Laban's flock{s}.

and he made the faces of the flock{s} look at (ULT)

and he put {the rest of} the flock{s} with (UST)

The Hebrew text uses an idiom here that means Jacob put the marked and unmarked animals together (so that they would mate).

Support Reference: Idiom

---

the streaked and all the dark-colored {animals} (ULT)

the striped and dark-colored {animals} (UST)

See how you translated **streaked** in verses 35 and 39, and how you translated **dark-colored** in verses 32–33 and 35. Alternate translation: [all the striped animals and dark-colored animals]

---

in the flock{s} of Laban (ULT)

in Laban's flock{s} {so that they would mate and have young that were striped or dark-colored} (UST)

You may need to make it explicit in your translation why Jacob put the unmarked sheep and goats with Laban's streaked and spotted animals, so that people understand what Jacob was doing.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

And he put flocks for himself by themselves (ULT)

In that way, {over time} he created separate flocks {of sheep and goats} for himself (UST)

Alternate translation: [In that way, over time he made separate flocks of sheep and goats for himself]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then … set apart
- Jacob
- the flock{s}
- in the flock{s} of
- Laban
- flocks
- the flock{s} of
- Laban

UST

- Then … those young animals
- Jacob
- and he put {the rest of} the flock{s} with
- in … s flock{s} {so that they would mate and have young that were striped or dark-colored}
- Laban
- separate flocks {of sheep and goats}
- s flock{s}
- Laban

Genesis 30:41

ULT:
So it happened whenever the strong animals were in heat, then Jacob put the branches in the troughs before the eyes of the flocks so that they would mate by the branches.

UST:
Whenever the stronger female animals were ready to mate, Jacob put the {streaked} branches in the {drinking} troughs in front of those animals so that they would see the branches as they were mating.

So it happened whenever (ULT)

Whenever (UST)

This verse includes more details about what Jacob was doing on a regular basis. Alternate translation: [So whenever]

---

the strong animals (ULT)

the stronger female animals (UST)

Alternate translation: [the best female animals] or [the hardy female sheep and goats]

---

were in heat (ULT)

were ready to mate (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 38. Alternate translation: [were ready to breed]

---

then Jacob put the branches in the troughs (ULT)

Jacob put the {streaked} branches in the {drinking} troughs (UST)

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 38. Alternate translation: [Jacob set the striped branches in the watering tubs]

---

before the eyes of the flocks so that they would mate by the branches (ULT)

in front of those animals so that they would see the branches as they were mating (UST)

See how you translated **mate** and **the branches** in verse 39. Alternate translation: [in front of those animals so that they would see the branches as they were breeding] or [so that as they were mating, they would see the branches]

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the … animals
- Jacob
- the flocks
- so that they would mate

UST

- the stronger female animals
- Jacob
- those animals
- so that they would see the branches as they were mating

Genesis 30:42

ULT:
But when the animals were weak, he did not put {them} {in}. So it was the weak {ones} {went} to Laban, and the strong {ones} to Jacob,

UST:
But whenever the weaker female animals {were ready to mate}, Jacob did not put {the branches} {in the troughs}. In that way, {the young from} the weaker {animals} were Laban's and {the young from} the stronger {animals} were Jacob's.

But when the animals were weak (ULT)

But whenever the weaker female animals {were ready to mate} (UST)

Alternate translation: [But whenever the feeble female animals were ready to mate]

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

---

he did not put {them} {in} (ULT)

Jacob did not put {the branches} {in the troughs} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Jacob did not set the branches in the tubs]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

the weak {ones} (ULT)

the young from} the weaker {animals} (UST)

Alternate translation: [the young from the feeble animals]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and the strong {ones} (ULT)

and {the young from} the stronger {animals} (UST)

See how you translated **strong** in verse 41. Alternate translation: [and the young from the hardy animals]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

to Jacob (ULT)

were Jacob's (UST)

Alternate translation: [went to Jacob]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the animals
- {went} to Laban
- to Jacob

UST

- But whenever the weaker female animals {were ready to mate}
- were Laban's
- were Jacob's

Genesis 30:43

ULT:
so that the man prospered very greatly, and he owned large flock{s}, and maidservants and menservants and camels and donkeys.

UST:
So Jacob became extremely wealthy. He owned large flock{s} {of sheep and goats}, and {many} male and female servants and {many} camels and donkeys.

so that the man prospered (ULT)

So Jacob became extremely wealthy (UST)

See how you translated **prospered** in verse 30. Alternate translation: [So Jacob became very wealthy] or [As a result, Jacob became very rich]

---

and he owned large flock{s} (ULT)

He owned large flock{s} {of sheep and goats} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and owned large flocks of sheep and goats] or [He owned many sheep and goats]

---

and maidservants and menservants and camels and donkeys (ULT)

and {many} male and female servants and {many} camels and donkeys (UST)

See how you translated "maidservants," "menservants," "camels," and **donkeys** in Genesis 12:16 and 24:35.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- flock{s}
- and maidservants
- and menservants
- and camels
- and donkeys

UST

- flock{s} {of sheep and goats}
- and {many} male and female servants
- and {many} male and female servants
- and {many} camels
- and donkeys

Genesis 31

Genesis 31:1

ULT:
Then he heard the words of the sons of Laban, {who} were saying, "Jacob has taken everything that {belonged} to our father, and from what {belonged} to our father he has gained all this wealth!"

UST:
Then {one day} Jacob heard that Laban's sons were {complaining and} saying, "Jacob has taken {for himself} everything that our father owned. In fact, he has gotten all his riches by taking {the animals} that were our father's!"

Then he heard (ULT)

Then {one day} Jacob heard (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then one day someone told Jacob]

Jacob has taken everything that {belonged} to our father (ULT)

Jacob has taken {for himself} everything that our father owned (UST)

Alternate translation: [Jacob has taken for himself all that our father owned]

---

and from what {belonged} to our father he has gained all this wealth (ULT)

In fact, he has gotten all his riches by taking {the animals} that were our father's (UST)

This clause forms a parallelism with the previous clause and emphasizes Laban's sons' complaint against Jacob. The phrase **all this wealth** especially refers to all the livestock that Jacob had gained during the years he worked for Laban.

Support Reference: Parallelism

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Laban
- Jacob

UST

- Laban
- Jacob

Genesis 31:2

ULT:
And Jacob saw the face of Laban, and behold, he was not with him as yesterday {and} three days ago.

UST:
Jacob also noticed that Laban no longer acted friendly toward him the way he did in the past.

And Jacob saw (ULT)

Jacob also noticed (UST)

Alternate translation: [Jacob also saw]

---

the face of Laban, and behold, he was not with him as yesterday {and} three days ago (ULT)

that Laban no longer acted friendly toward him the way he did in the past (UST)

The clause **he was not with him** is used here as an idiom that means Laban was no longer happy with Jacob or that he no longer liked him. Consider whether your language has a similar idiom that fits well here. Alternate translation: [that Laban no longer looked at him in a friendly way like he did previously] or [that Laban was no longer happy with him like he was previously] or [that Laban no longer acted kind toward him the way he did in the past]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Jacob
- Laban

UST
- Jacob

- that Laban no longer acted friendly toward him

Genesis 31:3

ULT:
Then Yahweh said to Jacob, "Go back to the land of your fathers and to your relatives, and I will be with you."

UST:
Then Yahweh told Jacob, "Return to your ancestors' homeland, where your relatives live, and I will stay with you {and help you}."

Then Yahweh said to Jacob (ULT)

Then Yahweh told Jacob (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh commanded Jacob]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Go back to the land of your fathers and to your relatives (ULT)

Return to your ancestors' homeland, where your relatives live (UST)

Alternate translation: [Return to the land where your ancestors lived and where your other relatives also live]

---

and I will be with you (ULT)

and I will stay with you {and help you} (UST)

See how you translated this clause in Genesis 26:3 and how you translated similar clauses in Genesis 26:8, 24; 28:15. Alternate translation: [and I will stay with you and bless you]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Yahweh
- Jacob
- the land of
- and to your relatives

UST

- Yahweh
- Jacob
- homeland
- where your relatives live

Genesis 31:4

ULT:
Then Jacob sent and called for Rachel and Leah to the field to his flock{s}.

UST:
So Jacob sent a message to Rachel and Leah that they should meet him at the field {where he was with} his flock{s} {of sheep and goats}.

Then Jacob sent and called for Rachel and Leah to the field (ULT)

So Jacob sent a message to Rachel and Leah that they should meet him at the field (UST)

See how you translated **sent and called for** in Genesis 27:42. Alternate translation: [So Jacob sent for Rachel and Leah to come to the pasture] or [Then Jacob sent a message to Rachel and Leah that they should meet him in the pasture]

---

to his flock{s} (ULT)

where he was with} his flock{s} {of sheep and goats} (UST)

Alternate translation: [where he was tending his flocks of sheep and goats]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- and called
- for Rachel
- and Leah
- his flock{s}

UST

- Jacob
- that they should meet him
- to Rachel
- and Leah

- his flock{s} {of sheep and goats}

Genesis 31:5

ULT:
Then he said to them, "I have seen the face of your father, that he is not toward me as yesterday {and} three days ago, but the God of my father has been with me.

UST:
{When they arrived,} he said to them, "I have noticed that your father no longer acts friendly toward me the way he did in the past, but the God whom my father serves has stayed with me {and has helped me}.

Then he said to them (ULT)

{When they arrived,} he said to them (UST)

Consider whether in your language it is necessary to make explicit that Rachel and Leah had come to Jacob before he spoke to them. Alternate translation: [There he told them]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

the face of your father, that he is not toward me as yesterday {and} three days ago (ULT)

that your father no longer acts friendly toward me the way he did in the past (UST)

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 2. Alternate translation: [that your father no longer looks at me in a kind way like he did in the past] or [that your father is no longer happy with me as he was previously] or [that your father no longer acts friendly toward me the way he did before]

---

but the God of my father (ULT)

but the God whom my father serves (UST)

See how you translated "the God of …" in Genesis 28:13. Alternate translation: [but the God whom my father worships] or [but the God who takes care of my father]

---

has been with me (ULT)

has stayed with me {and has helped me} (UST)

See how you translated the idiom "be with you" in verse 3. Alternate translation: [has stayed with me and has blessed me]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- but the God of

UST

- but the God whom my father serves

Genesis 31:6

ULT:
And you know that with all my might I have served your father,

UST:
You {both} know how I have worked for your father as hard as I could,

And you know (ULT)

You {both} know (UST)

In the Hebrew text, **you** is an emphatic pronoun. Also, some languages have a special dual pronoun that fits here well.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

---

that with all my might I have served your father (ULT)

how I have worked for your father as hard as I could (UST)

Alternate translation: [that I have served your father with all my might] or [how I have worked for your father as faithfully as I could]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- know
- I have served

UST
- know
- I have worked for

Genesis 31:7

ULT:
but your father has deceived me and changed my wages ten times. However, God has not allowed him to harm me.

UST:
but he has cheated me by changing what he pays me ten times. However, God has not permitted him to hurt me.

but your father has deceived me (ULT)

but he has cheated me (UST)

Alternate translation: [but in spite of that, he has deceived me] or [but yet he has treated me unfairly]

---

and changed my wages ten times (ULT)

by changing what he pays me ten times (UST)

Alternate translation: [and ten times he has changed what he said that he would pay me]

However, God has not allowed him to harm me (ULT)

However, God has not permitted him to hurt me (UST)

In this context, **harm** especially refers to financial harm, but it can also include physical harm.
Alternate translation: [However, God has not permitted him to harm me] or [But God has kept him from hurting me] or [But God has protected me so that he could not hurt me]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- has deceived
- God
- to harm

UST

- has cheated
- God
- to hurt

Genesis 31:8

ULT:
If he said like this: 'The speckled {animals} will be your wages,' then all the flock{s} bore speckled {young}. But if he said like this: 'The streaked {ones} will be your wages,' then all the flock{s} bore streaked {young}.

UST:
{For example,} every time that he told {me} that the speckled {animals} would be my pay, all {the female animals in} the flock{s} gave birth to speckled {young}. But whenever he {changed his mind and} told {me} that the striped animals would be my pay, then they all gave birth to streaked {young}.

If he said like this (ULT)

For example,} every time that he told {me} (UST)

The examples Jacob is describing in verse 8 took place repeatedly (as verse 7 indicates). Alternate translation: [For example, if he told me]

The speckled {animals} will be your wages (ULT)

that the speckled {animals} would be my pay (UST)

Consider whether it is best in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Also, see how you translated **speckled** in Genesis 30:32, 33, 35, 39. Alternate translation: [that only the speckled animals would be my pay] or [that he would pay me by giving me only the animals with speckles on them]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

---

then all the flock{s} bore (ULT)

all {the female animals in} the flock{s} gave birth to (UST)

Alternate translation: [then all the female animals in the flocks gave birth to] or [then all the female sheep and goats gave birth to]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

speckled {young} (ULT)

speckled {young} (UST)

Alternate translation: [speckled babies] or [young that were speckled]

But if he said like this (ULT)

But whenever he {changed his mind and} told {me} (UST)

Alternate translation: [But if he said to me] or [Then if he changed his mind and told me]

The streaked {ones} will be your wages (ULT)

that the striped animals would be my pay (UST)

See how you translated **streaked** in Genesis 30:35, 39, 40. Alternate translation: [that only the striped animals would be my pay] or [that he would pay me by giving me only the animals with stripes on them]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

---

then all the flock{s} bore (ULT)

all {the female animals in} the flock{s} gave birth to (UST)

Alternate translation: [then all the females in the flocks gave birth to] or [then all the female sheep and goats had]

---

streaked {young} (ULT)

streaked {young} (UST)

Alternate translation: [striped young] or [young that had stripes on them]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- then … bore
- the flock{s}
- then … bore
- the flock{s}

UST

- gave birth to
- the female animals in} the flock{s}
- then … gave birth to
- they

Genesis 31:9

ULT:
So God took away the livestock of your father and gave {them} to me.

UST:
In that way, God has taken your father's animals {from him} and has given {them} to me.

the livestock of your father (ULT)

your father's animals {from him} (UST)

The term **livestock** usually includes all kinds of domestic animals, but in this context it refers to the sheep and goats that Jacob was taking care of for Laban. Alternate translation: [many of the animals that belonged to your father]

---

and gave {them} to me (ULT)

and has given {them} to me (UST)

Alternate translation: [and gave them to me instead]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- God
- the livestock of

UST
- God
- s animals {from him}

Genesis 31:10

ULT:
And it happened in the season the flock{s} were in heat, and I lifted my eyes and saw in a dream that, behold, the he-goats that were mounting the flock{s} {were} streaked, speckled, and spotted.

UST:
One time during the season when the flock{s} {of sheep and goats} were mating, I had a dream. {In the dream} I looked around and was surprised to see that the {only} male goats {and sheep} that were mating with the female goats {and sheep} {were} striped, speckled, or blotched.

And it happened (ULT)

One time (UST)

Alternate translation: [One night]

---

in the season (ULT)

during the season (UST)

Alternate translation: [during the time] or [during the time of year]

---

the flock{s} were in heat (ULT)

when the flock{s} {of sheep and goats} were mating (UST)

Alternate translation: [that the female sheep and goats were in heat] or [that the flocks of sheep and goats were mating]

---

and I lifted my eyes and saw in a dream that, behold (ULT)

I had a dream. {In the dream} I looked around and was surprised to see that (UST)

The word **behold** emphasizes what Jacob saw and might also express that he was surprised at what he saw. Alternate translation: [I had a dream and in the dream I looked around and saw that]

---

the he-goats that were mounting the flock{s} (ULT)

the {only} male goats {and sheep} that were mating with the female goats {and sheep} (UST)

Some languages have special terms for male and female goats or sheep. For example, billy goats and nanny goats (for male and female goats) and rams and ewes (for male and female sheep). Choose terms in your language that are natural and well-known.

{were} streaked, speckled, and spotted (ULT)

{were} striped, speckled, or blotched (UST)

It may be more natural to put this phrase earlier and say, "… saw that the male goats and sheep that were streaked, speckled, and spotted were the only ones that were mating with the female goats and sheep." Alternate translation: [were streaked speckled, or spotted] or [had a striped, speckled, or blotched pattern in their fur]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the flock{s}
- in a dream
- the he-goats
- the flock{s}

UST

- the flock{s} {of sheep and goats}
- I had a dream. {In the dream}
- the {only} male goats {and sheep}
- the female goats {and sheep}

Genesis 31:11

ULT:
Then an angel of God said to me in the dream, ‘Jacob!’ and I said, ‘Behold me.’

UST:
Then an angel from God called to me in the dream, ‘Jacob!’ and I answered, ‘Yes, {Lord}?’

Then an angel of God said to me in the dream, ‘Jacob (ULT)

Then an angel from God called to me in the dream, ‘Jacob (UST)

In some languages it is more natural to put **in the dream** earlier in this clause. Also see how you translated **an angel of God** in Genesis 21:17.

---

and I said (ULT)

and I answered (UST)

Alternate translation: [and I responded]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Behold me (ULT)

Yes, {Lord} (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 22:1 and 27:11. Alternate translation: [Here I am!] or [Yes, sir?] or [Yes, I am listening]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- an angel of

- God
- in the dream
- Jacob

UST

- an angel from
- God
- in the dream
- Jacob

Genesis 31:12

ULT:
Then he said, 'Please lift up your eyes and see all the he-goats that are mounting the flock{s} {are} streaked, speckled, and spotted, because I have seen all that Laban is doing to you.

UST:
Then he said {to me}, 'Look around and notice {that} all the male goats {and sheep} that are mating with the female goats {and sheep} {are} striped, speckled, or blotched. {I have caused that to happen,} because I have noticed all {the wrong things} that Laban has been doing to you.

Then he said (ULT)

Then he said {to me} (UST)

Alternate translation: [The angel said]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Please lift up your eyes (ULT)

Look around (UST)

See how you translated this idiom in Genesis 22:13. Also see how you translated Genesis 22:2, another passage where Yahweh uses **Please**. Alternate translation: [Look around you] or [Look carefully]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and see (ULT)

and notice {that} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and observe that]

---

all the he-goats that are mounting the flock{s} (ULT)

all the male goats {and sheep} that are mating with the female goats {and sheep} (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 10.

{are} streaked, speckled, and spotted (ULT)

{are} striped, speckled, or blotched (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verses 8 and 10. Alternate translation: [are streaked speckled, or spotted] or [have a streaked speckled, or spotted pattern in their fur]

---

because I have seen (ULT)

{I have caused that to happen,} because I have noticed (UST)

Sometimes an angel says **I** as God's representative, but in this context, it seems to be Yahweh himself (in the form of an angel) who is speaking to Jacob (See verse 13). That information could be put in a footnote, and you could make "Yahweh" explicit in the text to make that clear. Alternate translation: [I, Yahweh, have caused that to happen, because I have observed]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

all that Laban is doing to you (ULT)

all {the wrong things} that Laban has been doing to you (UST)

Alternate translation: [all the wrong things that Laban has done to you] or [all the ways that Laban has been treating you badly]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the he-goats
- the flock{s}
- Laban

UST

- the male goats {and sheep}
- the female goats {and sheep}
- Laban

Genesis 31:13

ULT:
I {am} the God of Bethel, where you anointed a pillar, where you vowed a vow to me. Now get up, go out from this land, and return to the land of your birth.'"

UST:
I am the God {who appeared to you} at {the town of} Bethel, where you poured oil on top of a memorial stone {to dedicate the place to me}, {and} where you made an oath to me. {So} then, get ready {and} leave this land {immediately}, and go back to your home land.'"

where you anointed a pillar (ULT)

where you poured oil on top of a memorial stone {to dedicate the place to me} (UST)

See how you translated "poured oil on top of" in Genesis 28:38 and **pillar** in Genesis 28:18, 22. Alternate translation: [where you poured olive oil on top of a memorial pillar to dedicate the place to me]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

---

where you vowed a vow to me (ULT)

{and} where you made an oath to me (UST)

See how you translated **vowed a vow** in Genesis 28:20. Alternate translation: [and where you made a vow to me]

Now get up, go out from this land (ULT)

So} then, get ready {and} leave this land {immediately} (UST)

The phrase **get up** means that Jacob should immediately get ready to go and then leave; see how you translated this phrase in Genesis 27:43. Alternate translation: [So now get up and leave this region immediately] or [Now go at once from this land]

---

and return to (ULT)

and go back to (UST)

Alternate translation: [and travel back to]

---

the land of your birth (ULT)

your home land (UST)

The Hebrew word for **birth** in this phrase can also be translated as "relatives" here (as in verse 3). See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 24:7. Alternate translation: [the land where you were born] or [the land where your relatives live] or [your native land]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Bethel
- the God of
- Bethel
- you anointed
- a pillar
- you vowed
- a vow
- land
- the land of
- your birth

UST

- {the town of} Bethel
- am the God {who appeared to you} at
- {the town of} Bethel
- you poured oil … to dedicate the place to me
- on top of a memorial stone
- you made
- an oath
- land
- your home land
- your home land

Genesis 31:14

ULT:
Then Rachel replied, and Leah, and they said to him, "Is there still for us a portion or inheritance in the house of our father?

UST:
Then Rachel and Leah responded to Jacob, "We will not inherit anything from our father {when he dies}!

Then Rachel replied, and Leah, and they said to him (ULT)

Then Rachel and Leah responded to Jacob (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Rachel and Leah responded to him] or [Rachel and Leah replied to him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Is there still for us a portion or inheritance in the house of our father (ULT)

We will not inherit anything from our father {when he dies} (UST)

This rhetorical question expects the answer "no." It also expresses Rachel's and Leah's strong emotion and emphasizes that there is nothing for them to inherit from their father. Consider whether or not a rhetorical question fits well here in your language. Alternate translation: [We no longer have any part in the inheritance from our father.] or [We will never inherit anything from our father!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Rachel
- and Leah
- or inheritance
- in the house of

UST

- Rachel
- and Leah
- We will not inherit anything
- We will not inherit anything

Genesis 31:15

ULT:
Are we not regarded by him {as} foreigners? For he sold us, and he has indeed completely eaten up our silver.

UST:
It is obvious that he treats us like strangers {and not family}. For example, he sold us {to you}, and then he spent all the money that should have been ours.

Are we not regarded by him (ULT)

It is obvious that he treats us (UST)

This rhetorical question expects the answer "yes" and expresses Rachel's and Leah's anger at how their father treats them. Consider whether or not it is natural in your language to use a rhetorical question here. Alternate translation: [It is obvious that he regards us] or [He obviously is treating us]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

{as} foreigners (ULT)

like strangers {and not family} (UST)

Make sure that the punctuation you use here fits with how you translate this rhetorical question. Alternate translation: [like outsiders and not family] or [as if we were foreigners instead of family]

For he sold us (ULT)

For example, he sold us {to you} (UST)

This sentence is an example of how Laban treated his daughters like foreigners. Alternate translation: [After all, he sold us to you]

---

and he has indeed completely eaten up (ULT)

and then he spent all (UST)

The phrase **eaten up** is used here as an idiom that means Laban had spent or kept for himself all the wealth he had gained from Jacob's 14 years of working for him. Many languages have a similar idiom that could be used here. Alternate translation: [and then he used up all]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

our silver (ULT)

the money that should have been ours (UST)

In that culture at that time, **silver** was a currency used to buy and sell things. Alternate translation: [the wealth that should have been ours] or [the money that belonged to us]

Support Reference: Biblical Money

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- {as} foreigners
- and he has … eaten up
- our silver

UST

- like strangers {and not family}
- and then he spent all

- the money that should have been ours

Genesis 31:16

ULT:
For all the wealth that God took from our father {belongs} to us and to our children. So now, do all that God has said to you."

UST:
In fact, all the wealth that God has taken from our father {rightfully} {belongs} to us and our children. So then, {you should} do everything that God has told you {to do}."

For all the wealth that God took from our father (ULT)

In fact, all the wealth that God has taken from our father (UST)

Alternate translation: [In fact, all the abundance of flocks that God has taken from our father] or [In reality, all the flocks that made our father wealthy and that God has taken from him]

{belongs} to us and to our children (ULT)

{rightfully} {belongs} to us and our children (UST)

Alternate translation: [actually belongs to us and our children] or [should have been given to us and our children anyway]

So now, do (ULT)

So then, {you should} do (UST)

The words **So now** introduce Rachel and Leah's conclusion that is based on what they just said. Do what is best in your language to communicate that. Alternate translation: [So go ahead and do] or [So we totally agree that you should do]

---

all that God has said to you (ULT)

everything that God has told you {to do} (UST)

Alternate translation: [everything God has commanded you to do] or [exactly what God told you to do]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- God

UST

- God
- God

Genesis 31:17

ULT:
So Jacob got up and put his sons and his wives on the camels.

UST:
So Jacob {quickly} got ready {for the journey} and helped his wives and his children {get up} onto some camels.

So Jacob got up (ULT)

So Jacob {quickly} got ready {for the journey} (UST)

See how you translated "get up" in verse 13. Alternate translation: [Then Jacob immediately got packed for the journey]

---

and put his sons and his wives on the camels (ULT)

and helped his wives and his children {get up} onto some camels (UST)

Jacob took all his children with him, not just his sons. Alternate translation: [and helped his wives and his sons mount up onto the camels]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Jacob
- the camels

UST
- Jacob
- some camels

Genesis 31:18

ULT:
Then he drove all his livestock and all his property that he had acquired, the livestock in his possession that he had acquired in Paddan Aram, to go to Isaac his father, to the land of Canaan.

UST:
Then he {started} herding {the camels and} all his {other} animals toward the region of Canaan where his father Isaac lived. {He took with him} all his possessions that he had accumulated, {including} all the livestock that he had acquired {while living} in {the region of} Paddan Aram.

Then he drove (ULT)

Then he {started} herding (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then he led] or [Then he started driving]

---

all his livestock and all his property that he had acquired, the livestock in his possession that he had acquired (ULT)

{the camels and} all his {other} animals … {He took with him} all his possessions that he had accumulated, {including} all the livestock that he had acquired (UST)

The word **livestock** is general here and includes all of Jacob's animals. Alternate translation: [the camels and all his other livestock and along with them, he also took all the other possessions that he had acquired]

---

in Paddan Aram (ULT)

{while living} in {the region of} Paddan Aram (UST)

Be consistent here with how you translated “the land/region of Paddan Aram” in Genesis 25:20. Alternate translation: [while living in the land of Paddan Aram]

---

to go to Isaac his father, to the land of Canaan (ULT)

toward the region of Canaan where his father Isaac lived (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause earlier in this verse and say, “Then he started driving/herding the camels and all his other animals to/toward the land/region of Canaan where his father Isaac lived. He took with him all his possessions that he had accumulated, including all the livestock that he had acquired/accumulated while living in the land/region of Paddan Aram.” Alternate translation: [to go to Canaan, to the home of his father Isaac] or [to the land of Canaan, where his father Isaac lived]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Aram
- his livestock
- the livestock in
- in Paddan
- to the land of
- Canaan

UST

- Aram
- his {other} animals
- {including} all the livestock
- {while living} in {the region of} Paddan
- toward the region of
- Canaan

Genesis 31:19

ULT:
Now Laban had gone to shear his sheep, so Rachel stole the idols that {belonged} to her father,

UST:
Now {before that,} Laban {the Aramean} had gone away {for several days} to shear his sheep. {While her father was gone,} Rachel {entered his tent and} stole his idols {that he worshiped}.

Now Laban (ULT)

Now {before that,} Laban {the Aramean} (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that the events in verse 19 happened before Jacob and his family had left. Also, for some languages it is more natural to first make "the Aramean" explicit here in verse 19 rather than wait until verse 20.

Support Reference: Background Information

---

had gone to shear his sheep (ULT)

had gone away {for several days} to shear his sheep (UST)

In that culture, sheep wool was very important since it was used to make clothing and blankets. The process of shearing many sheep would have taken several days. You could include some of this information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [had gone away for several days to cut the wool off his sheep]

---

so Rachel stole (ULT)

{While her father was gone,} Rachel {entered his tent and} stole (UST)

Alternate translation: [While he was gone, Rachel entered his tent and took]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

the idols that {belonged} to her father (ULT)

his idols {that he worshiped} (UST)

The author assumes that readers will know that these **idols** were statues made of wood or precious metals and were small enough to be used in a private home. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. In this chapter these statues are referred to as **idols** (in verses 19, 34, 35 when the author refers to them) and "gods" (in quotes in verses 30 and 32 when Laban or Jacob talk about them). If it is confusing in your language to switch back and forth between these two terms, you could use "gods" throughout this chapter, since Laban would not have called them idols, and Jacob would not have used that term in his presence. However, if possible, it is best to translate the two terms the way the Hebrew text has them. Alternate translation: [his family gods] or [the gods that he had]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Now Laban
- his sheep
- Rachel
- the idols

UST

- Now {before that,} Laban {the Aramean}
- his sheep
- Rachel
- his idols

Genesis 31:20

ULT:
and Jacob stole the heart of Laban the Aramean by not informing him that he was fleeing.

UST:
At the same time, Jacob {also} deceived Laban by fleeing {secretly} without telling him that he was leaving.

and Jacob stole the heart of (ULT)

At the same time, Jacob {also} deceived (UST)

Alternate translation: [and Jacob tricked] or [At the same time, Jacob tricked]

Support Reference: Idiom

Laban the Aramean (ULT)

Laban (UST)

If you used **Aramean** earlier (verse 19), it may not be natural here. Also, see how you translated this phrase in Genesis 25:20.

---

by not informing him that he was fleeing (ULT)

by fleeing {secretly} without telling him that he was leaving (UST)

Alternate translation: [by not telling him that he was fleeing] or [by leaving secretly without informing him that he was leaving]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- Laban
- the Aramean
- informing

UST

- At the same time, Jacob {also} deceived
- Laban
- Laban
- telling

Genesis 31:21

ULT:
And he fled and all that {belonged} to him. And he got up and crossed the River and set his face {toward} the mountain{s} of Gilead.

UST:
So {in that way} Jacob ran away {with his family} and {took} everything that they owned. They quickly crossed the {Euphrates} River and headed toward the hill country of Gilead.

And he fled (ULT)

So {in that way} Jacob ran away {with his family} (UST)

This statement summarizes an event that already happened (See verses 18 and 20). Make sure your translation of this verse does not sound like Jacob left a second time. To make this clear you could say, "After Jacob and his family ran away with everything that they owned, they quickly crossed the Euphrates River and headed toward the hill country of Gilead." Alternate translation: [So Jacob and his family ran away]

---

and all (ULT)

and {took} everything (UST)

Alternate translation: [with all] or [and took all]

---

that {belonged} to him (ULT)

that they owned (UST)

Make sure that your choice of pronouns throughout this verse fits with how you translate the beginning of this sentence. Alternate translation: [that belonged to them] or [that he had]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

And he got up and crossed the River (ULT)

They quickly crossed the {Euphrates} River (UST)

The Euphrates River was also called **the River** because it was large and well-known. It was about 50 miles (80 kilometers) from Haran, where Laban lived. This information could be put in a footnote. Alternate translation: [He quickly crossed the Euphrates River]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and set his face {toward} (ULT)

and headed toward (UST)

Alternate translation: [and went in the direction of]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

the mountain{s} of Gilead (ULT)

the hill country of Gilead (UST)

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could refer to: (1) mountains or hill country; or (2) a specific mountain (“Mount Gilead”). Alternate translation: [the mountain region called Gilead] or [the hill country called Gilead]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Gilead

UST
- Gilead

Genesis 31:22

ULT:
And on the third day it was told to Laban that Jacob had fled.

UST:
Three days later someone informed Laban that Jacob had run away.

And on the third day it was told to Laban (ULT)

Three days later someone informed Laban (UST)

Alternate translation: [Three days after they had left, someone informed Laban] or [Three days later Laban found out]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

that Jacob had fled (ULT)

that Jacob had run away (UST)

See how you translated "fleeing" and **fled** in verses 20–21. Alternate translation: [that Jacob and his family had run away]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- And … it was told
- to Laban
- on … day
- Jacob

UST
- someone informed
- Laban
- Three days later
- Jacob

Genesis 31:23

ULT:
So he took his relatives with him and pursued after him a seven-day journey and overtook him in the mountain{s} of Gilead.

UST:
So Laban took {some of} his relatives with him and chased after Jacob {and his family} for seven days until they overtook him in the hill country of Gilead.

So he took his relatives with him (ULT)

So Laban took {some of} his relatives with him (UST)

Alternate translation: [So Laban gathered some of his relatives]

---

and pursued after him a seven-day journey (ULT)

and chased after Jacob {and his family} for seven days (UST)

Alternate translation: [and followed after Jacob and his household for seven days]

---

and overtook him (ULT)

until they overtook him (UST)

Alternate translation: [until they overtook them] or [until they caught up with him]

---

in the mountain{s} of Gilead (ULT)

in the hill country of Gilead (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 21. Alternate translation: [in the mountain region called Gilead] or [in the hill country called Gilead]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- day
- Gilead

UST

- days
- Gilead

Genesis 31:24

ULT:
But God came to Laban the Aramean in a dream that night and said to him, "Watch yourself that you do not speak with Jacob either good or bad."

UST:
But that night God appeared to Laban in a dream and warned him, "Be sure that you do not threaten Jacob in any way."

But God came to Laban the Aramean in a dream that night (ULT)

But that night God appeared to Laban in a dream (UST)

See how you translated a similar clause in Genesis 20:3. Also see how you translated **Laban the Aramean** in verse 20. Alternate translation: [Then that same night God appeared to Laban in a dream] or [That night Laban had a dream and in it God appeared to him]

Watch yourself that you do not speak with Jacob either good or bad (ULT)

Be sure that you do not threaten Jacob in any way (UST)

God is warning Laban not to say or do anything that would harm Jacob (See verse 29). Alternate translation: [Be careful that you do not say or do anything to Jacob to try to stop him from leaving] or [Be sure that you do not harm Jacob in any way]

Support Reference: Merism

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- Laban
- the Aramean
- in a dream
- Watch
- Jacob
- either good
- bad

UST

- God
- Laban
- Laban
- in a dream
- Be sure
- Jacob
- in any way
- in any way

Genesis 31:25

ULT:
And Laban overtook Jacob, and Jacob had pitched his tent{s} in the mountain{s}, so Laban with his relatives pitched {theirs} in the mountain{s} of Gilead.

UST:
{By the time that} Laban caught up with Jacob, Jacob had {already} set up his tents in the hill country {of Gilead}, so Laban and his relatives {also} set up camp there {at a place nearby}.

And Laban overtook Jacob (ULT)

{By the time that} Laban caught up with Jacob (UST)

Make sure that the way you translate this clause does not sound like Laban overtook Jacob a second time. This is referring to what already happened in verse 23. See how you translated **overtook** there. Alternate translation: [So when Laban overtook Jacob]

Support Reference: Background Information

---

and Jacob had pitched his tent{s} (ULT)

Jacob had {already} set up his tents (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Jacob had already pitched his tents before Laban arrived. Also see how you translated "pitched his tent" in Genesis 12:8 and 26:25. Alternate translation: [Jacob and his family had already put up his tents] or [Jacob and his family had already set up camp]

Support Reference: Background Information

---

in the mountain{s} (ULT)

in the hill country {of Gilead} (UST)

For some languages it is clearer and more natural to make **Gilead** explicit here (rather than later in this verse). Also see how you translated **mountains of Gilead** in verses 21 and 23. Alternate translation: [in the mountain region of Gilead]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

so Laban with his relatives (ULT)

so Laban and his relatives (UST)

Alternate translation: [so Laban and all his relatives that were with him]

---

pitched {theirs} (ULT)

{also} set up camp (UST)

Alternate translation: [also put up their tents] or [also camped]

---

in the mountain{s} of Gilead (ULT)

there {at a place nearby} (UST)

If you made **Gilead** explicit earlier in this verse in your translation, it may not be necessary to repeat it here.

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And … overtook
- Laban
- Jacob
- and Jacob
- his tent{s}
- so Laban
- Gilead

UST

- By the time that … caught up with
- Laban
- Jacob
- Jacob
- his tents
- so Laban
- there {at a place nearby}

Genesis 31:26

ULT:
Then Laban said to Jacob, "What have you done? And you have stolen my heart and carried away my daughters like captives of the sword!

UST:
Then {the next day} Laban {met with Jacob and} complained to him, "Look what you have done! You have deceived me and dragged away my daughters like prisoners of war!

Then Laban said to Jacob (ULT)

Then {the next day} Laban {met with Jacob and} complained to him (UST)

See how you translated a similar quote margin in 29:25, when the roles were reversed and Jacob confronted Laban. Alternate translation: [Then the next day Laban came to Jacob and complained to Jacob] or [The next day Laban met with Jacob and rebuked Jacob and said to him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

What have you done (ULT)

Look what you have done (UST)

Laban uses a rhetorical question here to express his anger at Jacob. Do what is best in your language to communicate that. Alternate translation: [Why have you done this?] or [What you have done is wrong!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

And you have stolen my heart (ULT)

You have deceived me (UST)

See how you translated the idiom “stole the heart of” in verse 20. Alternate translation: [You have tricked me] or [You have acted deceitfully toward me]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and carried away my daughters (ULT)

and dragged away my daughters (UST)

Laban uses exaggeration to show he is angry and to try to make Jacob feel guilty for what he did. Alternate translation: [and dragged away my daughters with you] or [and forced my daughters to leave with you]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

---

like captives of the sword (ULT)

like prisoners of war (UST)

Alternate translation: [as if you had captured them in battle!]

Support Reference: Simile

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Laban
- to Jacob
- like captives of
- the sword

UST

- Laban

- to him
- like prisoners of
- war

Genesis 31:27

ULT:
Why did you secretly flee and deceive me and not tell me? For I would have sent you with joy and with songs, with tambourine{s} and with lyre{s}!

UST:
You should not have deceived me and secretly run away! You should have told me {you were leaving}! {If I had known,} we could have {held a feast and} sung joyful songs {and danced} together, with tambourines and lyres playing, before sending you {on your way}.

Why did you secretly flee and deceive me (ULT)

You should not have deceived me and secretly run away (UST)

Alternate translation: [Why did you trick me and secretly run away] or [Why did you deceive me by secretly running away]

---

and not tell me (ULT)

You should have told me {you were leaving} (UST)

Verse 27 is one long rhetorical question in the Hebrew text that expresses Laban's anger at Jacob. For some languages it is better to break it up into two or more sentences. Do what is best in your language, and make sure that the punctuation fits well. Alternate translation: [without telling me you were leaving!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

For I would have sent you with joy and with songs (ULT)

{If I had known,} we could have {held a feast and} sung joyful songs {and danced} together … before sending you {on your way} (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that the events in this clause are contrary-to-fact (hypothetical). Alternate translation: [If I had known, I would have held a feast and sent you on

your way, singing joyful songs together] or [If I had known, I could have sent you on your way by having a feast and singing joyful songs together]

Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

---

with tambourine{s} and with lyre{s} (ULT)

with tambourines and lyres playing (UST)

For some languages it may be better to change the order of the phrases in this sentence and say, “If I had known, we could have held a feast and sung joyful songs and danced together, with tambourines and lyres playing, before sending you on your way.” Also, see how you translated “lyres/harps” in Genesis 4:21. Alternate translation: [with tambourines and harps playing!] or [with the music of musical instruments!]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- tell
- with joy
- and with lyre{s}

UST

- You should have told me {you were leaving}
- {If I had known,} we could have {held a feast and} sung joyful songs {and danced} together
- and lyres playing

Genesis 31:28

ULT:
And you did not let me kiss my grandchildren and my daughters! Now you have acted foolishly by doing {that}!

UST:
You did not {even} let me kiss my daughters and my grandchildren {before they left}! What you have done is foolish!

And you did not let me kiss my grandchildren and my daughters (ULT)

You did not {even} let me kiss my daughters and my grandchildren {before they left} (UST)

For some languages, it may be more natural to mention the daughters before the children. Also see how you translated **kiss** in Genesis 27:26–27. Alternate translation: [You did not even let me kiss my daughters and my grandchildren goodbye before they left!]

Support Reference: Information Structure

Now you have acted foolishly by doing {that} (ULT)

What you have done is foolish (UST)

Alternate translation: [What you have done is very stupid!] or [You acted foolishly when you left secretly like that!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- kiss
- you have acted foolishly

UST
- kiss
- What you have done is foolish

Genesis 31:29

ULT:
It is in the power of my hand to do harm to you, but last night the God of your father said to me, saying, 'Keep yourself from speaking with Jacob either good or bad.'

UST:
I have the power to harm {all of} you, but last night {in a dream} the God whom your father serves warned me not to threaten you in any way.

It is in the power of my hand to do harm to you (ULT)

I have the power to harm {all of} you (UST)

The pronoun **you** is plural here, so it probably refers to Jacob and everyone in his household. Alternate translation: [I and my men have the ability to harm all of you]

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

---

but last night the God of your father (ULT)

but last night {in a dream} the God whom your father serves (UST)

For some languages it may be more natural to put this time phrase later and say "… said to me in a dream last night." See how you translated a similar phrase ("the God of my father") in verse 5.

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

said to me, saying, ‘Keep yourself from speaking with Jacob either good or bad (ULT)

warned me not to threaten you in any way (UST)

For some languages it is necessary to make this embedded quote an indirect quote. Also see how you translated a similar quote in verse 24. Alternate translation: [warned me to not harm you in any way]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- harm
- but … the God of
- Keep
- Jacob
- either good
- bad

UST

- to harm {all of} you
- but … the God whom your father serves
- not to threaten you
- not to threaten you
- in any way
- in any way

Genesis 31:30

ULT:
So now, you have surely gone because you greatly long for the house of your father. Why did you steal my gods?”

UST:
Now then, {I understand that} you left because you were so homesick to return to your father’s family, {but} why did you steal my gods?”

So now, you have surely gone (ULT)

Now then, {I understand that} you left (UST)

Begin this verse in a way which shows that Laban is introducing a new topic. Also notice that **you** shifts to singular here in verse 30. Alternate translation: [Now then, I know that you left] or [Now, I know that you ran away]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

---

because you greatly long (ULT)

because you were so homesick (UST)

Alternate translation: [because you longed so much] or [because you were very homesick]

---

for the house of your father (ULT)

to return to your father’s family (UST)

This phrase refers to the people in Jacob’s father’s household and other relatives living nearby. Alternate translation: [to return home to your father and other relatives]

Support Reference: Metonymy

Why did you steal my gods (ULT)

{but} why did you steal my gods (UST)

Alternate translation: [but what is the reason that you stole my gods?]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- for the house of
- my gods

UST

- to return to … s family
- my gods

Genesis 31:31

ULT:
Then Jacob answered and said to Laban, "Because I was afraid, because I said that perhaps you would seize your daughters from me.

UST:
Jacob answered Laban, "{We left secretly} because I was afraid. I thought that {if I told you we were leaving,} you might take your {two} daughters from me {by force}.

Then Jacob answered and said to Laban (ULT)

Jacob answered Laban (UST)

Alternate translation: [Jacob answered him] or [Then Jacob told Laban]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Because I was afraid (ULT)

{We left secretly} because I was afraid (UST)

Make sure it is clear here in your translation that Jacob is answering Laban's question in verse 27, not his question in verse 30.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

that perhaps you would seize your daughters from me (ULT)

you might take your {two} daughters from me {by force} (UST)

Make sure you translate this sentence in a way that shows it is hypothetical. Also see how you translated "seized" in Genesis 21:25.

Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- to Laban
- I was afraid
- you would seize

UST

- Jacob
- Laban
- I was afraid
- you might take … by force

Genesis 31:32

ULT:
Whomever you find your gods with will not live! In front of our relatives, observe for yourself what {is} with me, and take {what belongs} to you.” Now Jacob did not know that Rachel had stolen them.

UST:
{However we did not take your gods. In fact,} if you find your gods with anyone {here}, that person will die {for stealing them}! {So} while our relatives are watching, {go ahead and} search {all} my belongings for yourself. {If you find} anything that is yours, take it.” {When Jacob said that,} he did not know that Rachel {was the one who} had stolen the idols.

Whomever you find your gods with (ULT)

However we did not take your gods. In fact,} if you find your gods with anyone {here} (UST)

See how you translated **gods** in verse 30. Alternate translation: [However we did not steal your gods. In fact, if you find your gods with anyone here]

---

will not live (ULT)

that person will die {for stealing them} (UST)

Alternate translation: [that person will be put to death as punishment for stealing them!]

In front of our relatives (ULT)

{So} while our relatives are watching (UST)

Make sure your translation of this phrase refers to both Jacob’s and Laban’s relatives. Alternate translation: [So with our relatives as witnesses]

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’

---

observe for yourself what {is} with me (ULT)

{go ahead and} search {all} my belongings for yourself (UST)

Alternate translation: [search for yourself what I have with me here]

---

and take {what belongs} to you (ULT)

{If you find} anything that is yours, take it (UST)

Alternate translation: [and take whatever you find that is yours]

Now Jacob did not know that Rachel had stolen them (ULT)

{When Jacob said that,} he did not know that Rachel {was the one who} had stolen the idols (UST)

Translate this background information in a way that is clear and natural in your language. Also see how you translated “stole” in verses 19 and 30.

Support Reference: Background Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- your gods
- did … know
- Jacob
- Rachel

UST

- your gods
- {When Jacob said that,} he did not know
- {When Jacob said that,} he did not know
- Rachel {was the one who}

Genesis 31:33

ULT:
Then Laban went into the tent of Jacob and into the tent of Leah and into the tent of the two slave women, but he did not find {anything}. Then he came out of Leah's tent and went into Rachel's tent.

UST:
So Laban started searching in Jacob's tent. Then {he searched} through Leah's tent and through the two servant women's tent, but he did not find {anything} {that belonged to him}. Next after he left those tents, he went into Rachel's tent.

Then Laban went into the tent of Jacob (ULT)

So Laban started searching in Jacob's tent (UST)

See how you translated **tent** in verse 25.

---

and into the tent of the two slave women (ULT)

and through the two servant women's tent (UST)

Consider again how you translated "slave/servant woman" in the book of Genesis. See 20:17; 21:10, 12–13; 30:3; 31:33. Alternate translation: [and in the tent where the two maidservants lived]

---

but he did not find {anything} (ULT)

but he did not find {anything} {that belonged to him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [but he did not find his gods]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Laban
- into the tent of
- Jacob
- and into the tent of
- Leah
- and into the tent of
- the … slave women
- of … s tent
- Leah
- into … s tent
- Rachel

UST

- Laban
- in … s tent
- Jacob
- Then {he searched} through … s tent
- Leah
- and through … s tent
- the … servant women
- tents
- those
- into … s tent
- Rachel

Genesis 31:34

ULT:
Now Rachel had taken the idols and put them inside the camel's saddle and was sitting on them. And Laban felt throughout the entire tent, but he did not find {them}.

UST:
Now Rachel had hidden the idols inside {her} camel saddlebag, and she was sitting on them. So although Laban searched through everything {else} in the tent, he could not find them.

Now Rachel had taken the idols and put them inside the camel's saddle (ULT)

Now Rachel had hidden the idols inside {her} camel saddlebag (UST)

This kind of saddle was used as a seat and also had compartments or bags for carrying things. Make sure it is clear in your translation that Rachel had hidden the idols before Laban entered her tent. Also see how you translated **idols** in verse 19. Alternate translation: [But Rachel had put the idols inside her camel saddlebag to hide them]

Support Reference: Background Information

---

and was sitting on them (ULT)

and she was sitting on them (UST)

Alternate translation: [and she was sitting on the gods]

And Laban felt throughout the entire tent (ULT)

So although Laban searched through everything {else} in the tent (UST)

Alternate translation: [Laban rummaged through everything else in the tent, but] or [So when Laban searched everywhere else in her tent]

---

but he did not find {them} (ULT)

he could not find them (UST)

For some languages, it may be better to change the order of the clauses in this sentence and say, “So Laban was not able to find them, even though he searched her tent thoroughly.” Alternate translation: [he could not find anything] or [he did not find his idols]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Now Rachel
- the idols
- camel
- Laban
- the … tent

UST

- Now Rachel
- had hidden the idols
- camel
- Laban
- in the tent

Genesis 31:35

ULT:
And she said to her father, "Do not let it burn in the eyes of my lord that I am not able to stand up in your presence, because the way of women {is} on me." So he searched, but he did not find the idols.

UST:
{As he was searching,} Rachel said to him, "Sir, {please} do not be upset that I am not able to get up to greet you, because it's that time of the month {when I feel weak}." {That is also why} he could not find {his} idols when he searched {her tent}.

And she said to her father (ULT)

{As he was searching,} Rachel said to him (UST)

Alternate translation: [Rather Rachel had said to him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Do not let it burn in the eyes of my lord (ULT)

Sir, {please} do not be upset (UST)

Make sure you translate **my lord** in a way that is appropriate for a daughter to show respect to her father. It should not sound like she was Laban's slave or servant. Alternate translation: [Sir, please do not let it anger you]

Support Reference: Politeness

Do not let it burn in the eyes of my lord (ULT)

Sir, {please} do not be upset (UST)

The phrase **burn in the eyes** is a common expression of his culture that means that her father is displeased. If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, use a comparable

expression from your language that does have that meaning or state the meaning plainly. See how you translated this idiom in Genesis 30:2. Alternate translation: [Please do not be angry at me, sir] or [Sir, please do not be angry with me]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

that I am not able to stand up in your presence (ULT)

that I am not able to get up to greet you (UST)

Alternate translation: [that I am not able to stand up to greet you]

---

because the way of women {is} on me (ULT)

because it's that time of the month {when I feel weak} (UST)

Translate this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people when this is read aloud in public. Alternate translation: [because it is that time of the month when I feel weak] or [because I am having my monthly cycle]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- my lord
- So he searched
- the idols

UST

- Sir
- when he searched {her tent}
- {his} idols

Genesis 31:36

ULT:
Then it burned within Jacob, and he disputed with Laban, and Jacob responded and said to Laban, "What {is} my crime? What {is} my sin, that you have hotly pursued after me?

UST:
Then Jacob became {very} angry {at Laban} and confronted him by saying to him, "Tell me my crime! Tell me what sin I have done {against you} that gives you the right to chase after me!

Then it burned within Jacob (ULT)

Then Jacob became {very} angry {at Laban} (UST)

See how you translated the idiom "burn" in verse 35.

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and he disputed with Laban, and Jacob responded and said to Laban (ULT)

and confronted him by saying to him (UST)

Alternate translation: [and contended with him and said] or [and rebuked him by saying to him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

What {is} my crime (ULT)

Tell me my crime (UST)

Jacob's rhetorical questions in this verse show that he was angry at Laban. Do what is best in your language to communicate his anger. Alternate translation: [Tell me what crime I have done]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

What {is} my sin, that you have hotly pursued after me (ULT)

Tell me what sin I have done {against you} that gives you the right to chase after me (UST)

Alternate translation: [How have I sinned against you so that you have a reason to pursue me so intensely] or [Tell me what sin I have committed against you that gives you the right to pursue after me!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- within Jacob
- with Laban
- Jacob
- to Laban
- {is} my crime
- {is} my sin

UST

- Then Jacob became {very} angry {at Laban}
- and confronted him
- יַעֲקֹב (ORIG QUOTE)
- to him
- Tell me my crime
- Tell me what sin I have done {against you}

Genesis 31:37

ULT:
Since you have felt through all my things, what have you found from any of the things of your house? Put {it} here in front of my relatives and your relatives, and let them judge between the two of us!

UST:
Now that you have searched through all my things, did you find anything {that anyone took} from your household? {If so,} put {it} here in front of our relatives, so that they can decide which one of us is right!

Since you have felt through all my things (ULT)

Now that you have searched through all my things (UST)

See how you translated **felt through** in verse 34. Alternate translation: [Now that you have felt through all my things]

---

what have you found from any of the things of your house? Put {it} here (ULT)

did you find anything {that anyone took} from your household? {If so,} put {it} here (UST)

Alternate translation: [did you find anything that anyone took from your household? If so, bring it here] or [show us what you have found that belongs to you! If you found anything, put it here]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

in front of my relatives and your relatives (ULT)

in front of our relatives (UST)

Alternate translation: [where all our relatives can see it]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- your house

UST

- anything {that anyone took} from your household

Genesis 31:38

ULT:
These twenty years I {have been} with you! Your ewes and your she-goats did not miscarry, and I have not eaten rams from your flocks.

UST:
For twenty years I {have worked} for you! {During all that time} your sheep and your goats had no trouble bearing young, and I have never {killed and} eaten {any} animals from your flocks.

These twenty years I {have been} with you (ULT)

For twenty years I {have worked} for you (UST)

Alternate translation: [For the past twenty years I have worked for you!]

Your ewes and your she-goats (ULT)

{During all that time} your sheep and your goats (UST)

Alternate translation: [During those years your female sheep and goats]

---

did not miscarry (ULT)

had no trouble bearing young (UST)

Alternate translation: [bore their young without any problems]

---

and I have not eaten rams from your flocks (ULT)

and I have never {killed and} eaten {any} animals from your flocks (UST)

Make sure your translation does not sound here like Jacob is talking about eating animals while they are still alive; the animals would be killed and cooked first. Alternate translation: [and I have never killed and eaten any rams from your flocks] or [and I never took any animals from your flocks to eat]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- years
- Your ewes
- and your she-goats
- and … rams from
- your flocks

UST

- years
- {During all that time} your sheep
- and your goats
- and … {any} animals from your flocks
- and … {any} animals from your flocks

Genesis 31:39

ULT:
I did not bring torn {animals} to you; I bore the loss of it myself. You required it from my hand, {those} stolen by day and {those} stolen by night.

UST:
Whenever wild animals killed {any of} your animals, I never brought {the dead animal} to you {to prove I was innocent}. {Rather,} I replaced them at my own expense. {Besides that,} you required me to pay for {any} animals {that anyone ever} stole {at any time of} day or night.

I bore the loss of it myself (ULT)

{Rather,} I replaced them at my own expense (UST)

Normally it was the owner of the flocks (not the shepherds) who took care of the expense when an animal was killed or stolen. You could put that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [Rather I paid for that loss myself] or [Rather I replaced them at my own expense]

You required it from my hand (ULT)

{Besides that,} you required me to pay for (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this idiom in your language. Alternate translation: [You also made me pay for]

Support Reference: Idiom

{those} stolen by day and {those} stolen by night (ULT)

{any} animals {that anyone ever} stole {at any time of} day or night (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Alternate translation: [any animals that got stolen by thieves, whether it happened in the day or at night]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- You required it
- day

UST

- you required
- {any} animals {that anyone ever} stole {at any time of} day or night

---

Genesis 31:40

ULT:
There I was: In the day, heat devoured me, and in the night the frost, so that my sleep fled from my eyes.

UST:
That was my situation! During the days, I suffered from the hot sun, and during the nights it was so cold that I could not sleep.

There I was (ULT)

That was my situation (UST)

Alternate translation: [That is how it was for me!] or [That was my life]

In the day, heat devoured me (ULT)

During the days, I suffered from the hot sun (UST)

Consider whether or not you can talk about heat and frost in your language as if they could harm Jacob the way a person could harm him. Alternate translation: [During the day the heat of the sun pounded me]

Support Reference: Personification

---

and in the night the frost, so that … fled (ULT)

and during the nights it was so cold that I could not sleep (UST)

Alternate translation: [and at night I suffered from the cold, so that I could hardly sleep] or [and during the nights it was so cold that I could hardly sleep]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- In the day

UST

- During the days

Genesis 31:41

ULT:
That {is how it was} for me twenty years in your house. I served you fourteen years for your two daughters, and six years for your flock{s}, and you changed my wages ten times.

UST:
{It was like} that for me {during the entire} twenty years that I was with you. I worked for you for fourteen years in order to marry your two daughters, and {I worked} {another} six years to earn flocks {of animals} from you, even though you changed my pay ten times.

That {is how it was} for me (ULT)

{It was like} that for me (UST)

Alternate translation: [That is what it was like for me]

---

twenty years in your house (ULT)

{during the entire} twenty years that I was with you (UST)

Alternate translation: [for the twenty years that I worked for you]

I served you fourteen years for your two daughters (ULT)

I worked for you for fourteen years in order to marry your two daughters (UST)

Alternate translation: [For fourteen years I worked for you in exchange for marrying your two daughters]

---

and six years for your flock{s} (ULT)

and {I worked} {another} six years to earn flocks {of animals} from you (UST)

Alternate translation: [and for six more years I worked for you to earn flocks of sheep and goats from you]

---

and you changed my wages ten times (ULT)

even though you changed my pay ten times (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 7. Alternate translation: [even though you changed my wages ten times] or [even though ten times you changed what you said you would pay me]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- years
- in your house
- I served you
- years
- years
- for your flock{s}

UST

- years
- that I was with you
- I worked for you
- years
- years
- to earn flocks {of animals} from you

Genesis 31:42

ULT:
If the God of my father, the God of Abraham and the Fear of Isaac, had not been with me, surely now you would have sent me away empty-handed. God has seen my affliction and the toil of my palms, and he judged {you} last night."

UST:
If God, whom my ancestors Abraham and Isaac serve and revere, had not been with me {to take care of me}, there is no doubt that I would now be leaving {here} with {absolutely} nothing. {But} God knows how {much} you have mistreated me and how hard I have worked {for you}, so last night he rebuked {you}."

If the God of my father, the God of Abraham and the Fear of Isaac, had not been with me (ULT)

If God, whom my ancestors Abraham and Isaac serve and revere, had not been with me {to take care of me} (UST)

The phrase **the Fear of Isaac** is a title for God that could mean: (1) "the God whom Isaac fears." Alternate translation: [If God, the Awesome One, whom my father Isaac and grandfather Abraham serve had not been with me]; (2) "Isaac's God, of whom others are terrified." The interpretation that is not used in your translation could be put in a footnote. Make sure it is clear in your translation that Jacob is only talking about one God in this verse, not two or three. Also notice that **my father** and **Isaac** both refer to Jacob's father Isaac, not two different people.

If … had not been with me (ULT)

If … had not been with me {to take care of me} (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that the events in this sentence are contrary-to-fact (hypothetical) and imply that God actually had been with Jacob, so that Laban did not send him away empty-handed. Alternate translation: [had not been with me protecting me and guiding me]

Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

---

surely now you would have sent me away (ULT)

there is no doubt that I would now be leaving {here} (UST)

Alternate translation: [you would certainly be sending me away now] or [there is no question that I would now be leaving here]

---

empty-handed (ULT)

with {absolutely} nothing (UST)

Alternate translation: [without anything at all]

God has seen my affliction (ULT)

{But} God knows how {much} you have mistreated me (UST)

Alternate translation: [But God knows how much I have suffered under you] or [But God knows how much you have oppressed me]

---

and the toil of my palms (ULT)

and how hard I have worked {for you} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and the hard work I did with my hands for you]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the God of

- the God of
- Abraham
- and the Fear of
- Isaac
- my affliction
- God
- and he judged {you}

UST

- God, whom my ancestors Abraham and Isaac serve and revere
- God, whom my ancestors Abraham and Isaac serve and revere
- God, whom my ancestors Abraham and Isaac serve and revere
- God, whom my ancestors Abraham and Isaac serve and revere
- God, whom my ancestors Abraham and Isaac serve and revere
- how {much} you have mistreated me
- God
- so … he rebuked {you}

Genesis 31:43

ULT:
And Laban responded and said to Jacob, "The daughters {are} my daughters, and the children {are} my grandchildren, and the flock{s} {are} my flock{s}. And everything that you see {belongs} to me! But what can I do today about these daughters of mine or about their children whom they have born?

UST:
Then Laban responded to Jacob, "These women {are} my daughters, and their children {are} my grandchildren, and these flock{s} {are} {also} mine. In fact, all that you see {here} is mine! But there is nothing I can do today to keep my daughters or their children near me {any longer}!

And Laban responded and said to Jacob (ULT)

Then Laban responded to Jacob (UST)

Alternate translation: [Laban replied to Jacob]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

The daughters {are} my daughters, and the children {are} my grandchildren (ULT)

These women {are} my daughters, and their children {are} my grandchildren (UST)

Alternate translation: [These are my daughters and my grandchildren]

---

and the flock{s} {are} my flock{s} (ULT)

and these flock{s} {are} {also} mine (UST)

Alternate translation: [and these flocks also belong to me]

And everything that you see {belongs} to me (ULT)

In fact, all that you see {here} is mine (UST)

Laban is lying or exaggerating here to make it sound like he was wronged, when actually he is the one who was dishonest in his dealings with Jacob. Alternate translation: [In fact, everything that you see here is mine!] or [Yes, everything that is here with you is actually mine!]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

But what can I do today about these daughters of mine or about their children whom they have born (ULT)

But there is nothing I can do today to keep my daughters or their children near me {any longer} (UST)

Laban uses this rhetorical question to express his emotions and emphasize that there is nothing that he can do. Consider whether or not a rhetorical question fits well here in your language. Alternate translation: [But there is nothing I can do now to keep my daughters and grandchildren from leaving!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Laban
- Jacob
- and the flock{s}
- are} my flock{s}
- today
- they have born

UST

- Laban
- Jacob
- and these flock{s}
- {are} {also} mine
- today
- יָלְדוּ (ORIG QUOTE)

Genesis 31:44

ULT:
So now, come, let us cut a covenant, I and you, and let it be a witness between me and you.”

UST:
So then, you and I should make a {peace} treaty {with each other}, and there should be something to remind us {to keep that treaty}.”

So now, come, let us cut a covenant, I and you (ULT)

So then, you and I should make a {peace} treaty {with each other} (UST)

For some languages it may be more natural to put **I** and **you** earlier in the sentence. Also see how you translated **So now** in verse 16 and **cut a covenant** in Genesis 26:28. Alternate translation: [So then, you and I should make a peace covenant with each other] or [So I invite you to make a covenant with me]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

and let it be (ULT)

and there should be (UST)

The subject of the Hebrew verb in this phrase is masculine singular, so **it** cannot refer to **covenant**, which is feminine singular. It is probably best to translate this phrase in a general way. Alternate translation: [and let there be]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

a witness between me and you (ULT)

something to remind us {to keep that treaty} (UST)

If your language has a dual pronoun for **us**, you could use it in this verse. Also, if your language distinguishes exclusive and inclusive pronouns, you could use the inclusive form of **us** here. Alternate translation: [a memorial to remind us of our covenant] or [something to remind us to keep that covenant]

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- a covenant
- a witness

UST

- a {peace} treaty
- something to remind us {to keep that treaty}

Genesis 31:45

ULT:
So Jacob took a stone and set it up {as} a pillar.

UST:
So Jacob picked out a {large} stone and set it up {on its end} {as} a monument {to mark the place where they made their treaty}.

So Jacob took a stone (ULT)

So Jacob picked out a {large} stone (UST)

See how you translated **stone** in Genesis 28:18.

---

and set it up {as} a pillar (ULT)

and set it up {on its end} {as} a monument {to mark the place where they made their treaty} (UST)

See how you translated **pillar** in verse 13 and **set it up as a pillar** in Genesis 28:18, 22.
Alternate translation: [and stood it up on its end as a monument to mark the place where they made their covenant] or [and set it up as a reminder stone to mark the place as special]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Jacob
- {as} a pillar

UST
- Jacob
- as} a monument {to mark the place where they made their treaty}

Genesis 31:46

ULT:
Then Jacob said to his relatives, "Gather stones." So they took stones and made a heap. Then they ate there by the heap.

UST:
Then he told his relatives, "Gather {some more} stones." So they {all} gathered stones and put them in a {large} pile. Then everyone ate {a meal together} there next to the pile {of stones}.

Then Jacob said to his relatives (ULT)

Then he told his relatives (UST)

These relatives would have included Jacob's sons, as well as Laban and his men who had come with him. See how you translated **relatives** in verses 23, 25, 32, 37. Alternate translation: [Then Jacob told his relatives]

Gather stones (ULT)

Gather {some more} stones (UST)

Make sure that your translation of Jacob's request sounds polite here, not rude or demanding, but also not begging. Alternate translation: [Please gather some stones]

Support Reference: Politeness

So they took stones and made a heap (ULT)

So they {all} gathered stones and put them in a {large} pile (UST)

Alternate translation: [So they all brought stones and put them in a large pile]

Then they ate there (ULT)

Then everyone ate {a meal together} there (UST)

Make sure your translation does not sound like Jacob ate without Laban and his men. Alternate translation: [Then they ate a meal together there]

---

by the heap (ULT)

next to the pile {of stones} (UST)

Alternate translation: [near the heap of stones] or [next to the mound of stones]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob

UST

- יַעֲקֹב (ORIG QUOTE)

Genesis 31:47

ULT:
And Laban called it Jegar Sahadutha, but Jacob called it Galeed.

UST:
Laban gave the pile the {Aramaic} name Jegar Sahadutha, {which means "pile that reminds,"} while Jacob gave it the {Hebrew} name Galeed, {which has the same meaning}.

And Laban called it (ULT)

Laban gave the pile the {Aramaic} name (UST)

Alternate translation: [Laban gave the heap the Aramaic name]

Jegar Sahadutha (ULT)

Jegar Sahadutha, {which means "pile that reminds … } (UST)

If the meaning of **Jegar Sahadutha** and **Galeed** is included in your translation or in a footnote, be sure that it fits with how you translate "heap/pile/mound" in verses 46 and 48, and "witness" in verse 48.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

but Jacob called it Galeed (ULT)

while Jacob gave it the {Hebrew} name Galeed, {which has the same meaning} (UST)

Alternate translation: [whereas Jacob gave it the Hebrew name Galeed, which has the same meaning]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And … called
- Laban
- but … called
- Jacob

UST

- gave the pile the {Aramaic} name
- Laban
- while Jacob
- gave it the {Hebrew} name

Genesis 31:48

ULT:
And Laban said, "This heap {is} a witness between me and you today." For that {reason} he called its name Galeed.

UST:
Laban said {to him}, "{Starting} today this pile {of stones} will remind you and me {about our peace treaty}." That is why the name of that place is Galeed.

And Laban said (ULT)

Laban said {to him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Laban said to Jacob] or [Laban said to Jacob]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

This heap {is} a witness between me and you today (ULT)

Starting} today this pile {of stones} will remind you and me {about our peace treaty} (UST)

Alternate translation: [This pile of stones is to remind us to keep our peace covenant] or [Starting today, when we see this mound of stones, we will remember our peace covenant]

For that {reason} (ULT)

That is why (UST)

Alternate translation: [That is the reason]

---

he called its name Galeed (ULT)

the name of that place is Galeed (UST)

The phrase **he called its name** is used here in a general way that means “they/people call it”; the pronoun **he** does not refer here to Laban. Make sure that is clear in your language.
Alternate translation: [they call it Galeed] or [that place is called Galeed]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Laban
- {is} a witness
- today
- he called

UST

- Laban
- will remind you and me {about our peace treaty}
- {Starting} today
- the name of that place is

Genesis 31:49

ULT:
{It is} also Mizpah, because he said, "May Yahweh watch between me and you when we are hidden one from the other.

UST:
{Another name for the place is} Mizpah, {which means "watchtower,"} because Laban said {to Jacob}, "May Yahweh watch both of us {to make sure that we keep our treaty} while we are apart from each other.

{It is} also Mizpah (ULT)

Another name for the place is} Mizpah, {which means "watchtower … } (UST)

Alternate translation: [It was also named Mizpah] or [People also call the place, Mizpah]

---

because he said (ULT)

because Laban said {to Jacob} (UST)

Make sure that your translation of **he** refers here to Laban.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

May Yahweh watch between me and you (ULT)

May Yahweh watch both of us (UST)

Alternate translation: [May Yahweh watch each of us] or [May Yahweh keep watch on us]

---

when we are hidden one from the other (ULT)

{to make sure that we keep our treaty} while we are apart from each other (UST)

The pronoun **we** is inclusive here and includes both Laban and Jacob. Some languages have a dual pronoun that fits here well. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [to make sure we keep our covenant while we are away from each other]

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- {It is} also Mizpah
- May … watch
- Yahweh
- from the other

UST

- Another name for the place is} Mizpah, {which means “watchtower … }
- May … watch
- Yahweh
- from each other

Genesis 31:50

ULT:
If you afflict my daughters, or if you take wives besides my daughters, {even though} there is not someone with us, behold, God {is} a witness between me and you."

UST:
If you treat my daughters badly, or if you marry {other} wives besides them, remember {that} {even if} no one {else} is watching us, God is {always} watching both of us {to hold us accountable}."

If you afflict my daughters (ULT)

If you treat my daughters badly (UST)

See how you translated **afflict** in Genesis 15:13 and 16:6, and how you translated a related word ("affliction") in verse 42. Alternate translation: [If you oppress my daughters]

---

or if you take wives besides my daughters (ULT)

or if you marry {other} wives besides them (UST)

Alternate translation: [or if you marry other women besides them]

{even though} there is not someone with us, behold (ULT)

remember {that} {even if} no one {else} is watching us (UST)

See how you translated the pronoun "we" in verse 49.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

God {is} a witness between me and you (ULT)

God is {always} watching both of us {to hold us accountable} (UST)

In his role as witness, God would also punish anyone who broke the covenant. You could make this information explicit in your translation or put it in a footnote. Alternate translation: [God always sees us and will punish us if we break our covenant]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- you afflict
- God
- {is} a witness

UST

- you treat … badly
- God
- is {always} watching both of us {to hold us accountable}

Genesis 31:51

ULT:
Then Laban said to Jacob, "Behold this heap, and behold the pillar which I set up between me and you.

UST:
Then Laban {also} said to Jacob, "Here is this pile {of stones}, and here is this monument which we stood up between us {to remind us about our peace treaty}.

Behold (ULT)

Here is (UST)

Alternate translation: [See] or [Look at]

---

this heap (ULT)

this pile {of stones} (UST)

See how you translated **heap** in verses 46 and 48. Alternate translation: [this mound of stones]

---

and behold (ULT)

and here is (UST)

Alternate translation: [and see] or [and look at]

---

the pillar (ULT)

this monument (UST)

See how you translated **pillar** in verse 45. Alternate translation: [this memorial stone]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Laban
- to Jacob
- the pillar

UST

- Laban
- to Jacob
- this monument

Genesis 31:52

ULT:
This heap {is} a witness and the pillar {is} a witness that I will not pass by this heap to you, and that you will not pass by this heap and this pillar to me, to do harm.

UST:
This pile {of stones} and this monument {both} remind us that I must never go past this pile {to attack you}, and that you must never go past this pile and this monument to attack me.

This heap {is} a witness and the pillar {is} a witness (ULT)

This pile {of stones} and this monument {both} remind us (UST)

See how you translated **witness** in verses 44 and 48. Alternate translation: [This heap of stones is a reminder and this pillar is also a witness] or [This mound of stones and this memorial both remind us]

---

that I will not pass by this heap to you (ULT)

that I must never go past this pile {to attack you} (UST)

Laban and Jacob could go to each other's homes in peace but not to harm each other. Alternate translation: [that I will never go past this heap to harm you]

---

and that you will not pass by this heap and this pillar to me, to do harm (ULT)

and that you must never go past this pile and this monument to attack me (UST)

Alternate translation: [and that you will never go past this pile and this memorial to harm me]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- {is} a witness
- and … {is} a witness
- the pillar
- pillar
- to do harm

UST

- {both} remind us
- and
- this monument
- monument
- to attack me

Genesis 31:53

ULT:
May the God of Abraham and the gods of Nahor, the gods of their father, judge between us!” Then Jacob swore by the Fear of his father Isaac,

UST:
May {your grandfather} Abraham’s God and {my grandfather} Nahor’s gods, {which were also} their father {Terah}’s gods, judge between us {and punish us if we break this agreement}!” But Jacob made a vow by the God whom his father Isaac revered {that he would keep their treaty},

the God of Abraham (ULT)

{your grandfather} Abraham’s God (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 28:13. Alternate translation: [May the God whom your grandfather Abraham served]

---

and the gods of Nahor, the gods of their father (ULT)

and {my grandfather} Nahor’s gods, {which were also} their father {Terah}’s gods (UST)

Abraham trusted in Yahweh, the one and only true God (Genesis 15:6). Terah worshiped other gods (Joshua 24:2), and so did Laban (verses 19, 30), which suggests that Nahor served the same gods that his father Terah served, and then taught his son Laban to do the same thing. In spite of that, many translations still capitalize **God** all three times here in verse 53. Be consistent with how you spelled **Nahor** in the book of Genesis. See 11:22–25, 29; 12:26–27; 22:20, 24, 28; 24:9, 15, 24, 47; 29:5; 31:53. Alternate translation: [and the gods that my grandfather Nahor and his father Terah worshiped]

Then Jacob swore (ULT)

But Jacob made a vow (UST)

Jacob refused to swear by the gods of Nahor and Terah. See how you translated **swore** in Genesis 26:31, and compare that to how you translated a related phrase ("vowed a vow") in 31:13. Alternate translation: [But Jacob swore] or [But Jacob vowed a vow]

---

by the Fear of his father Isaac (ULT)

by the God whom his father Isaac revered {that he would keep their treaty} (UST)

See how you translated "the Fear of Isaac" in verse 42. Alternate translation: [by the God whom his father Isaac feared that he would keep their treaty] or [with the Fear of his father Isaac as his witness]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the God of
- Abraham
- and the gods of
- Nahor
- May … judge
- Then … swore
- Jacob
- by the Fear of
- Isaac

UST

- s God
- {your grandfather} Abraham
- and … s gods
- {my grandfather} Nahor
- May … judge
- But … made a vow
- Jacob
- by the God whom … revered
- Isaac … that he would keep their treaty

Genesis 31:54

ULT:
and Jacob sacrificed a sacrifice on the mountain. Then he called his relatives to eat bread. Then they ate bread and spent the night on the mountain.

UST:
and he burned {the body of} an animal {on an altar} as a sacrifice {to God} on the mountain. Then he invited his relatives to eat a meal {together} {there}. So they {all} ate the meal {together} and spent the night there.

and Jacob sacrificed a sacrifice on the mountain (ULT)

and he burned {the body of} an animal {on an altar} as a sacrifice {to God} on the mountain (UST)

Make sure your translation does not sound like Jacob burned the animal while it was still alive. Also see how you translated **sacrificed** in Genesis 22:13. Alternate translation: [and he offered an animal sacrifice to God on an altar on a hill] or [and Jacob burned the body of an animal on an altar as a sacrifice to God on a hill]

Then he called his relatives to eat bread (ULT)

Then he invited his relatives to eat a meal {together} {there} (UST)

In the Bible, **bread** is often used as an idiom that refers to food in general. In this context, it was a meal that they shared together. Make sure that is clear in your translation.

Support Reference: Synecdoche

Then they ate bread and spent the night on the mountain (ULT)

So they {all} ate the meal {together} and spent the night there (UST)

As in Genesis 26:30, eating together was an important part of the covenant or treaty process, since it shows unity and close relationship, as if they were part of the same family. Some of

that information could be included in a footnote. Alternate translation: [Then after they had eaten the meal, they spent the night there on the hill]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and … sacrificed
- Jacob
- a sacrifice
- Then he called
- bread
- bread

UST

- and he burned {the body of} an animal {on an altar}
- יַעֲקֹב (ORIG QUOTE)
- as a sacrifice {to God}
- Then he invited
- a meal
- the meal

Genesis 31:55

ULT:
Then in the morning Laban got up early and kissed his grandchildren and his daughters, and he blessed them. Then Laban left and returned to his place.

UST:
Early the next morning Laban got up and kissed his grandchildren and his daughters {goodbye} {on the cheeks} and asked God to bless them. Then he {and his men} left {from there} and returned home.

Then in the morning Laban got up early (ULT)

Early the next morning Laban got up (UST)

See how you translated a similar clause in Genesis 28:18. Alternate translation: [The next morning Laban got up early]

---

and kissed his grandchildren and his daughters (ULT)

and kissed his grandchildren and his daughters {goodbye} {on the cheeks} (UST)

It was a Hebrew custom for relatives and close friends to greet each other with a kiss on each cheek. Only make this information explicit here if it is necessary to prevent wrong meaning. Alternate translation: [said goodbye to his daughters and grandchildren and kissed them on the cheeks]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

Then Laban left and returned to his place (ULT)

Then he {and his men} left {from there} and returned home (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Laban and his men left from there and returned home] or [Then he left from there with his men and went back home]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Laban
- and kissed
- and he blessed
- Laban

UST

- Laban
- and kissed … goodbye} {on the cheeks}
- and asked God to bless
- לָבָן (ORIG QUOTE)

Genesis 32

Genesis 32:1

ULT:
Then Jacob went on his way, and angels of God met him.

UST:
Meanwhile Jacob continued on his journey {toward home} {with his family}, and {some} angels from God met him.

Then Jacob went on his way (ULT)

Meanwhile Jacob continued on his journey {toward home} {with his family} (UST)

You can make implied information explicit in your translation if it is necessary to make the meaning accurate and clear. Alternate translation: [Meanwhile Jacob also left from there and continued on his journey home with his family]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and angels of God met him (ULT)

and {some} angels from God met him (UST)

Translate **met** in a way that allows for the fact that no conversation is recorded between the angels and Jacob and that the angels were probably not hostile; for example, they may have been sent by God to escort and protect him. Alternate translation: [and some angels from God encountered him]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Then Jacob
- angels of
- God

UST

- Meanwhile Jacob
- {some} angels from
- God

Genesis 32:2

ULT:
And when he saw them, Jacob said, "This {is} God's camp!" So he called the name of that place Mahanaim.

UST:
When Jacob saw the angels, he exclaimed, "This is God's army!" So he named that place Mahanaim, {which means "two armies."}

And when he saw them, Jacob said (ULT)

When Jacob saw the angels, he exclaimed (UST)

Make sure that you refer to Jacob and the angels here in a way that is accurate and natural in your language. Alternate translation: [When Jacob saw the angels, he said in surprise]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

So he called the name of that place Mahanaim (ULT)

So he named that place Mahanaim, {which means "two armies … } (UST)

If you include the meaning of the name **Mahanaim** in your translation or in a footnote, be sure it matches the way you translated **God's camp** earlier in the verse so that it is clear why Jacob gave the place that name. Also see how you translated **he called the name of that place** in Genesis 28:19.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Jacob
- God
- So he called

UST
- Jacob

- God
- So he named

Genesis 32:3

ULT:
Then Jacob sent messengers before him to Esau his brother to the land of Seir, the country of Edom.

UST:
Then Jacob sent {some} messengers ahead of him to his brother Esau {who was living} in the region of Seir, {which was also called} the country of Edom.

Then Jacob sent messengers before him (ULT)

Then Jacob sent {some} messengers ahead of him (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Jacob sent some of his servants ahead of him to deliver a message to his brother Esau]

---

to the land of Seir (ULT)

{who was living} in the region of Seir (UST)

Alternate translation: [who was living in the land of Seir]

---

the country of Edom (ULT)

{which was also called} the country of Edom (UST)

Alternate translation: [that is, the land of Edom] or [which was also called the land of Edom]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- messengers
- Esau

- to the land of
- Edom

UST

- Jacob
- {some} messengers
- Esau
- {who was living} in the region of
- Edom

Genesis 32:4

ULT:
And he commanded them, saying, "This {is what} you will say to my lord, to Esau: 'This {is what} your servant Jacob says, "I have been sojourning with Laban and have remained there until now.

UST:
{Before they left,} he ordered them, "This {is what} you must tell my master Esau: 'I, your servant Jacob, want you to know that I have been staying with {our uncle} Laban all this time.

And he commanded them, saying (ULT)

{Before they left,} he ordered them (UST)

Alternate translation: [As they left, he instructed them]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

This {is what} you will say to my lord, to Esau (ULT)

This {is what} you must tell my master Esau (UST)

Jacob uses **my lord** and **your servant** in verse 4 and 5 to show his brother Esau great respect. Do this in a way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [I want you to tell Esau whom I highly respect:]

Support Reference: Politeness

This {is what} your servant Jacob says (ULT)

I, your servant Jacob, want you to know that (UST)

Verses 4 and 5 have two levels of embedded quotes. Some languages need to use indirect quotes for one or both of those levels; for example, "Your servant Jacob wants you to know

that he has been sojourning/staying with your uncle Laban all this time." Alternate translation: [This is a message from Jacob who wants to serve you:]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

I have been sojourning with Laban and have remained there until now (ULT)

I have been staying with {our uncle} Laban all this time (UST)

Alternate translation: [Since we last saw each other, I have been living with Uncle Laban]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- to my lord
- to Esau
- your servant
- Jacob
- Laban

UST

- my master
- Esau
- I, your servant
- Jacob
- {our uncle} Laban

Genesis 32:5

ULT:
And I have cattle and donkey{s}, flock{s}, and menservant{s} and maidservant{s}. And I have sent {messengers} to speak with my lord, so that I will find favor in your eyes.”’”

UST:
I {now} own {many} cattle, donkeys, and flocks, as well as {many} male and female servants. I have sent this message to {you,} sir, hoping that you will be kind {to me} {when I arrive}.’”

And I have (ULT)

I {now} own (UST)

Consider whether it is more natural to use a direct or indirect quote here in your language. Alternate translation: [I now have] or [Also tell him that I own]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

cattle and donkey{s}, flock{s} (ULT)

{many} cattle, donkeys, and flocks (UST)

See how you translated **donkeys** and **flocks** in Genesis 12:16. Alternate translation: [many cattle, donkeys, and flocks of sheep and goats]

---

and menservant{s} and maidservant{s} (ULT)

as well as {many} male and female servants (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 12:16. Alternate translation: [as well as many men and women slaves]

And I have sent {messengers} to speak with my lord (ULT)

I have sent this message to {you,} sir (UST)

If you use indirect quotes in this section, make sure each part fits with the other parts, especially in your choice of pronouns. It is helpful if you read your translation aloud to check for accuracy and naturalness. Alternate translation: [Sir, I sent these messengers to you]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- cattle
- and donkey{s}
- flock{s}
- and menservant{s}
- and maidservant{s}
- to speak
- with my lord
- favor

UST

- {many} cattle
- donkeys
- and flocks
- as well as {many} male and female servants
- as well as {many} male and female servants
- I have sent this message
- to {you,} sir
- hoping that you will be kind {to me} {when I arrive}

Genesis 32:6

ULT:
Then the messengers returned to Jacob, saying, "We went to your brother, to Esau. And also, he is coming to meet you, and 400 men with him!"

UST:
{After the messengers delivered Jacob's message,} they returned to Jacob and reported {to him}, "We went {and spoke} to your brother Esau. Now he is on his way {here} to meet you, but {there are} {also} 400 men {coming} with him!"

saying (ULT)

and reported {to him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and said to him] or [and informed him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

We went to your brother, to Esau (ULT)

We went {and spoke} to your brother Esau (UST)

Alternate translation: [We went to your brother Esau and told him your message] or [We delivered the message to your brother Esau]

And also, he is coming to meet you (ULT)

Now he is on his way {here} to meet you (UST)

Also, notice that the word **meet** is neutral in this context and does not imply whether or not Esau had hostile intent against Jacob. Alternate translation: [and he is already headed here to meet you]

---

and 400 men with him (ULT)

but {there are} {also} 400 men {coming} with him (UST)

Alternate translation: [and there are also 400 men coming with him!] or [and he has 400 men with him!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the messengers
- Jacob
- Esau

UST

- the messengers
- Jacob
- Esau

Genesis 32:7

ULT:
And Jacob was exceedingly afraid, and it was distressing for him, so he divided the people who {were} with him and the flock{s} and the herd{s} and the camels into two camps.

UST:
{When Jacob heard that,} he was very frightened and worried. So he put {all} the people {and animals} that were with him into two {large} groups, including {his family, his servants and} {all} his flocks {of sheep and goats}, herds {of cattle} and camels.

And Jacob was exceedingly afraid (ULT)

{When Jacob heard that,} he was very frightened (UST)

Alternate translation: [When Jacob heard the report, he was terrified]

---

and it was distressing for him (ULT)

and worried (UST)

Alternate translation: [and very worried]

---

so he divided the people who {were} with him and the flock{s} and the herd{s} and the camels into two camps (ULT)

So he put {all} the people {and animals} that were with him into two {large} groups, including {his family, his servants and} {all} his flocks {of sheep and goats}, herds {of cattle} and camels (UST)

Consider what phrase order for this sentence is best in your language. Alternate translation: [So he divided all the people and animals that were with him into two large camps including his family, his servants and all his flocks of sheep and goats, herds of cattle and camels]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And … was … afraid
- Jacob
- the flock{s}
- the herd{s}
- and the camels

UST

- When … { … heard that,} he was … frightened
- Jacob
- all} his flocks {of sheep and goats}
- herds {of cattle}
- and camels

Genesis 32:8

ULT:
And he said, "If Esau comes to one camp and strikes them, then the camp that is left will escape."

UST:
{He did that} because he thought, "If Esau {and his men} come and attack one group, then the other group might {be able to} escape."

And he said (ULT)

{He did that} because he thought (UST)

Alternate translation: [He was thinking]

If Esau comes to one camp and strikes them (ULT)

If Esau {and his men} come and attack one group (UST)

Alternate translation: [If Esau and his men come and attack the people in one camp]

---

then the camp that is left will escape (ULT)

then the other group might {be able to} escape (UST)

Alternate translation: [then the people in the other camp can escape] or [then the other camp might be able to escape]

Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Esau

UST

- Esau {and his men}

Genesis 32:9

ULT:
Then Jacob said, "God of my grandfather Abraham, and God of my father Isaac, Yahweh, who said to me, 'Return to your land and to your relatives, and I will cause things to prosper with you,'

UST:
Then he prayed, "{Dear} Yahweh, the God whom my grandfather Abraham and my father Isaac served, you told me to go back to my country where my relatives live, and that you would cause me to prosper.

Then Jacob said (ULT)

Then he prayed (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Jacob prayed]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

God of my grandfather Abraham, and God of my father Isaac, Yahweh (ULT)

{Dear} Yahweh, the God whom my grandfather Abraham and my father Isaac served (UST)

Make sure that your translation of this address refers to only one God, not two or three different Gods. Also make sure it is clear that Jacob is talking directly to Yahweh, not talking about him. Alternate translation: [Dear Yahweh, the God whom my grandfather Abraham and my father Isaac worshiped]

---

who said to me, ‘Return to your land and to your relatives (ULT)

you told me to go back to my country where my relatives live (UST)

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to use a direct or indirect quote here. Also see how you translated **land** and **relatives** in Genesis 31:3. Alternate translation: [you told me to go back to my homeland where my relatives live]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

and I will cause things to prosper with you (ULT)

and that you would cause me to prosper (UST)

Make sure your choice of **I** or **you** (for God) and **you** or **me** (for Jacob) in this clause fits with the way you translated the previous part of this quote. Alternate translation: [and that you would make things go well for me]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- God of
- Abraham
- and God of
- Isaac
- Yahweh
- to your land
- and to your relatives
- and I will cause things to prosper

UST

- Then he prayed
- the God whom … served
- Abraham
- and
- Isaac
- {Dear} Yahweh
- to my country
- where my relatives live

- and that you would cause me to prosper

Genesis 32:10

ULT:
I am unworthy of all the kindnesses and of all the faithfulness that you have shown your servant. For I crossed this Jordan with my staff, but now I have become two camps.

UST:
I am not worthy of how kind and faithful you have always been to {me} as I have served you. When I {first} crossed this Jordan {River}, all that I owned was my walking stick, but now my family and belongings are enough to form two {large} groups.

I am unworthy (ULT)

I am not worthy (UST)

Alternate translation: [I do not deserve]

---

of all the kindnesses and of all the faithfulness that you have shown your servant (ULT)

of how kind and faithful you have always been to {me} as I have served you (UST)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **kindnesses** and **faithfulness**, you could express the same ideas in other ways. Alternate translation: [the way you have always treated me so kindly and faithfully as your servant] or [how kind and loyal you have always been to me as I have served you]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

For I crossed this Jordan with my staff (ULT)

When I {first} crossed this Jordan {River}, all that I owned was my walking stick (UST)

Alternate translation: [I crossed the Jordan River with only my staff] or [When I first left home and crossed the Jordan River, all that I had was my walking stick]

---

but now I have become two camps (ULT)

but now my family and belongings are enough to form two {large} groups (UST)

Alternate translation: [but now I have so many people in my household and so many possessions that there are two large camps] or [but now my family and belongings are enough to make two large groups]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the kindnesses
- the faithfulness
- your servant
- Jordan

UST

- of how kind and faithful you have always been
- of how kind and faithful you have always been
- to {me} as I have served you
- Jordan {River}

Genesis 32:11

ULT:
Please save me from the hand of my brother, from the hand of Esau, because I am afraid of him, that he will come and strike me {and} the mothers with the children!

UST:
Please rescue me {now} from my brother Esau, because I am afraid that he {and his men} will come and attack me {as well as} {these} mothers and {our} children!

from the hand of my brother, from the hand of Esau (ULT)

from my brother Esau (UST)

Alternate translation: [from the power of my brother Esau]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

because I am afraid of him, that (ULT)

because I am afraid that (UST)

Alternate translation: [I am very worried that]

---

he will come and strike me {and} the mothers with the children (ULT)

he {and his men} will come and attack me {as well as} {these} mothers and {our} children (UST)

Alternate translation: [he and his men will come and attack me as well as these mothers with their children!] or [he and his men will attack and kill us all, including these mothers with their children!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- save me
- Esau
- am afraid of

UST

- rescue me {now}
- Esau
- am afraid

Genesis 32:12

ULT:
But you said, ‘I will surely cause things to prosper with you, and I will make your descendants as the sand of the sea, which cannot be counted from {their} abundance.’”

UST:
But you promised me that you would greatly prosper me, and that you would make my descendants {as numerous} as {the grains of} sand on the seashore, which are so numerous that no one can count them all.”

But you said (ULT)

But you promised me (UST)

Alternate translation: [For you told me] or [But remember that you promised me]

I will surely cause things to prosper with you, and I will make your descendants as the sand of the sea (ULT)

that you would greatly prosper me, and that you would make my descendants {as numerous} as {the grains of} sand on the seashore (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to use an indirect quote here, especially since Jacob is quoting the one he is talking to. Also see how you translated “I will cause things to prosper with you” in verse 9 and how you translated **as the sand** in Genesis 22:17. Alternate translation: [that you would surely prosper me, and that you would make my descendants as numerous as the grains of sand on the seashore]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

which cannot be counted from {their} abundance (ULT)

which are so numerous that no one can count them all (UST)

Alternate translation: [which cannot be counted because there are so many] or [which are so many that no one can count them all]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- I will … cause things to prosper
- your descendants

UST

- that you would greatly prosper me
- my descendants

Genesis 32:13

ULT:
Then he stayed there for that night, and he took gifts from what was in his hand for Esau his brother:

UST:
Then Jacob spent the night there, and {during that time} he selected many of his animals to give to his brother Esau,

and he took gifts from what was in his hand (ULT)

and {during that time} he selected many of his animals to give (UST)

Alternate translation: [and during that time he selected many of his animals as gifts] or [and while he was there he picked out many of the animals he had with him]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- for Esau

UST

- to … Esau

Genesis 32:14

ULT:
two hundred she-goats and twenty he-goats, two hundred ewes and twenty rams,

UST:
{including} 200 female goats and twenty male goats, 200 female sheep and twenty male sheep,

two hundred she-goats and twenty he-goats, two hundred ewes and twenty rams (ULT)

{including} 200 female goats and twenty male goats, 200 female sheep and twenty male sheep (UST)

Consider what is the most natural way in your language to list these animals, here and in verse 15. See how you translated **she-goats**, **he-goats**, **ewes** and **rams** in Genesis 31:10. Alternate translation: [including 200 nanny goats and twenty billy goats, 200 female sheep and twenty male sheep] or [including 200 nanny goats, twenty billy goats, 200 female sheep, twenty male sheep]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- she-goats
- twenty
- ewes
- and … rams

UST
- including … female goats
- twenty
- female sheep
- and … male sheep

Genesis 32:15

ULT:
thirty nursing camels and their young, forty cows and ten bulls, twenty female donkeys and ten male donkeys.

UST:
thirty mother camels with their colts, forty cows and ten bulls, {and} twenty female donkeys and ten male donkeys.

thirty nursing camels and their young (ULT)

thirty mother camels with their colts (UST)

Alternate translation: [thirty mother camels with their young]

---

forty cows and ten bulls, twenty female donkeys and ten male donkeys (ULT)

forty cows and ten bulls, {and} twenty female donkeys and ten male donkeys (UST)

See how you translated **female donkeys** and **male donkeys** in Genesis 12:16. Alternate translation: [forty cows, ten bulls, twenty female donkeys and ten male donkeys]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- camels
- cows
- and … bulls
- female donkeys
- and … male donkeys

UST
- mother camels
- cows
- and … bulls
- and … female donkeys
- and … male donkeys

Genesis 32:16

ULT:
And he gave them into the hand{s} of his servants, each herd by itself. And he said to his servants, "Go before me, and put space between each herd."

UST:
Jacob put his servants in charge of the animals, with each kind {of animal} in a separate group. Then he ordered his servants, "Go ahead of me, {one group at a time,} and keep {some} distance between each group {of animals}."

And he gave them into the hand{s} of his servants (ULT)

Jacob put his servants in charge of the animals (UST)

Alternate translation: [He put his servants in charge of the animals]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

each herd by itself (ULT)

with each kind {of animal} in a separate group (UST)

Alternate translation: [with each kind of animal in a separate herd] or [and had them put the different kinds of animals in different groups]

And he said to his servants (ULT)

Then he ordered his servants (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then he told his servants]

Go before me, and put space between each herd (ULT)

Go ahead of me, {one group at a time,} and keep {some} distance between each group {of animals} (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to use a direct or indirect quote here. Alternate translation: [Go ahead of me, one herd at a time, and keep some space between each herd of animals] or [to go ahead of him, one herd at time, keeping some distance between each herd]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- his servants
- each
- herd
- his servants
- between each herd
- between each herd

UST

- Jacob put his servants in charge of the animals
- with each kind {of animal} in a separate group
- with each kind {of animal} in a separate group
- his servants
- each group {of animals}
- each group {of animals}

Genesis 32:17

ULT:
And he commanded the first {one}, saying, "When Esau my brother meets you and asks you, saying, 'Whom do you {belong} to, and where are you going? And whom do these {animals} {belong} to {that are} before you?'

UST:
He {also} ordered the servant in charge of the first group {of animals}, "When my brother Esau meets you and asks you, 'Who is your master, and where are you headed? And who do these {animals} belong to {that you are driving} ahead of you?'

And he commanded the first {one}, saying (ULT)

He {also} ordered the servant in charge of the first group {of animals} (UST)

Alternate translation: [He also instructed the servant in charge of the first herd of animals]

---

saying, 'Whom do you {belong} to, and where are you going (ULT)

Who is your master, and where are you headed (UST)

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to use a direct or indirect quote in verses 17–20a. Alternate translation: [asking who your master is and where you are going]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

And whom do these {animals} {belong} to {that are} before you (ULT)

And who do these {animals} belong to {that you are driving} ahead of you (UST)

Alternate translation: [and asks who owns the animals that you are herding]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Esau

UST

- Esau

Genesis 32:18

ULT:
then you say, ‘{They belong} to your servant, to Jacob. They {are} a gift sent to my lord, to Esau. And behold, he {is} also behind us.’”

UST:
then you are to tell {him}, ‘Esau, sir, these {animals} belong to Jacob who {humbly} serves you. He has sent them to you as a gift. In fact, he is following us {here}.’”

then you say (ULT)

then you are to tell {him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [then you must tell him] or [then you are to answer him]

{They belong} to your servant, to Jacob. They {are} a gift sent to my lord, to Esau (ULT)

Esau, sir, these {animals} belong to Jacob who {humbly} serves you. He has sent them to you as a gift (UST)

Also see how you translated **your servant** and **my lord** in verse 4.

Support Reference: Politeness

And behold, he {is} also behind us (ULT)

In fact, he is following us {here} (UST)

Notice that the pronoun **us** is exclusive here.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- {They belong} to your servant
- to Jacob
- to my lord
- to Esau

UST

- who {humbly} serves you
- these {animals} belong to Jacob
- sir
- Esau

Genesis 32:19

ULT:
Then he also commanded the second {servant}, also the third, also all who followed behind the herds, saying, "Say the same thing to Esau when you find him.

UST:
In the same way, Jacob ordered the servants who were in charge of the second and third groups {of animals}, and all {the servants} who were in charge of the {other} groups, "When you meet Esau, tell him the same thing {that I told the first servant}.

Then he also commanded (ULT)

In the same way, Jacob ordered (UST)

See how you translated **commanded** in verse 17. Alternate translation: [In the same way, Jacob instructed] or [Jacob gave the same orders to]

---

the second {servant}, also the third (ULT)

the servants who were in charge of the second and third groups {of animals} (UST)

Alternate translation: [the servant in charge of the second herd and the servant in charge of the third group] or [the servants who were in charge of the second and third herds of animals]

---

also all who followed behind the herds, saying (ULT)

and all {the servants} who were in charge of the {other} groups (UST)

Alternate translation: [as well as all the other servants who were in charge of the other herds]

Say the same thing to Esau when you find him (ULT)

When you meet Esau, tell him the same thing {that I told the first servant} (UST)

Alternate translation: [When you meet Esau, you are to tell him the same thing that I told the first servant]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the herds
- Esau

UST

- and all {the servants} who were in charge of the {other} groups
- tell him

Genesis 32:20

ULT:
And also say, ‘Behold, your servant Jacob {is} behind us.’” For he said, “I will cover his face with the gift that is going before me, and after that, when I see his face, perhaps he will receive my face.”

UST:
Especially be sure to tell {him} that his servant Jacob is following you {there}.” {Jacob did all that,} because he thought that if he sent the gifts {of animals} ahead of himself {to Esau}, then Esau would stop being angry at him. He was hoping that when Esau saw the gifts, he would {forgive him and} welcome him when they met in person.

And also say, ‘Behold, your servant Jacob {is} behind us (ULT)

Especially be sure to tell {him} that his servant Jacob is following you {there} (UST)

See how you translated **is behind us** in verse 18.

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

For he said (ULT)

{Jacob did all that,} because he thought that (UST)

Alternate translation: [Jacob did all that, because he said]

I will cover his face with the gift (ULT)

if he sent the gifts {of animals} … then Esau would stop being angry at him (UST)

The idiom **cover his face** means to try to calm someone’s anger by doing something to please him. Consider whether your language has a similar idiom you could use here. Alternate translation: [I can pacify Esau by sending] or [Perhaps Esau will stop being angry at me if I send]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

with the gift that is going before me (ULT)

if he sent the gifts {of animals} ahead of himself {to Esau} (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to use an indirect quote here and say, “because he thought that if he sent the gifts of animals ahead of himself to Esau, then Esau would stop being angry at him.” Notice that this alternate translation also changes the clause order. Alternate translation: [him this gift of animals ahead of me] or [this gift of animals to him ahead of me]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

and after that, when I see his face, perhaps he will receive my face (ULT)

He was hoping that when Esau saw the gifts, he would {forgive him and} welcome him when they met in person (UST)

Make sure that the way you translate this clause fits with how you translated the previous clauses as either a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [After that, perhaps he will forgive me and welcome me when we see each other face to face]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- your servant
- Jacob

UST

- his servant
- Jacob

Genesis 32:21

ULT:
Then the gift went before him, and he himself stayed for that night in the camp.

UST:
So Jacob's servants {went} ahead of Jacob with the {animal} gifts {for Esau}, while Jacob {and his family} stayed {behind} in the camp that night.

Then the gift went before him (ULT)

So Jacob's servants {went} ahead of Jacob with the {animal} gifts {for Esau} (UST)

See how you translated **gift** in verses 13, 18, 20. Alternate translation: [So the animal gifts for Esau were taken ahead of Jacob by his servants]

---

and he himself stayed for that night in the camp (ULT)

while Jacob {and his family} stayed {behind} in the camp that night (UST)

Alternate translation: [but Jacob and his family stayed behind at the camp that night] or [but Jacob himself slept for part of the night in the camp]

Genesis 32:22

ULT:
Then during that night he got up and took his two wives and his two maidservants and his eleven sons and crossed over the ford of the Jabbok.

UST:
{Later} that {same} night Jacob got up and took his two wives, his two servant wives and his eleven sons across a shallow place in the Jabbok {Stream}.

Then during that night he got up (ULT)

{Later} that {same} night Jacob got up (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that this is the same night that was referred to in verse 21. Also, the phrase **got up** often refers to initiating an action, but here it may also imply that Jacob got up out of bed after sleeping for a while. Alternate translation: [Later that same night Jacob woke up and took] or [Sometime during that night]

---

his two wives and his two maidservants and his eleven sons (ULT)

his two wives, his two servant wives and his eleven sons (UST)

Consider what is the best way in your language to list these people. See what you did for a similar list of people in Genesis 7:13. Alternate translation: [his two wives, two concubines and eleven sons]

---

and crossed over (ULT)

across (UST)

Alternate translation: [and walked across]

---

the ford of the Jabbok (ULT)

a shallow place in the Jabbok {Stream} (UST)

A ford is a very shallow place in a stream that is fairly easy and safe for people and animals to walk across. The Jabbok Stream was a small river that flowed from east to west into the Jordan River about halfway between the Dead Sea and the Sea of Galilee. Jacob took his wives and children from the north side of the stream to the south side; his brother was coming towards them from further south. It might be helpful to include a map here in your translation that includes the places named in this chapter and shows where Jacob and Esau were coming from. Alternate translation: [a shallow place on the Jabbok River] or [a place in the Jabbok Stream that was shallow]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- his … maidservants

UST

- his … servant wives

Genesis 32:23

ULT:
So he took them and had them cross over the stream, and he sent what {belonged} to him across.

UST:
{After} he had taken them across the stream, he {went back and} had his servants take {all} his {animals and other} belongings across {the stream} {too}.

So he took them and had them cross over the stream (ULT)

{After} he had taken them across the stream (UST)

Verse 23 refers back to what already happened in verse 22. Make sure your translation does not sound like Jacob's wives and children crossed the Jabbok Stream twice in verses 22–23. Alternate translation: [After he had taken them across the river] or [After he did that]

---

and he sent what {belonged} to him across (ULT)

he {went back and} had his servants take {all} his {animals and other} belongings across {the stream} {too} (UST)

At some point, Jacob went back to the north side of the Jabbok Stream, while his family waited for him on the south side. His belongings included the animals that he had not sent ahead to Esau as well as all his other possessions. Alternate translation: [he went back and had his servants take everything that he owned across the river too] or [he went back and had his servants take all his livestock and other possessions across the river too]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

Genesis 32:24

ULT:
Then Jacob was left alone, and a man wrestled with him until the dawn came up.

UST:
Then Jacob was {there} by himself {for a while}, and a man {came and} fought with him until daybreak.

Then Jacob was left alone (ULT)

Then Jacob was {there} by himself {for a while} (UST)

Alternate translation: [After that, Jacob was alone there for a while]

---

and a man wrestled with him (ULT)

and a man {came and} fought with him (UST)

At some point, Jacob realized that this man was Yahweh in the form of a man (verse 30), so translation teams that capitalize references to God will capitalize all the pronouns that refer to him in verses 24–29 and may or may not capitalize "Man" in these verses. See what you did for a similar case when Yahweh appeared as a man to Abraham in Gen 18. Alternate translation: [and then a man came and wrestled with him]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

until the dawn came up (ULT)

until daybreak (UST)

The word **dawn** refers to the time before sunrise when the sky begins to get light. Alternate translation: [until dawn] or [until daylight started to appear]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob

UST

- Then Jacob was {there} by himself {for a while}

Genesis 32:25

ULT:
And he saw that he was not prevailing over him, so he touched {him} on the socket of his hip, so that the socket of Jacob's hip was dislocated as he wrestled with him.

UST:
When the man realized that he was not able to defeat Jacob, he struck him on his hip, so that it went out of place as they fought with each other.

And he saw that he was not prevailing over him (ULT)

When the man realized that he was not able to defeat Jacob (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation who is being referred to in verses 25–29. Alternate translation: [Then the man realized that he could not defeat him so] or [When the man saw that he was not able to defeat him]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

so he touched {him} on the socket of his hip (ULT)

he struck him on his hip (UST)

Alternate translation: [he hit him on his hip]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

so that the socket of Jacob's hip was dislocated (ULT)

so that it went out of place (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to use an active or passive clause here. Also consider whether it is more natural in your language to use a noun phrase or a pronoun here to refer to Jacob's hip joint. Alternate translation: [so that it was put out of place] or [and his hip joint went out of place]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

as he wrestled with him (ULT)

as they fought with each other (UST)

Alternate translation: [as he fought with the man] or [as they fought against each other]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob

UST

- יַעֲקֹב (ORIG QUOTE)

Genesis 32:26

ULT:
Then he said, “Release me, because the dawn has come up!” But he said, “I will not release you unless you bless me!”

UST:
Then the man said {to him}, “Let go of me, because it is daybreak!” But Jacob replied, “{No!} I will not let go of you until you {first} bless me!”

Then he said (ULT)

Then the man said {to him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then the man said to Jacob] or [Then the man demanded]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Release me (ULT)

Let go of me (UST)

Alternate translation: [You must let me go now]

---

because the dawn has come up (ULT)

because it is daybreak (UST)

See how you translated “the dawn came up” in verse 24. Alternate translation: [because it is dawn] or [because daylight is beginning to come!]

But he said (ULT)

But Jacob replied (UST)

Alternate translation: [But Jacob said to him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

I will not release you unless you bless me (ULT)

{No!} I will not let go of you until you {first} bless me (UST)

Alternate translation: [No! First you must bless me, and then I will let you go!] or [I will let you go only if you bless me!]

Support Reference: Connect — Exception Clauses

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- you bless me

UST

- you {first} bless me

Genesis 32:27

ULT:
So he said to him, “What {is} your name?” And he said, “Jacob.”

UST:
So the man asked him, “What {is} your name?” He answered, “{My name is} Jacob.”

So he said to him (ULT)

So the man asked him (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then the man asked him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

What {is} your name (ULT)

What {is} your name (UST)

Consider whether it is better to use a direct or indirect quote here in your language. Alternate translation: [Tell me your name] or [what his name was]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

And he said, “Jacob (ULT)

He answered, “{My name is} Jacob (UST)

Make sure in your translation that Jacob’s reply sounds respectful. Also consider whether it is better to use a direct or indirect quote here in your language.

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob

UST

- {My name is} Jacob

Genesis 32:28

ULT:
Then he said, "Your name will not be called Jacob anymore, but Israel, because you have struggled with God and with men, and you have prevailed."

UST:
Then the man said, "Your name will no longer be Jacob, but {rather it will be} Israel, {which means 'he who wrestles with God,'} because you have wrestled with God and with people, and you have won."

Then he said (ULT)

Then the man said (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then the man said to Jacob]

Your name will not be called Jacob anymore (ULT)

Your name will no longer be Jacob (UST)

The wording here is similar to what God said when he changed Abram's name to Abraham (Genesis 17:5) and Sarai's name to Sarah (17:15). After that, Abraham and Sarah were no longer called by their previous names. In the case of Jacob, he continues to be referred to by both of his names in this chapter (**Jacob** in verses 29–30, 32; **Israel** in verse 32) and throughout the rest of the Bible, including by God (Genesis 46:2). It could be that although God was changing Jacob's primary name to "Israel," he was still known by his previous name too. You could put some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [You will no longer be named Jacob]

---

but Israel (ULT)

but {rather it will be} Israel, {which means ‘he who wrestles with God … } (UST)

If you include the meaning of the name **Israel** in your translation or in a footnote, make sure it fits with how you translate **struggled** in the following clause.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

because you have struggled with God and with men (ULT)

because you have wrestled with God and with people (UST)

The Hebrew word for **struggled** here is more general than the word for “wrestled” in verses 24 and 25. Alternate translation: [because you have struggled against both God and men]

---

and you have prevailed (ULT)

and you have won (UST)

See how you translated **prevailed** in verse 25 and Genesis 30:8. It may be necessary to translate this term in slightly different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [and you have overcome]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- will … be called
- Israel
- God

UST

- will no longer be Jacob
- will no longer be Jacob
- it will be} Israel, {which means ‘he who wrestles with God … }

- God

Genesis 32:29

ULT:
Then Jacob asked and said, “Please tell {me} your name.” But he said, “Why {is} this you are asking for my name?” Then he blessed him there.

UST:
Then Jacob asked {the man} to tell him his name. But he replied, “There is no need for you to ask {me} what my name is!” Then the man blessed Jacob there.

Then Jacob asked and said (ULT)

Then Jacob asked {the man} to tell him his name (UST)

Consider again whether or not you have capitalized references to the man in verses 24–29. See the note about this at verse 24. Alternate translation: [Then Jacob asked him]

Support Reference: Politeness

Please tell {me} your name (ULT)

to tell him his name (UST)

Consider whether it is better to use a direct or indirect quote here in your language. Alternate translation: [What is your name?] or [what his name was]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

But he said (ULT)

But he replied (UST)

Alternate translation: [But the man replied]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Why {is} this you are asking (ULT)

There is no need for you to ask {me} (UST)

This rhetorical question probably means that there was no need for Jacob to ask the man what his name was; he should have known without asking. Consider whether or not it is best to use a rhetorical question here in your language. Alternate translation: [You do not need to ask me]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

for my name (ULT)

what my name is (UST)

Alternate translation: [to tell you my name!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- tell {me}
- Then he blessed

UST

- Jacob
- to tell him his name
- Then the man blessed

Genesis 32:30

ULT:
So Jacob called the name of the place Peniel, because {he said}, "I saw God face to face, but my life was preserved!"

UST:
So Jacob named the place Peniel, {which means "God's face,"} because {he exclaimed}, "I saw God's face {here}, but {yet} he allowed me to live!"

I saw God face to face (ULT)

I saw God's face {here} (UST)

Alternate translation: [I saw God in person here]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

but my life was preserved (ULT)

but {yet} he allowed me to live (UST)

The author assumes that readers will know that Jacob was amazed that he was still alive because, although there were exceptions (Exodus 33:11; Judges 13:22), normally people could not see God face to face and live (Exodus 33:20). You could put that information in a footnote so that readers understand why Jacob was surprised. Alternate translation: [but yet my life was spared by him!]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- So … called
- Jacob
- God
- but … was preserved

UST

- So Jacob named
- So Jacob named
- God’s face {here}
- but {yet} he allowed me to live

Genesis 32:31

ULT:
And the sun rose on him as he passed Penuel, and he was limping because of his hip.

UST:
The sun was shining as Jacob left Penuel {and returned to his family}. He was limping {as he walked} because of his hip {injury}.

And the sun rose on him (ULT)

The sun was shining (UST)

Alternate translation: [The sun shined on Jacob] or [The sun was rising]

---

as he passed Penuel (ULT)

as Jacob left Penuel {and returned to his family} (UST)

Penuel is another name for the place that is called Peniel in verse 30. That information could be put in a footnote. Or you could use the same spelling in both verses to avoid confusion; **Penuel** is the spelling in the rest of the Old Testament. Alternate translation: [as he left Penuel and returned to his family]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

and he was limping (ULT)

He was limping {as he walked} (UST)

Alternate translation: [As he walked, he was limping]

---

because of his hip (ULT)

because of his hip {injury} (UST)

Alternate translation: [because his hip joint was injured]

Genesis 32:32

ULT:
For that {reason}, to this day the sons of Israel do not eat the muscle of the tendon that {is} on the socket of the hip, because he touched the socket of Jacob's hip on the muscle of the tendon.

UST:
That is why even today the people of Israel do not eat meat that comes from an {animal's} hip joint, because that is the place on Jacob's hip that God struck {and injured}.

to this day (ULT)

even today (UST)

Alternate translation: [even now] or [even in the present]

---

the sons of Israel (ULT)

the people of Israel (UST)

Alternate translation: [the descendants of Israel] or [the Israelites]

---

do not eat the muscle of the tendon (ULT)

do not eat meat (UST)

Alternate translation: [do not eat the tendon]

---

that {is} on the socket of the hip (ULT)

that comes from an {animal's} hip joint (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that this is talking about eating meat from an animal, not about cannibalism.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

because he touched the socket of Jacob's hip on the muscle of the tendon (ULT)

because that is the place on Jacob's hip that God struck {and injured} (UST)

See how you translated the idiom **touched** in verse 25.

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Israel
- day
- Jacob

UST

- Israel
- even today
- that is the place on Jacob's hip that God struck {and injured}

Genesis 33

Genesis 33:1

ULT:
Then Jacob lifted his eyes and looked, and behold, Esau was coming, and with him 400 men. Then he divided the children among Leah and Rachel and the two maidservants.

UST:
Then Jacob looked and saw {in the distance} that Esau was coming {toward him}, and with him {were} 400 men! So Jacob {quickly} divided up {his} children among Leah, Rachel and {his} two servant wives.

Then Jacob lifted his eyes and looked (ULT)

Then Jacob looked and saw {in the distance} (UST)

Make sure your translation of this idiom does not mean that Jacob looked straight up. Rather, he probably looked carefully to the south (the direction that his brother was coming from). Alternate translation: [Then Jacob looked up and saw] or [Then Jacob looked ahead of him and saw]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and behold, Esau was coming (ULT)

that Esau was coming {toward him} (UST)

Esau was still a fair distance away, which gave Jacob time to do everything that he does in verses 1–3. Alternate translation: [that Esau was in the distance coming his way]

---

and with him 400 men (ULT)

and with him {were} 400 men (UST)

Alternate translation: [with 400 men!] or [and that he had 400 men with him!]

Then he divided the children among Leah and Rachel and the two maidservants (ULT)

So Jacob {quickly} divided up {his} children among Leah, Rachel and {his} two servant wives (UST)

Each of the women had her own children with her (verse 2). See how you translated **divided** in Genesis 32:7 and "his two maidservants" in Genesis 32:22. Alternate translation: [So he quickly put his children into groups with their own mothers, Leah, Rachel and his two servant wives] or [So he had his children quickly gather with their own mothers, so that Leah, Rachel and his two concubines were each with her own children]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- Esau
- Leah
- Rachel
- the … maidservants

UST

- Then Jacob looked
- Esau
- Leah
- Rachel
- his … servant wives

Genesis 33:2

ULT:
And he put the maidservants and their children first, and Leah and her children after them, and Rachel and Joseph after them.

UST:
He put his servant wives and their children first {in line}, then Leah with her children behind them, and Rachel with {her son} Joseph last.

And he put the maidservants and their children (ULT)

He put his servant wives and their children (UST)

See how you translated "his two maidservants" in Genesis 32:22. Alternate translation: [He put his two servant wives with their children] or [He put the group that had his two servant wives and their children]

---

first (ULT)

first {in line} (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to put phrases like **first** and **after them** at the beginning of their clauses and say, "First in line he put his two servant wives and/with their children. Behind them he put Leah and/with her children, and last of all he put Rachel and/with her son Joseph." Alternate translation: [in front of all the others]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

and Leah and her children (ULT)

then Leah with her children (UST)

Alternate translation: [then he put Leah and her children]

---

after them (ULT)

behind them (UST)

Alternate translation: [next]

---

and Rachel and Joseph (ULT)

and Rachel with {her son} Joseph (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he put Rachel and her son Joseph]

---

after them (ULT)

behind them (UST)

Alternate translation: [behind them all] or [in the rear]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Rachel
- the maidservants
- Leah
- Joseph

UST

- Rachel
- his servant wives
- Leah
- {her son} Joseph

Genesis 33:3

ULT:
Then he himself went before them, and he bowed to the ground seven times as he came near to his brother.

UST:
Then Jacob himself went ahead of them {all} {toward his brother}. As he got closer to him, he bowed {with his face} to the ground seven times {to show respect}.

Then he himself went before them (ULT)

Then Jacob himself went ahead of them {all} {toward his brother} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Jacob himself walked ahead of them all toward his brother] or [Then he started going toward his brother ahead of them all]

---

and he bowed to the ground seven times as he came near to his brother (ULT)

As he got closer to him, he bowed {with his face} to the ground seven times {to show respect} (UST)

See how you translated "bow down" in Genesis 27:29. Alternate translation: [and he bowed with his face to the ground seven times to show respect as he went closer to him] or [As he approached Esau, he prostrated himself with his face to the ground seven times to show respect]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- and he bowed
- to the ground

UST
- he bowed … to show respect

- {with his face} to the ground

Genesis 33:4

ULT:
But Esau ran to meet him and embraced him, and he fell on his neck and kissed him, and they cried.

UST:
But Esau ran to greet Jacob and hugged him. He held him tightly and kissed him {on the cheeks}, as they {both} cried {for joy}.

But Esau ran to meet him and embraced him (ULT)

But Esau ran to greet Jacob and hugged him (UST)

This sentence shows a contrast between what Jacob was expecting and what actually happened.

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

---

and he fell on his neck and kissed him (ULT)

He held him tightly and kissed him {on the cheeks} (UST)

See how you translated "hugged him … and kissed him on the cheek/cheeks" in Genesis 29:13. Make sure that the way you translate **fell on his neck** does not imply that Esau accidentally fell. Rather, this is an idiom that means he embraced Jacob warmly, with much emotion. Alternate translation: [and he threw his arms around his shoulders and kissed him] or [He held Jacob tightly and kissed him on the cheek]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and they cried (ULT)

as they {both} cried {for joy} (UST)

Also, some languages have a dual pronoun for **they** that could be used here. Alternate translation: [and they both cried for joy] or [Both of them cried because they were so happy to see each other again]

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Esau
- and kissed him

UST

- Esau
- and kissed him {on the cheeks}

Genesis 33:5

ULT:
Then he lifted his eyes and saw the women and the children, and he said, "Who {are} these with you?" And he said, "The children whom God has graciously given to your servant."

UST:
Then Esau looked ahead and noticed the women and children {who were there}, so he asked {Jacob}, "Who {are} these {people}? {Do they belong} to you?" Jacob answered {him}, "{They are} {the wives and} the children whom God has kindly given to me, sir."

Then he lifted his eyes (ULT)

Then Esau looked ahead (UST)

See how you translated the idiom "lifted … eyes" in verse 1 and Genesis 31:10. It may be necessary to translate this idiom in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [Then Esau looked up]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and saw the women and the children (ULT)

and noticed the women and children {who were there} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and saw the women and children who were there with Jacob]

---

and he said (ULT)

so he asked {Jacob} (UST)

Alternate translation: [so he asked him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Who {are} these with you (ULT)

Who {are} these {people}? {Do they belong} to you (UST)

Esau wants to know if these people are Jacob's family members or his servants or someone else; he is not asking what their names are. Alternate translation: [How are these people related to you?]

And he said (ULT)

Jacob answered {him} (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation who is speaking to whom here. Alternate translation: [He answered him]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

The children (ULT)

{They are} {the wives and} the children (UST)

Alternate translation: [They are the children and the wives] or [They are my wives and my children]

---

whom God has graciously given to your servant (ULT)

whom God has kindly given to me, sir (UST)

Jacob uses the phrase **your servant** to be polite and show respect to Esau; he was not actually Esau's servant. For some languages it is more natural to put the honorific title first in this sentence and say, "Sir, they are the wives and children whom God has graciously given to me."

Alternate translation: [whom God has kindly given to me, your servant] or [whom God has graciously given to me, sir]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- to your servant

UST

- God
- to me, sir

Genesis 33:6

ULT:
Then the maidservants came near, they and their children, and they bowed down.

UST:
Then the {two} servant wives with their children came forward, and they {all} bowed {to the ground} {in front of Esau} {to show respect}.

Then the maidservants came near, they and their children (ULT)

Then the {two} servant wives with their children came forward (UST)

See how you translated **maidservants** in verses 1–2. Alternate translation: [Then the two maidservants came closer to Esau along with their children]

---

and they bowed down (ULT)

and they {all} bowed {to the ground} {in front of Esau} {to show respect} (UST)

See how you translated **bowed down** in verse 3. Alternate translation: [and they all bowed to the ground in front of him to show respect]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the maidservants
- and they bowed down

UST
- the {two} servant wives
- and they {all} bowed {to the ground} {in front of Esau} {to show respect}

Genesis 33:7

ULT:
Then Leah also came near and her children, and they bowed down. Then after {that}, Joseph came near and Rachel, and they bowed down.

UST:
Next Leah and her children also came forward and bowed {to the ground}. Then last {of all}, Joseph and {his mother} Rachel came forward, and they {also} bowed {to the ground}.

Then Leah also came near and her children (ULT)

Next Leah and her children also came forward (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Leah also came closer to Esau along with her children] or [Next Leah and her children also came closer]

Then after {that}, Joseph came near and Rachel (ULT)

Then last {of all}, Joseph and {his mother} Rachel came forward (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then last of all, Joseph and his mother Rachel came closer]

---

and they bowed down (ULT)

and bowed {to the ground} (UST)

Some languages have a dual pronoun for **they** that fits here well. See what you did in verse 4.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Leah

- and they bowed down
- Joseph
- and Rachel
- and they bowed down

UST

- Leah
- and bowed {to the ground}
- Joseph
- and {his mother} Rachel
- and they {also} bowed {to the ground}

Genesis 33:8

ULT:
Then he said, “What to you {are} all these groups that I met?” And he said, “To find favor in the eyes of my lord.”

UST:
Then Esau asked {Jacob}, “Why did you send all those herds {of animals} that I encountered?” Jacob answered {him}, “{They are gifts for you} so that you will be kind to me, sir.”

Then he said (ULT)

Then Esau asked {Jacob} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Esau said to Jacob]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

What to you {are} (ULT)

Why did you send (UST)

Alternate translation: [What do you mean by] or [What is the purpose of]

---

all these groups (ULT)

all those herds {of animals} (UST)

Alternate translation: [all those groups of livestock]

---

that I met (ULT)

that I encountered (UST)

Alternate translation: [that I saw on my way here?] or [that came to me on my way here?]

And he said (ULT)

Jacob answered {him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Jacob said to him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

To find favor in the eyes of my lord (ULT)

{They are gifts for you} so that you will be kind to me, sir (UST)

See how you translated **my lord** and the idiom “find favor in … eyes” in Genesis 32:5.
Alternate translation: [I sent them so that you would be gracious to me, sir] or [They are gifts for you so that you would be pleased with me, sir]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- favor
- my lord

UST
- {They are gifts for you} so that you will be kind to me
- sir

Genesis 33:9

ULT:
Then Esau said, “I have plenty, my brother. Let what {belongs} to you be yours.”

UST:
But Esau replied, “My brother, I {already} have enough {animals}, {so} keep them for yourself.”

Then Esau said (ULT)

But Esau replied (UST)

What Esau says is in contrast to what Jacob said, but it may not be necessary to use a conjunction here at all. Alternate translation: [Esau said to him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

I have plenty, my brother (ULT)

My brother, I {already} have enough {animals} (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to put the address **my brother** first in this quote. Some languages also have a special term for “younger brother” that fits well here. Alternate translation: [My brother, I already own enough livestock]

Support Reference: Information Structure

Let what {belongs} to you be yours (ULT)

{so} keep them for yourself (UST)

Alternate translation: [Keep what you own for yourself] or [so keep your livestock for yourself]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Esau

UST

- Esau

Genesis 33:10

ULT:
But Jacob said, "No, please. If, please, I have found favor in your eyes, then take my gift from my hand. For indeed I have seen your face, {which is} like seeing the face of God, and you have received me.

UST:
But Jacob insisted, "Please do not refuse {my gifts}. {Rather,} if you want to be kind to me, then {please} accept these gifts from me. After all, for me to see your face is like seeing God's face, especially since you have welcomed me {so kindly}.

But Jacob said (ULT)

But Jacob insisted (UST)

Alternate translation: [But Jacob responded to him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

No, please (ULT)

Please do not refuse {my gifts} (UST)

In verses 10 and 11, Jacob speaks urgently to Esau, because in that culture if Esau accepts Jacob's gift, he is committing himself to treat Jacob as a friend. Alternate translation: [No, I beg you]

---

then take my gift from my hand (ULT)

then {please} accept these gifts from me (UST)

Alternate translation: [please accept from me what I have given you]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

For indeed (ULT)

After all (UST)

Alternate translation: [The fact is]

I have seen your face, {which is} like seeing the face of God, and you have received me (ULT)

for me to see your face is like seeing God's face, especially since you have welcomed me {so kindly} (UST)

In Old Testament times it was terrifying for someone to see God in person, because normally people could not see God's face and live (Exodus 33:20). However, God had been gracious to Jacob and allowed him to live (Genesis 32:30). In the same way, it was a terrifying thing for Jacob to see Esau who had 400 men with him, but Esau was gracious to him (33:4). See how you translated a different Hebrew word that means "receive" or "welcome" in Genesis 32:20. Alternate translation: [I thought you were still angry at me, so I was afraid of seeing you again in person, just as I would be afraid of meeting God in person, but you forgave me and welcomed me!]

Support Reference: Simile

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- favor
- God

UST

- Jacob
- {Rather,} if you want to be kind to me
- God

Genesis 33:11

ULT:
Please take my blessing that was brought to you, because God has been gracious to me, and because I have everything." And he urged him, so he took {it}.

UST:
{So} please accept my gift {of animals} that I sent to you, because God has been kind to me, so that I have all {that I need}." Jacob kept insisting {that Esau accept the animals from him} until {finally} he accepted {them}.

Please take my blessing that was brought to you (ULT)

{So} please accept my gift {of animals} that I sent to you (UST)

Alternate translation: [So please accept my gift of livestock that my servants brought to you] or [So please accept the livestock from me that I sent to you]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

because God has been gracious to me (ULT)

because God has been kind to me (UST)

Alternate translation: [because God has been generous to me] or [because God has blessed me]

---

and because I have everything (ULT)

so that I have all {that I need} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he has given me everything that I need] or [so that I own all that I need]

And he urged him (ULT)

Jacob kept insisting {that Esau accept the animals from him} (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation who and what is being referred to at every point in this sentence. Alternate translation: [He kept urging him to accept his gift] or [He kept insisting that he accept the livestock from him]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

so he took {it} (ULT)

until {finally} he accepted {them} (UST)

Alternate translation: [until finally Esau accepted it]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- my blessing
- has been gracious to me
- God

UST

- my gift {of animals}
- has been kind to me
- God

Genesis 33:12

ULT:
Then he said, “Let’s travel and go, and I will go in front of you.”

UST:
Then Esau suggested {to Jacob}, “Let’s start traveling {home}, and I will accompany you.”

Then he said (ULT)

Then Esau suggested {to Jacob} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Esau said to Jacob]

---

and I will go in front of you (ULT)

and I will accompany you (UST)

Esau is suggesting that he would accompany or escort Jacob and his family, not that he would go far ahead of them. Alternate translation: [and I will lead you]

Genesis 33:13

ULT:
But he said to him, "My lord knows that the children {are} tender and the flock{s} and the herd{s} {that} are nursing {are} with me. And if they drive them one day, then all the flock{s} will die.

UST:
But Jacob replied to him, "Sir, as you know, {my} children {are} fragile, and I need {to be careful with} {all} the sheep and cattle that are nursing {their young}. If I force the animals to go too far {for} {even} one day, all of them will die.

But he said to him (ULT)

But Jacob replied to him (UST)

Alternate translation: [But he replied to him]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

My lord knows that (ULT)

Sir, as you know (UST)

See how you translated "my lord" in verse 8. Alternate translation: [Sir, you know that]

---

the children {are} tender (ULT)

{my} children {are} fragile (UST)

Alternate translation: [my children are weak]

---

and the flock{s} and the herd{s} {that} are nursing {are} with me (ULT)

and I need {to be careful with} {all} the sheep and cattle that are nursing {their young} (UST)

See how you translated “flocks and herds” in Genesis 12:16. Alternate translation: [and some of my sheep and cattle are nursing their young]

And if they drive them one day (ULT)

If I force the animals to go too far {for} {even} one day (UST)

Alternate translation: [If my men drive the livestock too hard in one day] or [If I force the livestock to go too fast for even one day]

---

then all the flock{s} will die (ULT)

all of them will die (UST)

This phrase especially refers to the sheep and cattle that were nursing, but Jacob is probably using exaggeration here (**all**) to emphasize that he does not want to travel too fast. Alternate translation: [then all the flocks and herds will die] or [then all of them will die]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- My lord
- knows
- and the flock{s}
- and the herd{s}
- the flock{s}

UST

- Sir
- as you know

- and … {all} the sheep
- and cattle
- them

Genesis 33:14

ULT:
Please let my lord go on before his servant, and I will lead them on at my gentle pace, at the pace of the livestock that {are} ahead of me and at the pace of the children, until I come to my lord in Seir."

UST:
{So then,} sir, please go on {home} ahead of me, sir. I will travel along slowly at a safe pace for the animals and the children that are with me, until we reach you in {the region of} Seir."

Please let my lord go on before his servant (ULT)

{So then,} sir, please go on {home} ahead of me, sir (UST)

See how you translated Jacob's use of **my lord** (in verse 8) and **servant** (in verse 5) to show respect and deference to Esau. Here he uses both terms for emphasis.

Support Reference: Politeness

---

and I will lead them on at my gentle pace, at the pace of the livestock that {are} ahead of me and at the pace of the children (ULT)

I will travel along slowly at a safe pace for the animals and the children that are with me (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then I will travel along slowly at a speed that is good for the livestock and children that are with me]

---

until I come to my lord (ULT)

until we reach you (UST)

Alternate translation: [until we reach you, sir] or [We will catch up to you later, sir]

---

in Seir (ULT)

in {the region of} Seir (UST)

See how you translated “the land of Seir” in Genesis 32:3. The land of Seir was a mountainous region southeast of the land of Canaan (and the Dead Sea) and was where Esau had settled. It was also called “Edom” (Genesis 32:3), which was Esau’s nickname (Genesis 25:30). You could put some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [in the land of Seir]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- my lord
- his servant
- my lord

UST

- sir
- sir
- you

Genesis 33:15

ULT:
And Esau said, “Please let me leave with you some of the people who {are} with me.” But he said, “Why {do} that? Let me find favor in the eyes of my lord.”

UST:
So Esau responded, “{Okay, then} please let me leave with you some of my men {to escort you}.” But Jacob replied, “There is no need {for you} to do that. {Just} please {continue to} be kind to me, sir.”

And Esau said (ULT)

So Esau responded (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Esau said to Jacob]

Please let me leave with you some of the people who {are} with me (ULT)

Okay, then} please let me leave with you some of my men {to escort you} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Okay, then please let me leave you some of my men to escort you] or [Okay, then may I leave some of my men with you to escort you?]

But he said (ULT)

But Jacob replied (UST)

Make sure the way you translate this quote margin fits with how you translate the previous and following sentences. Alternate translation: [Jacob said to him] or [Jacob answered him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Why {do} that (ULT)

There is no need {for you} to do that (UST)

Jacob uses a rhetorical question here to emphasize that there is no need for Esau to leave any of his men with him. For some languages it is clearer and more natural to use a statement here instead.

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

Let me find favor in the eyes of my lord (ULT)

{Just} please {continue to} be kind to me, sir (UST)

Consider again how you translated **my lord** in verses 8, 13–15. For some languages it is more natural to put this address earlier in this quote. Also see how you translated the idiom **find favor in the eyes of** in verse 8. Alternate translation: [Just please continue to be gracious to me, sir] or [Sir, please just continue to treat me kindly]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Esau
- favor
- my lord

UST

- Esau
- {Just} please {continue to} be kind to me
- sir

Genesis 33:16

ULT:
So on that day Esau went on his way back to Seir.

UST:
So that {same} day Esau {and his men} started on their way back {home} to {the land of} Seir.

So on that day Esau went on his way back (ULT)

So that {same} day Esau {and his men} started on their way back (UST)

Alternate translation: [So that very day Esau and his men started on their way back] or [So that very day Esau and his men left and headed back]

---

to Seir (ULT)

{home} to {the land of} Seir (UST)

See how you translated **Seir** in verse 14. Alternate translation: [home to the region of Seir]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- on … day
- Esau

UST

- day
- Esau {and his men}

Genesis 33:17

ULT:
And Jacob traveled to Succoth, and he built a house for himself, and for his livestock he made shelters. For that {reason} he called the name of the place Succoth.

UST:
Meanwhile, {instead of going to Seir,} Jacob {and his family} traveled to {the town of} Succoth. There he {and his men} built houses for himself {and his family}, and they built {some} shelters for his animals. That is why the name of that place is Succoth, {which means "shelters."}

And Jacob traveled to Succoth (ULT)

Meanwhile, {instead of going to Seir,} Jacob {and his family} traveled to {the town of} Succoth (UST)

Jacob went northwest to Succoth, instead of going south to the region of Seir as he had said he would do (verse 14). Also see how you translated "travel" in verse 12. Alternate translation: [But Jacob went to the town of Succoth instead] or [Meanwhile, instead of going to Seir, Jacob and his family went to the town of Succoth]

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

---

and he built a house for himself (ULT)

There he {and his men} built houses for himself {and his family} (UST)

Alternate translation: [There he and his servants built a house for himself and his family] or [where he and his men built a house for his family]

---

and for his livestock he made shelters (ULT)

and they built {some} shelters for his animals (UST)

The term **livestock** is general here and includes all of Jacob's animals. Alternate translation: [and they also built some shelters for his livestock] or [and shelters for his animals]

For that {reason} (ULT)

That is why (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 32:32. Alternate translation: [Because of that]

---

he called the name of the place Succoth (ULT)

the name of that place is Succoth, {which means "shelters … } (UST)

The phrase "he/they called" could refer to Jacob, or it could refer to people in general (as it often does in Genesis). If you include the meaning of the name Succoth in your translation or in a footnote, make sure it matches the way you translate **shelters** earlier in this verse.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And Jacob
- to Succoth
- a house
- and for his livestock
- he called
- Succoth

UST

- Meanwhile, {instead of going to Seir,} Jacob {and his family}
- to {the town of} Succoth
- houses

- and … for his animals
- is
- Succoth, {which means “shelters … }

Genesis 33:18

ULT:
Then Jacob came {in} peace {to} the city of Shechem, which {was} in the land of Canaan, when he came from Paddan Aram, and he camped before the city.

UST:
{After that,} Jacob {and his family} continued their journey {home} from Paddan Aram, until they arrived safely at the city of Shechem in the region of Canaan. Then they set up their tents {in a field} near that city.

Then Jacob came {in} peace {to} the city of Shechem, which {was} in the land of Canaan, when he came from Paddan Aram (ULT)

{After that,} Jacob {and his family} continued their journey {home} from Paddan Aram, until they arrived safely at the city of Shechem in the region of Canaan (UST)

Jacob and his family had left Paddan Aram and had been traveling back to the land of his ancestors in Canaan (Genesis 31:3, 13, 18). See how you translated **in peace** in Genesis 28:21. Alternate translation: [Later Jacob and his family arrived safely at the city of Shechem in the land of Canaan, as he continued traveling home from the region of Paddan Aram] or [After that, Jacob and his family continued their journey home from the region of Paddan Aram, until eventually they arrived safely at the city of Shechem in the land of Canaan]

---

and he camped (ULT)

Then they set up their tents {in a field} (UST)

See how you translated **camped** in Genesis 26:17. Alternate translation: [and he set up camp in a field] or [Then he set up his tents in a field]

---

before the city (ULT)

near that city (UST)

Alternate translation: [near the city] or [on the edge of the city]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Aram
- Jacob
- Shechem
- {was} in the land of
- Canaan
- from Paddan

UST

- Aram
- Jacob {and his family}
- Shechem
- in the region of
- Canaan
- from Paddan

Genesis 33:19

ULT:
And he bought the portion of the field where he pitched his tent{s} from the hand{s} of the sons of Hamor, the father of Shechem, for a hundred kesitahs.

UST:
{While he was there,} he bought the land where he had set up his tents for a hundred pieces {of silver} from the descendants of Hamor, {who was} the father of Shechem.

And he bought the portion of the field (ULT)

{While he was there,} he bought the land (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then he bought the plot of land]

---

where he pitched his tent{s} (ULT)

where he had set up his tents (UST)

Alternate translation: [where they had set up their camp] or [where he were camping]

---

from the hand{s} of the sons of Hamor, the father of Shechem, for a hundred kesitahs (ULT)

for a hundred pieces {of silver} from the descendants of Hamor, {who was} the father of Shechem (UST)

The weight and value of **a hundred kesitahs** of silver is not known. Some ancient translations (including the LXX and Latin Vulgate) have “a hundred lambs” here, but most modern translations have “a hundred pieces of silver.” Alternate translation: [for one hundred pieces of money from the sons of Hamor who was the father of Shechem]

Support Reference: Biblical Money

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- his tent{s}
- Hamor
- Shechem

UST

- his tents
- Hamor
- Shechem

Genesis 33:20

ULT:
And there he set up an altar, and he called it El Elohe Israel.

UST:
Jacob {also} built an altar {out of stones} on that land, and he named it El Elohe Israel, {which means "God is the God of Israel."}

And there he set up an altar (ULT)

Jacob {also} built an altar {out of stones} on that land (UST)

See how you translated **altar** in Genesis 26:25. Alternate translation: [On that land Jacob also built a stone altar] or [Jacob also made an altar out of stones on that land]

---

and he called it El Elohe Israel (ULT)

and he named it El Elohe Israel, {which means "God is the God of Israel … } (UST)

The name **El Elohe Israel** could also mean "Powerful/Mighty is the God of Israel," because the Hebrew word **El** can mean "God" or "powerful." You could put that information in a footnote.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- an altar
- and he called
- El
- Elohe
- Israel

UST
- an altar {out of stones}
- and he named
- El Elohe Israel, {which means "God is the God of Israel … }

- El Elohe Israel, {which means “God is the God of Israel … }
- El Elohe Israel, {which means “God is the God of Israel … }

Genesis 34

Genesis 34:1

ULT:
Then Dinah, the daughter of Leah, whom she had born for Jacob, went out to see the daughters of the land.

UST:
Then {one day} Dinah, {who was} the daughter of Jacob and Leah, went out to visit with {some of} the local women.

Then Dinah, the daughter of Leah, whom she had born for Jacob, went out (ULT)

Then {one day} Dinah, {who was} the daughter of Jacob and Leah, went out (UST)

These events took place at an unspecified time after Jacob and his family set up their camp beside the city of Shechem (Genesis 33:18). Consider what is the best way to introduce a new event in your language. Also be consistent here with how you spelled **Dinah** in Genesis 30:21. Alternate translation: [Now one day Dinah, who was the daughter whom Leah had for Jacob, went out] or [One day, Dinah, who was the daughter of Jacob and Leah, went to the city]

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

---

to see (ULT)

to visit with (UST)

The idiom **to see** could mean: (1) “to visit with”; many languages have a similar idiom. (2) “to see or observe” the local women, for example, how they dressed and what jewelry they wore.

Support Reference: Idiom

---

the daughters of the land (ULT)

{some of} the local women (UST)

See how you translated **daughters of the land** in Genesis 27:46, and how you translated a similar phrase ("people of the land") in Genesis 23:7, 12. Alternate translation: [some of the women who were native to that area] or [some of the native women]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Leah
- she had born
- for Jacob
- the land

UST

- Jacob and Leah
- Jacob and Leah
- Jacob and Leah
- {some of} the local women

Genesis 34:2

ULT:
And Shechem, the son of Hamor the Hivite, the ruler of the land, saw her, and he took her and lay with her and violated her.

UST:
The chief of that region was a Hivite named Hamor. His son Shechem saw {how beautiful} Dinah was, so he grabbed {hold of} her and raped her.

And Shechem, the son of Hamor the Hivite, the ruler of the land, saw (ULT)

The chief of that region was a Hivite named Hamor. His son Shechem saw (UST)

Consider which order of phrases is best here in your language. Also see how you translated "Hivites" in Genesis 10:17 and **ruler** in Genesis 25:16. Alternate translation: [Then Shechem, who was the son of the Hivite named Hamor who ruled that region, saw] or [Now the ruler of that region was a Hivite named Hamor. His son Shechem saw]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

her, and he took her (ULT)

{how beautiful} Dinah was, so he grabbed {hold of} her (UST)

Alternate translation: [Dinah, and he grabbed hold of her] or [how beautiful Dinah was, so he took hold of her]

---

and lay with her and violated her (ULT)

and raped her (UST)

This is a euphemistic way of saying that Shechem forced Dinah to have sex with him. Translate this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people, especially when hearing your translation read aloud. Alternate translation: [and forced her to go to bed with him]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Shechem
- Hamor
- the Hivite
- the ruler of
- the land

UST

- Shechem
- was a Hivite named Hamor
- was a Hivite named Hamor
- The chief of
- that region

Genesis 34:3

ULT:
And his soul was attached to Dinah the daughter of Jacob, and he loved the young woman and spoke to the heart of the young woman.

UST:
Shechem admired Jacob's daughter Dinah so much that he fell in love with her and spoke sweetly to her {to try to woo her}.

and spoke to the heart of the young woman (ULT)

and spoke sweetly to her {to try to woo her} (UST)

See how you translated **young woman** in Genesis 24:14, and see the note about that there.
Alternate translation: [and spoke tenderly to her to try to persuade her] or [and tried to win her heart by speaking kindly to her]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Jacob
- and he loved

UST
- Jacob
- so much that he fell in love

Genesis 34:4

ULT:
Then Shechem said to Hamor his father, saying, "Get this girl for me as a wife."

UST:
Then Shechem said to his father Hamor, "Negotiate {things} for me so that I can marry this girl."

Then Shechem said to Hamor his father, saying (ULT)

Then Shechem said to his father Hamor (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Shechem went to his father Hamor and requested]

Get this girl for me as a wife (ULT)

Negotiate {things} for me so that I can marry this girl (UST)

At that time it was normal for parents to negotiate with another family to get a spouse for their child. The negotiations would include a bride-price and other details. You could put some of that information in a footnote. The term **girl** that Shechem uses here is less respectful than the term "young woman" that is used in verses 3 and 12.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Shechem
- Hamor

UST
- Shechem
- Hamor

Genesis 34:5

ULT:
Then Jacob heard that he had defiled Dinah his daughter, and his sons were with his livestock in the fields, so Jacob kept quiet until they came.

UST:
When Jacob found out that Shechem had dishonored his daughter Dinah, his sons were {still} {out} in the fields taking care of his animals, so he did not say anything {about it} until they returned {home}.

Then Jacob heard that (ULT)

When Jacob found out that (UST)

Alternate translation: [When Jacob was told by someone that]

---

he had defiled Dinah his daughter (ULT)

Shechem had dishonored his daughter Dinah (UST)

Alternate translation: [Shechem had disgraced his daughter Dinah] or [his daughter Dinah had been disgraced by Shechem]

---

and his sons were with his livestock in the fields (ULT)

his sons were {still} {out} in the fields taking care of his animals (UST)

Alternate translation: [his sons were still tending his livestock out in the fields] or [his sons were still out in the fields taking care of his livestock]

---

so Jacob kept quiet (ULT)

so he did not say anything {about it} (UST)

Make sure your translation of this phrase does not mean that Jacob was totally silent. Rather, it means he did not speak about what Shechem had done to Dinah.

---

until they came (ULT)

until they returned {home} (UST)

Alternate translation: [until they came back home]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then Jacob
- he had defiled
- his livestock
- Jacob

UST

- When Jacob
- Shechem had dishonored
- taking care of his animals
- יַעֲקֹב (ORIG QUOTE)

Genesis 34:6

ULT:
And Hamor the father of Shechem came out to Jacob to talk with him.

UST:
Meanwhile, {Shechem and} his father Hamor went to talk to Jacob.

And Hamor the father of Shechem came out (ULT)

Meanwhile, {Shechem and} his father Hamor went (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to introduce Shechem here, rather than wait and have him appear too suddenly in verse 11.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

to Jacob to talk with him (ULT)

to talk to Jacob (UST)

Alternate translation: [to talk with Jacob]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Hamor
- Shechem
- Jacob

UST

- {Shechem and} his father Hamor
- {Shechem and} his father Hamor
- to talk to Jacob

Genesis 34:7

ULT:
Then the sons of Jacob came from the fields. When they heard, then the men were grieved and it burned within them greatly, because he had done something disgraceful to Israel by lying with the daughter of Jacob, and such a thing should not have been done!

UST:
Soon Jacob's sons returned {home} from the fields. When they heard {what had happened}, they were shocked and extremely angry that Shechem had dishonored {the people of} Israel by raping Jacob's daughter. No one should ever do such a {horrible} thing!

When they heard (ULT)

When they heard {what had happened} (UST)

Many translations put "when they heard" with the previous sentence. However, unless someone else told Jacob's sons the news of what happened, that interpretation contradicts verse 5, which says that Jacob kept quiet about it until his sons got home. Alternate translation: [When they heard that Shechem had raped their sister]

---

then the men were grieved (ULT)

they were shocked (UST)

See how you translated **grieved** in Genesis 6:6. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [they were very shocked]

---

and it burned within them greatly (ULT)

and extremely angry (UST)

See how you translated the idiom "it/anger burned within …" in Genesis 32:36. Alternate translation: [and filled with anger]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

because he had done something disgraceful to Israel (ULT)

that Shechem had dishonored {the people of} Israel (UST)

Notice in this verse that the Hebrew text has both of Jacob's names, **Jacob** and "Israel," to emphasize that Shechem had sinned against Jacob and all of his descendants (the people of Israel). You could put that information in a footnote. Make sure that your translation of **Israel** does not refer here to a place, since Israel was not yet a country or a territory. Alternate translation: [that Shechem had disgraced the family of Israel]

---

and such a thing should not have been done (ULT)

No one should ever do such a {horrible} thing (UST)

Alternate translation: [Such a wicked thing should never be done by anyone!] or [No one should ever do such a wicked crime!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- something disgraceful
- to Israel
- Jacob

UST

- Jacob
- Shechem had dishonored
- {the people of} Israel
- Jacob

Genesis 34:8

ULT:
But Hamor spoke with them, saying, "Shechem my son, his soul is attached to your daughter. Please give her to him as a wife.

UST:
But Hamor urged Jacob and his sons, "My son Shechem deeply loves your daughter {and sister}. {So} please allow him to marry her.

But Hamor spoke with them, saying (ULT)

But Hamor urged Jacob and his sons (UST)

Alternate translation: [But Hamor pleaded with Jacob and his sons and said] or [But Hamor begged Jacob and his sons]

---

to your daughter (ULT)

your daughter {and sister} (UST)

The pronoun **your** is plural here, which shows that Hamor is addressing not only Jacob but also his sons. Alternate translation: [My son Shechem has fallen completely in love with your daughter and sister]

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

Please give her to him as a wife (ULT)

{So} please allow him to marry her (UST)

The way **give** and "take" are used in verses 8, 9, 12, 16 and 21 reflects the culture at that time, when parents or families arranged marriages for their daughters. Also see the note about this at verse 4. Alternate translation: [So please permit him to marry her]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Hamor
- Shechem

UST

- Hamor
- Shechem

Genesis 34:9

ULT:
And intermarry with us: Give your daughters to us, and take our daughters for yourselves,

UST:
{In fact,} let's allow marriage between our two peoples, {so that} your daughters can marry our {young men} and your {young men} can marry our daughters.

Give your daughters to us, and take our daughters for yourselves (ULT)

{so that} your daughters can marry our {young men} and your {young men} can marry our daughters (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that your daughters will marry our young men and your young men will marry our daughters] or [so that you allow our young men to marry your daughters and we allow your young men to marry our daughters]

Genesis 34:10

ULT:
and settle with us. And the land is before you. Settle and trade in it, and acquire {property} in it.”

UST:
You can live among us. The land is available for you {to choose what you want}; live {in it} {wherever you want}. You can {also} trade {freely} here, and you can buy {your own} {land}.”

and settle with us (ULT)

You can live among us (UST)

Alternate translation: [You can also live among us] or [We also invite you to live among us]

And the land is before you. Settle and trade in it (ULT)

The land is available for you {to choose what you want}; live {in it} {wherever you want}. You can {also} trade {freely} here (UST)

Normally foreigners were not allowed to own land or to move around in the land to trade freely. So that is why Hamor is offering this in exchange for Jacob allowing his family to intermarry with the Hivites. Alternate translation: [The land is available for you to choose what you want; settle in it wherever you want. You can also trade freely here] or [You can settle wherever you want in the land. You can also do business buying and selling things wherever you want]

---

and acquire {property} in it (ULT)

and you can buy {your own} {land} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and you can buy your own property]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And the land
- and acquire {property}

UST

- The land
- and you can buy {your own} {land}

Genesis 34:11

ULT:
Then Shechem said to her father and to her brothers, "Let me find favor in your eyes, and what you say to me I will give.

UST:
Then Shechem said to Dinah's father and brothers, "{Please} be kind to me {and let me marry her}. Then I will pay {you} whatever you request from me {for her}.

and what you say to me I will give (ULT)

Then I will pay {you} whatever you request from me {for her} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then I will give you whatever you ask from me for her]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Shechem
- favor

UST
- Shechem
- Please} be kind to me {and let me marry her}

Genesis 34:12

ULT:
Increase greatly the dowry and gift for me, and I will give according to what you say to me. Then give the young woman to me as a wife.”

UST:
Set the bride-price and {marriage} gifts {that I must pay} {for her} as high as you want, and I will pay {you} whatever you ask from me. {Just please} give the young woman to me to marry.”

Increase greatly the dowry and gift for me (ULT)

Set the bride-price and {marriage} gifts {that I must pay} {for her} as high as you want (UST)

The **dowry** was the payment that a groom (and his family) had to give to the bride’s family. It could include things like money, land, and livestock. The term **gift** probably refers to additional gifts given to the bride and her family members (as in Genesis 24:53). If the custom of paying a dowry is not known in your culture, you could include an explanation in a footnote. Alternate translation: [Set the dowry and wedding gifts that I must pay to marry her as high as you want]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

---

and I will give according to what you say to me (ULT)

and I will pay {you} whatever you ask from me (UST)

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 11. Alternate translation: [and I will give you whatever you ask from me]

Then give the young woman to me as a wife (ULT)

{Just please} give the young woman to me to marry (UST)

See how you translated **young woman** in verse 3. Alternate translation: [Only please let me marry the young woman]

Genesis 34:13

ULT:
Then the sons of Jacob answered Shechem and Hamor his father with deceit when they spoke, because he had defiled Dinah their sister.

UST:
But since Shechem had dishonored their sister Dinah, Jacob's sons replied to him and his father Hamor in a deceitful way.

because he had defiled Dinah their sister (ULT)

since Shechem had dishonored their sister Dinah (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, "But because/since Shechem had defiled/dishonored their sister Dinah, the sons of Jacob deceived/ tricked Shechem and his father Hamor 14 by saying to them," Alternate translation: [because he had disgraced their sister Dinah] or [because he had done a shameful thing to their sister Dinah]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Jacob
- Shechem
- Hamor
- with deceit
- he had defiled

UST
- Jacob
- to him
- Hamor
- in a deceitful way
- since Shechem had dishonored

Genesis 34:14

ULT:
And they said to them, “We are not able to do this thing, to give our sister to a man who has a foreskin, because that {is} a disgrace to us!

UST:
They said to them, “It would not be acceptable for us to let our sister marry a man {like you} who is not circumcised, because that would dishonor our family!

And they said to them (ULT)

They said to them (UST)

Alternate translation: [and said to them]

We are not able to do this thing (ULT)

It would not be acceptable for us (UST)

Alternate translation: [We are not able to do such a thing as] or [It would be not be right for us]

---

to give our sister to a man who has a foreskin (ULT)

to let our sister marry a man {like you} who is not circumcised (UST)

Translate **who has a foreskin** in a way that will not offend or embarrass people, especially when hearing your translation read aloud. Alternate translation: [to let our sister marry a man like you who has not had his foreskin removed] or [to allow a man like you who is not circumcised to marry our sister]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

because that {is} a disgrace to us (ULT)

because that would dishonor our family (UST)

Alternate translation: [because that would humiliate our family!] or [That would cause great shame to our family!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- a disgrace

UST

- would dishonor

Genesis 34:15

ULT:
Only on this {condition} will we consent with you: if you become like us by every male among you being circumcised.

UST:
The only way that we can agree with your proposal {is} if {first} you {and your people} become like us by circumcising all of your males.

Only on this {condition} will we consent with you (ULT)

The only way that we can agree with your proposal {is} (UST)

Alternate translation: [The only way that we will agree with your proposal is] or [We will do what you ask only if you do this one thing:]

---

if you become like us (ULT)

if {first} you {and your people} become like us (UST)

Alternate translation: [You and your people must first become like us]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- by … being circumcised

UST

- by circumcising

Genesis 34:16

ULT:
Then we will give our daughters to you, and we will take your daughters for us. And we will settle with you, and we will become one people.

UST:
{If you do that,} then we will allow your {young} men to marry our daughters, and {we will allow} your daughters to marry our {young men}. We will {also} live among you {in this land}, so that we become one people group.

Then we will give our daughters to you, and we will take your daughters for us (ULT)

If you do that,} then we will allow your {young} men to marry our daughters, and {we will allow} your daughters to marry our {young men} (UST)

The pronouns "we," "our," and **us** are exclusive in verses 14–17 except for the last **we** in verse 16. Also see how you translated "give … daughters … take … daughters …" in verse 9. Alternate translation: [Then we will let our daughters marry your young men, and our young men will marry your daughters] or [After you do that, then we will allow your young men to marry our daughters, and we will allow your daughters to marry our young men]

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

And we will settle with you (ULT)

We will {also} live among you {in this land} (UST)

See how you translated **settle with** in verse 10. Alternate translation: [We will also settle among you in this land]

---

and we will become one people (ULT)

so that we become one people group (UST)

Here the **we** is inclusive because Jacob's sons are including Shechem and Hamor's people. If you have an inclusive form of this pronoun in your language, you could use it here. Alternate translation: [and as a result we will all be one ethnic group]

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

Genesis 34:17

ULT:
But if you will not listen to us to be circumcised, then we will take our daughter and go.”

UST:
However if you refuse to agree with our requirement that you circumcise {your people}, then we will take our sister and move {somewhere else}.”

But if you will not listen to us to be circumcised (ULT)

However if you refuse to agree with our requirement that you circumcise {your people} (UST)

Alternate translation: [But if you do not circumcise your males as we say]

---

then we will take our daughter and go (ULT)

then we will take our sister and move {somewhere else} (UST)

The phrase **our daughter** reflects the fact that Jacob’s sons are using their father’s perspective and authority here. If that is confusing, you could say “our sister” instead. See how you translated “our family’s daughter” in verse 8. Alternate translation: [then we will leave and take our sister with us]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- to be circumcised

UST
- that you circumcise {your people}

Genesis 34:18

ULT:
And their words were good in the eyes of Hamor and in the eyes of Shechem, Hamor's son.

UST:
What Jacob's sons said seemed good to Hamor and his son Shechem.

And their words were good in the eyes of Hamor and in the eyes of Shechem, Hamor's son (ULT)

What Jacob's sons said seemed good to Hamor and his son Shechem (UST)

See how you translated the idiom "good in … eyes" in Genesis 19:8. It may need to be translated in different ways, depending on the context.

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And … were good
- Hamor
- Shechem
- Hamor

UST

- seemed good
- Hamor
- Shechem
- his son

Genesis 34:19

ULT:
So the young man did not delay to do the thing, because he was delighted with the daughter of Jacob, and he was honored more than all of the house of his father.

UST:
So right away Shechem, who was the most respected member in his family, started to do what they required, because he was thrilled with Jacob's daughter.

So the young man did not delay (ULT)

So right away Shechem … started (UST)

Alternate translation: [So Shechem immediately started] or [So right away Shechem took action]

---

to do the thing (ULT)

to do what they required (UST)

Alternate translation: [to do what they proposed] or [to do their requirement]

---

and he was honored more than all of the house of his father (ULT)

who was the most respected member in his family (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause earlier in this sentence and say, "So right away Shechem, who was the most respected member in his father's household/family, started to do what they required, because he was thrilled with Jacob's daughter."

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the young man
- he was delighted
- Jacob
- was honored
- the house of

UST

- Shechem
- he was thrilled
- Jacob
- was the most respected
- member in his family

Genesis 34:20

ULT:
So Hamor and Shechem his son went to the gate of their city, and they spoke to the men of their city, saying,

UST:
In fact, he and his father Hamor went {straight} to their city entrance {for a town meeting}, and they told the elders of their city {about Jacob and his sons},

and they spoke to the men of their city, saying (ULT)

and they told the elders of their city {about Jacob and his sons} (UST)

In that culture the leaders of a city held their meetings at the main city gates (as in Genesis 23:3). Cities were surrounded by walls (that had gates) for protection. You could put some of that information in a footnote so that people understand what was happening. Alternate translation: [and they spoke to the city elders who had gathered there. They said] or [and they told the leaders of their city about Jacob and his sons]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Hamor
- and Shechem
- the gate of

UST
- he and his father Hamor
- he and his father Hamor
- their city entrance {for a town meeting}

Genesis 34:21

ULT:
"These men {are} peaceful with us, so let them settle in the land, and let them trade in it. And behold, the land {is} broad of hands before them. We can take their daughters for ourselves as wives, and we can give our daughters to them.

UST:
"These people are friendly toward us, so {let's} allow them to live in {our} land and trade {freely} here. After all, there is more than enough space in the land for them {too}. {Besides that,} {then} our {young} men can marry their daughters, and their {young} men can marry our daughters.

These men {are} peaceful with us (ULT)

These people are friendly toward us (UST)

Here **us** includes Hamor, Shechem and the men they are talking to. Alternate translation: [Jacob and his family are at peace with us]

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

---

so let them settle in the land (ULT)

so {let's} allow them to live in {our} land (UST)

See how you translated **settle** in verse 10. Alternate translation: [so we should let them live in our land]

---

and let them trade in it (ULT)

and trade {freely} here (UST)

See how you translated **trade in it** in verse 10. Alternate translation: [and let them buy and sell things wherever they want]

And behold, the land {is} broad of hands before them (ULT)

After all, there is more than enough space in the land for them {too} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Look, there is enough land to support them and us] or [After all, there is more than enough room in this land for them too]

Support Reference: Idiom

We can take their daughters for ourselves as wives, and we can give our daughters to them (ULT)

{Besides that,} {then} our {young} men can marry their daughters, and their {young} men can marry our daughters (UST)

See how you translated similar clauses in verses 9 and 16. It may be necessary to translate these in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [That way too, we can choose their daughters to be our wives, and we can let their young men marry our daughters]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- {are} peaceful
- in the land
- And … the land

UST

- are friendly
- in {our} land
- After all … in the land

Genesis 34:22

ULT:
Only on this {condition} will the men consent with us to settle with us, to become one people: when every male among us is circumcised just as they are circumcised.

UST:
There is just one thing: They will only agree to live among us and become one people group {with us} if we circumcise all our males so that we are like them.

Only on this {condition} will the men consent with us to settle with us (ULT)

There is just one thing: They will only agree to live among us (UST)

See how you began verse 15, which is very similar to verse 22. Alternate translation: [There is just one requirement: They will only agree to settle among us] or [But they will only consent to live among us]

---

to become one people (ULT)

and become one people group {with us} (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 16.

---

when every male among us is circumcised (ULT)

if we circumcise all our males (UST)

The author says **when** to introduce an imaginary situation to help explain the condition under which **the men will consent with us to settle with us**. Use a natural method in your language for introducing an imaginary situation. See how you translated "every male among … circumcised" in verse 15. Alternate translation: [if all our males are circumcised]

Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

---

just as they are circumcised (ULT)

so that we are like them (UST)

Alternate translation: [as their males are]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- when … is circumcised
- are circumcised

UST

- if we circumcise
- so that we are like them

Genesis 34:23

ULT:
Their livestock and their property and all their animals, will they not {belong} to us? Only let us consent with them, and they will settle with us!"

UST:
{But if we do that,} {all} their property, {including} their livestock and all their {other} animals will belong to us! {So} let's just agree to do what they require so that they will live among us!"

Their livestock and their property and all their animals (ULT)

{But if we do that,} {all} their property, {including} their livestock and all their {other} animals (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then all their livestock and animals, and all their other property] or [But if we do that, all their possessions, including their livestock and all their other animals]

---

will they not {belong} to us (ULT)

will belong to us (UST)

This rhetorical question emphasizes that all of Jacob's livestock and property will belong to the people of Shechem. If a rhetorical question does not fit here in your language, you could make this a statement. Alternate translation: [will be ours!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

Only let us consent with them (ULT)

{So} let's just agree to do what they require (UST)

Alternate translation: [So we should just do what they propose]

---

and they will settle with us (ULT)

so that they will live among us (UST)

See how you translated **settle with us** in verses 10 and 22. Alternate translation: [so that they will settle among us!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Their livestock
- their animals

UST

- {But if we do that,} {all} their property, {including} their livestock
- their {other} animals

Genesis 34:24

ULT:
And all who went out of the gate of his city listened to Hamor and to Shechem his son, and every male was circumcised, all who went out of the gate of his city.

UST:
All {the men} who were leaders of the city agreed with Hamor and his son Shechem, so they circumcised every male in the city, including themselves.

And all who went out of the gate of his city listened (ULT)

All {the men} who were leaders of the city agreed (UST)

Make sure that your translation of this idiom refers here to the same men who had gathered at the city gates in verse 20. Alternate translation: [All the men who were elders of the city] or [All the men who were there at the city gate]

Support Reference: Idiom

And … listened to Hamor and to Shechem his son (ULT)

agreed with Hamor and his son Shechem (UST)

Alternate translation: [agreed to do what Hamor and his son Shechem said]

---

and every male was circumcised, all who went out of the gate of his city (ULT)

so they circumcised every male in the city, including themselves (UST)

Alternate translation: [so all of them and all the other males in the city were circumcised]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Hamor
- Shechem
- the gate of
- and … was circumcised
- the gate of

UST

- Hamor
- Shechem
- who were leaders of
- so they circumcised
- in the city, including themselves

Genesis 34:25

ULT:
Then it happened on the third day, when they were in pain, then two of Jacob's sons, Simeon and Levi, brothers of Dinah, each took his sword and went upon the city boldly and killed every male.

UST:
Three days later, when the men of {the city of} Shechem were {all} {still} sore {from being circumcised}, two of Jacob's sons, Simeon and Levi, {who were} Dinah's brothers, took their swords and attacked the city, with no one opposing them. They killed all the men {there}

Then it happened on the third day (ULT)

Three days later (UST)

Alternate translation: [On the third day after that]

---

when they were in pain (ULT)

when the men of {the city of} Shechem were {all} {still} sore {from being circumcised} (UST)

Alternate translation: [when it was still painful for the men of the city to move]

---

then two of Jacob's sons, Simeon and Levi, brothers of Dinah, each took (ULT)

two of Jacob's sons, Simeon and Levi, {who were} Dinah's brothers, took (UST)

These brothers had the same father and mother as Dinah. Some languages have a special term for this.

Support Reference: Kinship

---

his sword and went upon the city boldly (ULT)

their swords and attacked the city, with no one opposing them (UST)

See how you translated **sword** in Genesis 27:40. Alternate translation: [their swords and attacked the city, with no one resisting them]

---

and killed every male (ULT)

They killed all the men {there} (UST)

The children who were males were probably not killed, since later (verse 29) it says that all the children were captured. Alternate translation: [They killed all the males there]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- on the … day
- Jacob
- Simeon
- and Levi
- his sword
- and killed

UST

- days later
- Jacob
- Simeon
- and Levi
- their swords
- They killed

Genesis 34:26

ULT:
And they killed Hamor and Shechem his son with the mouth of the sword, and they took Dinah from the house of Shechem and left.

UST:
with their swords, including Hamor and his son Shechem. Then they got Dinah from Shechem's house and left {the city}.

And they killed Hamor and Shechem his son with the mouth of the sword (ULT)

with their swords, including Hamor and his son Shechem (UST)

Some languages have dual pronouns for **they** and "you" that can be used in verses 25–26 and 30–31 to refer to Simeon and Levi.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

---

and left (ULT)

and left {the city} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and returned home]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Hamor
- Shechem
- they killed
- the sword
- from the house of
- Shechem

UST

- Hamor
- Shechem
- הָרְגוּ (ORIG QUOTE)
- their swords

- from … s house
- Shechem

Genesis 34:27

ULT:
The sons of Jacob came upon the slain and plundered the city, because they had defiled their sister.

UST:
{Next} {all} Jacob's sons went {into the city} and took everything valuable from the dead bodies and from {the rest of} the city. {They did that,} because {that was where} Shechem had dishonored their sister.

The sons of Jacob came upon the slain and plundered the city (ULT)

{Next} {all} Jacob's sons went {into the city} and took everything valuable from the dead bodies and from {the rest of} the city (UST)

All of Jacob's sons probably joined Simeon and Levi in plundering the city, after those two had killed all the men there (verse 25).

---

because they had defiled their sister (ULT)

{They did that,} because {that was where} Shechem had dishonored their sister (UST)

See how you translated **defiled** in verses 5 and 13. Even though Shechem was the one who actually defiled Dinah (verses 2, 5, 7, 13), Jacob's sons held everyone in the city responsible for the crime that their ruler's son had committed (verses 25–29). If that is not clear, you could put that information in a footnote. Make sure that your translation of **they** does not refer to Jacob's sons. Alternate translation: [They did that because that was where Shechem had disgraced their sister] or [to get revenge for the shameful thing that had been done to their sister there]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Jacob
- they had defiled

UST

- Jacob
- Shechem had dishonored

Genesis 34:28

ULT:
They took their flock{s} and their herd{s} and their donkeys, and what {was} in the city and what {was} in the field{s}.

UST:
They plundered whatever was in the city and in the {surrounding} fields, including the people's flocks {of sheep and goats}, their herds {of cattle} and their donkeys.

They took their flock{s} and their herd{s} and their donkeys, and what {was} in the city and what {was} in the field{s} (ULT)

They plundered whatever was in the city and in the {surrounding} fields, including the people's flocks {of sheep and goats}, their herds {of cattle} and their donkeys (UST)

See how you translated **donkeys** in Genesis 32:15.

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- their flock{s}
- their herd{s}
- their donkeys

UST
- including the people's flocks {of sheep and goats}
- their herds {of cattle}
- their donkeys

Genesis 34:29

ULT:
And all their wealth and all their little ones and their women they took captive, and they also plundered everything that {was} in the houses.

UST:
They carried away all the valuable things the people of Shechem had owned, including everything that was in their houses. They also captured their women and children.

And all their wealth and all their little ones and their women they took captive, and they also plundered everything that {was} in the houses (ULT)

They carried away all the valuable things the people of Shechem had owned, including everything that was in their houses. They also captured their women and children (UST)

See how you translated **plundered** in verse 27. Alternate translation: [They carried away all the valuable things the people of Shechem had owned, including everything that was in their houses. They also captured all their women and children] or [They took away everything that was valuable and also captured all the children and women. They seized and took away everything that was in the houses]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- their wealth
- they took captive
- {was} in the houses

UST

- the valuable things the people of Shechem had owned
- They also captured
- was in their houses

Genesis 34:30

ULT:
Then Jacob said to Simeon and to Levi, "You have brought trouble on me by making me stink among {those} who live in the land, among the Canaanites and among the Perizzites! And I am few of number, and if they gather together against me and attack me, then I will be destroyed, I and my house!"

UST:
Later Jacob scolded Simeon and Levi {by saying}, "You have brought me {serious} trouble by causing the Canaanites and Perizzites who live in this land to hate us! I {only} have a few men {to defend us}, so if they {all} join {forces} against us and attack us, they will destroy us and {the rest of} our family!"

Then Jacob said to Simeon and to Levi (ULT)

Later Jacob scolded Simeon and Levi {by saying} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Later when they came home, Jacob scolded Simeon and Levi by saying]

You have brought trouble on me (ULT)

You have brought me {serious} trouble (UST)

Alternate translation: [You have caused me serious problems] or [You have put me in great danger]

---

by making me stink among {those} who live in the land, among the Canaanites and among the Perizzites (ULT)

by causing the Canaanites and Perizzites who live in this land to hate us (UST)

The idiom **making me stink** means Jacob's sons had caused him to have a very bad reputation, so that people would hate him and his family. Some languages have a similar idiom that fits well here. Also see how you translated **the Canaanites** and **the Perizzites** in Genesis 13:7; 15:20–21. There were other people groups also living in the land, but these two groups are the

ones being emphasized here. Alternate translation: [by causing the people who live in this land to despise us, including the Canaanites and Perizzites!] or [by causing the Canaanites and Perizzites who live in this land to hate me]

Support Reference: Idiom

And I am few of number (ULT)

I {only} have a few men {to defend us} (UST)

The words "I," "me," and **my** refer in this verse to all of Jacob's family; he uses these pronouns because he is the leader of his family. Alternate translation: [We only have a few men to defend us]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

---

and if they gather together against me and attack me (ULT)

so if they {all} join {forces} against us and attack us (UST)

Make sure your use of the pronouns **me** or "us" fits with the way you translate the rest of this sentence. Alternate translation: [so if they all join forces against me and attack me]

---

then I will be destroyed, I and my house (ULT)

they will destroy us and {the rest of} our family (UST)

Alternate translation: [then I and my family will be killed!] or [they will kill us and the rest of my household!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- Simeon
- Levi
- You have brought trouble
- in the land
- among the Canaanites
- and among the Perizzites
- then I will be destroyed
- and my house

UST

- Jacob
- Simeon
- Levi {by saying}
- You have brought me {serious} trouble
- in this land
- the Canaanites
- and Perizzites
- they will destroy
- and {the rest of} our family

Genesis 34:31

ULT:
But they said, "Should he have treated our sister like a prostitute?"

UST:
But Simeon and Levi responded, "Shechem should not have treated our sister like a whore!"

But they said (ULT)

But Simeon and Levi responded (UST)

Alternate translation: [But Simeon and Levi replied angrily]

Should he have treated our sister like a prostitute (ULT)

Shechem should not have treated our sister like a whore (UST)

This rhetorical question shows Simeon and Levi's anger and emphasizes that Shechem was wrong to do what he did and implies that he (and his city) deserved justice. Alternate translation: [He should not have treated our sister as a prostitute!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Should … like a prostitute

UST
- Shechem should not have treated … like a whore

Genesis 35

Genesis 35:1

ULT:
Then God said to Jacob, "Get up, go up to Bethel and settle there, and make an altar there to the God who appeared to you when you were fleeing from the presence of Esau your brother."

UST:
Then God commanded Jacob, "Leave here and move to {the town of} Bethel. Build an altar there {and offer sacrifices on it} to worship {me as} the God who appeared to you {there} when you were running away from your brother Esau."

Then God said to Jacob (ULT)

Then God commanded Jacob (UST)

Translate this quote margin in a way that is natural in your language and that fits with what God says. Alternate translation: [Then God told Jacob]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Get up (ULT)

Leave here (UST)

Alternate translation: [Get packed]

---

go up to Bethel and settle there (ULT)

and move to {the town of} Bethel (UST)

The verb **go up** reflects the fact that the town of Bethel is higher in elevation than the city of Shechem; it does not refer to the direction they were going, which was south. Many

translations leave **up** implied (to prevent confusion). Alternate translation: [and travel to the town of Bethel and live there]

---

and make an altar there (ULT)

Build an altar there {and offer sacrifices on it} (UST)

See how you translated **altar** in Genesis 33:20.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

to the God (ULT)

to worship {me as} the God (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that God is referring to himself as he speaks here to Jacob. Alternate translation: [to me as the God] or [to me, the God]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

who appeared to you (ULT)

who appeared to you {there} (UST)

See how you translated **appeared** in Genesis 26:2, 24. Alternate translation: [who came to you there] or [who introduced myself to you there]

---

when you were fleeing (ULT)

when you were running away (UST)

See how you translated “flee” in Genesis 31:20–21, 27.

---

from the presence of Esau your brother (ULT)

from your brother Esau (UST)

Alternate translation: [from the anger of your brother Esau]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Bethel
- God
- Jacob
- Bethel
- an altar
- Esau

UST

- and move to {the town of} Bethel
- God
- Jacob
- and move to {the town of} Bethel
- an altar
- Esau

Genesis 35:2

ULT:
So Jacob said to his household and to all who {were} with him, "Remove the foreign gods that {are} among you, and purify yourselves and change your clothes.

UST:
So Jacob told his family and everyone else who {was} with him, "Get rid of the idols you have that other people worship. Also wash and make yourselves clean and put on clean clothes.

So Jacob said to his household (ULT)

So Jacob told his family (UST)

Alternate translation: [So Jacob told the members of his family]

---

and to all who {were} with him (ULT)

and everyone else who {was} with him (UST)

This included Jacob's servants and the people (women and children) whom his sons had just captured from the city of Shechem (Genesis 34:29). You could put some of that information in a footnote.

Remove the foreign gods that {are} among you (ULT)

Get rid of the idols you have that other people worship (UST)

By **foreign gods**, Jacob means the idols that came to the Jews from the non-Hebrew people with whom the Jews had dwelt and even intermarried. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. See how you translated "idols" and **gods** in Genesis 31:19, 30, 32. Alternate translation: [Get rid of the idols you have that pagan ethnic groups worship] or [Give up the idols that you have from foreigners]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and change your clothes (ULT)

and put on clean clothes (UST)

Alternate translation: [and dress in clean clothes]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- his household
- the … gods
- and purify yourselves

UST

- Jacob
- his family
- the idols
- Also wash and make yourselves clean

Genesis 35:3

ULT:
Then let us get up and go up to Bethel, and there I will make an altar to God, who answered me in the day of my distress. And he has been with me in the way that I have gone."

UST:
Then we will leave here and move to {the town of} Bethel. There we will build an altar and worship God because he helped me during the time when I was in trouble. He has {always} been with us {and taken care of us} everywhere that we have gone."

Then let us get up (ULT)

Then we will leave here (UST)

See how you translated **get up** in verse 1. Alternate translation: [Then we must pack up our things] or [Then we must leave here]

---

and go up to Bethel (ULT)

and move to {the town of} Bethel (UST)

See how you translated **go up** in verse 1. Alternate translation: [and go to the town of Bethel]

---

and there I will make an altar to God (ULT)

There we will build an altar and worship God (UST)

The Hebrew text has **I** here, but probably also implies that others in Jacob's household would help him build the altar. Also see how you translated **make an altar** in verse 1. Alternate translation: [where I will build an altar to worship God] or [There I will build an altar and worship God]

---

who answered me (ULT)

because he helped me (UST)

Alternate translation: [because he answered me] or [who granted my prayers for help]

---

in the day of my distress (ULT)

during the time when I was in trouble (UST)

The phrase “In the day of” is used here as an idiom that could refer to the time when Jacob was fleeing from Esau, or it could be more general and also include other times when Jacob was suffering, such as the years he worked for Laban. Alternate translation: [during the days when I was in trouble]

Support Reference: Idiom

And he has been with me (ULT)

He has {always} been with us {and taken care of us} (UST)

See how you translated the idiom **with me** in Genesis 31:5, where it also means that God is not only present with him but also helps him and takes care of him. Alternate translation: [He has always stayed with me and taken care of me]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

in the way that I have gone (ULT)

everywhere that we have gone (UST)

Alternate translation: [everywhere that I have gone]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Bethel
- Bethel
- an altar
- to God
- in the day of
- my distress

UST

- to {the town of} Bethel
- to {the town of} Bethel
- an altar
- and worship God
- during the time when
- I was in trouble

Genesis 35:4

ULT:
So they gave to Jacob all the foreign gods that {were} in their hand{s} and the rings that {were} in their ears, and Jacob hid them under the terebinth tree that {was} by Shechem.

UST:
So they gave Jacob all their idols and {all} their earrings. Then Jacob buried all those things at the base of the oak tree that {was} near {the city of} Shechem.

So they gave to Jacob (ULT)

So they gave Jacob (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then they gave Jacob] or [Then they turned over to Jacob]

---

all the foreign gods that {were} in their hand{s} (ULT)

all their idols (UST)

See how you translated **foreign gods** in verse 2. You could translate this differently here since this is the second time they are mentioned in this paragraph. Alternate translation: [all the pagan gods that they had with them]

---

and the rings that {were} in their ears (ULT)

and {all} their earrings (UST)

The implication is that these earrings were part of their idol worship and may have had images of their idols on them. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and the earrings they wore on their ears]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and Jacob hid them (ULT)

Then Jacob buried all those things (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Jacob hid everything in the ground] or [Then Jacob hid all those things in the ground]

---

under (ULT)

at the base of (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Jacob buried these things in the ground beside the tree, not directly under the trunk of the tree. Alternate translation: [beside] or [at the foot of]

---

the terebinth tree (ULT)

the oak tree (UST)

Although this phrase refers to a terebinth tree, many translations have “oak tree” instead, or some other type of large, strong tree that is well known. See how you translated a different Hebrew word that is also translated **terebinth tree** or “oak tree” in Genesis 12:6; 13:18; 14:13; 18:1. Another Hebrew word in Genesis 35:8 is also translated as “oak.” Alternate translation: [a oak tree]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- the … gods
- foreign
- and … hid
- Jacob

UST

- Jacob
- idols
- הַנֵּכָר (ORIG QUOTE)
- Then … buried
- Jacob

Genesis 35:5

ULT:
Then they set out, and the dread of God was on the cities that {were} around them, so that they did not pursue after the sons of Jacob.

UST:
Then Jacob and everyone with him left that place, and God caused {the people in} the surrounding towns to be terrified, so that they did not attack Jacob's family.

Then they set out (ULT)

Then Jacob and everyone with him left that place (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then they all left there and started traveling]

---

and the dread of God was on the cities that {were} around them, so that … not (ULT)

and God caused {the people in} the surrounding towns to be terrified, so that … not (UST)

The Hebrew word "Elohim" probably means **God** in this phrase (as it usually does in the Bible); most English versions translate it that way here. Or it could be an adjective that modifies "dread/terror" and means "great/deep dread/terror" (similar to Genesis 23:6, 30:8). See how you translated **dread** in Genesis 9:2. Alternate translation: [and God caused the people in the nearby cities to be afraid, so that] or [and God made the people in the nearby cities so afraid that]

---

so that they did not pursue after (ULT)

so that they did not attack (UST)

Make sure your translation of **they** refers here to the people in the surrounding towns, not Jacob's sons. Alternate translation: [no one attacked] or [none of them came after]

---

the sons of Jacob (ULT)

Jacob's family (UST)

Jacob's sons are mentioned here since they are in focus as the ones who just plundered the city of Shechem; Jacob and the rest of his family were there with his sons and were also in danger. Alternate translation: [them] or [Jacob and his family]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the dread of
- God
- Jacob

UST

- and God caused … to be terrified
- and God caused … to be terrified
- Jacob's family

Genesis 35:6

ULT:
Then Jacob came to Luz, which {is} Bethel, which {is} in the land of Canaan, he and all the people who {were} with him.

UST:
He and his family {continued traveling} in the region of Canaan, and they arrived at {the town of} Luz, which {also has the name} Bethel.

Then Jacob came to Luz (ULT)

continued traveling … and they arrived at {the town of} Luz (UST)

Be consistent in this verse with how you spelled **Luz** and **Bethel** in Genesis 28:19. Alternate translation: [Soon Jacob arrived at the town of Luz]

---

which {is} Bethel (ULT)

which {also has the name} Bethel (UST)

See how you translated **which is** in Genesis 23:2, 19. Alternate translation: [which is also called Bethel] or [that is, Bethel] or [which now has the name Bethel]

---

which {is} in the land of Canaan (ULT)

in the region of Canaan (UST)

Since Shechem (verse 4) and Bethel were both in the land or region of Canaan, for some languages it is clearer or more natural to put this location phrase earlier in the verse and say, "Jacob/He and his family continued traveling in the land/region of Canaan and arrived at the town of Luz, which also/now has the name Bethel," Alternate translation: [which is also in Canaan]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

he and all the people who {were} with him (ULT)

He and his family (UST)

For some languages it is clearer or more natural to put this phrase near the beginning of this verse. Alternate translation: [he and his whole family]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Bethel
- Jacob
- {is} in the land of
- Canaan
- Bethel

UST

- Bethel
- יַעֲקֹב (ORIG QUOTE)
- in the region of
- Canaan
- Bethel

Genesis 35:7

ULT:
And there he built an altar, and he called the place El Bethel, because there God had revealed himself to him when he was fleeing from the presence of his brother.

UST:
There Jacob built an altar, and he named the place El Bethel, {which means "the God of Bethel,"} because that is where God had {first} appeared to him when he was running away from his brother.

And there he built an altar (ULT)

There Jacob built an altar (UST)

Consider again how you translated **altar** throughout the book of Genesis. See 8:20; 12:7–8; 13:4, 18; 22:9; 26:25; 33:20; 35:1, 3, 7. Alternate translation: [There he built an altar] or [Then he built an altar there]

---

and he called the place (ULT)

and he named the place (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he named that place] or [and he named it]

---

because there (ULT)

because that is where (UST)

Alternate translation: [because it was at Bethel that]

God had revealed himself to him (ULT)

God had {first} appeared to him (UST)

Compare how you translated a different Hebrew word that has a similar meaning (“appeared”) in verses 1 and 9. Alternate translation: [God had first introduced himself to him] or [God had first appeared to Jacob]

---

when he was fleeing (ULT)

when he was running away (UST)

See how you translated **fleeing** in verse 1. Alternate translation: [while he was running away]

---

from the presence of his brother (ULT)

from his brother (UST)

See how you translated **from the presence of** in verse 1. Alternate translation: [from the anger of his brother]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Bethel
- an altar
- and he called
- El
- Bethel
- God

UST

- El Bethel, {which means “the God of Bethel … }
- an altar
- and he named
- El Bethel, {which means “the God of Bethel … }
- El Bethel, {which means “the God of Bethel … }

- God

Genesis 35:8

ULT:
Then Deborah, the nurse of Rebekah, died and was buried below Bethel, under the oak tree. So he called its name Allon Bacuth.

UST:
{While they were there,} Deborah died. She was the servant that had helped raise {Jacob's mother} Rebekah {when she was young}. Jacob buried her body at the base of an oak tree, {in the valley} near {the town of} Bethel. So he named the place Allon Bacuth, {which means "oak tree of mourning."}

Then Deborah, the nurse of Rebekah, died (ULT)

While they were there,} Deborah died. She was the servant that had helped raise {Jacob's mother} Rebekah {when she was young} (UST)

See how you translated **nurse** in Genesis 24:59.

---

and was buried (ULT)

Jacob buried her body (UST)

Alternate translation: [and her body was buried by Jacob in the ground] or [They buried her body in the ground]

---

below Bethel (ULT)

{in the valley} near {the town of} Bethel (UST)

The town of Bethel was built on a hill, so the phrase **below Bethel** means that Deborah was buried near Bethel, in a valley or place that was lower in elevation than the town, and possibly to the south of it. Alternate translation: [in the valley below the town of Bethel] or [at a place south of the town of Bethel]

---

under the oak tree (ULT)

at the base of an oak tree (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase ("under the terebinth/oak tree") in verse 4. Many translations translate this phrase the same way in both places ("under an oak tree"), even though different Hebrew words are used for the type of tree. Also, for some languages it is more natural to put this phrase before the previous phrase and say, "at the base of an oak tree, below/near the town of Bethel." Alternate translation: [beside an oak tree] or [at the foot of an oak tree]

Support Reference: Information Structure

So he called its name (ULT)

So he named the place (UST)

So he called its name could mean: (1) that Jacob was the one who named the place. See how you translated a similar clause in Genesis 31:38. Alternate translation: [So he named the tree]; (2) that people in general called the tree or place Allon Bacuth. Alternate translation: [That is why the place is known as]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

Allon Bacuth (ULT)

Allon Bacuth, {which means "oak tree of mourning … } (UST)

If you include the meaning of this name in your translation text or in a footnote, make sure it fits with how you translated **oak tree** in the previous sentence.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Bethel
- Rebekah
- and was buried
- Bethel
- the oak tree
- So he called

UST

- near {the town of} Bethel
- {Jacob's mother} Rebekah
- Jacob buried her body
- near {the town of} Bethel
- an oak tree
- So he named the place

Genesis 35:9

ULT:
Then God appeared to Jacob again when he had come from Paddan Aram, and he blessed him,

UST:
Now that Jacob had returned from {the region of} Paddan Aram, God appeared to him {at Bethel} again. {There} God blessed him

Then God appeared to Jacob again when he had come from Paddan Aram (ULT)

Now that Jacob had returned from {the region of} Paddan Aram, God appeared to him {at Bethel} again (UST)

Alternate translation: [Now that Jacob had come from the land of Paddan Aram, God appeared to him at Bethel again] or [Now that Jacob had returned to Bethel from the land of Paddan Aram, God appeared to him there again]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

and he blessed him (ULT)

{There} God blessed him (UST)

Alternate translation: [and showed his goodness toward him]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Aram
- God
- Jacob
- from Paddan
- and he blessed

UST
- Aram
- God
- him

- from {the region of} Paddan
- {There} God blessed

Genesis 35:10

ULT:
and God said to him, "Your name {is} Jacob. Your name will not be called Jacob anymore, but Israel will be your name!" So he called his name Israel.

UST:
and said to him, "{Although} your name {has been} Jacob, that will no longer be your name. Rather, you will have the name Israel!" So {once again} God gave Jacob the name Israel.

and God said to him (ULT)

and said to him (UST)

What God says to Jacob in verses 10–12 is the blessing. So make sure your translation of "blessed" (verse 9) and **said** (verse 10) refers to the same event, not two separate events. See how you translated "blessed … and said" in Genesis 1:28. Alternate translation: [by saying to him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Your name {is} Jacob (ULT)

{Although} your name {has been} Jacob (UST)

Make sure your translation of this clause does not sound like God was telling Jacob something he did not know.

Your name will not be called Jacob anymore (ULT)

that will no longer be your name (UST)

Notice that Jacob is referred to by both of his names in this chapter (**Jacob** in verses 11–20, 22–29; **Israel** in verses 10 and 21). You could put that information in a footnote. Also see how

you translated this clause in Genesis 32:28, and see the note about Jacob's names there. Alternate translation: [that will no longer be your only name] or [it will no longer be that name]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

but Israel will be your name (ULT)

Rather, you will have the name Israel (UST)

Alternate translation: [Rather, your name will also be Israel!] or [Rather, you will also have the name Israel!]

So he called his name Israel (ULT)

So {once again} God gave Jacob the name Israel (UST)

This was not the first time God had given Jacob the name Israel (See: Genesis 32:28). To make that clear, you could make "once again" explicit here.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- {is} Jacob
- will … be called
- Jacob
- Israel
- So he called
- Israel

UST

- אֱלֹהִים (ORIG QUOTE)
- {has been} Jacob
- that will no longer be your name
- that will no longer be your name
- Israel

- So {once again} God gave Jacob the name
- Israel

Genesis 35:11

ULT:
Then God said to him, "I {am} God Almighty. Be fruitful and multiply. A nation and an assembly of peoples will be from you, and kings will come from your loins.

UST:
Then God {also} said to Jacob, "I am Almighty God. Have many children so that you {and your descendants} become {very} numerous. Your descendants will become a community of peoples, and some of your descendants will be kings.

Then God said to him (ULT)

Then God {also} said to Jacob (UST)

In verse 11, God continues the blessing that he started in verse 10, perhaps after a pause. Alternate translation: [Then God also said to him] or [Then God also blessed him by saying] or [God continued blessing him by saying to him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Be fruitful (ULT)

Have many children (UST)

Consider again how you translated **Be fruitful and multiply** in the book of Genesis. See 1:22, 28; 8:17; 9:1, 7; 35:11. It may be necessary to translate this phrase in different ways, depending on the context.

---

and multiply (ULT)

so that you {and your descendants} become {very} numerous (UST)

Alternate translation: [and increase in number] or [so that you and your descendants become very many]

A nation and an assembly of peoples will be from you (ULT)

Your descendants will become a community of peoples (UST)

Compare how you translated a similar phrase ("a multitude of nations") in Genesis 17:4–5 and another similar phrase ("a community of peoples") in Genesis 28:3. Alternate translation: [Your descendants will become a large people group. In fact, many ethnic groups will descend from you] or [Your descendants will become many ethnic groups]

---

and kings will come from your loins (ULT)

and some of your descendants will be kings (UST)

The phrase **come from your loins** is an idiom that refers to having children, grandchildren and other descendants. Consider whether you have a similar idiom in your language. Alternate translation: [and kings will descend from you]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- God
- Almighty
- Be fruitful
- and multiply
- A nation
- of peoples

- and an assembly
- and kings
- from your loins

UST

- God
- am … God
- Almighty
- Have many children
- so that you {and your descendants} become {very} numerous
- Your descendants will become a community of peoples
- Your descendants will become a community of peoples
- Your descendants will become a community of peoples
- and
- some of your descendants will be kings

Genesis 35:12

ULT:
And the land that I gave to Abraham and to Isaac I will give to you, and I will give the land to your descendants after you.”

UST:
{Besides that,} the land that I gave to Abraham and Isaac I {also} give to you and your descendants {who live} after you.”

And the land that I gave to Abraham and to Isaac I will give to you, and I will give the land to your descendants after you (ULT)

{Besides that,} the land that I gave to Abraham and Isaac I {also} give to you and your descendants {who live} after you (UST)

Alternate translation: [Also, I am giving to you the land that I gave to Abraham and Isaac, and I will also give it to your descendants who live after you]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the land
- to Abraham
- and to Isaac
- and … to your descendants
- the land

UST
- {Besides that,} the land
- to Abraham
- and Isaac
- and your descendants
- הָאָרֶץ (ORIG QUOTE)

Genesis 35:13

ULT:
Then God went up from him at the place where he spoke with him.

UST:
After God finished talking to Jacob, he left him there and went up {to heaven}.

Then God went up from him at the place where he spoke with him (ULT)

After God finished talking to Jacob, he left him there and went up {to heaven} (UST)

See how you translated **went up from** in Genesis 17:22. Alternate translation: [Then God left Jacob there where he had been speaking to him]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- God

UST
- he left him there

Genesis 35:14

ULT:
Then Jacob set up a pillar at the place where he had spoken with him, a pillar of stone, and he poured a drink offering on it, and he poured oil on it.

UST:
Then Jacob stood a {large} stone up {on its end} at the place where God had talked to him, to mark the place {as special}. Then he poured some wine and some {olive} oil on the stone marker {to thank God and dedicate the place to him}.

at the place where he had spoken with him, a pillar of stone (ULT)

at the place where God had talked to him, to mark the place {as special} (UST)

Alternate translation: [at the place where God had spoken to him, to mark the place as special] or [as a memorial stone to remember the place where God had talked to him]

---

and he poured a drink offering on it, and he poured oil on it (ULT)

Then he poured some wine and some {olive} oil on the stone marker {to thank God and dedicate the place to him} (UST)

A drink offering was probably wine that Jacob poured on the stone as a sacrifice to God, to worship and thank him. See how you translated "poured oil on …" in Genesis 28:18. Alternate translation: [Then he poured some wine and some olive oil on the stone pillar to thank God and dedicate the place to him]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- a pillar
- a pillar of
- a drink offering
- oil

UST

- Jacob
- a {large} stone
- to mark the place {as special}
- some wine
- some {olive} oil … to thank God and dedicate the place to him

---

Genesis 35:15

ULT:
And Jacob called the name of the place where God spoke with him Bethel.

UST:
Since God had talked to Jacob at that place, Jacob named it Bethel, {which means "God's house."}

And Jacob called the name of the place where God spoke with him Bethel (ULT)

Since God had talked to Jacob at that place, Jacob named it Bethel, {which means "God's house … } (UST)

See how you translated "called the name of that place Bethel" in Genesis 28:19.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Bethel
- And … called
- Jacob
- God
- Bethel

UST

- Bethel, {which means "God's house … }
- Jacob named it
- Jacob named it
- Since God had talked to Jacob at that place
- Bethel, {which means "God's house … }

Genesis 35:16

ULT:
Then they set out from Bethel, and there was still a distance of land to come to Ephrath. Then Rachel started giving birth but was having great difficulty while she was giving birth.

UST:
Later Jacob and his family moved on from Bethel and headed for {the town of} Ephrath. While they were still some distance from there, {his wife} Rachel went into labor, but she was experiencing great difficulty.

Then they set out from Bethel (ULT)

Later Jacob and his family moved on from Bethel (UST)

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Bethel** throughout the book of Genesis and whether you refer to it as a town or a city. See 12:8; 13:3; 28:19; 31:13; 35:1, 3, 7, 15, 16. Alternate translation: [Then they left the town of Bethel] or [Later Jacob and his family moved on from the town of Bethel]

---

and there was still a distance of land to come to Ephrath (ULT)

and headed for {the town of} Ephrath. While they were still some distance from there (UST)

The phrase **a distance of land** is very general, but your translation should not make it sound like the distance was too far, because Rachel's grave is about two kilometers (one mile) from Ephrath (Bethlehem). Alternate translation: [and started heading toward the town of Ephrath. But while they were still a distance away from there]

---

but was having great difficulty while she was giving birth (ULT)

but she was experiencing great difficulty (UST)

Alternate translation: [but she was having a very difficult time delivering the baby]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- from Bethel
- from Bethel
- land
- to Ephrath
- Then … started giving birth
- Rachel
- while she was giving birth

UST

- from Bethel
- from Bethel
- some distance from there
- {the town of} Ephrath
- went into labor
- {his wife} Rachel
- but she was experiencing great difficulty

Genesis 35:17

ULT:
And it happened when she was in hard labor, then the midwife said to her, "Do not be afraid, because this {is} also a son for you!"

UST:
Then when her labor pain was at its worst, {the baby was born and} the woman who was helping her deliver exclaimed to her, "Do not despair! You {now} have another son!"

And it happened when she was in hard labor (ULT)

Then when her labor pain was at its worst (UST)

The phrase **hard labor** refers to when childbirth contractions are close together and very painful, often right before a baby is born. Alternate translation: [Then when she was at the most difficult time in her labor] or [Then when her childbirth pains were the most severe]

---

then the midwife said to her (ULT)

{the baby was born and} the woman who was helping her deliver exclaimed to her (UST)

Alternate translation: [the midwife told her] or [the baby was born and the midwife who was helping her deliver exclaimed to her]

Do not be afraid (ULT)

Do not despair (UST)

Alternate translation: [Do not worry]

---

because this {is} also a son for you (ULT)

You {now} have another son (UST)

Alternate translation: [You now have another boy!] or [You just gave birth to another son]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- labor
- Do … be afraid

UST

- Then when her labor pain was at its worst
- Do … despair

Genesis 35:18

ULT:
Then it happened as her soul was leaving {her}—for she was dying, then she called his name Ben-oni, but his father called him Benjamin.

UST:
But Rachel was dying, and as her spirit was leaving her body, she named her baby Benoni {which means "son of my sorrow"}. But {later,} his father {Jacob} changed his name to Benjamin, {which means "son of my right hand."}

Then it happened as her soul was leaving {her}—for she was dying (ULT)

But Rachel was dying, and as her spirit was leaving her body (UST)

Some translations use an idiom here, for example, "as she was taking her last breath" or "as her life was slipping/fading away," but it is best to translate this in a way that preserves the biblical teaching that at death the soul or spirit leaves the body. Alternate translation: [But Rachel was dying, and as her soul was leaving her body] or [But in fact Rachel was about to die, and just before her soul left her]

---

then she called his name Ben-oni (ULT)

she named her baby Benoni {which means "son of my sorrow … } (UST)

The meaning of this name could imply that the child caused Rachel's death. In the Hebrew text this name is two words connected with a dash (**Ben-oni**). Many translations write it that way or as one word ("Benoni"), and a few translations write it as "Ben Oni." Any of these spellings is fine.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

but his father (ULT)

But {later,} his father {Jacob} (UST)

The pronoun **his** refers to Jacob. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

called him Benjamin (ULT)

changed his name to Benjamin, {which means “son of my right hand … } (UST)

The phrase “son of my right hand” is an idiom that means “favored son” or “son of strength.” Alternate translation: [named him Benjamin instead]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- then she called
- him
- Benjamin

UST

- she named her baby
- changed his name to
- Benjamin, {which means “son of my right hand … }

Genesis 35:19

ULT:
So Rachel died and was buried on the way to Ephrath, which {is} Bethlehem.

UST:
After Rachel died, they buried her body beside the road to {the town of} Ephrath, which {also has the name} Bethlehem.

So Rachel died and was buried (ULT)

After Rachel died, they buried her body (UST)

See how you translated **was buried** in verse 8. Alternate translation: [After Rachel died, her body was buried by Jacob] or [After Rachel died, Jacob buried her body]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

on the way to Ephrath (ULT)

beside the road to {the town of} Ephrath (UST)

Alternate translation: [beside the road that goes to the town of Ephrath]

---

which {is} Bethlehem (ULT)

which {also has the name} Bethlehem (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase (“which is Bethel”) in verse 6. Alternate translation: [which is also called Bethlehem] or [that is, Bethlehem]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Rachel
- and was buried
- to Ephrath
- Bethlehem

UST

- Rachel
- they buried her body
- to {the town of} Ephrath
- Bethlehem

Genesis 35:20

ULT:
And Jacob set up a pillar over her grave; that {is} the pillar of Rachel's grave to this day.

UST:
Jacob stood a stone up {on its end} on her grave {to mark where it was}. {In fact,} that {same} stone still marks Rachel's grave today.

And Jacob set up a pillar (ULT)

Jacob stood a stone up {on its end} (UST)

See how you translated this clause in verse 14. Also consider again how you translated **set up** and **pillar** in the book of Genesis. See 28:18, 22; 31:13, 45, 51, 52; 35:14, 20. Alternate translation: [Jacob set a large stone up on its end]

---

over her grave (ULT)

on her grave {to mark where it was} (UST)

Alternate translation: [over her burial place to show where it was] or [to show where her tomb was] or [to mark the place where he had buried her body]

---

to this day (ULT)

today (UST)

The phrase **to this day** refers to the time when the author (Moses) was living. Even in modern times, Rachel's grave is still marked beside the road about eight kilometers (five miles) south of Jerusalem and two kilometers (one mile) north of Bethlehem. Alternate translation: [in the present day] or [now]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- a pillar
- her grave
- the pillar of
- s grave
- Rachel
- this day

UST

- Jacob
- a stone
- her grave {to mark where it was}
- still marks
- s grave
- Rachel
- today

Genesis 35:21

ULT:
Then Israel set out and pitched his tents beyond Migdal Eder.

UST:
Then Israel {and his family} moved on {from there} and set up their tents on the south side of the tower of Eder.

Then Israel set out (ULT)

Then Israel {and his family} moved on {from there} (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation or in a footnote that **Israel** (verses 21–22) and "Jacob" (verses 20, 22) refer to the same person, not two different people. Alternate translation: [Then Israel that is, Jacob, and his family moved on from there] or [Then Israel and his family started traveling again]

---

and pitched his tents (ULT)

and set up their tents (UST)

Alternate translation: [and put up his tents]

---

beyond (ULT)

on the south side (UST)

This phrase reflects the perspective of Jacob, who was traveling south. Alternate translation: [on the other side of]

Migdal Eder (ULT)

of the tower of Eder (UST)

Many translations transliterate **Migdal Eder** (like most other names). Many others translate the meaning of **Migdal** as “the tower” and transliterate “Eder.” A few translate the meaning of the entire name as “the Tower of the Flock.” This was apparently a place near Bethlehem where sheep were raised (Micah 4:8); shepherds may have watched over their flocks from the tower. Alternate translation: [Eder Tower]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Israel
- his tents

UST

- Israel {and his family}
- their tents

Genesis 35:22

ULT:
And it happened while Israel was living in that land, then Reuben went and lay with Bilhah, the concubine of his father, and Israel heard. Now the sons of Jacob were twelve.

UST:
While they were living in that area, {Israel's son} Reuben committed adultery with his father's servant-wife Bilhah, and Israel found out {about it}. {With the birth of Benjamin,} Jacob {now} had {a total of} twelve sons.

And it happened while Israel was living (ULT)

While they were living (UST)

Alternate translation: [While Israel and his family were still living] or [During the time that they were living]

---

in that land (ULT)

in that area (UST)

Alternate translation: [in that region] or [there]

---

then Reuben went and lay with (ULT)

{Israel's son} Reuben committed adultery with (UST)

Translate this idiom in a way that will not offend or embarrass people, especially when read aloud in public. See how you translated "lain with" in Genesis 26:10.

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

and Israel heard (ULT)

and Israel found out {about it} (UST)

See how you translated **heard** in Genesis 34:5, 7. Alternate translation: [but Israel found out about it] or [and Israel was told by someone about it]

Now the sons of Jacob were twelve (ULT)

{With the birth of Benjamin,} Jacob {now} had {a total of} twelve sons (UST)

Alternate translation: [After the birth of Benjamin, Jacob now had a total of twelve sons]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Bilhah
- Israel
- in … land
- Reuben
- the concubine of
- Israel
- Jacob

UST

- Bilhah
- While they were living
- in … area
- {Israel's son} Reuben
- s servant-wife
- Israel
- Jacob {now} had

Genesis 35:23

ULT:
The sons of Leah {were} Reuben the firstborn of Jacob, then Simeon and Levi and Judah and Issachar and Zebulun.

UST:
The sons {he had} with Leah {were} Reuben, {who was} his oldest {child}, then Simeon, Levi, Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun.

The sons of Leah {were} (ULT)

The sons {he had} with Leah {were} (UST)

Throughout verses 23–26, many translations have a colon (:) instead of **were**. See what you did in chapter 10. Alternate translation: [The sons he had with his wife Leah were] or [These are the names of the sons he had with his wife Leah:]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Leah {were}
- the firstborn of
- Jacob
- Reuben
- then Simeon
- and Levi
- and Judah
- and Issachar
- and Zebulun

UST

- Leah {were}
- who was} his oldest {child}
- who was} his oldest {child}
- Reuben
- then Simeon
- Levi
- Judah
- Issachar
- and Zebulun

Genesis 35:24

ULT:
The sons of Rachel {were} Joseph and Benjamin.

UST:
The sons {he had} with Rachel {were} Joseph and Benjamin.

The sons of Rachel {were} Joseph and Benjamin (ULT)

The sons {he had} with Rachel {were} Joseph and Benjamin (UST)

Alternate translation: [The sons Jacob had with Rachel were Joseph and Benjamin] or [These are the names of the sons that Jacob had with his wife Rachel: Joseph and Benjamin]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Rachel
- {were} Joseph
- and Benjamin

UST
- Rachel
- {were} Joseph
- and Benjamin

Genesis 35:25

ULT:
And the sons of Bilhah, the maidservant of Rachel, {were} Dan and Naphtali.

UST:
The sons {he had} with Rachel's servant Bilhah {were} Dan and Naphtali.

(There are no notes for this verse)

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Bilhah
- the maidservant of
- Rachel
- {were} Dan
- and Naphtali

UST

- Bilhah
- s servant
- Rachel
- {were} Dan
- and Naphtali

Genesis 35:26

ULT:
And the sons of Zilpah, the maidservant of Leah, {were} Gad and Asher. Those {are} the sons of Jacob who were born to him in Paddan Aram.

UST:
And the sons {he had} with Leah's servant Zilpah were Gad and Asher. {All} those {are} the sons Jacob had {starting from the time that he lived} in {the region of} Paddan Aram.

And the sons of Zilpah, the maidservant of Leah, {were} Gad and Asher (ULT)

And the sons {he had} with Leah's servant Zilpah were Gad and Asher (UST)

Consider again how you translated **maidservant** throughout the book of Genesis. See 12:16, 16:1–3, 5–6, 8; 20:14; 24:35; 25:12; 29:24, 29; 30:4, 7, 9–10, 12, 18, 43; 32:5, 22; 33:1–2, 6; 35:25–26. It may be necessary to translate this word in slightly different ways, depending on the context. Compare that to how you translated a different Hebrew word that has a similar meaning ("slave/servant woman"); see 31:33 for a list of where this word occurs in Genesis.

Those {are} the sons of Jacob who were born to him (ULT)

{All} those {are} the sons Jacob had (UST)

Alternate translation: [All those were the sons Jacob had]

---

in Paddan Aram (ULT)

{starting from the time that he lived} in {the region of} Paddan Aram (UST)

Jacob started having children during the time he was living with Laban in Paddan Aram, but his last son Benjamin was not born until after they had left there (verse 18). Translate this in a way that allows for that.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Zilpah
- Aram
- the maidservant of
- Leah
- {were} Gad
- and Asher
- Jacob
- were born
- in Paddan

UST

- Zilpah
- Aram
- s servant
- Leah
- were Gad
- and Asher
- the sons Jacob had
- the sons Jacob had
- {starting from the time that he lived} in {the region of} Paddan

---

Genesis 35:27

ULT:
Then Jacob came to Isaac his father in Mamre, Kiriath Arba, which {is} Hebron, where Abraham and Isaac had sojourned.

UST:
Then Jacob went {home} to his father Isaac {in the city of} Mamre, which {also has the name} Kiriath Arba or Hebron, where Abraham and Isaac {and their families} had lived for a while {as foreigners}.

Then Jacob came to Isaac his father (ULT)

Then Jacob went {home} to his father Isaac (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Jacob came home to his father Isaac who was living] or [Then Jacob continued traveling and came to where his father Isaac was living]

---

in Mamre (ULT)

{in the city of} Mamre (UST)

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Mamre** in Genesis 23:17, 19.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

Kiriath Arba, which {is} Hebron (ULT)

which {also has the name} Kiriath Arba or Hebron (UST)

See how you translated Genesis 23:2, which says that Kiriath Arba (where Sarah died) was also known as Hebron. Alternate translation: [which is now called Kiriath Arba, that is, Hebron] or [which is also known as Kiriath Arba or Hebron]

---

where Abraham and Isaac had sojourned (ULT)

where Abraham and Isaac {and their families} had lived for a while {as foreigners} (UST)

Alternate translation: [where Abraham and Isaac and their families had stayed for a while as outsiders] or [That is where Isaac and his family had been staying for a while as foreigners and where his father Abraham had also stayed for a while]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- Isaac
- Hebron
- Abraham
- and Isaac

UST

- Jacob
- Isaac
- Hebron
- Abraham
- and Isaac {and their families}

Genesis 35:28

ULT:
And the days of Isaac were 180 years.

UST:
Isaac lived to be 180 years old.

And the days of Isaac were 180 years (ULT)

Isaac lived to be 180 years old (UST)

See how you translated **the days of** in Genesis 5:4–31 and 11:32.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the days of
- Isaac
- 180 years
- 180 years

UST
- lived to be
- Isaac
- 180 years old
- 180 years old

Genesis 35:29

ULT:
Then Isaac exhaled and died, and he was gathered to his people, old and full of days. And Esau and Jacob, his sons, buried him.

UST:
Then, after living a long, full life, he took his last breath and died, and he joined his ancestors {who had died before him}. Then his sons Esau and Jacob buried his body.

Then Isaac exhaled and died (ULT)

Then … he took his last breath and died (UST)

See how you translated **exhaled** in Genesis 25:8 and 17. Alternate translation: [Then he breathed out for the last time and died] or [Then he took his final breath and died]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

and he was gathered to (ULT)

and he joined (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 25:8 and 17. Alternate translation: [and he was taken by God to be with] or [and God took his spirit to be with]

---

his people (ULT)

his ancestors {who had died before him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [his relatives who had already died] or [his relatives who had gone before him] or [his deceased relatives]

---

old and full of days (ULT)

after living a long, full life (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to put this phrase earlier in this sentence and say, “Then, after living a long, full life, he breathed/took his last breath, died and joined his ancestors/ relatives who had died before him.” Alternate translation: [He was very old and had lived a long, full life]

Support Reference: Information Structure

And Esau and Jacob, his sons, buried him (ULT)

Then his sons Esau and Jacob buried his body (UST)

See how you translated “his sons … buried him” in Genesis 25:9.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Isaac
- days
- And … buried
- Esau
- and Jacob

UST

- יִצְחָק (ORIG QUOTE)
- after living a long, full life
- Then … buried
- Esau
- and Jacob

Genesis 36

Genesis 36:1

ULT:
And these {are} the generations of Esau, who {is} Edom.

UST:
Here {is} a record about the descendants of Esau, whose {name} was {also} Edom.

And these {are} the generations of Esau (ULT)

Here {is} a record about the descendants of Esau (UST)

See how you translated **the generations of** in 25:12, 19. Alternate translation: [Now this is the family-line of Esau] or [These are the descendants of Esau] or [Here is the history about the family of Esau]

---

who {is} Edom (ULT)

whose {name} was {also} Edom (UST)

The name Edom means “red” and is the nickname that Esau got for trading his birthright to Jacob for some reddish-colored stew (Genesis 25:29–34). The region of Edom and the Edomites were named after Esau, which is probably why this chapter repeatedly mentions that Esau is Edom. Alternate translation: [who was also called Edom] or [that is, Edom]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the generations of
- Esau
- Edom

UST

- a record about the descendants of
- Esau
- Edom

Genesis 36:2

ULT:
Esau had taken his wives from the daughters of Canaan: Adah, the daughter of Elon the Hittite, and Oholibamah, the daughter of Anah {and} the {grand}daughter of Zibeon the Hivite,

UST:
Esau had married {two} Canaanite women. {Their names were} Adah, {who was} the daughter of a Hittite {man} named Elon, and Oholibamah, whose father was Anah and whose grandfather was a Hivite named Zibeon.

Esau had taken his wives from the daughters of Canaan (ULT)

Esau had married {two} Canaanite women (UST)

Only the first two wives mentioned in this chapter were Canaanites; see the comment about Basemath at verse 3. The Canaanites were the descendants of Noah's grandson Canaan (Ham's son) and included the Hittites and Hivites (verse 2; Genesis 10:15–18) and several other people groups. You could put some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [Esau had chosen two of his wives from among the Canaanite women:] or [Esau had married two women who were descendants of Canaan]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

Adah (ULT)

{Their names were} Adah (UST)

Alternate translation: [whose names were Adah]

---

the daughter of Elon the Hittite (ULT)

{who was} the daughter of a Hittite {man} named Elon (UST)

Make sure your translation does not sound like Elon was the only Hittite. See how you translated “Hittites” in Genesis 27:46. Alternate translation: [whose father was Elon, who was a descendant of Heth] or [the daughter of a man named Elon, who was a member of the Heth people group]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

and Oholibamah (ULT)

and Oholibamah (UST)

Notice that the names of Esau’s two Canaanite wives here are different from the names of his wives mentioned in Genesis 26:34. It could be that they each had two names, or these may be different wives that he married later. Alternate translation: [and also Oholibamah] or [as well as Oholibamah]

---

the daughter of Anah {and} the {grand}daughter of (ULT)

whose father was Anah and whose grandfather was (UST)

Notice that Elon, Anah, and Zibeon are the names of men here, not women.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

Zibeon the Hivite (ULT)

a Hivite named Zibeon (UST)

Make sure that your translation of this phrase does not sound like Zibeon was the only Hivite. Consider again how you translated “Hivites” in the book of Genesis. See 10:17; 34:2; 36:2. Alternate translation: [Zibeon who was a descendant of Hivi] or [Zibeon who was a member of the Hivi people group]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Esau
- Canaan
- the Hittite
- the Hivite

UST

- Esau
- Canaanite
- a Hittite {man} named Elon
- a Hivite named Zibeon

Genesis 36:3

ULT:
and Basemath, the daughter of Ishmael {and} the sister of Nebaioth.

UST:
{Esau also married} Basemath, {who was} Ishmael's daughter and Nebaioth's sister.

and Basemath (ULT)

{Esau also married} Basemath (UST)

Since this Basemath was a daughter of Ishmael (who was a descendant of Noah's son Shem), she was not a Canaanite, in contrast to Esau's first two wives (verse 2). She was also known as Mahalath (Genesis 28:9); you could include some of that information in a footnote. Be consistent here with how you spelled Basemath (a different woman with the same name) in Genesis 26:34.

---

the daughter of Ishmael {and} the sister of Nebaioth (ULT)

{who was} Ishmael's daughter and Nebaioth's sister (UST)

Since Nebaioth was Ishmael's oldest child (Genesis 25:13), Basemath (Mahalath) was his younger sister, probably from the same mother. Use a kinship term here in your language that fits with those facts. See how you translated **the sister of Nebaioth** in Genesis 28:9. Alternate translation: [whose father was Ishmael and whose older brother was Nebaioth]

Support Reference: Kinship

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Ishmael

UST
- Ishmael

Genesis 36:4

ULT:
And Adah bore Eliphaz for Esau, and Basemath bore Reuel,

UST:
Adah had {a son} with Esau {whom they named} Eliphaz, while Basemath had {a son named} Reuel.

And Adah bore Eliphaz for Esau (ULT)

Adah had {a son} with Esau {whom they named} Eliphaz (UST)

Alternate translation: [Adah had a son for Esau whom they named Eliphaz]

---

and Basemath bore Reuel (ULT)

while Basemath had {a son named} Reuel (UST)

Consider whether or not it is best in your language to break this long sentence into two or more shorter sentences. Alternate translation: [while his wife Basemath bore a son named Reuel]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- And … bore
- for Esau
- bore

UST
- had
- with Esau
- had

Genesis 36:5

ULT:
and Oholibamah bore Jeush and Jalam and Korah. Those {were} the sons of Esau who were born for him in the land of Canaan.

UST:
Oholibamah had {sons named} Jeush, Jalam, and Korah. {All} those {were} Esau's sons whom he and his wives had {while they lived} in the region of Canaan.

Jeush and Jalam and Korah (ULT)

{sons named} Jeush, Jalam, and Korah (UST)

Alternate translation: [sons whom they named Jeush, Jalam, and Korah]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Korah
- bore
- Esau
- were born
- in the land of
- Canaan

UST

- Korah
- had
- Esau
- he and his wives had
- {while they lived} in the region of
- Canaan

Genesis 36:6

ULT:
Then Esau took his wives and his sons and his daughters and all the people of his house, and his livestock and all his animal{s} and all his possession{s} that he had acquired in the land of Canaan, and he went to a land from the presence of Jacob his brother,

UST:
Later Esau moved away from his brother Jacob. He took {with him} his wives, his sons, his daughters, and all the {other} members of his household, as well as his livestock and all {the rest of} his animals and all the {other} belongings that he had gotten in the region of Canaan.

Then Esau took his wives and his sons and his daughters (ULT)

Later Esau … He took {with him} his wives, his sons, his daughters (UST)

Alternate translation: [Later Esau took his wives, his sons, his daughters]

---

and all the people of his house (ULT)

and all the {other} members of his household (UST)

This phrase refers to other relatives (besides Esau's wife and children), as well as servants or slaves who lived with him.

---

and his livestock and all his animal{s} and all his possession{s} (ULT)

as well as his livestock and all {the rest of} his animals and all the {other} belongings (UST)

Alternate translation: [as well as his livestock and all the rest of his animals and all the other possessions]

---

that he had acquired in the land of Canaan (ULT)

that he had gotten in the region of Canaan (UST)

See how you translated **acquired** and **land of Canaan** in Genesis 12:5 and 31:18. Alternate translation: [that he had gotten while they lived in the land of Canaan]

---

and he went to a land from the presence of Jacob his brother (ULT)

moved away from his brother Jacob (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause at the beginning of this verse and say, “Then/Later Esau moved to a land that was away from his brother Jacob. He took with him his wives …” Alternate translation: [and he moved to an area that was away from his brother Jacob] or [and he traveled to a different region and settled there, away from where his brother Jacob was living]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Esau
- his house
- his livestock
- his animal{s}
- in the land of
- Canaan
- a land
- Jacob

UST

- Esau
- his household
- his livestock
- {the rest of} his animals
- in the region of
- Canaan
- moved away from
- Jacob

Genesis 36:7

ULT:
because their possession{s} were {too} great for them to remain together, and the land of their sojournings was not able to support them because of their livestock.

UST:
The reason {he moved away} is that he and Jacob {both} owned so many animals that they could not live together {in the same area}. The land where they were staying was {just} not big enough to support them {both} because they had so many livestock.

because (ULT)

The reason {he moved away} is that (UST)

Alternate translation: [He did that because] or [The reason Esau moved away is that]

---

their possession{s} were {too} great for them to remain together (ULT)

he and Jacob {both} owned so many animals that they could not live together {in the same area} (UST)

The phrase **their possessions** is general, but here it refers primarily to livestock. Make sure your translation of this phrase refers to both Esau and Jacob's livestock, not just Esau's.
Alternate translation: [he and Jacob both owned so many livestock that they could no longer live near each other] or [they both owned so many livestock that they could not live together in the same area]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

---

the land of their sojournings (ULT)

The land where they were staying (UST)

See how you translated Genesis 13:6, which is similar in content to this verse. Alternate translation: [The land where they were living]

---

and … was not able to support them because of their livestock (ULT)

was {just} not big enough to support them {both} because they had so many livestock (UST)

For some languages it is necessary to switch the order of verses 6 and 7, and say, “After a while, Esau and Jacob had so many animals and other possessions that the land was not able to support both their families. So Esau took his wives …” If you do this in your translation, you should label these verses as “6–7.” Alternate translation: [was just not big enough to feed them all because they owned so many animals] or [did not have enough grazing areas or water to support all the livestock that both families owned]

Support Reference: Verse Bridges

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the land of
- their livestock

UST

- The land
- because they had so many livestock

Genesis 36:8

ULT:
So Esau settled in the mountains of Seir; Esau, who {is} Edom.

UST:
That is how Esau {and his family} ended up living in the Seir Mountains. {That is the record about} Esau, that {is}, Edom.

So Esau settled (ULT)

That is how Esau {and his family} ended up living (UST)

Alternate translation: [That is why Esau and his family] or [That is the reason Esau took his family and]

---

in the mountains of Seir (ULT)

in the Seir Mountains (UST)

Esau had already been living in the region of Seir (Genesis 32:3, 33:16). Here he moves to the part of that region that had mountains. To make that clear, you could put that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [moved to the hill-country in the land of Seir] or [went to live in the Seir Mountains]

Esau (ULT)

{That is the record about} Esau (UST)

Alternate translation: [That is the history about Esau]

---

who {is} Edom (ULT)

that {is}, Edom (UST)

Some translations put this phrase earlier in this verse and say, “So Esau, that is, Edom, moved with his family to the mountains of Seir and settled there.” Alternate translation: [who was also known as Edom] or [who was also called Edom]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Esau
- Esau
- Edom

UST

- Esau {and his family}
- {That is the record about} Esau
- Edom

Genesis 36:9

ULT:
Now these {are} the generations of Esau, the father of the Edomites in the mountains of Seir.

UST:
Here {is} a {more detailed} record of the descendants of Esau, {who was} the ancestor of the Edomites {who live} in the Seir Mountains.

Now these {are} the generations of Esau (ULT)

Here {is} a {more detailed} record of the descendants of Esau (UST)

Consider again how you translated **generations** in the book of Genesis when it is followed by a genealogy (list of names). See 5:1, 10:1, 11:10, 25:12, 36:9. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [What follows is more of the history of Esau] or [This is a more detailed genealogy about the descendants of Esau]

---

the father of the Edomites (ULT)

{who was} the ancestor of the Edomites (UST)

Alternate translation: [who was the ancestor of the Edom people group]

---

in the mountains of Seir (ULT)

{who live} in the Seir Mountains (UST)

Consider again how you translated **mountains** or “hill country” throughout the book of Genesis. See 10:30; 12:8; 14:6, 10; 19:17, 19, 30; 22:2, 14; 31:21, 23, 25, 54; 36:8–9, and see the note about this at 10:30. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways,

depending on the context. Alternate translation: [who live in the Seir Hills] or [who live in the hill-country of Seir]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the generations of
- Esau
- the Edomites

UST

- a {more detailed} record of the descendants of
- Esau
- the Edomites

Genesis 36:10

ULT:
These {are} the names of the sons of Esau: Eliphaz, the son of Esau's wife Adah, and Reuel, the son of Esau's wife Basemath.

UST:
{Two of} Esau's sons {were} Eliphaz, whom he had with his wife Adah, and Reuel, whom he had with his wife Basemath.

These {are} the names of the sons of Esau (ULT)

Two of} Esau's sons {were} (UST)

Only two of Esau's many sons are listed in verse 10.

Eliphaz, the son of Esau's wife Adah (ULT)

Eliphaz, whom he had with his wife Adah (UST)

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Eliphaz** and **Adah** in verse 4. Alternate translation: [Eliphaz, who was the son of his wife Adah] or [Eliphaz, whom Esau had with his wife Adah]

---

and Reuel, the son of Esau's wife Basemath (ULT)

and Reuel, whom he had with his wife Basemath (UST)

See how you spelled **Basemath** and **Reuel** in verse 4. Alternate translation: [and Reuel, who was the son of his wife Basemath] or [and Reuel, whom Esau had with his wife Basemath]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Esau

- Esau
- Esau

UST

- Two of} Esau’s sons {were}
- his wife
- his wife

Genesis 36:11

ULT:
And the sons of Eliphaz were Teman, Omar, Zepho and Gatam and Kenaz.

UST:
Eliphaz {and his wife} had sons {they named} Teman, Omar, Zepho, Gatam, and Kenaz.

And the sons of Eliphaz were (ULT)

Eliphaz {and his wife} had sons {they named} (UST)

Alternate translation: [The sons of Eliphaz and his wife were]

Genesis 36:12

ULT:
And Timna was a concubine for Esau's son Eliphaz, and she bore Amalek for Eliphaz. Those {were} the grandsons of Adah, the wife of Esau.

UST:
Eliphaz and his servant-wife Timna had {a son they named} Amalek. Eliphaz's sons {were} {all} grandsons of {Esau and} his wife Adah.

And Timna was a concubine for Esau's son Eliphaz, and she bore Amalek for Eliphaz (ULT)

Eliphaz and his servant-wife Timna had {a son they named} Amalek (UST)

See how you translated **concubine** in Genesis 22:24, 25:6; 35:22. Alternate translation: [Eliphaz also had a servant-wife named Timna, and she had a son with him named Amalek] or [Eliphaz and his concubine Timna had a son they named Amalek]

Those {were} the grandsons of (ULT)

Eliphaz's sons {were} {all} grandsons of (UST)

Alternate translation: [All those sons of Eliphaz were grandsons of]

Adah, the wife of Esau (ULT)

{Esau and} his wife Adah (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Adah's grandsons were also Esau's grandsons.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- a concubine
- Esau
- and she bore
- Amalek
- Esau

UST

- Eliphaz and his servant-wife Timna
- עָשָׂו (ORIG QUOTE)
- had
- {a son they named} Amalek
- {Esau and} his wife Adah

Genesis 36:13

ULT:
And these {were} the sons of Reuel: Nahath and Zerah, Shammah and Mizzah. Those were the grandsons of Basemath, the wife of Esau.

UST:
Reuel's sons {were} Nahath, Zerah, Shammah, and Mizzah. They were the grandsons of {Esau and} his wife Basemath.

And these {were} the sons of Reuel (ULT)

Reuel's sons {were} (UST)

Alternate translation: [The sons of Reuel were named] or [Reuel and his wife had these sons:]

Those were the grandsons of (ULT)

They were the grandsons of (UST)

Alternate translation: [Those sons of Reuel were grandsons of]

Basemath, the wife of Esau (ULT)

{Esau and} his wife Basemath (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Basemath's grandsons were also Esau's grandsons. See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 12.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Esau

UST

- {Esau and} his wife Basemath

Genesis 36:14

ULT:
And these were the sons of Esau's wife Oholibamah, the daughter of Anah {and} the {grand}daughter of Zibeon: and she bore Jeush and Jalam and Korah for Esau.

UST:
Esau and his wife Oholibamah had sons {whom they named} Jeush, Jalam, and Korah. {Oholibamah was} the daughter of Anah and the granddaughter of Zibeon.

And these were the sons of Esau's wife Oholibamah (ULT)

Esau and his wife Oholibamah had sons (UST)

Alternate translation: [Here are the sons that Esau had with his wife Oholibamah]

---

the daughter of Anah {and} the {grand}daughter of Zibeon (ULT)

{Oholibamah was} the daughter of Anah and the granddaughter of Zibeon (UST)

See how you translated these phrases in verse 2. Alternate translation: [whose father was Anah and whose grandfather was Zibeon:]

---

and she bore Jeush and Jalam and Korah for Esau (ULT)

Esau and his wife … had … {whom they named} Jeush, Jalam, and Korah (UST)

For some languages it is clearer or more natural to change the order of clauses in this sentence and say, "Esau and his wife Oholibamah had sons whom they named Jeush, Jalam, and Korah. Oholibamah was the daughter of Anah and the granddaughter of Zibeon." or "The sons that Oholibamah had with Esau were Jeush, Jalam, and Korah. She was the daughter of …" Alternate translation: [She had sons whom they named Jeush, Jalam, and Korah]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Esau
- and she bore
- for Esau
- Korah

UST

- Esau and his wife … had
- Esau and his wife … had
- Esau and his wife … had
- Korah

Genesis 36:15

ULT:
These {were} the chiefs of the sons of Esau. The sons of Eliphaz, the firstborn of Esau, {were} Chief Teman, Chief Omar, Chief Zepho, Chief Kenaz,

UST:
Here {is} {a record of} the descendants of Esau {who became} clan leaders: The sons of his firstborn {son} Eliphaz {who became} clan leaders {were} Teman, Omar, Zepho, Kenaz,

These {were} (ULT)

Here {is} {a record of} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Here is a list of] or [The following are]

{were} Chief Teman, Chief Omar, Chief Zepho, Chief Kenaz (ULT)

{ … who became} were} Teman, Omar, Zepho, Kenaz (UST)

Alternate translation: [who became chiefs were Teman, Omar, Zepho, Kenaz] or [who became tribal leaders were Teman, Omar, Zepho, Kenaz]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the chiefs of
- Esau
- the firstborn of
- Esau
- {were} Chief
- Chief
- Chief
- Chief

UST
- {who became} clan leaders
- Esau
- his firstborn {son}
- his firstborn {son}

- who became
- אַלּוּף (ORIG QUOTE)
- אַלּוּף (ORIG QUOTE)
- אַלּוּף (ORIG QUOTE)

Genesis 36:16

ULT:
Chief Korah, Chief Gatam, Chief Amalek. Those {were} the chiefs of Eliphaz in the land of Edom. Those {were} the grandsons of Adah.

UST:
Korah, Gatam, and Amalek. They {were} the clan leaders {who descended} from Eliphaz {and lived} in the land of Edom. They {were} {all} grandsons of Adah {and Esau}.

Chief Korah, Chief Gatam, Chief Amalek (ULT)

Korah, Gatam, and Amalek (UST)

Make sure you are consistent in whether or not you use the title **Chief** in verses 15–16.

Those {were} the chiefs of Eliphaz in the land of Edom (ULT)

They {were} the clan leaders {who descended} from Eliphaz {and lived} in the land of Edom (UST)

Be consistent with how you spelled **Eliphaz** throughout this chapter; see verses 4, 10–12, 15–16. Alternate translation: [Those are the chiefs who descended from Eliphaz and lived in the region called Edom] or [All those sons of Eliphaz were tribal leaders who lived in the region of Edom]

Those {were} the grandsons of (ULT)

They {were} {all} grandsons of (UST)

Alternate translation: [They were the grandsons of]

Adah (ULT)

Adah {and Esau} (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Adah's grandsons were also Esau's grandsons. Also, be consistent with how you spelled **Adah** in the book of Genesis. See 4:19–20, 23; 36:2, 4, 10, 12, 16.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Korah
- Chief
- Chief
- Chief
- the chiefs of
- in the land of
- Edom

UST

- Korah
- אַלּוּף (ORIG QUOTE)
- אַלּוּף (ORIG QUOTE)
- אַלּוּף (ORIG QUOTE)
- the clan leaders {who descended} from
- {and lived} in the land of
- Edom

Genesis 36:17

ULT:
And these {were} the sons of Reuel, the son of Esau: Chief Nahath, Chief Zerah, Chief Shammah, Chief Mizzah. Those {were} the chiefs of Reuel in the land of Edom. Those {were} the grandsons of Basemath, the wife of Esau.

UST:
The sons of Esau's son Reuel {who became} clan leaders {were} Nahath, Zerah, Shammah, and Mizzah. They {were} the clan leaders {who descended} from Reuel {and lived} in the land of Edom. They {were} {all} grandsons of {Esau and} his wife Basemath.

Those {were} the chiefs of Reuel in the land of Edom (ULT)

They {were} the clan leaders {who descended} from Reuel {and lived} in the land of Edom (UST)

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 16. Also be consistent with how you spelled **Reuel** throughout this chapter; see verses 4, 10, 13, 17. Alternate translation: [They were the chiefs who descended from Reuel and lived in the region called Edom] or [All those sons of Reuel were clan leaders who lived in the region of Edom]

Those {were} the grandsons of (ULT)

They {were} {all} grandsons of (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verses 12, 13 and 16. Alternate translation: [All those sons of Reuel were grandsons of]

Basemath, the wife of Esau (ULT)

{Esau and} his wife Basemath (UST)

See how translated this phrase in verse 13 and a similar phrase in verse 12. Also be consistent with how you spelled **Basemath** in the book of Genesis. See 26:34–35; 36:3–4, 10, 13, 17.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Esau
- Chief
- Chief
- Chief
- Chief
- the chiefs of
- in the land of
- Edom
- Esau

UST

- Esau
- {who became} clan leaders
- אַלּוּף (ORIG QUOTE)
- אַלּוּף (ORIG QUOTE)
- אַלּוּף (ORIG QUOTE)
- the clan leaders {who descended} from
- {and lived} in the land of
- Edom
- {Esau and} his wife Basemath

Genesis 36:18

ULT:
And these {were} the sons of Oholibamah, the wife of Esau: Chief Jeush, Chief Jalam, Chief Korah. Those {were} the chiefs of Esau's wife Oholibamah, the daughter of Anah.

UST:
The sons of Esau's wife Oholibamah {who became} clan leaders were Jeush, Jalam, and Korah. They {were} the clan leaders {who descended} from {Esau and} his wife Oholibamah, {who was} Anah's daughter.

Those {were} the chiefs of Esau's wife Oholibamah (ULT)

They {were} the clan leaders {who descended} from {Esau and} his wife Oholibamah (UST)

Alternate translation: [They were the chiefs who descended from Esau and his wife Oholibamah] or [They were the tribal leaders …]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Esau
- Chief
- Chief
- Chief
- Korah
- the chiefs of
- Esau

UST

- Esau
- {who became} clan leaders
- אַלּוּף (ORIG QUOTE)
- אַלּוּף (ORIG QUOTE)
- and Korah
- the clan leaders {who descended} from
- {Esau and} his wife

Genesis 36:19

ULT:
Those {were} the sons of Esau, and those {were} their chiefs. He {is} Edom.

UST:
{All} those {clan leaders} {were} the descendants of Esau, that {is}, Edom, and each one led his own family group.

He {is} Edom (ULT)

that {is}, Edom (UST)

Some translations put this phrase earlier in this verse and say, “All those chiefs were the descendants of Esau, that is, Edom, and each one led his own family group.” See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 8. Alternate translation: [Esau was also known as Edom] or [Esau was also called Edom] or [That is the record about Edom]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Esau
- their chiefs
- Edom

UST
- Esau
- and each one led his own family group
- Edom

Genesis 36:20

ULT:
These {were} the sons of Seir the Horite who were inhabiting the land: Lotan and Shobal and Zibeon and Anah

UST:
Here is {a record of} the descendants of Seir the Horite who were {also} living in that land: Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah,

These {were} the sons of Seir the Horite who were inhabiting the land (ULT)

Here is {a record of} the descendants of Seir the Horite who were {also} living in that land (UST)

The name “Horites” is an alternate name for the Hivites (verse 2). Also, this genealogy is mentioned here because Seir was the ancestor of Esau’s Canaanite wife Oholibamah (verse 25) and the Seir mountains where Esau was living (verse 8) were probably named after Seir. You could put some of that information in a footnote. See how you translated “Horites” in Genesis 14:6. Alternate translation: [Here is a list of the descendants of Seir the Horite who were also living in that land:] or [The sons of Seir the Horite who were also living in that land were]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the land

UST
- that land

Genesis 36:21

ULT:
and Dishon and Ezer and Dishan. Those {were} the chiefs of the Horites, the sons of Seir, in the land of Edom.

UST:
Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan. They were the descendants of Seir {who became} clan leaders over the Horites in the land of Edom.

Those {were} the chiefs of the Horites, the sons of Seir (ULT)

They were the descendants of Seir {who became} clan leaders over the Horites (UST)

See how you translated the names of people groups in verses 2. Alternate translation: [Those descendants of Seir became the chiefs of the Horites] or [They were the descendants of Seir who became tribal leaders for the Horites]

---

in the land of Edom (ULT)

in the land of Edom (UST)

Alternate translation: [who were living in the region of Edom]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the chiefs of
- in the land of
- Edom

UST

- {who became} clan leaders over
- in the land of
- Edom

Genesis 36:22

ULT:
And the sons of Lotan were Hori and Hemam, and the sister of Lotan {was} Timna.

UST:
Lotan's sons were Hori and Hemam, and his sister {was} Timna.

And the sons of Lotan were Hori and Hemam (ULT)

Lotan's sons were Hori and Hemam (UST)

Some translations spell the name **Hemam** as "Heman" or "Homam." You could use any of these spellings in your translation.

---

and the sister of Lotan {was} Timna (ULT)

and his sister {was} Timna (UST)

Timna became a concubine of Esau's son Eliphaz (verse 12). This genealogy (verses 20–22) also shows that she was the daughter of Chief Seir (since her brother Lotan was the son of Chief Seir). You could put some of that information in a footnote. Also, according to Jewish history outside the Bible, Timna was Lotan's younger sister. If your language has a special term for "younger sister" or "older brother," you could use one of those here. Alternate translation: [and the name of his sister was Timna]

Support Reference: Kinship

Genesis 36:23

ULT:
And these {were} the sons of Shobal: Alvan and Manahath and Ebal, Shepho, and Onam.

UST:
Shobal's sons {were} Alvan, Manahath, Ebal, Shepho and Onam.

Alvan and Manahath and Ebal, Shepho, and Onam (ULT)

Alvan, Manahath, Ebal, Shepho and Onam (UST)

Alternate translation: [Alvan, Manahath, Ebal, Shepho, and Onam]

Genesis 36:24

ULT:
And these {were} the sons of Zibeon: both Aiah and Anah. He {is} Anah who found the hot springs in the wilderness when he was pasturing the donkeys for Zibeon his father.

UST:
Zibeon's sons {were} Aiah and Anah. This {is} {the same} Anah who discovered some hot springs while he was {out} in the desert grazing his father's donkeys.

He {is} Anah who found (ULT)

This {is} {the same} Anah who discovered (UST)

Alternate translation: [He is the same Anah who found] or [Anah is the one who found]

---

the hot springs (ULT)

some hot springs (UST)

The term used here in the Hebrew text occurs only once in the Bible and its meaning is not certain. Most translations have either **hot springs** or "water." Alternate translation: [water]

---

in the wilderness when he was pasturing the donkeys for Zibeon his father (ULT)

while he was {out} in the desert grazing his father's donkeys (UST)

See how you translated "pasture" in Genesis 29:7.

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the hot springs

- in the wilderness
- the donkeys

UST

- some hot springs
- while he was {out} in the desert
- donkeys

Genesis 36:25

ULT:
And these {were} the children of Anah: Dishon and Oholibamah, the daughter of Anah.

UST:
Anah's children {were} {his son} Dishon and his daughter Oholibamah.

(There are no notes for this verse)

Genesis 36:26

ULT:
And these {were} the sons of Dishon: Hemdan and Eshban and Ithran and Keran.

UST:
Dishon's sons {were} Hemdan, Eshban, Ithran, and Keran.

Hemdan and Eshban and Ithran and Keran (ULT)

Hemdan, Eshban, Ithran, and Keran (UST)

The Hebrew name **Keran** can also be spelled "Cheran." Each of these spellings is found in many translations. Be consistent here with how you spelled **Dishon** in verse 21.

Genesis 36:27

ULT:
These {were} the sons of Ezer: Bilhan and Zaavan and Akan.

UST:
Ezer's sons {were} Bilhan, Zaavan, and Akan.

These {were} the sons of Ezer: Bilhan and Zaavan and Akan (ULT)

Ezer's sons {were} Bilhan, Zaavan, and Akan (UST)

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Ezer** in verses 20–21.

Genesis 36:28

ULT:
These {were} the sons of Dishan: Uz and Aran.

UST:
Dishan's sons {were} Uz and Aran.

(There are no notes for this verse)

Genesis 36:29

ULT:
These {were} the chiefs of the Horites: Chief Lotan, Chief Shobal, Chief Zibeon, Chief Anah,

UST:
The Horites {who became} clan leaders {were} Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah,

These {were} the chiefs of the Horites (ULT)

The Horites {who became} clan leaders {were} (UST)

Alternate translation: [The leaders over the Horite clans were] or [The Horites who became chiefs were]

Chief Lotan, Chief Shobal, Chief Zibeon, Chief Anah (ULT)

Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah (UST)

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Lotan** and **Shobal** in verse 20, how you spelled **Zibeon** in verses 2, 14, 20, 24, 29, and how you spelled **Anah** in verses 2, 14, 18, 20, 24–25, 29.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the chiefs of
- Chief
- Chief
- Chief
- Chief

UST
- who became} clan leaders {were}
- אַלּוּף (ORIG QUOTE)
- אַלּוּף (ORIG QUOTE)
- אַלּוּף (ORIG QUOTE)

- אַלּוּף (ORIG QUOTE)

Genesis 36:30

ULT:
Chief Dishon, Chief Ezer, Chief Dishan. Those {were} the chiefs of the Horites, according to their clans in the land of Seir.

UST:
Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan. Those {were} the Horite clan leaders. They led their own family groups {and lived} in the land of Seir.

Chief Dishon, Chief Ezer, Chief Dishan (ULT)

Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan (UST)

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Dishon** in verses 21, 25–26, how you spelled **Ezer** in verses 21, 27, 30, and how you spelled **Dishan** in verses 21, 28, 30.

Those {were} the chiefs of the Horites, according to their clans (ULT)

Those {were} the Horite clan leaders. They led their own family groups (UST)

Be consistent with how you translated **Horites** in the book of Genesis. See 14:6; 36:20–21, 29–30. Alternate translation: [Those were the Horite chiefs. They had their own family groups] or [Those were the tribal leaders for the Horites. They had their own tribes]

---

in the land of Seir (ULT)

{and lived} in the land of Seir (UST)

Be consistent with how you spelled **Seir** in the book of Genesis. See 14:6; 32:3; 33:14, 16; 36:8–9, 20–21, 30. Alternate translation: [and lived in the region of Seir] or [who were living in the region of Seir]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Chief
- Chief
- Chief
- the chiefs of
- according to their clans
- in the land of

UST

- אַלּוּף (ORIG QUOTE)
- אַלּוּף (ORIG QUOTE)
- אַלּוּף (ORIG QUOTE)
- the … clan leaders
- They led their own family groups
- {and lived} in the land of

Genesis 36:31

ULT:
And these {were} the kings who reigned in the land of Edom before a king reigned for the sons of Israel.

UST:
Here {is} {a record of} the kings who ruled over {the people of} the land of Edom before the Israelites had their own king.

And these {were} the kings (ULT)

Here {is} {a record of} the kings (UST)

See how you translated **kings** in Genesis 17:6 and 35:11. Be sure to distinguish **kings** (verses 31–39) from "chiefs" (verses 15–19, 21, 28, 40–43) in your translation of this chapter.
Alternate translation: [These are the names of the kings] or [This is a history about the kings]

---

who reigned in the land of Edom (ULT)

who ruled over {the people of} the land of Edom (UST)

Alternate translation: [who ruled over the people of the region of Edom]

---

before a king reigned for the sons of Israel (ULT)

before the Israelites had their own king (UST)

See how you translated **the sons of Israel** in Genesis 32:3. Alternate translation: [before there were any kings ruling over the descendants of Israel] or [during the time period when the Israelites did not yet have their own king]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the kings
- reigned
- in the land of
- Edom
- a king
- Israel

UST

- the kings
- ruled
- over {the people of} the land of
- Edom
- the Israelites had their own king
- the Israelites had their own king

Genesis 36:32

ULT:
And Bela the son of Beor reigned in Edom, and the name of his city {was} Dinhabah.

UST:
Bela, {who was} the son of Beor, was the {first} king to rule over {the people of} {the land of} Edom. The name of his hometown {that he ruled from} {was} Dinhabah.

And Bela the son of Beor reigned in Edom (ULT)

Bela, {who was} the son of Beor, was the {first} king to rule over {the people of} {the land of} Edom (UST)

Alternate translation: [Bela, who was the son of Beor, was the first king to rule over the people of the region of Edom] or [The first king to reign over the people of the region of Edom was Bela, the son of Beor]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

and the name of his city {was} Dinhabah (ULT)

The name of his hometown {that he ruled from} {was} Dinhabah (UST)

Dinhabah was probably King Bela's hometown and his capital city that he ruled the land of Edom from. Alternate translation: [His capital city that he ruled from was Dinhabah]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- And … reigned
- in Edom

UST
- was the {first} king to rule
- over {the people of} {the land of} Edom

Genesis 36:33

ULT:
Then Bela died, and Jobab the son of Zerah from Bozrah reigned in his place.

UST:
When {King} Bela died, Jobab, {who was} the son of Zerah, replaced him as king {and ruled} from {his hometown of} Bozrah.

and Jobab the son of Zerah from Bozrah reigned in his place (ULT)

Jobab, {who was} the son of Zerah, replaced him as king {and ruled} from {his hometown of} Bozrah (UST)

The phrase **from Bozrah** probably means this was Jobab's hometown, which he ruled from, much like the meaning of "his city" in verses 32, 35, and 39. Alternate translation: [Jobab, who was the son of Zerah, succeeded Bela as king and ruled from his hometown of Bozrah]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- and … reigned

UST
- replaced him as king

Genesis 36:34

ULT:
Then Jobab died, and Husham from the land of the Temanites reigned in his place.

UST:
When {King} Jobab died, Husham replaced him as king {and ruled} from {his hometown, which was in} the land where the Temanites lived.

and Husham from the land of the Temanites reigned in his place (ULT)

Husham replaced him as king {and ruled} from {his hometown, which was in} the land where the Temanites lived (UST)

King Husham may have been a descendant of Esau's grandson Teman (verse 11). You could put that information in a footnote. Also compare how you translated verse 33. Alternate translation: [Husham succeeded Jobab as king and reigned from his hometown, which was in the region where the Temanites lived]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- and … reigned
- from the land of

UST
- replaced him as king
- {and ruled} from {his hometown, which was in} the land where the Temanites lived

---

Genesis 36:35

ULT:
Then Husham died, and Hadad the son of Bedad reigned in his place, who struck the Midianites in the field of Moab. And the name of his city {was} Avith.

UST:
When {King} Husham died, Hadad, {who was} the son of Bedad, replaced him as king. {King Hadad is the one} who defeated the Midianites {in battle} in the land of Moab. The name of his hometown {that he ruled from} {was} Avith.

and … reigned in his place (ULT)

replaced him as king (UST)

Alternate translation: [succeeded him as king]

---

who struck the Midianites (ULT)

King Hadad is the one} who defeated the Midianites {in battle} (UST)

See how you translated the idiom **struck** in Genesis 14:5, 7. Alternate translation: [King Hadad is the one who defeated the Midianites in war]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

in the field of Moab (ULT)

in the land of Moab (UST)

Moab was a large region located to the east of the Dead Sea. This battle probably took place in the countryside or an unpopulated area (a **field**) within this region. Alternate translation: [in a field in the region of Moab] or [in the country of Moab]

And the name of his city {was} Avith (ULT)

The name of his hometown {that he ruled from} {was} Avith (UST)

See how you translated a similar sentence in verse 32. Alternate translation: [His capital city that he ruled from was Avith]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and … reigned
- the Midianites
- Moab

UST

- replaced him as king
- the Midianites
- Moab

Genesis 36:36

ULT:
Then Hadad died, and Samlah from Masrekah reigned in his place.

UST:
When {King} Hadad died, Samlah replaced him as king {and ruled} from {his hometown of} Masrekah.

and Samlah from Masrekah reigned in his place (ULT)

Samlah replaced him as king {and ruled} from {his hometown of} Masrekah (UST)

Alternate translation: [Samlah succeeded Hadad as king and ruled from his hometown of Masrekah]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- and … reigned

UST
- replaced him as king

Genesis 36:37

ULT:
Then Samlah died, and Shaul from Rehoboth {on} the river reigned in his place.

UST:
When {King} Samlah died, Shaul replaced him as king {and ruled} from {his hometown of} Rehoboth beside the {Euphrates} River.

and Shaul from Rehoboth {on} the river reigned in his place (ULT)

Shaul replaced him as king {and ruled} from {his hometown of} Rehoboth beside the {Euphrates} River (UST)

See how you translated similar sentences in verses 33, 34 and 36. Alternate translation: [Shaul succeeded him as king and ruled from his hometown of Rehoboth, which was beside the Euphrates River]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Shaul
- and … reigned

UST
- Shaul
- replaced him as king

Genesis 36:38

ULT:
Then Shaul died, and Baal-Hanan the son of Acbor reigned in his place.

UST:
When {King} Shaul died, Baal-Hanan, {who was} the son of Acbor, replaced him as king.

Then Shaul died, and Baal-Hanan the son of Acbor reigned in his place (ULT)

When {King} Shaul died, Baal-Hanan, {who was} the son of Acbor, replaced him as king (UST)

Alternate translation: [When King Shaul died, Baal-Hanan, who was the son of Acbor, took his place as king] or [… succeeded him as king]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Shaul
- and … reigned

UST
- {King} Shaul
- replaced him as king

Genesis 36:39

ULT:
Then Baal-Hanan the son of Acbor died, and Hadar reigned in his place, and the name of his city {was} Pau. And the name of his wife {was} Mehetabel, the daughter of Matred {and} the granddaughter of Me-Zahab.

UST:
When {King} Baal-Hanan died, Hadar replaced him as king, and the name of his hometown {that he ruled from} {was} Pau. His wife's name {was} Mehetabel, {who was} the daughter of Matred {and} the granddaughter of Me-Zahab.

Then Baal-Hanan the son of Acbor died, and Hadar reigned (ULT)

When {King} Baal-Hanan died, Hadar replaced him as king (UST)

Most translations follow the Hebrew text and have **Hadar** here. Some translations (and ancient versions such as SP, LXX, Syriac, and Vulgate) have "Hadad" here instead, in order to spell this name the same way it is spelled in 1 Chronicles 36:Chronicles. However, that could cause confusion, because "Hadad" is also the name of a different king in verses 35–36 above.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

and … reigned in his place (ULT)

replaced him as king (UST)

Consider again how you translated this phrase in verses 33–39. Alternate translation: [took his place as king] or [succeeded him as king]

---

and the name of his city {was} Pau (ULT)

and the name of his hometown {that he ruled from} {was} Pau (UST)

See how you translated a similar clause in verses 32 and 35. Alternate translation: [His capital city that he ruled from was Pau]

---

the daughter of Matred {and} the granddaughter of Me-Zahab (ULT)

{who was} the daughter of Matred {and} the granddaughter of Me-Zahab (UST)

Notice that **Matred** and **Me-Zahab** are the names of men. See how you translated similar phrases in verses 2 and 14. Alternate translation: [whose father was Matred and whose grandfather was Me-Zahab]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and … reigned

UST

- replaced him as king

Genesis 36:40

ULT:
And these {are} the names of the chiefs of Esau, according to their clans, according to their places, by their names: Chief Timna, Chief Alvah, Chief Jetheth,

UST:
Here {are} the names of {more of} the clan leaders {who descended} from Esau; {each clan leader led} his own family group and ruled his own region that was named after him: Timna, Alvah, Jetheth,

And these {are} the names of (ULT)

Here {are} the names of (UST)

Alternate translation: [The following list of names includes]

---

the chiefs of Esau, according to their clans, according to their places, by their names (ULT)

{more of} the clan leaders {who descended} from Esau; {each clan leader led} his own family group and ruled his own region that was named after him (UST)

Notice that the chiefs listed below are different from those listed in the verses above, except for Kenaz and Teman (verse 15). Also, consider whether or not it is better in your language to break up this long sentence into two shorter sentences. Alternate translation: [more of the chiefs who descended from Esau. These chiefs led their own family groups in their own territories, which were named after them:] or [more of the descendants of Esau who were tribal leaders; the tribes and the regions where they lived were named after them:]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

And these {are} the names of the chiefs of Esau, according to their clans, according to their places, by their names: Chief Timna, Chief Alvah, Chief Jetheth (ULT)

Here {are} the names of {more of} the clan leaders {who descended} from Esau; {each clan leader led} his own family group and ruled his own region that was named after him: Timna, Alvah, Jetheth (UST)

Opinions differ about translation of this verse. (1) Most translations treat all the names in verses 40–43 as the names of chiefs (as in the ULT and UST of these verses). (2) However, some scholars think that all the names in verses 40–43 are the names of regions or clans. Alternate translation: [These were the names of the clans that descended from Esau. Each clan lived in the land of Edom in its own region that was named after that clan. The names of the clans of the Edomites were TImna, Alvah, Jetheth]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the chiefs of
- Esau
- according to their clans
- Chief
- Chief
- Chief

UST

- {more of} the clan leaders {who descended} from
- Esau
- {each clan leader led} his own family group
- Timna
- Alvah
- Jetheth

Genesis 36:41

ULT:
Chief Oholibamah, Chief Elah, Chief Pinon,

UST:
Oholibamah, Elah, Pinon,

Chief Oholibamah, Chief Elah, Chief Pinon (ULT)

Oholibamah, Elah, Pinon (UST)

Make sure that the way you translate verses 41–43 fits with the interpretation you followed in verse 40.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Chief
- Chief
- Chief

UST
- אַלּוּף (ORIG QUOTE)
- אַלּוּף (ORIG QUOTE)
- אַלּוּף (ORIG QUOTE)

Genesis 36:42

ULT:
Chief Kenaz, Chief Teman, Chief Mibzar,

UST:
Kenaz, Teman, Mibzar,

(There are no notes for this verse)

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Chief
- Chief
- Chief

UST

- אַלּוּף (ORIG QUOTE)
- אַלּוּף (ORIG QUOTE)
- אַלּוּף (ORIG QUOTE)

Genesis 36:43

ULT:
Chief Magdiel, Chief Iram. Those {were} the chiefs of Edom, according to their dwellings in the land of their possession. That {was} Esau, the father of the Edomites.

UST:
Magdiel, {and} Iram. {All of} those {were} clan leaders over the Edomites; they {all} led their own settlements in the land that they controlled. This {concludes the record about} Esau, {who was} the ancestor of {all} the Edomites.

Chief Magdiel, Chief Iram (ULT)

Magdiel, {and} Iram (UST)

Make sure you are consistent in whether or not you use the title **Chief** in verses 40–43.

Those {were} the chiefs of (ULT)

{All of} those {were} clan leaders over (UST)

Consider again how you translated "chief" throughout this chapter; see verses 15–19, 21, 29–30, 40–43. Alternate translation: [Those were the names of more of the chiefs over] or [All of those were chiefs over] or [Those were more of the clan leaders of]

Edom (ULT)

the Edomites (UST)

Alternate translation: [the Edom people group;]

---

according to their dwellings (ULT)

they {all} led their own settlements (UST)

Alternate translation: [each of them led their own tribes in the places where they lived]

---

in the land of their possession (ULT)

in the land that they controlled (UST)

Alternate translation: [in the land that they owned]

That {was} Esau (ULT)

This {concludes the record about} Esau (UST)

Alternate translation: [That was the record about Esau] or [This concludes the history about Esau]

---

the father of the Edomites (ULT)

{who was} the ancestor of {all} the Edomites (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 9. Also compare how you translated the names of other people groups in this chapter, including “Hittite” and “Hivite” in verse 2; **Edomites** in verse 9; “Horite/Horites” in verses 20, 21, 29, 30; “Temanites” in verse 34; and “Midianites” in verse 35. Alternate translation: [who was the ancestor of the Edom people group]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Chief
- Chief
- the chiefs of
- Edom
- in the land of
- their possession
- Esau
- the Edomites

UST

- אַלּוּף (ORIG QUOTE)
- אַלּוּף (ORIG QUOTE)
- clan leaders over
- the Edomites
- in the land
- that they controlled
- Esau
- {all} the Edomites

Genesis 37

Genesis 37:1

ULT:
And Jacob lived in the land of his father's sojournings, in the land of Canaan.

UST:
Jacob continued to live in the region of Canaan where his father {Isaac} had lived for a while {as a foreigner}.

And Jacob lived (ULT)

Jacob continued to live (UST)

Chapter 37 continues the history about Jacob that left off at the end of chapter 35. Begin this chapter in a way that is natural in your language. Make sure the way you translate **lived** allows for the fact that Jacob was already living in Canaan and had settled near the city of Hebron, where his father and grandfather had lived previously (Genesis 35:27). Alternate translation: [Now Jacob was still living]

---

in the land of his father's sojournings, in the land of Canaan (ULT)

in the region of Canaan where his father {Isaac} had lived for a while {as a foreigner} (UST)

See how you translated "sojourned" in Genesis 35:27 and **the land of Canaan** in Genesis 35:6. Alternate translation: [in the land of Canaan where his father Isaac had lived for a while as a outsider]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Jacob
- in the land of
- in the land of

- Canaan

UST

- Jacob
- where
- in the region of
- Canaan

Genesis 37:2

ULT:
These {are} the generations of Jacob: Joseph, a son of seventeen years, was shepherding the flock{s} with his brothers, and he {was} a young man with the sons of Bilhah and the sons of Zilpah, his father's wives, and Joseph brought a bad report about them to their father.

UST:
Here is {more of} the record about Jacob and his family: {One day} {his} seventeen-year-old son Joseph was taking care of the {family's} flocks {of sheep and goats}. Joseph was helping his brothers {who were} the sons of his father's {servant} wives Bilhah and Zilpah, and he told their father about the bad things they were doing.

These {are} the generations of Jacob (ULT)

Here is {more of} the record about Jacob and his family (UST)

Consider again how you translated **These are the generations of** in the book of Genesis. See 2:4; 6:9; 11:27; 25:19; 36:1; 37:2, where what follows is a narrative or history of events. Compare that to Genesis 5:1; 10:1; 11:10; 25:12; 36:9, where what follows is more of a genealogy (list of names). It may be necessary to translate this phrase in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [This is more of the history about Jacob and his family:] or [What follows tells more about Jacob and his family:]

Joseph, a son of seventeen years (ULT)

{One day} {his} seventeen-year-old son Joseph (UST)

This verse may be referring to a single incident or it may be referring to what happened regularly.

---

was shepherding the flock{s} (ULT)

was taking care of the {family's} flocks {of sheep and goats} (UST)

See how you translated **flocks** in Genesis 4:2.

---

with his brothers, and he {was} a young man with (ULT)

Joseph was helping his brothers {who were} (UST)

As the youngest of these brothers, Joseph was their helper as they took care of their father's flocks. Alternate translation: [as an helper for his brothers who were]

---

the sons of Bilhah and the sons of Zilpah, his father's wives (ULT)

the sons of his father's {servant} wives Bilhah and Zilpah (UST)

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Bilhah** in Genesis 29:29 and **Zilpah** in 29:24.

---

and Joseph brought a bad report about them to their father (ULT)

and he told their father about the bad things they were doing (UST)

The Hebrew text does not specify what Joseph's brothers had done wrong, so neither should your translation. Also, make sure your translation of **their father** does not sound like the sons of Bilhah and Zilpah had a different father than Joseph had. Alternate translation: [and he told his father about the bad things they were doing] or [and he gave bad reports to his father about them]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Zilpah
- Bilhah
- the generations of
- Jacob
- Joseph
- years
- shepherding
- the flock{s}
- Joseph
- a … report about them
- bad

UST

- Zilpah
- Bilhah
- {more of} the record about Jacob and his family
- {more of} the record about Jacob and his family
- One day … Joseph
- {his} seventeen-year-old
- was taking care of
- the {family's} flocks {of sheep and goats}
- יוֹסֵף (ORIG QUOTE)
- about the … things they were doing
- bad

Genesis 37:3

ULT:
Now Israel loved Joseph more than all of his sons because he {was} a son of his old age. So he made a multicolored tunic for him.

UST:
Now Israel, {that is, Jacob,} loved Joseph more than any of his other sons because he was born to him when he was old. So he made a {special} robe for Joseph that had many colors.

Now Israel (ULT)

Now Israel, {that is, Jacob … } (UST)

This verse introduces background information for the events that happen next. Consider what is the best way to begin this sentence in your language. Make sure it is clear in your translation or in a footnote that Jacob (verse 1) and Israel (verse 3) refer to the same person, not two separate people. For a note about this, see 35:10. Alternate translation: [Now Jacob, whose other name was Israel]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

because he {was} a son of his old age (ULT)

because he was born to him when he was old (UST)

In certain contexts, biblical authors and characters use the common expression of their culture **son of** to indicate that a person has the characteristic of something. In this case, Joseph has the characteristic of being a son born to Israel late in life, in his old age. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an equivalent expression from your language or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [because Joseph was born to Israel in his later years]

Support Reference: Idiom

So he made a multicolored tunic for him (ULT)

So he made a {special} robe for Joseph that had many colors (UST)

The meaning of the Hebrew text translated as **multicolored tunic** is not certain here. Many translations (including the Greek Septuagint and Latin Vulgate) say that the tunic or robe was **multicolored** or "colorful." This **tunic** was probably full-length to the ankles and had long sleeves that reached to the hands. Alternate translation: [So he made a beautiful tunic for him that had many colors] or [So he made a special colorful robe for him]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Now Israel
- loved
- Joseph
- a … tunic

UST

- Now Israel, {that is, Jacob … }
- loved
- Joseph
- a {special} robe

Genesis 37:4

ULT:
And his brothers saw that their father loved him more than all of his brothers, so they hated him and were not able to speak to him peaceably.

UST:
When Joseph's brothers realized that their father loved Joseph more than the rest of them, they hated him so much that they would not talk to him in a friendly manner.

so they hated him and were not able to speak to him peaceably (ULT)

they hated him so much that they would not talk to him in a friendly manner (UST)

Make sure it is clear here in your translation that the brothers hated Joseph, not their father.
Alternate translation: [they despised Joseph so much that they could not speak to him kindly] or [… they refused to speak to him in a kind way] or [… they always spoke unkindly to him]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- loved
- peaceably

UST
- loved
- in a friendly manner

Genesis 37:5

ULT:
Then Joseph dreamed a dream and told it to his brothers, and they continued to hate him even more.

UST:
{One night} Joseph had a dream, and he told his brothers about it. That made them hate him even more {than before}.

Then Joseph dreamed a dream (ULT)

{One night} Joseph had a dream (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then one night Joseph had a dream]

---

and told it to his brothers (ULT)

and he told his brothers about it (UST)

Alternate translation: [The next day he told his brothers what he dreamed]

---

and they continued to hate him even more (ULT)

That made them hate him even more {than before} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and they became even more hateful toward him] or [That made them despise him even more than before]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Then … dreamed
- Joseph
- a dream

- and told it

UST

- One night … had
- Joseph
- a dream
- and he told

Genesis 37:6

ULT:
And he said to them, “Please hear this dream that I dreamed:

UST:
{This is what} he told them, “Please listen to this dream that I had:

And he said to them (ULT)

{This is what} he told them (UST)

Alternate translation: [He told them]

Please hear this dream that I dreamed (ULT)

Please listen to this dream that I had (UST)

Alternate translation: [Please listen to me tell about this dream that I had:] or [I had a dream that I want to tell you about. Please listen to me tell it]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- dream
- I dreamed

UST
- to … dream
- I had

Genesis 37:7

ULT:
And behold, we were binding sheaves in the middle of a field, and behold, my sheaf got up and also stood upright, and behold, your sheaves gathered around and bowed down to my sheaf."

UST:
{In it} I saw us {working} out in a field {cutting and} tying bundles {of grain stalks}. Then suddenly the bundle that I had made stood up straight. Then I saw that the bundles you had made stood around {my bundle} and bowed down to my bundle {to show respect}."

And behold (ULT)

{In it} I saw (UST)

Alternate translation: [In my dream I saw]

---

we were binding sheaves in the middle of a field (ULT)

us {working} out in a field {cutting and} tying bundles {of grain stalks} (UST)

A sheaf of grain is a bunch of grain stalks that have been cut and tied together in a bundle, with the heads of grain at the top. Wheat and barley were the grains that were common in this region at that time, not corn or oats. Alternate translation: [that we all were out in the middle of a field cutting stalks of grain and tying the stalks into sheaves] or [us working together out in a field cutting and tying sheaves of wheat stalks]

---

my sheaf (ULT)

the bundle that I had made (UST)

Alternate translation: [my sheaf of grain] or [the sheaf that I had made]

---

got up and also stood upright (ULT)

stood up straight (UST)

Alternate translation: [stood up on its end]

---

and behold (ULT)

Then suddenly (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then behold]

---

your sheaves (ULT)

the bundles you had made (UST)

Alternate translation: [your sheaves of grain] or [the bundles that you had made]

---

gathered around (ULT)

stood around {my bundle} (UST)

Alternate translation: [stood around my sheaf] or [stood in a circle around my bundle]

---

and bowed down to my sheaf (ULT)

and bowed down to my bundle {to show respect} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and bowed down to the ground to my sheaf to show submission] or [and bowed respectfully to my sheaf] or [and bowed down in front of it in respect]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- were binding
- and bowed down

UST

- working … {cutting and} tying
- and bowed down … to show respect

Genesis 37:8

ULT:
Then his brothers said to him, "Will you really reign over us? Will you really rule over us?" And they continued to hate him even more because of his dreams and because of his words.

UST:
His brothers responded to him, "Do you really expect to be our king? You will never rule over us!" So they hated him even more {intensely} {than they did before} because of what he had said {to them} about his dreams.

Then his brothers said to him (ULT)

His brothers responded to him (UST)

Alternate translation: [His brothers retorted angrily]

Will … really (ULT)

Do … really expect to (UST)

The brothers use two rhetorical questions in this verse to express their disagreement with Joseph and to emphasize that they are not happy with him.

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

you … reign over us (ULT)

you … be our king (UST)

For languages that mark inclusive and exclusive pronouns, **us** excludes Joseph in this sentence.
Alternate translation: [reign over us!]

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

And they continued to hate him even more (ULT)

So they hated him even more {intensely} {than they did before} (UST)

Consider again how you translated **hate** in the book of Genesis. See Genesis 24:60; 26:27; 29:31, 33; 37:4–5, 8. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [So they despised him even more strongly than they did before]

---

because of his dreams and because of his words (ULT)

because of what he had said {to them} about his dreams (UST)

For some languages, it is more natural to switch the order of clauses in this sentence and say, "So because of what he/Joseph had told them about his dreams, his brothers hated him even more strongly/intensely than they did before." Alternate translation: [for his dreams and for what he told them about the dreams]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- you … reign
- you … rule
- his dreams

UST

- you … be our king
- You will never rule
- what he had said {to them} about his dreams

Genesis 37:9

ULT:
Then he dreamed yet another dream, and he related it to his brothers. And he said, "Behold, I dreamed another dream, and behold, the sun and the moon and eleven stars were bowing down to me."

UST:
Then Joseph had another dream that he {also} told to his brothers. He said, "Listen, I {just} had another dream, and {in it} I saw that the sun, the moon, and eleven stars bowed down {to the ground} before me {to show respect}."

Then he dreamed yet another dream, and he related it to his brothers (ULT)

Then Joseph had another dream that he {also} told to his brothers (UST)

Alternate translation: [Sometime after that, Joseph told his brothers about another dream that he had]

And he said (ULT)

He said (UST)

Alternate translation: [Here is what he said:]

---

and behold (ULT)

and {in it} I saw that (UST)

Alternate translation: [and amazingly in this dream]

---

were bowing down (ULT)

bowed down {to the ground} … to show respect (UST)

See how you translated “bowed down” in verse 7. Alternate translation: [were bowing down to the ground]

---

to me (ULT)

before me (UST)

Bowing down to someone was a way of showing respect and honor to that person. If that is not clear in your culture, you could make that information explicit in your translation or in a footnote. If it is understood, you can leave it implied (as the Hebrew text does). Alternate translation: [to me to show respect] or [in front of me to honor me]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then he dreamed
- dream
- I dreamed
- dream
- were bowing down

UST

- Then Joseph had another dream
- Then Joseph had another dream
- I {just} had
- dream
- bowed down {to the ground} … to show respect

Genesis 37:10

ULT:
And he related it to his father and to his brothers, but his father rebuked him and said to him, "What {is} this dream that you dreamed? Will your mother and I and your brothers really come to bow down to the ground to you?"

UST:
Later Joseph told {the same dream} to {both} his father and his brothers, but his father scolded him by saying, "That {is} a strange dream that you had! Do you really expect your mother and me and your brothers to bow down before you?"

And he related it to his father and to his brothers (ULT)

Later Joseph told {the same dream} to {both} his father and his brothers (UST)

This could refer to: (1) a second time that Joseph told his dream. Alternate translation: [Then Joseph told the same dream to both his father and his brother]; (2) the same time that he told this dream to his brothers in verse 9. Alternate translation: [When Joseph told the dream to his father and his brothers]

---

but his father rebuked him and said to him (ULT)

but his father scolded him by saying (UST)

Your translation of this quote margin should not sound like two separate events; the verbs **rebuked** and **said** refer to the same event. Alternate translation: [but his father rebuked him by saying]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

What {is} this dream that you dreamed (ULT)

That {is} a strange dream that you had (UST)

Jacob uses a rhetorical question here to show that he is not happy about Joseph's dream. Decide the best way to translate this in your language. Alternate translation: [Your dream is ridiculous]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

Will your mother and I and your brothers really (ULT)

Do you really expect your mother and me and your brothers (UST)

See how you translated a similar rhetorical question in verse 8. Alternate translation: [Your mother and I and your brothers will never]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

come to bow down to the ground (ULT)

Do you really expect … to bow down (UST)

See how you translated **bow down** in verse 7. Alternate translation: [come to you and bow down to the ground]

---

to you (ULT)

before you (UST)

Alternate translation: [in front of you]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- but … rebuked
- dream
- you dreamed
- to bow down
- to the ground

UST

- but … scolded
- That {is} a strange dream
- you had
- to bow down
- אָרְצָה (ORIG QUOTE)

Genesis 37:11

ULT:
And his brothers envied him, but his father kept the matter {in mind}.

UST:
So Joseph's brothers were jealous of him, but his father continued to think about what it all could mean.

And his brothers envied him (ULT)

So Joseph's brothers were jealous of him (UST)

See how you translated **envied** in Genesis 26:14; 30:1.

---

but his father kept the matter {in mind} (ULT)

but his father continued to think about what it all could mean (UST)

Alternate translation: [but his father continued to wonder about what it all could mean] or [but his father kept thinking about the dreams and wondered what they meant]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- him
- kept … in mind

UST
- of him
- continued to think about what it all could mean

Genesis 37:12

ULT:
Then his brothers went to shepherd the flock{s} of their father near Shechem.

UST:
Sometime after that, Joseph's brothers took their father's flock{s} {of sheep and goats} to graze {in the fields} near {the city of} Shechem.

near Shechem (ULT)

near {the city of} Shechem (UST)

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Shechem** in Genesis 35:4.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- to shepherd
- the flock{s} of
- near Shechem

UST

- to graze {in the fields}
- s flock{s} {of sheep and goats}
- near {the city of} Shechem

Genesis 37:13

ULT:
And Israel said to Joseph, "Are not your brothers shepherding near Shechem? Come and I will send you to them." And he said to him, "Behold me."

UST:
Then {one day} Israel said to Joseph, "As you know, your brothers are tending {our flocks} near {the city of} Shechem. Get ready so that I can send you to them." Joseph responded, "I am ready {to go}."

And Israel said to Joseph (ULT)

Then {one day} Israel said to Joseph (UST)

Alternate translation: [So one day Israel said to Joseph]

Are not your brothers shepherding (ULT)

As you know, your brothers are tending {our flocks} (UST)

Israel uses a rhetorical question to remind Joseph of something he already knows and to introduce what he wants Joseph to do. Decide the best way to communicate this in your language. Alternate translation: [As you know, your brothers are pasturing our flocks]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

near Shechem (ULT)

near {the city of} Shechem (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 12.

And he said to him (ULT)

Joseph responded (UST)

Alternate translation: [He responded] or [He answered him]

Behold me (ULT)

I am ready {to go} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Yes, sir]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Israel
- Joseph
- shepherding
- near Shechem

UST

- Israel
- Joseph
- are tending {our flocks}
- near {the city of} Shechem

Genesis 37:14

ULT:
Then he said to him, “Please go and see the well-being of your brothers and the well-being of the flock{s}, and bring me word.” So he sent him from the valley of Hebron, and he went to Shechem.

UST:
Then Israel told him, “Please go and check on how your brothers and the flock{s} are doing. Then report back to me {what you find out}.” So Israel sent him {on his way} from {their home in} the valley near {the city of} Hebron, and Joseph traveled to {the city of} Shechem.

Then he said to him (ULT)

Then Israel told him (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Israel told Joseph]

Please go and see (ULT)

Please go and check on (UST)

Alternate translation: [Please go find out]

---

the well-being of your brothers and the well-being of the flock{s} (ULT)

how your brothers and the flock{s} are doing (UST)

Alternate translation: [whether or not things are going well for your brothers and the flocks]

---

and bring me word (ULT)

Then report back to me {what you find out} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then come tell me how they are doing]

So he sent him (ULT)

So Israel sent him {on his way} (UST)

Alternate translation: [So Israel sent Joseph on his way]

---

from the valley of Hebron (ULT)

from {their home in} the valley near {the city of} Hebron (UST)

Be consistent in how you spell **Hebron** throughout the book of Genesis. See 13:18; 23:2, 19; 35:27; 37:14.

---

and he went to Shechem (ULT)

and Joseph traveled to {the city of} Shechem (UST)

The trip from the city of Hebron to the city of Shechem was about 100 kilometers (60 miles).
Alternate translation: [and he went to the city of Shechem]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the well-being of
- the well-being of
- the flock{s}

- Hebron
- to Shechem

UST

- how your brothers and the flock{s} are doing
- how your brothers and the flock{s} are doing
- how your brothers and the flock{s} are doing
- {the city of} Hebron
- to {the city of} Shechem

Genesis 37:15

ULT:
And a man found him, and behold, he was wandering around in the fields. So the man asked him, saying, "What are you looking for?"

UST:
{When he arrived there,} a man saw him searching around in the {nearby} fields and asked him, "What are you looking for?"

And a man found him, and behold (ULT)

{When he arrived there,} a man saw him (UST)

In this context **found** means the man happened to meet Joseph as Joseph was walking around looking for his brothers; the man was not intentionally looking for him. Also, for some languages it is clearer or more natural to change the order of the clauses in this sentence and say, "He started wandering around searching in the fields near there, where/and he met a man who asked …" or "As he was wandering around searching in the fields near there, he met a man who asked …" Alternate translation: [There he met a man who had seen him]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

he was wandering around in the fields. So the man asked him, saying (ULT)

searching around in the {nearby} fields and asked him (UST)

The word **fields** refers here to large, open places with no fences and few trees, where sheep and goats could easily graze. Alternate translation: [searching around in the nearby countryside and asked him]

What are you looking for (ULT)

What are you looking for (UST)

Consider whether it is better to use a direct or an indirect quote here in your language.
Alternate translation: [Who are you looking for?] or [what he was looking for]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- are you looking for

UST

- are you looking for

Genesis 37:16

ULT:
And he said, “I am looking for my brothers. Please tell me where they are shepherding.”

UST:
He replied, “I am looking for my brothers. Can you tell me where they are tending {their flocks}?”

Please tell me (ULT)

Can you tell me (UST)

Alternate translation: [Do you know]

---

where they are shepherding (ULT)

where they are tending {their flocks} (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause earlier in the verse and say, “I am looking for my brothers who were somewhere around here shepherding/pasturing/tending their flocks. Do you know where they are now?” Alternate translation: [where they are pasturing their flocks?]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- am looking for
- tell
- are shepherding

UST
- am looking for
- Can you tell
- are tending {their flocks}

Genesis 37:17

ULT:
Then the man said, "They set out from here. For I heard them say, 'Let us go to Dothan.'" Then Joseph went after his brothers and found them at Dothan.

UST:
The man answered, "They were here and then left, but I overheard them say that they were going to {the town of} Dothan." So Joseph followed his brothers and caught up with them near {the town of} Dothan.

Then the man said (ULT)

The man answered (UST)

Alternate translation: [The man answered him] or [The man replied]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

They set out from here (ULT)

They were here and then left (UST)

Alternate translation: [I saw them, but then they left from here]

For I heard them say (ULT)

but I overheard them say that (UST)

Alternate translation: [In fact, I heard them say to each other] or [but I overheard them say to each other]

Let us go to Dothan (ULT)

they were going to {the town of} Dothan (UST)

Consider whether it is better to use a direct or indirect quote here in your translation.

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

Then Joseph went after his brothers and found them at Dothan (ULT)

So Joseph followed his brothers and caught up with them near {the town of} Dothan (UST)

Alternate translation: [So Joseph went to the town of Dothan and found his brothers near there]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph

UST

- So Joseph followed

Genesis 37:18

ULT:
But they saw him from a distance, and before he came near to them, then they conspired against him to kill him.

UST:
But they saw him while he was still some distance away, and before he reached them, they made plans to kill him.

But they saw him from a distance (ULT)

But they saw him while he was still some distance away (UST)

Alternate translation: [While he was still some distance away from them, they saw him]

---

and before he came near to them (ULT)

and before he reached them (UST)

Alternate translation: [and before he got close to where they were]

---

then they conspired against him to kill him (ULT)

they made plans to kill him (UST)

Alternate translation: [they plotted to kill him]

Genesis 37:19

ULT:
And they said each to his brother, “Behold, that master of dreams is coming!

UST:
They said to each other {about him}, “Look, here comes that expert dreamer!

Behold, that master of dreams is coming (ULT)

Look, here comes that expert dreamer (UST)

In this figure of speech, the brothers actually means to communicate the opposite of the literal meaning of his words. If a speaker of your language would not do that, you could translate the meaning plainly. Make sure it is clear in your translation that Joseph’s brothers are being sarcastic and disrespectful here as they make fun of Joseph. Alternate translation: [Look here comes that master dreamer!]

Support Reference: Irony

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- master of
- dreams

UST
- expert
- dreamer

Genesis 37:20

ULT:
So now, come and let us kill him and throw him into one of the cisterns. Then we will say an evil animal devoured him, and we will see what his dreams become!”

UST:
Come on, let’s kill him and throw his body into one of the pits {here}. Then we can tell {people} that a vicious animal ate him up, and we will watch if his dreams come true!”

Then we will say an evil animal (ULT)

Then we can tell {people} that a vicious animal (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then we will tell people that a ferocious wild animal]

---

devoured him (ULT)

ate him up (UST)

Alternate translation: [has eaten him] or [ate him down]

---

and we will see (ULT)

and we will watch (UST)

Alternate translation: [and everyone will see]

---

what his dreams become (ULT)

if his dreams come true (UST)

Joseph’s brothers are speaking here in a disdainful way, continuing to mock him. Alternate translation: [what will become of his dreams!] or [what happens to his great dreams!] or [if his great dreams come true!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and let us kill him
- and throw him
- the cisterns
- evil
- his dreams

UST

- let’s kill him
- and throw his body
- the pits {here}
- vicious
- his dreams

Genesis 37:21

ULT:
But Reuben heard, and he rescued him from their hand{s} and said, "Let us not strike his life."

UST:
But Reuben heard {their plan}, so he {tried to} rescue Joseph from them by urging them, "We should not kill him."

But Reuben heard (ULT)

But Reuben heard {their plan} (UST)

Alternate translation: [When Reuben heard what they were planning]

---

and he rescued him from their hand{s} (ULT)

so he {tried to} rescue Joseph from them (UST)

The phrase **their hands** refers to Joseph's brothers and their power to harm him. Consider whether you have a similar figure of speech in your language. Alternate translation: [he tried to save Joseph from them]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

---

and said (ULT)

by urging them (UST)

Alternate translation: [and said to them]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Let us not strike his life (ULT)

We should not kill him (UST)

Consider again how you translated the idiom **strike** in Genesis 4:15; 34:30; 37:21. Alternate translation: [We must not take his life] or [We must not kill him]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Reuben
- and he rescued him

UST

- Reuben
- so he {tried to} rescue Joseph

Genesis 37:22

ULT:
And Reuben said to them, "Do not shed blood. Throw him into this cistern which {is} in the wilderness, but do not lay a hand on him," in order to rescue him from their hand{s}, to return him to his father.

UST:
Then he continued, "You must not take his life. {Instead} put him into this pit {here} in the desert, but you must not harm him." Reuben was planning to rescue Joseph from them and take him back {home} to their father.

And Reuben said to them (ULT)

Then he continued (UST)

Some translations do not include this phrase, possibly because Reuben is still speaking to the same people. However, he may have paused between verses 21 and 22 to see the effect of what he said in verse 21. Also, the repeated quote margin helps emphasize what he says in verse 22. Alternate translation: [Then he added]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Do not shed blood (ULT)

You must not take his life (UST)

See how you translated the idiom **shed blood** in Genesis 9:6. Alternate translation: [Do not kill him]

Support Reference: Idiom

Throw him into this cistern (ULT)

{Instead} put him into this pit (UST)

See how you translated **cistern** in verse 20. Alternate translation: [Instead put him into this dry well]

---

which {is} in the wilderness (ULT)

{here} in the desert (UST)

Consider again how you translated **wilderness** or "desert" in the book of Genesis. See 14:6 (and note); 16:7; 21:14, 20–21; 36:24; 37:22. Also see when it occurs as implied information in Genesis 12:9–10; 13:1, 3; 20:1; 24:62. Alternate translation: [here in the wilderness]

---

but do not lay a hand on him (ULT)

but you must not harm him (UST)

The phrase **lay a hand on** is an idiom that emphasizes that they are not to harm him at all, not even in the smallest way. Alternate translation: [but you must not harm him in any way]

---

in order to rescue him from their hand{s} (ULT)

Reuben was planning to rescue Joseph from them (UST)

See how you translated "rescued him from their hands" in verse 21. Alternate translation: [Reuben was planning to save him from them] or [He said that in order to save him from being killed by them]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

---

to return him to his father (ULT)

and take him back {home} to their father (UST)

Make sure your translation of **his father** does not sound like Joseph had a different father than his brothers had. Alternate translation: [so that he could return him safely to his father] or [and take him back home to his father]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Reuben
- Throw
- cistern
- {is} in the wilderness
- rescue
- to return him

UST

- רְאוּבֵן (ORIG QUOTE)
- {Instead} put
- pit
- in the desert
- Reuben was planning to rescue
- and take him back {home}

Genesis 37:23

ULT:
Then it happened when Joseph came to his brothers, then they stripped Joseph of his tunic, the multicolored tunic that {was} on him.

UST:
When Joseph reached his brothers, they {took hold of him and} ripped off the colorful robe that he was wearing.

Then it happened when Joseph came to his brothers (ULT)

When Joseph reached his brothers (UST)

As usual, the phrase **Then it happened** introduces and emphasizes an important set of events. Many translations leave it implied. Do what is natural in your language.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

---

then they stripped Joseph of his tunic, the multicolored tunic (ULT)

they {took hold of him and} ripped off the colorful robe (UST)

See how you translated **multicolored tunic** in verse 3. Alternate translation: [they grabbed hold of him and tore off his colorful robe]

---

that {was} on him (ULT)

that he was wearing (UST)

Alternate translation: [he had on]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- Joseph
- of his tunic
- the … tunic

UST

- Joseph reached
- him
- כֻּתָּנְתּוֹ (ORIG QUOTE)
- the … robe

Genesis 37:24

ULT:
Then they took him and threw him into the cistern. And the cistern {was} empty; there was not water in it.

UST:
Then they grabbed him and put him into the pit. The pit {was} empty and {completely} dry inside.

Then they took him (ULT)

Then they grabbed him (UST)

If the phrase “grabbed/took hold of him” is made explicit in your translation in verse 23, it can be left implied here in verse 24.

---

and threw him into the cistern (ULT)

and put him into the pit (UST)

See how you translated “throw him” and **cistern** in verse 20. Alternate translation: [and put him into the well]

And the cistern {was} empty; there was not water in it (ULT)

The pit {was} empty and {completely} dry inside (UST)

Alternate translation: [Now the well was empty; it had no water in it] or [The well was empty and completely dry inside]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and threw
- into the cistern
- And the cistern

UST

- and put
- into the pit
- The pit

Genesis 37:25

ULT:
Then they sat down to eat bread, and they lifted their eyes and looked, and behold, a caravan of Ishmaelites was coming from Gilead. And their camels were carrying spices and balm and myrrh {that} they were going to take down to Egypt.

UST:
Then {some of} Joseph's brothers sat down to eat a meal. {While they were eating,} they looked around and noticed {that} a {large} group of Ishmaelite {traders} was traveling {toward them} from {the region of} Gilead. Their camels were loaded with {expensive} spices, healing salve, and incense {that} they were taking down to {the country of} Egypt {to sell there}.

Then they sat down to eat bread (ULT)

Then {some of} Joseph's brothers sat down to eat a meal (UST)

It is clear from verse 29 that Reuben was not there when his brothers made the plan to sell Joseph to the traders.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and they lifted their eyes and looked (ULT)

{While they were eating,} they looked around (UST)

See how you translated the idiom "lifted … eyes" in Genesis 22:13. Alternate translation: [and while they were eating, they looked around]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and behold (ULT)

and noticed {that} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and saw that] or [and they saw that]

---

a caravan of (ULT)

a {large} group of (UST)

A **caravan** is a large group of people who are traveling together. Alternate translation: [a large company of]

Ishmaelites (ULT)

Ishmaelite {traders} (UST)

See how you translated the names of other people groups in Genesis 15:19–21. Alternate translation: [Ishmaelite merchants] or [traders from the Ishmael people group] or [traders who were descendants of Ishmael]

---

was coming from Gilead (ULT)

was traveling {toward them} from {the region of} Gilead (UST)

For some languages it may be clearer to change the order of some of the implied information in this sentence and say, "… and saw/noticed that headed their way/direction was a large group of Ishmaelite traders/merchants that was coming/traveling from the region of Gilead." Also, be consistent here with how you spelled **Gilead** in Genesis 31:21, 23, 25. Alternate translation: [was coming toward them from the region of Gilead] or [was traveling from the region of Gilead and was headed their way]

Support Reference: Information Structure

And their camels were carrying (ULT)

Their camels were loaded with (UST)

Consider again how you translated “camel” in the book of Genesis. See 12:16 (and note); 24:10–11, 14, 19–20, 22, 25, 30–32, 35, 44, 46, 61, 63–64; 30:43; 31:17, 18, 34; 32:7, 15; 37:25.

{that} they were going to take down to Egypt (ULT)

that} they were taking down to {the country of} Egypt {to sell there} (UST)

Alternate translation: [that they were transporting down to the country of Egypt to sell there] or [that they were taking to sell in the country of Egypt]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- bread
- Ishmaelites
- from Gilead
- And their camels
- and myrrh
- to Egypt

UST

- a meal
- Ishmaelite {traders}
- from {the region of} Gilead
- Their camels
- and incense
- to {the country of} Egypt {to sell there}

Genesis 37:26

ULT:
Then Judah said to his brothers, "What gain {is there} if we kill our brother and cover up his blood?

UST:
So Judah urged to his brothers, "We will not gain anything by killing our brother and trying to hide it!

Then Judah said to his brothers (ULT)

So Judah urged to his brothers (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Judah asked his brothers]

What gain {is there} (ULT)

We will not gain anything (UST)

Judah uses a rhetorical question here to emphasize his point. Alternate translation: [What will we gain]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

if we kill our brother and cover up his blood (ULT)

by killing our brother and trying to hide it (UST)

The phrase **cover up** is an idiom that means to prevent people from knowing about something evil that was done. Also, the phrase **his blood** is an idiom that refers to Joseph's death. Alternate translation: [if we kill our brother and try to keep people from finding out about it]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Judah
- gain {is there}
- we kill

UST

- Judah
- We will not gain anything
- by killing

Genesis 37:27

ULT:
Come and let us sell him to the Ishmaelites so that our hand{s} will not be on him. For he {is} our brother, our flesh." And his brothers listened.

UST:
{Instead,} come on, let's sell him to those Ishmaelite {traders} {over there} so that we will not be guilty of harming him. After all, he {is} a member of our family, our own brother." Judah's brothers agreed {with him}.

Come and let us sell him (ULT)

{Instead,} come on, let's sell him (UST)

See how you translated "come and" in verse 20. Alternate translation: [Instead, we should sell him]

---

to the Ishmaelites (ULT)

to those Ishmaelite {traders} {over there} (UST)

See how you translated **Ishmaelites** in verse 25. Alternate translation: [to those Ishmaelites over there] or [to those Ishmaelite merchants over there]

---

so that our hand{s} will not be on him (ULT)

so that we will not be guilty of harming him (UST)

Translate this idiom in a way that is natural and clear in your language. Alternate translation: [so that we do not harm him]

Support Reference: Idiom

For he {is} our brother, our flesh (ULT)

After all, he {is} a member of our family, our own brother (UST)

The phrase **our flesh** refers to the fact that they are closely related biologically. See how you translated a similar idiom ("my bone and my flesh") in Genesis 29:14. Alternate translation: [After all, as our brother, he is member of our family]

Support Reference: Idiom

And his brothers listened (ULT)

Judah's brothers agreed {with him} (UST)

See how you translated **listened** in Genesis 34:24.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- to the Ishmaelites

UST

- to those Ishmaelite {traders} {over there}

Genesis 37:28

ULT:
Then the Midianite men, traders, passed by, and they drew Joseph up and lifted him out of the cistern and sold Joseph to the Ishmaelites for twenty {shekels of} silver. Then they brought Joseph to Egypt.

UST:
So when the Midianite {(that is, Ishmaelite)} traders came by {them}, {some of} Joseph's brothers pulled Joseph up out of the pit and sold him to the Ishmaelites for twenty {pieces of} silver. Then the Ishmaelites took him to {the country of} Egypt.

Then the Midianite men, traders, passed by (ULT)

So when the Midianite {(that is, Ishmaelite)} traders came by {them} (UST)

The Ishmaelites (verses 25, 27–28; 39:1) and Midianites (verses 28 and 36) were the descendants of Abraham's sons Ishmael and Midian (16:15; 25:1–2). However, sometimes (as here) the names of those people groups are used interchangeably (also see Judges 8:22, 24, 26). Perhaps that was because the two people groups had intermarried. Or there may have been merchants from the two people groups in this caravan who bought and sold Joseph together. You could put some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [So as the Midianite (that is, Ishmaelite) merchants came by them] or [So when the Ishmaelite traders, who were also called Midianites, were going by them]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and they drew Joseph up and lifted him out of the cistern (ULT)

{some of} Joseph's brothers pulled Joseph up out of the pit (UST)

Not all of Joseph's brothers were there, because we know from the next verse that at least Reuben was somewhere else when they sold Joseph.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and sold Joseph to the Ishmaelites for twenty {shekels of} silver (ULT)

and sold him to the Ishmaelites for twenty {pieces of} silver (UST)

See the note about **shekels** at Genesis 20:16. The **twenty shekels of silver** was equal to about one-fourth of a kilo (half a pound) and was the average price for a slave. You could put some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [and sold him to the Ishmaelite traders for twenty pieces of silver]

Support Reference: Biblical Money

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Midianite
- Joseph
- the cistern
- Joseph
- to the Ishmaelites
- {shekels of} silver
- Joseph
- to Egypt

UST

- the Midianite {(that is, Ishmaelite … }
- Joseph
- the pit
- him
- to the Ishmaelites
- {pieces of} silver
- him
- to {the country of} Egypt

Genesis 37:29

ULT:
Then Reuben returned to the cistern, but behold, Joseph was not in the cistern, so he tore his clothes.

UST:
Later Reuben came back to the pit, and he was shocked to see that Joseph was not there! So he tore his clothes {to show distress}.

Then Reuben returned to the cistern (ULT)

Later Reuben came back to the pit (UST)

Consider again how you translated **cistern** in verses 20, 22, 24, 28–29. Alternate translation: [Later Reuben who had been gone for a while returned to the well] or [Then Reuben went back to the well to get Joseph]

---

but behold, Joseph was not in the cistern (ULT)

and he was shocked to see that Joseph was not there (UST)

Alternate translation: [but to his surprise Joseph was gone!]

---

so he tore his clothes (ULT)

So he tore his clothes {to show distress} (UST)

Alternate translation: [So he tore his clothes to show grief] or [Then he was so grieved that he tore his clothes]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Reuben
- the cistern
- Joseph
- in the cistern

UST

- Reuben
- the pit
- Joseph
- there

Genesis 37:30

ULT:
Then he returned to his brothers and said, "The boy is not {there}! And I, where am I going?"

UST:
Then he went to his brothers and exclaimed {to them}, "Joseph is gone! Now I do not know what to do!"

Then he returned to his brothers (ULT)

Then he went to his brothers (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then he went back to where his brothers were]

---

and said (ULT)

and exclaimed {to them} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and said to them]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

The boy (ULT)

Joseph (UST)

Joseph was seventeen years old (verse 2), so this phrase should be translated in a way that is appropriate for his older brother to refer to him here. See how you translated a different word that has a similar meaning in Genesis 21:12. Alternate translation: [The lad] or [Our younger brother]

---

is not {there} (ULT)

is gone (UST)

Alternate translation: [is missing!]

And I, where am I going (ULT)

Now I do not know what to do (UST)

Reuben uses a rhetorical question here to express how distressed he is and to emphasize that he does not know what to do. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [Now what can I do?]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

Genesis 37:31

ULT:
Then they took Joseph's tunic and slaughtered a kid of the goats and dipped the tunic in the blood.

UST:
So Joseph's brothers killed a young goat and dipped Joseph's robe in the {goat's} blood.

Then they took (ULT)

"וַיִּקְח֣וּ" (ORIG QUOTE) (UST)

Alternate translation: [So they]

Then they took Joseph's tunic (ULT)

Joseph's robe (UST)

Alternate translation: [took his robe] or [picked up his tunic]

---

and slaughtered a kid of the goats (ULT)

So Joseph's brothers killed a young goat (UST)

Alternate translation: [killed a male goat]

---

and dipped the tunic in the blood (ULT)

and dipped … in the {goat's} blood (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to switch the order of clauses in this verse and say, "Then/So Joseph's brothers killed a young goat, took Joseph's/his tunic/robe, and dipped it in the goat's blood." or "Then/So Joseph's brothers killed a young goat and dipped Joseph's/his tunic/robe in the goat's blood." Alternate translation: [and dipped the robe in its blood]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- s tunic
- Joseph
- and slaughtered
- the goats
- the tunic

UST

- s robe
- Joseph
- So Joseph's brothers killed
- a young goat
- הַכְּתֹנֶת (ORIG QUOTE)

Genesis 37:32

ULT:
Then they sent the multicolored tunic and had it brought to their father and said, "We found this. Please examine whether it {is} your son's tunic or not."

UST:
Then they had someone take the colorful robe back to their father and say {to him} {for them}, "We found this {robe}. Please look at it {to see} whether or not it is your son's."

Then they sent the multicolored tunic and had it brought to their father and said (ULT)

Then they had someone take the colorful robe back to their father and say {to him} {for them} (UST)

Consider again how you translated "multicolored/colorful tunic/robe" in verses 3, 23, 32. Alternate translation: [Then they had someone bring the colorful tunic back to their father and say to him for them]

We found this. Please examine (ULT)

We found this {robe}. Please look at it {to see} (UST)

See how you translated **examine** in Genesis 31:32. Alternate translation: [We found this tunic Please look at it to see]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the … tunic
- whether … s tunic

UST
- the … robe
- whether

Genesis 37:33

ULT:
And he examined it and said, "{It is} my son's tunic! An evil animal has devoured him! Surely Joseph was torn to pieces!"

UST:
Jacob recognized the robe and exclaimed, "{This is} my son {Joseph}'s robe! Clearly a fierce animal has torn him to bits and eaten him up!"

And he examined it and said (ULT)

Jacob recognized the robe and exclaimed (UST)

Alternate translation: [Jacob examined the robe and exclaimed]

{It is} my son's tunic (ULT)

{This is} my son {Joseph}'s robe (UST)

Alternate translation: [This robe belongs to my son Joseph!]

An evil animal has devoured him! Surely Joseph was torn to pieces (ULT)

Clearly a fierce animal has torn him to bits and eaten him up (UST)

See how you translated "an evil animal devoured him" in verse 20. Alternate translation: [Surely a fierce wild animal has torn Joseph to pieces and eaten him up!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- It is … s tunic
- evil
- Joseph

UST

- This is … s robe
- fierce
- him

Genesis 37:34

ULT:
Then Jacob tore his clothes and put sackcloth on his loins, and he mourned for his son many days.

UST:
Then Jacob tore his clothes {in grief}, put on mourning clothes, and for many days he mourned that his son had died.

Then Jacob tore his clothes (ULT)

Then Jacob tore his clothes {in grief} (UST)

See how you translated **tore his clothes** in verse 29. Alternate translation: [Then Jacob tore his clothes in sorrow] or [Jacob was so grieved that he tore his clothes]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

---

and he mourned for his son many days (ULT)

and for many days he mourned that his son had died (UST)

See how you translated "mourn" in Genesis 27:41. Alternate translation: [and for many days he grieved that his son had died] or [and for a very long time he grieved because his son was gone]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Jacob
- sackcloth
- on his loins
- and he mourned
- days

UST
- Jacob
- put on mourning clothes

- put on mourning clothes
- and … he mourned
- for … days

Genesis 37:35

ULT:
And all his sons and all his daughters got up to comfort him, but he refused to be comforted and said, "For I will go down to my son in Sheol mourning." So his father wept for him.

UST:
All Jacob's sons and daughters came {to him} {and tried} to console him, but he did not let them comfort him. Instead he said {to them}, "{No,} I will continue to mourn {for my son} until I {die and} go down to be with him in the afterworld." So Joseph's father continued to mourn for him.

but he refused to be comforted (ULT)

but he did not let them comfort him (UST)

Alternate translation: [but he did not want to be consoled] or [but he did not let them console him]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- mourning
- So … wept

UST

- I will continue to mourn
- So … continued to mourn

Genesis 37:36

ULT:
And the Midianites sold him in Egypt to Potiphar, an official of Pharaoh, the chief of the guards.

UST:
Meanwhile, in {the country of} Egypt, the Midianite {traders} sold Joseph to Potiphar, {who was} an officer under Pharaoh {the king of Egypt}; {he was} the captain over the {palace} guards.

And the Midianites sold him in Egypt (ULT)

Meanwhile, in {the country of} Egypt, the Midianite {traders} sold Joseph (UST)

The event in verse 36 occurred during the time that the events in verses 29–35 happened.
Alternate translation: [Meanwhile, when the Midianite traders got to the country of Egypt, they sold Joseph]

---

the chief of the guards (ULT)

{he was} the captain over the {palace} guards (UST)

Alternate translation: [he was the captain over the royal guards] or [he was the leader of the soldiers who guarded the king]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- And the Midianites
- Egypt
- to Potiphar
- Pharaoh
- the chief of

UST
- Meanwhile … the Midianite {traders}
- in {the country of} Egypt
- to Potiphar

- Pharaoh {the king of Egypt}
- {he was} the captain over

Genesis 38

Genesis 38:1

ULT:
And it happened at that time that Judah went down from his brothers and settled near an Adullamite man, and his name {was} Hirah.

UST:
About that time, Judah left his brothers and went down to {the town of} Adullam and stayed near {the home of} a man from there whose name {was} Hirah.

And it happened at that time (ULT)

About that time (UST)

The phrase **And it happened** introduces a new episode here. Some translations leave it implied. Alternate translation: [Meanwhile] or [At this time]

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

---

that Judah went down from his brothers (ULT)

Judah left his brothers and went down (UST)

In keeping with what is usual for his language and culture, the author is marking travel for change in elevation, **went down**. If this expression contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [Judah departed from his brothers]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

---

and settled near an Adullamite man (ULT)

to {the town of} Adullam and stayed near {the home of} a man from there (UST)

The word **Adullamite** refers to the fact that Hirah was from the town of Adullam; it is not the name of a people group. The town of Adullam was about 19 kilometers (12 miles) northwest of the city of Hebron (37:14), and was lower in elevation, which is why the text says that Judah **went down** to get there. Alternate translation: [and lived in the town of Adullam near the home of a man from there] or [to the town of Adullam and lived near the home of a man from there]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Judah

UST

- Judah

Genesis 38:2

ULT:
And there Judah saw the daughter of a Canaanite man, and his name {was} Shua, and he took her. Then he went to her,

UST:
{While he was living} there, he met a Canaanite woman whose father {was} Shua, and he married her. Then he had {marital} relations with her,

and he took her (ULT)

and he married her (UST)

See how you translated a similar idiom (“took a wife”) in Genesis 25:1. Alternate translation: [and he took her as his wife]

Support Reference: Idiom

Then he went to her (ULT)

Then he had {marital} relations with her (UST)

See how you translated the idiom **went to** in Genesis 6:4. Alternate translation: [Then he lay with her] or [Then he had sexual relations with her]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Judah
- Canaanite

UST
- יְהוּדָה (ORIG QUOTE)
- a Canaanite woman whose father {was}

Genesis 38:3

ULT:
and she conceived and bore a son, and he called his name Er.

UST:
and she became pregnant. When she gave birth, she had a son, whom Judah named Er.

and bore a son (ULT)

When she gave birth, she had a son (UST)

Alternate translation: [and gave birth to a son]

---

and he called his name Er (ULT)

whom Judah named Er (UST)

Throughout Genesis, sometimes the father, sometimes the mother, and sometimes both are said to give their child his name. Alternate translation: [whom he named Er]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- and she conceived
- and bore
- and he called

UST
- and she became pregnant
- When she gave birth, she had
- whom Judah named

Genesis 38:4

ULT:
Then she conceived again and bore a son, and she called his name Onan.

UST:
Then Judah's wife became pregnant again and gave birth to {another} son, and she named him Onan.

(There are no notes for this verse)

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then she conceived
- and bore
- and she called

UST

- Then Judah's wife became pregnant
- and gave birth to
- and she named him

Genesis 38:5

ULT:
And she added yet and bore a son, and she called his name Shelah. And he was in Chezib when she bore him.

UST:
Then she {became pregnant} yet again and gave birth to another son, and she named him Shelah. When she gave birth to Shelah, Judah was at {the town of} Chezib.

And she added yet (ULT)

Then she {became pregnant} yet again (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then she conceived again]

And he was in Chezib when she bore him (ULT)

When she gave birth to Shelah, Judah was at {the town of} Chezib (UST)

This could mean: (1) that Judah was at the town of Chezib when she gave birth to Shelah. Alternate translation: [When she gave birth to Shelah, Judah was in the town of Chezib] or (2) [It was in the town of Chezib that she gave birth to Shelah.] Alternate translation: [She was in Chezib when she gave birth to Shelah]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- and bore
- and she called
- when she bore

UST
- and gave birth to
- and she named him
- When she gave birth to

Genesis 38:6

ULT:
Then Judah took a wife for Er his firstborn, and her name {was} Tamar.

UST:
When Judah's oldest son Er {grew up}, Judah arranged for him to marry a woman whose name {was} Tamar.

Then Judah took a wife for Er his firstborn, and her name {was} Tamar (ULT)

When Judah's oldest son Er {grew up}, Judah arranged for him to marry a woman whose name {was} Tamar (UST)

See how you translated the phrase **took a wife for** in Genesis 21:21. Alternate translation: [Years later, Judah chose a wife named Tamar for his firstborn son Er]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Judah
- his firstborn
- {was} Tamar

UST

- When Judah's oldest son Er {grew up}, Judah arranged for him to marry a woman
- When Judah's oldest son Er {grew up}, Judah arranged for him to marry a woman
- Tamar

Genesis 38:7

ULT:
But Er, the firstborn of Judah, was evil in the eyes of Yahweh, so Yahweh killed him.

UST:
But Er did things that Yahweh considered to be evil, so Yahweh caused him to die.

But Er, the firstborn of Judah, was (ULT)

But Er (UST)

Some languages leave **the firstborn of Judah** implied here since Er was already called the firstborn in verse 6. The Hebrew text repeats that information here to emphasize Er's relationship to Judah in the following events.

But … was evil in the eyes of Yahweh (ULT)

But … did things that Yahweh considered to be evil (UST)

The Hebrew text does not specify what Er had done wrong, so neither should your translation. See how you translated the idiom **in the eyes of Yahweh** in Genesis 6:8. Alternate translation: [Er … did something that Yahweh judged to be evil]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

so Yahweh killed him (ULT)

so Yahweh caused him to die (UST)

Alternate translation: [so Yahweh took his life]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the firstborn of
- Judah
- evil
- Yahweh
- Yahweh

UST

- בְּכֹר (ORIG QUOTE)
- יְהוּדָה (ORIG QUOTE)
- did things that Yahweh considered to be evil
- did things that Yahweh considered to be evil
- Yahweh

Genesis 38:8

ULT:
Then Judah said to Onan, "Go to the wife of your brother and perform your duty to her and produce offspring for your brother."

UST:
After that, Judah told {his son} Onan, "Marry your brother's widow {Tamar} {according to our custom} so that you fulfill your obligation to her {as her brother-in-law} and have children {with her} for your {deceased} brother."

Go to the wife of your brother (ULT)

Marry your brother's widow {Tamar} {according to our custom} (UST)

The author assumes that readers will know that the Israelites practiced the custom of Levirate marriage, which meant that if a man died without any children, it was his oldest brother's duty to marry his widow. That way, they could produce a son who would carry on the deceased man's family line and inherit his estate (See: Deuteronomy 25:5–6). You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and perform your duty to her (ULT)

so that you fulfill your obligation to her {as her brother-in-law} (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that you fulfill your duty to her as her brother-in-law]

---

and produce offspring (ULT)

and have children {with her} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and produce children with her]

---

for your brother (ULT)

for your {deceased} brother (UST)

Alternate translation: [to carry on the name of your brother Er]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Judah
- offspring

UST

- Judah
- children

Genesis 38:9

ULT:
However, Onan knew that the offspring would not be his, so it happened when he went to the wife of his brother, then he spilled {it} on the ground so that he would not give offspring to his brother.

UST:
However Onan knew that the children {they would have together} would not belong to him. So whenever he had {marital} relations with Tamar, he wasted {his semen} on the ground to keep her from {getting pregnant and} having {any} children for his brother.

However, Onan knew that the offspring would not be his (ULT)

However Onan knew that the children {they would have together} would not belong to him (UST)

Alternate translation: [But Onan knew that the children they would have together would not belong to him]

---

so it happened when (ULT)

So whenever (UST)

Alternate translation: [So every time]

---

he went to (ULT)

he had {marital} relations with (UST)

Alternate translation: [he lay with] or [he had physical relations with]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

then he spilled {it} on the ground (ULT)

he wasted {his semen} on the ground (UST)

Translate this clause in a way that is polite and will not shame or embarrass people when this verse is read aloud in public. Make sure it is clear that Onan did something to keep Tamar from getting pregnant. Alternate translation: [he let his semen to go on the ground]

---

so that he would not give offspring to his brother (ULT)

to keep her from {getting pregnant and} having {any} children for his brother (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that he would not have offspring for his brother] or [to keep her from getting pregnant and having any offspring for his brother]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- However … knew
- the offspring
- on the ground
- offspring

UST

- However … knew
- the children {they would have together}
- on the ground
- {any} children

Genesis 38:10

ULT:
And what he did was evil in the eyes of Yahweh, so he killed him also.

UST:
Yahweh considered what Onan did to be evil, so he caused him to die too.

so he killed him also (ULT)

so he caused him to die too (UST)

Alternate translation: [so he took his life too] or [so Yahweh caused him to die too]

And what he did was evil in the eyes of Yahweh (ULT)

Yahweh considered what Onan did to be evil (UST)

See how you translated **evil in the eyes of Yahweh** in verse 7. Alternate translation: [Yahweh judged what he did to be evil]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- And … was evil
- Yahweh

UST
- considered … to be evil
- Yahweh

Genesis 38:11

ULT:
Then Judah said to Tamar his daughter-in-law, "Remain a widow in the house of your father until Shelah my son grows up." For he said, "So that he does not also die like his brothers!" So Tamar went and lived in the house of her father.

UST:
Then Judah told his daughter-in-law Tamar, "{Go and} live at your father's house, and do not marry again until my son Shelah is old enough {to marry you}." {Actually Judah did not want Shelah to marry Tamar} because he was afraid {that if he did,} he would also die like his brothers had. So Tamar went {home} to her father's house and stayed there.

(There are no notes for this verse)

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Judah
- to Tamar
- in the house of
- Tamar
- in the house of

UST

- Judah
- Tamar
- at … s house
- Tamar
- to … s house

Genesis 38:12

ULT:
Then the days were many, and Shua's daughter, the wife of Judah, died. Then Judah was comforted, and he went up to Timnah, to {the men} who were shearing his sheep, he and his friend Hirah the Adullamite.

UST:
After a long time, Judah's wife, the daughter of Shua, died. After Judah finished mourning {for her}, {one day} he {decided to} go to {the town of} Timnah {to work} with {the men} who were shearing his sheep {there}. He and his friend Hirah, {who was} from {the town of} Adullam, {started traveling there together}.

Then the days were many (ULT)

After a long time (UST)

Alternate translation: [Many years later] or [Years went by and then]

---

and Shua's daughter, the wife of Judah, died (ULT)

Judah's wife, the daughter of Shua, died (UST)

Notice that Shua was the father of Judah's wife. Be consistent here with how you spelled his name in verse 2.

Then Judah was comforted (ULT)

After Judah finished mourning {for her} (UST)

See how you translated **comforted** in Genesis 37:35. Alternate translation: [After Judah finished grieving for her, one day] or [After Judah had completed the customary time of mourning for her]

---

and he went up to Timnah (ULT)

{one day} he {decided to} go to {the town of} Timnah (UST)

Make sure your translation of this clause does not sound like Judah had already arrived at Timnah, because he does not actually reach there until verse 19. His trip from the town of Adullam (verse 1) to the town of Timnah was about 13 kilometers (8 miles).

---

to {the men} who were shearing his sheep (ULT)

to work} with {the men} who were shearing his sheep {there} (UST)

See how you translated "shear his sheep" in Genesis 31:19 and see the note about that there. Alternate translation: [where his men were shearing his sheep for him]

---

he and his friend Hirah the Adullamite (ULT)

He and his friend Hirah, {who was} from {the town of} Adullam, {started traveling there together} (UST)

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to put this clause earlier in this verse and say, "… and he and his friend Hirah the Adullamite went up to the town of Timnah where men were shearing Judah's sheep for him." Also, be consistent here with how you spelled **Hirah** and how you translated **Adullamite** in verse 1. Alternate translation: [His friend Hirah the Adullamite went with him]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the days
- Judah
- Judah
- his sheep

UST

- After a long time
- Judah
- Judah
- to work} with {the men} who were shearing his sheep {there}

Genesis 38:13

ULT:
And it was told to Tamar, saying, "Behold, your father-in-law is going up to Timnah to shear his sheep."

UST:
Meanwhile someone told Tamar, "Listen, your father-in-law {Judah} is on his way to {the town of} Timnah to shear his sheep."

And it was told to Tamar, saying (ULT)

Meanwhile someone told Tamar (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then someone told Tamar]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

is going up to Timnah to shear his sheep (ULT)

is on his way to {the town of} Timnah to shear his sheep (UST)

See how you translated "shearing his sheep" in verse 12. Alternate translation: [is on his way to shear his sheep in the town of Timnah]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- And it was told
- to Tamar
- his sheep

UST
- Meanwhile someone told
- Tamar
- his sheep

Genesis 38:14

ULT:
So she took off her widow's clothes from her and covered herself with a veil and wrapped herself. Then she sat at the entrance of Enaim, which {is} on the road to Timnah, because she saw that Shelah had grown up, but she had not been given to him as a wife.

UST:
So she changed from her clothes that showed she was a widow and covered her face with a {thin} headscarf and dressed herself {like a prostitute}. Then {she went} toward {the town of} Timnah and sat down near the gateway of {the town of} Enaim, which {was} along the way. {She did that} because she had noticed that Shelah was now old enough {to marry}, but Judah had not given her to him to marry {as he was supposed to do}.

So she took off her widow's clothes from her (ULT)

So she changed from her clothes that showed she was a widow (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Tamar did not just take off her widow's clothes, but that she also put different clothes on. Alternate translation: [So she changed into different clothes from the kind of clothes that widows wear]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and covered herself with a veil (ULT)

and covered her face with a {thin} headscarf (UST)

A veil was a large piece of thin cloth that was used to cover the face and/or the body. See how you translated **veil** in Genesis 24:65. Alternate translation: [and covered herself with a large veil] or [and covered her face with a thin veil]

---

and wrapped herself (ULT)

and dressed herself {like a prostitute} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and disguised herself as a prostitute] or [to disguise herself]

Then she sat at the entrance of Enaim, which {is} on the road to Timnah (ULT)

Then {she went} toward {the town of} Timnah and sat down near the gateway of {the town of} Enaim, which {was} along the way (UST)

Some languages need to specify that Tamar traveled to Enaim before she sat down there. Alternate translation: [Then she sat by the gateway to the town of Enaim, which was on the way to the town of Timnah] or [Then she went toward the town of Timnah and sat down at the entrance of the town of Enaim, which was along the way]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

but she had not been given to him as a wife (ULT)

but Judah had not given her to him to marry {as he was supposed to do} (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to change the order of clauses in this sentence and say, "Tamar had seen/noticed that Shelah was now grown up, but Judah had not given her to him to marry as he was supposed/required to do. So she changed from her widow's clothes …" Alternate translation: [but Judah had not given her to Shelah to marry as he was required to do]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- with a veil
- at the entrance of

UST

- with a {thin} headscarf
- near the gateway of

Genesis 38:15

ULT:
Then Judah saw her, and he thought she was a prostitute because she had covered her face.

UST:
{As Judah was traveling to Timnah,} he saw Tamar {beside the road}, but since she had veiled her face {with a scarf}, {he could not see who she was, and} he assumed that she was a prostitute.

and he thought she was a prostitute because she had covered her face (ULT)

but since she had veiled her face {with a scarf}, {he could not see who she was, and} he assumed that she was a prostitute (UST)

See how you translated **prostitute** in Genesis 34:31 and **covered her face** in verse 14.
Alternate translation: [but since she had covered her face with a veil he could not see who she was and he thought that she was a prostitute]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Judah
- was a prostitute

UST
- Judah
- was a prostitute

Genesis 38:16

ULT:
So he turned to her beside the road and said, “Please come, let me come to you,” because he did not know that she {was} his daughter-in-law. And she said, “What will you give to me if you will come to me?”

UST:
So he went over to where she was {sitting} beside the road and said {to her}, “Let me have sex with you.” {He did that} because he did not recognize that she was his daughter-in-law {Tamar}. So she asked {him}, “What will you pay me so that you can have sex with me?”

So he turned to her beside the road (ULT)

So he went over to where she was {sitting} beside the road (UST)

Alternate translation: [So he went over to where she was sitting by the road]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and said (ULT)

and said {to her} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and propositioned her by saying] or [and requested]

Please come, let me come to you (ULT)

Let me have sex with you (UST)

Alternate translation: [Let me lie with you] or [Let me have relations with you]

Support Reference: Euphemism

What will you give to me (ULT)

What will you pay me (UST)

Alternate translation: [What will you give me in exchange]

---

if you will come (ULT)

so that you can have sex (UST)

Alternate translation: [if I allow you to]

---

you will come to me (ULT)

you can have sex with me (UST)

See how you translated the idiom **come to** earlier in this verse. Alternate translation: [lie with me?] or [have relations with me?] or [do that?]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

because he did not know that she {was} his daughter-in-law (ULT)

He did that} because he did not recognize that she was his daughter-in-law {Tamar} (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this sentence and say, “He did not realize that she was his daughter-in-law Tamar, so he went over to her beside the road and said …” Alternate translation: [He said that because he did not realize that she was his daughter-in-law Tamar]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- he did … know

UST

- he did … recognize

Genesis 38:17

ULT:
And he said, “I will send a kid goat from the flock.” And she said, “If you will give a pledge until you send {it}.”

UST:
He answered {her}, “I will send {you} a young goat from my flock.” She replied, “{I will agree,} if you will give {me} something {valuable} {of yours} to keep until you deliver {the goat to me}.”

I will send a kid goat from the flock (ULT)

I will send {you} a young goat from my flock (UST)

See how you translated **kid goat** in Genesis 27:9, 16.

If you will give a pledge (ULT)

{I will agree,} if you will give {me} something {valuable} {of yours} to keep (UST)

If you will give a pledge could mean: (1) “Ok, if you will give me a pledge.” Alternate translation: [I will agree if you give me something valuable of yours to keep]; (2) “Will you give me a deposit?” Alternate translation: [Will you give me something valuable to hold until then?]

---

until you send {it} (ULT)

until you deliver {the goat to me} (UST)

Alternate translation: [until you send the goat to me]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- goat
- the flock
- a pledge

UST

- a young goat
- my flock
- something {valuable} {of yours} to keep

Genesis 38:18

ULT:
Then he said, “What {is} the pledge that I should give to you?” And she said, “Your signet and your cord and your staff that {is} in your hand.” So he gave {them} to her and went to her, and she conceived by him.

UST:
So Judah asked, “What do you want me to leave with you?” She answered {him}, “{Leave me} your name seal with its cord {that you have around your neck}, and your walking stick that you are holding.” So he gave {those things} to her. Then he had {sexual} relations with her, and she became pregnant from him.

Then he said (ULT)

So Judah asked (UST)

Alternate translation: [So Judah asked her]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

What {is} the pledge that I should give to you (ULT)

What do you want me to leave with you (UST)

Alternate translation: [What should I give to you as a pledge]

Your signet (ULT)

{Leave me} your name seal (UST)

A **signet** was a ring used to prove the owner’s identity and to sign documents that were written on clay tablets. If people in your culture are not familiar with this thing, you could put some of this information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [Your signature ring]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

---

and your staff (ULT)

and your walking stick (UST)

Alternate translation: [and your cane]

---

and went to her (ULT)

Then he had {sexual} relations with her (UST)

Consider again how you translated the idiom **went to** in the book of Genesis. See 6:4 (See: note); 16:2, 4; 19:31; 30:3–4; 38:2, 8–9, 16, 18. It may be necessary to translate this phrase in different ways, depending on the context; for example, the relationship in Genesis 38:16, 18 was outside of marriage. Alternate translation: [Then he lay with her]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

and she conceived by him (ULT)

and she became pregnant from him (UST)

Consider again how you translated "conceive" in the book of Genesis. See 4:1, 17; 16:4–5; 19:36; 21:2; 25:21; 29:32–35; 30:5, 7, 17, 19, 23; 38:3–4, 18. Alternate translation: [and she became pregnant by him] or [and he caused her to become pregnant]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the pledge
- Your signet
- and your staff
- and she conceived

UST

- What do you want me to leave with you
- {Leave me} your name seal
- and your walking stick
- and she became pregnant

Genesis 38:19

ULT:
Then she got up and left, and she took off her veil from her and put on her widow's clothes.

UST:
After that, Tamar left {Judah} and returned {home}. Then she took off her scarf and put on her clothes that showed she was a widow.

Then she got up and left (ULT)

After that, Tamar left {Judah} and returned {home} (UST)

Alternate translation: [After that, Tamar left Judah and went home] or [After Tamar left Judah, she went home]

---

and she took off her veil from her (ULT)

Then she took off her scarf (UST)

See how you translated **veil** in verse 14. Alternate translation: [took off her shawl] or [Then she took her veil off]

---

and put on her widow's clothes (ULT)

and put on her clothes that showed she was a widow (UST)

See how you translated **widow's clothes** in verse 14. Alternate translation: [and put back on her clothes that showed she was a widow] or [and put back on the kind of clothes that widows wear]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- her veil

UST

- Then she took off her scarf

Genesis 38:20

ULT:
Then Judah sent the kid goat by the hand of his friend the Adullamite to get back the pledge from the hand of the woman, but he did not find her.

UST:
Meanwhile Judah sent a young goat with his friend {Hirah}, {who was} from {the town of} Adullam, to reclaim his things from the prostitute {whom he had given them to}. But {when Hirah looked for her,} he was not able to find her.

Then Judah sent the kid goat by the hand of his friend the Adullamite (ULT)

Meanwhile Judah sent a young goat with his friend {Hirah}, {who was} from {the town of} Adullam (UST)

See how you translated "his friend … the Adullamite" in verse 12 and **kid goat** in verse 17.
Alternate translation: [After that, Judah sent his friend Hirah the Adullamite with a young goat]

---

to get back the pledge from the hand of the woman (ULT)

to reclaim his things from the prostitute {whom he had given them to} (UST)

Alternate translation: [to retrieve his things from the woman whom he had given them to] or [to exchange it for the things he had left with the woman] or [to get back from the woman the things he had left with her]

---

but he did not find her (ULT)

But {when Hirah looked for her,} he was not able to find her (UST)

Alternate translation: [but Hirah could not find her]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Judah
- goat
- his friend
- the pledge

UST

- Judah
- a young goat
- with his friend {Hirah}
- his things

Genesis 38:21

ULT:
So he asked the men of her place, saying, “Where {is} the temple prostitute who {was} at Enaim beside the road?” But they said, “There has not been a temple prostitute in this place.”

UST:
So he asked {some} men {who lived} near the place where she had been, “Where {is} the temple prostitute who was {sitting} beside the road near {the town of} Enaim?” But they answered {him}, “There has never been a temple prostitute around here.”

So he asked the men of her place, saying (ULT)

So he asked {some} men {who lived} near the place where she had been (UST)

Alternate translation: [So Hirah asked some men who lived near the place where she had been]

Where {is} the temple prostitute who {was} at Enaim beside the road (ULT)

Where {is} the temple prostitute who was {sitting} beside the road near {the town of} Enaim (UST)

Pagan religions had fertility rites at their temples or shrines that included professional prostitutes. Make sure your translation of **temple prostitute** does not refer to any temple built by the Israelites. Also be consistent here with how you translated **Enaim** in verse 14. Alternate translation: [Where is the shrine prostitute who was sitting beside the road near the town of Enaim?]

There has not been a temple prostitute (ULT)

There has never been a temple prostitute (UST)

Alternate translation: [There has never been a shrine prostitute] or [No shrine prostitute has ever been]

---

in this place (ULT)

around here (UST)

Alternate translation: [in this town]

Genesis 38:22

ULT:
So he returned to Judah and said, "I did not find her. And also, the men of the place said, 'There has not been a temple prostitute in this {place}.'"

UST:
So Hirah returned to Judah and told {him}, "I was not able to find the prostitute. In fact, the men who live near that town claim {that} there has never been a temple prostitute around there."

So he returned to Judah (ULT)

So Hirah returned to Judah (UST)

Alternate translation: [So Hirah came back to Judah]

---

and said (ULT)

and told {him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and said to him] or [and informed him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

I did not find her (ULT)

I was not able to find the prostitute (UST)

Alternate translation: [I was not able to find the woman]

And also (ULT)

In fact (UST)

Alternate translation: [And besides that]

---

the men of the place (ULT)

the men who live near that town (UST)

Alternate translation: [the men who live around there] or [the men who live in that town]

---

said, ‘There has not been a temple prostitute in this {place} (ULT)

claim {that} there has never been a temple prostitute around there (UST)

See how you translated this same quote in verse 21. Consider whether or not it is better in your language to translate this as an indirect quote here in verse 22. Alternate translation: [say that there has never been a shrine prostitute near there]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Judah

UST

- Judah

Genesis 38:23

ULT:
And Judah said, "Let her take {the things} for herself so that we do not become a laughingstock. Behold, I sent this kid, but you did not find her."

UST:
Then Judah said, "{Stop looking for her and} let her keep {my things} for herself. Otherwise everyone will make fun of us. Besides that, I {did try to} send this goat {to her}, but you were not able to find her."

And Judah said (ULT)

Then Judah said (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Judah said to him] or [Judah replied]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

---

so that we do not become a laughingstock (ULT)

Otherwise everyone will make fun of us (UST)

The pronouns **we** and "us" are inclusive here because Judah is including Hirah; some languages might use a dual pronoun. Use the pronouns that are best in your language in this context. Alternate translation: [so that people do not laugh at us] or [so that we are not publicly shamed]

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

Behold (ULT)

Besides that (UST)

Alternate translation: [After all]

I sent this kid (ULT)

I {did try to} send this goat {to her} (UST)

Alternate translation: [I did try to deliver this goat to her] or [I sent you to deliver this goat to her]

---

but you did not find her (ULT)

but you were not able to find her (UST)

Alternate translation: [but you could not find her]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Judah
- a laughingstock
- kid

UST

- Judah
- everyone will make fun of us
- goat

Genesis 38:24

ULT:
And it happened about three months later that it was told to Judah, saying, "Tamar your daughter-in-law has prostituted herself, and also, behold, {she is} pregnant by her prostitutions!" So Judah said, "Bring her out, and let her be burned!"

UST:
About three months later, someone told Judah, "Your daughter-in-law Tamar has acted like a prostitute. In fact, look, {she is} {now} pregnant from doing that!" Judah responded {angrily}, "Take her outside {the town} and burn her {to death}!"

And it happened about three months later (ULT)

About three months later (UST)

The author is using the word translated as **And it happened** to introduce a new development in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new development.

Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

---

that it was told to Judah, saying (ULT)

someone told Judah (UST)

Alternate translation: [someone said to Judah] or [someone informed Judah]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Tamar your daughter-in-law (ULT)

Your daughter-in-law Tamar (UST)

Consider again how you translated **daughter-in-law** in the book of Genesis. See 11:31; 38:11, 16, 24.

---

has prostituted herself (ULT)

has acted like a prostitute (UST)

Some languages have an idiom for this phrase. See how you translated "prostitute" in Genesis 34:31, 38:15 and "temple prostitute" in verses 21–22. Alternate translation: [has acted as a prostitute]

---

and also, behold, {she is} pregnant by her prostitutions (ULT)

In fact, look, {she is} {now} pregnant from doing that (UST)

Alternate translation: [In fact, as a result of her immoral behavior she has become pregnant!] or [and even worse, she is now pregnant because of that!]

So Judah said (ULT)

Judah responded {angrily} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Judah said angrily]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Bring her out (ULT)

Take her outside {the town} (UST)

Executions were normally done outside of the city walls.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and let her be burned (ULT)

and burn her {to death} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and punish her by burning her to death!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- months
- that it was told
- to Judah
- has prostituted herself
- Tamar
- {she is} pregnant
- by her prostitutions
- Judah

UST

- months later
- someone told
- Judah
- has acted like a prostitute
- Tamar
- {she is} {now} pregnant
- from doing that
- Judah

Genesis 38:25

ULT:
She was being brought out, and she sent {a message} to her father-in-law, saying, "By the man whom these things belong to, I {am} pregnant." Then she said, "Please identify whose signet and cords and staff these {are}."

UST:
{So they went to get her, but} as they were taking her out {of the town}, she sent {a messenger} to her father-in-law {along with his things} and told the messenger to say, "The man who owns these things is the one who got me pregnant. Please identify {the man} who owns this name seal with its cord and this walking stick."

She was being brought out (ULT)

So they went to get her, but} as they were taking her out {of the town} (UST)

Alternate translation: [So they went to get Tamar, but as they were taking her out of the town]

---

and she sent {a message} to her father-in-law, saying (ULT)

she sent {a messenger} to her father-in-law {along with his things} and told the messenger to say (UST)

See how you translated **father-in-law** in verse 13.

Then she said, "Please identify whose signet and cords and staff these {are} (ULT)

Please identify {the man} who owns this name seal with its cord and this walking stick (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to omit the quote margin here, since what follows is a continuation of the message Tamar is sending to Judah. See how you translated **signet** and "cord" and **staff** in verse 18. Alternate translation: [Please identify the man who owns this name thing with its string and this walking stick] or [Please look at this name seal with its cord and this walking stick. Do you know who they belong to?]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- {am} pregnant
- signet
- and staff

UST

- got me pregnant
- this name seal
- and … walking stick

Genesis 38:26

ULT:
And Judah identified {the things} and said, "She is more righteous than I {am}, because I did not give her to Shelah my son!" And he did not continue to know her more.

UST:
Judah recognized {his things} and confessed, "Tamar is right, and I am wrong, because I refused to have my son Shelah marry her {as I was supposed to}!" {So they released Tamar,} and {after that} Judah never had {sexual} relations with her again.

And Judah identified {the things} (ULT)

Judah recognized {his things} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Judah saw that the things she had were his]

---

and said (ULT)

and confessed (UST)

Alternate translation: [and admitted]

She is more righteous than I {am} (ULT)

Tamar is right, and I am wrong (UST)

Alternate translation: [She is right, and I am wrong]

---

because I did not give her to Shelah my son (ULT)

because I refused to have my son Shelah marry her {as I was supposed to} (UST)

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Shelah** in verses 5, 11, 14. Alternate translation: [because I refused to have my son Shelah marry her as I was required to!] or [because I did not let her marry my son Shelah as I was required to!]

And he did not continue to know her more (ULT)

{So they released Tamar,} and {after that} Judah never had {sexual} relations with her again (UST)

Consider again how you translated the idiom "knew" in the book of Genesis. See 4:1 (and note), 17, 25; 19:8; 24:16; 38:26. It may be necessary to translate 38:26 differently, since the relationship in this verse was outside of marriage. Compare how you translated a related idiom ("went to") in verse 18. Alternate translation: [So they released her and after that he never again slept with her] or [… never had sexual relations with Tamar again]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Judah
- She is … righteous
- to know her

UST

- Judah
- Tamar is right, and I am wrong
- Judah … had {sexual} relations with her again

Genesis 38:27

ULT:
Then it happened when {it was} time for her to give birth, then behold, twins {were} inside her womb!

UST:
Months later, when Tamar was ready to give birth, they realized that {there were} twins inside her!

Then it happened when {it was} time for her to give birth (ULT)

Months later, when Tamar was ready to give birth (UST)

See how you translated **Then it happened** in verse 24. The same phrase occurs three times in verses 27–29 to draw attention to the peak of this chapter, the birth of Perez, who was the ancestor of King David and the Messiah.

Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

---

then behold, twins {were} inside her womb (ULT)

they realized that {there were} twins inside her (UST)

Alternate translation: [amazingly there were twins inside her!] or [they saw that there were twins inside her!] or [it turned out that she was going to have twins!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- for her to give birth
- {were} inside her womb

UST
- Tamar was ready to give birth
- inside her

Genesis 38:28

ULT:
And it happened, as she was giving birth, then {one} put out a hand, and the midwife took a scarlet thread and tied {it} on his hand, saying, "This {one} came out first."

UST:
While she was in labor, {one of them} stuck out {his} hand. So the midwife {who was there} tied a {bright} red string around his wrist and said, "This {baby} was born first."

And it happened, as she was giving birth (ULT)

While she was in labor (UST)

See how you translated **giving birth** in Genesis 35:16. This may need to be translated differently here because of the different context. Alternate translation: [As she was starting to deliver her babies]

---

then {one} put out a hand (ULT)

{one of them} stuck out {his} hand (UST)

Alternate translation: [one of the twins put out his hand]

---

and the midwife took a scarlet thread and tied {it} on his hand, saying (ULT)

So the midwife {who was there} tied a {bright} red string around his wrist and said (UST)

The midwife did this because it was her responsibility to identify which baby was the firstborn. See how you translated **midwife** in Genesis 35:17. Alternate translation: [Then the midwife who was there tied a bright red thread on his wrist and said] or [So the midwife who was helping her …]

This {one} came out first (ULT)

This {baby} was born first (UST)

Alternate translation: [This one was born first]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- as she was giving birth
- and tied {it}

UST

- While she was in labor
- tied

Genesis 38:29

ULT:
But it happened, when he drew his hand back in, then behold, his brother came out. Then she said, "How have you breached for yourself a breach?" So he called his name Perez.

UST:
But then the baby pulled his hand back inside, and suddenly his brother was born {first} {instead}. So the midwife exclaimed {to the baby}, "What a dramatic way for you to burst out!" That is why he was named Perez, {which means "break out."}

But it happened, when he drew his hand back in, then behold (ULT)

But then the baby pulled his hand back inside, and suddenly (UST)

Alternate translation: [But then that baby pulled his hand back inside, and suddenly]

---

his brother came out (ULT)

his brother was born {first} {instead} (UST)

Alternate translation: [his brother came out first instead]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

Then she said (ULT)

So the midwife exclaimed {to the baby} (UST)

Alternate translation: [So the midwife said to the baby]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

How have you breached for yourself a breach (ULT)

What a dramatic way for you to burst out (UST)

The midwife uses a rhetorical question here to emphasize how surprised she is that Perez was born first. Decide the best way to communicate this in your language. Alternate translation: [How did you burst yourself out like that?] or [What a powerful way for you to burst out!] or [Just look at how you have forced your way out!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

So he called his name (ULT)

That is why he was named (UST)

Although this phrase could mean that Judah (Perez's father) named Perez, most translations translate this in a general or indefinite way that does not specify who named him. See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 29:34. Alternate translation: [So they named him]

Perez (ULT)

Perez, {which means "break out … } (UST)

If you include the meaning of Perez' name in your translation or in a footnote, make sure it fits with how you translated the previous sentence.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- So he called

UST

- That is why he was named

Genesis 38:30

ULT:
And afterwards, his brother came out, who {had} the scarlet thread on his hand, and he called his name Zerah.

UST:
After that, his brother, who {had} the {bright} red string on his wrist, came out. So he was named Zerah, {which means "brightness."}

And afterwards, his brother (ULT)

After that, his brother (UST)

Alternate translation: [After that, his twin brother]

---

came out (ULT)

came out (UST)

Alternate translation: [was born]

---

who {had} the scarlet thread on his hand (ULT)

who {had} the {bright} red string on his wrist (UST)

See how you translated **scarlet thread** in verse 28. Alternate translation: [who had the bright red thread on his wrist] or [with the bright red string on his wrist]

---

and he called his name (ULT)

So he was named (UST)

Alternate translation: [So they named him]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and he called

UST

- So he was named

Genesis 39

Genesis 39:1

ULT:
Now Joseph had been taken down to Egypt, and Potiphar, an Egyptian man, an official of Pharaoh, the chief of the guards, had bought him from the hand of the Ishmaelites who had taken him down there.

UST:
Now {as you know,} {some} Ishmaelite traders had taken Joseph down to {the country of} Egypt, and an Egyptian {named} Potiphar had bought him {as a servant} from them. Potiphar {was} {one of} {King} Pharaoh's officers, the captain over the king's {personal} guards.

Now Joseph had been taken down to Egypt (ULT)

Now {as you know,} {some} Ishmaelite traders had taken Joseph down to {the country of} Egypt (UST)

Chapter 39 picks up where 37:36 left off and repeats some events (that happened in chapter 37) to remind readers of what happened before chapter 38 interrupted the narrative. Make sure your translation does not sound like Joseph was taken to Egypt twice or sold to Potiphar twice. Alternate translation: [Now as you know, Ishmaelite merchants had brought Joseph down to the country of Egypt] or [Returning now to Joseph: Remember that he had been taken down to the country of Egypt by Ishmaelite traders]

Support Reference: Background Information

Potiphar, an Egyptian man, an official of Pharaoh, the chief of the guards (ULT)

an Egyptian {named} Potiphar … Potiphar {was} {one of} {King} Pharaoh's officers, the captain over the king's {personal} guards (UST)

See how you translated **an official of Pharaoh, the chief of the guards** in Genesis 37:36.

---

and … had bought him from the hand of the Ishmaelites who had taken him down there (ULT)

and … had bought him {as a servant} from them (UST)

For some languages it is clearer and more natural to change the order of clauses in this verse and say, “Now as you know, some Ishmaelite traders had taken/brought Joseph down to the country of Egypt, and an Egyptian named Potiphar had bought him as a slave/servant from them. Potiphar was one of Pharaoh’s officials/officers, the captain over the king’s personal guards.” See how you translated **Ishmaelites** in Genesis 37:25, 27–28. Alternate translation: [had bought him as a slave from the Ishmaelites who had brought him there]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Now Joseph
- to Egypt
- Potiphar
- Pharaoh
- the chief of
- the Ishmaelites

UST

- Now {as you know … } … Joseph
- to {the country of} Egypt
- {named} Potiphar … Potiphar
- {King} Pharaoh
- the captain over
- them

Genesis 39:2

ULT:
And Yahweh was with Joseph, and he was a successful man, and he was in the house of his Egyptian master.

UST:
As Joseph worked in his Egyptian owner's house, Yahweh was with him {and helped him}, so that he succeeded in everything he did.

And Yahweh was with Joseph (ULT)

Yahweh was with him {and helped him} (UST)

See how you translated **was with** in Genesis 21:20; 26:28. Alternate translation: [But Yahweh was with Joseph and helped him]

---

and he was a successful man (ULT)

so that he succeeded in everything he did (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that he succeeded in what he did] or [so that he did everything very well]

And Yahweh was with Joseph, and he was a successful man, and he was in the house of his Egyptian master (ULT)

As Joseph worked in his Egyptian owner's house, Yahweh was with him {and helped him}, so that he succeeded in everything he did (UST)

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information Joseph's circumstances and God's presence before the information about Joseph's success. Alternate translation: [As Joseph worked in his Egyptian master's house, Yahweh was with Joseph and blessed him, so that he succeeded in everything he did]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Yahweh
- Joseph
- successful
- in the house of
- his … master
- Egyptian

UST

- Yahweh
- with him {and helped him}
- so that he succeeded in everything he did
- in … s house
- his … owner
- Egyptian

Genesis 39:3

ULT:
And his master saw that Yahweh {was} with him and {that} Yahweh made all that he was doing successful in his hand.

UST:
His owner realized that Yahweh {was} with him and was helping him to succeed in everything that he did.

And his master saw that Yahweh {was} with him (ULT)

His owner realized that Yahweh {was} with him (UST)

In verses 2 through 20, Potiphar is referred to as Joseph's master (verses 2–3, 7–8, 16, 19–20) and "the Egyptian" (verse 5); he is no longer mentioned by his name in the Hebrew text. Some translations continue to use Potiphar's name occasionally in verses 2 through 20 to prevent confusion and make it clear that all of these references refer to the same person, not two or three different people. See how you translated **master** or "owner" in Genesis 24:9–10.

---

and {that} Yahweh made all that he was doing successful in his hand (ULT)

and was helping him to succeed in everything that he did (UST)

See how you translated **successful** in verse 2. Alternate translation: [and was helping Joseph to prosper in everything that he did] or [and was helping Joseph to do everything very well]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- his master
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- made … successful

UST
- His owner
- Yahweh

- יְהוָה (ORIG QUOTE)
- was helping him to succeed in

Genesis 39:4

ULT:
So Joseph found favor in his eyes, and he served him. And he put him in charge over his house and gave into his hand all {that} was his.

UST:
So Potiphar was pleased with Joseph and made him his personal servant. He also put him in charge of managing his household and taking care of everything {else} {that} he owned.

So Joseph found favor in his eyes, and he served him (ULT)

So Potiphar was pleased with Joseph and made him his personal servant (UST)

Make sure that your translation of **in his eyes** refers here to Joseph's master, not Yahweh. In the second clause of the first sentence, the pronoun **he** refers to Joseph, while the pronoun **him** refers to Potiphar. Alternate translation: [Since Joseph pleased Potiphar, he became Potiphar's special servant]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

And he put him in charge over his house and gave into his hand all {that} was his (ULT)

He also put him in charge of managing his household and taking care of everything {else} {that} he owned (UST)

Make sure your translation of the pronouns ("he," "him," and **his**) in verses 2 through 6 refers to the correct person at each point in the text. Also see how you translated the idiom "gave … into the hand of" in Genesis 32:16. Alternate translation: [He also put Joseph in charge of managing his household and taking care of everything else that he owned] or [He also appointed him as the overseer of his entire household and entrusted into his care everything that belonged to him]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- favor
- and he served
- And he put him in charge
- his house

UST

- So Potiphar was pleased with Joseph
- So Potiphar was pleased with Joseph
- and made him his personal servant
- He also put him in charge of managing
- his household

Genesis 39:5

ULT:
And it happened from the time he put him in charge in his house and over all that was his, then Yahweh blessed the house of the Egyptian because of Joseph. So the blessing of Yahweh was on all that was his, in the house and in the fields.

UST:
From the time {that} Joseph's Egyptian owner did that, Yahweh blessed the household of that Egyptian {man} for Joseph's sake. He blessed everything that belonged to him, {including} {everything} in {his} home and in {his} fields.

And it happened from the time (ULT)

From the time {that} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Beginning from the time that]

---

he put him in charge in his house and over all that was his (ULT)

Joseph's Egyptian owner did that (UST)

See how you translated "put him in charge … his house and … everything that was his" in verse 4. It is repeated in verse 5 in the Hebrew text to emphasize the authority that Joseph was given. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [he put him in charge of managing everything that belonged to him]

---

because of Joseph (ULT)

for Joseph's sake (UST)

Alternate translation: [because Joseph was working for him]

---

in the house and in the fields (ULT)

{including} {everything} in {his} home and in {his} fields (UST)

In this context, **house** especially refers to the people in the house and **fields** refers to what is in the fields. Alternate translation: [including everything in his household and in his fields] or [including his family and servants in his household, as well as the crops and livestock in his fields]

Support Reference: Metonymy

So the blessing of Yahweh was on all that was his (ULT)

He blessed everything that belonged to him (UST)

Alternate translation: [Yahweh blessed everything that belonged to him] or [He caused everything that he owned to prosper]

---

then Yahweh blessed the house of the Egyptian (ULT)

Yahweh blessed the household of that Egyptian {man} (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation of this chapter that “Egyptian,” “master,” and “Potiphar” all refer to the same person, not two or three different people.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- he put … in charge
- in his house
- then … blessed
- Yahweh
- the house of
- the Egyptian
- Joseph
- the blessing of

- Yahweh
- in the house

UST

- Joseph’s Egyptian owner did that
- Joseph’s Egyptian owner did that
- blessed
- Yahweh
- the household of
- that Egyptian {man}
- Joseph
- He blessed everything
- He blessed everything
- {including} {everything} in {his} home

Genesis 39:6

ULT:
And he left all that {belonged} to him in the hand of Joseph, and he did not think to himself {about} anything except for the bread that he ate. Now Joseph was handsome in form and handsome in appearance.

UST:
In fact, after Joseph's owner put him in charge of everything that he owned, he did not {need to} concern himself with anything {in his household} except for {personal matters like} {deciding} what {kind of} food {he wanted} to eat. Joseph was well-built and good-looking.

And he left all that {belonged} to him in the hand of Joseph (ULT)

In fact, after Joseph's owner put him in charge of everything that he owned (UST)

See how you translated a similar idiom ("gave into his hand") in verse 4. Alternate translation: [In fact, he gave Joseph the responsibility of managing everything that he had, so that]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and he did not think to himself {about} anything except for the bread that he ate (ULT)

he did not {need to} concern himself with anything {in his household} except for {personal matters like} {deciding} what {kind of} food {he wanted} to eat (UST)

If it would appear in your language that the author was making a statement and then contradicting it, you could reword this as a positive statement. Potiphar did more than decide what to eat; that was just one example of personal decisions which were all he had to concern himself with. Alternate translation: [the only things he needed to decide about in his household were personal things like what food he wanted to eat]

Support Reference: Connect — Exception Clauses

Now Joseph was handsome in form and handsome in appearance (ULT)

Joseph was well-built and good-looking (UST)

Some languages have a conjunction such as **Now** that introduces background information and a change of topic. For other languages a paragraph break is enough (without a conjunction). Alternate translation: [Joseph was muscular and good-looking] or [Now Joseph was a very handsome young man]

Support Reference: Background Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- he did … think
- the bread
- Joseph

UST

- him in charge of
- he did … {need to} concern himself with
- {personal matters like} {deciding} what {kind of} food
- Joseph

Genesis 39:7

ULT:
And it happened after those things, then the wife of his master lifted her eyes toward Joseph and said, "Lie with me!"

UST:
So after a while, his owner's wife started looking at him {with desire} and told {him}, "Come to bed with me!"

And it happened after those things (ULT)

So after a while (UST)

The phrase **And it happened** introduces and emphasizes an important event. Many English translations do not include this phrase. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [After he had been there for a while]

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

---

then the wife of his master lifted her eyes toward Joseph (ULT)

his owner's wife started looking at him {with desire} (UST)

Many languages have a similar idiom that fits well here.

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and said (ULT)

and told {him} (UST)

Translate this quote introduction in a way that fits well with what Potiphar's wife says to Joseph. Alternate translation: [and said to him] or [and demanded him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Lie with me (ULT)

Come to bed with me (UST)

See how you translated the idiom “lie with” in Genesis 19:32. Alternate translation: [Sleep with me!]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- his master
- Joseph

UST

- his owner
- him

Genesis 39:8

ULT:
But he refused and said to the wife of his master, "Behold, with me {here}, my master does not think {about} what {is} in the house, and all that is his he has given into my hand.

UST:
But Joseph refused and said to her, "Listen, because of me, my owner does not {have to} concern himself with anything that {is} in {his} house. In fact, he has put me in charge of everything that he owns,

But he refused (ULT)

But Joseph refused (UST)

Alternate translation: [But he rejected her demand]

---

and said to the wife of his master (ULT)

and said to her (UST)

Alternate translation: [and told her]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Behold (ULT)

Listen (UST)

Alternate translation: [Look] or [Notice that]

---

with me {here} (ULT)

because of me (UST)

Alternate translation: [with me in charge] or [since I am working here]

---

my master does not think {about} (ULT)

my owner does not {have to} concern himself with (UST)

Alternate translation: [my owner does not need to worry about] or [my owner does not need to concern himself with]

---

what {is} in the house (ULT)

anything that {is} in {his} house (UST)

Alternate translation: [managing anything in his household]

---

and all that is his he has given into my hand (ULT)

In fact, he has put me in charge of everything that he owns (UST)

See how you translated the idiom “gave into … hand” in verse 4. Alternate translation: [In fact, everything that he owns he has entrusted to my care] or [In fact, he has put me in charge of everything that he has]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- his master
- my master
- does … think {about}
- in the house

UST

- her
- my owner
- does … {have to} concern himself with
- that {is} in {his} house

Genesis 39:9

ULT:
He is not greater than me in this house, and he has not withheld anything from me except for you, because you {are} his wife. So how can I do this great evil, and sin against God?"

UST:
{so that} he has no one in his household who has more authority than I do. He has given me freedom with everything {in his household}, except you, {of course,} because you {are} his wife. So there is no way I would {ever} sin against God by doing such an evil thing!"

He is not greater than me in this house (ULT)

{so that} he has no one in his household who has more authority than I do (UST)

By saying **He is not greater than me in this house**, Joseph means that Potiphar still had more authority than Joseph, but he had given Joseph authority to act in his place over everything in his household. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [As a result, even he does not exercise more authority in his household than I do]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and he has not withheld anything from me except for you, because you {are} his wife (ULT)

He has given me freedom with everything {in his household}, except you, {of course,} because you {are} his wife (UST)

Joseph is using a figure of speech here that emphasizes a positive meaning by using a negative word, **not**, together with a mild expression that is the opposite of the intended meaning. If it would be helpful in your language, you could emphasize the positive meaning in a strong way. The phrase **has not withheld** emphasizes the freedom that Potiphar had given Joseph. Some languages must translate this in a way that does not use a negative word such as **not**. Alternate translation: [and he has given me freedom with everything in his household, except you, of course, because you are his wife]

Support Reference: Litotes

So how can I do this great evil, and sin against God (ULT)

So there is no way I would {ever} sin against God by doing such an evil thing (UST)

Joseph uses this rhetorical question to emphasize why he will not do what Potiphar's wife wants. Alternate translation: [So I refuse to do such an evil thing, which would be a terrible sin against God!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- in … house
- evil
- and sin
- against God

UST

- in his household
- such an evil thing
- I would {ever} sin
- against God

Genesis 39:10

ULT:
And it happened, even though she kept speaking to Joseph day {after} day, yet he did not listen to her to lie beside her, to be with her.

UST:
Day after day Potiphar's wife kept pressuring Joseph to go to bed with her, but he refused her requests and stayed away from her.

And it happened, even though she kept speaking to Joseph day {after} day (ULT)

Day after day Potiphar's wife kept pressuring Joseph to go to bed with her (UST)

The phrase "And it happened" is used several times in this chapter (verses 5, 7, 10, 11, 13, 15, 18, 19) to introduce and emphasize important events and to increase suspense so that the audience wonders what the outcome will be. Many English translations have omitted this phrase, possibly for reasons of naturalness. Consider whether you have an expression like this that is natural in your language.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

---

yet he did not listen to her to lie beside her (ULT)

but he refused her requests (UST)

Alternate translation: [he did not do what she wanted, but refused to lie with her] or [he refused her demands]

---

to be with her (ULT)

and stayed away from her (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he stayed away from her] or [and would not even go near her]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- day
- {after} day

UST

- Joseph to go to bed with her
- Day after day
- Day after day

Genesis 39:11

ULT:
Then it happened on such a day that he went into the house to do his work, and there were no other men of the house there in the house.

UST:
Then one day Joseph went to {his owner's} house {as usual} to do his work, but no other menservants from the household were there.

Then it happened on such a day (ULT)

Then one day (UST)

Alternate translation: [But then on a day like that] or [But one such day] or [But one day]

---

and there were no other men of the house there in the house (ULT)

but no other menservants from the household were there (UST)

Alternate translation: [none of the other household menservants were there]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- on … a day
- into the house
- the house
- in the house

UST

- one day
- to {his owner's} house
- the household
- בַּבָּֽיִת (ORIG QUOTE)

Genesis 39:12

ULT:
So she caught him by his garment, saying, "Lie with me!" But he left his garment in her hand and fled and went outside.

UST:
So Potiphar's wife {saw her chance and} grabbed {hold of} Joseph by his robe {and} demanded, "Come to bed with me!" But {immediately} he fled and left his robe in her hands as he ran outdoors.

So she caught him by his garment (ULT)

So Potiphar's wife {saw her chance and} grabbed {hold of} Joseph by his robe (UST)

The word **garment** is very general and probably refers to an outer article of clothing, such as a robe or tunic.

---

saying (ULT)

{and} demanded (UST)

See how you translated this quote introduction in verse 7. Alternate translation: [and said to him] or [and said]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Lie with me (ULT)

Come to bed with me (UST)

See how you translated this quote in verse 7. Alternate translation: [Sleep with me!]

Support Reference: Euphemism

But he left his garment in her hand and fled and went outside (ULT)

But {immediately} he fled and left his robe in her hands as he ran outdoors (UST)

Make sure your translation does not sound here like Joseph put his garment in her hands. Rather, it came off in her hands as he was fleeing. Alternate translation: [But immediately he fled and left his tunic behind in her hands as he ran outside] or [But he immediately got away from her and fled outdoors, leaving his tunic behind in her hands]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- So she caught him

UST

- So Potiphar’s wife {saw her chance and} grabbed {hold of} Joseph

---

Genesis 39:13

ULT:
Then it happened when she saw that he had left his garment in her hands and had fled outside,

UST:
As soon as she saw that Joseph had run outdoors and left his robe {behind} in her hands,

Then it happened when she saw (ULT)

As soon as she saw (UST)

Alternate translation: [After she saw]

---

that he had left his garment in her hands and had fled outside (ULT)

that Joseph had run outdoors and left his robe {behind} in her hands (UST)

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 12. Alternate translation: [that Joseph had left his tunic behind in her hands as he ran outside] or [that Joseph had fled outside and left his tunic behind in her hands]

Support Reference: Information Structure

Genesis 39:14

ULT:
then she called for the men of her house and said to them, saying, "Look! He brought to us a Hebrew man to laugh at us! He came to me to lie with me, but I called out with a loud voice!

UST:
she summoned the {other} menservants from her household. Then {when they arrived,} she exclaimed to them, "Look, my husband brought {this} Hebrew servant {here} among us to make fools of us! He came here to rape me, but I screamed loudly {for help}!

then she called for the men of her house (ULT)

she summoned the {other} menservants from her household (UST)

See how you translated "men of the house" in verse 11. Alternate translation: [she called out for the other household menservants to come to her] or [she summoned the other menservants of her household to come]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and said to them, saying (ULT)

Then {when they arrived,} she exclaimed to them (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then when they came, she exclaimed to them]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Look (ULT)

Look (UST)

As Potiphar's wife speaks, she is probably showing the servants Joseph's garment in her hands. Alternate translation: [Look at this!] or [See what happened!]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

He brought to us a Hebrew man (ULT)

my husband brought {this} Hebrew servant {here} among us (UST)

Make sure that your translation of **He brought** refers here to Potiphar (as verse 17 confirms), not Joseph. Alternate translation: [My husband brought this Hebrew slave here to us]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

to laugh at us (ULT)

to make fools of us (UST)

In this context, **us** is general and includes Potiphar's wife and the people she is talking to. Alternate translation: [to mock us!]

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

He came to me (ULT)

He came here (UST)

Make sure your translation of **He came** refers here to Joseph, not Potiphar (who was the subject of the previous sentence in the Hebrew text). Alternate translation: [That man came here to me]

---

to lie with me (ULT)

to rape me (UST)

Consider again how you translated the idiom **lie with** in the book of Genesis. See 19:32–35; 26:10; 30:15–16; 34:2, 7; 35:22; 39:7, 10, 12, 14. It may be necessary to translate this in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [to force me to lie with him]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

but I called out with a loud voice (ULT)

but I screamed loudly {for help} (UST)

Alternate translation: [but I cried out for help!] or [but I shouted loudly for help!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- then she called
- her house
- Hebrew
- to laugh
- but I called out

UST

- she summoned
- her household
- {this} Hebrew servant
- to make fools
- but I screamed … for help

Genesis 39:15

ULT:
Then it happened when he heard that I raised my voice and called out, then he left his garment beside me and fled and went outside!”

UST:
Then as soon as he heard me scream like that, he left his robe with me and ran outdoors!”

Then it happened when he heard (ULT)

Then as soon as he heard (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then when]

Then it happened when he heard that I raised my voice and called out (ULT)

Then as soon as he heard me scream like that (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then when he heard me cry out loudly] or [Then as soon as he heard me shout like that]

---

then he left his garment beside me and fled and went outside (ULT)

he left his robe with me and ran outdoors (UST)

See how you translated a similar clause in verses 12 and 13. Alternate translation: [he left his tunic with me and fled outside] or [he immediately fled outdoors and he left his tunic behind!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and called out

UST

- me scream like that

Genesis 39:16

ULT:
Then she kept his garment beside her until his master came to his house.

UST:
So Potiphar's wife kept Joseph's robe with her until {her husband,} Joseph's owner, returned home.

Then she kept (ULT)

So Potiphar's wife kept (UST)

Alternate translation: [So she kept]

Then she kept his garment beside her until his master came to his house (ULT)

So Potiphar's wife kept Joseph's robe with her until {her husband,} Joseph's owner, returned home (UST)

The pronoun **his** refers to twice to Joseph, and then once to Potiphar, who is both Joseph's master and her husband. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [Then Potiphar's wife kept Joseph's garment beside her until Potiphar returned home]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

came to his house (ULT)

returned home (UST)

Alternate translation: [came back to his home] or [came home]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- his master
- his house

UST

- {her husband,} Joseph’s owner
- home

Genesis 39:17

ULT:
Then she spoke to him according to those words, saying, "The Hebrew slave whom you brought to us came to me to laugh at me!

UST:
Then she told him the same story. She said, "The Hebrew servant whom you brought among us came here to make a fool of me!

Then she spoke to him (ULT)

Then she told him (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then when he arrived, she told him]

---

according to those words (ULT)

the same story (UST)

Alternate translation: [the same thing she had told the others]

---

saying (ULT)

She said (UST)

Alternate translation: [This is what she said:]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

The Hebrew slave whom you brought (ULT)

The Hebrew servant whom you brought (UST)

Alternate translation: [That Hebrew slave whom you brought]

---

to us (ULT)

among us (UST)

Here the pronoun **us** includes Potiphar, his wife and their household. Alternate translation: [to work for us]

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’

---

came to me to laugh at me (ULT)

came here to make a fool of me (UST)

See how you translated **laugh at** in verse 14. Alternate translation: [just now came to me to mock me!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- The … slave
- Hebrew
- to laugh

UST

- The … servant
- Hebrew
- to make a fool of me

Genesis 39:18

ULT:
Then it happened when I raised my voice and called out, then he left his garment beside me and fled outside!”

UST:
But as soon as I screamed loudly, he left his robe with me and ran outdoors!”

Then it happened when I raised my voice and called out (ULT)

But as soon as I screamed loudly (UST)

See how you translated verse 15, which is similar to verse 18. Alternate translation: [But as soon as I shouted loudly] or [But when I shouted for help]

---

then he left his garment beside me and fled outside (ULT)

he left his robe with me and ran outdoors (UST)

Consider again how you translated **garment** in verses 12–13, 15–16, 18. Alternate translation: [he left his tunic beside me and ran outside]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and called out

UST

- as soon as I screamed loudly

Genesis 39:19

ULT:
And it happened when his master heard the words of his wife that she spoke to him, saying, "Such {are} the things your slave did to me!" then his anger burned.

UST:
When Joseph's owner heard what his wife said his servant had done to her, he became very angry.

the words of his wife that she spoke to him, saying, "Such {are} the things your slave did to me (ULT)

what his wife said his servant had done to her (UST)

The pronouns used in **his wife** and **to him** both refer to Potiphar, not Joseph, but the pronoun used in **his master** refers to Joseph's master, Potiphar. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the words of Potiphar's wife that she spoke to Potiphar, saying, "Such {are} the things your slave did to me]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

then his anger burned (ULT)

he became very angry (UST)

Consider whether or not your language has a similar idiom that would fit well here. Alternate translation: [he burned with anger]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- his master
- your slave

UST
- Joseph's owner

- his servant

Genesis 39:20

ULT:
Then Joseph's master took him and put him in the round-house, the place where the prisoners of the king were bound. So he was there in the round-house,

UST:
So he {had soldiers} arrest Joseph and put him in the prison where they kept people who had committed crimes against the king. Joseph remained there in prison,

Then Joseph's master took him and put him in the round-house (ULT)

So he {had soldiers} arrest Joseph and put him in the prison (UST)

Both uses of the pronoun **him** refer to Joseph. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Potiphar probably had soldiers arrest Joseph for him, since he had the authority to do that as the captain of the guards. Alternate translation: [Then he had Joseph arrested and put in the jail]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

the place where the prisoners of the king were bound (ULT)

where they kept people who had committed crimes against the king (UST)

Alternate translation: [where they imprisoned people who had committed crimes against the king]

So he was there in the round-house (ULT)

Joseph remained there in prison (UST)

Alternate translation: [So Joseph was there in the prison]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- s master
- Joseph
- the king

UST

- he
- he
- they kept people who had committed crimes against the king

Genesis 39:21

ULT:
but Yahweh was with Joseph and showed kindness to him and gave him favor in the eyes of the chief of the round-house.

UST:
but Yahweh was with him and was kind to him and caused the prison warden to be pleased with him, {so that he treated him well}.

and showed kindness to him (ULT)

and was kind to him (UST)

Alternate translation: [and was gracious to him]

---

and gave him favor in the eyes of the chief of the round-house (ULT)

and caused the prison warden to be pleased with him, {so that he treated him well} (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase ("favor in … eyes") in verse 4. Alternate translation: [and caused the prison warden to be pleased with him, so that he treated him favorably]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Yahweh
- Joseph
- kindness
- him favor
- the chief of

UST
- Yahweh
- him
- and was kind to him
- and caused … to be pleased with him, {so that he treated him well}

- the prison warden

Genesis 39:22

ULT:
And the chief of the round-house gave into the hand of Joseph all the prisoners who {were} in the round-house, and all that they were doing there, he was {the one} doing {it}.

UST:
So {before long} the warden put Joseph in charge of all the {other} prisoners who {were} in that prison, so that he {was the one who} managed everything that they did there.

And the chief of the round-house gave into the hand of Joseph (ULT)

So {before long} the warden put Joseph in charge of (UST)

Alternate translation: [Soon the warden of the prison gave Joseph the responsibility for taking care of]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

all the prisoners who {were} in the round-house (ULT)

all the {other} prisoners who {were} in that prison (UST)

Alternate translation: [all the other prisoners who were in the prison]

---

and all that they were doing there, he was {the one} doing {it} (ULT)

so that he {was the one who} managed everything that they did there (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that he was in charge of everything that was done there]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the chief of

- Joseph

UST

- the warden
- Joseph

Genesis 39:23

ULT:
The chief of the round-house did not look {at} anything in his hand, because Yahweh was with him, and Yahweh made what he was doing successful.

UST:
The warden did not {need to} pay attention to anything at all that Joseph was in charge of, because Yahweh was with Joseph and enabled him to succeed at everything he did.

The chief of the round-house (ULT)

The warden (UST)

Alternate translation: [So the warden] or [As a result the jail warden]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

---

did not look {at} anything (ULT)

did not {need to} pay attention to anything at all (UST)

Alternate translation: [did not need to supervise anything]

---

in his hand (ULT)

that Joseph was in charge of (UST)

Alternate translation: [that Joseph was managing]

---

because Yahweh was with him (ULT)

because Yahweh was with Joseph (UST)

For some languages, it is more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, “Because/ Since Yahweh was with Joseph and helped him to succeed in whatever he did, the warden did not need to supervise/oversee anything that Joseph was in charge of.”

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

and Yahweh made what he was doing successful (ULT)

and enabled him to succeed at everything he did (UST)

See how you translated a similar clause (“Yahweh made all that he was doing successful”) in verse 3. Alternate translation: [and gave him success in whatever he did] or [and helped him to succeed at everything he did]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- The chief of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- made … successful

UST

- The warden
- Yahweh
- יְהוָה (ORIG QUOTE)
- enabled him to succeed at

Genesis 40

Genesis 40:1

ULT:
Then it happened after those things {that} the cupbearer of the king of Egypt and the baker sinned against their lord, against the king of Egypt.

UST:
Sometime after that, the {head} wine-server and the {head} baker disobeyed their master, {who was} {Pharaoh,} the king of Egypt.

Then it happened after those things {that} (ULT)

Sometime after that (UST)

Alternate translation: [After some time, one day]

---

the cupbearer of the king of Egypt and the baker (ULT)

the {head} wine-server and the {head} baker (UST)

The chief cupbearer was one of Pharaoh's most trusted servants. He was in charge of serving Pharaoh anything that he wanted to drink, especially wine. It was his job to test the drink before Pharaoh had some, to make sure it was high quality and not poisoned. Some of that information could be put in a footnote. Also, it may be more natural to include here in verse 1 the fact that these were the head officials in these jobs, rather than wait until verse 2 to introduce that. Alternate translation: [the chief wine-server and the chief baker for the king over Egypt] or [the man who was in charge of those who served wine to the king over Egypt and the man who was in charge of those who baked bread for the king]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

sinned (ULT)

disobeyed (UST)

The text does not say what the officials did wrong that angered Pharaoh. They may have done their jobs poorly in some way. Translate this phrase in a way that fits this context well in your language. Alternate translation: [displeased] or [offended]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- sinned
- the cupbearer of
- the king of
- Egypt
- against their lord
- against the king of
- Egypt

UST

- disobeyed
- the {head} wine-server
- מָלַךְ (ORIG QUOTE)
- מִצְרַיִם (ORIG QUOTE)
- their master
- {who was} {Pharaoh,} the king of
- Egypt

Genesis 40:2

ULT:
And Pharaoh broke out in anger against his two officials, against the chief of the cupbearers and against the chief of the bakers,

UST:
As a result, {King} Pharaoh was furious with those two officers.

And Pharaoh broke out in anger against (ULT)

As a result, {King} Pharaoh was furious with (UST)

Consider whether or not your language has an idiom similar to **broke out in anger** that fits well here. Alternate translation: [was very angry at]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

his two officials, against the chief of the cupbearers and against the chief of the bakers (ULT)

those two officers (UST)

It may be more natural to combine verses 1 and 2 and say, “Sometime after that, Pharaoh, the king of Egypt, became very angry at two of his officials, his chief wine-server and chief baker, because they had displeased him.” In this case, you would also combine the verse numbers (1–2) to show it is a verse bridge combining two verses. Alternate translation: [the official in charge of serving wine to him and the official in charge of baking bread for him] or [his head wine-server and head baker] or [those two officials]

Support Reference: Verse Bridges

And Pharaoh broke out in anger (ULT)

As a result, {King} Pharaoh was furious (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Pharaoh (verse 2) is the same person as the king of Egypt (verse 1). See how you translated **Pharaoh** in Gen 12:15, and see the important note about this there. Alternate translation: [So he] or [So the king]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And … broke out in anger
- Pharaoh
- the chief of
- the cupbearers
- the chief of

UST

- As a result … was furious
- {King} Pharaoh
- עָֽר (ORIG QUOTE)
- הַמַּשְׁקִ֔ים (ORIG QUOTE)
- עַ֖ר (ORIG QUOTE)

Genesis 40:3

ULT:
and he put them in custody in the house of the chief of the guards, in the round-house, the place where Joseph was bound.

UST:
So he {had his soldiers arrest them and} put them in prison at the captain over the guards' house, in the same prison where Joseph was.

and he put them (ULT)

So he {had his soldiers arrest them and} put them (UST)

Often in the Bible (as here), when it says that a king (or someone else with authority) did something, it is implied that he had people who were under his authority actually do it. See how you translated a similar clause in Genesis 39:20. Alternate translation: [So he had them arrested and put]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

in custody (ULT)

in prison (UST)

Alternate translation: [under guard]

---

in the house of the chief of the guards (ULT)

at the captain over the guards' house (UST)

Apparently the round-house prison was part of the house where the chief of the guards lived and worked, perhaps a lower part (See: Joseph's use of the word "pit" in verse 15 to refer to

this prison). See how you translated “chief/captain of the guards” in Genesis 37:36 and 39:1. Alternate translation: [in the house of the captain of the guards]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- in the house of
- the chief of
- Joseph

UST

- at … house
- the captain over
- where Joseph was

Genesis 40:4

ULT:
And the chief of the guards assigned Joseph to them, so he attended them, and they were in custody {for} days.

UST:
{There} the captain over the guards appointed Joseph to {take care of} them, so he served them, and they remained in prison {for} some time.

so he attended them (ULT)

so he served them (UST)

Alternate translation: [and so he waited on them]

---

and they were in custody (ULT)

and they remained in prison (UST)

Some translations begin a new paragraph and sentence here that continues into verse 5 and say, "After they had been in prison for a while, 5 one night the king's head wine-server and head baker dreamed …" Alternate translation: [and they were kept in custody] or [and they remained in custody]

Support Reference: Information Structure

{for} days (ULT)

{for} some time (UST)

The phrase **for days** is a general expression that refers to an unspecified length of time. Alternate translation: [for some days] or [for a while]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And … assigned
- the chief of
- Joseph
- so he attended
- {for} days

UST

- There … appointed
- the captain over
- Joseph
- so he served
- {for} some time

Genesis 40:5

ULT:
Then the two of them dreamed a dream. Each {had} his {own} dream in the same night, {and} each {man's} dream had its own interpretation. {They were} the cupbearer and the baker who {belonged} to the king of Egypt, who were bound in the round-house.

UST:
One night the king of Egypt's wine server and baker each had a dream while they were in prison. Each {one's} dream had its own meaning.

Then the two of them dreamed a dream. Each {had} his {own} dream in the same night (ULT)

One night … each had a dream (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then one night the two of them each had a dream] or [One night they both had a dream]

Support Reference: Information Structure

{and} each {man's} dream had its own interpretation (ULT)

Each {one's} dream had its own meaning (UST)

Alternate translation: [and each of the dreams had its own meaning] or [each with its own meaning]

{They were} the cupbearer and the baker who {belonged} to the king of Egypt, who were bound in the round-house (ULT)

the king of Egypt's wine server and baker … while they were in prison (UST)

Many translations leave this sentence implied because it repeats information from the previous verses and may sound too repetitive. Or you could put this sentence earlier in this verse and say, "One night, the king of Egypt's wine server and baker each had a dream while they were

in prison, and each man's/one's dream had its own interpretation/meaning." Make sure it is clear in your translation that the cupbearer and baker in verse 5 are the same officials as those in verses 2–4. Alternate translation: [This is talking about the wine-server and the baker, who had served the king of Egypt but were in prison]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then … dreamed
- a dream
- {had} his {own} dream
- had its own interpretation
- {man's} dream
- {They were} the cupbearer
- {belonged} to the king of
- Egypt

UST

- each had a dream
- each had a dream
- each had a dream
- Each {one's} dream had its own meaning
- Each {one's} dream had its own meaning
- wine server
- the king of Egypt's
- the king of Egypt's

Genesis 40:6

ULT:
And Joseph came to them in the morning and saw them, and behold, they were upset.

UST:
The next morning, when Joseph came to {serve} them, he noticed that they looked sad.

And Joseph came to them in the morning and saw them, and behold (ULT)

The next morning, when Joseph came to {serve} them, he noticed that (UST)

Consider whether or not it is more natural in your language to have the time phrase **in the morning** first this verse. Alternate translation: [In the morning, Joseph came to serve them and was surprised to see that] or [The next morning, when Joseph came to serve them, he saw that]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

they were upset (ULT)

they looked sad (UST)

Alternate translation: [they were troubled] or [they looked distressed]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Joseph

UST
- Joseph

Genesis 40:7

ULT:
So he asked Pharaoh's officials who {were} with him in custody {in} the house of his master, saying, "Why {are} your faces sad today?"

UST:
So he asked them, "Why do you look {so} unhappy today?"

So he asked Pharaoh's officials who {were} with him in custody {in} the house of his master, saying (ULT)

So he asked them (UST)

Alternate translation: [And he asked them]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

Why {are} your faces sad today (ULT)

Why do you look {so} unhappy today (UST)

Some languages have an idiom that fits well here. Do what is natural in your language.
Alternate translation: [Why do your faces look so downcast today?] or [Why do you look so sad today?]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- s officials
- Pharaoh
- {in} the house of
- his master
- today

UST
- them
- them
- them
- them

- today

Genesis 40:8

ULT:
And they said to him, "We dreamed a dream, but {there is} no one to interpret it." Then Joseph said to them, "Do interpretations not {belong} to God? Please tell {them} to me."

UST:
They answered him, "We {each} had a dream {last night}, but there is no one {here} who can tell {us} what our dreams mean." Joseph replied, "God is the {only} one who gives someone the ability to interpret {the meaning of dreams}. Please tell me {what you dreamed}."

And they said to him (ULT)

They answered him (UST)

Alternate translation: [They replied]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

We dreamed a dream (ULT)

We {each} had a dream {last night} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Last night we each had a dream]

---

but {there is} no one to interpret it (ULT)

but there is no one {here} who can tell {us} what our dreams mean (UST)

Alternate translation: [but we do not have anyone here to explain them for us]

Then Joseph said to them (ULT)

Joseph replied (UST)

Alternate translation: [So Joseph replied]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Do interpretations not {belong} to God (ULT)

God is the {only} one who gives someone the ability to interpret {the meaning of dreams} (UST)

Joseph uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that God is the only one who interprets dreams. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [God is the only one who can explain the meaning of dreams] or [God is the only one who gives people the ability to interpret the meaning of dreams]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

Please tell {them} to me (ULT)

Please tell me {what you dreamed} (UST)

Make sure that your translation of the last two sentences in this verse does not sound like Joseph is claiming to be God. Rather, he is saying that if the two officials tell their dreams to him, God will enable him to interpret the dreams. Alternate translation: [Please tell your dreams to me and God will reveal to me what they mean]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- a dream
- We dreamed

- but … to interpret
- Joseph
- {belong} to God
- interpretations

UST

- a dream
- We {each} had … last night
- but there is no one {here} who can tell {us} what our dreams mean
- Joseph
- God is the {only} one who gives someone the ability to interpret {the meaning of dreams}
- God is the {only} one who gives someone the ability to interpret {the meaning of dreams}

Genesis 40:9

ULT:
Then the chief of the cupbearers told his dream to Joseph and said to him, "And behold, in my dream a grapevine {was} before me,

UST:
Then the head wine-server told Joseph what was in his dream. He said, "While I was dreaming, I saw a vine in front of me

Then the chief of the cupbearers told his dream to Joseph (ULT)

Then the head wine-server told Joseph what was in his dream (UST)

See how you translated **chief of the cupbearers** in verse 2. Alternate translation: [So the head wine-server told Joseph what was in his dream] or [So the officer who was in charge over the wine-servers described to Joseph what he had seen in his dream]

---

and said to him (ULT)

He said (UST)

Alternate translation: [by saying] or [This is what he said:]

And behold, in my dream a grapevine (ULT)

While I was dreaming, I saw a vine (UST)

If grapevines and grapes are not known in your area, you could be more general in verses 9–11 and say "vine" and "fruit." See how you translated "vineyard" in Genesis 9:20. Alternate translation: [In my dream there was a vine] or [While I was dreaming, I saw a grapevine]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the chief of
- the cupbearers
- his dream
- to Joseph
- in my dream
- a grapevine

UST

- the head
- wine-server
- what was in his dream
- Joseph
- While I was dreaming
- a vine

Genesis 40:10

ULT:
and on the grapevine {were} three branches. Then while it was budding, its blossoms came out, {and} its clusters ripened {into} grapes.

UST:
that had three branches. Soon buds started forming {on the branches}. {Then} {the buds} became flowers, {and the flowers} became bunches of ripe grapes.

and on the grapevine {were} three branches (ULT)

that had three branches (UST)

Alternate translation: [The vine had three branches]

Then while it was budding (ULT)

Soon buds started forming {on the branches} (UST)

Alternate translation: [As soon as it started budding] or [Soon buds started forming on the vine Then]

---

its blossoms came out (ULT)

{Then} {the buds} became flowers (UST)

Alternate translation: [suddenly there were flowers] or [the buds became blossoms]

{and} its clusters ripened {into} grapes (ULT)

{and the flowers} became bunches of ripe grapes (UST)

Alternate translation: [and its clusters of flowers became clusters of ripe fruit] or [and the flowers became clusters of ripe fruit]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and on the grapevine
- grapes

UST

- that had
- ripe grapes

Genesis 40:11

ULT:
Then the cup of Pharaoh {was} in my hand and I took the grapes and squeezed them into the cup of Pharaoh. Then I put the cup into the hand of Pharaoh."

UST:
Next I was holding {King} Pharaoh's cup, and I picked grapes {from the vine} and squeezed juice from them into the cup. Then I handed the cup to Pharaoh {and he drank from it}."

and I took the grapes (ULT)

and I picked grapes {from the vine} (UST)

Alternate translation: [so I picked some fruit from the vine]

---

and squeezed them (ULT)

and squeezed juice from them (UST)

Alternate translation: [and squeezed them so that the juice went]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Pharaoh
- the grapes
- Pharaoh
- Pharaoh

UST
- {King} Pharaoh
- grapes {from the vine}
- פַּרְעֹה (ORIG QUOTE)
- to Pharaoh {and he drank from it}

Genesis 40:12

ULT:
Then Joseph said to him, "This {is} its interpretation: The three branches {are} three days.

UST:
Joseph said to him, "This {is} what your dream means: The three branches {represent} three days.

Then Joseph said to him (ULT)

Joseph said to him (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Joseph told him]

This {is} its interpretation (ULT)

This {is} what your dream means (UST)

Alternate translation: [This is the meaning of your dream:] or [Here is what your dream means:]

The three branches {are} three days (ULT)

The three branches {represent} three days (UST)

Alternate translation: [The three branches symbolize three days]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Joseph
- its interpretation
- days

UST

- Joseph
- what your dream means
- days

Genesis 40:13

ULT:
Within three days Pharaoh will lift up your head and restore you to your position, and you will put Pharaoh's cup into his hand, according to the former custom when you were his cupbearer.

UST:
In three days {King} Pharaoh will summon you and give you back your job, so that you will {again} serve wine to him, as you used to do when you were his wine-server.

Within three days (ULT)

In three days (UST)

Alternate translation: [In three more days] or [Three days from now]

---

will lift up your head (ULT)

will summon you (UST)

The idiom **lift up your head** means that the wine-server will be summoned or brought out from the lowly or shameful place where he had been staying. Alternate translation: [will have you brought up out of prison]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and restore you to your position (ULT)

and give you back your job (UST)

Alternate translation: [and reappoint you to your previous work] or [and give you back your status]

---

and you will put Pharaoh's cup into his hand (ULT)

so that you will {again} serve wine to him (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that you will again serve wine to Pharaoh] or [so that you will again have the duty of serving him his cup of wine]

---

according to the former custom when you were his cupbearer (ULT)

as you used to do when you were his wine-server (UST)

Alternate translation: [as you used to do when you were his cupbearer] or [the way you did before as his cupbearer]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- days
- Pharaoh
- Pharaoh
- his cupbearer

UST

- days
- {King} Pharaoh
- to him
- his wine-server

Genesis 40:14

ULT:
But if you remember me with you, when it goes well for you, then please show kindness to me, and mention me to Pharaoh, and get me out from this house.

UST:
When {you are out of prison and} everything is going well for you, please remember that I was {here} with you, and please be kind to me and mention my situation to {King} Pharaoh so that he releases me from this prison.

But if you remember me with you, when it goes well for you (ULT)

When {you are out of prison and} everything is going well for you, please remember that I was {here} with you (UST)

Alternate translation: [When you are out of prison and everything is going well for you, remember that I was here with you] or [Also, when you get out of prison and your life is good, remember how well I served you]

---

then please show kindness to me (ULT)

and please be kind to me (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **kindness**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and please do me a favor] or [then please treat me kindly]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

---

and mention me to Pharaoh (ULT)

and mention my situation to {King} Pharaoh (UST)

Make sure that the way Joseph refers to King Pharaoh sounds respectful in your translation. Alternate translation: [and tell King Pharaoh about me and how I was falsely accused]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

and get me out from this house (ULT)

so that he releases me from this prison (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that I can get out of this prison] or [so that he frees me from this prison]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- it goes well
- Pharaoh

UST

- {you are out of prison and} everything is going well
- {King} Pharaoh

Genesis 40:15

ULT:
For indeed, I was stolen from the land of the Hebrews. And also here I did not do anything that they should put me in the pit.”

UST:
People brought me {here} by force from the land where {my people,} the Hebrews, live. Even here {in Egypt} I have done nothing {wrong} to deserve being in a dungeon.”

For indeed, I was stolen (ULT)

People brought me {here} by force (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language to emphasize Joseph. Alternate translation: [Surely I was taken by force]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

from the land of the Hebrews (ULT)

from the land where {my people,} the Hebrews, live (UST)

The Hebrew people were the descendants of Abraham (See: note at Genesis 14:13), and Joseph’s people were known as **Hebrews** in Egypt (Genesis 39:14, 17). Their land, which God gave them, was the land of Canaan (Genesis 13:12, 14–15; 17:8, 23:19; 37:1). Some of that information could be put in a footnote. Alternate translation: [from the land where the Hebrew people live]

And also here (ULT)

Even here {in Egypt} (UST)

Alternate translation: [And while I have been here in Egypt]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

I did not do anything (ULT)

I have done nothing {wrong} (UST)

Alternate translation: [I have not done anything wrong]

---

that they should put me in the pit (ULT)

to deserve being in a dungeon (UST)

Alternate translation: [to be put into this prison] or [to deserve being in a prison]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- from the land of
- the Hebrews
- in the pit

UST

- from the land where {my people,} the Hebrews, live
- from the land where {my people,} the Hebrews, live
- in a dungeon

Genesis 40:16

ULT:
And the chief of the bakers saw that he interpreted favorably, so he said to Joseph, "I also {was} in my dream, and behold, {there were} three baskets of white bread on my head.

UST:
When the head baker heard the positive meaning that Joseph gave {for the first dream}, he told him, "I also {had a dream}, and while I was dreaming, I saw three bread baskets {stacked} on my head.

And the chief of the bakers saw that he interpreted favorably (ULT)

When the head baker heard the positive meaning that Joseph gave {for the first dream} (UST)

See how you translated a related word ("interpreter") in verse 8. Alternate translation: [When the head baker heard Joseph explain that dream in a positive way] or [When the head baker heard the positive interpretation that Joseph gave for the first dream]

---

so he said to Joseph (ULT)

he told him (UST)

Alternate translation: [he said to him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

I also {was} in my dream, and behold (ULT)

I also {had a dream}, and while I was dreaming, I saw (UST)

Alternate translation: [I also had a dream, and in it there were]

{there were} three baskets of white bread (ULT)

three bread baskets (UST)

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) “three baskets full of white/fine bread/ cakes” or “three bread baskets” or (2) “three white/wicker baskets.” These baskets were open on top and were probably woven out of flexible strips of cane or willow branches.

---

on my head (ULT)

{stacked} on my head (UST)

These baskets would have been carried on the head, each one above the other. Alternate translation: [stacked on top of each other on my head]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the chief of
- favorably
- he interpreted
- Joseph
- {was} in my dream
- white bread

UST

- head
- the positive meaning that Joseph gave {for the first dream}
- the positive meaning that Joseph gave {for the first dream}
- him
- while I was dreaming
- חֹרִי (ORIG QUOTE)

Genesis 40:17

ULT:
And in the top basket {were} all {kinds} of food for Pharaoh, baker's goods, but the birds were eating them out of the basket on my head."

UST:
In the top basket {there were} many {kinds} of bread and cakes for {King} Pharaoh {to eat}, but {some} birds were gobbling them {up} from the basket."

And in the top basket {were} all {kinds} of (ULT)

In the top basket {there were} many {kinds} of (UST)

Alternate translation: [The top basket was full of]

---

all {kinds} of food for Pharaoh, baker's goods (ULT)

many {kinds} of bread and cakes for {King} Pharaoh {to eat} (UST)

Make sure that the way the chief baker refers to King Pharaoh sounds respectful in your translation. Alternate translation: [all kinds of baked goods for King Pharaoh to eat] or [many kinds of special bread and cakes that had been made for King Pharaoh to eat]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

but the birds were eating them out of the basket on my head (ULT)

but {some} birds were gobbling them {up} from the basket (UST)

Alternate translation: [but some birds were eating everything up from the basket] or [but instead, some birds came and devoured all the food in the basket on my head]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Pharaoh

UST

- for {King} Pharaoh

Genesis 40:18

ULT:
Then Joseph responded and said, "This {is} its interpretation: The three baskets {are} three days.

UST:
Joseph said {to him}, "This {is} what your dream means: The three baskets {represent} three days.

Then Joseph responded and said (ULT)

Joseph said {to him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Joseph told the baker]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

This {is} its interpretation (ULT)

This {is} what your dream means (UST)

See how you translated this in verse 12. Alternate translation: [This is the meaning of your dream:] or [Here is what your dream means:]

The three baskets {are} three days (ULT)

The three baskets {represent} three days (UST)

See how you translated a similar sentence in verse 12. Alternate translation: [The three baskets symbolize three days]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- its interpretation
- days

UST

- Joseph
- what your dream means
- days

Genesis 40:19

ULT:
Within three days Pharaoh will lift up your head from you and hang you on a tree, and the birds will eat your flesh from you."

UST:
In three days {King} Pharaoh will {have his soldiers} chop off your head and impale your body on a {sharp} pole, where vultures will eat {all} your flesh off your bones."

Within three days (ULT)

In three days (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 13. Alternate translation: [Three days from now]

Pharaoh (ULT)

{King} Pharaoh (UST)

Alternate translation: [the king]

---

will lift up your head from you (ULT)

will {have his soldiers} chop off your head (UST)

This phrase seems to have a literal meaning here (of having the baker beheaded) in contrast to the meaning of **lift up your head** in verse 13 (where it means to summon from a lowly or shameful place). Make sure your translation of this phrase is accurate and clear in both contexts. Alternate translation: [will have his soldiers cut off your head] or [will have you beheaded]

---

and hang you on a tree (ULT)

and impale your body on a {sharp} pole (UST)

Alternate translation: [and hang your body on a stake]

---

and the birds will eat your flesh from you (ULT)

where vultures will eat {all} your flesh off your bones (UST)

These were birds such as vultures, buzzards, or condors, which eat carrion (dead animals); these were not birds that eat seeds or hunt live prey. You could use the name of a type of bird that is well-known in your language area. See how you translated “eating” in verse 17.
Alternate translation: [and birds will eat all your flesh off your bones]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- days
- Pharaoh
- and hang

UST

- days
- {King} Pharaoh
- and impale

Genesis 40:20

ULT:
Then it happened on the third day, the day Pharaoh was born, that he made a feast for all his servants. And he lifted up the head of the chief of the cupbearers and the head of the chief of the bakers in the presence of his servants.

UST:
Then sure enough, three days later {it was} {King} Pharaoh's birthday, and he invited all his officers to attend a banquet. {During the banquet,} he {had soldiers} bring {his} head wine-server and head baker {to the banquet} in front of {all} his {other} officers.

Then it happened on the third day, the day Pharaoh was born (ULT)

Then sure enough, three days later {it was} {King} Pharaoh's birthday (UST)

The phrase **Then it happened** introduces and emphasizes a set of important events. Do what is natural in your language.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

---

that he made a feast for all his servants (ULT)

and he invited all his officers to attend a banquet (UST)

See how you translated **feast** or "banquet" in Genesis 21:8. Alternate translation: [he held a banquet for all of his officials to attend] or [he invited all his officials to attend a birthday feast]

And he lifted up the head of the chief of the cupbearers and the head of the chief of the bakers (ULT)

During the banquet,} he {had soldiers} bring {his} head wine-server and head baker {to the banquet} (UST)

See how you translated similar clauses in verses 3 (See: note), 13, and 19, where Pharaoh had his soldiers do something. Also see how you translated "lifted up your head" in verse 13,

where it has a similar meaning. Alternate translation: [During the feast he had soldiers bring his chief wine-server and chief baker out of prison to the banquet]

---

in the presence of his servants (ULT)

in front of {all} his {other} officers (UST)

Alternate translation: [in front of all his other officials] or [where all his other officers were]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the day
- was born
- a feast
- his servants
- the chief of
- the cupbearers
- the chief of
- his servants

UST

- {it was} {King} Pharaoh's birthday
- {it was} {King} Pharaoh's birthday
- a banquet
- his officers
- {his} head
- wine-server
- head
- {all} his {other} officers

Genesis 40:21

ULT:
Then he restored the chief of the cupbearers to his position, and he put the cup into the hand of Pharaoh,

UST:
Then he returned the head wine-server to his {former} work, so that he {again} served wine to him.

Then he restored (ULT)

Then he returned (UST)

See how you translated "restore … to … position" in verse 13. Alternate translation: [Then he reappointed]

---

the chief of the cupbearers to his position (ULT)

the head wine-server to his {former} work (UST)

Alternate translation: [the chief wine-server to his previous work]

---

and he put the cup into the hand of Pharaoh (ULT)

so that he {again} served wine to him (UST)

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 13. Alternate translation: [so that once again he served wine to him] or [so that once again he had the duty of serving him his cup of wine]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the chief of

- the cupbearers
- his position
- Pharaoh

UST

- the head
- wine-server
- his {former} work
- him

Genesis 40:22

ULT:
but the chief of the bakers he hanged, just as Joseph had interpreted for them.

UST:
But he {had his soldiers execute} the head baker {and} impale {his body on a pole}. {Everything happened} exactly the way Joseph had explained {their dreams} to them.

but the chief of the bakers he hanged (ULT)

But he {had his soldiers execute} the head baker {and} impale {his body on a pole} (UST)

It is implied here that the baker was beheaded before his body was impaled on a stake (verse 19). Also, notice that **the chief of the bakers** is at the beginning of this clause in the Hebrew text to emphasize him and contrast him with what happened to the chief cupbearer. Do what is natural in your language. See how you translated "hang … on a tree" in verse 19. Alternate translation: [But as for the chief baker, Pharaoh had him executed and hanged on a tree] or [But Pharaoh had his soldiers behead the head baker and impale his body on a pole]

---

just as Joseph had interpreted for them (ULT)

{Everything happened} exactly the way Joseph had explained {their dreams} to them (UST)

Alternate translation: [Everything happened exactly the way Joseph had interpreted their dreams to them] or [which was exactly what Joseph had said would happen]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the chief of
- he hanged
- had interpreted
- Joseph

UST

- head
- and} impale {his body on a pole}
- had explained {their dreams}
- Joseph

Genesis 40:23

ULT:
However, the chief of the cupbearers did not remember Joseph but forgot him.

UST:
However the head wine-server {completely} forgot about Joseph and did not remember {to tell Pharaoh about} him.

However, the chief of the cupbearers did not remember Joseph but forgot him (ULT)

However the head wine-server {completely} forgot about Joseph and did not remember {to tell Pharaoh about} him (UST)

Alternate translation: [But the chief cupbearer did not remember to tell Pharaoh about Joseph, but instead, he forgot about him] or [… completely forgot about Joseph and did not remember to tell Pharaoh about him]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the chief of
- the cupbearers
- Joseph

UST
- head
- the … wine-server
- Joseph

Genesis 41

Genesis 41:1

ULT:
Then it happened {at} the end of two years of days that Pharaoh was dreaming and behold, he was standing beside the river.

UST:
Two whole years later, {King} Pharaoh had a dream. {In the dream} he saw himself standing beside the {Nile} River.

Then it happened {at} the end of two years of days (ULT)

Two whole years later (UST)

Alternate translation: [After two full years had passed] or [Two complete years later]

---

that Pharaoh was dreaming and behold, he was standing (ULT)

{King} Pharaoh had a dream. {In the dream} he saw himself standing (UST)

See how you translated **Pharaoh** in Genesis 40:2. Alternate translation: [King Pharaoh dreamed that he was standing]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

beside the river (ULT)

beside the {Nile} River (UST)

This phrase usually refers to the Nile River, which was the most important river in Egypt and was so well known by everyone there that it was referred to as **the river**. See how you translated a different Hebrew word for **river** in Genesis 36:37.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- two years of
- days
- that Pharaoh
- was dreaming
- the river

UST

- Two whole years later
- Two whole years later
- {King} Pharaoh
- had a dream
- the {Nile} River

Genesis 41:2

ULT:
Then behold, from the river came up seven cows, fine-looking and fat-fleshed, and they grazed among the reeds.

UST:
Suddenly, seven healthy-looking, fat cows walked up out of the river and started eating the tall grass {beside the river}.

Then behold (ULT)

Suddenly (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then suddenly] or [Then he saw that]

---

from the river came up seven cows, fine-looking and fat-fleshed (ULT)

seven healthy-looking, fat cows walked up out of the river (UST)

Make sure your translation does not sound like the cows rose up out of the water into the air. Also see how you translated **cows** in Genesis 32:15. Alternate translation: [seven cows that were healthy-looking and well-fed came up out of the river onto the bank] or [seven healthy-looking, well-fed cows came up out of the river onto the bank]

---

and they grazed among the reeds (ULT)

and started eating the tall grass {beside the river} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and started grazing on the grass that was there] or [and started eating the marsh grass beside the river]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the river
- cows
- among the reeds

UST

- the river
- cows
- the tall grass {beside the river}

Genesis 41:3

ULT:
Then behold, seven other cows came up after them from the river, ugly-looking and thin-fleshed, and they stood beside the {other} cows on the bank of the river.

UST:
Next he saw that seven sickly-looking, scrawny cows walked up out of the river and stood next to the {first} cows on the river bank.

Then behold (ULT)

Next he saw that (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then suddenly] or [Then he saw that]

---

seven other cows came up after them from the river, ugly-looking and thin-fleshed (ULT)

seven sickly-looking, scrawny cows walked up out of the river (UST)

Alternate translation: [seven cows that were sickly-looking and skinny walked up out of the river] or [seven sickly-looking, skinny cows came up out of the river]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

and they stood beside the {other} cows (ULT)

and stood next to the {first} cows (UST)

Alternate translation: [and stood next to the healthy cows]

---

on the bank of the river (ULT)

on the river bank (UST)

Consider again how you refer to **the river** in verses 1–3. If you refer to it as “the Nile River” in verse 1, it may be more natural to refer to it as **the river** after that.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- cows
- the river
- ugly-looking
- the {other} cows
- the river

UST

- cows
- the river
- sickly-looking
- the {first} cows
- river

Genesis 41:4

ULT:
Then the ugly-looking and thin-fleshed cows ate the seven fine-looking and fat cows, and Pharaoh woke up.

UST:
Then the sickly-looking, scrawny cows devoured the seven healthy-looking, fat cows. {Just} then Pharaoh woke up.

Then the ugly-looking and thin-fleshed cows ate (ULT)

Then the sickly-looking, scrawny cows devoured (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 3. Alternate translation: [Then the sickly-looking, skinny cows devoured] or [Then the cows that were sickly-looking and scrawny ate down]

---

the seven fine-looking and fat cows (ULT)

the seven healthy-looking, fat cows (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 2. Alternate translation: [the seven healthy-looking, well-fed cows] or [the seven cows that were healthy-looking and fat]

---

and Pharaoh woke up (ULT)

{Just} then Pharaoh woke up (UST)

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to Pharaoh at each point/occurrence in this chapter. Alternate translation: [Just then King Pharaoh woke up] or [After that, the king woke up]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- cows
- the ugly-looking
- the … cows
- Pharaoh

UST

- the … cows
- sickly-looking
- the … cows
- Pharaoh

Genesis 41:5

ULT:
Then he fell asleep and dreamed a second {time}. And behold, seven heads of grain came up on one stalk, fat and good.

UST:
Then he went {back} to sleep and had a second {dream}. {This time} he saw seven plump, well-formed heads of grain growing on the same plant.

Then he fell asleep (ULT)

Then he went {back} to sleep (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Pharaoh] or [Then the king]

Then he fell asleep (ULT)

Then he went {back} to sleep (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Pharaoh went to sleep again] or [The the king went back to sleep]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and dreamed a second {time} (ULT)

and had a second {dream} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and started dreaming again]

And behold (ULT)

{This time} he saw (UST)

Alternate translation: [In this dream there were]

---

seven heads of grain came up on one stalk, fat and good (ULT)

seven plump, well-formed heads of grain growing on the same plant (UST)

The phrase **heads of grain** is one word in the Hebrew text. Consider whether it is better in your language to use a word or phrase to translate this. Alternate translation: [seven big beautiful heads of grain growing on the same stem]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and dreamed
- heads of grain
- on … stalk
- and good

UST

- and had a … dream
- heads of grain
- on the … plant
- well-formed

Genesis 41:6

ULT:
Then behold, seven heads of grain, thin and scorched {by} the east wind, sprouted after them.

UST:
Suddenly, seven small heads of grain that the {hot} desert wind had dried out started growing {on the same plant} beside the first heads.

Then behold (ULT)

Suddenly (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then suddenly] or [Next he saw that]

---

seven heads of grain, thin and scorched {by} the east wind (ULT)

seven small heads of grain that the {hot} desert wind had dried out (UST)

This wind was from the desert in the east, so it was hot and dry. Alternate translation: [seven shriveled heads of grain that were dried out by the hot east wind] or [seven shriveled heads of grain that the hot east wind had dried out]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

sprouted (ULT)

started growing (UST)

Alternate translation: [grew up] or [were growing]

---

after them (ULT)

{on the same plant} beside the first heads (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to refer to the first heads here with a pronoun (**them**) or a noun phrase. Alternate translation: [next to them on the same stalk] or [on the same stalk beside the well-formed heads]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- heads of grain

UST

- heads of grain

Genesis 41:7

ULT:
Then the thin heads of grain swallowed up the seven fat and full heads. Then Pharaoh woke up, and behold, {it was} a dream.

UST:
Next, the small heads of grain gobbled up the seven big, well-formed heads. At that point, Pharaoh woke up and realized that {he had been} dreaming.

Then the thin heads of grain swallowed up (ULT)

Next, the small heads of grain gobbled up (UST)

See how you translated **thin** in verse 6 and **heads of grain** in verses 5–6. Alternate translation: [Next, the shriveled heads of grain devoured] or [… ate up]

---

the seven fat and full heads (ULT)

the seven big, well-formed heads (UST)

The word **full** here describes heads of grain that have many seeds in them. See how you translated **fat** in verse 5. Alternate translation: [the seven plump, well-formed heads]

Then Pharaoh woke up (ULT)

At that point, Pharaoh woke up (UST)

See how you translated this clause in verse 4. Alternate translation: [Just then Pharaoh woke up] or [After that, Pharaoh woke up]

---

and behold, {it was} a dream (ULT)

and realized that {he had been} dreaming (UST)

Alternate translation: [and suddenly knew that he had been dreaming]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the … heads of grain
- the … heads
- Pharaoh
- {it was} a dream

UST

- the … heads of grain
- the … heads
- Pharaoh
- {he had been} dreaming

Genesis 41:8

ULT:
And it happened in the morning that his spirit was agitated, so he sent and called for all the magicians of Egypt and all its wise men. Then Pharaoh told his dreams to them, but no one could interpret them for Pharaoh.

UST:
The next morning Pharaoh was upset {about the dreams}, so he had {servants} summon all the sorcerers and {other} scholars in {the country of} Egypt. {When they arrived,} he told them what he had dreamed, but none of them was able to explain to him {what} the dreams {meant}.

And it happened in the morning (ULT)

The next morning (UST)

The author is using the word translated as **And it happened** to introduce a new development in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new development. Alternate translation: [In the morning it happened]

Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

---

that his spirit was agitated (ULT)

Pharaoh was upset {about the dreams} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Pharaoh felt upset about the dreams]

---

so he sent and called for (ULT)

so he had {servants} summon (UST)

Alternate translation: [so he sent servants to summon] or [so he had messengers summon]

Then Pharaoh told his dreams to them (ULT)

{When they arrived,} he told them what he had dreamed (UST)

Alternate translation: [When they arrived, Pharaoh told them what he had dreamed] or [Then he related to them what he had seen in his dreams]

---

but no one (ULT)

but none of them (UST)

Alternate translation: [but none of those men]

---

could interpret them for Pharaoh (ULT)

was able to explain to him {what} the dreams {meant} (UST)

Alternate translation: [could tell him what the dreams meant]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- that … was agitated
- his spirit
- and called for
- the magicians of
- Egypt
- its wise men
- Pharaoh
- his dreams
- could interpret
- for Pharaoh

UST

- was upset {about the dreams}
- Pharaoh
- summon
- the sorcerers

- {the country of} Egypt
- {other} scholars in
- he
- what he had dreamed
- was able to explain … what} the dreams {meant}
- to him

Genesis 41:9

ULT:
Then the chief of the cupbearers spoke with Pharaoh, saying, "Today I remember my offenses.

UST:
Then the head wine-server said to Pharaoh, "{Sir,} today I remember {the time} when I offended {you}.

the chief of the cupbearers (ULT)

the head wine-server (UST)

Consider again how you translated **chief of the cupbearers** and "cupbearer" in the book of Genesis. See 40:1–2, 5, 9, 13, 20–21, 23; 41:9. Alternate translation: [But the head wine-server]

Then the chief of the cupbearers spoke with Pharaoh, saying (ULT)

Then the head wine-server said to Pharaoh (UST)

Consider again how you translated **chief of the cupbearers** and "cupbearer" in the book of Genesis. See 40:1–2, 5, 9, 13, 20–21, 23; 41:9. Alternate translation: [But the head wine-server spoke up and said to Pharaoh] or [But the head wine-server said to Pharaoh]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Today I remember (ULT)

{Sir,} today I remember (UST)

For many languages, it is necessary to use a respectful title to address a person of high status such as Pharaoh. Alternate translation: [Your Majesty, I now recall]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

my offenses (ULT)

the time} when I offended {you} (UST)

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) “the time when I offended/displeased/wronged you.” or (2) “something important I failed/forgot to do.” The second interpretation refers to the cupbearer forgetting to tell Pharaoh about Joseph. Alternate translation: [my sins]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the chief of
- the cupbearers
- Pharaoh
- my offenses
- Today

UST

- head
- the … wine-server
- to Pharaoh
- the time} when I offended {you}
- {Sir,} today

Genesis 41:10

ULT:
Pharaoh broke out in anger against his servants, and he put me in custody {in} the house of the chief of the guards, me and the chief of the bakers.

UST:
{Some time ago,} {King} Pharaoh, you were angry with your officials, {including} me and the head baker, and you put us in prison at the captain of the guards' house.

Pharaoh broke out in anger against (ULT)

{Some time ago,} {King} Pharaoh, you were angry with (UST)

The events in verses 10–13 had happened two years earlier (verse 1); chapter 40 gives the details about those events. See how you translated the idiom **broke out in anger against** in Genesis 40:2. Alternate translation: [Some time ago, King Pharaoh, you were very angry at]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

his servants, and he put (ULT)

your officials … and you put (UST)

In verses 10 and 13, the cupbearer uses third person (Pharaoh, his, he) to show respect for Pharaoh. For some languages, it is confusing to do that, so second person ("you … your …you …") must be used instead. Some languages have an honorific such as "your Majesty" that could be used occasionally in these verses instead of third person. Alternate translation: [your officers, and you put]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

---

and he put me in custody {in} the house of the chief of the guards, me and the chief of the bakers (ULT)

{including} me and the head baker, and you put us in prison at the captain of the guards' house (UST)

See how you translated "put … in custody in the house of the chief of the guards" in Genesis 40:3. Also consider again how you translated **chief of the bakers** and "baker" in the book of Genesis. See 40:1–2, 4–5, 16–17, 20, 22; 41:10, 13. Alternate translation: [and he put the head baker and me in the prison that is in the house of the captain of the guards]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Pharaoh
- his servants
- {in} the house of
- the chief of
- the chief of

UST

- {Some time ago,} {King} Pharaoh, you
- your officials
- at … house
- the captain of
- the head

Genesis 41:11

ULT:
And we dreamed a dream in the same night, he and I; each of us dreamed according to the interpretation of his dream.

UST:
{While we were there,} one night we {each} had a dream, {and} each of our dreams had a different meaning.

And we dreamed a dream in the same night, he and I (ULT)

{While we were there,} one night we {each} had a dream (UST)

See how you translated a similar sentence in Genesis 40:5. In verses 11–13, the pronouns **we** and **us** exclude Pharaoh. Alternate translation: [One time while we were there, we each dreamed a dream during the same night]

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

---

each of us dreamed according to the interpretation of his dream (ULT)

{and} each of our dreams had a different meaning (UST)

Consider again how you translated **interpretation** in Genesis 40:5, 8, 12, 18; 41:11 and the related verb "interpret" in Genesis 40:16, 22. Alternate translation: [and each of our dreams had its own meaning]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- And we dreamed
- a dream
- according to the interpretation of
- his dream
- of us dreamed

UST
- While we were there … had

- a dream
- {and} each of our dreams had a different meaning
- {and} each of our dreams had a different meaning
- {and} each of our dreams had a different meaning

Genesis 41:12

ULT:
Now there with us {was} a young Hebrew man, a servant for the chief of the guards. And we told {our dreams} to him, and he interpreted our dreams for us. He interpreted {for} each according to his dream.

UST:
There was a young Hebrew man with us {who was} a servant for the captain over the guards. After we told him {our dreams}, he explained them to us. He told us what each of our dreams meant.

Now there with us {was} a young Hebrew man (ULT)

There was a young Hebrew man with us (UST)

Translate "young … man" in a way that fits with the fact that Joseph was 30 years old (verse 46) and was not yet married.

---

a servant for the chief of the guards (ULT)

{who was} a servant for the captain over the guards (UST)

Consider again how you translated **chief of the guards** in the book of Genesis. See 37:36; 39:1; 40:3–4; 41:10, 12. Alternate translation: [who was a servant for the captain of the guards]

And we told {our dreams} to him (ULT)

After we told him {our dreams} (UST)

Consider again how you translated **told** in the book of Genesis. See 24:66; 29:13; 37:9–10; 40:8–9; 41:8, 12. Alternate translation: [After we described our dreams to him]

---

and he interpreted our dreams for us (ULT)

he explained them to us (UST)

Alternate translation: [he told us what they meant]

He interpreted {for} each according to his dream (ULT)

He told us what each of our dreams meant (UST)

Alternate translation: [He told each of us the meaning of our dreams]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Hebrew
- a servant
- for the chief of
- and he interpreted
- our dreams
- according to his dream
- He interpreted

UST

- Hebrew
- {who was} a servant
- for the captain over
- he explained
- them
- He told us what each of our dreams meant
- He told us what each of our dreams meant

Genesis 41:13

ULT:
And it happened, just as he interpreted for us, so it happened: me he restored to my position, and him he hanged."

UST:
And sure enough, everything happened exactly the way he had explained {the dreams} to us: you returned me to my {former} work {as your wine-server}, and you {had your soldiers} execute the baker."

And it happened, just as he interpreted for us, so it happened (ULT)

And sure enough, everything happened exactly the way he had explained {the dreams} to us (UST)

Alternate translation: [And sure enough, everything happened exactly the way he had interpreted the dreams to us:]

---

me he restored to my position (ULT)

you returned me to my {former} work {as your wine-server} (UST)

See how you translated "restored to … position" in Genesis 40:21. Alternate translation: [you reinstated me to my previous work as your cupbearer]

---

and him he hanged (ULT)

and you {had your soldiers} execute the baker (UST)

Consider again whether you referred to Pharaoh in third person (**he**) or second person ("you") in verses 10 and 13. Also see how you translated "hanged/impaled on a tree/pole" in Genesis 40:22. Alternate translation: [but you had your soldiers execute the baker and hang his body on a pole] or [but you had your soldiers execute the baker]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- he interpreted
- he hanged

UST

- he had explained {the dreams}
- you {had your soldiers} execute

Genesis 41:14

ULT:
Then Pharaoh sent and called for Joseph. So they quickly brought him from the pit. Then he shaved and changed his clothes and came to Pharaoh.

UST:
{When Pharaoh heard that,} {immediately} he had {servants} summon Joseph. So they went right away and got him out of the prison. Then after he shaved {his head and face} and changed into appropriate clothing, he went before Pharaoh.

Then Pharaoh sent and called for Joseph (ULT)

{When Pharaoh heard that,} {immediately} he had {servants} summon Joseph (UST)

See how you translated **sent and called for** in verse 8. Alternate translation: [Immediately Pharaoh sent servants to summon Joseph] or [When Pharaoh heard that, immediately he had messengers summon Joseph]

So they quickly brought him from the pit (ULT)

So they went right away and got him out of the prison (UST)

See how you translated **pit** in Genesis 40:15. Alternate translation: [So they hurriedly got Joseph out of the dungeon] or [So they went right away and got …]

Then he shaved and changed his clothes (ULT)

Then after he shaved {his head and face} and changed into appropriate clothing (UST)

Since Joseph lived in Egypt and Egyptian men kept their heads and faces clean-shaven, Joseph probably also shaved his head and his face. Consider whether or not it is best in your language to make this implied information explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: [Then he

shaved his head and face, changed into suitable clothes and] or [Then after he shaved his head and face and changed into clean clothing, he]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and came to Pharaoh (ULT)

he went before Pharaoh (UST)

Your choice of **came** versus "went" in this context depends on whose perspective you take: **came** reflects things from Pharaoh's point of view, and "went" reflects things from Joseph's point of view. Do what is most natural in your language. Alternate translation: [came before Pharaoh]

Support Reference: Go and Come

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Pharaoh
- and called for
- Joseph
- the pit
- Pharaoh

UST

- {When Pharaoh heard that,} {immediately} he had {servants} summon
- {When Pharaoh heard that,} {immediately} he had {servants} summon
- Joseph
- the prison
- Pharaoh

Genesis 41:15

ULT:
Then Pharaoh said to Joseph, "I dreamed a dream, but no one could interpret it. But I heard about you, saying {that} you hear a dream {and are able} to interpret it."

UST:
Then Pharaoh said to him, "I had a dream, but no one has been able to explain {to me} what it means. But someone told me about you, {that} when you hear a dream, {you are able} to explain what it means."

Then Pharaoh said to Joseph (ULT)

Then Pharaoh said to him (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Pharaoh told him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

---

but no one could interpret it (ULT)

but no one has been able to explain {to me} what it means (UST)

See how you translated a similar clause in Genesis 40:8.

But I heard about you, saying (ULT)

But someone told me about you (UST)

Alternate translation: [But I was told]

{that} you hear a dream {and are able} to interpret it (ULT)

{that} when you hear a dream, {you are able} to explain what it means (UST)

Consider again how you translated **interpret** and "interpreter" throughout the book of Genesis. See 40:8, 16, 22; 41:8, 12, 13, 15, 16. Alternate translation: [that when you hear a dream, you are able to interpret what it means] or [that when someone tells you a dream, you are able to interpret its meaning]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Pharaoh
- Joseph
- a dream
- I dreamed
- but … could interpret
- a dream
- {and are able} to interpret

UST

- Pharaoh
- him
- a dream
- I had
- but no one has been able to explain {to me} what it means
- a dream
- {you are able} to explain what it means

Genesis 41:16

ULT:
And Joseph responded to Pharaoh, saying, "{It is} not in me; God will answer with Pharaoh's peace."

UST:
Joseph replied to him, "{Sir,} I do not have that ability {on my own}, {but} God will explain {your dream} so that {you,} {King} Pharaoh, will have peace {in your heart}."

And Joseph responded to Pharaoh, saying (ULT)

Joseph replied to him (UST)

Alternate translation: [Joseph replied to Pharaoh]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

{It is} not in me (ULT)

Sir,} I do not have that ability {on my own} (UST)

Make sure your translation of Joseph's response sounds respectful. See what you did in verse 9. Alternate translation: [Your Majesty, I cannot do that by myself]

Support Reference: Politeness

God will answer (ULT)

but} God will explain {your dream} (UST)

Alternate translation: [but God will interpret your dream]

---

with Pharaoh's peace (ULT)

so that {you,} {King} Pharaoh, will have peace {in your heart} (UST)

Consider whether or not it is more natural in your language to use Pharaoh's name at the beginning of this quote (instead of here) and say, "King Pharaoh, I do not have that ability…" Alternate translation: [for your well-being King Pharaoh] or [so that you, King Pharaoh, will have peace in your spirit]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- Pharaoh
- God
- will answer
- s peace
- Pharaoh

UST

- Joseph
- him
- {but} God
- will explain {your dream}
- so that {you,} {King} Pharaoh, will have peace {in your heart}
- so that {you,} {King} Pharaoh, will have peace {in your heart}

Genesis 41:17

ULT:
Then Pharaoh spoke to Joseph, "In my dream, behold, I was standing on the bank of the river.

UST:
So Pharaoh told Joseph, "As I was dreaming, I saw myself standing beside the {Nile} River.

Then Pharaoh spoke to Joseph (ULT)

So Pharaoh told Joseph (UST)

Alternate translation: [So Pharaoh told him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

In my dream, behold, I was standing (ULT)

As I was dreaming, I saw myself standing (UST)

Alternate translation: [I dreamed that I was standing]

---

on the bank of the river (ULT)

beside the {Nile} River (UST)

See how you translated "the Nile River" in verse 1. Since this is the first time that Pharaoh mentions **the river** to Joseph, consider whether this is a good place in your translation to make it explicit again that this is the Nile River. Alternate translation: [on the bank of the Nile River]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Pharaoh
- Joseph
- In my dream
- the river

UST

- Pharaoh
- Joseph
- As I was dreaming
- the {Nile} River

Genesis 41:18

ULT:
Then behold, from the river came up seven cows, fat-fleshed and of fine form, and they grazed among the reeds.

UST:
Then suddenly, seven fat, healthy-looking cows walked up out of the river {onto the bank} and started eating the tall grass {that was there}.

Then behold (ULT)

Then suddenly (UST)

Compare how you translated verse 2, which is similar but not identical to verse 18. Alternate translation: [Then I saw that]

---

from the river came up seven cows, fat-fleshed and of fine form (ULT)

seven fat, healthy-looking cows walked up out of the river {onto the bank} (UST)

Alternate translation: [seven cows that were fat and healthy-looking came up out of the river onto the bank] or [seven well-fed, healthy-looking cows came up out of the river onto the bank]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

and they grazed among the reeds (ULT)

and started eating the tall grass {that was there} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and started grazing on]

---

among the reeds (ULT)

the tall grass {that was there} (UST)

Alternate translation: [the plants that were there] or [the tall grass beside the river]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the river
- cows
- among the reeds

UST

- the river
- cows
- the tall grass {that was there}

Genesis 41:19

ULT:
Then behold, seven other cows came up after them, poor and very ugly of form and thin-fleshed. I have not seen {cows} as ugly as those in all the land of Egypt!

UST:
Suddenly seven other cows walked up {out of the river} behind the first cows; {they were} in terrible condition, very sickly-looking and scrawny. {In fact,} I have never seen such awful-looking {cows} anywhere in the land of Egypt!

Then behold (ULT)

Suddenly (UST)

See how you translated verse 3, which is similar to the first half of verse 19. Alternate translation: [Then suddenly] or [Next I saw that]

---

seven other cows came up after them (ULT)

seven other cows walked up {out of the river} behind the first cows (UST)

Alternate translation: [seven other cows came up out of the river behind the first cows;]

---

poor and very ugly of form and thin-fleshed (ULT)

{they were} in terrible condition, very sickly-looking and scrawny (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to put this information earlier in this sentence and say, “Then behold, seven poor/weak, very sickly-looking, scrawny cows came up out of the river behind the first cows/ones.” Alternate translation: [they were in horrible condition, very sickly-looking and scrawny]

Support Reference: Information Structure

I have not seen (ULT)

{In fact,} I have never seen (UST)

Alternate translation: [In fact, I have not seen]

{cows} as ugly as those (ULT)

such awful-looking {cows} (UST)

Alternate translation: [cows in such bad condition]

---

in all the land of Egypt (ULT)

anywhere in the land of Egypt (UST)

Alternate translation: [in the whole country of Egypt!] or [anywhere in the country of Egypt!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- cows
- and … ugly of
- the land of
- Egypt
- {cows} as ugly

UST

- cows
- sickly-looking
- the land of
- Egypt
- awful-looking {cows}

Genesis 41:20

ULT:
Then the thin and ugly cows ate the first seven fat cows.

UST:
Then the scrawny, sickly cows devoured the seven fat ones.

Then the thin and ugly cows ate (ULT)

Then the scrawny, sickly cows devoured (UST)

See how you translated **ate** in verse 4. Alternate translation: [Then the skinny, unhealthy cows devoured] or [Then the cows that were scrawny and sickly swallowed up]

---

the first seven fat cows (ULT)

the seven fat ones (UST)

See how you translated **fat** or "fat-fleshed" in verses 2, 4, 18 and 20. Alternate translation: [the seven well-fed cows]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the … cows
- and ugly
- the … cows

UST
- the … cows
- sickly
- the … ones

Genesis 41:21

ULT:
So they went into their bellies, but it could not be known that they had gone into their bellies, and their appearance {was} just as ugly as at the beginning. Then I woke up.

UST:
But {even} after they had swallowed them, no one would {ever} know that they had devoured them, because they {still} looked just as terrible as before. That's when I woke up.

So they went into their bellies, but it could not be known (ULT)

But {even} after they had swallowed them, no one would {ever} know (UST)

Alternate translation: [But even after they had eaten them, no one would ever know] or [But although the scrawny cows had swallowed the fat ones, it could not be seen]

---

that they had gone into their bellies (ULT)

that they had devoured them (UST)

Alternate translation: [that they had eaten them]

---

and their appearance {was} just as ugly as at the beginning (ULT)

because they {still} looked just as terrible as before (UST)

Alternate translation: [because they still looked just as scrawny as they had before]

Then I woke up (ULT)

That’s when I woke up (UST)

Alternate translation: [At that point, I woke up]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- it could … be known
- {was} just as ugly as

UST

- no one would {ever} know
- just as terrible as

Genesis 41:22

ULT:
Then I saw in my dream, and behold, seven heads of grain came up on one stalk, full and good.

UST:
Then I {went back to sleep and} had {another} dream. {This time} I saw that there were seven big, well-formed heads of grain growing on the same plant.

Then I saw in my dream, and behold (ULT)

Then I {went back to sleep and} had {another} dream. {This time} I saw that there were (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then I fell asleep again and continued dreaming. This time I saw that there were] or [Then I went back to sleep and had another dream. In this dream there were]

---

seven heads of grain came up on one stalk, full and good (ULT)

seven big, well-formed heads of grain growing on the same plant (UST)

See how you translated verse 5, which is similar to verse 22. Alternate translation: [seven heads of grain growing on a single plant. They were full of ripe grain kernels] or [seven full beautiful heads of grain growing on the same stalk]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- in my dream
- heads of grain
- on … stalk
- and good

UST
- Then I {went back to sleep and} had {another} dream
- heads of grain

- on the … plant
- well-formed

Genesis 41:23

ULT:
Then behold, seven heads of grain, withered, thin {and} scorched {by} the east wind sprouted after them.

UST:
Then suddenly, seven small heads of grain sprouted {on the same plant} next to the first heads. {These had} wilted because the {hot} desert wind had dried them out.

Then behold (ULT)

Then suddenly (UST)

See how you translated verse 6, which is similar to verse 23. Alternate translation: [Next I saw that]

---

seven heads of grain, withered, thin {and} scorched {by} the east wind (ULT)

seven small heads of grain … {These had} wilted because the {hot} desert wind had dried them out (UST)

Alternate translation: [seven heads of grain that were small and withered because they were dried out by the hot east wind] or [seven small, withered heads of grain that the hot east wind had dried out]

---

sprouted (ULT)

sprouted (UST)

Alternate translation: [grew up] or [were growing]

---

after them (ULT)

{on the same plant} next to the first heads (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to change the order of phrases in this verse and say, “Then seven small heads of grain sprouted on the same plant next to the first heads/ones. These had withered/wilted because the hot east/desert wind had dried them out.” Alternate translation: [next to them on the same stalk] or [on the same stalk beside the first heads]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- heads of grain

UST

- heads of grain

Genesis 41:24

ULT:
Then the thin heads of grain swallowed up the seven good heads of grain. And I told {this} to the magicians, but no one {could} explain {it} to me."

UST:
Then the small heads of grain gobbled up the seven well-formed ones. I told {my dreams} to {my} sorcerers, but none of them could explain to me {what the dreams meant}."

Then the thin heads of grain swallowed up (ULT)

Then the small heads of grain gobbled up (UST)

See how you translated the first half of verse 7, which is similar to the first half of verse 24. Alternate translation: [Then the small heads of grain ate up] or [… swallowed down] or [… devoured]

---

the seven good heads of grain (ULT)

the seven well-formed ones (UST)

See how you translated **good** in verses 5 and 22. Alternate translation: [the seven beautiful heads]

And I told {this} to the magicians (ULT)

I told {my dreams} to {my} sorcerers (UST)

See how you translated **magicians** in verse 8. Alternate translation: [I told my dreams to my magicians]

---

but no one {could} explain {it} to me (ULT)

but none of them could explain to me {what the dreams meant} (UST)

See how you translated a different Hebrew word that means **explain** or “interpret” in verse 8.
Alternate translation: [but they could not explain them for me]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the … heads of grain
- the … heads of grain
- good
- the magicians
- could} explain {it}

UST

- the … heads of grain
- the … ones
- well-formed
- {my} sorcerers
- could explain … what the dreams meant

Genesis 41:25

ULT:
Then Joseph said to Pharaoh, "Pharaoh's dreams {are} one. What God is doing, he has shown to Pharaoh.

UST:
Then Joseph told {King} Pharaoh, "{Your Majesty,} {both of} your dreams mean the same thing. {Through them,} God is revealing to you what he is going to do.

Then Joseph said to Pharaoh (ULT)

Then Joseph told {King} Pharaoh (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Joseph responded to Pharaoh]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Pharaoh's dreams {are} one (ULT)

{Your Majesty,} {both of} your dreams mean the same thing (UST)

In verses 25, 28, 32–35, Joseph uses third person ("Pharaoh … his … he…") to show respect for Pharaoh. For some languages, it is confusing to do that, so second person ("you … your… you …") must be used instead. Some languages have an honorific such as "your Majesty/ Honor" that could be used occasionally in these verses instead of third person. Also see what you did in verses 10 and 13. Alternate translation: [Your Highness, both of your dreams have the same thing meaning]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

What God is doing, he has shown to Pharaoh (ULT)

{Through them,} God is revealing to you what he is going to do (UST)

The Hebrew text emphasizes “what God is doing” by putting that phrase first in the sentence. Consider what is the most natural phrase order for this sentence in your language. Alternate translation: [Through them, God is showing to you what he will do] or [God has revealed to you, King Pharaoh, what he is planning to do]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- Pharaoh
- s dreams
- Pharaoh
- God
- has shown
- to Pharaoh

UST

- Joseph
- {King} Pharaoh
- {Your Majesty,} {both of} your dreams
- {Your Majesty,} {both of} your dreams
- {Through them,} God is revealing … what he is going to do
- {Through them,} God is revealing … what he is going to do
- to you

Genesis 41:26

ULT:
The seven good cows {are} seven years, and the seven good heads of grain {are} seven years. The dreams {are} one.

UST:
The seven healthy cows {represent} seven years, and the seven well-formed heads of grain {represent} {the same} seven years. {Both} dreams mean the same thing.

The seven good cows {are} seven years (ULT)

The seven healthy cows {represent} seven years (UST)

Alternate translation: [The seven healthy cows in your dream symbolize seven years]

---

and the seven good heads of grain {are} seven years (ULT)

and the seven well-formed heads of grain {represent} {the same} seven years (UST)

Alternate translation: [and the seven beautiful heads of grain symbolize the same seven years]

The dreams {are} one (ULT)

{Both} dreams mean the same thing (UST)

See how you translated **dreams are one** in verse 25. Alternate translation: [Both dreams have the same meaning]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- The … cows
- good
- years

- the … heads of grain
- good
- years
- The dreams

UST

- The … cows
- healthy
- years
- the … heads of grain
- well-formed
- years
- {Both} dreams

Genesis 41:27

ULT:
And the seven thin and ugly cows that came up after them {are} seven years, and {so are} the seven thin heads of grain scorched by the east wind. There will be seven years of famine.

UST:
The seven scrawny and sickly cows that walked up {out of the river} behind the first cows {represent} {a different} seven years, and {so do} the seven small heads of grain that the desert wind had dried out. {They both mean that} there will be a famine that lasts seven years.

And the seven thin and ugly cows (ULT)

The seven scrawny and sickly cows (UST)

See how you translated **thin and ugly cows** in verse 20, and how you translated **thin** in verse 19. Alternate translation: [The seven skinny and sickly cows]

---

that came up after them (ULT)

that walked up {out of the river} behind the first cows (UST)

Alternate translation: [that came up out of the river behind the first cows]

{are} seven years, and {so are} the seven thin heads of grain (ULT)

{represent} {a different} seven years, and {so do} the seven small heads of grain (UST)

See how you translated **thin** in verses 6 and 23, and consider again how you translated **heads of grain** in verses 5–7, 22–24, 26–27. Alternate translation: [symbolize a different seven years, and so do the seven small heads of grain]

---

scorched by the east wind (ULT)

that the desert wind had dried out (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verses 6 and 23. Also consider again how you translated **east** in the book of Genesis; see 2:8; 3:24; 10:30; 11:2; 12:8; 13:11; 14; 25:6; 28:14; 29:1, 41:6, 23, 27. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [that the hot east wind had dried up] or [that the desert wind from the east had dried up]

There will be seven years of famine (ULT)

{They both mean that} there will be a famine that lasts seven years (UST)

A **famine** is a prolonged period of time when people are starving because crops are failing, often due to a lack of rain or other severe weather conditions. See how you translated this term in Genesis 12:10 and 26:1. Alternate translation: [Both dreams mean that there will be seven years when food will be very scarce]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the … cows
- and ugly
- years
- the … heads of grain
- years of
- famine

UST

- The … cows
- and sickly
- years
- the … heads of grain
- a famine that lasts seven years
- a famine that lasts seven years

Genesis 41:28

ULT:
That {is} the word that I have spoken to Pharaoh: What God is doing he has shown to Pharaoh.

UST:
{King} Pharaoh, that {is} what I was talking about {when I told} you {that} God is revealing to you what he is going to do.

That {is} the word that I have spoken to Pharaoh (ULT)

King} Pharaoh, that {is} what I was talking about {when I told} you {that} (UST)

Consider what is the best way to refer to Pharaoh here in your language. See what you did in verse 25. Alternate translation: [Your Honor, as I told you before]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

What God is doing he has shown to Pharaoh (ULT)

God is revealing to you what he is going to do (UST)

See how you translated this clause in verse 25. Alternate translation: [God is showing to you what he will do] or [God has shown to you what he is about to do]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Pharaoh
- God
- Pharaoh

UST
- {King} Pharaoh … when I told} you {that}
- God

- you

Genesis 41:29

ULT:
Behold, seven years are coming {of} great abundance in all the land of Egypt.

UST:
Listen, {first} there will be seven years when people will have more than enough food {to eat} throughout the entire country of Egypt.

{of} great abundance (ULT)

when people will have more than enough food {to eat} (UST)

Alternate translation: [when crops are abundant] or [when everyone will have plenty of food to eat]

---

in all the land of Egypt (ULT)

throughout the entire country of Egypt (UST)

Alternate translation: [throughout the whole land of Egypt]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- years
- the land of
- Egypt

UST

- years
- country of
- Egypt

Genesis 41:30

ULT:
But seven years of famine will rise up after them, so that all the abundance in the land of Egypt will be forgotten, and the famine will consume the land.

UST:
But after that, there will be a famine that lasts seven years. As a result, the people in Egypt will forget what it was like in their country during all the years when they had more than enough {food} {to eat}, because the famine will devastate the country {so that many people will starve}.

But seven years of famine will rise up after them (ULT)

But after that, there will be a famine that lasts seven years (UST)

See how you translated **famine** in verse 27. Alternate translation: [But after them there will be a famine that lasts seven years] or [But after those prosperous years, there will be seven years when food is very scarce]

---

so that all the abundance in the land of Egypt will be forgotten (ULT)

As a result, the people in Egypt will forget what it was like in their country during all the years when they had more than enough {food} {to eat} (UST)

Alternate translation: [So people in the country of Egypt will forget how good it was during the time when they had plenty of food]

---

and the famine will consume the land (ULT)

because the famine will devastate the country {so that many people will starve} (UST)

The phrase **the land** here probably also includes the people who lived in that country. Alternate translation: [because the famine will destroy the land and the people] or [because the severe food shortage will ravage the land so that many people will starve]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- years of
- famine
- in the land of
- Egypt
- the famine
- the land

UST

- years
- a famine that lasts
- in their country
- in their country
- the famine
- the country {so that many people will starve}

Genesis 41:31

ULT:
And the abundance in the land will not be remembered because of that famine after it, because it {will be} very heavy.

UST:
That's right, people will completely forget about the years when there was plenty of food, because the famine {that comes} after that {will be} so severe.

And the abundance in the land will not be remembered (ULT)

That's right, people will completely forget about the years when there was plenty of food (UST)

Verse 31 restates much of the content of verse 30, so keep that it mind as you translate the beginning of this verse. Alternate translation: [Indeed, there will be no evidence left that there were years when there was more than enough food]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

---

because of that famine after it, because it {will be} very heavy (ULT)

because the famine {that comes} after that {will be} so severe (UST)

For some languages, it clearer and more natural to put this clause near the beginning of this verse and say, "Yes, the famine that is coming will be so severe/terrible that people will completely forget about the time/years when food was abundant/plentiful in the land." Alternate translation: [because the famine that happens after that will be very oppressive] or [because the following years when food is scarce will be so terrible]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- will … be remembered
- in the land

- famine

UST

- That’s right, people will completely forget about
- the years when there was plenty of food
- the famine {that comes} after

Genesis 41:32

ULT:
And as for the repeating of the dream to Pharaoh twice, {it is} because the matter has been established by God, and God will soon do it.

UST:
The fact that you, {King} Pharaoh, had two {different} dreams that mean the same thing shows that God has decided what he is going to do, and he will make it happen soon.

And as for the repeating of the dream to Pharaoh twice, {it is} because (ULT)

The fact that you, {King} Pharaoh, had two {different} dreams that mean the same thing shows that (UST)

Alternate translation: [The reason you had the same dream in two different ways is that]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

---

the matter has been established by God (ULT)

God has decided what he is going to do (UST)

Alternate translation: [God has firmly decided what he is going to do] or [God wants you to know that this will definitely happen]

---

and God will soon do it (ULT)

and he will make it happen soon (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he will cause it to happen very soon]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the dream
- Pharaoh
- God
- God

UST

- The fact that you, {King} Pharaoh, had two {different} dreams that mean the same thing
- The fact that you, {King} Pharaoh, had two {different} dreams that mean the same thing
- God has decided what he is going to do
- and he will make it happen soon

Genesis 41:33

ULT:
And now let Pharaoh seek a man {who is} discerning and wise, and set him over the land of Egypt.

UST:
So now, {your Majesty,} I recommend that you look for a man {who is} intelligent and knows what to do, and put him in charge over the country of Egypt.

And now let Pharaoh seek a man (ULT)

So now, {your Majesty,} I recommend that you look for a man (UST)

Alternate translation: [So King Pharaoh, you should now look for a man] or [So now, your Highness, I recommend that you choose a man]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

{who is} discerning and wise (ULT)

{who is} intelligent and knows what to do (UST)

Alternate translation: [who is insightful and knows what to do] or [who is wise and can make good decisions]

---

and set him over (ULT)

and put him in charge over (UST)

Alternate translation: [and put him in charge of] or [and give him authority over]

---

the land of Egypt (ULT)

the country of Egypt (UST)

See how you translated **the land** in verse 30. Alternate translation: [the country of Egypt and its people]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Pharaoh
- {who is} discerning
- and wise
- and set him
- the land of
- Egypt

UST

- I recommend that you look for
- {who is} intelligent
- and knows what to do
- and put him in charge
- the country of
- Egypt

Genesis 41:34

ULT:
Let Pharaoh do {this}: Let him set supervisors over the land, and let him take a fifth of the land of Egypt in the seven years of abundance.

UST:
Sir, you should {also} appoint {regional} administrators in charge of the country, and {have them} collect one-fifth of {the crops that people harvest throughout} the country during the seven years when harvests are plentiful.

Let Pharaoh do {this}: Let him set supervisors (ULT)

Sir, you should {also} appoint {regional} administrators (UST)

Alternate translation: [King Pharaoh, I also recommend that you appoint regional administrators] or [Sir, you should also appoint …]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

---

over the land (ULT)

in charge of the country (UST)

Alternate translation: [to be in charge of different regions of the country] or [to manage different regions of the country]

---

and let him take a fifth (ULT)

and {have them} collect one-fifth (UST)

Alternate translation: [and have them gather from the people one-fifth] or [Then command them to collect …]

---

of the land of Egypt (ULT)

of {the crops that people harvest throughout} the country (UST)

In this context, “the land/country” refers to the crops that were growing in Egypt. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: [of all the grain that they harvest in the country of Egypt] or [of everything the land of Egypt produces]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

in the seven years of abundance (ULT)

during the seven years when harvests are plentiful (UST)

See how you translated **abundance** in verses 29–31. Alternate translation: [during the seven years when crops are abundant] or [during the seven years when there will be more than enough crops]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Pharaoh
- Let him set
- supervisors
- the land
- of the land of
- Egypt
- the … years of

UST

- Sir
- appoint
- {regional} administrators
- the country
- of {the crops that people harvest throughout} the country
- מִצְרַ֑יִם (ORIG QUOTE)
- years when

Genesis 41:35

ULT:
And they should gather all the food of the good years that are coming. And they should store {that} grain under Pharaoh's hand {for} food in the cities and guard {it}.

UST:
Have them collect all that {surplus} grain during the prosperous years ahead {when there will be plenty of food}. Using your authority, {King} Pharaoh, have them stockpile {that} grain {in storehouses} in the cities and {have soldiers} guard it, so that there will be food {for the people}.

And they should gather (ULT)

Have them collect (UST)

Alternate translation: [Have them gather]

---

all the food of the good years that are coming (ULT)

all that {surplus} grain during the prosperous years ahead {when there will be plenty of food} (UST)

Alternate translation: [all that extra grain from the prosperous years that will come] or [all that extra food during the good years ahead when there will be plenty of food]

And they should store {that} grain (ULT)

have them stockpile {that} grain (UST)

Alternate translation: [Have them stockpile that grain] or [Command them to store up that grain]

---

under Pharaoh's hand (ULT)

Using your authority, {King} Pharaoh (UST)

Consider again how you translated the use of the third person to address Pharaoh respectfully in verses 10, 13, 25, 32–35. Also, for some languages it may be better to put this phrase earlier and say, "Using your authority, King Pharaoh, have them stockpile that grain in storehouses …" Alternate translation: [with your authority, King Pharaoh]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

---

for} food in the cities and guard {it} (ULT)

in storehouses} in the cities and {have soldiers} guard it, so that there will be food {for the people} (UST)

Alternate translation: [in the cities for food and have soldiers keep it safe]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the … years
- good
- {that} grain
- Pharaoh

UST

- the … years
- prosperous
- {that} grain
- {King} Pharaoh

Genesis 41:36

ULT:
And the food should be in reserve for the land for the seven years of famine that will come on the land of Egypt, so that the land will not be cut off by the famine.”

UST:
That food should stay in storage for {the people of} the country {to eat} during the famine that will last seven years in the country of Egypt, so that they will not starve to death because of the severe lack of food.”

And the food should be in reserve (ULT)

That food should stay in storage (UST)

Alternate translation: [That extra food should be kept in storage] or [That grain should stay in storage] or [They must continue to store that surplus grain]

---

for the land (ULT)

for {the people of} the country {to eat} (UST)

The phrase **the land** refers here to the people who live in the land of Egypt. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: [for the people of the land to eat] or [so that the people of the land have it to eat]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

for the seven years of famine that will come (ULT)

during the famine that will last seven years (UST)

Alternate translation: [during the seven years when food is very scarce]

---

on the land of Egypt (ULT)

in the country of Egypt (UST)

Consider whether or not it is natural in your language to repeat “the land/country” in this sentence. Alternate translation: [in Egypt]

---

so that the land will not be cut off (ULT)

so that they will not starve to death (UST)

Make sure the way you translated “the people of land/country” at the beginning of this verse fits with how you translate it here. It is helpful to read your translation aloud to make sure it is clear and natural. Alternate translation: [so that the people in the land] or [so that the people]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

so that the land will not be cut off (ULT)

so that they will not starve to death (UST)

See how you translated the idiom **cut off** in Genesis 9:11. It may be necessary to translate it differently here because of the different context. Alternate translation: [will not be destroyed by]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

by the famine (ULT)

because of the severe lack of food (UST)

Alternate translation: [the severe food scarcity]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- for the land
- the … years of
- famine
- on the land of
- Egypt
- the land
- by the famine

UST

- for {the people of} the country {to eat}
- years
- the famine
- in the country of
- Egypt
- they
- because of the severe lack of food

Genesis 41:37

ULT:
And the word was good in the eyes of Pharaoh and in the eyes of all his servants.

UST:
What Joseph proposed seemed like a good plan to Pharaoh and all his officials.

And the word was good in the eyes of Pharaoh and in the eyes of all his servants (ULT)

What Joseph proposed seemed like a good plan to Pharaoh and all his officials (UST)

See how you translated the idiom **in the eyes of** in Genesis 34:18. Alternate translation: [What Joseph said seemed like a good plan to King Pharaoh and all his servants] or [King Pharaoh and all his servants agreed that what Joseph had proposed was good]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- And … was good
- Pharaoh
- his servants

UST
- seemed like a good plan
- Pharaoh
- his officials

Genesis 41:38

ULT:
Then Pharaoh said to his servants, "Can we find a man like this who {has} the Spirit of God in him?"

UST:
So Pharaoh exclaimed to them, "{Certainly} we cannot find anyone else more qualified than this man whom God's Spirit guides!"

Then Pharaoh said to his servants (ULT)

So Pharaoh exclaimed to them (UST)

Alternate translation: [So Pharaoh said to his officials]

Can we find a man like this (ULT)

{Certainly} we cannot find anyone else more qualified than this man (UST)

Pharaoh uses a rhetorical question here to emphasize that no one is more qualified than Joseph. Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this quote using a question or a statement. Alternate translation: [It is obvious that we will never find a man as qualified as Joseph]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

who {has} the Spirit of God in him (ULT)

whom God's Spirit guides (UST)

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "who has God's Spirit in him" or "whom God's Spirit guides" or (2) "who has a divine spirit in him" or "who has a spirit of the

gods in him.” Most translations follow the first interpretation, since Joseph had just talked to Pharaoh about God (verses 16, 28, 32) and Pharaoh acknowledges God in verse 39.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Pharaoh
- his servants
- {has} the Spirit of
- God

UST

- Pharaoh
- them
- s Spirit
- God

Genesis 41:39

ULT:
Then Pharaoh said to Joseph, "Since God has shown all this to you, {there is} no one {as} discerning and wise as you.

UST:
Then he said to Joseph, "Since God has made all this known to you, no one {else} is {as} intelligent as you {are} or knows what to do {in this situation}.

Then Pharaoh said to Joseph (ULT)

Then he said to Joseph (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then he turned to Joseph and said]

Since God has shown all this to you (ULT)

Since God has made all this known to you (UST)

Alternate translation: [God has revealed to you what he is going to do, so]

{there is} no one {as} discerning and wise as you (ULT)

no one {else} is {as} intelligent as you {are} or knows what to do {in this situation} (UST)

See how you translated **discerning and wise** in verse 33. Alternate translation: [no one else is as insightful as you are and knows what to do in this situation] or [… or knows how to manage this situation wisely]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Pharaoh
- Joseph
- has shown
- God
- {as} discerning
- and wise

UST

- פַּרְעֹה (ORIG QUOTE)
- Joseph
- has made … known
- God
- {as} intelligent
- or knows what to do {in this situation}

Genesis 41:40

ULT:
You will be over my house, and all my people will kiss on your mouth. Only I {on} the throne will be greater than you."

UST:
{So} I am putting you in charge of my household {and my kingdom}, so that all the people in my country must obey whatever you command. Only I who am king will have higher authority than you."

You will be over my house (ULT)

So} I am putting you in charge of my household {and my kingdom} (UST)

The phrase **my house** refers here to Pharaoh's household and all the other people he rules as king. Alternate translation: [So I am putting you in charge of my household and my country] or [So I am giving you authority over the people in my palace and the rest of my country]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

and all my people will kiss on your mouth (ULT)

so that all the people in my country must obey whatever you command (UST)

Consider whether you have a similar idiom in your language or if you need to say this without an idiom. Alternate translation: [so that all the people in my kingdom must do whatever you say] or [so that all the people I reign over will respect and obey whatever you tell them to do]

Support Reference: Idiom

Only I {on} the throne will be greater than you (ULT)

Only I who am king will have higher authority than you (UST)

In this context, **the throne** refers to Pharaoh's position as the king. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: [Only I who sit on the throne as king will have more authority than you] or [Only I who am king will …]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- my house
- {on} the throne

UST

- my household {and my kingdom}
- I who am king

Genesis 41:41

ULT:
Then Pharaoh said to Joseph, "See, I have put you over all the land of Egypt."

UST:
Then Pharaoh said, "Listen, I hereby put you in charge of the whole country of Egypt."

Then Pharaoh said to Joseph (ULT)

Then Pharaoh said (UST)

Some languages leave **Joseph** or even this entire quote margin implied here, since Pharaoh is still talking to the same person. Alternate translation: [Pharaoh added]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

See, I have put you over (ULT)

Listen, I hereby put you in charge of (UST)

The word **See** emphasizes what Pharaoh says next. Alternate translation: [Look I now put you in charge of] or [I am now appointing you to be the supervisor over]

---

all the land of Egypt (ULT)

the whole country of Egypt (UST)

Alternate translation: [the whole land of Egypt]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Pharaoh

- Joseph
- the land of
- Egypt

UST

- Pharaoh
- יוֹסֵף (ORIG QUOTE)
- country of
- Egypt

Genesis 41:42

ULT:
Then Pharaoh removed his signet ring from his hand and put it on Joseph's hand. And he dressed him {in} garments of fine linen and put a gold chain on his neck.

UST:
Then he took off his {official} identification ring and put it on Joseph's finger {to show that he had appointed him}. He {also} gave Joseph {expensive} linen clothes to wear and put a chain {made} of gold around his neck.

Then Pharaoh removed his signet ring from his hand (ULT)

Then he took off his {official} identification ring (UST)

The signet ring was the identification ring that the king used to seal official documents. See how you translated **signet** in Genesis 38:18. Alternate translation: [Then Pharaoh took off his royal identification ring] or [Then Pharaoh took from his finger the ring that he used to seal letters with his mark]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

---

and put it on Joseph's hand (ULT)

and put it on Joseph's finger {to show that he had appointed him} (UST)

The signet ring showed that Joseph represented Pharaoh and had his complete authority.

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

And he dressed him {in} garments of fine linen (ULT)

He {also} gave Joseph {expensive} linen clothes to wear (UST)

The Hebrew word for **fine linen** refers to a special kind of white cloth that was woven out of flax and had a fine texture. Clothes made from linen were expensive and were worn by the

king and high officials. If linen is not known in your language area, you could be more general and refer to expensive, high-quality clothes. Alternate translation: [He also had Joseph put on fine linen robes] or [He also gave Joseph high-quality robes to wear]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

---

and put a gold chain on his neck (ULT)

and put a chain {made} of gold around his neck (UST)

Alternate translation: [and put a collar made of gold around his neck] or [and put around his neck a necklace made of gold]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Pharaoh
- Joseph
- gold

UST

- פַּרְעֹה (ORIG QUOTE)
- Joseph
- {made} of gold

Genesis 41:43

ULT:
Then he had him ride in the second chariot that {belonged} to him, and they shouted before him, "Bow down!" So he put him over all the land of Egypt.

UST:
Then Pharaoh had Joseph ride {around} in the chariot that showed he was the second highest ruler in the country. {As he rode,} messengers {walked} {in the road} ahead of him calling out {to everyone}, "Make way!" In that way, Pharaoh {officially} appointed Joseph to be in charge of the whole country of Egypt.

in the second chariot that {belonged} to him (ULT)

in the chariot that showed he was the second highest ruler in the country (UST)

A chariot is a cart with two or four wheels that was pulled by one or more horses. It was used as transportation and was especially used in battles. Translate this in a way that fits with this description. It may be helpful to include a picture of a chariot in your translation. Alternate translation: [in a royal horse-drawn cart as his second-in-command] or [in the horse-drawn cart that showed he was the second highest ruler in the country]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

---

and they shouted before him (ULT)

As he rode,} messengers {walked} {in the road} ahead of him calling out {to everyone} (UST)

Make sure the way you translate **shouted** does not sound angry. Rather they were calling out loudly enough for people to hear them. Alternate translation: [As he rode, heralds walked in the streets ahead of him calling out to everyone]

Bow down (ULT)

Make way (UST)

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could be: (1) a transliteration of an Egyptian word that means “Bow down in reverence/respect!” or “Make way for the king’s appointed one!” or “Welcome/Honor your new leader!” which is what people would be told to do to honor an important person; or (2) a combination of Hebrew words that means “This is the father of the king!”, which is similar to what Joseph says in Genesis 45:8.

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

So he put him over (ULT)

In that way, Pharaoh {officially} appointed Joseph to be in charge of (UST)

See how you translated a similar sentence in verse 41. Alternate translation: [So Pharaoh put Joseph in charge of] or [In that way, Pharaoh officially installed Joseph to be the manager over]

---

all the land of Egypt (ULT)

the whole country of Egypt (UST)

Alternate translation: [the whole land of Egypt]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then he had … ride
- in the … chariot
- and they shouted
- Bow down
- the land of
- Egypt

UST

- Then Pharaoh had … ride {around}
- in the chariot
- {As he rode,} messengers … calling out {to everyone}
- Make way
- country of
- Egypt

Genesis 41:44

ULT:
Then Pharaoh said to Joseph, "I {am} Pharaoh, and without you a person will not lift his hand or his foot in all the land of Egypt!"

UST:
Pharaoh {also} told Joseph, "I, Pharaoh, {hereby command} that throughout the whole country of Egypt, everyone must only do what you tell them to do!"

I {am} Pharaoh (ULT)

I, Pharaoh, {hereby command} that (UST)

Alternate translation: [I, Pharaoh, hereby decree that]

---

and without you a person will not lift his hand or his foot in all the land of Egypt (ULT)

throughout the whole country of Egypt, everyone must only do what you tell them to do (UST)

The phrase "will not lift his hand or foot" is exaggeration that is used to emphasize Joseph's authority. Consider whether or not it is clear and natural to do that here in your language. Alternate translation: [no one throughout the entire country of Egypt may do anything unless you tell them to do it!] or [throughout the entire country of Egypt, everyone must only do what you tell them to do!]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Pharaoh
- Joseph
- Pharaoh
- the land of
- Egypt

UST

- Pharaoh
- Joseph
- Pharaoh, {hereby command} that
- country of
- Egypt

Genesis 41:45

ULT:
Then Pharaoh called Joseph's name Zaphenath-Paneah, and he gave to him Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera the priest of On, as a wife. Then Joseph went out over the land of Egypt.

UST:
Then Pharaoh gave Joseph the {Egyptian} name Zaphenath-Paneah, {which means "the one who explains/reveals secrets,"} and he gave him {a woman named} Asenath to be {his} wife. {She was} the daughter of Potiphera, {who was} a priest {at the temple} in {the city of} On. Then Joseph {started his duties and} traveled throughout the country of Egypt.

Then Pharaoh called Joseph's name (ULT)

Then Pharaoh gave Joseph the {Egyptian} name (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Pharaoh called Joseph by the Egyptian name]

---

and he gave to him Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera the priest of On, as a wife (ULT)

and he gave him {a woman named} Asenath to be {his} wife. {She was} the daughter of Potiphera, {who was} a priest {at the temple} in {the city of} On (UST)

Potiphera was a pagan priest, and he led people in worshiping the Egyptians' gods, not Yahweh. See how you translated **priest** in Genesis 14:18. Alternate translation: [and he gave him a woman named Asenath to be his wife. She was the daughter of Potiphera, who was a priest at the temple at the city of On]

Then Joseph went out over the land of Egypt (ULT)

Then Joseph {started his duties and} traveled throughout the country of Egypt (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Joseph started going around all over the land of Egypt] or [Then Joseph started his work and traveled throughout the land of Egypt]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then … called
- Pharaoh
- Joseph
- the priest of
- Joseph
- the land of
- Egypt

UST

- Then … gave
- Pharaoh
- Joseph
- who was} a priest {at … }
- Joseph
- the country of
- Egypt

Genesis 41:46

ULT:
Now Joseph {was} a son of thirty years when he stood before Pharaoh king of Egypt. And Joseph went out from the presence of Pharaoh and passed through all the land of Egypt.

UST:
Joseph {was} thirty years old when he {started} serving Pharaoh, the king over Egypt. {After Pharaoh appointed him,} Joseph left him and traveled throughout the whole country of Egypt {doing his work}.

Now Joseph {was} a son of thirty years (ULT)

Joseph {was} thirty years old (UST)

Consider what is the best way to begin this new paragraph in your language.

---

when he stood before (ULT)

when he {started} serving (UST)

This phrase refers to when Joseph stood before Pharaoh and was commissioned to serve as the second-highest ruler in Egypt. Alternate translation: [when he had that audience with]

---

and passed through all the land of Egypt (ULT)

and traveled throughout the whole country of Egypt {doing his work} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and traveled throughout the entire country of Egypt doing his work] or [and began traveling from place to place throughout …]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Now Joseph
- years
- Pharaoh
- king of
- Egypt
- Joseph
- Pharaoh
- the land of
- Egypt

UST

- Joseph
- {was} thirty years old
- Pharaoh
- the king over
- Egypt
- Joseph
- him
- country of
- Egypt {doing his work}

Genesis 41:47

ULT:
And in the seven years of abundance, the land produced {grain} by the handfuls.

UST:
During the seven years when food was plentiful, the land produced huge amounts of grain.

in the seven years of abundance (ULT)

During the seven years when food was plentiful (UST)

Compare how you translated **seven years of abundance** in verse 34. Alternate translation: [During the seven years when food was abundant] or [For seven years the harvests were plentiful and]

And … the land produced {grain} by the handfuls (ULT)

the land produced huge amounts of grain (UST)

The idiom **by the handfuls** refers here to large amounts of grain. Consider whether your language has a similar idiom you could use here. Alternate translation: [the land produced large amounts of grain] or [the people harvested large amounts of grain from the land]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the land
- the … years of

UST
- the land
- years

Genesis 41:48

ULT:
So he gathered all the food of the seven years that were in the land of Egypt, and he put the food in the cities. The food of the fields that surrounded {each} city he put inside it.

UST:
So Joseph {had his helpers} collect all the {surplus} grain {that people harvested} during {those} seven years in the country of Egypt, and he {had them} stockpile {that} grain in the cities. In each city he {had them} store the grain {that people harvested} from the surrounding fields.

So he gathered (ULT)

So Joseph {had his helpers} collect (UST)

When the Bible says that a leader such as Joseph did something, it often means that he had it done by people under his authority. Decide whether you want to include this information in your translation or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [So Joseph told the supervisors under him to collect] or [So Joseph had his helpers gather]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

all the food of the seven years that were in the land of Egypt (ULT)

all the {surplus} grain {that people harvested} during {those} seven years in the country of Egypt (UST)

See how you translated **all the food** in verse 35. Alternate translation: [all the extra food that was produced in the land of Egypt during those seven years] or [all the extra grain that people produced during those seven years in the land of Egypt]

---

and he put the food in the cities (ULT)

and he {had them} stockpile {that} grain in the cities (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he had them store that grain in the cities]

The food of the fields that surrounded {each} city he put inside it (ULT)

In each city he {had them} store the grain {that people harvested} from the surrounding fields (UST)

Consider what phrase order is best for this sentence in your language. Alternate translation: [The food that people had harvested from the fields, he had his supervisors stockpile in the nearby cities] or [In each city he had them store the food that people had harvested from the nearby fields]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the … years
- in the land of
- Egypt

UST

- during {those} seven years
- in the country of
- Egypt

Genesis 41:49

ULT:
So Joseph stored up grain like the sand of the sea, very much, until he stopped measuring {it} because it was without number.

UST:
In that way, Joseph stockpiled so much grain that it was as {plentiful as} the {grains of} sand on the seashore. {In fact,} it was so plentiful that he stopped keeping records {of it} because it was too much to keep track of.

So Joseph stored up (ULT)

In that way, Joseph stockpiled (UST)

See how you translated "store/stockpile" in verse 35. Alternate translation: [Joseph had his helpers store up]

---

grain like the sand of the sea (ULT)

so much grain that it was as {plentiful as} the {grains of} sand on the seashore (UST)

See how you translated "as the sand of the sea" in Genesis 32:12 and a similar phrase in Genesis 22:17. Alternate translation: [so much grain that it looked as plentiful as grains of sand beside the sea] or [… as plentiful as the grains of sand on the beach]

---

very much, until (ULT)

{In fact,} it was so plentiful that (UST)

Alternate translation: [In fact, there was so much that] or [In fact, it was so plentiful that after a while]

---

he stopped measuring {it} (ULT)

he stopped keeping records {of it} (UST)

It was probably Joseph's helpers who measured the grain and kept records of it. See how you handled this at the beginning of this verse. Alternate translation: [he had them stop keeping track of it] or [they had to stop writing down how much there was]

---

because it was without number (ULT)

because it was too much to keep track of (UST)

Alternate translation: [because there was so much that they could no longer record it]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- grain

UST

- Joseph
- grain

Genesis 41:50

ULT:
And before the years of the famine came, two sons were born to Joseph, whom Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera, the priest of On, bore for him.

UST:
Before the {seven} famine years started, Joseph had two sons with {his wife} Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera, {who was} a priest in {the city of} On.

before the years of the famine came (ULT)

Before the {seven} famine years started (UST)

Consider what is the best way to change topics and begin this new paragraph in your language.
Alternate translation: [Now it so happened that before the seven years of famine came]

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

And … two sons were born to Joseph, whom Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera, the priest of On, bore for him (ULT)

Joseph had two sons with {his wife} Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera, {who was} a priest in {the city of} On (UST)

See how you translated **Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera, the priest of On** in verse 45.
Alternate translation: [Joseph had two sons with his wife Asenath, a daughter of Potiphera, who was a priest in the city of On] or [Joseph and his wife Asenath had two sons. Remember that Asenath was a daughter of Potiphera, a priest in the city of On]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- And … to Joseph
- were born
- the years of
- bore
- the priest of

UST

- Joseph
- had
- the {seven} … years
- with {his wife} Asenath
- {who was} a priest in

Genesis 41:51

ULT:
And Joseph called the name of the firstborn {son} Manasseh, because {he said}, "God has made me forget all my toil and all of my father's house."

UST:
Joseph named {his} oldest {son} Manasseh, {which means "forget,"} {and he explained,} "{It is} because God has helped me to forget {about} all my troubles and about {how much I have missed} my father and the rest of my family {back home}."

the firstborn {son} (ULT)

his} oldest {son} (UST)

Alternate translation: [his first son]

Manasseh (ULT)

Manasseh, {which means "forget … } (UST)

If you include the meaning of the name **Manasseh** in your translation or in a footnote, it should fit with the way you translate **forget** in the following clause.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

because {he said}, "God has made me forget (ULT)

and he explained,} "{It is} because God has helped me to forget {about} (UST)

By **made me forget**, the author does not mean that Joseph had lost his memory of these things, but rather, that God had blessed him so much that it helped him stop thinking about those things. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [because he said, "God has caused me to stop thinking about]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

all my toil and (ULT)

all my troubles and about (UST)

Alternate translation: [all my hardships and about]

---

all of my father's house (ULT)

how much I have missed} my father and the rest of my family {back home} (UST)

Alternate translation: [how much I have missed all of my family back home]

And Joseph called the name of (ULT)

Joseph named (UST)

See how you translated the idiom **called the name of** in Gen 21:3.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And … called
- Joseph
- the firstborn {son}
- Manasseh
- God
- my toil
- s house

UST

- Joseph named
- Joseph named
- his} oldest {son}
- Manasseh, {which means "forget … }

- God
- my troubles
- how much I have missed} my father and the rest of my family {back home}

Genesis 41:52

ULT:
And the name of the second {son} he called Ephraim, because {he said}, "God has made me fruitful in the land of my affliction."

UST:
And he named {his} second son Ephraim, {which means "twice prosperous,"} {and he explained,} "{It is} because God has helped me to prosper in the country where I have suffered {so much}."

And the name of the second {son} he called (ULT)

And he named {his} second son (UST)

Alternate translation: [And Joseph named his second son]

Ephraim (ULT)

Ephraim, {which means "twice prosperous … } (UST)

If you include the meaning of Ephraim's name in your translation or in a footnote, it should fit with the way you translate **fruitful** in the following clause.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

because {he said}, "God has made me fruitful (ULT)

{and he explained,} "{It is} because God has helped me to prosper (UST)

Consider again how you translated the idiom **fruitful** in the book of Genesis. See 17:6; 26:22; 41:52.

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- he called
- Ephraim
- has made me fruitful
- God
- in the land of
- my affliction

UST

- And he named {his} second son
- Ephraim, {which means “twice prosperous … }
- has helped me to prosper
- God
- in the country
- where I have suffered {so much}

Genesis 41:53

ULT:
Then the seven years of abundance that was in the land of Egypt ended,

UST:
Finally the seven years were over when food was plentiful in the country of Egypt.

Then the seven years of abundance that was … ended (ULT)

Finally the seven years were over when food was plentiful (UST)

See how you translated **the seven years of abundance** in verses 34 and 47, and a similar phrase in verse 29. Alternate translation: [Finally the seven years when food was abundant]

Then … ended (ULT)

Finally … were over (UST)

For some languages it is better to put this phrase earlier in the sentence and say, “Finally the seven years were over when food was plentiful in the country of Egypt. Alternate translation: [came to an end]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the … years of
- in the land of
- Egypt

UST
- the … years
- in the country of
- Egypt

Genesis 41:54

ULT:
and the seven years of famine started to come, just as Joseph had said. And there was famine in all the lands, but in all the land of Egypt there was bread.

UST:
Then the seven years began when there was a severe lack of food, which is exactly what Joseph had predicted {would happen}. The famine spread to every country, but throughout the whole country of Egypt there was {still} food {in the storehouses}.

and the seven years of famine started to come (ULT)

Then the seven years began when there was a severe lack of food (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then the seven years of famine began]

---

just as Joseph had said (ULT)

which is exactly what Joseph had predicted {would happen} (UST)

Alternate translation: [just as Joseph had predicted would happen] or [which is exactly what Joseph had said would happen]

And there was famine in all the lands (ULT)

The famine spread to every country (UST)

Alternate translation: [The severe food shortage began to affect all countries]

---

but in all the land of Egypt (ULT)

but throughout the whole country of Egypt (UST)

Alternate translation: [but everywhere in the land of Egypt] or [but throughout the entire land of Egypt]

---

there was bread (ULT)

there was {still} food {in the storehouses} (UST)

In this context, **bread** refers to all food in general. Alternate translation: [there was still plenty of food stored up]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the … years of
- famine
- Joseph
- famine
- the lands
- the land of
- Egypt
- bread

UST

- the … years
- when there was a severe lack of food
- Joseph
- The famine
- country
- the … country of
- Egypt
- food {in the storehouses}

Genesis 41:55

ULT:
Then all the land of Egypt became famished, and the people cried to Pharaoh for the bread. So Pharaoh said to all the Egyptians, "Go to Joseph. Whatever he says to you, do {it}."

UST:
When everyone in Egypt became very hungry {because of the famine}, they begged {King} Pharaoh for food. So he commanded them, "Go ask Joseph {for help}, {and} do whatever he commands you {to do}."

Then all the land of Egypt became famished (ULT)

When everyone in Egypt became very hungry {because of the famine} (UST)

The phrase **all the land** refers here to the people living in Egypt. Consider whether or not you need to make that explicit in your language. Alternate translation: [Then all the people in the land of Egypt began to suffer from the famine, so]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

and the people cried to Pharaoh for the bread (ULT)

they begged {King} Pharaoh for food (UST)

Alternate translation: [they begged Pharaoh for food] or [they pleaded with Pharaoh to give them food]

So Pharaoh said to all the Egyptians (ULT)

So he commanded them (UST)

Alternate translation: [So King Pharaoh told them] or [So he told them]

Go to Joseph (ULT)

Go ask Joseph {for help} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Go ask Joseph for food] or [You must go to Joseph and ask him for help]

Whatever he says to you, do {it} (ULT)

and} do whatever he commands you {to do} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and do whatever he tells you to do]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the land of
- Egypt
- and … cried
- Pharaoh
- for the bread
- Pharaoh
- the Egyptians
- Joseph

UST

- אֶרֶץ (ORIG QUOTE)
- Egypt
- they begged
- {King} Pharaoh
- for food
- פַּרְעֹה (ORIG QUOTE)
- them
- Go ask Joseph {for help}

Genesis 41:56

ULT:
And the famine was over all the face of the land, so Joseph opened all {the buildings} that {had grain} in them and sold {grain} to the Egyptians. And the famine was severe in the land of Egypt.

UST:
Since the severe food shortage was affecting the whole country, Joseph {had his helpers} open up all the storehouses {full of grain}, and he started selling {the grain} to the people of Egypt. Then the famine became worse {and worse} throughout the country of Egypt.

And the famine was over all the face of the land, so … opened (ULT)

Since the severe food shortage was affecting the whole country … {had his helpers} open up (UST)

Alternate translation: [Since the famine had spread throughout the whole country] or [Since the severe food shortage was affecting the entire country]

---

so Joseph opened (ULT)

Joseph {had his helpers} open up (UST)

See how you translated verses 48 and 49, where Joseph is said to do something that he had his helpers do. Alternate translation: [Joseph ordered the supervisors under him to open up]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

all {the buildings} that {had grain} in them (ULT)

all the storehouses {full of grain} (UST)

Alternate translation: [all the storage barns where grain was being stored]

---

and sold {grain} to the Egyptians (ULT)

and he started selling {the grain} to the people of Egypt (UST)

Alternate translation: [and they started selling the grain to the people of Egypt]

And the famine was severe (ULT)

Then the famine became worse {and worse} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then the famine kept getting more and more severe]

---

in the land of Egypt (ULT)

throughout the country of Egypt (UST)

Alternate translation: [throughout the land of Egypt] or [throughout their country]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And the famine
- the land
- Joseph
- to the Egyptians
- the famine
- in the land of
- Egypt

UST

- Since the severe food shortage
- the whole country
- Joseph
- to the people of Egypt
- the famine
- throughout the country of

- Egypt

Genesis 41:57

ULT:
Then all the earth came to Egypt to Joseph to buy {grain}, because the famine was severe in all the earth.

UST:
In fact, {people from} all over the world started coming to Egypt to buy {grain} from Joseph, because the food shortage was {so} terrible throughout the whole world.

Then all the earth (ULT)

In fact, {people from} all over the world (UST)

This phrase refers to the people living on the earth. Consider whether or not you need to make that explicit in your language. See how you translated a similar metonymy ("all the land") in verse 55. Alternate translation: [In fact, people from all over the earth]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

came to Egypt to Joseph to buy {grain} (ULT)

started coming to Egypt to buy {grain} from Joseph (UST)

Alternate translation: [started traveling to Egypt to buy food from Joseph]

---

because the famine was severe in all the earth (ULT)

because the food shortage was {so} terrible throughout the whole world (UST)

For some languages it is clearer or more natural to put this clause near the beginning of verse 57 and say, "In fact, the famine was/became so severe/terrible in/throughout the entire/whole world that people started coming/traveling to Egypt from all over the world to buy grain from Joseph." See how you translated "severe/terrible" in verse 56. Alternate translation: [because the food shortage was so severe throughout the entire world]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the earth
- to Egypt
- Joseph
- the famine
- the earth

UST

- the world
- to Egypt
- to buy {grain} from Joseph
- the food shortage
- the … world

Genesis 42

Genesis 42:1

ULT:
Then Jacob saw that there was grain in Egypt, so Jacob said to his sons, "Why are you looking at each other?"

UST:
Meanwhile {back in the region of Canaan}, {when} Jacob heard that there was grain {for sale} in {the country of} Egypt, he told his sons, "Do not just {stand around} doing nothing!

Then Jacob saw that there was grain in Egypt (ULT)

Meanwhile {back in the region of Canaan}, {when} Jacob heard that there was grain {for sale} in {the country of} Egypt (UST)

This verse begins a new episode which overlaps in time with some of what was happening in chapter 41. Consider what is the best way to begin this episode in your language. Alternate translation: [Meanwhile in the land of Canaan, when Jacob learned that there was grain for sale in the country of Egypt] or [… when Jacob found out that he could buy grain in Egypt]

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

---

so Jacob said to his sons (ULT)

he told his sons (UST)

Alternate translation: [he asked his sons]

Why are you looking at each other (ULT)

Do not just {stand around} doing nothing (UST)

Jacob uses this rhetorical question to get his sons to take action and do what he says next. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [What are you waiting for?] or [Do not just sit here staring at each other!] or [Do not just stand there doing nothing!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- grain
- in Egypt
- Jacob

UST

- Jacob
- grain {for sale}
- in {the country of} Egypt
- יַעֲקֹב (ORIG QUOTE)

Genesis 42:2

ULT:
And he said, "Behold, I have heard that there is grain in Egypt. Go down there and buy {some} for us from there so that we will live and not die."

UST:
Listen {to this}! I heard that there is grain {for sale} in {the country of} Egypt. {So} go down there and buy {some} for us {and our families} {to eat}, so that we can stay alive and not starve to death."

And he said (ULT)

"וַיֹּאמֶר" (ORIG QUOTE) (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to omit the quote margin here, because the same person (Jacob) is still talking to the same people (his sons). Alternate translation: [Then he added]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Behold (ULT)

Listen {to this} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Look]

I have heard (ULT)

I heard (UST)

Alternate translation: [I learned] or [Someone told me]

---

that there is grain in Egypt (ULT)

that there is grain {for sale} in {the country of} Egypt (UST)

Alternate translation: [that there is much grain for sale in the country of Egypt] or [that the country of Egypt has a lot of grain that people can buy]

Go down there (ULT)

{So} go down there (UST)

Make sure that the way you translate Jacob's command to his sons does not sound rude or harsh. Alternate translation: [So I want you to go there] or [So please go down there]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

and buy {some} for us from there (ULT)

and buy {some} for us {and our families} {to eat} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and buy some grain for us all]

---

so that we will live (ULT)

so that we can stay alive (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that we will survive] or [so that we will stay alive]

---

and not die (ULT)

and not starve to death (UST)

Alternate translation: [and not die from hunger]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- grain
- in Egypt

UST

- grain {for sale}
- in {the country of} Egypt

Genesis 42:3

ULT:
Then ten of Joseph's brothers went down to buy grain from Egypt.

UST:
So Joseph's ten {older} brothers {left home and} traveled down to Egypt to buy {some} grain {there}.

Then ten of Joseph's brothers went down (ULT)

So Joseph's ten {older} brothers {left home and} traveled down (UST)

These ten brothers were older than Joseph and had different mothers than he did. Also, the verb **went down** refers to the fact that Egypt was lower in elevation than the land of Canaan. It is also located southwest of Canaan. See how you translated "go down" in verse 2 and **went down** in Genesis 12:10.

Support Reference: Kinship

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Joseph
- grain
- from Egypt

UST
- Joseph
- {some} grain
- to Egypt

Genesis 42:4

ULT:
But Jacob did not send Benjamin, the brother of Joseph, with his brothers, because he said, "So that harm does not meet him!"

UST:
But Jacob did not allow Joseph's {younger} brother Benjamin to go {to Egypt} with {the rest of} his brothers, because Jacob was afraid that something bad might happen to him.

But Jacob did not send Benjamin, the brother of Joseph (ULT)

But Jacob did not allow Joseph's {younger} brother Benjamin to go {to Egypt} (UST)

Benjamin was younger than Joseph and had the same mother (Rachel) and father.

Support Reference: Kinship

---

with his brothers (ULT)

with {the rest of} his brothers (UST)

Alternate translation: [with his other brothers]

---

because he said, "So that harm does not meet him (ULT)

because Jacob was afraid that something bad might happen to him (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, "But Jacob was concerned that harm might come to Joseph's younger brother Benjamin, so he did not send him with the rest of his brothers to Egypt." Alternate translation: [because Jacob thought that he might be harmed] or [because he was concerned that something terrible might happen to him]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Benjamin
- Joseph
- Jacob

UST

- Benjamin
- Joseph
- Jacob

Genesis 42:5

ULT:
And the sons of Israel came among {those} who came to buy {grain}, because the famine was in the land of Canaan.

UST:
Israel's sons arrived {in Egypt} along with {many} other people who were coming {there} to buy {food}, because the severe food shortage was {also} {affecting everyone} in the region of Canaan.

And the sons of Israel came (ULT)

Israel's sons arrived {in Egypt} (UST)

If it is not clear that **Israel** (verse 5) and "Jacob" (verse 4) refer to the same person, you could include the name Jacob here in your translation or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [The sons of Israel that is, Jacob] or [So the sons of Jacob, who was also called Israel]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

And … came (ULT)

arrived {in Egypt} (UST)

Alternate translation: [came to Egypt]

Support Reference: Go and Come

---

among {those} who came (ULT)

along with {many} other people who were coming {there} (UST)

Alternate translation: [along with many other people who were going there] or [along with many other travelers]

---

because the famine (ULT)

because the severe food shortage (UST)

See how you translated **because the famine** in Genesis 41:57. Alternate translation: [because the extreme food shortage] or [because the extreme lack of food]

---

was in the land of Canaan (ULT)

was {also} {affecting everyone} in the region of Canaan (UST)

Alternate translation: [was also affecting everyone in the land of Canaan] or [was also affecting the entire land of Canaan]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Israel
- the famine
- in the land of
- Canaan

UST

- Israel
- the severe food shortage
- in the region of
- Canaan

Genesis 42:6

ULT:
Now Joseph {was} the governor over the land. {It was} he who was selling {grain} to all the people of the land. So the brothers of Joseph came and bowed down to him {with} {their} noses to the ground.

UST:
{Since} Joseph {was} the administrator over the country {of Egypt}, he {was} the one selling {grain} to people {who came to him} from all over the country. So Joseph's brothers {also} went before him {like everyone else} and bowed down {with} {their} faces to the ground {to show him respect}.

Now Joseph {was} the governor over the land (ULT)

Since} Joseph {was} the administrator over the country {of Egypt} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Since Joseph was the administrator over the land of Egypt]

Support Reference: Background Information

---

the land (ULT)

the country {of Egypt} (UST)

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "the country of Egypt," which is what it means earlier in verse 6; or (2) "the earth/world."

So the brothers of Joseph came (ULT)

So Joseph's brothers {also} went (UST)

So/Then Joseph's brothers also came/went

---

and bowed down to him {with} {their} noses to the ground (ULT)

before him {like everyone else} and bowed down {with} {their} faces to the ground {to show him respect} (UST)

See how you translated “bow down” in Genesis 37:7, 9–10. Alternate translation: [before him like everyone else and bowed down with their foreheads toward the ground to show him respect] or [to him and prostrated themselves before him to show respect]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Now Joseph
- {was} the governor
- the land
- the land
- Joseph
- and bowed down
- to the ground

UST

- {Since} Joseph
- {was} the administrator
- the country {of Egypt}
- the country
- Joseph
- and bowed down … to show him respect
- to the ground

Genesis 42:7

ULT:
And Joseph saw his brothers and recognized them, but he acted like a stranger to them, and he spoke with them harshly and said to them, "Where did you come from?" And they said, "From the land of Canaan to buy food."

UST:
When Joseph saw his brothers, he recognized them, but he pretended that he did not {know} {them}. In fact, he spoke to them sternly and asked them, "What country are you from?" They answered {him}, "{Sir,} {we are} from the region of Canaan to buy {some} grain."

And Joseph saw his brothers and recognized them (ULT)

When Joseph saw his brothers, he recognized them (UST)

Alternate translation: [Joseph immediately recognized his brothers]

---

but he acted like a stranger to them (ULT)

but he pretended that he did not {know} {them} (UST)

For some languages it is better to divide the first sentence in this verse into shorter sentences.
Alternate translation: [but he treated them like strangers] or [But he pretended that he did not know them]

---

and he spoke with them harshly (ULT)

In fact, he spoke to them sternly (UST)

Alternate translation: [and spoke to them in a harsh way] or [In fact, he spoke to them roughly]

---

and said to them (ULT)

and asked them (UST)

Alternate translation: [and questioned them] or [and demanded]

Where did you come from (ULT)

What country are you from (UST)

Alternate translation: [Where are you from?]

From the land of Canaan to buy food (ULT)

{Sir,} {we are} from the region of Canaan to buy {some} grain (UST)

For some languages it is necessary to begin with a respectful title or form of address when someone talks to a person of high status like Joseph. See how Joseph's brothers address him in verse 10. Alternate translation: [Sir, we came from the land of Canaan to buy some grain] or [Sir, we are from the land of Canaan and we came to buy some grain]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- From the land of
- Canaan

UST

- Joseph
- {Sir,} {we are} from the region of
- Canaan

Genesis 42:8

ULT:
And Joseph recognized his brothers, but they did not recognize him.

UST:
Although Joseph recognized his brothers, they did not realize who he was.

And Joseph recognized his brothers, but they did not recognize him (ULT)

Although Joseph recognized his brothers, they did not realize who he was (UST)

Alternate translation: [Although Joseph recognized his brothers, they did not know who he was]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Joseph

UST
- Joseph

Genesis 42:9

ULT:
Then Joseph remembered the dreams that he had dreamed about them, and he said to them, "You {are} spies! You have come to see the nakedness of the land!"

UST:
Then Joseph remembered what he had dreamed about his brothers {long ago}, so he accused them, "You are secretly gathering information {about our country}! You came {here} to find out where {our} country is weak!"

about them (ULT)

about his brothers {long ago} (UST)

Alternate translation: [about them long ago]

---

and he said to them (ULT)

so he accused them (UST)

Alternate translation: [so he told them]

You {are} spies (ULT)

You are secretly gathering information {about our country} (UST)

Alternate translation: [You are spying on our country!]

You have come (ULT)

You came {here} (UST)

Alternate translation: [The reason you came here is]

---

to see the nakedness of the land (ULT)

to find out where {our} country is weak (UST)

Alternate translation: [to find out where our country is vulnerable!]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- the dreams
- he had dreamed
- the land

UST

- Joseph
- what he had dreamed
- what he had dreamed
- where {our} country is weak

Genesis 42:10

ULT:
But they said to him, "No, my lord, but your servants have come to buy food.

UST:
But his brothers replied to him, "Sir, we are not {spies}. Rather, {we are} humble men {who} have come {here} {only} to buy {some} grain.

No, my lord (ULT)

Sir, we are not {spies} (UST)

Make sure your translation of this phrase sounds polite. In some cultures it is rude to say **No** too directly. See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 23:11. Alternate translation: [No, sir]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

but your servants have come (ULT)

Rather, {we are} humble men {who} have come {here} (UST)

The brothers referred to themselves as **your servants** to show respect to Joseph and to acknowledge his high position. Translate this phrase in a polite way that shows respect toward Joseph. Alternate translation: [but rather we come before you humbly] or [Rather, we are just humble men who have come here]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

---

to buy food (ULT)

{only} to buy {some} grain (UST)

Alternate translation: [only to buy some food]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- my lord
- but your servants

UST

- Sir
- Rather, {we are} humble men {who} have come {here}

Genesis 42:11

ULT:
All of us {are} sons of one man. We {are} honest. Your servants are not spies.”

UST:
We {are} all brothers who have the same father. We {are} humble, trustworthy men, not spies.”

sons of one man (ULT)

brothers who have the same father (UST)

Alternate translation: [the sons of the same man]

We {are} honest. Your servants are not spies (ULT)

We {are} humble, trustworthy men, not spies (UST)

Alternate translation: [We are trustworthy people who highly respect you. We are not spies] or [We are humble, honest people, not spies]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Your servants

UST
- humble

Genesis 42:12

ULT:
But he said to them, "No, indeed you have come to see the nakedness of the land!"

UST:
But Joseph accused them, "{That is} not {true}! You have definitely come {here} to find out where {our} country is weak!"

But he said to them (ULT)

But Joseph accused them (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Joseph replied] or [But he accused them]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

No, indeed you have come (ULT)

That is} not {true}! You have definitely come {here} (UST)

Different languages use "yes" and "no" in different ways, depending on the context. Do what is accurate and natural in this context in your language. Also see how you translated **No** in Genesis 18:15.

---

to see the nakedness of the land (ULT)

to find out where {our} country is weak (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 9. Alternate translation: [to find out where our country is vulnerable!]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the land

UST

- where {our} country is weak

Genesis 42:13

ULT:
But they said, "Your servants {are} twelve brothers. We {are} sons of one man in the land of Canaan. And behold, the youngest {is} with our father today, and the one is not {alive}."

UST:
But they replied {to him}, "Sir, {there were} twelve of us brothers. We {are} sons of the same father {who lives} in the region of Canaan. {Our} youngest {brother} {is} with our father right now, but {our other} brother has died."

But they said (ULT)

But they replied {to him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then they responded]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Your servants {are} twelve brothers (ULT)

Sir, {there were} twelve of us brothers (UST)

Alternate translation: [Sir, there are twelve of us brothers]

We {are} sons of one man (ULT)

We {are} sons of the same father (UST)

Alternate translation: [We are all sons of the same man] or [We all have the same father]

---

in the land of Canaan (ULT)

{who lives} in the region of Canaan (UST)

Alternate translation: [who lives in the land of Canaan] or [and we live in the land of Canaan]

And behold, the youngest (ULT)

Our} youngest {brother} (UST)

The word **behold** calls attention to what the brothers say next. Some translations leave it implied. Alternate translation: [In fact, our youngest brother]

{is} with our father today (ULT)

{is} with our father right now (UST)

Alternate translation: [is presently back at home with our father] or [is there with our father right now]

---

and the one (ULT)

but {our other} brother (UST)

Alternate translation: [but the other one]

---

is not {alive} (ULT)

has died (UST)

In this context, **is not** is an idiom that means “has died.” Consider whether or not your language has a similar idiom that would fit well here. Alternate translation: [is no more] or [is no longer with us]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Your servants
- in the land of
- Canaan
- today

UST

- Sir
- {who lives} in the region of
- Canaan
- right now

Genesis 42:14

ULT:
Then Joseph said to them, “It {is} just as I told you, saying, ‘You {are} spies!’

UST:
But Joseph accused them, “What I told you is true! You are spying {on our country}!

Then Joseph said to them (ULT)

But Joseph accused them (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Joseph accused them] or [Then Joseph responded]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

It {is} just as I told you, saying, ‘You {are} spies (ULT)

What I told you is true! You are spying {on our country} (UST)

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to translate the embedded quote **You are spies** as a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [What I told you is right You are spying on our country!] or [I was right when I said that you are secretly gathering information about our country!]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Joseph

UST
- Joseph

Genesis 42:15

ULT:
By this you will be tested: {By} the life of Pharaoh, you will not leave from this {place} unless your youngest brother comes here.

UST:
{So now,} this is how I will verify whether {or not} you {told me the truth}: As certain as {King} Pharaoh lives, {I swear that} you will {definitely} never leave Egypt until your youngest brother is here.

By this (ULT)

{So now,} this is how (UST)

Alternate translation: [In this way]

---

you will be tested (ULT)

I will verify whether {or not} you {told me the truth} (UST)

Alternate translation: [I will test whether or not you told me the truth:] or [I am going to test you to find out if your claims are true:]

{By} the life of Pharaoh (ULT)

As certain as {King} Pharaoh lives, {I swear that} (UST)

Joseph uses King Pharaoh's name here to make an oath that emphasizes the certainty of what he says next. Make sure that the way he refers to Pharaoh sounds respectful in your translation. See how you translated other vows in Genesis 14:22 and 21:23–24. Alternate translation: [As certain as King Pharaoh lives, I vow that]

---

you will not leave (ULT)

you will {definitely} never leave (UST)

Alternate translation: [you will definitely not leave] or [I will not let you leave]

---

from this {place} (ULT)

Egypt (UST)

Alternate translation: [from here]

---

unless your youngest brother comes here (ULT)

until your youngest brother is here (UST)

For some languages it may be better to change the wording of this sentence and say, “By the life of Pharaoh, the only way you will ever leave Egypt is if your youngest brother comes here.” or “By the life of Pharaoh, your youngest brother must come here, or else you will definitely not/never leave Egypt!” Alternate translation: [until your youngest brother comes here] or [until I see that your youngest brother is here]

Support Reference: Connect — Exception Clauses

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Pharaoh

UST
- As certain as {King} Pharaoh lives, {I swear that}

Genesis 42:16

ULT:
Send one of you, and let him bring your brother, and you will be bound. Then your words will be tested {as to whether} the truth {is} in you. And if not, {by} the life of Pharaoh, surely you {are} spies!”

UST:
{So} one of you must go {back home} and bring your {youngest} brother back {here}. {The rest of} you must stay here in prison. That way I can verify {whether} you told me the truth. But if you are lying, as certain as {King} Pharaoh lives, {that means} you really are spying {on our country}!”

Send one of you (ULT)

So} one of you must go {back home} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Choose one of you to go home]

---

and let him bring your brother (ULT)

and bring your {youngest} brother back {here} (UST)

Alternate translation: [to get your youngest brother and bring him here]

---

and you (ULT)

{The rest of} you (UST)

In this verse, the pronouns **you** and **your** are plural. Alternate translation: [You who are left]

Support Reference: Forms of ‘You’ — Singular

---

will be bound (ULT)

must stay here in prison (UST)

See how you translated **bound** in Genesis 39:20; 40:3, 5. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [will be put in prison]

Then your words will be tested {as to whether} the truth {is} in you (ULT)

That way I can verify {whether} you told me the truth (UST)

Alternate translation: [That way I can verify whether or not you told me the truth] or [If you do that, I will know that what you told me is true]

And if not (ULT)

But if you are lying (UST)

Alternate translation: [But if you are not telling the truth]

{by} the life of Pharaoh (ULT)

as certain as {King} Pharaoh lives (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 15.

---

surely you {are} spies (ULT)

that means} you really are spying {on our country} (UST)

Alternate translation: [that means you are definitely spies!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Pharaoh

UST

- as certain as {King} Pharaoh lives

Genesis 42:17

ULT:
Then he put them together in custody {for} three days.

UST:
Then Joseph {had his soldiers} lock up his brothers in prison {for} three days.

Then he put them together in custody {for} three days (ULT)

Then Joseph {had his soldiers} lock up his brothers in prison {for} three days (UST)

See how you translated **in custody** in Genesis 40:3–4, 7. Alternate translation: [Then Joseph had his soldiers put them in custody for three days]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- for … days

UST
- days

Genesis 42:18

ULT:
Then Joseph said to them on the third day, "Do this and live, {because} I fear God:

UST:
Three days later, Joseph said to them, "I am a man who reveres God. So if you do what I say, {I will let} you live.

Then Joseph said to them on the third day (ULT)

Three days later, Joseph said to them (UST)

See how you translated **on the third day** in Genesis 22:4, 31:22, 40:20. It may be necessary to translate this phrase in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [After three days, Joseph said to them]

Do this (ULT)

So if you do what I say (UST)

Alternate translation: [Do what I say and] or [If you do this] or [If you do what I say]

---

and live (ULT)

{I will let} you live (UST)

Alternate translation: [you will live] or [I will spare your lives]

{because} I fear God (ULT)

I am a man who reveres God (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, “I am a man who reveres/respects God. So if you do what I say, I will let you live.” See how you translated **fear God** in Genesis 22:12. Alternate translation: [since I respect and obey God:]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- on the … day
- because … God
- fear

UST

- Joseph
- days later
- God
- am a man who reveres

Genesis 42:19

ULT:
If you {are} honest, let one of your brothers be bound in your prison house, and you go take grain back {for} the famine of your households.

UST:
Since you {claim to be} trustworthy men, I will make {just} one of you brothers stay where you have been, in prison. {The rest of} you {may} go {and} carry food back {home} {for} your hungry families.

If you {are} honest (ULT)

Since you {claim to be} trustworthy men (UST)

See how you translated **honest** in verse 11. Alternate translation: [If you truly are honest men as you say] or [Since you claim to be honest men]

---

let one of your brothers be bound in your prison house (ULT)

I will make {just} one of you brothers stay where you have been, in prison (UST)

See how you translated **be bound** in verse 16. Alternate translation: [I will make just one of you brothers remain where you have been, in prison] or [just one of you brothers must remain confined where you have been]

---

and you go take grain back (ULT)

The rest of} you {may} go {and} carry food back {home} (UST)

Alternate translation: [while the rest of you go back home now with grain] or [The rest of you may go and take grain back home]

{for} the famine of your households (ULT)

{for} your hungry families (UST)

Alternate translation: [for your hungry families to eat] or [to feed your hungry households]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- grain
- {for} the famine of
- your households

UST

- food
- {for} your hungry families
- {for} your hungry families

Genesis 42:20

ULT:
Then you will bring your youngest brother to me so that your words will be verified, and you will not die." And they did so.

UST:
But you {must} bring your youngest brother {back} {here} to me. That way I will know that you are telling the truth, and I will let you live." So Joseph's brothers {agreed to} do what he said.

Then you will bring your youngest brother to me (ULT)

But you {must} bring your youngest brother {back} {here} to me (UST)

Alternate translation: [After that, you must come back here to me with your youngest brother]

---

so that your words will be verified (ULT)

That way I will know that you are telling the truth (UST)

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 16. Alternate translation: [so that what you have told me will be proven to be true]

---

and you will not die (ULT)

and I will let you live (UST)

Joseph is using a figure of speech here that emphasizes a positive meaning by using a negative word, **not**, together with a mild expression that is the opposite of the intended meaning. If it would be helpful in your language, you could emphasize the positive meaning in a strong way. In this context, the word **die** refers to execution, not death by natural causes. Alternate translation: [and I will spare your lives and not execute you for being spies]

Support Reference: Litotes

And they did so (ULT)

So Joseph's brothers {agreed to} do what he said (UST)

Alternate translation: [… agreed to do what he said] or [… accepted his proposal]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- so that … will be verified

UST

- That way I will know that you are telling the truth

Genesis 42:21

ULT:
Then each {man} said to his brother, "We {are} truly guilty concerning our brother, because we saw the distress of his soul when he pleaded with us, but we did not listen. For that {reason} this distress has come upon us."

UST:
{While they were still standing there,} they said to each other, "Surely what we did to our brother {Joseph} {long ago} was {very} wrong. We saw how he was suffering when he begged us {not to harm him}, but we refused to listen {to him}. That is why we are suffering now."

We {are} truly guilty concerning our brother (ULT)

Surely what we did to our brother {Joseph} {long ago} was {very} wrong (UST)

Alternate translation: [This is happening because we sinned badly against our brother Joseph long ago]

---

because we saw the distress of his soul (ULT)

We saw how he was suffering (UST)

The phrase **his soul** refers here to Joseph. Alternate translation: [We saw how distressed he was] or [We saw how terribly he was suffering]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

---

when he pleaded with us (ULT)

when he begged us {not to harm him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [when he urgently asked us to free him]

---

but we did not listen (ULT)

but we refused to listen {to him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [but we refused to let him go]

For that {reason} (ULT)

That is why (UST)

Alternate translation: [That is the reason that]

---

this distress has come upon us (ULT)

we are suffering now (UST)

Alternate translation: [we are now experiencing so much trouble] or [we are suffering like this now]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- are … guilty
- the distress of
- when he pleaded
- distress

UST

- Surely what we did … {long ago} was {very} wrong
- how he was suffering
- when he begged us {not to harm him}
- we are suffering now

Genesis 42:22

ULT:
Then Reuben responded to them, saying, "Did I not tell you, saying, 'Do not sin against the lad'? But you did not listen, so now behold, his blood is being accounted for!"

UST:
Reuben scolded them by saying, "I told you {that} you should not do anything bad to him! But you refused to listen {to me}, and now look, God is holding us responsible for causing him to die!"

Then Reuben responded to them, saying (ULT)

Reuben scolded them by saying (UST)

Alternate translation: [Reuben reproached them by saying]

Did I not tell you, saying (ULT)

I told you (UST)

Reuben uses this rhetorical question to scold his brothers. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [Remember that I told you]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

Do not sin against the lad (ULT)

{that} you should not do anything bad to him (UST)

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Also, see how you translated **lad** in Genesis 37:30, and keep in mind that Joseph was seventeen years old when his brothers sold him. Alternate translation: [that you must not harm the boy!]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

But you did not listen (ULT)

But you refused to listen {to me} (UST)

Alternate translation: [But you did not obey me]

---

so now behold (ULT)

and now look (UST)

Alternate translation: [so now, see what is happening:] or [so now look]

---

his blood is being accounted for (ULT)

God is holding us responsible for causing him to die (UST)

The phrase **his blood** refers to Joseph's death; if you do not translate that phrase literally, you could put the literal text in a footnote since **blood** is such an important term throughout the Bible. Alternate translation: [we are being held responsible by God for his death!] or [We are getting what we deserve for causing his death!]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Reuben
- Do … sin
- is being accounted for

UST

- Reuben

- {that} you should … do anything bad
- God is holding us responsible

Genesis 42:23

ULT:
And they did not know that Joseph understood {them}, because the interpreter {was} between them.

UST:
Joseph's brothers did not realize that he {could} understand {what they were saying to each other}, because he had been speaking to them using a translator {as if he did not know their language}.

that Joseph understood {them} (ULT)

that he {could} understand {what they were saying to each other} (UST)

Alternate translation: [that Joseph could understand what they were saying to each other] or [that he was listening to what they were saying]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

because the interpreter {was} between them (ULT)

because he had been speaking to them using a translator {as if he did not know their language} (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, "Now Joseph had been using an interpreter to speak to his brothers, so they did not realize that Joseph could understand them."

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- did … know
- Joseph
- the interpreter

UST

- did … realize
- he {could} understand {what they were saying to each other}
- he had been speaking to them using a translator {as if he did not know their language}

Genesis 42:24

ULT:
And he turned away from them and cried. Then he turned back toward them and spoke to them. Then he took Simeon from them and bound him before their eyes.

UST:
{When Joseph heard what they were saying,} he turned his back to them and started crying. Then {after he recovered,} he turned back around and spoke to them {again}. Then he chose Simeon from {among} them and {had his soldiers} bind him {with chains} while they watched.

And he turned away (ULT)

{When Joseph heard what they were saying,} he turned (UST)

Throughout this section make sure it is clear at each point who is being referred to, using nouns (including names) and pronouns naturally in your language. Alternate translation: [So he turned]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

And he turned away from them (ULT)

{When Joseph heard what they were saying,} he turned his back to them (UST)

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) “turned his back to them” or (2) “went/stepped away from them.” Either way, Joseph was hiding his face from his brothers so they could not see that he was crying.

---

and cried (ULT)

and started crying (UST)

Alternate translation: [to hide his tears]

Then he turned back toward them (ULT)

Then {after he recovered,} he turned back around (UST)

Make sure that the way you translate this sentence fits with the way you translated the last sentence in verse 23. Alternate translation: [Then after he recovered, Joseph turned back around] or [When he had composed himself, he came back to them]

---

and spoke to them (ULT)

and spoke to them {again} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and spoke to them again using his translator] or [and continued speaking to them]

Then he took Simeon from them (ULT)

Then he chose Simeon from {among} them (UST)

Alternate translation: [Next he chose Simeon from among them] or [Then he separated Simeon from the rest of the brothers]

---

before their eyes (ULT)

while they watched (UST)

Alternate translation: [as they watched] or [in front of them]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Simeon
- and bound

UST

- Simeon
- and {had his soldiers} bind … with chains

Genesis 42:25

ULT:
Then Joseph ordered {his servants} and they filled their bags {with} grain. And {he ordered them} to return {each} man's silver to his sack and to give provisions to them for the road. And he did that for them.

UST:
Then Joseph told {his servants} to fill his brothers' sacks {with} grain. {He} also {told them} to {secretly} put in each brother's sack the money {they had paid for the grain} and to provide them {with} food to eat on their trip {home}. After Joseph did that for his brothers,

Then Joseph ordered {his servants} and they filled (ULT)

Then Joseph told {his servants} to fill (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Joseph commanded his servants to fill] or [Then Joseph had his servants fill]

---

their bags {with} grain (ULT)

his brothers' sacks {with} grain (UST)

Two different words, "bag" and **sack**, are used in this verse to refer to the bags of grain that the brothers had. Some languages use just one of these terms in order to prevent confusion.

And {he ordered them} to return {each} man's silver to his sack (ULT)

He} also {told them} to {secretly} put in each brother's sack the money {they had paid for the grain} (UST)

Joseph had his servants to do this without his brothers knowing about it.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and to give provisions to them for the road (ULT)

and to provide them {with} food to eat on their trip {home} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and to supply them with food to eat on the journey home] or [and to give them food to eat as they traveled home]

And he did that for them (ULT)

After Joseph did that for his brothers (UST)

Alternate translation: [So, that is what was done for them] or [That is what Joseph did for them]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- {with} grain
- s silver

UST

- Joseph
- {with} grain
- the money {they had paid for the grain}

Genesis 42:26

ULT:
Then they loaded their grain onto their donkeys and went from there.

UST:
his brothers loaded their {sacks of} grain onto their donkeys' {backs} and started traveling {home}.

Then they loaded (ULT)

his brothers loaded (UST)

Make sure your choice here fits with the way you translated the end of verse 25. Alternate translation: [Then his brothers put] or [they put] or [his brothers put]

---

and went from there (ULT)

and started traveling {home} (UST)

The way you translate this phrase should reflect the fact that Joseph's brothers were just starting their journey back home; they did not reach their home until several days later (verse 29). Alternate translation: [and left there to go home]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- their grain
- their donkeys

UST
- their {sacks of} grain
- their donkeys' {backs}

Genesis 42:27

ULT:
Then one {of them} opened his sack to give fodder to his donkey at the lodging place, and he saw his silver, and behold, it {was} in the mouth of his sack!

UST:
Later, {when they stopped} at a place to stay for the night, one {of them} opened his sack to get {some} grain to feed his donkey. There in the top of his sack he saw the money that he had used {to buy grain}!

Then one {of them} opened his sack to give fodder to his donkey at the lodging place (ULT)

Later, {when they stopped} at a place to stay for the night, one {of them} opened his sack to get {some} grain to feed his donkey (UST)

See how you translated **fodder** in Genesis 24:25, 32. Alternate translation: [Later, when they stopped at a place to lodge for the night, one of them opened his sack to get some feed to feed his donkey]

---

and he saw his silver, and behold, it {was} in the mouth of his sack (ULT)

There in the top of his sack he saw the money that he had used {to buy grain} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Suddenly he saw that the silver he had paid for the grain was right there in the opening of his sack] or [There in the top of his sack he saw the money that he had paid to buy grain]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- to his donkey
- his silver

UST
- to feed his donkey

- the money that he had used {to buy grain}

Genesis 42:28

ULT:
So he said to his brothers, "My silver has been returned! And indeed behold, {it is} in my sack!" Then their hearts went out, and each {man} trembled to his brother, saying, "What {is} this God has done to us?"

UST:
So he exclaimed to the others, "Somebody has returned my money {to me}! Here it is in my sack!" {When they saw it,} they were {completely} shocked, and they shook {with fear}. They asked each other, "Why is God doing this to us?"

So he said to his brothers (ULT)

So he exclaimed to the others (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then he exclaimed to his brothers] or [Then he exclaimed to the others]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

My silver has been returned (ULT)

Somebody has returned my money {to me} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Somebody has returned my grain money to me!] or [Someone gave my grain money back to me!]

And indeed behold, {it is} in my sack (ULT)

Here it is in my sack (UST)

Alternate translation: [Here it is in my grain sack!] or [It is right here in my grain sack!]

Then their hearts went out (ULT)

{When they saw it,} they were {completely} shocked (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this idiom in your language. Alternate translation: [They looked, and their hearts sank]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and each {man} trembled to his brother, saying (ULT)

and they shook {with fear}. They asked each other (UST)

Alternate translation: [and they all started shaking with fear and said to each other] or [and they trembled with fear. They asked each other]

What {is} this God has done to us (ULT)

Why is God doing this to us (UST)

Alternate translation: [What is God doing to us?] or [Why is God making this happen to us?]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- My silver
- and … trembled
- God

UST

- my money
- and they shook {with fear}. They asked each other
- God

Genesis 42:29

ULT:
Then they came to Jacob their father in the land of Canaan, and they reported to him all that had happened to them, saying,

UST:
{When} they reached {their home in} the region of Canaan where their father Jacob was, they told him everything they had experienced. They said,

Then they came to Jacob their father in the land of Canaan (ULT)

{When} they reached {their home in} the region of Canaan where their father Jacob was (UST)

Alternate translation: [When they got back home to their father Jacob in the region of Canaan] or [When they reached their home in the land of Canaan where their father Jacob was]

---

and they reported to him all (ULT)

they told him everything (UST)

See how you translated **reported to** in Genesis 38:13. Alternate translation: [they explained to him all]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Jacob
- in the land of
- Canaan
- and they reported

UST
- Jacob
- { … in} the region of
- Canaan
- they told

Genesis 42:30

ULT:
“The man, the lord of the land, spoke to us harshly and treated us as {if we were} spying out the land!

UST:
“The man who governs the country {of Egypt} spoke to us sternly and accused us of spying {on} {their} country!

The man, the lord of the land (ULT)

The man who governs the country {of Egypt} (UST)

Alternate translation: [The man who is the ruler over the land of Egypt] or [The man who controls the land of Egypt]

---

spoke to us harshly (ULT)

spoke to us sternly (UST)

See how you translated **harshly** in verse 7. Alternate translation: [spoke to us roughly] or [was very harsh when he spoke to us]

---

and treated us as {if we were} spying out (ULT)

and accused us of spying {on} (UST)

Alternate translation: [He even accused us of being spies!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the lord of

- the land
- the land

UST

- who governs
- the country {of Egypt}
- {their} country

Genesis 42:31

ULT:
But we said to him, ‘We {are} honest. We are not spies.

UST:
But we told him, ‘We {are} trustworthy {men}; not spies.

But we said to him, ‘We {are} honest. We are not spies (ULT)

But we told him, ‘We {are} trustworthy {men}; not spies (UST)

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Also, see how you translated “… honest … not spies” in verse 11. Alternate translation: [We told him that we are not spies, but rather trustworthy men]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

Genesis 42:32

ULT:
We {are} twelve brothers, the sons of our father. The one is not {alive}, and the youngest {is} with our father today in the land of Canaan.'

UST:
{There were} twelve of us brothers, {and} {we are} the sons of the same father. One {of our brothers} has died, and the youngest {brother} {is} {at home} with our father right now in the region of Canaan.'

We {are} twelve brothers (ULT)

{There were} twelve of us brothers (UST)

Make sure that the way you translate verse 32 fits with whether you used a direct or indirect quote in verse 31. Alternate translation: [We told him that we are twelve brothers]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

the sons of our father (ULT)

{and} {we are} the sons of the same father (UST)

Alternate translation: [sons of one father]

---

is not {alive} (ULT)

has died (UST)

See how you translated this idiom in verse 13. Alternate translation: [is no more] or [is no longer with us]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

and the youngest (ULT)

and the youngest {brother} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and our youngest one]

{is} with our father today (ULT)

{is} {at home} with our father right now (UST)

Alternate translation: [is right now with our father at home]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- today
- in the land of
- Canaan

UST

- right now
- in the region of
- Canaan

Genesis 42:33

ULT:
Then the man, the lord of the land, said to us, 'By this I will know that you {are} honest: Leave one of your brothers with me, and take {grain} {for} the famine of your households and go.

UST:
But the man who governs the country told us, 'This is how I will know if you {are} trustworthy {men}: You must leave one of you {here} with me, and {the rest of you} go {home} with {food for} your starving families.

Then the man, the lord of the land, said to us (ULT)

But the man who governs the country told us (UST)

See how you translated **the man, the lord of the land** in verse 30. Alternate translation: [Then the ruler of the land said to us] or [But the man who rules the land told us]

By this (ULT)

This is how (UST)

See how you translated **By this** in verse 15. Alternate translation: [In this way]

I will know that you {are} honest (ULT)

I will know if you {are} trustworthy {men} (UST)

Alternate translation: [I will know that you are trustworthy men]

Leave one of your brothers with me (ULT)

You must leave one of you {here} with me (UST)

Alternate translation: [One of you brothers will stay here with me]

---

and take {grain} {for} the famine of your households and go (ULT)

and {the rest of you} go {home} with {food for} your starving families (UST)

Alternate translation: [while the rest of you buy grain to relieve the hunger of your families and go home] or [and the rest of you go home with grain for your hungry households]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the lord of
- the land
- I will know
- your households

UST

- who governs
- the country
- I will know
- { … for} your starving families

Genesis 42:34

ULT:
Then bring your youngest brother to me so that I will know that you {are} not spies, that you {are} honest. {Then} I will give your brother to you, and you {can} trade {in} the land.’”

UST:
But bring your youngest brother {back} {here} to me. Then I will know that you {are} trustworthy {men} and not spies. {Then} I will return your brother to you {from prison}, and you can travel around my country {and trade} {freely}.’”

Then bring your youngest brother to me (ULT)

But bring your youngest brother {back} {here} to me (UST)

See how you translated a similar clause at the beginning of verse 20. Alternate translation: [Then bring your youngest brother back here to me] or [After that, you must come back here to me with your youngest brother]

---

so that I will know that you {are} not spies (ULT)

Then I will know that … and not spies (UST)

Consider again how you translated **spies** in Genesis 42:9–11, 14, 16, 30, 31, 34. Alternate translation: [Then I will know that you are not spies]

---

that you {are} honest (ULT)

you {are} trustworthy {men} (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to change the order of clauses in this sentence and say, “Then I will know that you are honest/trustworthy men/people and not spies.” Alternate translation: [but are honest men]

Support Reference: Information Structure

{Then} I will give your brother to you (ULT)

Then} I will return your brother to you {from prison} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then I will release to you your brother who is in prison]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- so that I will know
- {in} the land

UST

- Then I will know
- my country

Genesis 42:35

ULT:
Then it happened they were emptying their sacks, and behold, each {man's} pouch of his silver {was} inside his sack! And they and their father saw the pouches of their silver, and they were afraid.

UST:
Then Joseph's brothers started emptying their sacks {of grain}, and there inside each man's sack was his bag of money {that he had paid for the grain}! {When} they and their father {Jacob} saw the {money} bags, they were terrified.

Then it happened they were emptying their sacks (ULT)

Then Joseph's brothers started emptying their sacks {of grain} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Sometime after that, the brothers began to empty the grain from their sacks]

---

and behold, each {man's} pouch of his silver {was} inside his sack (ULT)

and there inside each man's sack was his bag of money {that he had paid for the grain} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and they were surprised to see their bags of money inside their sacks!]

And they and their father saw the pouches of their silver, and they were afraid (ULT)

{When} they and their father {Jacob} saw the {money} bags, they were terrified (UST)

Alternate translation: [When they and their father Jacob saw the bags of silver they were terrified]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- his silver
- their silver
- and they were afraid

UST

- money {that he had paid for the grain}
- the {money} bags
- they were terrified

Genesis 42:36

ULT:
Then Jacob their father said to them, "You have bereaved me! Joseph is not {here}! And Simeon is not {here}! And you will take Benjamin! All {these} things are against me!"

UST:
Then their father exclaimed to them, "You have caused me {terrible} loss! Joseph is gone! Simeon is gone! And {now} you {want to} take Benjamin {away} {from me} {too}! Everything is going terribly for me!"

Then Jacob their father said to them (ULT)

Then their father exclaimed to them (UST)

If you make **Jacob** explicit in verse 35, you could leave it implied here in verse 36. Alternate translation: [Then their father said to them]

You have bereaved me (ULT)

You have caused me {terrible} loss (UST)

Alternate translation: [You have deprived me of my sons!]

Joseph is not {here}! And Simeon is not {here} (ULT)

Joseph is gone! Simeon is gone (UST)

Alternate translation: [Joseph and Simeon are no longer with us!]

All {these} things are against me (ULT)

Everything is going terribly for me (UST)

Alternate translation: [Everything is against me!] or [Everything is going badly for me!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- Joseph
- And Simeon
- Benjamin

UST

- יַעֲקֹב (ORIG QUOTE)
- Joseph
- Simeon
- Benjamin

Genesis 42:37

ULT:
Then Reuben said to his father, saying, "You may kill my two sons if I do not bring him to you. Put him in my hand, and I will return him to you."

UST:
Reuben replied, "{Father,} let me be responsible for {taking} Benjamin {down to Egypt}. If I fail to bring him {back} to you {safely}, you can {punish me by} killing my two sons."

Then Reuben said to his father, saying (ULT)

Reuben replied (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Reuben responded to his father]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

You may kill my two sons if I do not bring him to you (ULT)

If I fail to bring him {back} to you {safely}, you can {punish me by} killing my two sons (UST)

For some languages, it is necessary to change the order of clauses in this sentence (so that the condition comes first), as in the second alternate above. Alternate translation: [You may punish me by killing my sons if I do not bring Benjamin back to you] or [If I fail to bring Benjamin back to you safely, you can punish me by killing my two sons]

Support Reference: Information Structure

Put him in my hand (ULT)

let me be responsible for {taking} Benjamin {down to Egypt} (UST)

The phrase **in my hand** is used here as an idiom that means that Reuben was going to be responsible for Benjamin's welfare. Alternate translation: [Entrust him to my care as we travel to Egypt] or [Let me be responsible for taking care of Benjamin on our trip to Egypt]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and I will return him to you (ULT)

"וַאֲנִי אֲשִׁיבֶנּוּ אֵלֶיךָ" (ORIG QUOTE) (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to change the order of clauses in this quote and say, "Father, let me be responsible for taking Benjamin down to Egypt. If I fail to bring him back to you safely, you can punish me by killing my two sons." Alternate translation: [and I promise that I will bring him back to you safely]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Reuben

UST

- Reuben

Genesis 42:38

ULT:
But he said, "My son will not go down with you, because his brother is dead, and he alone is left. And {if} harm were to meet him on the road that you are going on, then you would bring my gray head down in sorrow to Sheol!"

UST:
But his father replied, "{No,} I will not let my son {Benjamin} go down {to Egypt} with you. His brother is dead, so he is the only son {I have} left {from his mother}. So if anything bad happened to him on {your} journey, you would cause me, your elderly father, to grieve so badly that I would {die and} go down to the afterworld!"

But he said (ULT)

But his father replied (UST)

Alternate translation: [But his father insisted]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

My son will not go down with you (ULT)

{No,} I will not let my son {Benjamin} go down {to Egypt} with you (UST)

Notice that the pronoun **you** is plural in this verse. Also, see how you translated **go down** in verse 2. Alternate translation: [My son Benjamin may not go with you to Egypt]

---

because his brother is dead (ULT)

His brother is dead (UST)

Joseph was Benjamin's older brother from the same father and mother. Consider whether your language has a special kinship term for that relationship.

Support Reference: Kinship

---

and he alone is left (ULT)

so he is the only son {I have} left {from his mother} (UST)

By **he alone is left**, Jacob means that Joseph and Benjamin were the only two sons of Rachel, Jacob's favorite wife who died after giving birth to Benjamin (Genesis 35:16–20). If Joseph is now gone, only Benjamin remains. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [so he is the only one I have left from his mother]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

And {if} harm were to meet him on the road that you are going on (ULT)

So if anything bad happened to him on {your} journey (UST)

Jacob is saying what would happen if he lost Benjamin too. Consider what is the best way to translate this hypothetical statement in your language. Also, see how you translated "harm … meet him" in verse 4. Alternate translation: [So if he were to be killed during your journey] or [So if anything bad happened to him while you are traveling]

Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

---

then you would bring my gray head down in sorrow (ULT)

you would cause me, your elderly father, to grieve so badly that I would {die and} go down (UST)

Jacob uses the phrase **my gray head** to refer to himself as their aged father. Consider whether your language has a similar phrase that is natural and works well here. Alternate translation: [you would cause me, your gray-haired father, to grieve so deeply that I would die and go

down] or [you would cause me, your gray-haired father, so much grief that I would die and go down]

Genesis 43

Genesis 43:1

ULT:
Now the famine {was} heavy in the land.

UST:
The famine {continued to be} severe in the region {of Canaan}.

Now the famine (ULT)

The famine (UST)

The setting changes here to focus on what is happening in Canaan. Some languages use a special conjunction (like **Now**) to indicate that, while others do not use a conjunction here. Alternate translation: [The food shortage]

Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

{was} heavy (ULT)

{continued to be} severe (UST)

The word **heavy** is used here as an idiom that means the famine caused everyone much suffering. See how you translated the same idiom in Genesis 12:10 and Genesis 41:31. Alternate translation: [was oppressive]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

in the land (ULT)

in the region {of Canaan} (UST)

Alternate translation: [in the land of Canaan]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Now the famine
- in the land

UST

- The famine
- in the region {of Canaan}

Genesis 43:2

ULT:
So it happened when they finished eating the grain that they had brought from Egypt, then their father said to them, "Return, buy a little food for us."

UST:
So when Jacob and his family finished eating {all} the grain that his sons had brought from {the country of} Egypt, he said to them, "Go back {to Egypt} {and} buy some {more} grain for us {and our families}."

So it happened (ULT)

So (UST)

The author is using the word translated **And it happened** to introduce a new development in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new development.

Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

---

when they finished (ULT)

when Jacob and his family finished (UST)

Consider whether it is clearer in your language to use a pronoun or a noun phrase here. Alternate translation: [when Jacob and his family had finished eating] or [… had used up]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

the grain that they had brought (ULT)

{all} the grain that his sons had brought (UST)

The pronoun **they** refers here to Jacob's sons, not Jacob's family (as it did earlier in this sentence). Alternate translation: [all the grain that his sons had bought and brought home]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

then their father said to them (ULT)

he said to them (UST)

Alternate translation: [their father Jacob told them] or [he told them]

---

buy a little food (ULT)

{and} buy some {more} grain (UST)

Alternate translation: [and buy some more food]

---

for us (ULT)

for us {and our families} (UST)

The pronoun **us** includes Jacob and his sons and their families here. Alternate translation: [for our family]

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the grain
- from Egypt

UST

- {all} the grain
- from {the country of} Egypt

Genesis 43:3

ULT:
But Judah said to him, saying, “The man strongly warned us, saying, ‘You will not see my face unless your brother {is} with you!’

UST:
But {his son} Judah replied to him, “The governor {there} sternly warned us that we cannot go to him {again} {to buy grain} if our {youngest} brother {is} not with us.

But Judah said to him, saying (ULT)

But {his son} Judah replied to him (UST)

Alternate translation: [His son Judah replied]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

The man (ULT)

The governor {there} (UST)

The brothers did not realize yet that Joseph was the governor they had spoken to in Egypt, so Judah referred to him generally here as “the man.” See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 42:30. Alternate translation: [The man who governs the country there]

---

strongly warned us, saying (ULT)

sternly warned us (UST)

Alternate translation: [sternly told us] or [was serious when he warned us]

You will not see my face (ULT)

that we cannot go to him {again} {to buy grain} (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [that we cannot see him again] or [that we cannot come to him again to buy grain]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

unless your brother {is} with you (ULT)

if our {youngest} brother {is} not with us (UST)

Make sure that the way you translate this clause fits with how you translated the previous part of this sentence. For some languages it is necessary to put this clause before the previous clause and say, "… that our youngest brother must be with us or else we will not be permitted to see him again!" Alternate translation: [unless our youngest brother is with us!]

Support Reference: Connect — Exception Clauses

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Judah

UST

- {his son} Judah

Genesis 43:4

ULT:
If you will send our brother with us, we will go down and buy food for you.

UST:
{So} if you will allow our {youngest} brother to go with us, {then} we can go {to Egypt} and buy {more} grain for you.

If you will send our brother with us (ULT)

{So} if you will allow our {youngest} brother to go with us (UST)

In verses 3–5, the pronouns **us** and **we** are exclusive since they do not include Jacob (whom Judah is talking to). Alternate translation: [So if you will permit our youngest brother to go with us] or [So if you will let our youngest brother go with us]

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

---

we will go down (ULT)

then} we can go {to Egypt} (UST)

Alternate translation: [then we can travel to Egypt]

---

and buy food for you (ULT)

and buy {more} grain for you (UST)

Alternate translation: [and buy more grain for you and the rest of the family]

Genesis 43:5

ULT:
But if you will not send {him}, we will not go down, because the man said to us, ‘You will not see my face unless your brother {is} with you!’”

UST:
However if you refuse to let him go {with us}, we cannot go {there}, because the governor warned us that we cannot go to him {again} if our {youngest} brother {is} not with us.”

send {him} (ULT)

to let him go {with us} (UST)

See how you translated **send** in verse 4. Alternate translation: [allow him to go with us]

---

we will not go down (ULT)

we cannot go {there} (UST)

See how you translated **go down** and “went down” in Genesis 42:2–3. Alternate translation: [we cannot go down there] or [we must not go there to buy grain]

---

because the man said to us (ULT)

because the governor warned us (UST)

Alternate translation: [because the man told us]

You will not see my face (ULT)

that we cannot go to him {again} (UST)

See how you translated this quote in verse 3. Alternate translation: [that we cannot see him again] or [that we cannot go to him again to buy grain]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

unless your brother {is} with you (ULT)

if our {youngest} brother {is} not with us (UST)

See how you translated this clause in verse 3. Alternate translation: [unless our youngest brother is with us!]

Support Reference: Connect — Exception Clauses

Genesis 43:6

ULT:
Then Israel said, "Why did you treat me badly by telling the man you have yet {another} brother?"

UST:
Then {their father} Israel asked {them}, "Why did you cause trouble for me by telling the governor that you have a younger brother?"

Then Israel said (ULT)

Then {their father} Israel asked {them} (UST)

If it is not clear that **Israel** (verse 6) and "their father" (verse 2) refer to the same person, you could include "their father" here in your translation or in a footnote. See what you did for a similar case in Genesis 42:5.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

Why did you treat me badly by telling (ULT)

Why did you cause trouble for me by telling (UST)

Jacob uses a rhetorical question here to scold his sons and to show how upset he is. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [Why did you cause distress for me by telling] or [You caused me a lot of distress because you told]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

the man (ULT)

the governor (UST)

See how you translated **the man** in verses 3 and 5. Alternate translation: [that man] or [that governor]

---

you have yet {another} brother (ULT)

that you have a younger brother (UST)

If you translate this rhetorical question as a statement, make sure that you end it with a period or exclamation point. Alternate translation: [that you have another brother!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Israel
- did you treat … badly
- by telling

UST

- {their father} Israel
- did you cause trouble
- by telling

Genesis 43:7

ULT:
And they said, “The man asked persistently about us and our relatives, saying, ‘Is your father still alive? Do you have {another} brother?’ And we answered him according to those words. How could we possibly know that he would say, ‘Bring your brother down’?”

UST:
They answered {him}, “The governor asked {us} many questions about ourselves and about our family. He asked {us} if our father was still alive and if we had {another} brother. We {just} answered his questions honestly. There is no way we could have known that he would require us to take our brother down {there} {to him}!”

The man asked persistently (ULT)

The governor asked {us} many questions (UST)

Alternate translation: [The man questioned us intensely] or [The man asked us many questions]

---

about us and our relatives, saying (ULT)

about ourselves and about our family (UST)

In verses 7–8, the pronouns “us,” “our,” and **we** are exclusive since they do not include Jacob (whom the sons are talking to). Alternate translation: [about ourselves and about the rest of our family]

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’

Is your father still alive? Do you have {another} brother (ULT)

He asked {us} if our father was still alive and if we had {another} brother (UST)

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to translate this embedded quote with a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [He specifically asked us whether our father was still alive and if we had another brother]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

And we answered him according to those words (ULT)

We {just} answered his questions honestly (UST)

Alternate translation: [So we just answered his questions honestly] or [All we did was answer his questions]

How could we possibly know (ULT)

There is no way we could have known (UST)

Jacob's sons use a rhetorical question here to emphasize their innocence and express strong emotion. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [We could not possibly have known]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

that he would say, 'Bring your brother down (ULT)

that he would require us to take our brother down {there} {to him} (UST)

If you translate this rhetorical question as a statement, make sure that you end it with a period or exclamation point. Alternate translation: [that he would tell us to bring our brother down there to him!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and our relatives
- And we answered
- could we … know

UST

- and about our family
- We {just} answered his questions honestly
- There is no way we could have known

Genesis 43:8

ULT:
Then Judah said to Israel his father, "Send the young man with me, and we will get up and go so that both we and you and our little ones will live and not die.

UST:
Then Judah urged his father Israel {about Benjamin}, "Entrust the young man to me {to take care of} so that we can go immediately {to Egypt} {to buy grain}. Then all of us, including our children, can survive and not starve to death.

Then Judah said to Israel his father (ULT)

Then Judah urged his father Israel {about Benjamin} (UST)

For some languages it is necessary to make "Benjamin" explicit here in the quote margin so that it is clear that **young man** refers to him in the following quote.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

Send the young man with me (ULT)

Entrust the young man to me {to take care of} (UST)

See how you translated **young man** in Genesis 37:2; 41:12. Use a term here in your language that fits with the fact that Benjamin was probably in his 30's. Alternate translation: [Allow the young man to come with me and I will watch over him]

---

and we will get up and go (ULT)

so that we can go immediately {to Egypt} {to buy grain} (UST)

Alternate translation: [so we can leave right away to buy grain in Egypt]

---

so that both we and you and our little ones will live (ULT)

Then all of us, including our children, can survive (UST)

See how you translated **will live and not die** in Genesis 42:2. Alternate translation: [Then all of us, including our children, will survive] or [… can stay alive]

---

and not die (ULT)

and not starve to death (UST)

Alternate translation: [and not die from hunger]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Judah
- Israel
- our little ones

UST

- Judah
- Israel
- our children

Genesis 43:9

ULT:
I myself will guarantee him. From my hand you can require him. If I do not bring him {back} to you and set him before you, then I will have sinned against you all the days.

UST:
I personally promise to keep him safe. You can hold me responsible for him, {so that} if I do not bring him {back} to you safely, I will be guilty of this sin against you for the rest of my life.

I myself will guarantee him (ULT)

I personally promise to keep him safe (UST)

Alternate translation: [I personally guarantee to keep him safe] or [I personally guarantee his safety]

From my hand you can require him (ULT)

You can hold me responsible for him (UST)

See how you translated a similar idiom in Genesis 31:39. Alternate translation: [You can make me liable for him]

Support Reference: Idiom

If I do not bring him {back} to you and set him before you (ULT)

{so that} if I do not bring him {back} to you safely (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this hypothetical sentence in your language. Alternate translation: [so that if I do not bring him back home to you alive]

Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

---

then I will have sinned against you (ULT)

I will be guilty of this sin against you (UST)

Alternate translation: [you can blame me for this sin]

---

all the days (ULT)

for the rest of my life (UST)

Alternate translation: [all the days of my life] or [forever]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- will guarantee him
- then I will have sinned
- the days

UST

- I personally promise to keep him safe
- I will be guilty of this sin
- my life

Genesis 43:10

ULT:
Surely if we had not delayed, surely we could have returned here twice by now.”

UST:
{In any case,} if we had not waited {this long}, we could have made two {round} trips {there and back} by now.”

Surely if we had not delayed (ULT)

In any case,} if we had not waited {this long} (UST)

This sentence refers to something that could have happened, but did not actually happen. Consider what is the best way to translate this contrary-to-fact statement in your language. Alternate translation: [As it is, if we had not delayed such a long time] or [In any case, if we had not delayed this long]

Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

---

surely we could have returned here twice by now (ULT)

we could have made two {round} trips {there and back} by now (UST)

Alternate translation: [certainly we could have made two round trips there and back by now] or [we certainly would have had enough time to go down there and back two times already]

Genesis 43:11

ULT:
Then Israel their father said to them, "If {it must be} so, then do this: Take {some} of the choice produce of the land in your bags, and take {it} down to the man {as} a gift: a little balm, and a little honey, spices and myrrh, pistachio nuts and almonds.

UST:
Then their father Israel said to them, "Since that is how it must be, then do this: Put {some} of the best things from {our} land in your sacks, and take {them} to the governor {as} gifts. {Include} some healing salve, some honey, {some} spices and incense, {and} {some} pistachio nuts and almonds.

Then Israel their father said to them (ULT)

Then their father Israel said to them (UST)

See how you translated **Israel their father** in verse 8.

If {it must be} so (ULT)

Since that is how it must be (UST)

Alternate translation: [If that is how it must be] or [Okay, if that is the only way we can get more grain]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

then do this (ULT)

then do this (UST)

Alternate translation: [then this is what you must do:]

Take {some} of the choice produce of the land in your bags (ULT)

Put {some} of the best things from {our} land in your sacks (UST)

Alternate translation: [Put some of the best goods from our land in your sacks] or [Put in your sacks some of the most valuable things that our land produces]

---

and take {it} down to the man (ULT)

and take {them} to the governor (UST)

Alternate translation: [and take them to the man in Egypt]

{as} a gift (ULT)

{as} gifts (UST)

Consider what punctuation is best to use here in your language.

---

a little balm, and a little honey (ULT)

{Include} some healing salve, some honey (UST)

Consider what is the best way to make a list of things like this in your language. Also see how you translated **balm** in Genesis 37:25. Alternate translation: [including some sweet-smelling tree sap, some honey] or [Include some healing salve, honey]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

---

pistachio nuts and almonds (ULT)

{and} {some} pistachio nuts and almonds (UST)

The **pistachio nuts and almonds** are kinds of foods, in fact, delicacies. If your readers would not be familiar with what they are, you could use the names of similar things that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [and some sweet-tasting tree nuts] or [and other delicacies]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

---

spices and myrrh (ULT)

{some} spices and incense (UST)

See how you translated **spices** and **myrrh** in Gen 37:25. Alternate translation: [some food spices and incense]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Israel
- the land
- honey
- and myrrh

UST

- Israel
- {our} land
- honey
- and incense

Genesis 43:12

ULT:
And take double the silver in your hand{s}, because you must return in your hand{s} the silver that was returned in the mouth of your sacks. Perhaps it {was} a mistake.

UST:
{Also} take with you twice {as much} money {as you took the first time}, because you must take back the money that someone gave back {to you} in your sacks. Maybe they did that by mistake.

And take double the silver in your hand{s} (ULT)

Also} take with you twice {as much} money {as you took the first time} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Also take with you twice as much silver as you took the first time]

---

because you must return in your hand{s} the silver (ULT)

because you must take back the money (UST)

Alternate translation: [because you must give back the silver] or [You must give back the silver]

---

that was returned (ULT)

that someone gave back {to you} (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to use a passive or active clause here. Alternate translation: [that was given back to you by someone]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

in the mouth of your sacks (ULT)

in your sacks (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 42:27. Alternate translation: [in the top of your sacks]

Perhaps it {was} a mistake (ULT)

Maybe they did that by mistake (UST)

Alternate translation: [That might have happened by mistake] or [Maybe someone did that by mistake]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And … the silver
- the silver

UST

- money
- the money

Genesis 43:13

ULT:
So take your brother and get up, return to the man.

UST:
So {now,} take your {youngest} brother and immediately go back to the governor.

So take your brother (ULT)

So {now,} take your {youngest} brother (UST)

Alternate translation: [So then take your youngest brother]

---

and get up, return to the man (ULT)

and immediately go back to the governor (UST)

See how you translated “get up and …” in verse 8. Alternate translation: [and return right away to the man] or [and immediately go back to the man]

Genesis 43:14

ULT:
And may God Almighty give you mercies before the man, and may he send your other brother and Benjamin with you. And I, if I am bereaved, I am bereaved."

UST:
I pray that God {who is} all-powerful will cause him to treat you kindly so that he will let your other brother and Benjamin come {back} {home} with you. But {if not, and} if I {must} lose them and grieve {for them}, {then} I {will} grieve."

And may God Almighty give (ULT)

I pray that God {who is} all-powerful will cause him to treat you kindly (UST)

Alternate translation: [May Almighty God]

---

and may he send (ULT)

so that he will let … come (UST)

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "so that he will" or "and I pray that the man/governor will" or (2) "and may he/God" or "and I pray that God will"

---

and may he send your other brother and Benjamin (ULT)

so that he will let your other brother and Benjamin come (UST)

Notice that **other brother** refers to Simeon, who is older or younger (and has the same or different mother) than his brothers that Israel is talking to here. Also see how you translated **send** in verses 4–5. Alternate translation: [allow your other brother and Benjamin to go] or [let your brothers Simeon and Benjamin go]

Support Reference: Kinship

And I, if (ULT)

But {if not, and} if I (UST)

The pronoun **I** is emphatic here in the Hebrew text. If possible, keep that emphasis in your translation. Alternate translation: [As for me, if I]

I am bereaved, I am bereaved (ULT)

{must} lose them and grieve {for them}, {then} I {will} grieve (UST)

See how you translated **bereaved** in Genesis 42:36. Alternate translation: [must be deprived of them, then I will be deprived] or [must suffer loss, then I will suffer loss]

And may God Almighty give you mercies before the man (ULT)

I pray that God {who is} all-powerful will cause him to treat you kindly (UST)

Alternate translation: [be kind to you as you go before the man] or [cause the man to be kind to you] or [cause him to treat you mercifully]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And … God
- Almighty
- mercies
- Benjamin

UST

- God
- {who is} all-powerful
- I pray that … will cause him to treat you kindly
- Benjamin

Genesis 43:15

ULT:
Then the men took that gift, and they took double the silver in their hand{s}, and Benjamin. Then they got up and went down {to} Egypt and stood before Joseph.

UST:
Then the brothers packed those gifts {in their sacks} along with twice as much money {as the grain would cost}. Then they {took} Benjamin {with them} and quickly traveled down to {the country of} Egypt and went directly to Joseph.

Then the men took that gift (ULT)

Then the brothers packed those gifts {in their sacks} (UST)

See how you translated **gift** in verse 11 and in Genesis 33:10–11. Alternate translation: [So the brothers packed those gifts in their sacks] or [So the brothers got all those gifts and packed them]

---

and they took double the silver in their hand{s} (ULT)

along with twice as much money {as the grain would cost} (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in verse 12. Alternate translation: [along with twice as much silver as the grain would cost] or [and they also packed double the amount of silver that they needed to pay for the grain]

---

and Benjamin. Then they got up and went down {to} Egypt (ULT)

Then they {took} Benjamin {with them} and quickly traveled down to {the country of} Egypt (UST)

See how you translated “get up and go” in verse 8. Alternate translation: [They also got Benjamin and together they immediately traveled down to the country of Egypt] or [Then they took Benjamin with them and immediately traveled down to the country of Egypt]

---

and stood before Joseph (ULT)

and went directly to Joseph (UST)

Alternate translation: [and presented themselves to Joseph] or [and came directly to Joseph]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the silver
- Benjamin
- {to} Egypt
- Joseph

UST

- money {as the grain would cost}
- Benjamin {with them}
- to {the country of} Egypt
- Joseph

Genesis 43:16

ULT:
And Joseph saw Benjamin with them. Then he said to {the one} who {was} over his house, "Take the men to the house, and slaughter an animal and prepare {a meal}, because the men will eat with me at noon."

UST:
When Joseph saw Benjamin with his {other} brothers, he commanded his head house-servant, "Escort these men to {my} house. Then butcher a calf and prepare {a feast}, because {I want} them to eat with me {today} at noon."

And Joseph saw Benjamin with them. Then he said (ULT)

When Joseph saw Benjamin with his {other} brothers, he commanded (UST)

Alternate translation: [Joseph saw Benjamin with the rest of his brothers. So he told] or [When Joseph saw Benjamin with his other brothers, he told]

---

to {the one} who {was} over his house (ULT)

his head house-servant (UST)

Alternate translation: [the servant who managed his household]

Take the men to the house (ULT)

Escort these men to {my} house (UST)

Alternate translation: [Lead the men to my house]

---

and slaughter an animal (ULT)

Then butcher a calf (UST)

The Hebrew word for **animal** here is general and refers to an animal that was raised to be killed and eaten, such as a calf or goat. Alternate translation: [then kill one of my livestock] or [Then butcher an calf]

---

and prepare {a meal} (ULT)

and prepare {a feast} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and cook the meat to prepare a meal] or [and prepare a feast with its meat]

---

because the men will eat with me at noon (ULT)

because {I want} them to eat with me {today} at noon (UST)

Alternate translation: [because I have planned that the men will eat the noon meal with me at my house]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- Benjamin
- his house
- to the house
- and slaughter
- an animal

UST

- Joseph
- Benjamin
- his head house-servant
- to {my} house

- Then butcher
- a calf

Genesis 43:17

ULT:
So the man did just as Joseph {had} said, and the man brought the men to Joseph's house.

UST:
The servant did exactly what Joseph {had} told {him to do} and escorted the brothers to Joseph's house.

So the man did just as Joseph {had} said (ULT)

The servant did exactly what Joseph {had} told {him to do} (UST)

Alternate translation: [The servant did exactly what Joseph had commanded him to do]

---

and the man brought (ULT)

and escorted (UST)

Alternate translation: [and led]

---

the men to Joseph's house (ULT)

the brothers to Joseph's house (UST)

Make sure that the way you translate this phrase does not sound like Joseph's brothers went inside the house yet. They did not actually go inside until later (verse 24).

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- to … s house
- Joseph

UST

- Joseph
- to … s house
- Joseph

Genesis 43:18

ULT:
And the men were afraid when they were brought {to} Joseph's house, and they said, "Because of the matter of the silver that was returned in our sacks the first time, we have been brought. {He wants} to roll himself over us and throw himself on us and take us as slaves, and our donkeys!"

UST:
But when the brothers {saw} that he had taken them to Joseph's house, they were afraid, and they said {to each other}, "He has taken us here because of {our} money that someone gave back to us in our sacks {on} {our} first trip {here}. {He intends} to {have his soldiers} attack us and overpower us and make us {his} servants, along with our donkeys!"

and they said (ULT)

and they said {to each other} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then they said to each other]

Because of the matter of the silver that was returned in our sacks the first time, we have been brought (ULT)

He has taken us here because of {our} money that someone gave back to us in our sacks {on} {our} first trip {here} (UST)

Alternate translation: [We have been brought here because of the money that was returned to us in our sacks the first time we came here] or [He has taken us here because of our silver that someone gave back to us in our sacks on our first trip here]

Support Reference: Information Structure

{He wants} to roll himself over us and throw himself on us (ULT)

{He intends} to {have his soldiers} attack us and overpower us (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate these idioms in your language. Alternate translation: [He is planning to seize us by force]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and take us as slaves (ULT)

and make us {his} servants (UST)

Alternate translation: [and keep us as slaves] or [and make us his slaves]

---

and our donkeys (ULT)

along with our donkeys (UST)

Alternate translation: [He will also take our donkeys!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And … were afraid
- to … s house
- Joseph
- the silver
- as slaves
- our donkeys

UST

- But when … saw … they were afraid
- to … s house
- Joseph
- {our} money
- {his} servants

- our donkeys

Genesis 43:19

ULT:
Then they went near to the man who {was} over Joseph's house and spoke to him {at} the entrance of the house.

UST:
Then they approached Joseph's head house-servant {outside} the door to {his} house to speak to him.

Then they went near to (ULT)

Then they approached (UST)

Alternate translation: [So they went up to] or [So they approached]

---

the man who {was} over Joseph's house (ULT)

Joseph's head house-servant (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 16.

---

and spoke to him {at} the entrance of the house (ULT)

{outside} the door to {his} house to speak to him (UST)

Alternate translation: [to speak to him at the door to his house] or [outside the door to the house in order to speak to him]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- s house
- Joseph
- the house

UST

- Joseph’s head house-servant
- Joseph’s head house-servant
- {his} house

Genesis 43:20

ULT:
And they said, "Please, my lord, we surely came down {here} the first time to buy food.

UST:
And said, "Excuse us, sir, one time before this, we traveled all the way down {here} {to Egypt} to buy {some} grain.

And they said (ULT)

And said (UST)

Alternate translation: [They said to him] or [One of them said to him on behalf of them all]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Please, my lord (ULT)

Excuse us, sir (UST)

The brothers are asking the servant for permission to speak. Translate this in a way that is respectful in your language. Alternate translation: [Excuse me sir] or [Sir, please allow us to speak to you]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

we surely came down {here} the first time to buy food (ULT)

one time before this, we traveled all the way down {here} {to Egypt} to buy {some} grain (UST)

Alternate translation: [the previous time we came down here to Egypt, we came to buy some food] or [one time before this, we traveled all the way down here to Egypt and bought some food]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- my lord

UST

- sir

Genesis 43:21

ULT:
But it happened when we came to the lodging place, we opened our sacks and behold, {each} man's silver {was} in the mouth of his sack; our silver {was there} in its {full} weight! So we have brought it back in our hand{s}.

UST:
But {on our way home,} when we arrived at the place where we lodged for the night, we opened our sacks. There in the top of each of our sacks {was} the money {we had paid to you} {for the grain}! The money was all there! So we brought it {all} back with us {to give to you}.

But it happened (ULT)

But {on our way home … } (UST)

Judah is using the word translated as **But it happened** to introduce a new development in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new development.

Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

---

when we came to the lodging place, we opened our sacks (ULT)

when we arrived at the place where we lodged for the night, we opened our sacks (UST)

See how you translated **the lodging place** in Genesis 42:27. Alternate translation: [when we arrived at the place where we stayed for the night, we opened our sacks]

---

and behold, {each} man's silver {was} in the mouth of his sack (ULT)

There in the top of each of our sacks {was} the money {we had paid to you} {for the grain} (UST)

Also, see how you translated "in the mouth of … sacks" in verse 12. Alternate translation: [and we were surprised to see that our bags of money were in the top of each of our sacks!] or [There in the opening of each of our sacks was the silver we had given to you for the grain!]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

our silver {was there} in its {full} weight (ULT)

The money was all there (UST)

The silver was weighed in shekels (Genesis 20:16; 23:15–16; 37:28) to determine how much to pay for something. See how you translated **silver** in Genesis 42:25, 27, 35. Alternate translation: [The full weight of money was there!] or [The silver was all there!]

Support Reference: Biblical Money

So we have brought it back (ULT)

So we brought it {all} back (UST)

Alternate translation: [But we brought it all back] or [So we brought all that money back]

---

in our hand{s} (ULT)

with us {to give to you} (UST)

Alternate translation: [with us to return to you]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- s silver
- our silver

UST

- the money {we had paid to you} {for the grain}
- The money

Genesis 43:22

ULT:
And we have brought down other silver in our hand{s} to buy food. We do not know who put our silver in our sacks."

UST:
We have {also} brought more money with us so that we can buy {some more} grain {now}. We have no idea who put the money in our sacks."

And we have brought down other silver (ULT)

We have {also} brought more money (UST)

Alternate translation: [We also brought enough extra money with us] or [We have also brought additional money with us]

---

to buy food (ULT)

so that we can buy {some more} grain {now} (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that we can buy some more food now]

---

who put our silver in our sacks (ULT)

who put the money in our sacks (UST)

Alternate translation: [who gave that money back to us in our sacks] or [how our silver got into our sacks like that]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And … silver

- We do … know
- our silver

UST

- money
- We have no idea
- the money

Genesis 43:23

ULT:
But he said, "Peace {be} to you, do not be afraid. Your God and the God of your father has given you hidden treasure in your sacks; your silver came to me." Then he brought Simeon out to them.

UST:
But Joseph's servant replied {to them}, "It is all right, {so} do not worry {about it}. The God whom you and your father serve must have put the money in your sacks, {because} I {definitely} received your money {that you paid for the grain}." Then Joseph's servant brought Simeon out {of prison} to his brothers.

Peace {be} to you (ULT)

It is all right, {so} (UST)

The phrase **Peace {be} to you** is a blessing that wishes someone to be well and at peace. Consider whether your language has a similar blessing or an idiom that would work well here. Alternate translation: [Be at peace,] or [All is well for you, so]

Support Reference: Blessings

---

do not be afraid (ULT)

do not worry {about it} (UST)

Alternate translation: [do not be anxious]

Your God and the God of your father (ULT)

The God whom you and your father serve (UST)

Make sure that your translation of these phrases refers to the same God, not two different Gods. Alternate translation: [The God whom you and your father worship]

---

has given you hidden treasure in your sacks (ULT)

must have put the money in your sacks (UST)

Alternate translation: [must have put the silver in your sacks]

---

your silver came to me (ULT)

because} I {definitely} received your money {that you paid for the grain} (UST)

Alternate translation: [because I definitely received the silver that you paid for the grain] or [because I know that you paid me money to pay for the grain]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Peace
- do … be afraid
- Your God
- and the God of
- your silver
- Simeon

UST

- It is all right, {so}
- do … worry {about it}
- The God whom you and your father serve
- The God whom you and your father serve
- because … your money {that you paid for the grain}
- Simeon

Genesis 43:24

ULT:
Then the man took the men into Joseph's house and gave {them} water, and they washed their feet, and he gave fodder to their donkeys.

UST:
Then Joseph's servant brought the brothers into Joseph's house and provided {them} with water to wash {the road dust off} their feet. He also fed their donkeys.

and they washed their feet (ULT)

to wash {the road dust off} their feet (UST)

Consider again how you translated "wash … feet" in the book of Genesis. See 18:4; 19:2; 24:32; 43:24. Alternate translation: [and they washed the dirt off their feet]

---

and he gave fodder to their donkeys (ULT)

He also fed their donkeys (UST)

Also, see how you translated **fodder** in Genesis 42:27. Alternate translation: [and he provided feed for their donkeys]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- into … s house
- Joseph
- to their donkeys

UST
- into … s house
- Joseph
- their donkeys

Genesis 43:25

ULT:
And they prepared the gift for Joseph's arrival at noon, because they had heard that they would eat bread there.

UST:
{Meanwhile,} Joseph's brothers got {their} gifts ready to give to Joseph when he came home at noon, because they had heard that they were going to eat a meal {with him} there.

for Joseph's arrival at noon (ULT)

to give to Joseph when he came home at noon (UST)

Alternate translation: [to give to Joseph when he got home at noon]

---

because they had heard (ULT)

because they had heard (UST)

Alternate translation: [because they had been told] or [because someone had told them]

---

that they would eat bread there (ULT)

that they were going to eat a meal {with him} there (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to put the last half of this verse at the beginning of the verse and say, "When Joseph's brothers heard that they were going to eat the noon meal with Joseph at his house, they got their gifts ready to give him when he came/got home." Alternate translation: [that they were going to eat a meal with him there at his house]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- bread

UST

- to give to Joseph when he came home
- a meal

Genesis 43:26

ULT:
Then Joseph came to the house, and they brought to him the gift that {was} in their hand{s} into the house, and they bowed down to him to the ground.

UST:
When Joseph came home, his brothers {gave} to him the gifts that they had brought with them into the house, and they bowed down before him {with their faces} to the ground {to show respect}.

Then Joseph came to the house (ULT)

When Joseph came home (UST)

Alternate translation: [When Joseph came to his house] or [When Joseph got home]

---

and they brought to him the gift that {was} in their hand{s} into the house (ULT)

his brothers {gave} to him the gifts that they had brought with them into the house (UST)

Alternate translation: [his brothers presented to him the gift that they had brought with them into the house]

---

and they bowed down to him to the ground (ULT)

and they bowed down before him {with their faces} to the ground {to show respect} (UST)

See how you translated “bowed down … ground” in Genesis 42:6. Alternate translation: [Then they bowed themselves down before him with their faces to the ground to show him honor] or [Then they prostrated themselves on the ground to respect him]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- to the house
- into the house
- and they bowed down
- to the ground

UST

- Joseph
- home
- into the house
- and they bowed down
- with their faces} to the ground {to show respect}

Genesis 43:27

ULT:
Then he asked them about {their} wellbeing, and he said, "{Are things} well {for} your aged father whom you spoke about? Is he still alive?"

UST:
Then Joseph asked them how they were doing, and he asked {them}, "Is your elderly father well whom you mentioned {to me}? Is he still living?"

Then he asked them about {their} wellbeing (ULT)

Then Joseph asked them how they were doing (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then he greeted them]

---

and he said (ULT)

and he asked {them} (UST)

Alternate translation: [He also asked them]

{Are things} well {for} your aged father (ULT)

Is your elderly father well (UST)

Alternate translation: [Is your aged father doing well] or [Is your aged father in good health]

---

whom you spoke about (ULT)

whom you mentioned {to me} (UST)

Alternate translation: [whom you spoke about to me before?]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- about {their} wellbeing
- {Are things} well

UST

- how they were doing
- Is … well

Genesis 43:28

ULT:
And they said, "{Things are} well for your servant our father. He {is} still alive." Then they bowed and bowed down.

UST:
They answered {him}, "{Yes sir,} our father, who highly respects you, is still alive and well." Then they bowed {their heads} and bowed down {to the ground} {again}.

{Things are} well for your servant our father. He {is} still alive (ULT)

{Yes sir,} our father, who highly respects you, is still alive and well (UST)

The brothers refer to their father as **your servant** here to show respect to Joseph and to acknowledge his high position. Translate this phrase in a polite way that shows respect toward Joseph. Also, the pronoun **our** is exclusive here because Joseph's brothers did not yet know that they were talking to Joseph. Alternate translation: [Yes sir, our father, who highly respects you, is still alive and blessed]

Support Reference: Politeness

Then they bowed (ULT)

Then they bowed {their heads} (UST)

In this verse, the terms **bowed** and **bowed down** translate two different Hebrew words that together describe and emphasize the process of bowing down to the ground. Alternate translation: [Then they knelt]

---

and bowed down (ULT)

and bowed down {to the ground} {again} (UST)

See how you translated **bowed down** in verse 26. Alternate translation: [and prostrated themselves in front of him again]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- {Things are} well
- for your servant
- Then they bowed
- and bowed down

UST

- Yes sir … and well
- who highly respects you
- Then they bowed {their heads}
- and bowed down {to the ground} {again}

Genesis 43:29

ULT:
Then he lifted his eyes and saw Benjamin his brother, the son of his mother, and he said, "Is this your youngest brother whom you spoke to me {about}?" Then he said, "May God be gracious to you, my son."

UST:
Then Joseph looked around and saw his brother Benjamin, who had the same mother that he had, and he said {to them}, "So this must be your youngest brother whom you told me about." Then he said {to Benjamin}, "I pray that God will be kind to you, young man."

Then he lifted his eyes and saw Benjamin his brother (ULT)

Then Joseph looked around and saw his brother Benjamin (UST)

Benjamin was younger than Joseph. Also, consider again how you translated the idiom "lifted … eyes" in the book of Genesis. See 13:10, 14; 18:2; 22:4, 13; 24:63–64; 31:10; 33:1, 5; 37:25; 39:7; 43:29. Alternate translation: [Then Joseph looked up and saw his brother Benjamin] or [When Joseph looked around at them all, he saw his brother Benjamin]

Support Reference: Kinship

---

the son of his mother (ULT)

who had the same mother that he had (UST)

Alternate translation: [who was the only other son of his own mother]

---

and he said (ULT)

and he said {to them} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he asked them]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Is this your youngest brother (ULT)

So this must be your youngest brother (UST)

This question could be an actual question or a rhetorical question. The fact that Joseph does not wait for an answer suggests that this is a rhetorical question, especially since he already realized that the new brother in the group was Benjamin (verse 16). Alternate translation: [So this young man must be your youngest brother] or [I suppose this young man is your youngest brother]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

whom you spoke to me {about} (ULT)

whom you told me about (UST)

Make sure that your punctuation here fits with the way you translated this sentence, either as a question or a statement.

May God be gracious to you (ULT)

I pray that God will be kind to you (UST)

See how you translated "God has been gracious to …" in Genesis 33:11. Also see how you translated "grace" in 24:12, 14, 27, 49; 39:21. Alternate translation: [I pray that God will be gracious to you]

---

my son (ULT)

young man (UST)

The phrase **my son** is a kind way to address a man who is younger or of lower status; it does not mean that Benjamin was Joseph's actual son. Also, for some languages it is necessary to put this address first in this quote. Do what is natural in your language.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Benjamin
- God
- May … be gracious to you

UST

- Benjamin
- God
- I pray that … will be kind to you

Genesis 43:30

ULT:
Then Joseph hurried out, because his emotions boiled over for his brother, and he sought to cry, and he went to the inner room and cried there.

UST:
Suddenly Joseph rushed out {of the room} because he felt overwhelmed with emotions about his brother and was about to cry. So he went to his bedroom, where he cried {privately}.

Then Joseph hurried out (ULT)

Suddenly Joseph rushed out {of the room} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Joseph quickly left the room] or [Then Joseph rushed out of the room]

---

because his emotions boiled over for his brother (ULT)

because he felt overwhelmed with emotions about his brother (UST)

Alternate translation: [because he was feeling deeply emotional about his brother] or [because he felt overwhelmed with emotions for his brother]

---

and he sought to cry (ULT)

and was about to cry (UST)

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) “and desired/wanted to cry,” or “and felt like crying,” or “and was about to cry,” or (2) “and was looking for a place to cry,” or “and went to find a place to cry,”

---

and he went to the inner room (ULT)

So he went to his bedroom (UST)

Alternate translation: [so he went to his private room]

---

and cried there (ULT)

where he cried {privately} (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that he could cry there]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- his emotions
- and he sought

UST

- Joseph
- he felt overwhelmed with emotions
- and was about

Genesis 43:31

ULT:
Then he washed his face and came out. Then he controlled himself and said, "Serve the bread."

UST:
After he had gotten control of his emotions {and stopped crying}, he washed {the tears off} his face and came back out {of his room}. Then he commanded {his servants}, "Serve the food {to us}."

Then he washed his face and came out. Then he controlled himself (ULT)

After he had gotten control of his emotions {and stopped crying}, he washed {the tears off} his face and came back out {of his room} (UST)

Alternate translation: [After a while, he stopped crying, washed the tears off his face and came out of his room]

---

and said (ULT)

Then he commanded {his servants} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and told his servants] or [Then he told his servants]

Serve the bread (ULT)

Serve the food {to us} (UST)

The word **bread** refers to all the food they ate at this meal, not just bread. Alternate translation: [Serve the meal to us] or [It is time to serve the meal to us]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the bread

UST

- the food

Genesis 43:32

ULT:
So they served to him by himself, and to them by themselves, and to the Egyptians who were eating with him by themselves, because Egyptians cannot eat bread with Hebrews, because that {is} an abomination to Egyptians.

UST:
So they served {food} to Joseph at his own table, and his brothers at their own table, and the Egyptians who were eating with him at their own table. Egyptians do not eat at the same table as Hebrew people, because Egyptians consider it unacceptable {to do that}.

and to the Egyptians who were eating with him by themselves (ULT)

and the Egyptians who were eating with him at their own table (UST)

Alternate translation: [and the Egyptians who were eating as his guests at their own table] or [They also served food to some Egyptian guests at a separate table]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and to the Egyptians
- Egyptians
- Hebrews
- bread
- an abomination

UST

- and the Egyptians
- Egyptians
- at the same table as Hebrew people
- at the same table as Hebrew people
- Egyptians consider it unacceptable {to do that}

Genesis 43:33

ULT:
And they were sitting before him, the firstborn according to his birthright and the youngest according to his youth, and the men were astonished each to his neighbor.

UST:
Joseph's brothers were sitting {at a table} facing his table in the order of their ages, from the oldest to the youngest. {When they noticed that,} they were amazed {and stared} at one another.

before him (ULT)

facing his table (UST)

Alternate translation: [in front of him]

---

the firstborn according to his birthright and the youngest according to his youth (ULT)

in the order of their ages, from the oldest to the youngest (UST)

Alternate translation: [according to their age order, from oldest to youngest] or [in the order of their ages, from the firstborn to the youngest]

---

and the men were astonished each to his neighbor (ULT)

{When they noticed that,} they were amazed {and stared} at one another (UST)

Alternate translation: [so they looked at each other in amazement] or [When they saw that, they were amazed and stared at one another]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the firstborn
- according to his birthright
- his neighbor

UST

- in the order of their ages, from the oldest to the youngest
- in the order of their ages, from the oldest to the youngest
- {When they noticed that,} they were amazed {and stared} at one another

Genesis 43:34

ULT:
Then he served to them servings {of food} from before him, but Benjamin's serving was five times larger than any of their servings. And they drank and became drunk with him.

UST:
Then Joseph {had his servants} serve food to his brothers from his table, but he {had them} serve Benjamin five times more {food} than {they} served to any of the rest {of his brothers}. Then his brothers feasted and drank {wine} freely with him.

Then he served to them servings {of food} from before him (ULT)

Then Joseph {had his servants} serve food to his brothers from his table (UST)

As a person of high position and status, Joseph probably had his servants serve the food rather doing it himself. Decide whether you want to make that information explicit in your translation or include it in a footnote. Alternate translation: [Then Joseph served his brothers food from his table]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

but Benjamin's serving was five times larger (ULT)

but he {had them} serve Benjamin five times more {food} (UST)

Alternate translation: [but the amount of food that was served to Benjamin was five times more]

---

than any of their servings (ULT)

than {they} served to any of the rest {of his brothers} (UST)

Alternate translation: [than the amount of food that was served to any of the rest of them]

And they drank and became drunk with him (ULT)

Then his brothers feasted and drank {wine} freely with him (UST)

The Hebrew verb for **became drunk** is the same word that is used in Genesis 9:21 to describe Noah when he had drunk so much wine that he had fallen asleep. Here, it probably means that they had drunk enough wine that they were feeling happy and sociable. Alternate translation: [Then they ate food, drank wine and feasted with him] or [Then they feasted and drank wine freely with him until they were very merry]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Benjamin
- and became drunk

UST

- Benjamin
- and drank {wine} freely

Genesis 44

Genesis 44:1

ULT:
Then he commanded {the one} who {was} over his house, saying, "Fill the men's sacks {with} food, as much as they are able to carry, and put the silver of each {one} in the mouth of his sack.

UST:
Later Joseph ordered his head house-servant, "Fill the men's {grain} bags with as much grain as they can take {with them}, and in the top of their bags, put the money that each {of them} paid {for the grain} .

{the one} who {was} over his house (ULT)

his head house-servant (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 43:16. Alternate translation: [the servant who managed his household]

---

saying, "Fill the men's sacks {with} food, as much as (ULT)

Fill the men's {grain} bags with as much grain as (UST)

These grain sacks were carried by the brother's donkeys and were probably fairly large since donkeys are able to carry around 50 kilos (about 110 pounds).

---

they are able to carry (ULT)

they can take {with them} (UST)

Alternate translation: [the bags can hold]

---

and put the silver of each {one} in the mouth of his sack (ULT)

and in the top of their bags, put the money that each {of them} paid {for the grain} (UST)

See how you translated “silver/money” in Genesis 42:25, 27–28. Alternate translation: [and put their grain money in the opening of their grain bags] or [and in the top of their sacks put the silver that each of them paid for the grain]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- his house
- the silver of

UST

- his head house-servant
- the money that each {of them} paid {for the grain}

Genesis 44:2

ULT:
And put my cup, the silver cup, in the mouth of the sack of the youngest {one}, and his grain's silver." So he did according to Joseph's word that he spoke.

UST:
Also put my silver cup in the top of the youngest {one}'s bag, along with the money that he paid for the grain." So the servant did exactly what Joseph had ordered {him to do}.

And put my cup, the silver cup (ULT)

Also put my silver cup (UST)

Notice that this cup was made out of silver; it was not just silver in color. Alternate translation: [And put my cup, the one that is made of silver]

---

and his grain's silver (ULT)

along with the money that he paid for the grain (UST)

Alternate translation: [and his grain money] or [along with the silver that he paid for the grain]

So he did according to Joseph's word that he spoke (ULT)

So the servant did exactly what Joseph had ordered {him to do} (UST)

See how you translated "according to … words" in Genesis 43:7. Alternate translation: [So the servant did exactly as he had told him to do]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- silver

- s silver
- his grain
- Joseph

UST

- silver
- the money that he paid for the grain
- the money that he paid for the grain
- exactly what Joseph had ordered {him to do}

Genesis 44:3

ULT:
The morning became light, and the men were sent off, they and their donkeys.

UST:
Early the next morning, {Joseph} sent the brothers {on their way}, along with their donkeys.

The morning became light (ULT)

Early the next morning (UST)

Alternate translation: [The next morning as it was becoming light] or [The next morning at dawn]

---

and the men were sent off, they and their donkeys (ULT)

{Joseph} sent the brothers {on their way}, along with their donkeys (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive sentence in your language. Alternate translation: [the brothers were sent on their way with their donkeys by Joseph] or [Joseph sent the men on their way, along with their donkeys]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- and their donkeys

UST
- along with their donkeys

Genesis 44:4

ULT:
They had left the city, they had not gone far, and Joseph said to {the one} who {was} over his house, "Get up, follow after the men, and {when} you overtake them, then say to them, 'Why have you repaid evil for good?

UST:
{But} they had not gone very far out of the city when he ordered his head servant, "Hurry {and} pursue those men. When you catch up with them, ask them, 'Why have you treated {my master} so badly {after he was} so good {to you}?

They had left the city, they had not gone far (ULT)

{But} they had not gone very far out of the city (UST)

Alternate translation: [But after they left the city, before they had gone very far]

---

and Joseph said to {the one} who {was} over his house (ULT)

when he ordered his head servant (UST)

Alternate translation: [he told the servant who managed his household] or [he ordered his head-servant]

Get up (ULT)

Hurry {and} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Immediately]

---

follow after the men (ULT)

pursue those men (UST)

Alternate translation: [go after the men]

---

and {when} you overtake them (ULT)

When you catch up with them (UST)

Alternate translation: [When you reach them]

---

then say to them (ULT)

ask them (UST)

Make sure that the way you translate this quote margin fits with the way you translate the following rhetorical question. Alternate translation: [tell them]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Why have you repaid evil for good (ULT)

Why have you treated {my master} so badly {after he was} so good {to you} (UST)

Joseph's servant uses this rhetorical question to scold the brothers and express his outrage. Consider what is the best way to communicate those things in your language. Alternate translation: [My master treated you so well, but in return you have treated him very badly!] or [You have repaid him with evil for good!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and Joseph
- his house
- and {when} you overtake them
- evil
- good

UST

- when
- his head servant
- When you catch up with them
- have you treated {my master} so badly
- after he was} so good {to you}

Genesis 44:5

ULT:
Is this not what my lord drinks from and what he indeed divines with? You have done evil {in} what you have done!’”

UST:
The cup {you stole} is {the cup} that my master drinks from. He {also} uses it to find out secret things! What you have done is {very} wrong!’”

Is this not what my lord drinks from and what he indeed divines with (ULT)

The cup {you stole} is {the cup} that my master drinks from. He {also} uses it to find out secret things (UST)

The servant of Joseph uses this rhetorical question to further express his outrage about the missing cup. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [You certainly have the cup that my lord drinks from and what he indeed divines with!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

You have done evil {in} what you have done (ULT)

What you have done is {very} wrong (UST)

The phrase **you have done** is repeated in this sentence for emphasis. Consider what is the best way to communicate that emphasis in your language. Alternate translation: [What you have done is very evil]

Support Reference: Reduplication

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- my lord
- he … divines
- You have done evil

UST

- my master
- uses it to find out secret things
- is {very} wrong

Genesis 44:6

ULT:
Then he overtook them and spoke those words to them.

UST:
Then the servant {left, and when he} caught up with the men, he repeated to them what Joseph had told him {to say}.

Then he overtook them (ULT)

Then the servant {left, and when he} caught up with the men (UST)

Consider again how you translated "overtake" or **overtook** in the book of Genesis. See 19:19; 31:25; 44:4, 6.

---

and spoke those words to them (ULT)

he repeated to them what Joseph had told him {to say} (UST)

Alternate translation: [he said to them what Joseph had told him to say]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then he overtook them

UST

- Then the servant {left, and when he} caught up with the men

---

Genesis 44:7

ULT:
But they said to him, "Why does my lord speak words like those? Far be it from your servants to do something like that!

UST:
But they replied, "Sir, why do you say such things? {We assure you,} sir, {that} we would never do anything like that!

But they said to him (ULT)

But they replied (UST)

Alternate translation: [But they exclaimed]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Why does my lord speak words like those (ULT)

Sir, why do you say such things (UST)

The brothers use this rhetorical question to express their shock at being accused of something they had not done. They also address the servant as **my lord** to show him respect. Decide what is the best way to communicate those things in your language. Alternate translation: [Master, we do not know why you are saying that!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

Far be it from your servants to do (ULT)

{We assure you,} sir, {that} we would never do (UST)

The brothers refer to themselves as **your servants** in order to show respect to Joseph's head-servant. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate

translation: [We swear as your humble servants that we would never even think of doing] or [We would never even consider doing]

Support Reference: Politeness

Far be it from your servants to do (ULT)

{We assure you,} sir, {that} we would never do (UST)

The brothers are using a common expression of their culture to express their horror at being accused of stealing from Joseph. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [Surely, we would not do]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

something like that (ULT)

anything like that (UST)

Alternate translation: [such a thing!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- my lord
- from your servants

UST

- Sir
- sir

Genesis 44:8

ULT:
Behold, the silver that we found in the mouth of our sacks we brought back to you from the land of Canaan. So how would we steal silver or gold from the house of your lord?

UST:
Remember that we returned to you the money that we discovered in our {grain} bags {last time}. {We brought it} {all the way} from {our home in} the region of Canaan! So we would never steal silver {things} or gold {things} {or anything else} from your master's house!

Behold (ULT)

Remember that (UST)

Alternate translation: [After all]

---

the silver that we found in the mouth of our sacks we brought back to you from the land of Canaan (ULT)

we returned to you the money that we discovered in our {grain} bags {last time}. {We brought it} {all the way} from {our home in} the region of Canaan (UST)

Consider what is the best way in your language to order the clauses in this sentence. Alternate translation: [we returned to you the money that we found in our grain sacks last time. We brought it all the way from our home in the land of Canaan!] or [as soon as we came back here from the land of Canaan, we returned to you the money we had discovered inside our grain sacks]

Support Reference: Information Structure

So how would we steal silver or gold from the house of your lord (ULT)

So we would never steal silver {gold {from your master's house … } (UST)

The brothers use this rhetorical question to strongly emphasize that they would never steal from the servant's master. Some languages must use a statement or exclamation here instead. Alternate translation: [This shows that we would never take silver or gold from the house of your lord] or [So there is no reason that we would ever take]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

silver or gold (ULT)

silver {gold … } (UST)

The brothers are emphasizing that they would never steal anything from Joseph, especially not valuable things made out of gold or silver.

Support Reference: Synecdoche

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the silver
- from the land of
- Canaan
- from the house of
- your lord
- silver
- gold

UST

- the money
- {We brought it} {all the way} from {our home in} the region of
- Canaan
- from … s house
- your master
- silver
- gold

Genesis 44:9

ULT:
Whoever of your servants is found with it, then he will die, and we also will be slaves for my lord."

UST:
{In fact,} sir, if you find that one of us does have the cup, then {you may} execute that person, and {the rest of} us, sir, will become your slaves."

Whoever of your servants is found with it (ULT)

{In fact,} sir, if you find that one of us does have the cup (UST)

The brothers refer to themselves as **your servants** in order to show respect to Joseph's head-servant. Alternate translation: [In fact, sir, if you discover that any of us does have the cup] or [If any one of us does have the cup, sir]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

then he will die (ULT)

then {you may} execute that person (UST)

Alternate translation: [then he must die] or [then he should be executed] or [then you may kill that man]

---

and we also will be slaves for my lord (ULT)

and {the rest of} us, sir, will become your slaves (UST)

See how you translated **my lord** in verse 7. Alternate translation: [and besides that, the rest of us will become servants for you, sir] or [and the rest of us, sir, will become your servants]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- of your servants
- for my lord
- slaves

UST

- {In fact,} sir, if you find that one of us does have the cup
- sir … your slaves
- sir … your slaves

Genesis 44:10

ULT:
And he said, "Indeed now, according to your words, so it {will be}: Whoever is found with it will be a slave for me, but you {others} will be blameless."

UST:
Joseph's servant replied {to them}, "Okay then, I will do as you suggest {except for this}: The one whom I find with my master's cup {is the only one who} will become my slave. {The rest of} you will be innocent {and free to go}."

Indeed now (ULT)

Okay then (UST)

Alternate translation: [So then] or [Very well then]

---

according to your words, so it {will be} (ULT)

I will do as you suggest {except for this} (UST)

Alternate translation: [based on what you have said I will do this:]

---

will be a slave for me (ULT)

{is the only one who} will become my slave (UST)

Alternate translation: [is the only one who will be my slave]

---

but you {others} will be blameless (ULT)

The rest of} you will be innocent {and free to go} (UST)

Alternate translation: [but the rest of you will be free to go]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- a slave
- blameless

UST

- my slave
- innocent {and free to go}

Genesis 44:11

ULT:
Then they each hurried and lowered his sack to the ground, and they each opened his sack.

UST:
So each of the brothers quickly took his {grain} bag {off his donkey} and put it on the ground, and each of them opened his {own} bag.

Then they each hurried and lowered his sack to the ground (ULT)

So each of the brothers quickly took his {grain} bag {off his donkey} and put it on the ground (UST)

Alternate translation: [So each of them immediately lowered his bag of grain from his donkey to the ground] or [Then each of the men immediately took his grain sack off his donkey and put it on the ground]

---

and they each opened his sack (ULT)

and each of them opened his {own} bag (UST)

Alternate translation: [and each of them opened his own sack] or [and opened it]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- to the ground

UST
- and put it on the ground

Genesis 44:12

ULT:
Then he searched, beginning with the oldest and ending with the youngest, and the cup was found in Benjamin's sack!

UST:
Then Joseph's servant searched {their bags}. He started with the oldest {brother} and continued until he came to the youngest {brother}, and {there} he found the cup in Benjamin's bag!

Then he searched (ULT)

Then Joseph's servant searched {their bags} (UST)

Consider what is the best way to refer to Joseph's servant in verses 6, 10 and 12. Also see how you translated **searched** in Genesis 31:35.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

beginning with the oldest and ending with the youngest (ULT)

He started with the oldest {brother} and continued until he came to the youngest {brother} (UST)

Alternate translation: [beginning with the oldest brother and finishing with the youngest one] or [He started with the oldest brother and continued until he came to the youngest one]

---

and the cup was found in Benjamin's sack (ULT)

and {there} he found the cup in Benjamin's bag (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language.

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then he searched
- Benjamin

UST

- Then Joseph’s servant searched {their bags}
- Benjamin

Genesis 44:13

ULT:
Then they tore their clothes, and each {one} loaded up his donkey, and they returned to the city.

UST:
In response {to that}, the brothers tore their clothes {in distress}. Then each {of them} put his bag {back} on his {own} donkey, and they {all} {turned around and} went back to the city.

Then they tore their clothes (ULT)

In response {to that}, the brothers tore their clothes {in distress} (UST)

See how you translated "tore … clothes in distress" in Genesis 37:29, 34. Alternate translation: [In response to that, the brothers tore their clothes in grief]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

---

and each {one} loaded up his donkey (ULT)

Then each {of them} put his bag {back} on his {own} donkey (UST)

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to the brothers in each context throughout this chapter. Alternate translation: [Then each of them put his sack back on his own donkey] or [Then each of the men loaded up his own donkey again]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

and they returned to the city (ULT)

and they {all} {turned around and} went back to the city (UST)

Alternate translation: [and they all returned to the city] or [then they all turned around and went back to the city]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- his donkey

UST
- his {own} donkey

Genesis 44:14

ULT:
Then Judah and his brothers came to Joseph's house, and he was still there, so they fell to the ground before him.

UST:
When Judah and his brothers arrived at Joseph's house, Joseph was there {waiting for them}. So they prostrated themselves on the ground before him {to show respect}.

and he was still there (ULT)

Joseph was there {waiting for them} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Joseph was still there]

---

so they fell to the ground before him (ULT)

So they prostrated themselves on the ground before him {to show respect} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then they prostrated themselves on the ground before him to show respect] or [So they bowed all the way to the ground in front of him to honor him]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Judah
- to … s house
- Joseph
- so they fell
- to the ground

UST
- Judah
- at … s house
- Joseph
- So they prostrated themselves … to show respect

- on the ground

Genesis 44:15

ULT:
Then Joseph said to them, “What {is} this deed that you have done? Did you not know that a man who {is} like me indeed divines?”

UST:
Then Joseph exclaimed to them, “What you have done is terrible! You should have known that someone in my position knows how to discover the secret things {that people do}!”

Then Joseph said to them (ULT)

Then Joseph exclaimed to them (UST)

Make sure the way you translate this quote margin fits with the way you translate the following rhetorical question. Alternate translation: [Then Joseph told them]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

What {is} this deed that you have done (ULT)

What you have done is terrible (UST)

Joseph uses rhetorical questions in this verse to express anger and scold his brothers. Some languages must use strong statements or exclamations here instead. See what you did for a similar case in Genesis 20:9. Alternate translation: [Why did you do such a terrible thing?] or [You should never have done such a thing!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

that a man who {is} like me (ULT)

that someone in my position (UST)

Alternate translation: [that a ruler like me]

---

indeed divines (ULT)

knows how to discover the secret things {that people do} (UST)

See how you translated **divines** in verse 5. Alternate translation: [regularly practices divination!] or [could use divination to find out what you did!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- you … know
- divines

UST

- Joseph
- You should have known
- knows how to discover the secret things {that people do}

Genesis 44:16

ULT:
And Judah said, "What can we say to my lord? What can we speak? And how can we justify ourselves? God has found out the sin of your servants. Behold, we {are} slaves for my lord, both we and {the one} in whose hand the cup was found."

UST:
Judah replied {to him}, "Sir, there is nothing {convincing} that we can say {to you}. There is no way that we can explain {this}. There is no way we can prove {to you} that we are innocent. God is punishing us for our {past} sin. {So now,} sir, we are {all} here to be your slaves, including {the one} whom {your house-servant} found with your cup {in his bag}."

And Judah said (ULT)

Judah replied {to him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Judah answered]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

What can we speak (ULT)

There is no way that we can explain {this} (UST)

Alternate translation: [We cannot explain this]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

And how can we justify ourselves (ULT)

There is no way we can prove {to you} that we are innocent (UST)

Alternate translation: [We know of no way to prove our innocence!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

God has found out the sin of your servants (ULT)

God is punishing us for our {past} sin (UST)

Judah refers to himself and his brothers as **your servants** to show humility and to honor Joseph. Also, Judah is probably referring here to the sin of selling their brother Joseph into slavery years ago. You could include that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [God has exposed our guilt for our past sin] or [God is punishing us, your humble servants, for our past sin] or [God is using this occasion to punish us for our past sin]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

Behold, we {are} slaves for my lord (ULT)

{So now,} sir, we are {all} here to be your slaves (UST)

Alternate translation: [Here we all are, ready to be servants for you, sir] or [So now, sir, we are all here to be your servants]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

both we and {the one} (ULT)

including {the one} (UST)

Alternate translation: [including the man]

{the one} in whose hand the cup was found (ULT)

the one} whom {your house-servant} found with your cup {in his bag} (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Alternate translation: [who was found with your cup in his grain sack] or [in whose grain bag your house-servant found the cup] or [whom your house-servant found with your cup in his sack]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Judah
- to my lord
- can we justify ourselves
- God
- the sin of
- your servants
- {are} slaves
- for my lord

UST

- Judah
- Sir, there is nothing {convincing} that we can say {to you}
- There is no way we can prove {to you} that we are innocent
- God is punishing us for our {past} sin
- God is punishing us for our {past} sin
- God is punishing us for our {past} sin
- {So now,} sir, we are {all} here to be your slaves
- {So now,} sir, we are {all} here to be your slaves

Genesis 44:17

ULT:
But he said, "Far be it from me to do that! The man in whose hand the cup was found, he will be a slave for me. But you, go up in peace to your father."

UST:
But Joseph told {them}, "{No,} I would never {even} consider doing such a thing! {Rather} {only} the man whom {my servant} found with my cup {in his bag} will be my slave. {The rest of} you are free to go {back} home to your father."

But he said (ULT)

But Joseph told {them} (UST)

Alternate translation: [But Joseph exclaimed]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Far be it from me to do that (ULT)

{No,} I would never {even} consider doing such a thing (UST)

See how you translated "Far be it from …" in verse 7.

Support Reference: Idiom

The man in whose hand the cup was found, he (ULT)

Rather} {only} the man whom {my servant} found with my cup {in his bag} (UST)

See how you translated **in whose hand the cup was found** in verse 16. Alternate translation: [Only the one who was found with my cup in his bag] or [Only the man in whose bag my servant found the cup] or [Rather only the one whom my servant found with my cup in his bag]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

will be a slave for me (ULT)

will be my slave (UST)

Alternate translation: [will become my slave] or [will stay and serve me as a slave]

But you, go up in peace to your father (ULT)

{The rest of} you are free to go {back} home to your father (UST)

The phrase **go up** refers to the fact that the land of Canaan was higher in elevation than the country of Egypt. Some translations leave **up** implied. Alternate translation: [But you others may return to your father in peace] or [As for the rest of you, you may go back home to your father without any trouble]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- a slave
- in peace

UST

- my slave
- are free to go {back} home

Genesis 44:18

ULT:
Then Judah went near to him and said, "Please, my lord, please let your servant speak a word in my lord's ears, and do not let your anger burn against your servant, since you {are} like Pharaoh.

UST:
Then Judah approached Joseph and said {to him}, "Please, sir, I humbly ask you to let me speak freely to you. Please do not be angry with me, {especially} since you {are} as {powerful as} {King} Pharaoh {himself}.

Then Judah went near to him and said (ULT)

Then Judah approached Joseph and said {to him} (UST)

See how you translated **went near** in Genesis 43:19. Alternate translation: [Then Judah came up to Joseph and said]

Please, my lord (ULT)

Please, sir (UST)

Compare how you translated this phrase in Genesis 43:20. Alternate translation: [Please, master] or [Excuse me, sir]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

please let your servant speak a word in my lord's ears (ULT)

I humbly ask you to let me speak freely to you (UST)

Make sure your translation of **your servant** refers here to Judah, not to someone else. Throughout verses 18–34, Judah uses phrases such as "my lord," "your servant," and "your servants" to be polite and show respect to Joseph. At each point in these verses, make sure it is clear in your translation whom he is referring to. Alternate translation: [I humbly ask you to let

me speak plainly to you] or [will you please allow me your humble servant to say something to you]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

and do not let your anger burn against your servant (ULT)

Please do not be angry with me (UST)

Compare how you translated the idiom “his anger burned” in Genesis 39:19. Alternate translation: [Please do not be angry at me]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

since you {are} like (ULT)

especially} since you {are} as {powerful as} (UST)

Alternate translation: [even though you are equal in rank to]

Pharaoh (ULT)

King} Pharaoh {himself} (UST)

Alternate translation: [the king himself]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Judah
- my lord
- your servant
- my lord
- against your servant
- Pharaoh

UST

- Judah
- sir
- I humbly ask you to let me speak freely to you
- I humbly ask you to let me speak freely to you
- Please do … be angry with me
- King} Pharaoh {himself}

Genesis 44:19

ULT:
My lord asked his servants, saying, ‘Do you have a father or {another} brother?’

UST:
Sir, {previously} you asked us if our father was {still} alive and if we had {any other} brothers.

My lord asked (ULT)

Sir, {previously} you asked (UST)

Alternate translation: [Sir, the last time we were here, you asked]

---

his servants (ULT)

us (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation of **his servants** that Judah is referring to himself and his brothers. Alternate translation: [us your humble servants]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

---

saying, ‘Do you have a father or {another} brother (ULT)

if our father was {still} alive and if we had {any other} brothers (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate the embedded quotes in verses 19–23 as direct or indirect quotes. Alternate translation: [Is your father still alive? Do you have another brother?] or [whether our father was still alive and whether we had any other brothers]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- My lord
- his servants

UST

- Sir
- us

Genesis 44:20

ULT:
And we said to my lord, 'We have an aged father and the youngest son of {his} old age. But his brother is dead, so he is left by himself from his mother, and his father loves him.'

UST:
And we told you, sir, {that} we have an elderly father and {also} a younger brother who was born when our father was {already} old. That brother's mother only had one other son, who is now dead. So our father {especially} loves our youngest brother.

And we said to my lord (ULT)

And we told you, sir, {that} (UST)

Alternate translation: [We answered you, sir, that]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

We have an aged father (ULT)

we have an elderly father (UST)

Alternate translation: [our aged father is still alive]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

and the youngest son of {his} old age (ULT)

and {also} a younger brother who was born when our father was {already} old (UST)

Alternate translation: [and with him is his youngest son whom our father had when he was already old]

But his brother is dead, so he is left by himself from his mother (ULT)

That brother's mother only had one other son, who is now dead (UST)

In this sentence, **brother** refers to an older brother from the same father and mother. Some languages have a special kinship term for that. Alternate translation: [That son is the only one left alive from his mother, since his brother died]

Support Reference: Kinship

---

and his father loves him (ULT)

So our father {especially} loves our youngest brother (UST)

Alternate translation: [So his father loves him very much] or [So his father especially loves our youngest brother]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- my lord
- loves him

UST

- you, sir, {that}
- {especially} loves our youngest brother

Genesis 44:21

ULT:
Then you said to your servants, ‘Bring him down to me, and I will set my eyes on him.’

UST:
Then you told us, sir, to bring our youngest brother {here} to you, so that you could see him for yourself.

Then you said to your servants (ULT)

Then you told us, sir (UST)

Judah uses the humble term **your servants** to show respect and honor to someone of higher status and authority. Alternate translation: [Then you told us, who are your humble servants]

Support Reference: Politeness

Bring him down to me, and I will set my eyes on him (ULT)

to bring our youngest brother {here} to you, so that you could see him for yourself (UST)

The verb “bring … down” refers to the fact that Egypt was lower in elevation than the region of Canaan. Some translations leave **down** implied. Alternate translation: [Bring your youngest brother to me so that I can meet him] or [to bring our youngest brother here to you so that you can see him for yourself]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- your servants

UST
- us, sir

Genesis 44:22

ULT:
And we said to my lord, ‘The young man is not able to leave his father, because {if} he leaves his father, then he will die.’

UST:
But we told you, sir, that the young man should not leave his father {and come here}, because if he did, his father would die {from anxiety}.

And we said to my lord, ‘The young man is not able to leave his father (ULT)

But we told you, sir, that the young man should not leave his father {and come here} (UST)

Alternate translation: [But we told you, sir, that the young man must not leave his father and come here]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

because {if} he leaves his father, then he will die (ULT)

because if he did, his father would die {from anxiety} (UST)

Make sure the way you translate this clause fits with how you translated the previous clause, as either a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [because if he did his father will die from anxiety]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- my lord

UST
- you, sir

Genesis 44:23

ULT:
But you said to your servants, ‘If your youngest brother does not come down with you, you will not see my face again.’

UST:
But then, sir, you told us {that} unless our youngest brother came with us, we could never see you again.

But you said to your servants (ULT)

But then, sir, you told us {that} (UST)

Alternate translation: [But you told us that]

If your youngest brother does not come down with you (ULT)

unless our youngest brother came with us (UST)

Consider again whether to translate the embedded quotes in verses 19–23 as direct or indirect quotes. Alternate translation: [if our youngest brother did not come back here with us]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

you will not see my face again (ULT)

we could never see you again (UST)

Make sure that the way you translate this clause fits with how you translated the beginning of this verse, either as a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [you would not allow us to see you again]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- your servants

UST

- But then, sir, you told us {that}

Genesis 44:24

ULT:
And it happened when we went up to your servant my father, then we related to him the words of my lord.

UST:
When we returned {home} to our father, who highly respects you, we reported to him what you told {us}.

And it happened (ULT)

“וַיְהִי” (ORIG QUOTE) (UST)

Judah is using the word translated as **And it happened** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event. Alternate translation: [So after we got back home again]

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

---

to your servant my father (ULT)

to our father, who highly respects you (UST)

See how you translated “your servant … father” in Genesis 43:28. Alternate translation: [to my father, who is your humble servant] or [to my father, who highly respects you]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

then we related to him (ULT)

we reported to him (UST)

Alternate translation: [we told him]

---

the words of my lord (ULT)

what you told {us} (UST)

Alternate translation: [what you had said to us]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- your servant
- my lord

UST

- who highly respects you
- what you told {us}

Genesis 44:25

ULT:
Then our father said, ‘Return, buy a little food for us.’

UST:
{Months} later our father told {us}, ‘Go back {to Egypt} {and} buy some {more} grain for us.’

Then our father said (ULT)

Months} later our father told {us} (UST)

The pronouns **our** and **us** are exclusive here because they do not include Joseph.

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’

Return, buy a little food for us (ULT)

Go back {to Egypt} {and} buy some {more} grain for us (UST)

The pronoun **us** is inclusive here because what Judah’s father (Jacob) had said included the brothers whom he was talking to. See how you translated this same quote in Genesis 43:2.
Alternate translation: [Go back to Egypt and buy some more grain for all of us]

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’

Genesis 44:26

ULT:
But we said, 'We cannot go down. {But} if our youngest brother is with us, then we will go. For we are not able to see the man's face and our youngest brother not {be} with us.'

UST:
But we replied {to him}, 'We cannot go {there} unless our youngest brother is with us. Then we can go. The governor {who sells grain there} will not allow us to see him {again} if our youngest brother is not with us.'

We cannot go down. {But} if our youngest brother is with us, then we will go (ULT)

We cannot go {there} unless our youngest brother is with us. Then we can go (UST)

See how you translated "… down" in verses 21 and 23. Alternate translation: [We can only go down there if our youngest brother is with us]

For we are not able to see the man's face (ULT)

The governor {who sells grain there} will not allow us to see him {again} (UST)

The phrase **the man's face** refers to the governor (Joseph) himself. Translate this in a way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [We will not be allowed to go to the man who sells grain there] or [The man who sells grain there will not permit us to see him again]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

Genesis 44:27

ULT:
Then your servant my father said to us, ‘You know that my wife bore two {sons} for me.

UST:
Then our father said to us, ‘As you know, my wife {Rachel} and I {only} had two {sons} together.

Then your servant my father said to us (ULT)

Then our father said to us (UST)

See how you translated **your servant my father** in verse 24. Also notice that the pronoun **us** does not include Joseph here. Some languages use an exclusive pronoun for this. Alternate translation: [Then my father who is your humble servant said to us] or [Then my father said to us]

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’

You know that (ULT)

As you know (UST)

The pronoun “you” is plural here, referring to all the brothers. Alternate translation: [As you all know]

Support Reference: Forms of ‘You’ — Singular

---

my wife bore two {sons} for me (ULT)

my wife {Rachel} and I {only} had two {sons} together (UST)

Alternate translation: [my wife Rachel bore only two sons for me]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- your servant
- know
- bore

UST

- עַבְדְּךָ (ORIG QUOTE)
- As you know
- and I {only} had … together

Genesis 44:28

ULT:
And the one went away from me, and I have said, "He was surely torn to pieces," and I have not seen him until now.

UST:
One {of her sons} left here {one day}, and I have not seen him since then. I am sure that {a wild animal} must have {killed him and} torn him apart.

And the one went away from me (ULT)

One {of her sons} left here {one day} (UST)

Alternate translation: [One of those sons left here one day] or [One of them has disappeared]

---

and I have said, "He was surely torn to pieces," and I have not seen him until now (ULT)

and I have not seen him since then. I am sure that {a wild animal} must have {killed him and} torn him apart (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this doubly embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Also see how you translated "torn. … to pieces" in Genesis 37:33.
Alternate translation: [I have thought that he must have been killed and torn to pieces by a fierce animal. I have never seen him again] or [and I have not seen him since then. I am sure that a fierce animal must have killed him and torn him apart]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

Genesis 44:29

ULT:
So {if} you also take this {one} from my presence, and harm were to meet him, then you would bring my gray head down in misery to Sheol.'

UST:
So if you also take her other son {away} from me, and anything harms him, you will cause me, your gray-haired father, so much grief that I will {die and} go down to the afterworld.'

So {if} you also take this {one} from my presence (ULT)

So if you also take her other son {away} from me (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate the hypothetical sentence in this verse. Make sure all the parts of the sentence fit together well. Alternate translation: [So if you also take this son away from me]

Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

---

and harm were to meet him (ULT)

and anything harms him (UST)

See how you translated a similar clause in Genesis 42:38. Alternate translation: [and something terrible happens to him] or [and if anything bad happens to him]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

then you would bring my gray head down in misery (ULT)

you will cause me, your gray-haired father, so much grief that I will {die and} go down (UST)

See how you translated **bring my gray head down** in Genesis 42:38. Alternate translation: [you will cause me, your elderly father, to grieve so deeply that I will die and go down] or [you will cause me, your elderly father, so much sorrow that I will die and go down]

Support Reference: Idiom

Genesis 44:30

ULT:
And now, when I go to your servant my father and the young man is not with us, since his soul is bound to his soul,

UST:
So now, {sir,} if we go {home} to our father without his youngest son, since our father's life depends on his son's life,

And now (ULT)

So now (UST)

This phrase introduces the conclusion to what Judah said in verses 24–29. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: [So then]

---

when I go to your servant my father (ULT)

{sir,} if we go {home} to our father (UST)

See how you translated **your servant my father** in verses 24 and 27. Alternate translation: [when we return home to my father, who highly respects you] or [if I go home to my father, sir]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

since his soul is bound to his soul (ULT)

since our father's life depends on his son's life (UST)

This idiom reflects how close the relationship was between Judah's father and youngest brother. Consider what is the best way to say this in your language. Alternate translation: [since our father is deeply attached to his son]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- your servant
- is bound

UST

- עַבְדְּךָ (ORIG QUOTE)
- depends

Genesis 44:31

ULT:
then it will happen when he sees that the young man is not {there}, then he will die! And your servants will bring the gray head of your servant our father down in sorrow to Sheol!

UST:
if he sees that his son is gone, he will die! {Yes,} we will cause our gray-haired father so much grief that he will {die and} go to the afterworld!

then it will happen when he sees that the young man is not {there}, then he will die (ULT)

if he sees that his son is gone, he will die (UST)

The phrase **then it will happen** introduces an important hypothetical event here and helps create suspense so that readers will wonder what the outcome will be. Many translations omit the phrase because it is not natural in their language. Alternate translation: [then he will die when he sees that his youngest son is not with us!]

Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

And your servants will bring the gray head of your servant our father down in sorrow (ULT)

{Yes,} we will cause our gray-haired father so much grief that he will {die and} go (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this hypothetical situation in your language. Also, see how you translated "bring … gray head down in sorrow to Sheol" in Genesis 42:38, and a similar phrase in 44:29. Alternate translation: [Yes, we would bring our elderly father so much sorrow that he would die and go] or [In that way, we would be responsible for bringing our elderly father …]

Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the young man
- your servants
- your servant

UST

- his son
- עַבְדֶּיךָ (ORIG QUOTE)
- עַבְדְּךָ (ORIG QUOTE)

Genesis 44:32

ULT:
For your servant guaranteed the young man to my father, saying, ‘If I do not bring him {back} to you, then I will have sinned against my father all the days.’

UST:
Besides that, sir, I promised my father that I would return his son to him safely. I told {him} that if I did not bring his son {back} to him, I would be guilty of sinning against him forever.

For your servant guaranteed the young man to my father, saying (ULT)

Besides that, sir, I promised my father that I would return his son to him safely. I told {him} that (UST)

See how you translated the verb “guarantee” in Genesis 43:9. Alternate translation: [Besides that, sir, I guaranteed my father that I would return his son to him safely. I told him that]

If I do not bring him {back} to you (ULT)

if I did not bring his son {back} to him (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote.

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

then I will have sinned against my father (ULT)

I would be guilty of sinning against him (UST)

See how you translated a similar clause in Genesis 43:9. Alternate translation: [then this would be a terrible sin against him]

Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

---

all the days (ULT)

forever (UST)

Be consistent here with your choice in Genesis 43:9. Alternate translation: [all the days of my life] or [for the rest of my life]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- your servant
- guaranteed
- the young man
- then I will have sinned
- the days

UST

- sir, I promised
- sir, I promised
- my father that I would return his son to him safely
- I would be guilty of sinning
- forever

Genesis 44:33

ULT:
And now, please let your servant stay {as} a slave for my lord instead of the young man, and let the young man go up with his brothers.

UST:
So then, sir, I beg you to let me stay {here} and be your slave in place of our youngest {brother}, and let him go back {home} with his {other} brothers.

And now (ULT)

So then (UST)

This phrase introduces the conclusion to what Judah said in verses 30–32. See how you translated this phrase in verse 30. Alternate translation: [So now]

---

please let your servant stay (ULT)

sir, I beg you to let me stay {here} (UST)

Consider again how you translated **your servant** and "your servants" throughout this chapter. See verses 7, 9, 18, 24, 27, 30–32. Alternate translation: [I urge you to allow me your servant to be the one to stay here] or [sir, I urge you to let me stay here]

Support Reference: Politeness

{as} a slave for my lord (ULT)

and be your slave (UST)

Throughout this chapter, the same Hebrew word is translated as **slave** when the context has negative connotations (verses 9–10, 16–17, 33), but is translated as **servant** when the context has more positive connotations (verses 7, 9, 16, 18–19, 21, 23–24, 27, 30–32). Do what is best

in your language in each context. Alternate translation: [as a slave for you] or [and be your servant]

---

instead of (ULT)

in place of (UST)

Alternate translation: [to take the place of]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- your servant
- {as} a slave
- for my lord

UST

- sir, I beg you to let me stay {here}
- and be your slave
- and be your slave

Genesis 44:34

ULT:
For how will I go up to my father if the young man is not with me? I fear to see the misery that would find my father!”

UST:
There is no way I can go back to my father if his youngest {son} is not with me! I could not bear to see how terribly my father would suffer!”

For how will I go up (ULT)

There is no way I can go back (UST)

Judah uses this rhetorical question to emphasize how difficult it would be for him to return to his father without his brother. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [I could never]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

will I go up to my father (ULT)

I can go back to my father (UST)

Consider again how you translated “… up” in verses 17, 24, 33–34. Contrast that to how you translated “… down” in verses 21, 23, and 26. Some translations leave **up** or “down” implied. Alternate translation: [return home to my father]

---

if the young man is not with me (ULT)

if his youngest {son} is not with me (UST)

Alternate translation: [if our youngest brother is not with me!]

Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

I fear to see (ULT)

I could not bear to see (UST)

Alternate translation: [I do not want to see]

---

the misery that would find my father (ULT)

how terribly my father would suffer (UST)

Judah is speaking of **misery** as if it were a living thing that could **find** his **father**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [how much my father would grieve!]

Support Reference: Personification

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the misery

UST

- how terribly my father would suffer

Genesis 45

Genesis 45:1

ULT:
Then Joseph was not able to control himself before all who were standing by him, and he called out, “Have every man leave from beside me!” So no man stood with him when Joseph revealed himself to his brothers.

UST:
{When Joseph heard that,} he could no {longer} keep himself from crying in front of all his servants, so he shouted {to them}, “All of you leave my presence!” {Immediately the servants left the room,} so that no one else was with Joseph when he told his brothers who he was.

Then Joseph was not able (ULT)

When Joseph heard that,} he could no {longer} (UST)

Alternate translation: [When Joseph heard what Judah said, he was no longer able to]

---

to control himself (ULT)

keep himself from crying (UST)

Alternate translation: [hide his feelings]

---

before all who were standing by him (ULT)

in front of all his servants (UST)

Make sure that your translation of this phrase refers to Joseph's servants, not his brothers. Alternate translation: [in front of all his servants who were with him] or [in front of all his attendants]

---

and he called out (ULT)

so he shouted {to them} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he shouted to them] or [so he said loudly to them]

Have every man leave (ULT)

All of you leave (UST)

Alternate translation: [All of you, leave]

So no man stood with him when Joseph revealed himself to his brothers (ULT)

{Immediately the servants left the room,} so that no one else was with Joseph when he told his brothers who he was (UST)

Make sure your use of nouns or pronouns to refer to Joseph and his brothers here is clear and natural in your language. Alternate translation: [So Joseph was alone with his brothers when he made himself known to them] or [Immediately his servants left the room, so that no one else was with him when he told his brothers who he was]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- and he called out
- when … revealed himself
- Joseph

UST

- {When Joseph heard that,} he
- so he shouted {to them}
- when he told … who he was
- יוֹסֵף (ORIG QUOTE)

Genesis 45:2

ULT:
And he gave his voice in crying, and the Egyptians heard, and the house of Pharaoh heard.

UST:
But he started crying so loudly that {many} Egyptians heard {him}, including Pharaoh's family.

And he gave his voice in crying (ULT)

But he started crying so loudly (UST)

Consider whether your language has an idiom such as **gave his voice in crying**. Also see how you translated "cried" in Genesis 42:24; 43:30. Alternate translation: [Then he raised his voice and cried loudly so that]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and the Egyptians heard, and the house of Pharaoh heard (ULT)

that {many} Egyptians heard {him}, including Pharaoh's family (UST)

The word **house** refers here to Pharaoh's family members and servants, not a literal building.

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- the Egyptians
- the house of
- Pharaoh

UST
- {many} Egyptians
- s family
- Pharaoh

Genesis 45:3

ULT:
Then Joseph said to his brothers, “I {am} Joseph! Is my father still alive?” But his brothers were not able to answer him, because they were terrified at his presence.

UST:
Then he exclaimed to his brothers {in their language}, “I {am} {your brother} Joseph! Is my father still alive?” But Joseph’s brothers could not reply to him, because they felt very afraid to be standing in front of him.

Then Joseph said to his brothers (ULT)

Then he exclaimed to his brothers {in their language} (UST)

In this chapter, the word **brothers** refers to Joseph’s older brothers (from different mothers) and his younger brother (from the same mother). Alternate translation: [Then Joseph exclaimed to his brothers in their language]

Support Reference: Kinship

I {am} Joseph (ULT)

I {am} {your brother} Joseph (UST)

Alternate translation: [I am Joseph, your brother!]

Is my father still alive (ULT)

Is my father still alive (UST)

Joseph uses **my father** to emphasize his relationship with his father. Make sure your translation does not sound like he had a different father than his brothers. Alternate translation: [Is our father still alive?]

But his brothers were not able to answer him (ULT)

But Joseph's brothers could not reply to him (UST)

Alternate translation: [His brothers could not say a word]

---

because they were terrified at his presence (ULT)

because they felt very afraid to be standing in front of him (UST)

For some languages it is necessary to put this clause earlier in this sentence and say, "But his brothers were so terrified to see him that they could not answer him." Alternate translation: [because they were shocked to realize that they were in his presence]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- Joseph
- they were terrified

UST

- יוֹסֵף (ORIG QUOTE)
- {am} {your brother} Joseph
- they felt very afraid

Genesis 45:4

ULT:
Then Joseph said to his brothers, “Please come close to me.” So they came close, and he said, “I {am} Joseph your brother, whom you sold into Egypt.

UST:
So Joseph said to them, “Please come here next to me.” After they went closer {to him}, he said {to them}, “I {really am} your brother Joseph, whom you sold {to be a slave} in {the country of} Egypt.

Please come close to me (ULT)

Please come here next to me (UST)

Alternate translation: [Please come near to me]

So they came close, and he said (ULT)

After they went closer {to him}, he said {to them} (UST)

Alternate translation: [When they went closer to him, he said to them] or [After they did that, he said to them]

I {am} Joseph your brother (ULT)

I {really am} your brother Joseph (UST)

Alternate translation: [I truly am your brother Joseph]

---

whom you sold into Egypt (ULT)

whom you sold {to be a slave} in {the country of} Egypt (UST)

Joseph's brothers sold him to slave traders who were going to Egypt. If necessary, you could make some of that information explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: [whom you sold as a slave that was taken here to Egypt]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- Joseph
- into Egypt

UST

- Joseph
- really am … Joseph
- in {the country of} Egypt

Genesis 45:5

ULT:
And now, do not be grieved and do not let it burn in your eyes that you sold me here, because God sent me ahead of you for the preservation of life.

UST:
But now, do not be upset or angry with yourselves for selling me, because {it was actually} God {who} sent me {here} before you came, to save {many people's} lives.

do not be grieved (ULT)

do not be upset (UST)

Alternate translation: [do not be distressed]

---

and do not let it burn in your eyes (ULT)

or angry with yourselves (UST)

Consider again how you translated various idioms for "anger" or "be angry" in the book of Genesis. See 4:5–6; 30:2; 31:35–36; 34:7; 44:18; 45:5. It may be necessary to translate these idioms in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [or angry at yourselves]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

that you sold me here (ULT)

for selling me (UST)

Alternate translation: [that you sold me and caused me to be a slave here] or [for selling me as a slave]

---

because God sent me (ULT)

because {it was actually} God {who} sent me {here} (UST)

Alternate translation: [because God sent me here]

---

ahead of you (ULT)

before you came (UST)

Alternate translation: [before you got here]

---

for the preservation of life (ULT)

to save {many people's} lives (UST)

Alternate translation: [to keep many people from dying]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God

UST

- it was actually} God {who}

Genesis 45:6

ULT:
For this {is} two years the famine {has been} in the midst of the land, and {there are} still five years {in} which {there will} not be plowing and harvesting.

UST:
For two years {now} {there has been} a famine throughout this region, and for another five years {it will be so severe that} no one will {be able to} plant {seeds} or harvest {crops}.

For this {is} two years (ULT)

For two years {now} (UST)

Alternate translation: [The past two years]

---

the famine {has been} in the midst of the land (ULT)

{there has been} a famine throughout this region (UST)

See how you translated **famine** in Genesis 12:10. Alternate translation: [there has been a famine throughout this country] or [a famine has been affecting this whole region]

---

and {there are} still five years {in} which (ULT)

and for another five years {it will be so severe that} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and for another five years it will be so bad that] or [and during the next five years it will be even worse, so that] or [and there will be five more years when]

{there will} not be plowing and harvesting (ULT)

no one will {be able to} plant {seeds} or harvest {crops} (UST)

Alternate translation: [there will be no plowing of fields or harvesting of crops]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- two years
- the famine
- the land
- years
- plowing
- and harvesting

UST

- For two years {now}
- {there has been} a famine
- this region
- years
- plant {seeds}
- or harvest {crops}

Genesis 45:7

ULT:
But God sent me ahead of you to preserve a remnant for you on the earth, and to keep you alive by a great deliverance.

UST:
That is why God sent me {here} before you came, to save your lives in this amazing way so that you will survive and have descendants on the earth.

But God sent me (ULT)

That is why God sent me {here} (UST)

Alternate translation: [God caused me to come here]

---

ahead of you (ULT)

before you came (UST)

Alternate translation: [before you got here]

---

to preserve a remnant for you (ULT)

so that you will survive and have descendants (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that you will have descendants living] or [to help you survive and have descendants]

---

on the earth (ULT)

on the earth (UST)

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) **on the earth** or (2) “in the/this land”

---

and to keep you alive (ULT)

to save your lives (UST)

Alternate translation: [by helping you stay live] or [by saving your lives]

---

by a great deliverance (ULT)

in this amazing way (UST)

For some languages it is better to put the last two phrases earlier in this sentence and say, “But God sent me ahead of you to save your lives in this amazing way so that you will survive and have descendants on the earth.” Alternate translation: [through his amazing rescue] or [in this powerful way]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- a remnant
- on the earth
- by a … deliverance

UST

- God
- so that you will survive and have descendants
- on the earth

- in this … way

Genesis 45:8

ULT:
So now, {it was} not you {who} sent me here, but God. And he has made me father to Pharaoh, and lord over all his house and the ruler in all the land of Egypt.

UST:
So then, you {were} not {the ones} {who} caused me to come here, but {rather} {it was} God {who sent me}. He has {also} made me {like a} father to {King} Pharaoh, so that I am the one in charge of his entire household and {also} the governor over the entire country of Egypt.

{it was} not you (ULT)

you {were} not {the ones} (UST)

Alternate translation: [you are not the ones]

{who} sent me here (ULT)

{who} caused me to come here (UST)

Alternate translation: [who brought me here]

---

but God (ULT)

but {rather} {it was} God {who sent me} (UST)

Alternate translation: [but rather it was God who brought me] or [but rather God is the one who did it]

And he has made me father to Pharaoh (ULT)

He has {also} made me {like a} father to {King} Pharaoh (UST)

Joseph was like a father to Pharaoh in that Pharaoh highly honored him and Joseph took care of Pharaoh's household and all their needs. Alternate translation: [He has even made me like a father to King Pharaoh]

Support Reference: Metaphor

---

and the ruler (ULT)

and {also} the governor (UST)

Alternate translation: [and also the highest official]

---

in all the land of Egypt (ULT)

over the entire country of Egypt (UST)

Alternate translation: [in the whole country of Egypt]

---

and lord over all his house (ULT)

so that I am the one in charge of his entire household (UST)

See how you translated **lord** in Gen 42:30 and 33, and how you translated **house** in Gen 41:40. Alternate translation: [so that I am the master of his entire household]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- to Pharaoh
- and lord
- his house
- and the ruler
- the land of
- Egypt

UST

- it was} God {who sent me}
- to {King} Pharaoh
- so that I am the one in charge
- his … household
- and {also} the governor
- country of
- Egypt

Genesis 45:9

ULT:
Hurry and go up to my father and say to him, 'This {is what} your son Joseph says, "God has made me lord over all Egypt. Come down to me, do not delay.

UST:
Hurry back to our father and tell him that his son Joseph has sent him this message: 'God has appointed me governor over the entire {country of} Egypt. {So} {please} come down {here} {to live} near me, {and} do not delay.

Hurry and go up (ULT)

Hurry back (UST)

In this verse, the words **up** and **down** reflect the fact that Canaan was higher in elevation than Egypt. Many languages leave those words implied. Alternate translation: [Hurry up] or [Leave quickly and go back] or [Return quickly]

---

to my father (ULT)

to our father (UST)

See how you translated **my father** in verse 3.

---

and say to him, 'This {is what} your son Joseph says (ULT)

and tell him that his son Joseph has sent him this message (UST)

Consider whether it is best in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote.

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

God has made me lord over all Egypt (ULT)

God has appointed me governor over the entire {country of} Egypt (UST)

Consider whether it is best in your language to translate this doubly embedded quote (which continues through verse 11) as a direct or indirect quote. An example of an indirect quote would be: "God has made him the ruler over all Egypt. He urges you to come down there to live near him, without delay. He also says that you and your family may live in Goshen Province and that way you will live near him … He will provide for you there …" Alternate translation: [God has made me ruler over the entire country of Egypt]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

do not delay (ULT)

{and} do not delay (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this sentence and say, "So please do not take very long, but rather come down/here quickly to live near me." Alternate translation: [and do not wait] or [and do not take very long to come]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Joseph
- God
- lord
- Egypt

UST
- Joseph
- God
- governor
- {country of} Egypt

Genesis 45:10

ULT:
And you will live in the land of Goshen so that you will be near to me—you and your children and your children's children and your flocks and your herds and all that {belongs} to you.

UST:
You can live in Goshen Province. That way you will live close to me with your children and your grandchildren, along with your flocks {of sheep and goats}, your herds {of cattle} and everything {else} that you own.

And you will live (ULT)

You can live (UST)

The pronouns **you** and **your** in this verse are singular, but Joseph's message to his father includes the whole family. Alternate translation: [You and your family may live]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

in the land of Goshen (ULT)

in Goshen Province (UST)

Goshen was a region or territory that was part of the country of Egypt. Make sure your translation of **land** does not sound like Goshen was its own country. Alternate translation: [in the region of Goshen] or [in Goshen County]

---

so that you will be near to me (ULT)

That way you will live close to me (UST)

Alternate translation: [and that way you can be near me] or [That way you can live close to me]

---

and your flocks and your herds (ULT)

along with your flocks {of sheep and goats}, your herds {of cattle} (UST)

Alternate translation: [as well as all your domestic animals]

---

and all that {belongs} to you (ULT)

and everything {else} that you own (UST)

Alternate translation: [and all your other belongings]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- in the land of
- Goshen
- and your flocks
- and your herds

UST

- in … Province
- Goshen
- along with your flocks {of sheep and goats}
- your herds {of cattle}

Genesis 45:11

ULT:
And I will provide for you there, because {there are} still five years of famine, so that you will not become impoverished, you and your household and all that {belongs} to you.”’

UST:
I will take care of you there, since the famine will last five {more} years. {Please come} so that {the famine} will not cause you and your family to lose everything you own {and die}.’”

And I will provide for you there (ULT)

I will take care of you there (UST)

Alternate translation: [I will support you there]

---

because {there are} still five years of famine (ULT)

since the famine will last five {more} years (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, “There are still five more years of famine ahead/coming, so I will provide for you there in Goshen.” Alternate translation: [since there are still five more years of famine ahead] or [because the famine will last five more years]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

so that you will not become impoverished, you and your household and all that {belongs} to you (ULT)

Please come} so that {the famine} will not cause you and your family to lose everything you own {and die} (UST)

The verb **become impoverished** can include losing livestock, other belongings, and the lives of their servants and family members. Alternate translation: [That way you and your extended

family will not become poor and die] or [Please come so that the famine does not cause you and your family to lose everything you own and die]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- years
- of famine
- and your household

UST

- {more} years
- the famine
- and your family

Genesis 45:12

ULT:
And behold, your eyes and the eyes of my brother Benjamin see that {it is} my mouth that is speaking to you.

UST:
{Then Joseph said to his brothers,} "Look! {All of} you, including my brother Benjamin, {can} see that {it really is} me, {Joseph,} who is talking to you.

And behold (ULT)

{Then Joseph said to his brothers,} "Look (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Joseph's message to his father was completed in verse 11, and that here in verse 12 he is talking directly to his brothers again. Alternate translation: [Now look] or [Then Joseph said to his brothers, Look!]

---

your eyes (ULT)

{All of} you (UST)

The word **eyes** is used figuratively here (and in the next phrase) to refer to the persons themselves; it also emphasizes the fact that they were seeing Joseph in person. Consider what is the best way to translate this phrase in your language. Alternate translation: [I can tell that all of you]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

---

and the eyes of my brother Benjamin (ULT)

including my brother Benjamin (UST)

See how you translated **brother** in Genesis 43:29.

Support Reference: Kinship

> **see that {it is} my mouth (ULT)**
>
> **can} see that {it really is} me, {Joseph … } (UST)**

Here the phrase **my mouth** refers to Joseph himself; it also emphasizes the fact that it was Joseph himself who was talking to them. Consider what is the best way to translate this figure of speech in your language. Alternate translation: [can see that I Joseph am the one]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Benjamin

UST
- Benjamin

Genesis 45:13

ULT:
So report to my father all my glory in Egypt and all that you have seen. Then hurry and bring my father down here.”

UST:
So {go and} tell our father all {about} how powerful I am in Egypt and {about} everything {else} that you have seen {here}. Then quickly bring him down here {to me}.”

So report to my father (ULT)

So {go and} tell our father (UST)

Alternate translation: [So go and tell my father]

---

all my glory in Egypt (ULT)

all {about} how powerful I am in Egypt (UST)

Alternate translation: [about my high position in Egypt] or [about how honored I am in Egypt]

Then hurry and bring my father down here (ULT)

Then quickly bring him down here {to me} (UST)

See how you translated **down** in verse 9. Alternate translation: [Then hurry and bring him down here to me] or [Then quickly bring him here to me]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- So report
- my glory
- in Egypt

UST

- So {go and} tell
- {about} how powerful I am
- in Egypt

Genesis 45:14

ULT:
Then he fell on the neck of Benjamin his brother and cried, and Benjamin cried on his neck.

UST:
Then Joseph hugged his brother Benjamin {tightly} and cried {for joy}, and Benjamin {also} cried as he hugged Joseph.

Then he fell on the neck of Benjamin his brother (ULT)

Then Joseph hugged his brother Benjamin {tightly} (UST)

See how you translated the idiom “fell on his neck” in Genesis 33:4. Alternate translation: [Then Joseph hugged his brother Benjamin strongly]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and cried (ULT)

and cried {for joy} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and started crying because he was so happy]

---

and Benjamin cried on his neck (ULT)

and Benjamin {also} cried as he hugged Joseph (UST)

Alternate translation: [Benjamin also cried as he hugged him back]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Benjamin
- and Benjamin

UST

- Benjamin
- and Benjamin {also}

Genesis 45:15

ULT:
Then he kissed all his brothers and cried over them. And after that his brothers talked with him.

UST:
Then Joseph kissed all his brothers {on their cheeks} as he continued to cry {for joy}. After {he did} that, his brothers started talking with him.

Then he kissed all his brothers (ULT)

Then Joseph kissed all his brothers {on their cheeks} (UST)

See how you translated "kissed … on the cheeks" in Genesis 33:4. Alternate translation: [Next Joseph kissed all his brothers on their cheeks] or [Next Joseph greeted all his brothers with a kiss on their cheeks]

---

and cried over them (ULT)

as he continued to cry {for joy} (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, "Then as Joseph continued to cry, he kissed all his brothers on the/their cheeks." Alternate translation: [with tears of joy]

Support Reference: Information Structure

And after that his brothers talked with him (ULT)

After {he did} that, his brothers started talking with him (UST)

Previously Joseph's brothers had been too afraid to speak (verse 3). Now they felt free to start talking to him.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then he kissed

UST

- Then Joseph kissed

Genesis 45:16

ULT:
And the report was heard {in} the house of Pharaoh, saying, "The brothers of Joseph have come." And it was good in the eyes of Pharaoh and in the eyes of his servants.

UST:
When Pharaoh's household heard the news that Joseph's brothers had come {there}, Pharaoh and {all} his servants were happy.

The brothers of Joseph have come (ULT)

that Joseph's brothers had come {there} (UST)

Consider whether it is better to use a direct or indirect quote here in your language.

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

And it was good in the eyes of Pharaoh and in the eyes of his servants (ULT)

Pharaoh and {all} his servants were happy (UST)

Alternate translation: [it was pleasing to Pharaoh and all his officials] or [Pharaoh and all his officials were pleased]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- {in} the house of
- Pharaoh
- Joseph
- And it was good
- Pharaoh
- his servants

UST
- s household
- Pharaoh
- that Joseph
- were happy

- Pharaoh
- and {all} his servants

Genesis 45:17

ULT:
Then Pharaoh said to Joseph, "Say to your brothers, 'Do this: Load your animals and leave; go to the land of Canaan.

UST:
So Pharaoh told Joseph, "Give your brothers this message {from me}: 'Load your donkeys {with grain} and go quickly {back} to Canaan.

Then Pharaoh said to Joseph (ULT)

So Pharaoh told Joseph (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Pharaoh told Joseph] or [Then Pharaoh gave these instructions to Joseph:]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Say to your brothers, 'Do this: Load your animals (ULT)

Give your brothers this message {from me}: 'Load your donkeys {with grain} (UST)

These animals were donkeys (Genesis 43:18, 44:3), not any other kind of animal. Also, consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote with a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [Tell your brothers to load their pack animals with grain]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

and leave; go (ULT)

and go quickly {back} (UST)

The two verbs **leave** and **go** emphasize that Joseph's brothers should go back immediately to their father in Canaan. Alternate translation: [and quickly return]

---

to the land of Canaan (ULT)

to Canaan (UST)

Alternate translation: [to region of Canaan]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Pharaoh
- Joseph
- your animals
- to the land of
- Canaan

UST

- Pharaoh
- Joseph
- your donkeys
- to
- Canaan

Genesis 45:18

ULT:
Then get your father and your households, and come to me, and I will give to you the best of the land of Egypt, and you will eat the fat of the land.'

UST:
Then bring your father and your families {back} {here} to me. I will give you the best {area} in the country of Egypt {to live in}, so that you will live well with the best of everything in the country.'"

Then get your father and your households, and come to me (ULT)

Then bring your father and your families {back} {here} to me (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that verse 18 is still part of Pharaoh's message to Joseph's brothers. Also make sure the pronouns that you use throughout verses 17 and 18 fit with whether you translate this embedded quote with a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [Then tell them to bring their father and their families back here to me]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

and I will give to you (ULT)

I will give you (UST)

Alternate translation: [I will give them]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

the best of the land of Egypt (ULT)

the best {area} in the country of Egypt {to live in} (UST)

Alternate translation: [the best land in the country of Egypt to live in]

---

and you will eat the fat of the land (ULT)

so that you will live well with the best of everything in the country (UST)

This idiom means that they would live comfortably with the best of everything; it does not just refer to food. Consider whether or not you have a similar idiom in your language.

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- your households
- the best of
- the land of
- Egypt
- the land

UST

- your families
- the best {area} in … to live in
- the country of
- Egypt
- the country

Genesis 45:19

ULT:
And you are commanded, ‘Do this: Take carts with you from the land of Egypt for your little ones and for your wives, and get your father and come.

UST:
{Then Pharaoh said to Joseph,} “I also want you {to tell them} to take {some of} {my} wagons with them from the country of Egypt for their wives and {young} children {to travel in}. Then {tell them} to bring their father {back} {here to live}.

And you are commanded (ULT)

Then Pharaoh said to Joseph,} “I also want you {to tell them} (UST)

The pronoun **you** is singular here and refers to Joseph. This clause is not part of Pharaoh’s message to Joseph’s brothers (verses 17–20). Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: [You are also directed to tell them]

Do this: Take carts with you (ULT)

to take {some of} {my} wagons with them (UST)

These carts or wagons had two or four wheels and were pulled by animals such as oxen or donkeys. Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote with a direct or indirect quote. See what you did for a similar case in verses 17–18. Alternate translation: [Take some of my carts with you] or [to take some of my carts with them]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

for your little ones and for your wives (ULT)

for their wives and {young} children {to travel in} (UST)

For some languages it is more natural (and respectful) to put **wives** before **little ones** in this phrase. Also see how you translated **little ones** in Genesis 43:8. Alternate translation: [for your young children and wives to ride in] or [for your wives and young children to ride in]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

and get your father and come (ULT)

Then {tell them} to bring their father {back} {here to live} (UST)

Make sure the pronouns you use throughout verses 19 and 20 fit with whether you translate the embedded quote with a direct or indirect quote. Also see how you translated **get your father** in verse 18. Alternate translation: [then bring them and your father back here to live] or [Then tell them to bring their father and their families back here to live]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- from the land of
- Egypt

UST

- from the country of
- Egypt

Genesis 45:20

ULT:
And do not let your eyes grieve over your belongings, because the best of all the land of Egypt {belongs} to you.’”

UST:
They should not worry about {leaving some of} their belongings {behind}, because the best {things} in all the country of Egypt {will be} theirs.”

And do not let your eyes grieve (ULT)

They should not worry (UST)

Alternate translation: [And do not be concerned] or [You should not worry]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

over your belongings (ULT)

about {leaving some of} their belongings {behind} (UST)

Alternate translation: [about leaving some of your belongings behind] or [if you have to leave behind some of your possessions]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

because the best of all the land of Egypt (ULT)

because the best {things} in all the country of Egypt (UST)

This phrase refers generally to the wealth of Egypt that will be available to Jacob’s family, including fertile land and anything else that they need. Alternate translation: [because the best

of everything in the land of Egypt] or [because the most valuable things in all the land of Egypt]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the best of
- the land of
- Egypt

UST

- the best {things} in
- the country of
- Egypt

Genesis 45:21

ULT:
Then the sons of Israel did so. And Joseph gave to them carts according to the mouth of Pharaoh, and he gave provisions to them for the road.

UST:
So Israel's sons {agreed to} do that. Then Joseph gave them wagons {to use} as {King} Pharaoh had commanded, and he supplied them with food to eat as they traveled {home}.

Then the sons of Israel did so (ULT)

So Israel's sons {agreed to} do that (UST)

The author assumes that readers will know that **the sons of Israel** are the sons of Jacob. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. Here and again in verse 28, Jacob is referred to by his other name, Israel. If that is not clear in your translation, you could put that information in a footnote. If possible in your translation, it is best to keep the name that the author chose to use in each case so that you do not change what is being emphasized. Alternate translation: [So the sons of Israel did this]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

And Joseph gave to them carts (ULT)

Then Joseph gave them wagons {to use} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Joseph gave them carts to use]

---

according to the mouth of Pharaoh (ULT)

as {King} Pharaoh had commanded (UST)

This phrase refers to what Pharaoh said. Alternate translation: [as King Pharaoh had directed him]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

and he gave provisions to them (ULT)

and he supplied them with food (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he provided them with food to eat] or [and he gave them food]

---

for the road (ULT)

to eat as they traveled {home} (UST)

Alternate translation: [to eat on their trip home]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Israel
- Joseph
- Pharaoh

UST

- Israel
- Joseph
- {King} Pharaoh

Genesis 45:22

ULT:
To all of them, to each {one}, he gave changes of clothes, but to Benjamin he gave 300 {shekels} of silver and five changes of clothes.

UST:
He {also} gave a {new} set of clothes to each one of his brothers, but to Benjamin he gave five {new} sets of clothes and 300 {pieces} of silver {money}.

To all of them, to each {one}, he gave changes of clothes (ULT)

He {also} gave a {new} set of clothes to each one of his brothers (UST)

Alternate translation: [To each of them he gave a new set of clothes] or [He also gave a new change of clothes to each one of his brothers]

---

but to Benjamin he gave 300 {shekels} of silver and five changes of clothes (ULT)

but to Benjamin he gave five {new} sets of clothes and 300 {pieces} of silver {money} (UST)

For some languages it is better to mention the gift of clothes to Benjamin before the gift of silver, to more clearly contrast how many clothes he received with how many his brothers received. Also, see how you translated **shekels of silver** in Genesis 20:16 (and see the note there). Three hundred shekels of silver was equal to about 3.5 kilos (7.5 pounds). Alternate translation: [but to Benjamin he gave 300 pieces of silver money and five new changes of clothes] or [but to Benjamin he gave five new changes of clothes plus 300 pieces of silver money]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- but to Benjamin
- {shekels} of silver

UST

- but to Benjamin
- pieces} of silver {money}

Genesis 45:23

ULT:
And to his father he sent this: ten he-donkeys loaded with the best of Egypt, and ten she-donkeys loaded {with} grain and bread and provisions for his father for the road.

UST:
He also gave {them} the following gifts to give to his father: ten male donkeys that were carrying {some of} the best {things} from Egypt, and ten female donkeys that were carrying grain, bread, and {other} food for him {and his family} to eat as they traveled {to Egypt}.

And to his father he sent this (ULT)

He also gave {them} the following gifts to give to his father (UST)

Alternate translation: [Besides that, he sent with them the following gifts for his father:] or [He also gave them the following things to give to his father:]

---

with the best of Egypt (ULT)

{some of} the best {things} from Egypt (UST)

Alternate translation: [some of the best products from Egypt] or [some of the most valuable things produced in the country of Egypt]

---

grain and bread and provisions (ULT)

grain, bread, and {other} food (UST)

Alternate translation: [bags of grain, bread, and other food] or [food provisions, including grain and bread]

---

for his father (ULT)

for him {and his family} (UST)

Alternate translation: [for his father and family]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

for the road (ULT)

to eat as they traveled {to Egypt} (UST)

See how you translated “provisions … for the road” in verse 21 and Genesis 42:25. Alternate translation: [to eat on his trip to Egypt] or [to eat as he traveled to Egypt]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- he-donkeys
- with the best of
- Egypt
- she-donkeys
- grain
- and bread

UST

- male donkeys
- {some of} the best {things} from
- Egypt
- female donkeys
- grain
- bread

Genesis 45:24

ULT:
Then he sent his brothers, and {as} they left, then he said to them, "Do not quarrel on the road."

UST:
Then Joseph sent his brothers off {on their way home}. As they were leaving, he told them, "Do not argue {with each other} on the way."

Then he sent his brothers (ULT)

Then Joseph sent his brothers off {on their way home} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Joseph saw his brothers off on their way home] or [After that, Joseph got his brothers started on their journey home]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

then he said to them, "Do not quarrel (ULT)

he told them, "Do not argue {with each other} (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to use a direct or indirect quote here. Alternate translation: [he told them not to argue with one another]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

---

on the road (ULT)

on the way (UST)

Alternate translation: [on the journey] or [as you travel]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Do … quarrel

UST

- Do … argue {with each other}

Genesis 45:25

ULT:
Then they went up from Egypt and came {to} the land of Canaan, to Jacob their father.

UST:
Then Joseph's brothers left Egypt and traveled {home} to their father Jacob in the region of Canaan.

Then they went up from Egypt (ULT)

Then Joseph's brothers left Egypt (UST)

See how you translated **up** in verse 9.

---

and came {to} the land of Canaan, to Jacob their father (ULT)

and traveled {home} to their father Jacob in the region of Canaan (UST)

Alternate translation: [and went back home to their father Jacob in the land of Canaan]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- from Egypt
- the land of
- Canaan
- Jacob

UST
- Egypt
- in the region of
- Canaan
- Jacob

Genesis 45:26

ULT:
And they reported to him, saying, "Joseph {is} still alive! And in fact, he {is} the ruler over all the land of Egypt!" But his heart went numb because he did not believe them.

UST:
{When they arrived,} they announced to him, "Joseph {is} still alive! In fact, he {is} the governor over the entire country of Egypt!" {When their father heard that news,} he was stunned {and silent}, because he could not believe them.

And they reported to him, saying (ULT)

{When they arrived,} they announced to him (UST)

Alternate translation: [They immediately announced to him] or [When they arrived, they exclaimed to him]

Joseph {is} still alive! And in fact, he {is} the ruler over all the land of Egypt (ULT)

Joseph {is} still alive! In fact, he {is} the governor over the entire country of Egypt (UST)

See how you translated **ruler** in verse 8. Alternate translation: [Joseph is still alive! In fact, he is the governor of the entire country of Egypt!]

But his heart went numb (ULT)

When their father heard that news,} he was stunned {and silent} (UST)

This idiom means that Jacob was so shocked that he did not know which way to go with his emotions or what to think, say, or do; it does not mean that he died. Some languages have a similar idiom. Alternate translation: [When Jacob heard that, he was completely shocked]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

because he did not believe them (ULT)

because he could not believe them (UST)

Alternate translation: [because he thought it could not be true]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And they reported
- Joseph
- {is} the ruler
- the land of
- Egypt

UST

- {When they arrived,} they announced
- Joseph
- {is} the governor
- country of
- Egypt

Genesis 45:27

ULT:
Then they told him all the words of Joseph that he had spoken to them, and he saw the carts that Joseph had sent to carry him, then the spirit of Jacob their father revived.

UST:
But {after} they told him everything that Joseph had said to them, and {after} he saw the wagons that Joseph had sent to carry him {and his family} {to Egypt}, he recovered {from the shock}.

Then they told him (ULT)

But {after} they told him (UST)

Alternate translation: [But then they reported to him]

---

and he saw the carts (ULT)

and {after} he saw the wagons (UST)

See how you translated **carts** in verses 19 and 21. Alternate translation: [and when he saw the carts]

---

then the spirit of Jacob their father revived (ULT)

he recovered {from the shock} (UST)

Alternate translation: [their father Jacob felt much better]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Joseph
- Joseph

- the spirit of
- Jacob

UST

- Joseph
- Joseph
- he recovered {from the shock}
- יַעֲקֹב (ORIG QUOTE)

Genesis 45:28

ULT:
And Israel said, "Enough! Joseph my son {is} still alive! I will go and see him before I die."

UST:
Then he exclaimed {to them}, "{That's} enough! {It must be true!} My son Joseph really is alive! I must go {now} and see him {again} before I die."

And Israel said (ULT)

Then he exclaimed {to them} (UST)

Consider again whether to include in this chapter a footnote which explains that **Israel** (verses 21 and 28) and "Jacob" (verses 25 and 27) refer to the same person, not two different people.
Alternate translation: [Then Israel exclaimed to them]

Joseph my son {is} still alive (ULT)

My son Joseph really is alive (UST)

Alternate translation: [My son Joseph must still be alive!]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Israel
- Joseph

UST
- יִשְׂרָאֵל (ORIG QUOTE)
- Joseph

Genesis 46

Genesis 46:1

ULT:
Then Israel set out and all that {belonged} to him. Then he came to Beersheba, and he sacrificed sacrifices to the God of his father Isaac.

UST:
So Israel {and his family} started traveling {toward Egypt} with all their belongings. When they reached {the city of} Beersheba, he offered some of his animals {on an altar} {there} as sacrifices to God, whom his father Isaac had worshiped.

Then Israel set out and all that {belonged} to him (ULT)

So Israel {and his family} started traveling {toward Egypt} with all their belongings (UST)

Alternate translation: [So Israel started the journey to Egypt with all his family members and belongings] or [So Israel and his family started traveling toward Egypt with all his belongings]

---

and he sacrificed sacrifices (ULT)

he offered some of his animals {on an altar} {there} as sacrifices (UST)

The author is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [he offered offerings] or [burned some of his animals on an altar there as sacrifices]

Support Reference: Poetry

---

to the God of his father Isaac (ULT)

to God, whom his father Isaac had worshiped (UST)

Alternate translation: [to God, whom his father Isaac had served]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- to Beersheba
- Israel
- to Beersheba
- and he sacrificed
- sacrifices
- to the God of
- Isaac

UST

- {the city of} Beersheba
- Israel {and his family}
- {the city of} Beersheba
- he offered some of his animals {on an altar} {there} as sacrifices
- he offered some of his animals {on an altar} {there} as sacrifices
- to God, whom … had worshiped
- Isaac

Genesis 46:2

ULT:
And God spoke to Israel in visions of the night and said, "Jacob! Jacob!" And he said, "Behold me."

UST:
During the night God called to Israel in a vision, "Jacob! Jacob!" Jacob replied, "Yes, {Lord}?"

And God spoke to Israel in visions of the night and said, "Jacob! Jacob (ULT)

During the night God called to Israel in a vision, "Jacob! Jacob (UST)

God repeats Jacob's name to communicate that he has something urgent or important to tell him. Make sure your translation of this phrase does not sound angry or critical. Also see how you translated "vision" in Genesis 15:1.

And he said (ULT)

Jacob replied (UST)

For some languages, it is more natural to put this quotation margin (**he said**) after the quote. Alternate translation: [Jacob replied to him]

Support Reference: Information Structure

Behold me (ULT)

Yes, {Lord} (UST)

Consider again how you translated the idiom **Behold me** throughout the book of Genesis. See 22:1, 7, 11; 27:1, 18; 31:11; 37:13; 46:2. Alternate translation: [Here I am, Lord] or [Yes, Master?] or [I am listening, Lord]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- God
- to Israel
- in visions of
- Jacob
- Jacob

UST

- God
- to Israel
- in a vision
- Jacob
- Jacob

Genesis 46:3

ULT:
And he said, "I {am} God, the God of your father. Do not be afraid to go down to Egypt, because I will make you into a great nation there.

UST:
Then God said {to him}, "I {am} God, the God whom your father worshiped. Do not be afraid of moving down to {the country of} Egypt, because I will make your descendants {multiply and} become a large people group {while they live} there.

I {am} God, the God of your father (ULT)

I {am} God, the God whom your father worshiped (UST)

See how you translated **the God of** in verse 1. Alternate translation: [I am God, the God whom your father served]

Do not be afraid (ULT)

Do not be afraid (UST)

Alternate translation: [You must not be afraid]

---

to go down to Egypt (ULT)

of moving down to {the country of} Egypt (UST)

Alternate translation: [to move down to the country of Egypt] or [to go to the country of Egypt and settle there]

---

because I will make you (ULT)

because I will make your descendants (UST)

See how you translated **I will make you into a great nation** (and similar phrases) in Genesis 12:2; 17:20; 18:18; 21:13, 18. Alternate translation: [because I will make you and your descendants] or [because I will make your family] or [because I will give you many descendants, who will]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

into a great nation there (ULT)

{multiply and} become a large people group {while they live} there (UST)

Alternate translation: [multiply and become an important ethnic group there]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- {am} God
- the God of
- Do … be afraid
- to Egypt
- into a … nation

UST

- {am} God
- the God whom your father worshiped
- Do not be afraid
- to {the country of} Egypt
- {multiply and} become a … people group

Genesis 46:4

ULT:
I myself will go down with you to Egypt, and I myself will also surely bring you up. And Joseph will put his hand over your eyes.”

UST:
I will personally go with you down to Egypt {and take care of you there}. Later I will definitely bring your descendants {back} {here to Canaan}. When you die, Joseph will be with you.”

I myself will go down with you to Egypt (ULT)

I will personally go with you down to Egypt {and take care of you there} (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate the emphatic pronoun **I** here and in the next clause. Also see how you translated **down** and **up** in Genesis 45:9. Alternate translation: [I personally will go with you to Egypt]

---

and I myself will also surely bring you up (ULT)

Later I will definitely bring your descendants {back} {here to Canaan} (UST)

The pronoun **you** refers here to Jacob’s descendants.

Support Reference: Metonymy

And Joseph will put his hand over your eyes (ULT)

When you die, Joseph will be with you (UST)

This clause refers to the custom of closing a person’s eyes after he died and means that Joseph would be with Jacob when he died. Alternate translation: [And when you die, Joseph will be right there to close your eyes]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- to Egypt
- And Joseph

UST

- to Egypt
- Joseph

Genesis 46:5

ULT:
Then Jacob got up from Beersheba, and the sons of Israel carried Jacob their father and their little ones and their wives in the carts that Pharaoh had sent to carry him.

UST:
After that, Jacob left {the city of} Beersheba, and his sons took him and their wives and children in the wagons that {King} Pharaoh had provided for them to ride in {to Egypt}.

Then Jacob got up from Beersheba (ULT)

After that, Jacob left {the city of} Beersheba (UST)

Be consistent with how you spell **Beersheba** throughout the book of Genesis. See 21:14, 31–33; 22:19; 26:23, 33; 28:10; 46:1, 5. Alternate translation: [So Jacob left the city of Beersheba] or [After that, Jacob whose other name was Israel left the city of Beersheba]

---

and the sons of Israel carried Jacob their father (ULT)

and his sons took him (UST)

"and his sons, the sons of Israel, took/transported him their father" or "and his sons, that is the sons of Israel, took/transported him" or "and his sons took/transported him." **Israel** is the name that God gave to Jacob (Genesis 32:28, 35:10). In chapters 45 and 46, the text repeatedly switches back and forth between both of Jacob's names. Make sure it is clear in your translation that these two names refer to the same person. You could include a footnote that helps readers understand what is happening. Alternate translation: [and his sons, the sons of Israel, took him their father] or [and his sons, that is the sons of Israel, took him] or [and his sons transported him]

---

and their little ones and their wives (ULT)

and their wives and children (UST)

See how you translated “little ones and … wives” in Genesis 45:19. Alternate translation: [as well as their children and wives]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

in the carts (ULT)

in the wagons (UST)

See how you translated **carts** in Genesis 45:19, 21, 27.

---

that Pharaoh (ULT)

that {King} Pharaoh (UST)

For a note about how **Pharaoh** is used like a name in the Bible, see 12:15. Alternate translation: [that Pharaoh the king of Egypt] or [that the king of Egypt]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

had sent (ULT)

had provided (UST)

Alternate translation: [had sent to Canaan]

---

to carry him (ULT)

for them to ride in {to Egypt} (UST)

The pronoun **him** refers to Jacob, the head of his family, and includes Jacob's wives and children. It may be necessary to use the plural pronoun "them" to make that clear. Alternate translation: [to transport him to Egypt] or [for them to ride on to Egypt]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- from Beersheba
- Jacob
- from Beersheba
- Israel
- Jacob
- Pharaoh

UST

- {the city of} Beersheba
- Jacob
- {the city of} Beersheba
- him
- him
- {King} Pharaoh

Genesis 46:6

ULT:
And they took their livestock and their possessions that they had acquired in the land of Canaan. Then they came to Egypt, Jacob and all of his offspring with him,

UST:
They {also} brought {with them} their livestock and their {other} belongings that they had gotten in the region of Canaan. Then Jacob and all of his descendants arrived in Egypt.

And they took their livestock (ULT)

They {also} brought {with them} their livestock (UST)

Alternate translation: [They also took with them their animals]

---

and their possessions (ULT)

and their {other} belongings (UST)

Consider again how you translated **possessions** in the book of Genesis. See 12:5 (and note); 13:6; 14:11–12, 16, 21; 15:14; 31:18; 36:7; 46:6. It may be necessary to translate this term in slightly different ways, depending on the context.

---

that they had acquired (ULT)

that they had gotten (UST)

Consider again how you translated **acquired** in the book of Genesis. See 12:5; 31:18; 36:6; 46:6. Alternate translation: [that they had accumulated]

---

in the land of Canaan (ULT)

in the region of Canaan (UST)

Alternate translation: [in Canaan]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- their livestock
- in the land of
- Canaan
- to Egypt
- Jacob
- his offspring

UST

- their livestock
- in the region of
- Canaan
- in Egypt
- Jacob
- his descendants

Genesis 46:7

ULT:
his sons and his sons' sons with him, his daughters and his sons' daughters. So all his offspring he brought with him to Egypt.

UST:
He brought his entire {extended} family with him to Egypt, {including} his sons and daughters, {and} his grandsons and granddaughters.

his sons and his sons' sons with him, his daughters and his sons' daughters (ULT)

{including} his sons and daughters, {and} his grandsons and granddaughters (UST)

Consider what is the best way in your language to list these descendants. Alternate translation: [including his sons and grandsons, and his daughters and granddaughters] or [including his sons, daughters, grandsons, and granddaughters]

Support Reference: Kinship

So all his offspring he brought with him to Egypt (ULT)

He brought his entire {extended} family with him to Egypt (UST)

For some languages, it may be clearer or more natural to change the order of the clauses in this verse and say, "He/Jacob brought his entire extended family with him to Egypt, including his sons …" Alternate translation: [Yes, Jacob brought his entire family with him to Egypt] or [Jacob had all his descendants with him when he arrived in Egypt]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- his offspring
- to Egypt

UST

- his … {extended} family
- to Egypt

Genesis 46:8

ULT:
Now these {are} the names of the sons of Israel who went to Egypt, Jacob and his sons: the firstborn of Jacob {was} Reuben.

UST:
Here is a list of the names of Israel's descendants who came {with him} to Egypt, {that is, the names of} Jacob's descendants: Reuben, {who was} his oldest {son},

the firstborn of Jacob {was} Reuben (ULT)

Reuben, {who was} his oldest {son} (UST)

Some translations put verses 8–14, 16–17, and 19–24 in list format, beginning a new paragraph with each of Jacob's sons.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Israel
- to Egypt
- Jacob
- the firstborn of
- Jacob
- {was} Reuben

UST

- Israel
- to Egypt
- {that is, the names of} Jacob's descendants
- who was … oldest {son}
- his
- Reuben

Genesis 46:9

ULT:
And the sons of Reuben {were} Hanoch and Pallu and Hezron and Carmi.

UST:
and Reuben's sons, {who were} Hanoch, Pallu, Hezron, and Carmi.

And the sons of Reuben {were} (ULT)

and Reuben's sons, {who were} (UST)

Throughout this section (verses 9–27), some translations use a colon before each list of names instead of **were** or "who were."

Hanoch and Pallu and Hezron and Carmi (ULT)

Hanoch, Pallu, Hezron, and Carmi (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to include **and** between every name in a list like this. For other languages it is more natural to use commas between names and leave **and** implied, except before the last name in the list. See how you translated similar lists of names in Genesis 10.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Hanoch
- Reuben {were}

UST
- Hanoch
- Reuben

Genesis 46:10

ULT:
And the sons of Simeon {were} Jemuel and Jamin and Ohad and Jakin and Zohar and Shaul, the son of a Canaanite woman.

UST:
{Simeon and} Simeon's sons, {who were} Jemuel, Jamin, Ohad, Jakin, Zohar, and Shaul, who had a Canaanite mother.

and Shaul, the son of a Canaanite woman (ULT)

and Shaul, who had a Canaanite mother (UST)

In this list, only Shaul had a Canaanite mother. See how you translated **Canaanite** in Genesis 38:2. Alternate translation: [and Shaul, whose mother was a Canaanite] or [and Shaul. (Shaul had a Canaanite mother.)]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- and Shaul
- Simeon {were}
- a Canaanite woman

UST
- and Shaul
- Simeon
- who had a Canaanite mother

Genesis 46:11

ULT:
And the sons of Levi {were} Gershon, Kohath, and Merari.

UST:
{Levi and} Levi's sons, {who were} Gershon, Kohath, and Merari.

(There are no notes for this verse)

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Levi {were}

UST

- Levi

Genesis 46:12

ULT:
And the sons of Judah {were} Er and Onan and Shelah and Perez and Zerah, but Er and Onan had died in the land of Canaan. And the sons of Perez were Hezron and Hamul.

UST:
{Judah and} Judah's sons, {who were} Er, Onan, Shelah, Perez, and Zerah; actually, Er and Onan had {already} died in the region of Canaan. Perez's sons were Hezron and Hamul.

Er and Onan and Shelah and Perez and Zerah (ULT)

Er, Onan, Shelah, Perez, and Zerah (UST)

Be consistent here with how you spelled these names in Genesis 38:3–11, 26, 29–30.

---

but Er and Onan had died in the land of Canaan (ULT)

actually, Er and Onan had {already} died in the region of Canaan (UST)

Alternate translation: [actually, Er and Onan had already died in the land of Canaan]

And the sons of Perez were Hezron and Hamul (ULT)

Perez's sons were Hezron and Hamul (UST)

Alternate translation: [Perez had sons named Hezron and Hamul]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Judah {were}
- in the land of
- Canaan

UST

- Judah
- in the region of
- Canaan

Genesis 46:13

ULT:
And the sons of Issachar {were} Tola and Puvah and Job and Shimron.

UST:
{Issachar and} Issachar's sons, {who were} Tola, Puvah, Job, and Shimron.

Tola and Puvah and Job and Shimron (ULT)

Tola, Puvah, Job, and Shimron (UST)

Numbers 26:24 and 1 Chronicles 46:Chronicles have the same list of Issachar's sons as here, but instead of **Puvah** and "Job," they have "Puah" and "Jashub." Some translations keep the spelling for these names the same in all three locations to avoid confusion. Alternate translation: [Tola, Puah, Jashub, and Shimron]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Issachar {were}

UST
- Issachar

Genesis 46:14

ULT:
And the sons of Zebulun {were} Sered and Elon and Jahleel.

UST:
{Zebulun and} Zebulun's sons, {who were} Sered, Elon, and Jahleel.

(There are no notes for this verse)

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Zebulun {were}

UST

- Zebulun

Genesis 46:15

ULT:
Those {were} the sons of Leah, whom she bore for Jacob in Paddan Aram, and Dinah his daughter. All the souls of his sons and his daughters {were} thirty-three.

UST:
Those {were} the sons {and grandsons} whom Jacob and {his wife} Leah had together in {the region of} Paddan Aram. {They} also {had} a daughter {named} Dinah. The total number of those descendants {was} thirty-three.

Those {were} the sons of (ULT)

Those {were} the sons {and grandsons} whom (UST)

Alternate translation: [All those were the descendants]

Leah, whom she bore for Jacob (ULT)

Jacob and {his wife} Leah had together (UST)

Alternate translation: [of Leah and Jacob who were born]

---

in Paddan Aram (ULT)

in {the region of} Paddan Aram (UST)

Alternate translation: [in the land of Paddan Aram]

---

and Dinah his daughter (ULT)

{They} also {had} a daughter {named} Dinah (UST)

Be consistent with how you spell the name **Dinah** in the book of Genesis. See 30:21; 34:1–5, 11, 13, 25–26; 46:15. Alternate translation: [as well as Dinah their daughter] or [in addition to their daughter Dinah]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

All the souls of his sons and his daughters {were} thirty-three (ULT)

The total number of those descendants {was} thirty-three (UST)

Alternate translation: [All together those sons, daughters and grandchildren totaled thirty-three persons]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Aram
- Leah
- she bore
- for Jacob
- in Paddan

UST

- Aram
- Jacob and {his wife} Leah had together
- Jacob and {his wife} Leah had together
- Jacob and {his wife} Leah had together
- in {the region of} Paddan

Genesis 46:16

ULT:
And the sons of Gad {were} Ziphion and Haggi, Shuni and Ezbon, Eri and Arodi and Areli.

UST:
{Jacob's other descendants who came with him included} {his son Gad and} Gad's sons, {who were} Ziphion, Haggi, Shuni, Ezbon, Eri, Arodi, and Areli.

And the sons of Gad {were} (ULT)

Jacob's other descendants who came with him included} {his son Gad and} Gad's sons, {who were} (UST)

This verse begins a new section in the list of Jacob's descendants. Decide what is the best way to begin this new section in your language.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Gad {were}

UST

- Gad

Genesis 46:17

ULT:
And the sons of Asher {were} Imnah and Ishvah and Ishvi and Beriah and Serah their sister. And the sons of Beriah {were} Heber and Malkiel.

UST:
{He also took} {his son Asher and} Asher's sons, {who were} Imnah, Ishvah, Ishvi, and Beriah, and their sister Serah. Beriah's sons {were} Heber and Malkiel.

and Serah their sister (ULT)

and their sister Serah (UST)

Alternate translation: [and their sister, who was Serah] or [and their sister, whose name was Serah] or [Their sister was Serah]

And the sons of Beriah {were} Heber and Malkiel (ULT)

Beriah's sons {were} Heber and Malkiel (UST)

Alternate translation: [Beriah had sons named Heber and Malkiel]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Asher {were}

UST
- Asher

Genesis 46:18

ULT:
Those {were} the sons of Zilpah, whom Laban had given to Leah his daughter. And she bore those sixteen souls for Jacob.

UST:
Those {were} the children {and grandchildren} {that Jacob had} with Zilpah, {who was the servant woman} that Laban had given to his daughter Leah. {Those descendants that} Zilpah and Jacob had together {totaled} sixteen persons.

Those {were} the sons of Zilpah (ULT)

Those {were} the children {and grandchildren} {that Jacob had} with Zilpah (UST)

Be consistent with how you spell the name **Zilpah** in the book of Genesis. See 29:24; 30:9–10, 12; 35:26; 37:2; 46:18. Alternate translation: [Those were the descendants of Jacob and Zilpah]

And she bore those sixteen souls for Jacob (ULT)

{Those descendants that} Zilpah and Jacob had together {totaled} sixteen persons (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to change the order of clauses in this verse and say, “Those were sixteen descendants that Jacob had with his concubine Zilpah, whom Laban had given to his daughter Leah as a maidservant/servant.” Alternate translation: [Zilpah and Jacob had those sixteen descendants] or [The total number of those descendants that Zilpah and Jacob had together was sixteen]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Zilpah
- Laban
- to Leah
- And she bore

- for Jacob

UST

- the children {and grandchildren} {that Jacob had} with Zilpah
- Laban
- to … Leah
- {Those descendants that} Zilpah and Jacob had together
- {Those descendants that} Zilpah and Jacob had together

Genesis 46:19

ULT:
The sons of Rachel, the wife of Jacob, {were} Joseph and Benjamin.

UST:
The sons that Jacob had with his wife Rachel {were} Joseph and Benjamin.

The sons of Rachel, the wife of Jacob, {were} Joseph and Benjamin (ULT)

The sons that Jacob had with his wife Rachel {were} Joseph and Benjamin (UST)

This verse begins a new section in the list of Jacob's descendants. Decide what is the best way to begin this new section in your language.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Rachel
- Jacob
- {were} Joseph
- and Benjamin

UST

- The sons that Jacob had with his wife Rachel
- The sons that Jacob had with his wife Rachel
- {were} Joseph
- and Benjamin

Genesis 46:20

ULT:
And Manasseh and Ephraim were born to Joseph in the land of Egypt, whom Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera the priest of On, bore for him.

UST:
Joseph's {sons} who were born in {the country of} Egypt {were} Manasseh and Ephraim. Their mother was {Joseph's wife} Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera, {who was} the priest at {the city of} On.

whom Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera the priest of On, bore for him (ULT)

Their mother was {Joseph's wife} Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera, {who was} the priest at {the city of} On (UST)

See how you translated "Asenath … daughter of Potiphera the priest of On" in Genesis 41:45.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And … were born
- to Joseph
- in the land of
- Egypt
- bore
- the priest of
- Manasseh
- Ephraim

UST

- Joseph's {sons} who were born
- Joseph's {sons} who were born
- in {the country of}
- Egypt
- Their mother was {Joseph's wife}
- {who was} the priest at
- {were} Manasseh
- Ephraim

Genesis 46:21

ULT:
And the sons of Benjamin {were} Bela and Beker and Ashbel, Gera and Naaman, Ehi and Rosh, Muppim and Huppim and Ard.

UST:
Benjamin's sons {were} Bela, Beker, Ashbel, Gera, Naaman, Ehi, Rosh, Muppim, Huppim, and Ard.

Ehi and Rosh, Muppim and Huppim and Ard (ULT)

Ehi, Rosh, Muppim, Huppim, and Ard (UST)

Remember to use (or not use) **and** between the names in this list in a way that is natural in your language.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and Naaman
- Benjamin {were}

UST

- Naaman
- Benjamin

Genesis 46:22

ULT:
Those {were} the sons of Rachel, whom she bore for Jacob; all the souls {were} fourteen.

UST:
Those {were} the sons {and grandsons} whom Jacob and {his wife} Rachel had together, a total of fourteen descendants.

Those {were} the sons of (ULT)

Those {were} the sons {and grandsons} whom (UST)

Alternate translation: [All those were the descendants]

Rachel, whom she bore for Jacob (ULT)

Jacob and {his wife} Rachel had together (UST)

Your punctuation here will depend on how you translate the rest of this verse. Alternate translation: [that Jacob and his wife Rachel had together] or [who came from Rachel and Jacob]

---

all the souls {were} fourteen (ULT)

a total of fourteen descendants (UST)

Alternate translation: [The total number of those descendants was fourteen]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Rachel
- she bore

- for Jacob

UST

- Jacob and {his wife} Rachel had together
- Jacob and {his wife} Rachel had together
- Jacob and {his wife} Rachel had together

Genesis 46:23

ULT:
And the sons of Dan {were} Hushim.

UST:
{Other descendants who came with Jacob included:} {his son Dan and} Dan's son Hushim.

And the sons of Dan {were} Hushim (ULT)

{Other descendants who came with Jacob included:} {his son Dan and} Dan's son Hushim (UST)

This verse begins a new section in the list of Jacob's descendants. See how you started verse 16, which is similar.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Dan

UST
- Dan

Genesis 46:24

ULT:
And the sons of Naphtali {were} Jahziel and Guni and Jezer and Shillem.

UST:
{Naphtali and} Naphtali's sons, {who were} Jahziel, Guni, Jezer, and Shillem.

Jahziel and Guni and Jezer and Shillem (ULT)

Jahziel, Guni, Jezer, and Shillem (UST)

Consider again how you translated these lists of names in this chapter (verses 9–24).

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Naphtali {were}

UST
- Naphtali

Genesis 46:25

ULT:
Those {were} the sons of Bilhah, whom Laban had given to Rachel his daughter. And she bore those for Jacob; all the souls {were} seven.

UST:
Those {were all} the sons {and grandsons} that Jacob had with Bilhah, {the servant woman} whom Laban had given to his daughter Rachel. The total number of those descendants {was} seven.

Those {were} the sons of Bilhah (ULT)

Those {were all} the sons {and grandsons} … Bilhah (UST)

Be consistent in how you spell **Bilhah** in the book of Genesis. See 29:29; 30:3–5, 7; 35:22, 25; 37:2; 46:25. Also see how you translated verse 18, which is similar in structure to verse 25. Alternate translation: [Those were the descendants of Jacob and Bilhah]

---

whom Laban had given to Rachel his daughter (ULT)

{the servant woman} whom Laban had given to his daughter Rachel (UST)

Alternate translation: [who was the servant woman whom Laban had given to his daughter Rachel]

And she bore those for Jacob; all the souls {were} seven (ULT)

that Jacob had with … The total number of those descendants {was} seven (UST)

For some languages it is better to change the order of clauses in this verse and say, “All those were seven descendants that Jacob had with his concubine Bilhah, whom Laban had given to his daughter Rachel as a maidservant/servant.” Alternate translation: [The total number of those descendants that Bilhah and Jacob had together was seven] or [Those descendants that Bilhah had with Jacob totaled seven persons]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Bilhah
- Laban
- to Rachel
- And she bore
- for Jacob

UST

- Bilhah
- Laban
- to … Rachel
- that Jacob had with
- that Jacob had with

Genesis 46:26

ULT:
All the souls who went with Jacob to Egypt, who came out of his thigh, apart from the wives of Jacob's sons; all the souls {were} sixty-six.

UST:
Altogether Jacob had sixty-six blood relatives who went with him to Egypt. That {number} does not include {his wives or} his sons' wives.

All the souls who went with Jacob to Egypt (ULT)

Altogether Jacob had … who went with him to Egypt (UST)

Alternate translation: [The total number of people who traveled with Jacob to Egypt]

---

who came out of his thigh (ULT)

blood relatives (UST)

Make sure that your translation of this idiom can be read in public without offending or embarrassing listeners. See how you translated a similar idiom in Genesis 35:11. Alternate translation: [who came from him] or [who were his blood relatives] or [who were his biological descendants]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

apart from the wives of Jacob's sons (ULT)

That {number} does not include {his wives or} his sons' wives (UST)

Alternate translation: [not including his wives or the wives of his sons]

---

all the souls {were} sixty-six (ULT)

sixty-six (UST)

For some languages it is clearer and more natural to change the order of the clauses in this sentence and say, “Altogether Jacob had sixty-six blood relatives who went with him to Egypt. That number does not include his wives or his sons’ wives.” Alternate translation: [was sixty-six people in all]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- with Jacob
- to Egypt
- his thigh
- Jacob

UST

- Altogether Jacob had … who went with him
- to Egypt
- blood relatives
- {his wives or} his sons’ wives

Genesis 46:27

ULT:
And the sons of Joseph who were born for him in Egypt {were} two souls. All the souls {belonging} to the house of Jacob who went to Egypt {were} seventy.

UST:
{If you include} {Jacob, Joseph, and} Joseph's two sons, who were born in Egypt, {then} there was a total of seventy members of Jacob's family in Egypt.

And the sons of Joseph who were born for him in Egypt {were} two souls (ULT)

{If you include} {Jacob, Joseph, and} Joseph's two sons, who were born in Egypt (UST)

Alternate translation: [Joseph and his two sons were already in Egypt, so, including Jacob]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- were born
- in Egypt
- {belonging} to the house
- Jacob
- to Egypt

UST

- Joseph
- were born
- in Egypt
- members of Jacob's family in Egypt
- members of Jacob's family in Egypt
- members of Jacob's family in Egypt

Genesis 46:28

ULT:
And he sent Judah before him to Joseph to show {the way} before him to Goshen. And they came to the land of Goshen.

UST:
{When they reached Egypt,} Jacob had Judah go to Joseph ahead of them to get directions {from him} to Goshen {Province}. After that, Jacob's family traveled to Goshen.

And he sent Judah (ULT)

{When they reached Egypt,} Jacob had Judah go (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then he told Judah to go] or [When they reached Egypt, he had Judah go]

---

before him to Joseph (ULT)

to Joseph ahead of them (UST)

Alternate translation: [ahead of them to Joseph]

---

to show {the way} before him (ULT)

to get directions {from him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [to find out which way to go] or [to ask him how to get]

---

to Goshen (ULT)

to Goshen {Province} (UST)

Goshen was a region or territory that was part of the country of Egypt. For some languages it is better to make that explicit here, rather than wait until the end of the verse. Also be consistent here with how you spelled **Goshen** in Genesis 45:10. Alternate translation: [to the region of Goshen] or [to Goshen County]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

And they came (ULT)

After that, Jacob's family traveled (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation who is being referred to here. Alternate translation: [Then Jacob and his family traveled to]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

to the land of Goshen (ULT)

to Goshen (UST)

If you use **the land of Goshen** earlier in this verse, it may be better to just say **Goshen** here. Alternate translation: [the region of Goshen] or [Goshen County]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Judah
- Joseph
- to Goshen
- to the land of
- Goshen

UST

- Judah
- Joseph
- to Goshen {Province}
- to
- Goshen

Genesis 46:29

ULT:
Then Joseph harnessed his chariot and went up to meet Israel his father in Goshen. And he appeared to him, and he fell on his neck and cried on his neck a long time.

UST:
Then Joseph got his chariot ready and went to Goshen to meet his father Israel. {There} Joseph greeted his father and hugged him {tightly} and cried {for joy} on his shoulder {for} a long time.

Then Joseph harnessed his chariot (ULT)

Then Joseph got his chariot ready (UST)

Joseph may have harnessed his horses to his chariot himself, or he may have had his servants do that for him (which was usual for a powerful person like him). Consider how you translated similar situations in Genesis 41:48. Also see how you translated **chariot** in Genesis 41:43. Alternate translation: [Then Joseph got his cart ready] or [Then Joseph had his servants get his cart ready]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and went up to meet Israel his father in Goshen (ULT)

and went to Goshen to meet his father Israel (UST)

See how you translated **went up** in Genesis 13:1 and "go up" in Genesis 45:9.

And he appeared to him (ULT)

{There} Joseph greeted his father (UST)

Alternate translation: [When he got there, Joseph went up to his father]

---

and he fell on his neck (ULT)

and hugged him {tightly} (UST)

See how you translated “fell on … neck” in Genesis 45:14. Alternate translation: [and put his arms around his neck] or [and hugged him strongly]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- his chariot
- Israel
- in Goshen

UST

- Joseph
- his chariot
- Israel
- to Goshen

Genesis 46:30

ULT:
Then Israel said to Joseph, "Now I can die, since I have seen your face, that you {are} still alive!"

UST:
Then Israel exclaimed to Joseph, "Now when I die {I will be at peace}, because I have seen you in person {and know} that you are still alive!"

Then Israel said to Joseph (ULT)

Then Israel exclaimed to Joseph (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Israel exclaimed to him]

Now I can die (ULT)

Now when I die {I will be at peace} (UST)

Jacob did not die until 17 years later (Genesis 47:28). Make sure your translation of this clause does not mean or imply that Jacob wanted to die soon or that he thought he would die soon. Alternate translation: [Now I will die happy]

---

since I have seen your face (ULT)

because I have seen you in person (UST)

In this context, **your face** refers to Joseph, not just his face. Decide what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [since I have seen you face to face] or [since I have seen you in person]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Israel
- Joseph

UST

- Israel
- Joseph

Genesis 46:31

ULT:
Then Joseph said to his brothers and to the household of his father, "I will go up and report to Pharaoh, and I will say to him, 'My brothers and the household of my father who {were living} in the land of Canaan have come to me.

UST:
Then Joseph announced to his brothers and {the rest of} his father's family, "I will go to {King} Pharaoh and inform him, 'My brothers and {the rest of} my father's family have traveled {here} from the region of Canaan to live near me.

Then Joseph said to his brothers (ULT)

Then Joseph announced to his brothers (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Joseph told his brothers]

I will go up and report to Pharaoh, and I will say to him (ULT)

I will go to {King} Pharaoh and inform him (UST)

Make sure that the way Joseph refers to Pharaoh here sounds respectful in your translation. See what you did in Genesis 41:35. Alternate translation: [I will go to King Pharaoh and tell him]

Support Reference: Politeness

My brothers and the household of my father (ULT)

My brothers and {the rest of} my father's family (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote (in verses 31–32) with a direct or indirect quote.

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

who {were living} in the land of Canaan have come to me (ULT)

have traveled {here} from the region of Canaan to live near me (UST)

Alternate translation: [have come here from the land of Canaan to live near me]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- the household of
- and report
- to Pharaoh
- and the household of
- {were living} in the land of
- Canaan

UST

- Joseph
- the rest of … s family
- and inform him
- to {King} Pharaoh
- and {the rest of} … s family
- from the region of Canaan
- from the region of Canaan

Genesis 46:32

ULT:
And the men {are} herders of sheep, for they are livestock men, and they have brought their flock{s} and their herd{s} and everything that {belongs} to them.'

UST:
The men {of my family} raise sheep {and goats}. In fact, they raise {all kinds of} livestock {for a living}, and they have brought {with them} {all} their sheep {and goats} and cattle, and everything {else} that they own.'

And the men {are} herders of sheep (ULT)

The men {of my family} raise sheep {and goats} (UST)

Be consistent here with whether you are translating this embedded quote (that began in verse 31) as an direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [The men of my family tend sheep and goats] or [I will also tell him that you men in my family raise sheep and goats]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

for they are livestock men (ULT)

In fact, they raise {all kinds of} livestock {for a living} (UST)

Alternate translation: [for they are livestock raisers]

---

and everything (ULT)

and everything {else} (UST)

Alternate translation: [as well as everything else]

---

that {belongs} to them (ULT)

that they own (UST)

Alternate translation: [that they have] or [that is theirs]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- {are} herders of
- sheep
- livestock
- and … their flock{s}
- and their herd{s}

UST

- raise
- sheep {and goats}
- they raise {all kinds of} livestock {for a living}
- and … all} their sheep {and goats}
- and cattle

Genesis 46:33

ULT:
Then it will be, when Pharaoh calls for you and says, ‘What {is} your work?’

UST:
So then, when the king summons you and asks {you} what your occupation is,

Then it will be (ULT)

So then (UST)

This phrase introduces and emphasizes what Joseph says next. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language.

---

when Pharaoh (ULT)

when the king (UST)

Alternate translation: [when King Pharaoh]

---

calls for you and says, ‘What {is} your work (ULT)

summons you and asks {you} what your occupation is (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quotation with a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [summons you and asks you what your work is]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- calls

- Pharaoh

UST

- summons you
- the king

Genesis 46:34

ULT:
then you should say, ‘Your servants have been livestock men from our youth and until now, both we {and} also our fathers,’ so that you can settle in the land of Goshen, because every herder of sheep {is} an abomination {to} Egyptians.”

UST:
you should tell {him}, ‘Sir, ever since the time we were young until now, we have been raising livestock, {which is} the same occupation that our ancestors had.’ That way {he will allow} you to live {separately} in Goshen Province, {especially} since Egyptians despise everyone who raises sheep.”

then you should say (ULT)

you should tell {him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [you must tell him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Your servants have been livestock men from our youth and until now (ULT)

Sir, ever since the time we were young until now, we have been raising livestock (UST)

The phrase “Your servants” shows respect to Pharaoh and acknowledges his high position. It does not mean that Pharaoh actually owns Joseph’s brothers as servants. Translate this in a polite way that shows respect toward Pharaoh. Alternate translation: [Your Majesty, we have raised livestock since the time we were young]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

both we {and} also our fathers (ULT)

{which is} the same occupation that our ancestors had (UST)

See how you translated **fathers** in Genesis 15:15. Alternate translation: [which is the same occupation that our forefathers had]

---

so that (ULT)

That way (UST)

Alternate translation: [If you say that, then]

---

you can settle (ULT)

he will allow} you to live {separately} (UST)

The idea here is that Jacob's family would be permitted to live in rural areas to raise their livestock away from most Egyptians, who despised sheep herders. Alternate translation: [you will be allowed to live privately] or [he will permit you to live privately]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

in the land of Goshen (ULT)

in Goshen Province (UST)

Alternate translation: [in the region of Goshen] or [in Goshen County]

---

because (ULT)

{especially} since (UST)

Alternate translation: [especially because]

---

every herder of sheep {is} an abomination {to} Egyptians (ULT)

Egyptians despise everyone who raises sheep (UST)

For some languages it is clearer and more natural to change the order of phrases in this clause. Also see how you translated **abomination** in Genesis 43:32. Alternate translation: [sheep herders are detestable to Egyptians] or [the people of Egypt have disdain for sheep herders] or [Egyptians detest everyone who raises sheep]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- livestock
- Your servants
- in the land of
- Goshen
- {is} an abomination
- {to} Egyptians
- sheep

UST

- Sir … we have been raising livestock
- Sir … we have been raising livestock
- in … Province
- Goshen
- Egyptians despise
- Egyptians despise
- sheep

Genesis 47

Genesis 47:1

ULT:
Then Joseph went and reported to Pharaoh and said, "My father and my brothers and their flock{s} and their herd{s} and all that {belongs} to them have come from the land of Canaan, and behold, they {are} in the land of Goshen."

UST:
So Joseph went to {King} Pharaoh and informed {him}, "My father and my brothers {and their families} have come {to Egypt} from the region of Canaan and {are} now in Goshen Province. {They brought with them} their sheep, {goats,} cattle, and everything {else} that they own."

Then Joseph went and reported to Pharaoh and said (ULT)

So Joseph went to {King} Pharaoh and informed {him} (UST)

See how you translated "report to Pharaoh" in Genesis 46:31. Alternate translation: [Then Joseph went to King Pharaoh and told him]

My father and my brothers (ULT)

My father and my brothers {and their families} (UST)

It is implied that the brothers brought their families with them. Consider whether or not to make that explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: [My father, my brothers and their families]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and their flock{s} and their herd{s} (ULT)

{They brought with them} their sheep, {goats,} cattle (UST)

Alternate translation: [and their flocks of sheep and goats and their herds of cattle] or [along with their sheep, goats, cattle]

---

have come from the land of Canaan (ULT)

have come {to Egypt} from the region of Canaan (UST)

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to put this clause and the rest of this verse earlier in this sentence. For example: “My father and my brothers and their families have come to Egypt from the region of Canaan and are now in Goshen Province. They brought with them their sheep …” Alternate translation: [have come here from the land of Canaan]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

and behold, they {are} (ULT)

and {are} now (UST)

Alternate translation: [They are staying now] or [and they have already arrived]

---

in the land of Goshen (ULT)

in Goshen Province (UST)

Alternate translation: [in the region of Goshen] or [in Goshen County]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- and reported
- to Pharaoh
- and their flock{s}
- and their herd{s}
- from the land of
- Canaan
- in the land of
- Goshen

UST

- Joseph
- to {King} Pharaoh and informed {him}
- to {King} Pharaoh and informed {him}
- They brought with them} their sheep, {goats … }
- cattle
- from the region of
- Canaan
- in … Province
- Goshen

Genesis 47:2

ULT:
Then he took five men from among his brothers, and he presented them before Pharaoh.

UST:
Then Joseph brought five of his brothers before Pharaoh and introduced them {to him}.

Then he took five men from among his brothers, and he presented them before Pharaoh (ULT)

Then Joseph brought five of his brothers before Pharaoh and introduced them {to him} (UST)

Joseph probably brought his father and brothers with him from Goshen (46:31) to Pharaoh's palace. It is not clear whether or not they were in the room yet when Joseph spoke to Pharaoh about them (47:1). Alternate translation: [Then he took five of his brothers to Pharaoh and presented them to him] or [Joseph had brought five of his brothers with him from Goshen, so he brought them before Pharaoh and presented them to him]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Pharaoh

UST
- Pharaoh

Genesis 47:3

ULT:
Then Pharaoh said to his brothers, "What {is} your work?" And they said to Pharaoh, "Your servants {are} herders of sheep, both we and our fathers."

UST:
Then Pharaoh asked them, "What {is} your occupation?" They answered him, "Your Majesty, we raise sheep {for a living}, just like our ancestors did."

Then Pharaoh said to his brothers (ULT)

Then Pharaoh asked them (UST)

Make sure that your translation of **his brothers** refers to Joseph's brothers, not Pharaoh's.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

What {is} your work (ULT)

What {is} your occupation (UST)

Alternate translation: [What kind of work do you do?] or [What do you do for a living?]

And they said to Pharaoh (ULT)

They answered him (UST)

Alternate translation: [They answered Pharaoh] or [One of them said]

Your servants (ULT)

Your Majesty, we (UST)

See how you translated **Your servants** in Genesis 46:34. Alternate translation: [We, your humble servants] or [Your Majesty, we] or [Sir, we]

Support Reference: Politeness

{are} herders of sheep (ULT)

raise sheep {for a living} (UST)

Alternate translation: [are herdsmen]

---

both we and our fathers (ULT)

just like our ancestors did (UST)

Alternate translation: [just as our ancestors were] or [which is the same kind of work that our forefathers did]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Pharaoh
- {are} herders of
- sheep
- Your servants

UST

- Pharaoh
- raise … for a living
- sheep
- Your Majesty, we

Genesis 47:4

ULT:
Then they said to Pharaoh, "We have come to sojourn in the land, because there is not pasture for the flock{s} that {belong} to your servants, because the famine {is} heavy in the land of Canaan. So now, please let your servants settle in the land of Goshen."

UST:
They {also} said to him, "We have come {here} to live for a while in {your} country. The famine is so severe In the region of Canaan {where we come from} that there is not enough grass {in the fields} for our flocks. So then, sir, please let us live in Goshen Province."

Then they said to Pharaoh (ULT)

They {also} said to him (UST)

For some languages it is more natural here to omit this quote margin, because the same people (Joseph's brothers) are still talking to the same person (Pharaoh). However, the words emphasize what Joseph's five brothers say next and may indicate that there was a pause between what they said in verse 3 and verse 4. Alternate translation: [Then they added]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

We have come to sojourn (ULT)

We have come {here} to live for a while (UST)

Alternate translation: [We have come here to stay for a while] or [We came here to stay temporarily]

---

in the land (ULT)

in {your} country (UST)

Alternate translation: [in this country] or [in your land]

---

because there is not pasture for the flock{s} that {belong} to your servants (ULT)

that there is not enough grass {in the fields} for our flocks (UST)

Alternate translation: [because there was not enough grass for our flocks of sheep and goats] or [Our flocks, sir, did not have enough grass to eat]

---

because the famine {is} heavy in the land of Canaan (ULT)

The famine is so severe In the region of Canaan {where we come from} (UST)

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to put this clause earlier in this sentence. For example: “The famine is so severe/terrible in the region of Canaan where we are/come from that there is not enough grass in the fields for our flocks.” Alternate translation: [in the region of Canaan where we are from, because the famine is so severe there]

Support Reference: Information Structure

So now, please let your servants settle (ULT)

So then, sir, please let us live (UST)

See how you translated **your servants** in verse 3 to show respect. Alternate translation: [So now please let us your humble servants live] or [So then, sir, please let us settle]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

---

in the land of Goshen (ULT)

in Goshen Province (UST)

Alternate translation: [in the region of Goshen]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Pharaoh
- in the land
- for the flock{s}
- {belong} to your servants
- the famine
- in the land of
- Canaan
- your servants
- in the land of
- Goshen

UST

- him
- in {your} country
- for our flocks
- for our flocks
- The famine
- In the region of
- Canaan {where we come from}
- sir … us
- in … Province
- Goshen

Genesis 47:5

ULT:
Then Pharaoh said to Joseph, saying, “Your father and your brothers have come to you.

UST:
Then Pharaoh said to Joseph, “{Now that} your father and brothers have come {to live} near you,

Then Pharaoh said to Joseph, saying (ULT)

Then Pharaoh said to Joseph (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Pharaoh turned to Joseph and said] or [When Pharaoh heard that, he said to Joseph]

Your father and your brothers have come to you (ULT)

{Now that} your father and brothers have come {to live} near you (UST)

Make sure your translation of this clause does not sound like Pharaoh was telling Joseph something he did not already know. Rather, he is stating shared knowledge as the basis for what he says next.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Pharaoh
- Joseph

UST
- Pharaoh
- Joseph

Genesis 47:6

ULT:
The land of Egypt {is} before you. Settle your father and your brothers in the best land; let them settle in the land of Goshen. And if you know that there are men of ability among them, then appoint them overseers of livestock over {those} that {belong} to me."

UST:
you may choose any part of the land of Egypt {for them to live in}. {In fact,} they may live in the best land {in the country}, in Goshen Province. And if you know that some of them are especially talented {at raising livestock}, then put them in charge of raising my livestock {also}."

The land of Egypt {is} before you (ULT)

you may choose any part of the land of Egypt {for them to live in} (UST)

Alternate translation: [the entire land of Egypt is available to you to choose from]

Settle your father and your brothers (ULT)

{In fact,} they may live (UST)

Alternate translation: [So have your father and your brothers settle] or [In fact, they may settle]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

in the best land; let them settle in the land of Goshen (ULT)

in the best land {in the country}, in Goshen Province (UST)

Alternate translation: [in the finest land in the country, in Goshen Province] or [in the region of Goshen, which is the finest land in the country]

And if you know that there are men of ability among them (ULT)

And if you know that some of them are especially talented {at raising livestock} (UST)

Alternate translation: [And if you know that some of them are very skilled at raising livestock]

---

then appoint them overseers of livestock over {those} that {belong} to me (ULT)

then put them in charge of raising my livestock {also} (UST)

Alternate translation: [then make them herdsmen over my livestock also]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- The land of
- Egypt
- in … best
- the … land
- in the land of
- Goshen
- you know
- then appoint them
- overseers of
- livestock

UST

- the land of
- Egypt
- in … best
- the … land {in the country}
- in … Province
- Goshen
- you know
- then put them
- in charge of raising my livestock {also}
- in charge of raising my livestock {also}

Genesis 47:7

ULT:
Then Joseph brought Jacob his father and presented him before Pharaoh, and Jacob blessed Pharaoh.

UST:
Then Joseph took his father Jacob and introduced him to {King} Pharaoh, and Jacob {asked God to} bless Pharaoh.

Then Joseph brought Jacob his father (ULT)

Then Joseph took his father Jacob (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Joseph brought his father Jacob]

---

and presented him before Pharaoh (ULT)

and introduced him to {King} Pharaoh (UST)

See how you translated **presented** in verse 2. Alternate translation: [and presented him to King Pharaoh] or [to King Pharaoh and introduced them to each other]

---

and Jacob blessed Pharaoh (ULT)

and Jacob {asked God to} bless Pharaoh (UST)

In Hebrew, there is a common greeting which means “peace be to you,” so it is possible that Jacob used this blessing of peace here to greet Pharaoh. Alternate translation: [and Jacob greeted and blessed Pharaoh] or [and Jacob asked God to prosper Pharaoh] or [and Jacob greeted Pharaoh with a blessing]

Support Reference: Blessings

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- Jacob
- Pharaoh
- and … blessed
- Jacob
- Pharaoh

UST

- Joseph
- Jacob
- {King} Pharaoh
- and … {asked God to} bless
- Jacob
- Pharaoh

Genesis 47:8

ULT:
Then Pharaoh said to Jacob, "How many {are} the days of the years of your life?"

UST:
Then Pharaoh asked Jacob, "{Sir,} how old are you now?"

How many {are} the days of the years of your life (ULT)

{Sir,} how old are you now (UST)

Make sure your translation of Pharaoh's question about Jacob's age sounds polite. Also, for some languages, a title of respect (such as "Sir") is necessary whenever someone addresses a distinguished old man such as Jacob.

Support Reference: Politeness

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Pharaoh
- Jacob
- the days of
- the years of

UST
- Pharaoh
- Jacob
- {Sir,} how old are you now
- {Sir,} how old are you now

Genesis 47:9

ULT:
And Jacob said to Pharaoh, "The days of the years of my sojournings {are} 130 years. The days of the years of my life have been few and difficult, and they have not reached the days of the years of my fathers' lives in the days of their sojournings."

UST:
Jacob answered him, "I have been living {in this world} for 130 years. My life has been short, with many hardships. In fact, I have not lived {nearly} as long as my ancestors did during their time on earth."

And Jacob said to Pharaoh (ULT)

Jacob answered him (UST)

Alternate translation: [Jacob replied]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

The days of the years of my sojournings {are} 130 years (ULT)

I have been living {in this world} for 130 years (UST)

Consider again how you translated "sojournings," "sojourn," and "sojourner" in the book of Genesis. See 12:10; 15:13; 17:8; 19:9; 20:1; 21:23, 34; 23:4; 26:3; 28:4; 32:4; 35:27; 37:1; 47:4, 9. It may be necessary to translate these terms in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [The length of my life so far has been 130 years]

The days of the years of my life have been few and difficult (ULT)

My life has been short, with many hardships (UST)

Alternate translation: [I have not lived very long, and I have had many difficulties] or [My life has been short, with many difficulties]

---

and they have not reached the days of the years of my fathers' lives (ULT)

In fact, I have not lived {nearly} as long as my ancestors did (UST)

Alternate translation: [In fact, I have lived less years than my forefathers did] or [In fact, I have not lived nearly as long as my forefathers did]

---

in the days of their sojournings (ULT)

during their time on earth (UST)

Alternate translation: [during the time that they lived on earth] or [during their years on earth]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- Pharaoh
- The days of
- the years of
- years
- and difficult
- The days of
- the years of
- the days of
- the years of
- in the days of

UST

- Jacob

- him
- I have been living {in this world} for
- I have been living {in this world} for
- years
- with many hardships
- My life has been
- My life has been
- I have … lived {nearly} as long as my ancestors did
- I have … lived {nearly} as long as my ancestors did
- during their time on earth

Genesis 47:10

ULT:
Then Jacob blessed Pharaoh and left from the presence of Pharaoh.

UST:
Then Jacob {again} {asked God to} bless Pharaoh and left him.

and left from the presence of Pharaoh (ULT)

and left him (UST)

Alternate translation: [and left his presence]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then … blessed
- Jacob
- Pharaoh
- Pharaoh

UST

- Then … {again} {asked God to} bless
- Jacob
- Pharaoh
- him

Genesis 47:11

ULT:
Then Joseph settled his father and his brothers, and he gave them property in the land of Egypt, in the best land, in the land of Rameses, as Pharaoh had commanded.

UST:
After that, Joseph did what Pharaoh had told him {to do}: He helped his father and brothers settle in the country of Egypt. He gave them the choicest property {in Egypt}, which was in {Goshen Province, also known as} Rameses Province.

Then Joseph settled his father and his brothers, and he gave them property in the land of Egypt, in the best land, in the land of Rameses (ULT)

After that, Joseph … He helped his father and brothers settle in the country of Egypt. He gave them the choicest property {in Egypt}, which was in {Goshen Province, also known as} Rameses Province (UST)

It is implied that Rameses (verse 11) was another name for Goshen (verses 1, 4, 6). If necessary, you could make that information explicit in your translation or put it in a footnote. Later in Egypt's history, some of the Pharaohs were named Rameses and a city was named after one of them (Exodus 1:11). Alternate translation: [So Joseph gave his father and his brothers the choicest land in the country of Egypt, and they and their families settled there. The property was in Rameses Count, that is, Goshen County] or [After that, Joseph helped his father and brothers settle in the country of Egypt. He gave them the choicest property in Egypt, which was in Goshen Province, also known as Rameses Province]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

as Pharaoh had commanded (ULT)

did what Pharaoh had told him {to do} (UST)

It may be more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, "After that, Joseph did what Pharaoh had commanded/told him to do: He helped his father and brothers settle in the country of Egypt. He gave them property in Rameses Province/County, that is, Goshen Province/County, which was the choicest land in Egypt." Alternate translation: [just as Pharaoh had told him to do] or [He did exactly as Pharaoh had commanded him to do]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- property
- in the land of
- Egypt
- in … best
- the … land
- in the land of
- Pharaoh

UST

- Joseph
- אֲחֻזָּה (ORIG QUOTE)
- in the country of
- Egypt
- choicest
- the … property {in Egypt}
- which was in {Goshen Province, also known as} … Province
- did what Pharaoh had told him {to do}

Genesis 47:12

ULT:
And Joseph provided his father and his brothers and all the household of his father {with} bread, according to the mouth{s} of the little ones.

UST:
Joseph {also} provided his father and brothers and all {the rest of} his father's family {with} as much food as {each family} needed to feed {all} the people in their family.

bread, according to the mouth{s} of the little ones (ULT)

as much food as {each family} needed to feed {all} the people in their family (UST)

The children are mentioned to emphasize that all the members of the families were well-provided for, including the youngest ones. Make sure it is clear in your translation that Joseph was providing food for everyone in each family, not just the children. Alternate translation: [food, based on how many children were in each family] or [as much food as each family needed to feed all the children in their family]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Joseph
- the household of
- bread

UST
- Joseph
- s family {with}
- as much food as {each family} needed to feed {all} the people in their family

---

Genesis 47:13

ULT:
Now there was no bread in all the earth, because the famine {was} very heavy, and the land of Egypt and the land of Canaan were languishing because of the famine.

UST:
Now {after a while,} the famine became so severe in the entire world that there was very little food {available} {anywhere}. {The people of} the country of Egypt and the region of Canaan were suffering badly because they did not have enough to eat.

Now there was no bread (ULT)

Now {after a while … } … there was very little food {available} {anywhere} (UST)

This clause is probably an exaggeration to emphasize that there was so little food that the people were starving. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Also consider what is the best way in your language to begin this new section that returns to the famine and how it was progressing. Alternate translation: [Now meanwhile, there was no more food] or [Meanwhile, there was almost no food] or [After a while, there was very little food available]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

---

in all the earth (ULT)

in the entire world (UST)

This phrase is ambiguous in the Hebrew text. It could mean: (1) “in all the earth,” or “in the entire known world,” or “anywhere,” which might be an exaggeration (like the previous phrase); or (2) “in all the land,” or “in the/that entire area/region of the earth/world,” which includes Egypt and Canaan (mentioned later in the verse) and other nearby regions and countries. See how you translated **all the earth** in Genesis 41:57.

---

because the famine {was} very heavy (ULT)

the famine became so severe … that (UST)

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to put this clause first in this sentence and say, for example: “Now after a while, the famine was/became so severe/terrible in the entire world that there was very little food available anywhere.” Alternate translation: [because the famine was so severe]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

and the land of Egypt and the land of Canaan were languishing (ULT)

{The people of} the country of Egypt and the region of Canaan were suffering badly (UST)

Make sure your translation of this phrase refers to the people who live in Egypt and Canaan, not just the lands. Alternate translation: [As a result, the people in the country of Egypt and the region of Canaan] or [In fact, the people living in the lands of Egypt and Canaan]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

and … were languishing (ULT)

were suffering badly (UST)

The verb **languishing** refers in general to the suffering that the famine was causing, including things such as weakness, fainting and other distress. Some languages have an idiom (like “were wasting away”) that fits well here. Alternate translation: [were weak] or [were suffering terribly] or [were wasting away]

---

because of the famine (ULT)

because they did not have enough to eat (UST)

Alternate translation: [because of the severe lack of food] or [from hunger]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Now … bread
- the earth
- the famine {was}
- the land of
- Egypt
- and the land of
- Canaan
- the famine

UST

- Now {after a while … } … there was very little food {available} {anywhere}
- in the entire world
- the famine became so severe … that
- {The people of} the country of
- Egypt
- and the region of
- Canaan
- because they did not have enough to eat

Genesis 47:14

ULT:
And Joseph collected all the silver that was found in the land of Egypt and in the land of Canaan for the grain which they were buying, and Joseph brought the silver to the house of Pharaoh.

UST:
So they bought grain from Joseph until there was no more money left in the country of Egypt or the region of Canaan. Joseph {had his servants} take the money to Pharaoh's palace.

And Joseph collected all the silver that was found in the land of Egypt and in the land of Canaan for the grain which they were buying (ULT)

So they bought grain from Joseph until there was no more money left in the country of Egypt or the region of Canaan (UST)

Alternate translation: [So the people spent their money buying grain from Joseph until he had collected all their money] or [So they bought grain from Joseph until there was no more silver left in the country of Egypt or the land of Canaan]

---

and Joseph brought the silver to the house of Pharaoh (ULT)

Joseph {had his servants} take the money to Pharaoh's palace (UST)

Joseph probably had servants do this for him. See what you did for a similar case in Genesis 41:48.

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- the silver
- in the land of
- Egypt
- and in the land of

- Canaan
- for the grain
- Joseph
- the silver
- to the house of
- Pharaoh

UST

- Joseph
- until there was no more money left
- in the country of
- Egypt
- or the region of
- Canaan
- they bought grain from
- Joseph
- the money
- to … s palace
- Pharaoh

Genesis 47:15

ULT:
So the silver was consumed from the land of Egypt and from the land of Canaan, and all Egypt came to Joseph, saying, "Give us bread! And why should we die before you? For the silver is gone!"

UST:
When {the people in} Egypt and Canaan had spent all their money, {people from} all over Egypt went to Joseph and begged {him}, "{Sir,} we have no more money! Please give us food so that we do not starve to death!"

So the silver was consumed from the land of Egypt and from the land of Canaan (ULT)

When {the people in} Egypt and Canaan had spent all their money (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to use a passive or active clause here. Alternate translation: [So when all the silver in the country of Egypt and the region of Canaan had been used up] or [After the people in Egypt and Canaan had spent all their money]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

all Egypt (ULT)

{people from} all over Egypt (UST)

The word **all** is an exaggeration which emphasizes that a large number of Egyptians went to Joseph. Consider whether or not it is best to use exaggeration here in your language. Alternate translation: [all the people in Egypt] or [the Egyptians all]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

---

and … came to Joseph (ULT)

went to Joseph (UST)

Consider whether **came** or "went" is more natural here in your language.

Support Reference: Go and Come

---

saying (ULT)

and begged {him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and pleaded with him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Give us bread (ULT)

Sir … Please give us food (UST)

Make sure your translation of the people's request sounds polite, not rude or disrespectful. Also see how you translated **bread** in verses 12–13. Alternate translation: [Sir, please give us food]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

And why should we die before you (ULT)

so that we do not starve to death (UST)

The people use a rhetorical question here to emphasize how desperate they feel. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [so that we do not die right here in front of you!] or [and do not let us starve to death!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

For the silver is gone (ULT)

we have no more money (UST)

It may be more natural to put this clause first in this quote and say, “Sir, we have no more money to buy grain/food! Please give us food so that we do not starve to death!” Alternate translation: [There is no more money to buy food] or [We have no more money to buy food]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the silver
- from the land of
- Egypt
- and from the land of
- Canaan
- Egypt
- Joseph
- bread
- the silver

UST

- When … had spent all their money
- {the people in} Egypt
- {the people in} Egypt
- and
- Canaan
- Egypt
- Joseph
- food
- we have no more money

Genesis 47:16

ULT:
And Joseph said, "Bring your livestock and I will give {grain} to you {in exchange} for your livestock, since the silver is gone."

UST:
Joseph responded, "Since your money is gone, bring {me} your livestock to pay for the food that I will give you."

And Joseph said (ULT)

Joseph responded (UST)

Alternate translation: [Joseph said to them] or [Joseph replied]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Bring your livestock (ULT)

bring {me} your livestock (UST)

The word **livestock** is general here and includes all the different kinds of animals that are specified in verse 17. Alternate translation: [Give me your animals]

---

and I will give {grain} to you {in exchange} for your livestock (ULT)

to pay for the food that I will give you (UST)

Alternate translation: [and I will sell you grain when you give me your animals to pay for it] or [and in exchange for them I will give you grain]

---

since the silver is gone (ULT)

Since your money is gone (UST)

For some languages it may be more natural to put this clause first in this quote and say, “Since your silver/money is gone, bring/give me your livestock to pay for the grain/food that I will give you.” Alternate translation: [since all your money is gone] or [since you have spent all your money]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- your livestock
- {in exchange} for your livestock
- the silver

UST

- Joseph
- your livestock
- to pay for the food that I will give you
- your money

Genesis 47:17

ULT:
So they brought their livestock to Joseph, and Joseph gave bread to them {in exchange} for the horses and for the herd{s} of sheep and for the herd{s} of cattle and for the donkeys. So he provided them with bread in that year {in exchange} for all their livestock.

UST:
So the people brought their livestock to Joseph. They gave him {their} horses, sheep, goats, cattle, and donkeys to pay for the food that he gave them. In that way Joseph supplied the people with food that year, {and they gave him} all their livestock {to pay} for it.

So they brought their livestock to Joseph (ULT)

So the people brought their livestock to Joseph (UST)

Alternate translation: [So the people took their animals to Joseph]

---

and Joseph gave bread to them {in exchange} for the horses and for the herd{s} of sheep and for the herd{s} of cattle and for the donkeys (ULT)

They gave him {their} horses, sheep, goats, cattle, and donkeys to pay for the food that he gave them (UST)

Alternate translation: [and gave him their horses, sheep, goats, cattle, and donkeys to pay for the food that he gave them]

So he provided them with bread in that year (ULT)

In that way Joseph supplied the people with food that year (UST)

Alternate translation: [In that way Joseph supplied the people with grain that year]

{in exchange} for all their livestock (ULT)

{and they gave him} all their livestock {to pay} for it (UST)

Alternate translation: [and they gave him all their animals to pay for it]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- their livestock
- Joseph
- Joseph
- bread
- {in exchange} for the horses
- and for the herd{s} of
- sheep
- and for the herd{s} of
- cattle
- and for the donkeys
- with bread
- their livestock
- in … year

UST

- their livestock
- Joseph
- They gave him … to pay for the food that he gave them
- They gave him … to pay for the food that he gave them
- {their} horses
- sheep, goats
- sheep, goats
- cattle
- cattle
- and donkeys
- with food
- {and they gave him} all their livestock {to pay} for it
- year

Genesis 47:18

ULT:
And {when} that year had ended, then they came to him in the second year and said to him, "We cannot hide {it} from my lord that since the silver is consumed and the herd{s} of livestock {belong} to my lord, there is nothing left before my lord except our bodies and our lands.

UST:
After that year was over, the people went to Joseph {again} in the following year and pleaded with him, "Sir, as you know, {our} money is gone and {all} {our} livestock {belong} to you. The only way we can pay you {for food} is to give you our farmland and work for you, sir.

And {when} that year had ended (ULT)

After that year was over (UST)

Alternate translation: [When that year was over]

---

then they came to him in the second year (ULT)

the people went to Joseph {again} in the following year (UST)

Alternate translation: [the people came to Joseph again in the next year]

Support Reference: Go and Come

---

and said to him (ULT)

and pleaded with him (UST)

Alternate translation: [and told him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

We cannot hide {it} from my lord that since (ULT)

Sir, as you know (UST)

For some languages, it may be more natural to put the address “my/our lord” or “sir” first in this quote. Also notice that this address is used three times in this verse to show extra respect to Joseph. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: [Our lord we cannot hide from you the fact that]

Support Reference: Politeness

---

the silver is consumed and the herd{s} of livestock (ULT)

{our} money is gone and {all} {our} livestock (UST)

Consider again how you translated **silver** in the book of Genesis. See 13:2; 20:16; 23:15–16; 24:35, 53; 31:15; 37:28; 42:25, 27–28, 35; 43:12, 15, 18, 21–23; 44:1–2, 8; 45:22; 47:14–16, 18. It may be necessary to translate this word in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [our money is gone and our animals] or [not only is our silver all gone, but all our animals also]

{belong} to my lord (ULT)

{belong} to you (UST)

In this verse, the people use the third person (“my/our lord”) to address Joseph in a respectful manner. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: [belong to you, our lord] or [are yours, sir]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

---

there is nothing left before my lord except our bodies and our lands (ULT)

The only way we can pay you {for food} is to give you our farmland and work for you, sir (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate the Hebrew word for “land” here (and In verses 19–26), which refers to cultivated land (such as farmland or fields), not to the planet earth or to a country. It is different from the word for “land” in the rest of this chapter (in verses 1, 4, 6, 11, 13–15, 27–28). Alternate translation: [We have nothing left to pay you, sir, for grain except ourselves and our land] or [The only way we can pay you for grain is to give you our land and work for you, sir]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- year
- in the … year
- from my lord
- the silver
- and the herd{s} of
- livestock
- my lord
- my lord

UST

- year
- in the … year
- Sir
- {our} money
- and {all} {our} livestock
- and {all} {our} livestock
- {belong} to you
- The only way we can pay you {for food} … sir

Genesis 47:19

ULT:
Why should we die before your eyes, both we and our land? Buy us and our land {in exchange} for the bread, and we and our land will be slaves to Pharaoh. Give {us} seed so that we will live and not die, and the land will not be desolate!"

UST:
Please do not {just} watch us die or let our land {become wasteland}. {Instead,} {please} take us and our land {in exchange} for food. Then we will be {King} Pharaoh's slaves, and our land {will also be his}. {Please} give {us} seeds {to plant} so that we can stay alive and not {starve} to death, and {so that} the land will not become a desert!"

Why should we die before your eyes, both we and our land (ULT)

Please do not {just} watch us die or let our land {become wasteland} (UST)

For many languages, the verb **die** does not fit with both people and land, so a different verb must be used for each one. The end of verse 19 specifies how the land would "die." See how you translated a similar rhetorical question in verse 15. Alternate translation: [What good would it do for us to die and our fields to become ruined] or [Please do not just watch us die or let our land become empty]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

Buy us and our land {in exchange} for the bread (ULT)

{Instead,} {please} take us and our land {in exchange} for food (UST)

Here the author is using one kind of food, **bread**, to mean food in general. Consider again how you translated the word **bread** in the book of Genesis. See 3:19 (and note); 14:18; 21:14; 28:20; 37:25; 38:6; 41:54–55; 43:31; 47:12, 15, 17, 19. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [Instead, please take us and our fields in exchange for food] or [Instead please give us food and we will give you our farmland and ourselves to pay for it]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

---

and we and our land will be slaves to Pharaoh (ULT)

Then we will be {King} Pharaoh's slaves, and our land {will also be his} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then our fields will belong to King Pharaoh and we will work for him as his servants]

Give {us} seed (ULT)

Please} give {us} seeds {to plant} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Please give us seeds to sow]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

so that we will live (ULT)

so that we can stay alive (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that we can survive] or [so that we will stay alive]

---

and not die (ULT)

and not {starve} to death (UST)

See how you translated **so that we will live and not die** in Genesis 42:2. Alternate translation: [and not die from hunger]

---

and the land will not be desolate (ULT)

and {so that} the land will not become a desert (UST)

For some languages it may be clearer and more natural to put this clause earlier in this sentence and say, “Please just give us seeds to plant so that the land will produce/grow food crops again and then we will survive and not die from hunger!” Alternate translation: [and so that the land will grow crops again!]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- {in exchange} for the bread
- slaves
- to Pharaoh
- seed
- will … be desolate

UST

- {in exchange} for food
- s slaves
- {King} Pharaoh
- seeds {to plant}
- will … become a desert

Genesis 47:20

ULT:
Then Joseph bought all the {farm}land of Egypt for Pharaoh, because every Egyptian sold his field, because the famine was heavy for them. So the land became Pharaoh's.

UST:
So Joseph {agreed and} acquired all the land in {the country of} Egypt for Pharaoh. All the Egyptians sold their fields {to him} {in exchange for food}, because the food shortage was {so} severe. In that way, {all} the land became Pharaoh's {property}.

Then Joseph bought (ULT)

So Joseph {agreed and} acquired (UST)

For some languages it may be necessary to make explicit that Joseph agreed to do what the people suggested. Alternate translation: [So Joseph agreed and bought] or [Joseph did what they asked and bought]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

all the {farm}land of Egypt for Pharaoh (ULT)

all the land in {the country of} Egypt for Pharaoh (UST)

Alternate translation: [all the farmland in the country of Egypt for Pharaoh]

---

because every Egyptian sold his field (ULT)

All the Egyptians sold their fields {to him} {in exchange for food} (UST)

Alternate translation: [All the Egyptians gave their fields to him in exchange for grain]

---

because … the famine (ULT)

the food shortage (UST)

Consider again how you translated **famine** in the book of Genesis. See 12:10; 26:1; 41:27, 30–31, 36, 50, 54–57; 42:5; 43:1; 45:6, 11; 47:4, 13, 20. It may be necessary to translate it in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [because the food scarcity]

---

was heavy for them (ULT)

was {so} severe (UST)

See how you translated **heavy** in verses 4 and 13. For some languages, it may be clearer or more natural to change the order of clauses in this verse and say, “The famine was very severe for all the Egyptian people, so Joseph agreed with their request/suggestion and let them sell their fields to him in exchange for grain/food. In that way, Joseph/he bought/acquired all the land/farmland in the country of Egypt for King Pharaoh, so that all the land became Pharaoh’s property.” Alternate translation: [was very severe] or [was so severe that they did not have enough to eat]

Support Reference: Information Structure

So the land became Pharaoh’s (ULT)

In that way, {all} the land became Pharaoh’s {property} (UST)

Alternate translation: [That is how all the farmland eventually belonged to King Pharaoh]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- Egypt
- for Pharaoh
- Egyptian

- the famine
- the land
- Pharaoh’s

UST

- Joseph
- {the country of} Egypt
- for Pharaoh
- All the Egyptians
- the food shortage
- {all} the land
- Pharaoh’s {property}

Genesis 47:21

ULT:
And {as for} the people, he moved them to the cities from {one} end of the border of Egypt to its {other} end.

UST:
Joseph {also} relocated the people to the cities throughout the entire {country of} Egypt.

And {as for} the people, he moved them to the cities (ULT)

Joseph {also} relocated the people to the cities (UST)

The Masoretic Hebrew text has **moved them to the cities** here, which Joseph may have done in order to make the grain more readily accessible to them. The Samaritan Pentateuch (a different Hebrew version) and the Septuagint (Greek translation of the Hebrew text) have "made the people slaves" instead, which may refer to the fact that all the people would now be working for Pharaoh, since all the fields belonged to him. The textual variant that is not used in your translation could be put in a footnote. Alternate translation: [Joseph also moved all the people from their farmlands to the nearby cities]

Support Reference: Textual Variants

---

from {one} end of the border of Egypt to its {other} end (ULT)

throughout the entire {country of} Egypt (UST)

Alternate translation: [in every part of the country of Egypt]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Egypt

UST
- throughout the entire {country of} Egypt

Genesis 47:22

ULT:
Only the land of the priests he did not buy, because {there was} an allotment for the priests from Pharaoh, and they ate {from} their allotment that Pharaoh gave to them. For that {reason} they did not sell their land.

UST:
The only land that he did not buy was the priests' {land}, because they regularly received a certain amount {of food} from Pharaoh, and they had enough to eat from what he gave to them. That is why they did not {need to} sell their land {to buy food}.

because {there was} an allotment for the priests from Pharaoh (ULT)

because they regularly received a certain amount {of food} from Pharaoh (UST)

Alternate translation: [because Pharaoh gave them a regular food allowance]

---

and they ate {from} their allotment that Pharaoh gave to them (ULT)

and they had enough to eat from what he gave to them (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that they had plenty to eat]

For that {reason} they did not sell their land (ULT)

That is why they did not {need to} sell their land {to buy food} (UST)

Alternate translation: [That is why they did not need to sell their farmland to buy food]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the priests
- for the priests

- Pharaoh
- Pharaoh

UST

- was the priests’ {land}
- they regularly received a certain amount {of food}
- Pharaoh
- פַּרְעֹה (ORIG QUOTE)

Genesis 47:23

ULT:
Then Joseph said to the people, "Behold, today I have bought you and your land for Pharaoh. Here {is} seed for you so that you can sow the ground.

UST:
Next Joseph announced to the {Egyptian} people, "Listen, now that you and your farmland belong to {King} Pharaoh, here {are} {some} seeds for you so that you can plant {them in} the fields.

Then Joseph said to the people (ULT)

Next Joseph announced to the {Egyptian} people (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Joseph declared to the Egyptian people]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Behold (ULT)

Listen (UST)

Alternate translation: [Look]

---

today I have bought you and your land for Pharaoh (ULT)

now that you and your farmland belong to {King} Pharaoh (UST)

Alternate translation: [now that I have acquired you and your fields for King Pharaoh] or [now that you and your fields belong to King Pharaoh]

Here {is} seed for you (ULT)

here {are} {some} seeds for you (UST)

Alternate translation: [I am giving you some seeds]

---

so that you can sow the ground (ULT)

so that you can plant {them in} the fields (UST)

See how you translated “sowed” in Genesis 26:12. Alternate translation: [to plant in the fields]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- today
- for Pharaoh
- seed
- so that you can sow

UST

- Joseph
- now
- belong to {King} Pharaoh
- {some} seeds
- so that you can plant

Genesis 47:24

ULT:
And it will happen in the harvests that you must give a fifth to Pharaoh, and the four parts will be for you as seed of the field and as your food and for those in your houses and for your little ones to eat.”

UST:
Then every harvest season, you must give him one-fifth {of the crops you harvest}. The rest {of what you harvest} will be yours {to use} to plant {in} the fields and as food for you and your families, including your children.”

And it will happen in the harvests (ULT)

Then every harvest season (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then whenever you gather the crops] or [Then every harvest time]

---

that you must give a fifth to Pharaoh (ULT)

you must give him one-fifth {of the crops you harvest} (UST)

Alternate translation: [you are required to give one-fifth of the crops to him] or [you must give Pharaoh one-fifth of the crops you gather]

---

and the four parts (ULT)

The rest {of what you harvest} (UST)

Alternate translation: [but the other four-fifths] or [The other four-fifths of your harvest] or [The rest of what you gather]

---

will be for you (ULT)

will be yours (UST)

Alternate translation: [you may keep for yourselves]

---

as seed of the field (ULT)

{to use} to plant {in} the fields (UST)

Alternate translation: [as seed to plant the fields] or [to plant seeds in the fields]

---

and as your food and for those in your houses (ULT)

and as food for you and your families (UST)

Alternate translation: [and as food for you and your households] or [and for you and your households to eat]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- to Pharaoh
- as seed of
- in your houses

UST

- him
- {to use} to plant
- and your families

Genesis 47:25

ULT:
And they said, "You have kept us alive! Let us find favor in the eyes of my lord, and we will be slaves for Pharaoh."

UST:
The people replied {to him}, "You have saved our lives! Please {continue to} be kind to us, sir, and we will {agree to} be {King} Pharaoh's servants."

And they said (ULT)

The people replied {to him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then they responded] or [The people said to him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

You have kept us alive (ULT)

You have saved our lives (UST)

Alternate translation: [You have made it so we can live!]

---

and we will be slaves for Pharaoh (ULT)

and we will {agree to} be {King} Pharaoh's servants (UST)

Alternate translation: [and we will serve King Pharaoh as his slaves]

Let us find favor in the eyes of my lord (ULT)

Please {continue to} be kind to us, sir (UST)

Alternate translation: [May we continue to find favor in your eyes sir] or [Please continue to be kind to us, master]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- favor
- my lord
- slaves
- for Pharaoh

UST

- Please {continue to} be kind to us
- sir
- servants
- {King} Pharaoh's

Genesis 47:26

ULT:
And Joseph established it as a law to this day concerning the {farm}land of Egypt, {that} the fifth {belongs} to Pharaoh. Only the land of the priests by itself did not become Pharaoh's.

UST:
So Joseph made a law {that required} {people to give} to Pharaoh one-fifth {of all the crops they harvested} from the fields in Egypt. {That law} is still {in effect} today. The priests' land was the only {land} {in Egypt} that did not belong to Pharaoh.

And Joseph established it as a law (ULT)

So Joseph made a law (UST)

Alternate translation: [So Joseph established a law]

---

concerning the {farm}land of Egypt, {that} the fifth {belongs} to Pharaoh (ULT)

{that required} {people to give} to Pharaoh one-fifth {of all the crops they harvested} from the fields in Egypt (UST)

See how you translated "a fifth" in verse 24. Alternate translation: [concerning the fields in the country of Egypt: one-fifth of the crops belongs to Pharaoh] or [that required people to give to Pharaoh one-fifth of all the crops they harvested from the farmland in Egypt]

Only the land of the priests by itself did not become Pharaoh's (ULT)

The priests' land was the only {land} {in Egypt} that did not belong to Pharaoh (UST)

See how you translated "only the land of the priests" in verse 22. Also, consider again how you translated "land/farmland" in verses 18–26. Alternate translation: [The only land that Pharaoh did not own was the land that belonged to the priests]

---

to this day (ULT)

{That law} is still {in effect} today (UST)

This phrase refers to the time that Moses was writing the book of Genesis. You could put that information in a footnote. For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to put this phrase at the end of the sentence and say, "That law is still in effect/force today/now." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: [that is still in force now]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- as a law
- day
- Egypt
- that … {belongs} to Pharaoh
- the priests
- Pharaoh's

UST

- Joseph
- a law
- today
- Egypt
- {that required} {people to give} to Pharaoh
- priests
- to Pharaoh

Genesis 47:27

ULT:
And Israel settled in the land of Egypt, in the land of Goshen, and they acquired {possessions} in it. And they were fruitful and multiplied greatly.

UST:
Now {Jacob, whose other name was} Israel, was living {with his family} in Goshen Province in the country of Egypt, and they acquired {many possessions} there. They had many children and became very numerous.

And … settled (ULT)

Now … was living {with his family} (UST)

It was already mentioned in verse 11 that Israel (Jacob) had settled in the country of Egypt. Your translation of verse 27 should not imply that he settled there again. Alternate translation: [So] or [Meanwhile]

Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

Israel (ULT)

{Jacob, whose other name was} Israel (UST)

The name **Israel** and the name "Jacob" refer to the same person. To make that clear, you could make "Jacob" explicit here in your translation or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [Israel that is, Jacob]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

And … settled (ULT)

Now … was living {with his family} (UST)

Alternate translation: [had settled with his family] or [was dwelling with his family]

---

in the land of Egypt, in the land of Goshen (ULT)

in Goshen Province in the country of Egypt (UST)

See how you translated **in the land of Goshen** in Genesis 45:10. Alternate translation: [in the region of Goshen in the land of Egypt] or [in Goshen County in the country of Egypt]

---

and they acquired {possessions} (ULT)

and they acquired {many possessions} (UST)

This phrase is general here and refers to acquiring land and other possessions. Alternate translation: [and they gained many possessions] or [and owned much land]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

in it (ULT)

there (UST)

Alternate translation: [in that region]

And they were fruitful (ULT)

They had many children (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase (“be fruitful and multiply”) in Genesis 35:11. Alternate translation: [They were fruitful]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and multiplied greatly (ULT)

and became very numerous (UST)

Alternate translation: [and their numbers increased greatly] or [and became very many]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Israel
- in the land of
- Egypt
- in the land of
- Goshen
- and they acquired {possessions}
- And they were fruitful
- and multiplied

UST

- {Jacob, whose other name was} Israel
- in the country of
- Egypt
- in … Province
- Goshen
- and they acquired {many possessions}
- They had many children
- and became … numerous

Genesis 47:28

ULT:
And Jacob lived in the land of Egypt seventeen years, and the days of Jacob, the years of his life, were 147 years,

UST:
{After} Jacob had lived in the country of Egypt {for} seventeen years, he was 147 years old.

And Jacob lived in the land of Egypt seventeen years (ULT)

{After} Jacob had lived in the country of Egypt {for} seventeen years (UST)

Alternate translation: [When Jacob had lived in the country of Egypt for seventeen years]

---

and the days of Jacob, the years of his life, were 147 years (ULT)

he was 147 years old (UST)

Alternate translation: [he reached the age of 147 years]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- in the land of
- Egypt
- years
- the days of
- Jacob
- the years of
- 147 years
- 147 years

UST

- Jacob
- in the country of
- Egypt
- years
- he was

- he was
- שְׁנֵי (ORIG QUOTE)
- 147 years old
- 147 years old

Genesis 47:29

ULT:
and the days of Israel drew near {for him} to die. So he called for his son, for Joseph, and said to him, "If, please, I have found favor in your eyes, please put your hand under my thigh, and deal with me {in} kindness and faithfulness. Please do not bury me in Egypt.

UST:
{When} it was almost time for him to die, he summoned his son Joseph and urged him, "Please do this favor for me: Put your hand under my leg, and {promise me that} {after I die,} you will be kind and faithful to me. Please {promise that} you will not bury my body {here} in {the country of} Egypt.

and the days of Israel drew near {for him} to die (ULT)

{When} it was almost time for him to die (UST)

Alternate translation: [When it was almost time for Israel to die] or [He knew that it was almost time for him to die, so]

So he called for his son, for Joseph (ULT)

he summoned his son Joseph (UST)

Alternate translation: [he asked for his son Joseph to come to him]

---

please put your hand under my thigh (ULT)

Put your hand under my leg (UST)

See how you translated this clause in Genesis 24:2, and see the note about this custom there.
Alternate translation: [put your hand under my leg to show that you will do what I ask] or [make a vow by putting your hand under my leg]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

---

and deal with me {in} kindness and faithfulness (ULT)

and {promise me that} {after I die,} you will be kind and faithful to me (UST)

Consider again how you translated **kindness** in Genesis 21:23; 24:12, 14, 27, 49; 32:10; 39:21; 40:14; and how you translated **faithfulness** in Genesis 24:27, 49; and 32:10.

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

Please do not bury me (ULT)

Please {promise that} you will not bury my body (UST)

Make sure your translation of **bury me** does not sound like Israel would still be alive when he was buried. Alternate translation: [Please promise that you will not bury my bones]

---

in Egypt (ULT)

{here} in {the country of} Egypt (UST)

Alternate translation: [here in the land of Egypt]

If, please, I have found favor in your eyes (ULT)

Please do this favor for me (UST)

Alternate translation: [Please show your favor toward me and] or [Please, if you truly love me]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the days of
- Israel
- So he called
- for Joseph
- favor
- my thigh
- {in} kindness
- and faithfulness
- do … bury me
- in Egypt

UST

- {When} it was almost time
- {When} it was almost time
- he summoned
- Joseph
- do this favor for me
- my leg
- kind
- and faithful
- {promise that} you will … bury my body
- {here} in {the country of} Egypt

Genesis 47:30

ULT:
And {when} I lie down with my fathers, then carry me out of Egypt and bury me in their tomb." And he said, "I will do according to your word."

UST:
Rather, after I die and join my ancestors {who have died}, take my body out of Egypt {to the region of Canaan} and bury it in the same burial place where their bodies are." Joseph promised {him}, "I will do what you requested."

And {when} I lie down with my fathers (ULT)

Rather, after I die and join my ancestors {who have died} (UST)

The phrase **lie down with my fathers** is a idiom that refers to Jacob's death. See how you translated an idiom with a similar meaning in Genesis 15:15. Alternate translation: [When I die and rest with my ancestors] or [Rather, after I die and join my ancestors who have gone before me]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

then carry me out of Egypt (ULT)

take my body out of Egypt {to the region of Canaan} (UST)

See how you translated **me** in verse 29. Alternate translation: [carry my body out of Egypt to the region of Canaan]

---

and bury me in their tomb (ULT)

and bury it in the same burial place where their bodies are (UST)

Jacob is referring here to the cave near the city of Hebron that Abraham had bought as a family burial place, to bury Sarah there. Abraham, Isaac and Rebekah were also buried there (Genesis

23:19–20; 25:9–10; 49:31). You could put some of that information in a footnote. Also see how you translated “grave” in Genesis 35:20 and a different word with a similar meaning (“burial place”) in Genesis 23:4, 6, 9, 20. Alternate translation: [and bury me in the same burial place where their bodies are]

And he said (ULT)

Joseph promised {him} (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Joseph is the one speaking here. It may be helpful to read this paragraph aloud to make sure it is clear who is talking at each point in the conversation. Alternate translation: [Then Joseph replied to him]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

I will do according to your word (ULT)

I will do what you requested (UST)

Alternate translation: [I will do as you requested of me] or [I will do exactly what you asked me to do]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- out of Egypt
- and bury me
- in their tomb

UST

- out of Egypt {to the region of Canaan}
- and bury it
- in the same burial place where their bodies are

Genesis 47:31

ULT:
Then he said, “Swear to me.” And he swore to him. Then Israel bowed at the head of the bed.

UST:
But his father insisted, “Vow to me {before God} {that you will do it}.” So Joseph vowed {that he would do it}. Then {his father} Israel bowed {down} {to worship God} beside {his} bed.

Then he said (ULT)

But his father insisted (UST)

Consider what is the best way to refer to Joseph’s father Israel here in your language. Alternate translation: [But he urged him]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

Swear to me (ULT)

Vow to me {before God} {that you will do it} (UST)

See how you translated “swear to me” in Genesis 21:23. Alternate translation: [Vow to me by Yahweh that you will do it] or [With God as your witness, make an oath to me that you will do it]

And he swore to him (ULT)

So Joseph vowed {that he would do it} (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Joseph is the one speaking here. Alternate translation: [So Joseph swore that he would do it] or [So Joseph promised his father with an oath to do what he had requested]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

Then Israel bowed (ULT)

Then {his father} Israel bowed {down} {to worship God} (UST)

If it is not clear in your culture why Israel bowed, you could make that explicit. Alternate translation: [Then Israel bowed down to thank God] or [Then his father Israel bowed his head and thanked God]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

---

at the head of the bed (ULT)

beside {his} bed (UST)

The Hebrew text has **at the head of the bed** here, while the Septuagint (Greek translation of the Old Testament) has "on the top of his staff" instead, which is quoted in Hebrews 11:21. You could include some of that information in a footnote. The difference between versions may be due to the fact that the Hebrew words for **bed** and "staff" are very similar in spelling. Or it could be that Jacob did both; for example, he may have been sitting at the head of his bed and leaning on his staff when he bowed his head and worshiped God. Alternate translation: [as he sat at the top of his bed] or [as he was lying on his bed]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Swear
- And he swore
- Then … bowed
- Israel

UST

- Vow … before God} {that you will do it}
- So Joseph vowed {that he would do it}
- Then … bowed {down} {to worship God}

- {his father} Israel

Genesis 48

Genesis 48:1

ULT:
Then it happened after those things that {someone} said to Joseph, "Behold, your father is sick." So he took his two sons with him, Manasseh and Ephraim.

UST:
{Some time} after those things happened, {someone} told Joseph, "Listen, your father is sick." So Joseph {went to visit his father and} took his two sons Manasseh and Ephraim with him.

Then it happened after those things (ULT)

{Some time} after those things happened (UST)

Consider again how you translated these two phrases in the book of Genesis. See 22:1, 20; 39:7; 40:1; 48:1.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

---

that {someone} said to Joseph, "Behold, your father is sick (ULT)

{someone} told Joseph, "Listen, your father is sick (UST)

For some languages it may be more natural to use an indirect quote here. Alternate translation: [Joseph was told by someone that his father was sick]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

So he took his two sons with him, Manasseh and Ephraim (ULT)

So Joseph {went to visit his father and} took his two sons Manasseh and Ephraim with him (UST)

Consider what is the best way to refer to Joseph in this sentence in your language. Alternate translation: [So Joseph took his two sons Manasseh and Ephraim with him to visit his father] or [So he went to visit his father and took his two sons Manasseh and Ephraim with him]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- to Joseph
- Manasseh
- Ephraim

UST

- Joseph
- Manasseh
- Ephraim

Genesis 48:2

ULT:
And {someone} announced to Jacob and said, "Behold, your son Joseph has come to you." Then Israel gathered his strength and sat up on the bed.

UST:
{When they got there,} someone informed Jacob, "Look, your son Joseph has come to visit you." {Immediately} Israel exerted himself and sat up at {the head of} {his} bed {and they greeted each other}.

And {someone} announced to Jacob and said, "Behold, your son Joseph has come to you (ULT)

{When they got there,} someone informed Jacob, "Look, your son Joseph has come to visit you (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to use a direct or indirect quote here.

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

Then Israel gathered his strength (ULT)

{Immediately} Israel exerted himself (UST)

Consider whether you language has a similar idiom that fits well here. Also, make sure it is clear in your translation or in a footnote that **Israel** (verses 2, 8, 11, 13–14, 21) and **Jacob** (verses 2–3) refer to the same person, not two different people. Alternate translation: [Then Israel rallied his strength] or [Immediately Israel, who was lying down, used all his strength]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and sat up on the bed (ULT)

and sat up at {the head of} {his} bed {and they greeted each other} (UST)

The context (verse 12) shows that Jacob sat on the edge of his bed with his feet resting on the floor and his knees facing Joseph's sons. Also, for some languages it may be necessary (for politeness) to make it explicit that they greeted each other first before continuing their conversation. Alternate translation: [and sat up on the edge of his bed and they greeted each other]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And {someone} announced
- to Jacob
- Joseph
- Israel

UST

- {When they got there,} someone informed
- Jacob
- Joseph
- Israel

Genesis 48:3

ULT:
Then Jacob said to Joseph, "God Almighty appeared to me at Luz in the land of Canaan, and he blessed me

UST:
Then Jacob told Joseph, "God {who is} all-powerful appeared to me {long ago} in the region of Canaan at {the town of} Luz. He blessed me {there}

Then Jacob said to Joseph (ULT)

Then Jacob told Joseph (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Jacob recounted to Joseph the following:]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

---

appeared to me (ULT)

appeared to me {long ago} (UST)

Consider again how you translated "appear" in the book of Genesis. See 8:5; 12:7; 17:1; 18:1; 26:2, 24; 35:1, 9; 46:29; 48:3. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [came to me in a vision long ago]

---

at Luz in the land of Canaan (ULT)

in the region of Canaan at {the town of} Luz (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to put the larger place (Canaan) first before the smaller place (Luz) that is located inside it. It may also be more natural to put the time and place phrases first in this verse and say, "Long ago when I was at the town of Luz in the land/region of Canaan, God Almighty …" Also see how you spelled the name **Luz** in Genesis 28:19 and

35:6. Alternate translation: [when I was at the town of Luz in the land of Canaan] or [in the land of Canaan at the town of Luz]

Support Reference: Information Structure

God Almighty (ULT)

God {who is} all-powerful (UST)

Consider again how you translated **God Almighty** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 17:1, 28:3, 35:11, and 43:14. Alternate translation: [Almighty God]

---

and he blessed me (ULT)

He blessed me {there} (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to begin a new sentence here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: [He pronounced a blessing over me there]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob
- Joseph
- God
- Almighty
- in the land of
- Canaan
- and he blessed

UST

- Jacob
- Joseph
- God
- {who is} all-powerful
- in the region of
- Canaan
- He blessed

Genesis 48:4

ULT:
and said to me, ‘Behold, I am making you fruitful, and I will multiply you and make you into an assembly of peoples. And I will give this land to your offspring after you {as} an everlasting possession.’

UST:
by saying to me, ‘Listen, I will give you many descendants who will increase {in number} and become a community of peoples. I will {also} give this land to your descendants to own forever.’”

and said to me (ULT)

by saying to me (UST)

The term **said** introduces a direct quotation. In your translation, use a natural way of introducing direct quotations in your language. It may not be necessary to represent this term explicitly. Make sure your translation of “blessed … and said” (verses 3–4) refers to the same event, not two separate events. Alternate translation: [He said]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Behold, I am making you fruitful, and I will multiply you and make you (ULT)

Listen, I will give you many descendants who will increase {in number} and become (UST)

See how you translated “make you fruitful and multiply you” in Genesis 28:3 and “make him fruitful and … multiply him” in Genesis 17:20. Alternate translation: [Look I will give you many descendants who will increase in number and become] or [Look I will give you and your descendants many children so that your descendants will become]

---

into an assembly of peoples (ULT)

a community of peoples (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 28:3, and a similar phrase (“a community of nations”) in 35:11. Alternate translation: [many ethnic groups]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- am making you fruitful
- and I will multiply you
- into an assembly of
- land
- to your offspring
- {as} an … possession
- everlasting

UST

- I will give you many descendants
- who will increase {in number}
- a community
- land
- to your descendants
- to own
- forever

Genesis 48:5

ULT:
And now, your two sons, who were born for you in the land of Egypt before I came to you in Egypt, they {are} mine, Ephraim and Manasseh, just as Reuben and Simeon are mine.

UST:
{Then Jacob said to Joseph,} "Now then, your two sons Ephraim and Manasseh, who were born to you {here} in the country of Egypt before I joined you here, {I will treat as} my sons, just like my sons Reuben and Simeon.

And now, your two sons (ULT)

{Then Jacob said to Joseph,} "Now then, your two sons (UST)

The phrase **And now** shows that there is a change of topic. Make sure it is clear in your translation that Jacob is no longer quoting God's words in verse 5.

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

---

in the land of Egypt (ULT)

{here} in the country of Egypt (UST)

Alternate translation: [here in the land of Egypt]

---

before I came to you in Egypt (ULT)

before I joined you here (UST)

Alternate translation: [before I arrived]

---

they {are} mine, Ephraim and Manasseh (ULT)

Ephraim and Manasseh … {I will treat as} my sons (UST)

Alternate translation: [Ephraim and Manasseh, they now belong to me] or [Ephraim and Manasseh, will be my sons]

---

just as Reuben and Simeon are mine (ULT)

just like my sons Reuben and Simeon (UST)

For some languages it may be clearer and more natural to put the names of these sons earlier in the verse and say, “Now then, your two sons, Ephraim and Manasseh, who were born to you here in the country of Egypt before I joined you here, I will treat as my sons, just as/like …” Alternate translation: [just as Reuben and Simeon are my sons] or [just as my sons Reuben and Simeon]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- who were born
- in the land of
- Egypt
- in Egypt
- Ephraim
- and Manasseh
- just as Reuben
- and Simeon

UST

- who were born
- {here} in the country of
- Egypt
- here
- Ephraim
- and Manasseh
- just like … Reuben
- and Simeon

Genesis 48:6

ULT:
But your children whom you father after them will be yours. They will be called by the name of their brothers in their inheritance.

UST:
If you have any more children, they will be yours, {so that} what they inherit {from me} will be some of what their brothers {Ephraim and Manasseh} inherit {from me}.

But your children whom you father after them will be yours (ULT)

If you have any more children, they will be yours (UST)

Alternate translation: [But any other children that you have later on will be yours] or [If you father any other children, they will belong to you]

They will be called by the name of their brothers in their inheritance (ULT)

so that} what they inherit {from me} will be some of what their brothers {Ephraim and Manasseh} inherit {from me} (UST)

Alternate translation: [So they will share in some of what their brothers inherit from me]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- They will be called
- in their inheritance

UST

- so that … will be some of what their brothers {Ephraim and Manasseh} inherit {from me}
- what they inherit {from me}

Genesis 48:7

ULT:
And I, as I was coming from Paddan, Rachel died beside me in the land of Canaan on the way, while {there was} still a distance of land to go to Ephrath. And I buried her there beside the road of Ephrath, which {is} Bethlehem."

UST:
I {am doing this because} as our family was returning {home} from {the region of} Paddan {Aram}, {your mother} Rachel died beside me in the region of Canaan while we were still traveling and some distance away from {the town of} Ephrath. {As you know,} I buried her body there by the road that goes to Ephrath, which {now has the name} Bethlehem."

And I (ULT)

I {am doing this because} (UST)

Here the author is providing background information to help readers understand what happens next in the story. In your translation, introduce this information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture. Jacob is probably explaining in that since his favorite wife Rachel died with only two sons, that is why he is treating her son Joseph's two sons as his own sons (verses 5–6). Alternate translation: [I want it this way because]

Support Reference: Background Information

---

as I was coming (ULT)

as our family was returning {home} (UST)

Jacob is in focus here, but he was traveling with his family, not alone. Decide whether or not it is necessary to make that explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: [as I and our family were coming home] or [as our family was coming home]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

from Paddan (ULT)

from {the region of} Paddan {Aram} (UST)

Consider again how you translated “the land/region of Paddan Aram” in the book of Genesis. See 25:20 (and note); 28:2, 5–7; 31:18; 33:18; 35:9, 26; 46:15; 48:7. Also, be consistent with how you spelled “Aram” in those verses and in Genesis 10:22–23; 22:21; 24:10. Alternate translation: [from the land of Paddan Aram]

Rachel (ULT)

{your mother} Rachel (UST)

Alternate translation: [my beloved wife Rachel]

---

died beside me (ULT)

died beside me (UST)

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here because the preposition can have different meanings. It could mean: (1) **died beside me** or “died by my side”; or (2) “died, bringing sorrow/grief on/to me”

---

on the way, while {there was} still a distance of land to go to Ephrath (ULT)

while we were still traveling and some distance away from {the town of} Ephrath (UST)

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Ephrath** in Genesis 35:16, 19, and how you spelled **Bethlehem** in 35:19.

---

which {is} Bethlehem (ULT)

which {now has the name} Bethlehem (UST)

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. This phrase might be: (1) Jacob's words; or (2) the author's words. If you follow the second interpretation, you could put this phrase within parentheses, outside of the quote marks.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- from Paddan
- Rachel
- in the land of
- Canaan
- land
- to Ephrath
- And I buried her
- Ephrath
- Bethlehem

UST

- from {the region of} Paddan {Aram}
- {your mother} Rachel
- in the region of
- Canaan
- and some distance away from
- {the town of} Ephrath
- {As you know,} I buried her body
- Ephrath
- Bethlehem

Genesis 48:8

ULT:
Then Israel saw the sons of Joseph and said, "Who {are} these?"

UST:
Then Israel noticed Joseph's {two} sons and asked {him}, "Who {are} these {young men}?"

and said (ULT)

and asked {him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and asked Joseph]

Who {are} these (ULT)

Who {are} these {young men} (UST)

Joseph's two sons were in their 20s at this time, so refer to them here with a term that fits with that fact. They were born before the famine started (Genesis 41:50–52), and Jacob had now been in Egypt for 17 years (47:28). Alternate translation: [Whose sons are these?]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Israel
- Joseph

UST
- Israel
- Joseph

Genesis 48:9

ULT:
And Joseph said to his father, “They {are} my sons whom God has given to me in this {place}.” Then he said, “Please bring them to me, and I will bless them.”

UST:
Joseph answered him, “These {are} my sons whom God gave to me here {in Egypt}.” Then Israel said {to Joseph}, “Please bring them {closer} to me so that I can {ask God to} bless them.”

And Joseph said to his father (ULT)

Joseph answered him (UST)

Alternate translation: [Joseph said to him] or [Joseph replied]

They {are} my sons whom God has given to me (ULT)

These {are} my sons whom God gave to me (UST)

Alternate translation: [They are my sons whom God gave to me]

Then he said (ULT)

Then Israel said {to Joseph} (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation who is speaking here. Alternate translation: [Then Israel said to him]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

Please bring them to me (ULT)

Please bring them {closer} to me (UST)

Some languages have a dual pronoun that works well to refer to Joseph's two sons here (and throughout chapter 48).

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

---

and I will bless them (ULT)

so that I can {ask God to} bless them (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that I can ask God to prosper them]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- God
- and I will bless them

UST

- Joseph
- God
- so that I can {ask God to} bless them

Genesis 48:10

ULT:
Now the eyes of Israel were heavy from age, {so that} he was not able to see. So he brought them near to him, and he kissed them and embraced them.

UST:
Now Israel was almost blind because of old age, {so that} he could not see {very clearly}. So Joseph took his sons {closer} to his father, and his father kissed them {on the cheeks} and hugged them.

Now the eyes of Israel were heavy (ULT)

Now Israel was almost blind (UST)

Consider whether or not it is natural in your language to use a conjunction (**Now**) to begin this clause that gives background information about Israel. Also, the word **heavy** is used here as an idiom that means Israel's eyesight was getting bad, but he could still see some (as indicated in verses 8 and 11). Many languages have a similar idiom. A translation of verse 10 should not imply that Israel was completely blind. Alternate translation: [Israel had very bad eyesight]

Support Reference: Background Information

---

from age (ULT)

because of old age (UST)

Alternate translation: [because he was very old]

{so that} he was not able to see (ULT)

so that} he could not see {very clearly} (UST)

For some languages it is more natural to switch the order of the clauses in this sentence and say, “Now Israel was very old, so his eyesight was failing and he was not able to see very well.” Alternate translation: [so that he could not see very well]

Support Reference: Information Structure

So he brought them near to him (ULT)

So Joseph took his sons {closer} to his father (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation whom is being referred to at each point in this sentence. Alternate translation: [So Joseph brought his sons near to his father] or [So he had his sons stand near to his father]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

and he kissed them (ULT)

and his father kissed them {on the cheeks} (UST)

It may be helpful to read this sentence aloud in your translation to make sure the use of nouns and pronouns is natural and accurate in your language. Alternate translation: [and Israel kissed them on the cheeks] or [and his father kissed …]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

and embraced them (ULT)

and hugged them (UST)

Consider again how you translated the word **embraced** in the book of Genesis. See 29:13; 33:4; 48:10. Also compare that to how you translated an idiom ("fell on … neck") that has a similar meaning in Genesis 33:4; 45:14, 46:29. It may be necessary to translate these terms in different ways, depending on the context.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Israel
- and he kissed

UST

- Now Israel was almost blind
- and his father kissed

Genesis 48:11

ULT:
Then Israel said to Joseph, "I did not expect to see your face, but behold, God has let me see also your offspring!"

UST:
Then Israel exclaimed to Joseph, "I never thought I would see you {again}, but {now} look, God has even let me meet your children!"

I did not expect to see your face (ULT)

I never thought I would see you {again} (UST)

Alternate translation: [I did not think I would ever see you again]

---

but behold (ULT)

but {now} look (UST)

Alternate translation: [but amazingly]

God has let me see also your offspring (ULT)

God has even let me meet your children (UST)

Alternate translation: [God has allowed me to see even your offspring] or [God has also allowed me to see your offspring]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Israel
- Joseph
- God

- your offspring

UST

- Israel
- Joseph
- God
- your children

Genesis 48:12

ULT:
Then Joseph removed them from beside his knees, and he bowed down with his nose to the ground.

UST:
Then Joseph had his sons move away from beside his father's knees, and he bowed {before his father} and touched the ground with his forehead {to show him respect}.

Then Joseph removed them (ULT)

Then Joseph had his sons move away (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then Joseph took his sons away] or [Then Joseph had his sons step away]

---

from beside his knees (ULT)

from beside his father's knees (UST)

Joseph's sons (who were in their 20s) were near Israel's knees, so that he could hug them; they were not sitting on his knees or lap. Also make sure your translation of **his** refers to Joseph's father (Israel/Jacob), not Joseph. Alternate translation: [from near his father]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

and he bowed down (ULT)

and he bowed {before his father} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he prostrated himself before him]

---

with his nose to the ground (ULT)

and touched the ground with his forehead {to show him respect} (UST)

Joseph bowed to the ground to show thankfulness and respect to his father and possibly also to God. If necessary, you could make that information explicit in your translation or put it in a footnote. Alternate translation: [with his face toward the ground in thankfulness and respect]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- and he bowed down
- to the ground

UST

- Joseph
- and he bowed {before his father}
- and touched the ground with his forehead {to show him respect}

Genesis 48:13

ULT:
Then Joseph took both of them, Ephraim on his right toward Israel's left and Manasseh on his left toward Israel's right, and brought {them} near to him.

UST:
Then he brought his sons close to his father {again}. He had Ephraim stand in front of Israel's left {side}, and he had Manasseh stand in front of Israel's right {side}.

Then Joseph took (ULT)

Then … He had … stand (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then he took]

---

both of them (ULT)

his sons (UST)

Alternate translation: [both of his sons]

Ephraim on his right (ULT)

Ephraim (UST)

Alternate translation: [with Ephraim at his right hand]

---

and Manasseh on his left (ULT)

and he had Manasseh stand (UST)

Alternate translation: [and with Manasseh at his left hand]

---

and brought {them} near to him (ULT)

he brought … close to his father {again} (UST)

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, “Then he took/brought his sons close to his father again. He had Ephraim stand in front of Israel’s left hand/side, and he had Manasseh stand in front of Israel’s right hand/side.” Alternate translation: [and he took them close to his father again]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- Ephraim
- Israel
- Manasseh
- Israel

UST

- יוֹסֵף (ORIG QUOTE)
- Ephraim
- Israel
- he had Manasseh stand
- Israel

Genesis 48:14

ULT:
But Israel extended his right hand and placed {it} on the head of Ephraim, and he {was} the younger, and {he placed} his left hand on the head of Manasseh. He guided his hands, because Manasseh {was} the firstborn.

UST:
But Israel {intentionally} reached out his right hand and put {it} on Ephraim's head, even though Ephraim {was} {Joseph's} younger {son}. Then he crossed his arms and {put} his left hand on Manasseh's head, {even} though Manasseh {was} {Joseph's} oldest {son}.

and {he placed} his left hand on the head of Manasseh. He guided his hands (ULT)

Then he crossed his arms and {put} his left hand on Manasseh's head (UST)

In the Hebrew culture, the right side was the place of highest honor and using the right hand to bless someone was symbolic of giving greater honor to that person. The oldest son was also the one who normally received the greater blessing. Israel reverses that here and gives Joseph's younger son the greater blessing. It may be important to include a footnote in your translation that gives this information.

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

---

because (ULT)

{even} though (UST)

Make sure that the way you translate **because** fits with the fact that Israel wanted to place his right hand on Ephraim (to give him the greater blessing), even though Manasseh was the firstborn (who would normally receive the greater blessing in that culture). Alternate translation: [in spite of the fact that]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Israel

- Ephraim
- Manasseh
- Manasseh
- {was} the firstborn

UST

- Israel
- Ephraim
- Manasseh
- Manasseh
- was} {Joseph's} oldest {son}

Genesis 48:15

ULT:
Then he blessed Joseph and said, "May the God whom my fathers Abraham and Isaac walked before, the God who has been shepherding me from since I {was born} until this day,

UST:
Then Israel blessed Joseph {and his sons} by saying, "I pray that the God whom my ancestors Abraham and Isaac served {will bless your sons}. He is the God who has taken care of me my entire life.

Then he blessed Joseph and said (ULT)

Then Israel blessed Joseph {and his sons} by saying (UST)

By **he blessed Joseph**, the author means Israel blessed Joseph by blessing Joseph's sons (verses 15–16, 19–20). You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [Then Israel blessed Joseph by blessing his sons and saying]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

May the God (ULT)

I pray that the God … will bless your sons (UST)

Jacob is asking God to bless the his son Joseph. In your translation, use a form that people would recognize as a blessing in your language. You might express this as a prayer if that would be more natural in your language. Consider whether or not it is better in your language to break up the long sentence in verses 15–16 into shorter sentences. Alternate translation: [May God bless your sons, the God] or [I ask God to bless your sons. He is the God]

Support Reference: Blessings

---

whom my fathers Abraham and Isaac (ULT)

whom my ancestors Abraham and Isaac (UST)

Alternate translation: [whom my forefathers Abraham and Isaac]

---

walked before (ULT)

served (UST)

See how you translated the idiom “walk/live before” in Genesis 17:1 and 24:40. You may need to translate it differently in different contexts. Alternate translation: [walked with according to his will] or [lived obediently in the presence of] or [obeyed]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

the God who has been shepherding me (ULT)

He is the God who has taken care of me (UST)

The word **shepherding** includes guiding, protecting, and providing food and water, such as a shepherd would do for his sheep. Here it is used as a image that refers to God’s complete care of Israel throughout his life. Consider whether or not it is best in your language to use a similar image here. Alternate translation: [the same God who has watched over me]

Support Reference: Metaphor

---

from since I {was born} until this day (ULT)

my entire life (UST)

Alternate translation: [from the beginning of my life until the present day]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then he blessed
- Joseph
- May the God
- Abraham
- and Isaac
- the God
- who has been shepherding
- day

UST

- Then Israel blessed
- Joseph {and his sons}
- I pray that the God … will bless your sons
- Abraham
- and Isaac
- He is the God
- who has taken care of
- my entire life

Genesis 48:16

ULT:
the Angel who has redeemed me from all evil, may he bless {these} boys, and may my name be called in them, and the name of my fathers Abraham and Isaac, and may they grow into a multitude in the midst of the earth.”

UST:
{He is also} the Angel who saved me {continually} from every harm. I pray that he will cause {these} young men to prosper {greatly}, so that my family line and the family line of my ancestors Abraham and Isaac will continue through them and so that they will have many descendants on the earth.”

may he bless {these} boys (ULT)

I pray that he will cause {these} young men to prosper {greatly} (UST)

Since Joseph’s sons were probably in their 20s, make sure your translation of this phrase does not sound like they were little **boys**. The Hebrew word for “boy” here can also be translated as “lad,” “servant,” or “young man,” depending on the context and who is speaking to whom. With that in mind, consider again how you translated this word in the book of Genesis. See 14:24; 18:7; 19:4; 21:12, 17–20; 22:3, 5, 12, 19; 25:27; 34:19; 37:2; 41:12; 43:8; 44:22, 30–34; 48:16. Alternate translation: [I ask that he will cause these young men to prosper greatly]

---

and may my name be called in them, and the name of my fathers Abraham and Isaac, and may they grow into a multitude in the midst of the earth (ULT)

so that my family line and the family line of my ancestors Abraham and Isaac will continue through them and so that they will have many descendants on the earth (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that my family name and the family name of my ancestors Abraham and Isaac will continue through them and so that they will have many descendants on the earth] or [I pray that they will have many descendants on the earth who will carry on the family name for me and for my forefathers Abraham and Isaac]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the Angel
- who has redeemed
- evil
- may he bless
- and may … be called
- Abraham
- and Isaac
- the earth

UST

- {He is also} the Angel
- who saved … continually
- harm
- I pray that he will cause … to prosper {greatly}
- so that … will continue
- Abraham
- and Isaac
- the earth

Genesis 48:17

ULT:
And Joseph saw that his father had placed his right hand on the head of Ephraim, and it was displeasing in his eyes, so he took hold of the hand of his father to move it from the head of Ephraim to the head of Manasseh.

UST:
{When} Joseph noticed that his father had put his right hand on Ephraim's head, he thought it was a mistake. So he took hold of his father's hand {in order} to move it from Ephraim's head to Manasseh's head.

And Joseph saw that his father had placed his right hand on the head of Ephraim (ULT)

{When} Joseph noticed that his father had put his right hand on Ephraim's head (UST)

See how you translated **placed** in verse 14.

---

and it was displeasing in his eyes (ULT)

he thought it was a mistake (UST)

Alternate translation: [it displeased him] or [he was unhappy about it]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- Ephraim
- and it was displeasing
- Ephraim
- Manasseh

UST

- Joseph
- Ephraim

- he thought it was a mistake
- Ephraim
- Manasseh

Genesis 48:18

ULT:
And Joseph said to his father, "Not so, my father, because that {one} {is} the firstborn son. Put your right hand on his head."

UST:
Then he said to his father, "That is the wrong son, Father. The other {one} {is} {my} oldest son. {So} {you need to} have your right hand on his head."

Not so, my father, because that {one} {is} the firstborn son (ULT)

That is the wrong son, Father. The other {one} {is} {my} oldest son (UST)

Alternate translation: [Not like that, Father. It is the other son who is my firstborn] or [That is the wrong one Father. The other one is my oldest son]

Put your right hand on his head (ULT)

{So} {you need to} have your right hand on his head (UST)

Alternate translation: [So you need to put your right hand on his head]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- the firstborn son

UST

- יוֹסֵף (ORIG QUOTE)
- {my} oldest son

Genesis 48:19

ULT:
But his father refused and said, “I know, my son, I know. He will also become a people, and he will also be great. Nevertheless his younger brother will be greater than he, and his offspring will become a multitude of nations.”

UST:
But his father would not {move his hands} and replied, “I know {it}, my son, I know {what I am doing}. {In fact,} your oldest son will also be a great man, and he will become {the ancestor of} a people group. However, his younger brother will be {even} greater than he {will be}, and his {younger} brother’s descendants will become many people groups.”

But his father refused (ULT)

But his father would not {move his hands} (UST)

Alternate translation: [But his father refused to move his hands]

I know, my son, I know (ULT)

I know {it}, my son, I know {what I am doing} (UST)

Alternate translation: [I know it my son, I know what I am doing] or [I know what I am doing, my son]

He will also become a people, and he will also be great (ULT)

{In fact,} your oldest son will also be a great man, and he will become {the ancestor of} a people group (UST)

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to Joseph’s firstborn in these two clauses. Alternate translation: [In fact, the descendants of your firstborn son will also become a ethnic group, and he will be a great man] or [In fact, your firstborn son will also be a important man, and he will be the ancestor of a people group]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

Nevertheless his younger brother will be greater than he (ULT)

However, his younger brother will be {even} greater than he {will be} (UST)

Alternate translation: [However, his younger brother Ephraim will be even greater than he will be]

---

and his offspring (ULT)

and his {younger} brother's descendants (UST)

Make sure that your translation of this phrase refers to Ephraim's descendants, not Manasseh's. Alternate translation: [with many descendants, who]

---

will become a multitude of nations (ULT)

will become many people groups (UST)

Compare how you translated a similar phrase ("a community of peoples") in verse 4. Alternate translation: [will become many ethnic groups]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- I know
- I know
- and his offspring
- nations

UST

- I know {it}
- I know {what I am doing}

- and his {younger} brother's descendants
- people groups

Genesis 48:20

ULT:
And he blessed them on that day, saying, "By you Israel will bless {people}, saying, 'May God make you like Ephraim and like Manasseh.'" So he put Ephraim before Manasseh.

UST:
So Israel blessed Ephraim and Manasseh that day by saying {to them}, "{The people of} Israel will use your names when they bless {people} and say, 'May God prosper you like {he prospered} Ephraim and Manasseh.'" In that way, Israel made Ephraim greater than Manasseh.

saying (ULT)

by saying {to them} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and said]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

By you Israel will bless {people} (ULT)

The people of} Israel will use your names when they bless {people} (UST)

Alternate translation: [When the people of Israel say a blessing over someone, they will use your names]

May God make you (ULT)

May God prosper you (UST)

Alternate translation: [May God bless you] or [We ask God to make you great]

---

like Ephraim and like Manasseh (ULT)

like {he prospered} Ephraim and Manasseh (UST)

Alternate translation: [like he blessed Ephraim and Manasseh]

So he put Ephraim before Manasseh (ULT)

In that way, Israel made Ephraim greater than Manasseh (UST)

Alternate translation: [When he said that, he put Ephraim ahead of Manasseh] or [In that way, he made Ephraim greater than Manasseh]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- And he blessed them
- on … day
- will bless {people}
- Israel
- God
- like Ephraim
- and like Manasseh
- Ephraim
- Manasseh

UST

- So Israel blessed Ephraim and Manasseh
- day
- when they bless {people}
- {The people of} Israel
- God
- like {he prospered} Ephraim
- and Manasseh
- Ephraim
- than Manasseh

Genesis 48:21

ULT:
Then Israel said to Joseph, "Behold, I am dying, and God will be with you, and he will bring you back to the land of your fathers.

UST:
After that, Israel {turned} to Joseph {and} said {to him}, "As you can see, I am about to die, but God will {always} be with you and your brothers {and all your descendants} {to help you}. He will also take you back to the land that {he gave} to your ancestors.

Then Israel said to Joseph (ULT)

After that, Israel {turned} to Joseph {and} said {to him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [Next Israel spoke to Joseph. He said]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Behold (ULT)

As you can see (UST)

Alternate translation: [Look]

I am dying (ULT)

I am about to die (UST)

Alternate translation: [I will die soon]

---

and God will be with you (ULT)

but God will {always} be with you and your brothers {and all your descendants} {to help you} (UST)

The pronouns **you** and **your** are plural throughout this verse and probably refer to all Israel's family, including Joseph, his brothers, and their descendants. Alternate translation: [but God will always stay with all of you and help you] or [but God will always stay with you and your brothers and all your descendants and help you]

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

---

and he will bring you back (ULT)

He will also take you back (UST)

Alternate translation: [He will also bring you back]

---

to the land of your fathers (ULT)

to the land that {he gave} to your ancestors (UST)

Alternate translation: [to the land that he gave to your forefathers]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Israel
- Joseph
- God
- the land of

UST

- Israel
- Joseph
- God

- the land that {he gave} to

Genesis 48:22

ULT:
And I give you Shechem, one {portion} above your brothers, which I took from the hand of the Amorite{s} with my sword and with my bow."

UST:
Besides that, {as part of your inheritance from me,} I {hereby} give you {the city of} Shechem, {which} I captured from the Amorite{s} when I defeated them in battle. This is more {land} than I am giving to your brothers."

And I give you (ULT)

Besides that, {as part of your inheritance from me,} I {hereby} give you (UST)

The pronouns **you** and **your** shift to singular in verse 22, so use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction. Alternate translation: [And I bequeath to you as part of your inheritance]

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

Shechem (ULT)

{the city of} Shechem (UST)

Here, **Schechem** could refer to: (1) the city of Shechem. (2) a mountain ridge. This second interpretation comes from the meaning of the Hebrew word "shekem" ("shoulder"), which can be used as an image to refer to a mountain slope or ridge.

Support Reference: Metaphor

---

one {portion} above your brothers (ULT)

This is more {land} than I am giving to your brothers (UST)

Alternate translation: [which is more land than I am giving to your brothers and]

---

which I took from the hand of (ULT)

{which} I captured from (UST)

Alternate translation: [which I took control of from] or [I took that land from]

---

the Amorite{s} with my sword and with my bow (ULT)

the Amorite{s} when I defeated them in battle (UST)

For some languages it may be clearer to change the order of clauses in this verse and say, “Besides that, I hereby give you the city of Shechem, which I took/captured from the Amorites when I defeated them in battle. This is more land than I am giving to your brothers.” Also consider again how you translated **Amorites** in the book of Genesis. See 10:16; 14:7, 13; 15:16, 21; 48:22. Alternate translation: [the Amorites in battle using my sword and my bow]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the Amorite{s}
- with my sword
- and with my bow

UST

- the Amorite{s}
- when I defeated them in battle
- when I defeated them in battle

Genesis 49

Genesis 49:1

ULT:
Then Jacob called for his sons and said, "Gather together, and I will reveal to you what will meet you in the end of days.

UST:
Then Jacob summoned {all} his sons. He said {to them}, "Come together {here}, so that I can tell you what will happen to you {and your descendants} in the years ahead.

Then Jacob called for his sons (ULT)

Then Jacob summoned {all} his sons (UST)

The events in chapter 49 may have occurred on the same day as the events in chapter 48, or not very long after that. Consider again how you translated **called for** in the book of Genesis. See 12:18; 14:14; 20:2, 8–9; 24:57–58; 26:9; 27:1, 42; 28:1; 31:4; 39:14; 41:8, 14; 46:33; 47:29; 49:1.

Gather together (ULT)

Come together {here} (UST)

Much of what Jacob says to his sons in verses 1–27 is Hebrew poetry, which is characterized by the use of parallelisms and metaphors to emphasize important points. Many translations put these verses in poetry format (starting here); many others use regular paragraph formatting. For a complete list of verses that some translations treat as poetry in the book of Genesis, see the introduction to the book. Alternate translation: [Gather yourselves together before me]

Support Reference: Poetry

---

and I will reveal to you (ULT)

so that I can tell you (UST)

Alternate translation: [and I will declare to you] or [so that I can inform you]

---

what will meet you (ULT)

what will happen to you {and your descendants} (UST)

Much of what Jacob prophesies in this chapter about his sons also applies to their descendants. Some translation teams may prefer to put that information in a footnote rather than make it explicit in the text. Also see how you translated **meet** in Genesis 42:4, 38.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

in the end of days (ULT)

in the years ahead (UST)

In this context, this phrase refers to a period of years in the future. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [in the days ahead] or [in future days]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then … called
- Jacob
- Gather together
- and I will reveal
- days

UST

- Then Jacob summoned

- Then Jacob summoned
- Come together {here}
- so that I can tell
- in the years ahead

Genesis 49:2

ULT:
Assemble and listen, sons of Jacob, and listen to Israel your father.

UST:
My sons, gather around {me,} {your father} Jacob, and listen {to me}. {I,} your father Israel, have something {important} to tell you.

Assemble and listen, sons of Jacob (ULT)

My sons, gather around {me,} {your father} Jacob, and listen {to me} (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation of this verse that Jacob is talking to his own sons and is referring to himself as both Jacob and as Israel. Also, for some languages it is more natural to put the address **sons of Jacob** first in verse 2, or even first in the quote (which begins in verse 1).

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

---

and listen to Israel your father (ULT)

{I,} your father Israel, have something {important} to tell you (UST)

This clause forms a parallelism with the previous clause to emphasize that Jacob wants his sons to listen to him carefully. Try to keep both halves of this parallelism in your translation, since each half has a slightly different focus. Alternate translation: [Pay attention to me, your father Israel]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Assemble
- Jacob
- Israel

UST
- gather around

- My sons … {me,} {your father} Jacob
- Israel

Genesis 49:3

ULT:
Reuben, you {are} my firstborn, my might and the first of my strength, excelling {in} rank and excelling {in} power.

UST:
Reuben, you {are} my oldest {son}, {the result of} my strength and the first child I had as a young man. {You had} high status and great authority {in our family}.

Reuben, you {are} my firstborn (ULT)

Reuben, you {are} my oldest {son} (UST)

Consider again how you translated **firstborn** in the book of Genesis. See 4:4; 10:15; 19:31, 33–34, 37; 22:21; 25:13, 27; 27:19, 32; 29:26; 35:23; 36:15; 38:6–7; 41:51; 43:33; 46:8, 14; 48:18; 49:3. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context.

---

my might and the first of my strength (ULT)

{the result of} my strength and the first child I had as a young man (UST)

This phrase is used here as a euphemistic idiom that refers to Jacob's ability to have children. Other languages may have a similar idiom. Translate this in a way that will not embarrass or offend listeners. Alternate translation: [the result of my fertility, and the first child I had as a young man] or [You are the first sign of my manhood and strength]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

excelling {in} rank and excelling {in} power (ULT)

You had} high status and great authority {in our family} (UST)

Alternate translation: [You had higher honor and authority than all your brothers]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Reuben
- my firstborn
- {in} power

UST

- Reuben
- my oldest {son}
- and great authority {in our family}

Genesis 49:4

ULT:
Turbulent like waters, you will not excel, because you went up {onto} your father's bed, and you defiled {it}. He went up {onto} my couch!

UST:
{However,} {you are} unstable like {rushing} water, {so} you will no longer have your important status {in our family}, because you got {into} my bed {with my concubine} {and} dishonored me! You {actually} climbed {into} my couch!

Turbulent (ULT)

{However,} {you are} unstable (UST)

Alternate translation: [However, you are uncontrollable] or [However, you are reckless]

---

like waters (ULT)

like {rushing} water (UST)

Here Jacob compares Reuben's reckless, uncontrolled sexual behavior to turbulent water that is out of control and destructive. Consider whether or not you have a similar comparison in your language that would fit well here. Alternate translation: [like a flood of water]

Support Reference: Simile

---

you will not excel (ULT)

so} you will no longer have your important status {in our family} (UST)

Alternate translation: [so you will no longer have your high position in our family] or [so you will no longer be first among your brothers]

---

because you went up {onto} your father's bed, and you defiled {it … } (ULT)

because you got {into} my bed {with my concubine} and} dishonored me (UST)

This clause, along with the rest of the verse, is a euphemistic way of referring to Reuben committing adultery by sleeping with his father's concubine (secondary wife) Bilhah (Genesis 35:22). Alternate translation: [because you got into my bed with my wife and dishonored me!] or [because you dishonored me by getting into my bed and committing adultery with my concubine]

Support Reference: Euphemism

He went up {onto} my couch (ULT)

You {actually} climbed {into} my couch (UST)

Here Jacob repeats part of what he said in the previous clause, in order to emphasize Reuben's sin against him and to communicate how upset he is about it. He may have still been talking to Reuben (switching from second to third person), or he may have been exclaiming about Reuben to himself and the rest of his sons.

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- you defiled {it}

UST

- dishonored me

Genesis 49:5

ULT:
Simeon and Levi {are} brothers. Their swords {are} weapons of violence.

UST:
Simeon and Levi, {you are} partners. You use your swords to do violent things {together}.

Simeon and Levi (ULT)

Simeon and Levi, {you … } (UST)

In verses 3–27, Jacob sometimes refers to his sons using second person (“you”), and sometimes (as here) he uses third person (“they” or “he”). Consider whether or not it is better in your language to use second person throughout these verses, especially since Jacob is talking to his sons who are right there with him. Also, some languages have dual pronouns that fit well in verses 5–7. Alternate translation: [As for Simeon and Levi, they]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

{are} brothers (ULT)

{ … are} partners (UST)

This phrase is used here as an idiom that emphasizes the fact that Simeon and Levi thought alike and acted together to do evil things. Alternate translation: [are close brothers] or [are partners in crime] or [do evil things together]

Their swords {are} weapons of violence (ULT)

You use your swords to do violent things {together} (UST)

Make sure in your translation that the pronouns you use here (and in verses 6–7) fit with the way you translated the beginning of this verse. Alternate translation: [They use their weapons to do violent things together]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Simeon
- and Levi
- Their swords

UST

- Simeon
- and Levi, {you … }
- You use your swords

Genesis 49:6

ULT:
Do not let my soul enter into their council! Do not let my glory join in their assembly, because in their anger they killed a man, and for their pleasure they hamstrung an ox.

UST:
I will never participate with you when you plan {evil} things! I refuse to make {evil} plans with you, because you became angry and murdered {many} people, and {just} to entertain yourselves you crippled {some} cattle.

Do not let my soul enter (ULT)

I will never participate with you (UST)

Here Jacob uses the phrase **my soul** to refer to himself and to emphasize how strongly he feels about what he is saying. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [Do not ever let me] or [May I never]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

Do not let … enter into their council (ULT)

I will never participate with you when you plan {evil} things (UST)

In verses 5–7, Jacob is probably referring to the time when Simeon and Levi killed all the males in the city of Shechem out of revenge (Genesis 34:25–26, 30). Jacob was very upset that they did that. Alternate translation: [take part in their evil plans] or [participate with them when you plan evil things!]

Do not let my glory join in their assembly (ULT)

I refuse to make {evil} plans with you (UST)

This clause forms a parallelism with the previous clause and emphasizes that Jacob is upset and does not want to participate with these two sons in their evil behavior. Consider what is the best way to translate that in your language. Alternate translation: [Do not let my honor be associated with your evil plans] or [I never want to be linked with their evil plans]

Support Reference: Parallelism

---

because in their anger they killed a man (ULT)

because you became angry and murdered {many} people (UST)

The phrase **a man** probably refers collectively here to all the men whom these two sons killed in the city of Shechem (Genesis 34:25–26, 30). Alternate translation: [because you became angry and murdered many men]

---

and for their pleasure they hamstrung an ox (ULT)

and {just} to entertain yourselves you crippled {some} cattle (UST)

This may have happened during the time that Simeon and Levi took revenge on the people of Shechem. Alternate translation: [and just to please yourselves, you crippled some oxen so they could not walk] or [and you cut the leg tendons of some oxen just for the fun of it]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- into their council
- in their assembly
- they killed
- and for their pleasure
- an ox

UST

- when you plan {evil} things
- I refuse to make {evil} plans with you
- and murdered
- and {just} to entertain yourselves
- {some} cattle

Genesis 49:7

ULT:
Cursed {be} their anger because {it is} strong, and their fury because {it is} cruel! I will divide them in Jacob, and I will scatter them in Israel.

UST:
May God curse you for being so fiercely angry and malicious! I {ask God to} scatter you {and your descendants} among {the descendants of} Jacob. That's right, I {ask him to} scatter you throughout {the land of} Israel.

Cursed {be} their anger because {it is} strong, and their fury because {it is} cruel (ULT)

May God curse you for being so fiercely angry and malicious (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this parallelism in your language. Also, consider again how you translated "cursed" in the book of Genesis. See 3:14 (and note), 17; 4:11; 5:29; 8:21; 9:25; 12:3; 27:12–13, 29; 49:7. Alternate translation: [May God curse them for your intense anger and your malicious fury!] or [I ask God to punish them for being so intensely angry and malicious!]

Support Reference: Parallelism

I will divide them (ULT)

I {ask God to} scatter you {and your descendants} (UST)

The last half of verse 7 specifies how Jacob is asking God to curse Simeon and Levi. Alternate translation: [I ask God to disperse them and their descendants] or [May he cause them and their descendants to be spread out]

---

in Jacob (ULT)

among {the descendants of} Jacob (UST)

In this context, the name **Jacob** refers to his family and especially his descendants. Alternate translation: [among the family of Jacob]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

and I will scatter them (ULT)

That's right, I {ask him to} scatter you (UST)

The clauses "I will divide …" and "I will scatter …" form a parallelism that emphasizes the way Jacob is asking God to curse Simeon and Levi. If possible, it is best to keep both parts of a parallelism in your translation. Alternate translation: [Yes, I will]

Support Reference: Parallelism

---

and I will scatter them (ULT)

That's right, I {ask him to} scatter you (UST)

Consider again how you translated **scatter** in the book of Genesis. See 10:18, 32; 11:4, 8–9; 49:7. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. If the pronoun "you" is used here in your translation, it should be plural. Alternate translation: [disperse you] or [cause them to be spread out]

---

in Israel (ULT)

throughout {the land of} Israel (UST)

Jacob's prophecy in verse 7 came true many years later: the tribe of Simeon was absorbed by the tribe of Judah (Joshua 19:1), and the tribe of Levi never had its own territory, but rather lived in cities scattered throughout the other tribes of Israel (Joshua 21:1–42). You could put this information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [throughout the descendants of Israel]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Cursed {be}
- {it is} strong
- and their fury
- in Jacob
- and I will scatter them
- in Israel

UST

- May God curse
- you for being so fiercely angry and malicious
- you for being so fiercely angry and malicious
- among {the descendants of} Jacob
- That's right, I {ask him to} scatter you
- throughout {the land of} Israel

Genesis 49:8

ULT:
Judah, {it is} you your brothers will praise. Your hand {will be} on the neck of those opposing you. The sons of your father will bow down to you.

UST:
Judah, your brothers {and their descendants} will {highly} praise you {and your descendants}. You will conquer your enemies. {Then} my {other} sons will prostrate themselves before you {and your descendants} {in respect}.

Judah, {it is} you your brothers will praise (ULT)

Judah, your brothers {and their descendants} will {highly} praise you {and your descendants} (UST)

In the Hebrew text, the pronoun **you** is emphatic, and it has an emphatic position in the sentence. Consider what is the best way to communicate that emphasis in your language. Alternate translation: [Judah, you are the one whom your brothers will praise] or [Judah, you and your descendants will be highly praised by your brothers and their descendants]

Your hand {will be} on the neck of (ULT)

You will conquer (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this Hebrew idiom in your language. Also, if your translation includes Judah's descendants in the previous sentence, make sure that the pronouns **your** and **you** are plural in this sentence. Alternate translation: [You will be victorious over] or [You will defeat]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

those opposing you (ULT)

your enemies (UST)

Alternate translation: [those who are against you] or [your adversaries]

The sons of your father (ULT)

{Then} my {other} sons (UST)

Make sure that your translation of **your father** refers to Jacob. Alternate translation: [Your brothers]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

---

will bow down to you (ULT)

will prostrate themselves before you {and your descendants} {in respect} (UST)

Consider again how you translated **bow down** in the book of Genesis. See 18:2; 19:1; 22:5; 23:7, 12; 24:26, 48, 52; 27:29; 33:3, 6–7; 37:7, 9–10; 42:6; 43:26, 28; 47:31; 48:12; 49:8. Also see how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 17:3, 17. Alternate translation: [and their descendants will bow themselves before you and your descendants in submission]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Judah
- will praise
- those opposing you
- will bow down

UST
- will {highly} praise
- Judah

- your enemies
- will prostrate themselves

Genesis 49:9

ULT:
Judah {is} the cub of a lion. From the prey, my son, you have gone up. He crouches {and} lies down like a lion. And like a lioness, who will rouse him?

UST:
Judah, my son, {you are} {powerful} {like} a young lion that has returned {to its den} after {killing} {its} prey. It stretches out {and} lies down {to sleep}. No one dares to disturb that lion.

Judah {is} the cub of a lion. From the prey, my son, you have gone up (ULT)

Judah, my son, {you are} {powerful} {like} a young lion that has returned {to its den} after {killing} {its} prey (UST)

Alternate translation: [Judah, you, my son, are like a powerful young lion that kills its prey and returns to its den]

Support Reference: Biblical Imagery — Extended Metaphors

He crouches {and} lies down like a lion (ULT)

It stretches out {and} lies down {to sleep} (UST)

Here in verse 9 Jacob switches to using third person references (“he, his, him”) for Judah. For some languages it is better to use second person references (“you, your”) throughout verses 8–12. Alternate translation: [You are like a lion that stretches out and lies down to rest after eating]

Support Reference: Simile

And like a lioness, who will rouse him (ULT)

No one dares to disturb that lion (UST)

This sentence forms a parallelism with the previous sentence to emphasize Judah's authority. Also, Jacob uses a rhetorical question here to emphasize the respect that people will have for Judah. Some languages must use a statement here instead. Alternate translation: [Yes, you are like a lion that no one dares to awaken] or [No one dares to disrespect that lion]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- a lion
- Judah
- From the prey
- like a lion
- And like a lioness

UST

- {you are} {powerful} {like} a young lion
- Judah
- after {killing} {its} prey
- כְּאַרְיֵה (ORIG QUOTE)
- that lion

Genesis 49:10

ULT:
The scepter will not depart from Judah, nor the staff from between his feet, until Shiloh comes and to him {belongs} the obedience of the peoples.

UST:
Judah, there will always be one of your descendants ruling as king. In fact, your descendants will rule until the {highest} king comes and the peoples {of the earth} obey him.

The scepter will not depart from Judah (ULT)

Judah, there will always be one of your descendants ruling as king (UST)

A scepter, or a king's staff, is a special, decorated rod that a king holds to symbolize his authority to rule the people who are under him. Alternate translation: [Judah, the authority to rule will always belong to you and your descendants]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

nor the staff from between his feet (ULT)

In fact, your descendants will rule (UST)

This phrase forms a parallelism with the previous clause and emphasizes the authority that Judah and his descendants will have.

Support Reference: Parallelism

---

until Shiloh comes (ULT)

until the {highest} king comes (UST)

Jacob is probably prophesying here about the coming of the Messiah/Christ. This fits with the fact that Jesus was a descendant of the tribe of Judah and is now ruling as the true King over

heaven and earth. You could put some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [until the highest king arrives] or [until the One whom the scepter belongs to comes]

---

and to him {belongs} the obedience of the peoples (ULT)

and the peoples {of the earth} obey him (UST)

Alternate translation: [and the nations of the earth obey him] or [and all people obey him] or [All people will obey him]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- The scepter
- from Judah
- nor the staff
- Shiloh

UST

- Judah, there will always be one of your descendants ruling as king
- Judah, there will always be one of your descendants ruling as king
- In fact, your descendants will rule
- the {highest} king

Genesis 49:11

ULT:
He will tether his donkey to the {grape}vine, and the son of his donkey to the choice branch. He will wash his garment{s} in wine and his robe{s} in the blood of grapes.

UST:
You {and your descendants} will {be so wealthy that you could} tie your donkey{s} to {your} {grape}vine{s} {to eat the valuable fruit}. {It will not matter if} your donkeys' colts eat {your} best {grapevine} branch{es}. {You will still have so much wine from other vines that} you could {even} use it like water to wash your clothes.

He will tether (ULT)

You {and your descendants} will {be so wealthy that you could} tie (UST)

In verse 11, the pronouns "he" and **his** refer to Judah and his descendants. To make that clear, you could make that explicit here and then use plural pronouns "they" and "their" throughout the verse. Or if you are using the second person throughout this section, you could say, "You and your descendants …" and use plural pronouns "you" and "your" after that. Alternate translation: [Judah and his descendants]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

He will tether his donkey to the {grape}vine (ULT)

You {and your descendants} will {be so wealthy that you could} tie your donkey{s} to {your} {grape}vine{s} {to eat the valuable fruit} (UST)

The author assumes that readers will know that in Jacob's culture grapevines were valuable plants. Unless a person was very rich, he would never tether a donkey to his grapevines, because the donkey would eat the valuable fruit and the vines. If necessary, you could make some of that information explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: [He will be so rich that he will tie his donkey to his grapevines and let it eat the valuable fruit]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

and the son of his donkey to the choice branch (ULT)

It will not matter if} your donkeys' colts eat {your} best {grapevine} branch{es} (UST)

This clause forms a parallelism with the previous one to emphasize how wealthy Judah and his descendants will be.

Support Reference: Parallelism

He will wash his garment{s} in wine and his robe{s} in the blood of grapes (ULT)

{ … You will still have so much wine from other vines that} you could {even} use it like water to wash your clothes (UST)

This sentence is another parallelism that emphasizes how wealthy Judah and his descendants will be. The phrase **blood of grapes** is an idiom that refers to red wine made from the juice of grapes. Alternate translation: [They will still have so much wine from other vines that you could even use the wine like water to wash your robes and other clothes]

Support Reference: Parallelism

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- He will tether
- to the {grape}vine
- his donkey
- and … to the choice branch
- his donkey
- in wine
- grapes

UST

- You {and your descendants} will {be so wealthy that you could} tie
- to {your} {grape}vine{s} {to eat the valuable fruit}
- your donkey{s}
- eat {your} best {grapevine} branch{es}
- {It will not matter if} your donkeys' colts
- { … You will still have so much wine from other vines that} you could {even} use it like water to wash your clothes

- { … You will still have so much wine from other vines that} you could {even} use it like water to wash your clothes

---

Genesis 49:12

ULT:
{His} eyes {will be} brilliant from wine, and {his} teeth {will be} white from milk.

UST:
{Your} eyes {will be} bright from {drinking} {abundant} wine, and {your} teeth {will be} white from {drinking} {abundant} milk.

{His} eyes (ULT)

{Your} eyes (UST)

Alternate translation: [Their eyes] or [You will be so blessed that your eyes]

{will be} brilliant from wine (ULT)

{will be} bright from {drinking} {abundant} wine (UST)

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) “will be bright from drinking abundant wine,” or (2) “will be darker than wine,” In both interpretations the emphasis is that Judah’s descendants will be blessed with an abundance of the best foods, including wine and milk, which are examples of the most valuable foods that were produced in the land.

---

and {his} teeth {will be} white from milk (ULT)

and {your} teeth {will be} white from {drinking} {abundant} milk (UST)

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) “and their/your teeth will be white from drinking abundant milk.” or (2) “and their/your teeth will be whiter than milk.” Make sure that the way you translate this phrase fits with the interpretation you used for the first part of this verse.

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- from wine

UST

- from {drinking} {abundant} wine

Genesis 49:13

ULT:
Zebulun will settle at the shore of the sea, and he {will live} at the shore of ships, and his border {will reach} to Sidon.

UST:
Zebulun, {you} {and your descendants} will live near the coast, where there will be a {safe} harbor for ships. Your territory {will extend} as far {north} as {the city of} Sidon.

Zebulun (ULT)

Zebulun, {you} {and your descendants} (UST)

Throughout this chapter, decide whether it is best in your language to use third person or second person when Jacob refers to each of his sons (and their descendants). Alternate translation: [As for Zebulun, he and his descendants]

---

will settle at the shore of the sea (ULT)

will live near the coast (UST)

Alternate translation: [will live at the coast]

---

and he {will live} at the shore of ships (ULT)

where there will be a {safe} harbor for ships (UST)

This clause forms a parallelism with the previous clause to emphasize where Zebulun and his descendants will live. Alternate translation: [yes, they will settle at a harbor for ships] or [where there will be a safe place for ships to load and unload their cargo]

Support Reference: Parallelism

---

to Sidon (ULT)

as far {north} as {the city of} Sidon (UST)

Alternate translation: [all the way up to the city of Sidon]

---

and his border {will reach} (ULT)

Your territory {will extend} (UST)

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: [Their territory will extend]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Zebulun
- Sidon

UST

- Zebulun, {you} {and your descendants}
- {the city of} Sidon

Genesis 49:14

ULT:
Issachar {is} a strong donkey lying down between two saddlebags.

UST:
Issachar, {you} {and your descendants} {will be} {like} a sturdy donkey {that is} resting {on the ground} between two loads.

Issachar (ULT)

Issachar, {you} {and your descendants} (UST)

Alternate translation: [As for Issachar, he and his descendants]

{is} a strong donkey (ULT)

{will be} {like} a sturdy donkey (UST)

Consider again how you translated **donkey** in the book of Genesis. See 12:16; 16:12; 22:3, 5, 6; 24:35; 30:43; 32:5, 15; 34:28; 36:24; 42:26–27; 43:18, 24; 44:3, 13; 45:23; 47:17; 49:14.
Alternate translation: [will be like a strong donkey]

Support Reference: Biblical Imagery — Extended Metaphors

---

lying down (ULT)

that is} resting {on the ground} (UST)

Alternate translation: [lying down resting]

---

between two saddlebags (ULT)

between two loads (UST)

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) “between two saddlebags/loads.” or (2) “between the two parts of a sheep pen.” Both interpretations imply that the donkey is lying down to rest after it worked hard.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Issachar
- {is} a … donkey

UST

- Issachar, {you} {and your descendants}
- {will be} {like} a … donkey

Genesis 49:15

ULT:
And he sees {his} resting place that {it is} good and the land that it is pleasant. Then he will bend his shoulder to bear {the loads}, and he will be a forced labor servant.

UST:
You will have a good place to rest, in a land that is pleasant, but you will work hard and carry {heavy loads}. You will have to work {very} hard {for others} as slaves.

And he sees {his} resting place that {it is} good and the land that it is pleasant (ULT)

You will have a good place to rest, in a land that is pleasant (UST)

Alternate translation: [They will have a good place to live, in a enjoyable land]

Support Reference: Parallelism

Then he will bend his shoulder (ULT)

but you will work hard (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this Hebrew idiom in your language. Alternate translation: [However, you will also have to exert yourselves] or [But you will work hard]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

to bear {the loads} (ULT)

and carry {heavy loads} (UST)

Alternate translation: [to carry heavy loads]

---

and he will be a forced labor servant (ULT)

You will have to work {very} hard {for others} as slaves (UST)

Alternate translation: [In fact, you will be forced to be slaves] or [They will have to work very hard for others as slaves] or [and people will force you to be their slaves]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- {it is} good
- the land
- it is pleasant
- a … servant

UST

- good
- in a land
- is pleasant
- as slaves

Genesis 49:16

ULT:
Dan will judge his people as one of the tribes of Israel.

UST:
Dan, you {and your descendants} will rule your {own} people and have equal status with {the rest of} the tribes of Israel.

Dan (ULT)

Dan, you {and your descendants} (UST)

Alternate translation: [As for Dan, he and his descendants]

---

will judge his people (ULT)

will rule your {own} people (UST)

Alternate translation: [will govern their own people group]

---

as one of the tribes of Israel (ULT)

and have equal status with {the rest of} the tribes of Israel (UST)

Alternate translation: [just as the other tribes of Israel govern their own people]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- will judge
- the tribes of
- Israel

UST

- will rule
- the tribes of
- Israel

Genesis 49:17

ULT:
Dan will be a snake beside the road, a viper beside the path, that bites the heels of a horse, and its rider falls off backward.

UST:
You will be {like} a poisonous snake {lying} beside a road that strikes the feet of {its enemy's} horse, so that {it rears up and} the enemy falls off backward {to the ground}."

Dan (ULT)

You (UST)

Be consistent with your choice of third person or second person (singular or plural) references to Dan (and his descendants) throughout verses 16 and 17. Alternate translation: [They]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

will be a snake beside the road, a viper beside the path (ULT)

will be {like} a poisonous snake lying} beside a road (UST)

Alternate translation: [will be cunning like a poisonous snake lying beside a road]

Support Reference: Biblical Imagery — Extended Metaphors

---

and its rider falls off backward (ULT)

so that {it rears up and} the enemy falls off backward {to the ground} (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that it rears up and the rider falls off backward to the ground] or […is thrown off the horse and defeated]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Dan
- a snake
- a horse

UST

- You
- נָחָשׁ (ORIG QUOTE)
- {its enemy's} horse

Genesis 49:18

ULT:
I am waiting for your salvation, Yahweh!

UST:
{Then Jacob paused and exclaimed,} "Yahweh, I am looking expectantly to you to save {me}!"

I am waiting for your salvation, Yahweh (ULT)

Then Jacob paused and exclaimed,} "Yahweh, I am looking expectantly to you to save {me} (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Jacob is talking to God in verse 18, not Dan any more.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- for your salvation
- Yahweh

UST
- Then Jacob paused and exclaimed … to you to save {me}
- Yahweh

Genesis 49:19

ULT:
{As for} Gad, raider{s} will attack him, but he will attack {their} heel{s}.

UST:
{Then he continued,} "{As for you,} Gad, a group of robbers will attack you {and your descendants}, but you will chase them {and defeat them}.

raider{s} will attack him (ULT)

a group of robbers will attack you {and your descendants} (UST)

Alternate translation: [a group of robbers will attack him and his descendants] or [you and your descendants will be attacked by enemies]

---

but he will attack {their} heel{s} (ULT)

but you will chase them {and defeat them} (UST)

Make sure it is clear in your translation who is being referred to at each point in this sentence.
Alternate translation: [but they will hunt them down and defeat them]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- {As for} Gad
- raider{s}

UST
- {Then he continued,} "{As for you,} Gad
- a group of robbers

Genesis 49:20

ULT:
From Asher, his bread {will be} fat, and he will provide king's delicacies.

UST:
Asher, {you} {and your descendants} will {be wealthy and} eat the best food. In fact, you will produce delicious foods {that are fit} for kings {to eat}.

From Asher, his bread {will be} fat (ULT)

Asher, {you} {and your descendants} will {be wealthy and} eat the best food (UST)

Here the word **bread** refers to food in general and **fat** refers to the best kinds of food. Alternate translation: [Asher and his descendants will produce rich food] or [Asher, you and your descendants will be wealthy and produce the finest food]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

---

and he will provide king's delicacies (ULT)

In fact, you will produce delicious foods {that are fit} for kings {to eat} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and he will even supply food that is fancy enough for a king] or [In fact, they will supply fine foods that are fit for kings to eat]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- From Asher
- his bread
- king

UST
- Asher
- {you} {and your descendants} will {be wealthy and} eat the best food
- delicious foods {that are fit} for kings {to eat}

Genesis 49:21

ULT:
Naphtali {is} a doe that is let loose. He gives words of beauty.

UST:
Naphtali, {you} {and your descendants} {will be} {swift} {like} a deer that is free to run wherever it wants. You will {also} speak eloquently.

Naphtali (ULT)

Naphtali, {you} {and your descendants} (UST)

Alternate translation: [As for Naphtali, he and his descendants]

{is} a doe (ULT)

{will be} {swift} {like} a deer (UST)

This image pictures a deer that swiftly runs away after being released from captivity. Alternate translation: [will be swift like a doe] or [will be warriors who are swift like a deer]

Support Reference: Metaphor

---

that is let loose (ULT)

that is free to run wherever it wants (UST)

Alternate translation: [that is set free] or [that has been released to run freely] or [that is free to go wherever it wants]

He gives words of beauty (ULT)

You will {also} speak eloquently (UST)

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) “He/They/You will also speak eloquently.” or “They/You will also be gifted/excellent speakers/negotiators.” or (2) “and that bears/has beautiful/healthy fawns.” or “He/They/You will have beautiful children.” If you made Naphtali’s descendants explicit at the beginning of this verse, make sure you use a plural pronoun (“they” or “you”) here.

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Naphtali
- {is} a doe

UST

- Naphtali, {you} {and your descendants}
- {will be} {swift} {like} a deer

Genesis 49:22

ULT:
Joseph {is} the son of a fruit-bearing {vine}, the son of a fruit-bearing {vine} beside a spring, {whose} daughters go up over a wall.

UST:
Joseph, {you} {and your descendants} {will become} very numerous {like} {fruit on} a productive {tree} {that is growing} next to a stream {of water}, {with} branches {full of fruit} that hang over a {nearby} wall.

Joseph {is} (ULT)

Joseph, {you} {and your descendants} (UST)

Alternate translation: [As for Joseph, he and his descendants]

---

the son of a fruit-bearing {vine}, the son of a fruit-bearing {vine … } (ULT)

will become} very numerous {like} {fruit on} a productive {tree} (UST)

The same phrase is repeated here to emphasize how prosperous and productive Joseph (and his descendants) will be. Instead of saying the same phrase twice, many translations combine the two phrases and form one clause that communicates the emphasis in a different way. Do what is accurate and natural in your language. Alternate translation: [will be like the branch of a fruitful tree, yes, like a fruitful tree] or [will be very successful and flourish like a fruitful branch of a vine] or [will be very fruitful like the fruit on a fruitful vine]

Support Reference: Biblical Imagery — Extended Metaphors

---

beside a spring (ULT)

that is growing} next to a stream {of water} (UST)

Alternate translation: [that is planted next to a spring of water]

{whose} daughters go up (ULT)

{with} branches {full of fruit} that hang (UST)

This phrase probably continues the word picture of the fruitful vine that symbolizes how prosperous and numerous Joseph and his descendants will be. Consider what is the best way to translate this word picture in your language. Alternate translation: [with branches extending] or [with branches full of fruit that extend]

Support Reference: Biblical Imagery — Extended Metaphors

---

over a wall (ULT)

over a {nearby} wall (UST)

Alternate translation: [over a surrounding wall]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Joseph {is}
- a fruit-bearing {vine}
- a spring

UST
- Joseph, {you} {and your descendants}
- like} {fruit on} a productive {tree}
- a stream {of water}

Genesis 49:23

ULT:
And masters of arrows will attack him and shoot and harass him.

UST:
Enemy warriors will {fiercely} attack you {and your descendants} and shoot {arrows} {at you} and try to destroy you.

And … will attack him (ULT)

will {fiercely} attack you {and your descendants} (UST)

Be consistent with your choice of third person or second person (singular or plural) references to Joseph (and his descendants) throughout verses 22–26. Alternate translation: [Skillful bowmen will fiercely attack them and their descendants] or [Enemy soldiers will …] or [Your enemies will …]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

and shoot (ULT)

and shoot {arrows} {at you} (UST)

Alternate translation: [and shoot arrows at them]

---

and harass him (ULT)

and try to destroy you (UST)

Alternate translation: [and treat them hatefully] or [and try to destroy them]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- masters of
- arrows

UST

- Enemy warriors
- Enemy warriors

Genesis 49:24

ULT:
But his bow will remain in strength and the arms of his hands will be made limber by the hands of the Mighty {One} of Jacob, by the name of the Shepherd, the Rock of Israel,

UST:
But the Mighty {God} whom I worship will keep you strong and help you use your weapons well {as you fight back}. He takes care of {his people} the way a shepherd takes care of his sheep. {He is} {like} a rock {fortress} who protects Israel {and his descendants}.

But his bow will remain in strength (ULT)

But … will keep you strong and help you use your weapons well {as you fight back … } (UST)

Make sure that the way you translate **his** in this verse fits with whether you use second or third person (singular or plural) to refer to Joseph (and his descendants) in verses 22–26. Alternate translation: [But as they fight back, you will hold your bows steady] or [… you will use your bows well]

---

and the arms of his hands will be made limber (ULT)

But … will keep you strong and help you use your weapons well {as you fight back … } (UST)

Alternate translation: [and their powerful arms will stay agile]

---

by the hands of the Mighty {One} of Jacob (ULT)

the Mighty {God} whom I worship (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this idiom in your language. Alternate translation: [because of the power]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

the Mighty {One} of Jacob (ULT)

the Mighty {God} whom I worship (UST)

For some languages, it is clearer or more natural to change the order of the phrases in this verse and say, “But the Mighty/Powerful God whom I worship/serve will keep you strong and help you use your bows/weapons well/effectively as you fight back.” Alternate translation: [of the Powerful God whom I worship] or [that the Powerful God of Jacob gives you]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

by the name of the Shepherd (ULT)

He takes care of {his people} the way a shepherd takes care of his sheep (UST)

A shepherd takes care of his sheep and provides for all of their needs. In the same way God takes care of his people and provides for all of their needs. See Psalm 23 which also talks about God as our Shepherd. You could put some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [He takes care of his people the way that a shepherd takes care of his sheep]

Support Reference: Metaphor

---

the Rock of Israel (ULT)

He is} {like} a rock {fortress} who protects Israel {and his descendants} (UST)

In verses 24 and 25, several different titles are used to refer to Yahweh, the only true God. Make sure that your translation of these verses does not sound like there is more than one God. Also make sure it is clear in your translation or in a footnote that Jacob is referring to himself in this verse as Jacob and Israel.

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- his bow
- the Mighty {One} of
- Jacob
- the Shepherd
- Israel

UST

- But … will keep you strong and help you use your weapons well {as you fight back … }
- the Mighty {God} whom I worship
- the Mighty {God} whom I worship
- He takes care of {his people} the way a shepherd takes care of his sheep
- Israel {and his descendants}

Genesis 49:25

ULT:
by the God of your father, and he will help you, and with the Almighty, and he will bless you {with} blessings of the heavens above, blessings of the deep that lies below, blessings of breasts and womb.

UST:
{That strength/power comes} from the God {who has always taken care} of {me,} your father. He is the all-powerful {God} who will help you {and your descendants} and bless you {all} {with} rain from above and water from deep in the ground. He will {also} bless {you} with many children {and much livestock}.

by the God of (ULT)

{That strength/power comes} from the God {who has always taken care} of (UST)

Alternate translation: [That power is from]

---

by the God of your father, and he will help you (ULT)

{That strength/power comes} from the God {who has always taken care} of {me,} your father … who will help you {and your descendants} (UST)

Alternate translation: [the God who has always taken care of me, your father. He will also help you and your descendants]

---

and with the Almighty, and he will bless you (ULT)

He is the all-powerful {God} who will help you {and your descendants} and bless you {all … } (UST)

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to change the order of some of the clauses in the first half of this verse and say, “That strength/power comes from the God who has always taken care of me, your father. He is the all-powerful God who will help you and

your descendants and bless you all." Also, compare how you translated "God Almighty" in Genesis 48:3. Alternate translation: [He is the all-powerful God, who will bless you all]

Support Reference: Information Structure

{with} blessings of the heavens above (ULT)

{with} rain from above (UST)

Alternate translation: [He will provide you with rain from the sky]

---

blessings of the deep that lies below (ULT)

and water from deep in the ground (UST)

This phrase refers to water that comes from under the ground and supplies springs, wells, and rivers. Alternate translation: [and bless you with water from under the ground]

---

blessings of breasts and womb (ULT)

He will {also} bless {you} with many children {and much livestock} (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this metonymy in your language. Alternate translation: [May your wives bear many children and your animals bear many young]

Support Reference: Metonymy

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- by the God of
- the Almighty
- and he will bless you
- {with} blessings of

- the heavens
- blessings of
- blessings of
- and womb

UST

- {That strength/power comes} from the God {who has always taken care} of
- He is the all-powerful {God}
- and bless you {all}
- {with} rain from above
- {with} rain from above
- and water from deep in the ground
- He will {also} bless {you} with
- many children {and much livestock}

Genesis 49:26

ULT:
The blessings of your father have surpassed the blessings of my ancestors, even to the bounties of the eternal hills. May they rest on the head of Joseph, even on the top of the head of the one consecrated from {among} his brothers.

UST:
{God} has blessed me more than he blessed my ancestors. {He has blessed me with riches that are} greater than the riches {that come} from the ancient mountains. I pray that {God} will abundantly bless {you too,} Joseph, as the one he chose to set apart {and honor} above your brothers.

The blessings of your father have surpassed the blessings of my ancestors (ULT)

{ … God} has blessed me more than he blessed my ancestors (UST)

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "God has blessed me your father more than he blessed my ancestors," or (2) "The blessings your father is blessing you with are greater than the blessings my ancestors blessed me with," or (3) "The blessings of your father have surpassed the blessings/riches of the ancient mountains," The third interpretation is based on the Greek Septuagint, which interprets the Hebrew word for **ancestors** as "mountains" (which has a similar spelling in Hebrew).

Support Reference: Textual Variants

---

even to the bounties of (ULT)

{He has blessed me with riches that are} greater than the riches {that come} from (UST)

The meaning of the Hebrew text is uncertain here. It could mean: (1) "He has blessed me with riches that are greater than the riches that come from" or (2) "My blessings are so great that they extend to the farthest boundaries/limits of."

May they rest on the head of Joseph (ULT)

I pray that {God} will abundantly bless {you too,} Joseph, as (UST)

The words **head** and **top of the head** refer to Joseph and are connected with the custom of laying hands on the head of the person being blessed. Alternate translation: [May God also give those blessings to you Joseph, as] or [I pray that God will abundantly bless you too, Joseph, since you are]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

---

the one consecrated from {among} (ULT)

the one he chose to set apart {and honor} above (UST)

The expression **the one consecrated from** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the one God consecrated from among] or [the one whom God chose to set apart and honor among]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

his brothers (ULT)

your brothers (UST)

Make sure your choice of **his** or **your** here fits with how you translated the beginning of this sentence. Alternate translation: [over his brothers]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

---

the eternal hills (ULT)

the ancient mountains (UST)

Alternate translation: [the everlasting mountains]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- The blessings of
- the blessings of
- my ancestors
- Joseph

UST

- {God} has blessed me
- he blessed my ancestors
- he blessed my ancestors
- I pray that {God} will abundantly bless {you too,} Joseph, as

---

Genesis 49:27

ULT:
Benjamin {is} a ravenous wolf. In the morning it devours {its} prey, and in the evening it divides the plunder.”

UST:
Benjamin {you and your descendants} {will be} {like} a fierce wolf. You will always defeat your enemies and take their possessions and wealth.”

Benjamin (ULT)

Benjamin {you and your descendants} (UST)

Consider again whether you make “and … descendants” explicit for each of Jacob’s sons in this chapter or whether you leave it implied and possibly put that information in a footnote. See verses 1, 7–8, 11, 13–14, 16, 19–23, 27. Alternate translation: [As for Benjamin, he and his descendants] or [Benjamin, you and your descendants]

{is} a ravenous wolf (ULT)

{will be} {like} a fierce wolf (UST)

Wolves are a type of large, fierce, wild dog that lives and hunts together in groups. If wolves are unknown in your language area, you could say “wild dog” or “a pack of wild dogs.” Consider again how you translated the metaphors and comparisons that Jacob uses in verses 4, 9–11, 14, 17, 21–22, 24, 27. Alternate translation: [is like a fierce wolf] or [will be fierce warriors like hungry wolves]

Support Reference: Biblical Imagery — Extended Metaphors

In the morning it devours {its} prey, and in the evening it divides the plunder (ULT)

You will always defeat your enemies and take their possessions and wealth (UST)

Consider again whether to use second person or third person (singular or plural) in verses 3–27, and make sure your translation of the pronouns is clear and natural. To do that, it is helpful to read your translation of this section aloud. Alternate translation: [You defeat their enemies in the morning and share the plunder of battle with your warriors in the evening]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Benjamin
- {is} a … wolf
- {its} prey

UST

- Benjamin {you and your descendants}
- {will be} {like} a … wolf
- You will … defeat your enemies

Genesis 49:28

ULT:
All those {are} the twelve tribes of Israel, and that {is} what their father said to them. And he blessed them, each one, according to his blessing he blessed them.

UST:
Those {twelve sons} {are} {the ancestors of} the twelve tribes that descended from Israel, and those {were} the blessings that their father spoke to them. He blessed each one of them with blessings that were appropriate for them {and their descendants}.

All those {are} the twelve tribes of Israel (ULT)

Those {twelve sons} {are} {the ancestors of} the twelve tribes that descended from Israel (UST)

This clause refers back to Jacob's sons who are mentioned in verses 1–27. Alternate translation: [Those twelve sons are the forefathers of the twelve tribes that came from Israel]

---

and that {is} what their father said to them (ULT)

and those {were} the blessings that their father spoke to them (UST)

Alternate translation: [and those were the words that their father spoke to them]

---

them, each one (ULT)

each one of them (UST)

Alternate translation: [each of them] or [each son]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- {are} the … tribes of
- Israel
- And he blessed
- according to his blessing
- he blessed

UST

- {are} {the ancestors of} the … tribes that descended from
- Israel
- He blessed
- with blessings that were appropriate for
- with blessings that were appropriate for

Genesis 49:29

ULT:
Then he commanded them and said to them, "I am being gathered to my people. Bury me with my fathers in the cave that {is} in the field of Ephron the Hittite,

UST:
Then Jacob instructed his sons by saying to them, "I am about to {die and} join my ancestors {who have already died}. Bury my body next to their {bodies} inside the cave that {is} in the field that Ephron the Hittite used to own.

Then he commanded them (ULT)

Then Jacob instructed his sons (UST)

Alternate translation: [After that, he instructed his sons]

---

and said to them (ULT)

by saying to them (UST)

Make sure that your translation of "commanded … and said …" refers to a single action, not two different actions.

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

I am being gathered to (ULT)

I am about to {die and} join (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Alternate translation: [I will soon die and be taken by God to be with] or [God will soon take my spirit to be with]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

my people (ULT)

my ancestors {who have already died} (UST)

Alternate translation: [my relatives who have already died] or [my relatives who have gone before me] or [my deceased ancestors]

Bury me (ULT)

Bury my body (UST)

Make sure that your translation of this phrase does not mean or imply that Jacob was asking to be buried while he was still physically alive. Alternate translation: [Please bury my body] or [When that happens, please bury me]

---

with my fathers (ULT)

next to their {bodies} (UST)

Alternate translation: [with the bodies of my ancestors] or [next to them]

---

in the cave that {is} in the field of Ephron the Hittite (ULT)

inside the cave that {is} in the field that Ephron the Hittite used to own (UST)

Make sure your translation of this clause does not sound like Ephron still owned that property. Alternate translation: [inside the cave that is located in the field that Ephron the Hittite used to own] or [… the field that used to belong to Ephron the Hittite]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- am being gathered
- Bury
- the Hittite

UST

- am about to {die and} join
- Bury
- the Hittite

Genesis 49:30

ULT:
in the cave that {is} in the field of Machpelah that {is} in front of Mamre in the land of Canaan, that Abraham bought with the field from Ephron the Hittite as property {for} a burial place.

UST:
That cave and field are in the Machpelah {area} that is near {the city of} Mamre in the region of Canaan. {That is the cave} that {my grandfather} Abraham bought, along with the field, from Ephron the Hittite, in order to have a place to bury {his dead relatives}.

in the cave that {is} in the field of Machpelah (ULT)

That cave and field are in the Machpelah {area} (UST)

See how you translated **Machpelah** in Genesis 23:9.

---

that {is} in front of Mamre (ULT)

that is near {the city of} Mamre (UST)

Alternate translation: [that is east of the city of Mamre]

---

as property {for} a burial place (ULT)

in order to have a place to bury {his dead relatives} (UST)

Alternate translation: [to use for a family burial site] or [in order to possess a place to bury his dead relatives]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- in the land of

- Canaan
- Abraham
- the Hittite
- a burial place

UST

- in the region of
- Canaan
- {my grandfather} Abraham
- the Hittite
- a place to bury {his dead relatives}

Genesis 49:31

ULT:
There they buried Abraham and Sarah his wife, there they buried Isaac and Rebekah his wife, and there I buried Leah.

UST:
That is where {the bodies of} Abraham and his wife Sarah are buried, {and} where {the bodies of} Isaac and his wife Rebekah are buried, and that is where I buried {the body of} {my wife} Leah.

There they buried Abraham and Sarah his wife (ULT)

That is where {the bodies of} Abraham and his wife Sarah are buried (UST)

The pronoun **they** is general in this verse and does not specify who buried these people. Many languages have a similar general word. Other languages make this a passive clause without specifying the subject.

---

and there (ULT)

and that is where (UST)

Alternate translation: [That is also where]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- they buried
- Abraham
- Sarah
- they buried
- Isaac
- Rebekah
- I buried
- Leah

UST

- are buried
- {the bodies of} Abraham

- Sarah
- are buried
- {the bodies of} Isaac
- Rebekah
- I buried
- {the body of} {my wife} Leah

Genesis 49:32

ULT:
The purchase of the field and the cave that {is} in it {was} from the sons of Heth.”

UST:
{Abraham} bought that field and cave from the descendants of Heth.”

The purchase of the field and the cave that {is} in it {was} (ULT)

{Abraham} bought that field and cave … the descendants (UST)

In verse 32, Jacob repeats some of what he said in verses 29–30. Make sure your translation does not sound like it was the first time he said this. Also consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Alternate translation: [That field and cave were bought by Abraham]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

from the sons of Heth (ULT)

from … of Heth (UST)

Compare how you translated “Hittite” in verse 29, which refers to the same people group as here. Alternate translation: [from the descendants of Heth] or [from the Hittite people]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Heth

UST
- of Heth

Genesis 49:33

ULT:
Then Jacob finished commanding his sons, and he drew his feet into the bed and exhaled and was gathered to his people.

UST:
When Jacob had finished giving those instructions to his sons, he {lay down and} pulled his feet {up} into {his} bed. Then he took his last breath {and died} and joined his ancestors {who had died before him}.

and he drew his feet into the bed (ULT)

he {lay down and} pulled his feet {up} into {his} bed (UST)

This clause means that Jacob lay back down after being in a sitting position on the side of his bed (Genesis 48:2). Alternate translation: [he lay down and lifted his feet up into his bed]

---

and exhaled (ULT)

Then he took his last breath {and died} (UST)

Consider again how you translated the idiom **exhaled** in the book of Genesis. See 6:17; 7:21; 25:8, 17; 35:29; 49:33. Alternate translation: [and breathed out his last breath] or [Then he took his final breath and died]

Support Reference: Euphemism

---

and was gathered to his people (ULT)

and joined his ancestors {who had died before him} (UST)

Consider again how you translated this phrase in the book of Genesis. See 25:8 (and note), 17; 35:29; 49:29, 33. Alternate translation: [and was taken by God to be with his deceased relatives]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Jacob

UST

- Jacob

Genesis 50

Genesis 50:1

ULT:
Then Joseph fell on the face of his father, and he wept over him and kissed him.

UST:
Then Joseph hugged his father {in sorrow}, and he cried over him and kissed him {goodbye} {on the cheek}.

Then Joseph fell on the face of (ULT)

Then Joseph hugged his father {in sorrow} (UST)

Make sure that your translation of this phrase, **fell on the face of** does not imply that Joseph fell accidently. Rather, he intentionally threw himself on his father to embrace him and express his love for him and his grief. See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 46:29. Alternate translation: [Immediately, Joseph sorrowfully embraced]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and he wept over him (ULT)

and he cried over him (UST)

For some languages it may be better to put this clause earlier and say, “Then Joseph cried in his sorrow/grief, and he hugged his father tightly and kissed him.”

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

and kissed him (ULT)

and kissed him {goodbye} {on the cheek} (UST)

Consider again how you translated **kissed** in the book of Genesis. See 27:26–27; 29:11, 13; 31:28, 55; 33:4; 45:15; 48:10; 50:1. Alternate translation: [and kissed him goodbye on the forehead]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- and he wept
- and kissed

UST

- Joseph
- and he cried
- and kissed … goodbye} {on the cheek}

Genesis 50:2

ULT:
Then Joseph commanded his servants the physicians to embalm his father. So the physicians embalmed Israel,

UST:
Then he ordered his doctors who served him to prepare his father{'s body} for burial. So they did that.

Then Joseph commanded (ULT)

Then he ordered (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then he told]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

---

his servants the physicians (ULT)

his doctors who served him (UST)

Alternate translation: [his servants who were doctors] or [his physicians who served him]

---

to embalm his father (ULT)

to prepare his father{'s body} for burial (UST)

The word **embalm** refers here to the special process that the Egyptians used to slow down the decaying process of a dead body in order to preserve it for burial.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- his servants
- Israel

UST

- יוֹסֵף (ORIG QUOTE)
- who served him
- So they did that

Genesis 50:3

ULT:
and they completed forty days for him, for so they complete the days of embalmings. And the Egyptians wept for him seventy days.

UST:
The process took forty days, which is how long it {normally} takes to prepare a body. The people in Egypt mourned for Israel {for} seventy days.

and they completed forty days for him (ULT)

The process took forty days (UST)

Alternate translation: [which took them 40 days] or [The work took 40 days]

---

for so they complete the days of embalmings (ULT)

which is how long it {normally} takes to prepare a body (UST)

Alternate translation: [because that is the usual amount of time needed to embalm a body] or [which is how long it usually takes to embalm a body]

And the Egyptians wept for him seventy days (ULT)

The people in Egypt mourned for Israel {for} seventy days (UST)

The seventy days of mourning included the forty days of embalming, so do not begin your translation of this sentence with a word like “Then.” Alternate translation: [The people in Egypt wept for him for seventy days] or [For seventy days the people of Egypt mourned for him]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- days
- the days of
- And … wept
- the Egyptians
- days

UST

- days
- which is how long it {normally} takes
- mourned
- The people in Egypt
- days

Genesis 50:4

ULT:
And the days of his mourning passed, then Joseph spoke to the house of Pharaoh, saying, "Please, if I have found favor in your eyes, please speak in the ears of Pharaoh, saying,

UST:
After that time of mourning Israel's death, Joseph said to Pharaoh's officials, "Please do this favor for me: please take a message to {King} Pharaoh {for me} and tell {him}

And the days of his mourning passed (ULT)

After that time of mourning Israel's death (UST)

Alternate translation: [When those seventy days of mourning for him were over]

---

then Joseph spoke to the house of Pharaoh, saying (ULT)

Joseph said to Pharaoh's officials (UST)

The phrase **the house of Pharaoh** refers to members of the royal court.

Support Reference: Metonymy

Please, if I have found favor in your eyes (ULT)

Please do this favor for me (UST)

Alternate translation: [Please do this kindness for me:] or [Please show me kindness and do this:]

---

please speak in the ears of Pharaoh, saying (ULT)

please take a message to {King} Pharaoh {for me} and tell {him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [please speak to King Pharaoh for me and say to him]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the days of
- his mourning
- Joseph
- the house of
- Pharaoh
- favor
- Pharaoh

UST

- that time of
- mourning Israel's death
- Joseph
- s officials
- Pharaoh
- Please do this favor for me
- to {King} Pharaoh

Genesis 50:5

ULT:
'My father made me swear, saying, "Behold, I am dying. In my grave that I dug for myself in the land of Canaan, there you must bury me." So now, please let me go up {there} and bury my father, then I will return.'"

UST:
that when my father was about to die, he had me vow to him that I would bury his body in the region of Canaan, in a tomb that he had prepared for himself there. So {ask the king to} please let me go {to Canaan} and bury my father{'s body} {there}. After that, I will come back {here}."

My father made me swear, saying, "Behold, I am dying. In my grave that I dug for myself in the land of Canaan, there you must bury me (ULT)

that when my father was about to die, he had me vow to him that I would bury his body in the region of Canaan, in a tomb that he had prepared for himself there (UST)

For some languages it may be better to translate this embedded quote as an indirect quote and say, "that when my father was about to die, he had me swear/vow/promise to him that I would bury his body in the region of Canaan, in a grave/tomb that he had prepared for himself there."

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

So now, please let me go up {there} and bury my father (ULT)

So {ask the king to} please let me go {to Canaan} and bury my father{'s body} {there} (UST)

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as an indirect quote. Also see how you translated **go up** in Genesis 45:9.

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

---

then I will return (ULT)

After that, I will come back {here} (UST)

Alternate translation: [After I have done that, I will return to Egypt]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- made me swear
- In my grave
- in the land of
- Canaan
- you must bury me

UST

- he had me vow to him
- in a tomb
- in the region of
- Canaan
- that I would bury his body

Genesis 50:6

ULT:
And Pharaoh said, "Go up and bury your father just as he made you swear."

UST:
{When Pharaoh heard Joseph's message,} he replied, "{Tell Joseph that} he may go {to Canaan} and bury his father{'s body} just as his father made him vow {that he would do}."

And Pharaoh said (ULT)

{When Pharaoh heard Joseph's message,} he replied (UST)

Alternate translation: [Pharaoh sent back this reply to him]

Go up and bury your father just as he made you swear (ULT)

Tell Joseph that} he may go {to Canaan} and bury his father{'s body} just as his father made him vow {that he would do} (UST)

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this sentence as a direct or indirect quote. Also see how you translated "go up" in verse 5.

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Pharaoh
- and bury
- he made you swear

UST
- {When Pharaoh heard Joseph's message,} he replied
- and bury
- his father made him vow {that he would do}

Genesis 50:7

ULT:
So Joseph went up to bury his father, and with him went up all the servants of Pharaoh, the elders of his house and all elders of the land of Egypt

UST:
So Joseph started the trip {to Canaan} to bury his father{'s body}, and all Pharaoh's officials escorted him, {including} the important leaders from Pharaoh's court and all the {other} important leaders in the country of Egypt.

So Joseph went up (ULT)

So Joseph started the trip {to Canaan} (UST)

Joseph did not arrive in Canaan until later (verse 10). Alternate translation: [So Joseph started traveling to Canaan] or [So Joseph started the journey to Canaan] or [So Joseph left Egypt]

---

the elders of his house (ULT)

{including} the important leaders from Pharaoh's court (UST)

The **elders** were probably older men who had served Pharaoh for a long time and held important positions in his court.

---

and all elders of the land of Egypt (ULT)

and all the {other} important leaders in the country of Egypt (UST)

Alternate translation: [and all the other senior men in the country of Egypt]

---

and with him went up all the servants of Pharaoh (ULT)

and all Pharaoh's officials escorted him (UST)

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also, consider again how you translated **Pharaoh** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 12:15 (and note), 12:16–18, 12:20; 37:36; 39:1; 40:2, 40:11, 40:13, 40:14, 40:17, 40:19; 41:1, 41:4, 41:7–10, 41:14–17, 41:25, 41:28, 41:32–35, 41:37–39, 41:41–46, 41:55; 42:15–16; 44:18; 45:2, 45:8, 45:16–17, 45:21; 46:5, 46:31, 46:33–34; 47:1–5, 47:7–11, 47:14, 47:19–26; 50:4, 50:6–7. Also consider again how you translated **servants** and "officials" in the book of Genesis. See Gen 20:8, 40:2, 40:4, 40:7, 40:20, 41:10, and 41:37–38; 45:16; 50:7. Alternate translation: [All the officials of Pharaoh went with him to escort him]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- to bury
- the servants of
- Pharaoh
- the elders of
- his house
- elders of
- the land of
- Egypt

UST

- Joseph
- to bury
- s officials
- Pharaoh
- {including} the important leaders from
- Pharaoh's court
- the {other} important leaders in
- the country of
- Egypt

Genesis 50:8

ULT:
and all of the house of Joseph and his brothers and the house of his father. Only their little ones and their flock{s} and their herd{s} they left in the land of Goshen.

UST:
All of Joseph's family also {went with him,} including his brothers and {the rest of} his father's family. They only left {behind} their children and their livestock in Goshen Province.

and all of the house of Joseph (ULT)

All of Joseph's family also {went with him … } (UST)

The word **house** refers here to Joseph's whole extended family, not just to the people in his own household. Alternate translation: [and Joseph's entire family]

Support Reference: Metonymy

Only their little ones (ULT)

only … their children (UST)

Alternate translation: [Only their children]

---

and their flock{s} and their herd{s} (ULT)

and their livestock (UST)

Consider again how you translated "flocks and herds" in the book of Genesis. See 12:16; 13:5; 20:14; 21:27; 24:35; 26:14; 32:8; 33:13; 34:28; 45:10; 46:32; 47:1, 17; 50:8. Also see how you translated "herd" in Genesis 18:7–8, and how you translated "flock" in Genesis 4:2, 4; 21:28; 27:9; 29:2–3, 6–10; 30:31, 32, 36, 38–43; 31:4, 8, 10, 12, 19, 38, 41, 43; 32:6; 37:2, 12, 14;

38:12, 13, 17; 46:34; 47:1, 17. It may be necessary to translate these terms in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [and their sheep and cattle]

---

they left (ULT)

They … left {behind} (UST)

The children and animals were probably left with servants who took care of them during the funeral. For some languages it may be better to change the order of the phrases in this sentence and say, “They left behind only their children and their livestock in Goshen Province.” Alternate translation: [they left behind] or [were left behind with servants]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

in the land of Goshen (ULT)

in Goshen Province (UST)

Consider again how you translated “the land/region of Goshen” in the book of Genesis. See 45:10; 46:28–29, 34; 47:1, 4, 6, 27; 50:8. Alternate translation: [in the region of Goshen]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the house of
- Joseph
- and the house of
- and their flock{s}
- and their herd{s}
- in the land of
- Goshen

UST

- Joseph’s
- family
- and {the rest of} … s family
- and their livestock
- and their livestock
- in … Province

- Goshen

Genesis 50:9

ULT:
And with him went up both chariot{s} and horsemen, and the company was very great.

UST:
{Many} soldiers also escorted Joseph, {including} those {who were} riding chariots and those {who were} riding horses, so that the {entire} group was very large.

And with him went up both chariot{s} and horsemen (ULT)

{Many} soldiers also escorted Joseph, {including} those {who were} riding chariots and those {who were} riding horses (UST)

Consider again how you translated "chariot" in Genesis 41:43; 46:29; 50:9. Alternate translation: [There were men riding chariots and men riding horses who also went with Joseph] or [Many soldiers also escorted him including those who were riding chariots and those who were riding horses]

---

and the company was very great (ULT)

so that the {entire} group was very large (UST)

Alternate translation: [so that the entire group of people was very large] or [so that there was a very large group of people traveling together]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- chariot{s}
- horsemen

UST

- those {who were} riding chariots
- those {who were} riding horses

Genesis 50:10

ULT:
Then they came to the threshing floor of Atad, which {is} beyond the Jordan, and they lamented there {with} a very great and heavy lamentation. And he did seven days {of} mourning for his father.

UST:
They traveled to the other side of the Jordan {River} and stopped at a {grain} threshing place owned by {a man named} Atad. There Joseph {and the others} mourned for his father very loudly and sorrowfully for seven days.

Then they came to (ULT)

They traveled to … and stopped at (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then when they came to] or [When they arrived at]

---

the threshing floor of Atad (ULT)

a {grain} threshing place owned by {a man named} Atad (UST)

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) “Atad’s threshing floor/place,” or “a place owned by a man named Atad where people separated grain from chaff,” or (2) “the threshing floor/place near the city/town of Atad,” or “Goren Ha-Atad,” or (3) “the grain/wheat threshing place that was surrounded by thornbushes,” The Hebrew word “atad” means “thorns,” but most Bible scholars think it refers here to the name of a person or city.

---

which {is} beyond the Jordan, and they lamented (ULT)

the other side of the Jordan {River} … Joseph {and the others} mourned (UST)

For some languages it may be better to put this clause earlier in this verse and say, “They traveled to the other side of the Jordan River and stopped at a grain threshing place owned by a man named Atad.” The location of Atad’s threshing floor is not certain. It was most likely on

the west side of the Jordan River, since that is where the cave was located and that is where the Canaanites would have been most likely to observe Joseph's family and the Egyptians mourning (verse 11). However, since its location is not certain, it is best to translate **beyond the Jordan** in a general way (like the Hebrew text is). Alternate translation: [which was located across the Jordan River]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

and they lamented there (ULT)

There Joseph {and the others} mourned (UST)

Alternate translation: [they began to mourn]

And he did seven days {of} mourning for his father (ULT)

for his father … for seven days (UST)

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to combine the last two sentences in this verse and say, "There Joseph and the others mourned for his father very loudly and sorrowfully for seven days." Alternate translation: [For seven days Joseph and the others grieved the death of his father] or [and for seven days, Joseph led everyone in mourning the death of his father]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the threshing floor of
- the Jordan
- {with} a … lamentation
- {of} mourning
- days

UST

- a {grain} threshing place owned by
- the Jordan {River}
- מִסְפֵּד (ORIG QUOTE)

- אֵבֶל (ORIG QUOTE)
- for … days

Genesis 50:11

ULT:
And the inhabitants of the land, the Canaanites, saw the mourning at the threshing floor of Atad, and they said, "This {is} a heavy mourning for the Egyptians!" For that {reason} they called its name Abel Mizraim, which {is} beyond the Jordan.

UST:
When the Canaanites who lived in the area saw them mourning {like that} at Atad's threshing place, they exclaimed {to each other}, "{Wow!} Those people from Egypt are mourning {very} sorrowfully {for someone who died}!" That is why the name of that place on the other side of the Jordan {River} is Abel Mizraim, {which means "Egyptians' mourning place."}

And the inhabitants of the land, the Canaanites, saw the mourning at the threshing floor of Atad (ULT)

When the Canaanites who lived in the area saw them mourning {like that} at Atad's threshing place (UST)

See how you translated **threshing floor of Atad** in verse 10.

This {is} a heavy mourning for the Egyptians (ULT)

Wow!} Those people from Egypt are mourning {very} sorrowfully {for someone who died} (UST)

Consider again how you translated "Egyptian" in the book of Genesis. See 12:14; 16:1, 3; 21:9; 25:12; 39:1, 2, 5; 41:55–56; 43:32; 45:2; 46:34; 47:15, 20; 50:3, 11. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [Wow! Those people of Egypt are mourning very sorrowfully for someone who died!]

For that {reason} (ULT)

That is why (UST)

Alternate translation: [That is the reason that]

---

they called its name (ULT)

the name of that place … is (UST)

Consider again how you translated "For that (reason) he/they called/call …" in the book of Genesis. See 11:9; 16:14; 19:22; 21:31; 25:26, 30; 31:48; 33:17; 35:8; 38:29–30; 50:11. Alternate translation: [people call that place] or [the name of that place is] or [that place is called]

---

which {is} beyond (ULT)

on the other side of (UST)

Alternate translation: [which is located over] or [The place is across]

This {is} a heavy mourning for the Egyptians!" For that {reason} they called its name Abel Mizraim, which {is} beyond the Jordan (ULT)

Wow!} Those people from Egypt are mourning {very} sorrowfully {for someone who died}!" That is why the name of that place on the other side of the Jordan {River} is Abel Mizraim, {which means "Egyptians' mourning place … } (UST)

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to put this phrase earlier in this sentence. Also, be consistent here with how you translate this phrase in verse 10. Alternate translation: [That is why the name of that place on the other side of the Jordan River is Abel Mizraim, which means "Egyptians' mourning place."]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- the land
- the Canaanites
- the mourning
- at the threshing floor of
- a … mourning
- for the Egyptians
- they called
- the Jordan

UST

- the area
- the Canaanites
- them mourning {like that}
- at … s threshing place
- are mourning … for someone who died
- {Wow!} Those people from Egypt
- the name of that place … is
- the Jordan {River}

Genesis 50:12

ULT:
And his sons did for him just as he had commanded them:

UST:
Jacob's sons did {everything} for him just as he had instructed them {to do}:

he had commanded them (ULT)

he had instructed them {to do} (UST)

Alternate translation: [he had told them to do:]

Genesis 50:13

ULT:
And his sons carried him to the land of Canaan and buried him in the cave of the field of Machpelah, which Abraham had bought with the field as property for a burial place from Ephron the Hittite, in front of Mamre.

UST:
They took his body to the region of Canaan and buried it in the cave {that is} in the field in the Machpelah {area}, near {the city of} Mamre. {It was} the field {and cave} that Abraham had bought from Ephron the Hittite as a place to bury his dead {relatives}.

And his sons carried him (ULT)

They took his body (UST)

Alternate translation: [They brought his body]

---

to the land of Canaan (ULT)

to the region of Canaan (UST)

Consider again how you translated "the land/region of Canaan" in the book of Genesis. See 11:31; 12:5; 13:12, 14; 16:3; 17:8; 23:2, 19; 31:18; 33:18; 35:6; 36:5–6; 37:1; 42:5, 7, 13, 29, 32; 44:8; 45:17, 25; 46:6, 12, 31; 47:1, 4, 13, 15, 27; 48:3, 7; 49:30; 50:5, 13. Also be consistent with how you spelled the name of the man named Canaan in 9:18, 22, 25–27; 10:6, 15, and compare that to how you translated "the Canaanites" in 10:18–19; 12:6; 13:7; 15:21; 24:3, 37; 28:1, 6, 8; 34:30; 36:2; 38:2; 46:10; 50:11.

---

and buried him in the cave of the field of Machpelah (ULT)

and buried it in the cave {that is} in the field in the Machpelah {area} (UST)

Consider again how you translated **cave** and **the cave of the field of Machpelah** in the book of Genesis. See 19:30; 23:9 (and note), 11, 17, 19–20; 25:9; 49:29–30, 32; 50:13. Alternate translation: [and buried him in the cave that is in the field in the Machpelah area]

---

which Abraham had bought with the field as property for a burial place from Ephron the Hittite (ULT)

It was} the field {and cave} that Abraham had bought from Ephron the Hittite as a place to bury his dead {relatives} (UST)

Consider again how you translated **property for a burial place** in Genesis 23:4, 9, 20, and how you translated **Hittite** or **Ephron the Hittite** in Genesis 10:15; 15:20; 23:3, 5, 7, 10, 16, 18; 25:9–10; 26:34; 27:46; 36:2; 49:29–30; 50:13. Be consistent with how you spelled **Ephron** in those verses and in Genesis 23:8, 13–14, 16–17. Alternate translation: [It was the field and cave that Abraham had bought from Ephron the Hittite as a property to bury his dead relatives]

---

in front of Mamre (ULT)

near {the city of} Mamre (UST)

For some languages it is clearer or more natural to put this phrase earlier in this sentence (after **Machpelah**) and say, "… the field of Machpelah near the city of Mamre. It was the field and cave that Abraham …" Also, consider again how you translated **in front of Mamre** in the book of Genesis. See 23:17, 19; 25:9; 49:30; 50:13. Be consistent with how you spelled **Mamre** in those verses and in Genesis 13:18; 14:13, 24; 18:1.

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- to the land of
- Canaan
- and buried
- Abraham
- a burial place
- the Hittite

UST

- to the region of
- Canaan
- and buried
- Abraham
- as a place to bury his dead {relatives}
- the Hittite

Genesis 50:14

ULT:
Then after he buried his father, Joseph returned to Egypt, he and his brothers and all who had gone up with him to bury his father.

UST:
After Joseph buried his father{'s body}, he returned to {the country of} Egypt, along with his brothers and everyone {else} who had accompanied him to his father's funeral.

Then … Joseph returned to Egypt (ULT)

he returned to {the country of} Egypt (UST)

Alternate translation: [Joseph returned to the country of Egypt]

---

who had gone up with him (ULT)

who had accompanied him (UST)

Alternate translation: [who had gone to Canaan with him]

---

to bury his father (ULT)

to his father's funeral (UST)

Consider again how you translated **bury** in the book of Genesis. See 15:15; 23:4, 6, 8, 11, 13, 15, 19; 25:9–10; 35:8, 19, 29; 47:29–30; 48:7; 49:29, 31; 50:5–7, 13–14. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Joseph

- to Egypt
- to bury
- he buried

UST

- יוֹסֵף (ORIG QUOTE)
- to {the country of} Egypt
- to his father's funeral
- Joseph buried

Genesis 50:15

ULT:
And the brothers of Joseph saw that their father was dead, and they said, "What if Joseph hates us? Then he will surely repay us {for} all the evil that we did to him!"

UST:
Now that their father was no longer alive, Joseph's brothers {were worried and} said {to each other}, "If Joseph is angry at us for the terrible way that we treated him, he might punish us severely for what we did."

What if Joseph hates us (ULT)

If Joseph is angry at us (UST)

Alternate translation: [What if Joseph is holding a grudge against us?]

Then he will surely repay us (ULT)

he might punish us severely (UST)

Alternate translation: [Then certainly he will pay us back] or [then he will certainly take revenge on us and punish us severely]

What if Joseph hates us? Then he will surely repay us {for} all the evil that we did to him (ULT)

If Joseph is angry at us for the terrible way that we treated him, he might punish us severely for what we did (UST)

It may be clearer or more natural to put the two clauses of the second sentence before the first sentence. Alternate translation: [Joseph will surely repay us for the evil that we did to him if he hates us.]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- Joseph
- the evil

UST

- Joseph
- Joseph
- for the terrible way

Genesis 50:16

ULT:
Then they ordered {a messenger to go} to Joseph, saying, "Your father commanded before his death, saying,

UST:
So they sent {a messenger} to Joseph to tell {him}, "Before our father died, he told {us}

Then they ordered {a messenger to go} to Joseph, saying (ULT)

So they sent {a messenger} to Joseph to tell {him} (UST)

Alternate translation: [So they sent a message to Joseph which said]

Your father commanded before his death, saying (ULT)

Before our father died, he told {us} (UST)

Consider again how you translated **commanded** in the book of Genesis. See 2:16; 3:11, 17; 6:22; 7:5, 9, 16; 12:20; 18:19; 21:4; 26:5, 11; 27:8; 28:1, 6; 32:4, 17, 19; 42:25, 44:1; 45:19; 47:11; 49:29, 33; 50:2, 12, 16. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Also, the pronoun "us" is exclusive here since it does not include Joseph. Alternate translation: [Our father commanded us before he died] or [Before your father died, he commanded us]

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Joseph

UST
- Joseph

Genesis 50:17

ULT:
‘This you must say to Joseph: “I beg {you}, please forgive the crime of your brothers and their sin, because they did evil to you.”’ So now, please forgive the crime of the servants of your father’s God.” And Joseph cried when they spoke to him.

UST:
to ask you to please forgive {us}, your brothers, for sinning {against you} and treating you so badly. So then, as servants of God whom our father worshiped, we beg you to forgive us for sinning {against you}.” When Joseph heard his brothers’ message to him, he {was very sad and} cried.

This you must say to Joseph: “I beg {you} (ULT)

to ask you to (UST)

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. See what you did for doubly-embedded quotes in Genesis 32:4. Alternate translation: [to tell you that he asks you to] or [to ask you on his behalf to]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

So now, please forgive the crime of the servants of your father’s God (ULT)

So then, as servants of God whom our father worshiped, we beg you to forgive us for sinning {against you} (UST)

Consider again how you translated “the God of” in the book of Genesis. See 9:26; 24:12, 27, 42, 48; 26:24; 28:13; 31:5, 29, 42, 53; 32:9; 43:23; 46:1, 3; 49:24–25; 50:17. Alternate translation: [So then, as servants of God whom our father served, we beg you to forgive us for sinning against you]

And Joseph cried when they spoke to him (ULT)

When Joseph heard his brothers' message to him, he {was very sad and} cried (UST)

Alternate translation: [Joseph cried when he heard that message]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- to Joseph
- forgive
- the crime of
- and their sin
- evil
- forgive
- the crime of
- the servants of
- s God
- Joseph

UST

- to ask you to
- forgive
- for sinning {against you}
- and treating you so badly
- and treating you so badly
- we beg you to forgive
- us for sinning {against you}
- as servants of
- God whom … worshiped
- Joseph

Genesis 50:18

ULT:
Then his brothers also came and fell before him and said, "Behold us, {we belong} to you as slaves!"

UST:
Then his brothers came {to him}, prostrated themselves before him {to show respect}, and said {to him}, "Here we are, we {will be} your servants!"

and fell before him and said (ULT)

prostrated themselves before him {to show respect}, and said {to him} (UST)

See how you translated "fell … before him" in Genesis 44:14. Compare that to how you translated "bowed down to/before …" (See: 49:8). Alternate translation: [and threw themselves on the ground in front of him and said]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

Behold us (ULT)

Here we are (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase ("Behold me") in 22:1, 7. It may be necessary to translate this phrase in different ways, depending on the context.

{we belong} to you as slaves (ULT)

we {will be} your servants (UST)

If you use an exclamation point here in your translation, make sure it does mean that Joseph's brothers were angry. Rather, they were worried and desperate. Alternate translation: [we will be your slaves] or [we will serve you as slaves]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- and fell
- as slaves

UST

- prostrated themselves … to show respect
- we {will be} your servants

Genesis 50:19

ULT:
But Joseph said to them, "Do not be afraid. For {am} I in place of God?

UST:
But Joseph replied to them, "You do not need to be afraid. After all, I am not God! {So I have no right to punish you.}

Do not be afraid (ULT)

You do not need to be afraid (UST)

Alternate translation: [You have nothing to fear]

For {am} I in place of God (ULT)

After all, I am not God! {So I have no right to punish you … } (UST)

Joseph uses a rhetorical question here to emphasize that he will not take God's place and punish his brothers. Some languages must use a statement or exclamation here instead.
Alternate translation: [After all, I am not God, that I should judge you.]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Joseph
- Do … be afraid
- God

UST
- Joseph
- You do … need to be afraid
- I am not God! {So I have no right to punish you … }

Genesis 50:20

ULT:
And {as for} you, you intended evil against me, {but} God intended it for good in order to do as {he is doing} this day, to save many people.

UST:
{It is true that} you planned to harm me, {but} God is using that to benefit {us all}. Right now he is doing what he planned, to keep many people from dying.

And {as for} you, you intended evil against me (ULT)

{It is true that} you planned to harm me (UST)

In the Hebrew text, the pronoun **you** is emphatic in form and position to emphasize Joseph's brothers and contrast them with God. Consider what is the best way to translate that contrast in your language. Alternate translation: [Although you intentionally treated me very badly]

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

---

in order to do as {he is doing} this day (ULT)

Right now he is doing what he planned (UST)

Alternate translation: [to accomplish what he is doing these days]

---

to save many people (ULT)

to keep many people from dying (UST)

Consider again how you translated "save (lives)" or "keep alive" in the book of Genesis. See 7:3; 12:12; 19:19; 45:7; 47:25; 50:20. Alternate translation: [to save the lives of many people] or [to keep many people alive] or [keeping many people from dying]

{but} God intended it for good (ULT)

but} God is using that to benefit {us all} (UST)

Alternate translation: [God is using that evil to benefit us all] or [God planned that what you did would turn out to be good for me and everyone else]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- evil
- {but} God
- for good
- as {he is doing} … day

UST

- to harm me
- {but} God
- to benefit {us all}
- Right now he is doing what he planned

Genesis 50:21

ULT:
So now, do not be afraid. I will support you and your little ones.” So he comforted them, and he spoke to their heart{s}.

UST:
So then, you do not need to be afraid. I {myself} will provide {everything} that you and your children need.” In that way, Joseph assured them {that he had forgiven them}, and he {also} said {other} things to encourage them.

So now (ULT)

So then (UST)

Alternate translation: [So again I tell you]

---

do not be afraid (ULT)

you do not need to be afraid (UST)

Consider again how you translated **do not be afraid** in the book of Genesis. See 15:1; 21:17; 26:24; 35:17; 43:23; 46:3; 50:19, 21. Alternate translation: [you have nothing to fear]

I will support you and your little ones (ULT)

I {myself} will provide {everything} that you and your children need (UST)

In the Hebrew text here, **I** is an emphatic pronoun. Consider what is the best way to translate that in your language. Also, consider again how you translated **little ones** in the book of Genesis. See 34:29; 43:8; 45:19; 46:5; 47:12, 24; 50:8, 21. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [I myself will take care of you and your children]

So he comforted them (ULT)

In that way, Joseph assured them {that he had forgiven them} (UST)

Consider again how you translated **comforted** in the book of Genesis. See 24:67; 27:42; 37:35; 38:12; 50:21. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [In that way, Joseph consoled them that he had forgiven them]

---

and he spoke to their heart{s} (ULT)

and he {also} said {other} things to encourage them (UST)

The phrase **spoke to their hearts** is an idiom that means Joseph said things to comfort and encourage his brothers. Consider whether or not your language has an idiom with the same meaning that would work well here. Alternate translation: [and he also said other things to comfort them]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- do … be afraid

UST

- you do … need to be afraid

Genesis 50:22

ULT:
Then Joseph stayed in Egypt, he and the house of his father. And Joseph lived 110 years.

UST:
Joseph continued to live in {the country of} Egypt, along with {the rest of} his father {Jacob}'s family, until he was 110 years old.

Then Joseph stayed (ULT)

Joseph continued to live (UST)

Alternate translation: [Joseph remained] or [Joseph continued to stay]

---

in Egypt (ULT)

in {the country of} Egypt (UST)

Alternate translation: [in the land of Egypt]

And Joseph lived 110 years (ULT)

until he was 110 years old (UST)

Alternate translation: [He lived to be 110 years old]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT
- Joseph
- in Egypt
- and the house of
- Joseph
- years

UST

- Joseph
- in {the country of} Egypt
- along with {the rest of} … s family
- יוֹסֵף (ORIG QUOTE)
- 110 years old

Genesis 50:23

ULT:
And Joseph saw Ephraim's sons {to} the third {generation}. Also, the sons of Machir, the son of Manasseh, were born on the knees of Joseph.

UST:
He lived {long enough} to see {his son} Ephraim's children, grandchildren, and great-grandchildren. The children of {his grandson} Machir, {who was} Manasseh's son, also grew up during his lifetime.

And Joseph saw (ULT)

He lived {long enough} to see (UST)

Alternate translation: [So he was able to see] or [He lived long enough to know]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

---

were born on the knees of Joseph (ULT)

grew up during his lifetime (UST)

For some languages it is better to change the order of the phrases in this sentence and say, "He also lived to see his son Manasseh's son Machir grow up, as well as Machir's children." or "He also lived to see the children of his grandson Machir grow up, who was Manasseh's son." Also, the phrase "born on Joseph's knees" is an idiom that means Joseph recognized Makir's children as his descendants and that they grew up during his lifetime and spent time with him.

Support Reference: Idiom

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- Ephraim's
- Manasseh
- were born
- Joseph

UST

- יוֹסֵף (ORIG QUOTE)
- {his son} Ephraim’s
- Manasseh
- grew up
- during his lifetime

Genesis 50:24

ULT:
Then Joseph said to his brothers, "I am dying, and God will surely visit you and take you up from this land to the land that he swore to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob."

UST:
Then {one day} Joseph said to his brothers, "I am about to die, but God will definitely help you and take you {and your descendants} from this country to the land that he vowed {to give} to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.

I am dying (ULT)

I am about to die (UST)

Consider again how you translated **I am dying** in Genesis 35:18; 48:21; 50:5, 24.

---

and God will surely visit you (ULT)

but God will definitely help you (UST)

The word **visit** is used here as an idiom that refers to God helping his people in a powerful way. See how you translated this idiom in Genesis 21:1, where it has a slightly different meaning. Alternate translation: [but God will certainly help you]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and take you up from this land (ULT)

and take you {and your descendants} from this country (UST)

Alternate translation: [and lead you and your descendants from this land]

---

to the land that he swore (ULT)

to the land that he vowed (UST)

Alternate translation: [to the land that he swore with an vow]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Joseph
- and God
- land
- the land
- he swore
- to Abraham
- to Isaac
- and to Jacob

UST

- Joseph
- but God
- country
- the land
- he vowed
- {to give} to Abraham
- Isaac
- and Jacob

Genesis 50:25

ULT:
Then Joseph made the sons of Israel swear {an oath}, saying, "Surely God will visit you, and you must take my bones up from this {place}."

UST:
When God does that, you must take my body back {to Canaan} {with you} {and bury it there}." Then Joseph had {his brothers and} {the rest of} the descendants of Israel vow {that they would do that}.

Then Joseph made the sons of Israel swear {an oath}, saying (ULT)

When God does that … Then Joseph had {his brothers and} {the rest of} the descendants of Israel vow {that they would do that} (UST)

Consider again how you translated **swear** in the book of Genesis. See 21:23 (and note), 24, 31; 22:16; 24:3, 7, 9, 37; 25:33; 26:3, 31; 31:53; 47:31; 50:5–6, 24–25. Alternate translation: [Then Joseph told his brothers and the rest of the descendants of Israel to promise with an oath that they would do something for him. He said]

Surely God will visit you (ULT)

When God does that (UST)

See how you translated **visit you** in verse 24. Alternate translation: [Yes, God will definitely help you, and when he does] or [When God helps you that way]

Support Reference: Idiom

---

and you must take my bones up from this {place} (ULT)

you must take my body back {to Canaan} {with you} {and bury it there} (UST)

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to change the order of clauses in this verse and say, "When God does that, you must take my body back to Canaan with you and

bury it there.’ Then Joseph made/had his brothers and the rest of the descendants of Israel swear/promise with an oaththat they would do that.” Alternate translation: [you must take my bones back to Canaan with you and bury it there]

Support Reference: Information Structure

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- Then … made … swear {an oath}
- Joseph
- Israel
- God

UST

- Then … had … vow {that they would do that}
- Joseph
- Israel
- When God does that

Genesis 50:26

ULT:
Then Joseph died, a son of 110 years. Then they embalmed him, and he was put in a coffin in Egypt.

UST:
So Joseph died at the age of 110 years. Then his doctors prepared his body for burial, and they put it in a burial box in {the country of} Egypt.

Then Joseph died, a son of 110 years (ULT)

So Joseph died at the age of 110 years (UST)

Alternate translation: [So Joseph died when he was 110 years old]

Then they embalmed him (ULT)

Then his doctors prepared his body for burial (UST)

See how you translated **embalmed** in verses 2–3, and how you translated "physicians/doctors" in verse 2. Alternate translation: [And his morticians preserved his body for burial]

---

and he was put (ULT)

and they put it (UST)

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Alternate translation: [and they put him] or [and put his body]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

---

in a coffin (ULT)

in a burial box (UST)

Alternate translation: [in a burial chest]

---

in Egypt (ULT)

in {the country of} Egypt (UST)

Alternate translation: [in the land of Egypt]

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

ULT

- in a coffin
- Joseph
- years
- in Egypt

UST

- in a burial box
- Joseph
- years
- in {the country of} Egypt



unfoldingWord® Translation Academy - Genesis

v88

Abstract Nouns

Description

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships between those ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. They provide a way of giving names to actions or qualities. With names, people who speak these languages can talk about the concepts as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, “I believe in the forgiveness of sin.” But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, speakers may not have the two abstract nouns “forgiveness” and “sin,” but they would express the same meaning in other ways. For example, they would express, “I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned,” by using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas. Instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, “What is its **weight**?” could be expressed as “How much does it **weigh**?” or “How **heavy** is it?”

Examples From the Bible

> From **childhood** you have known the sacred writings … (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

The abstract noun “childhood” refers to when someone was a child.

> But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

> Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

> The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers to the lack of speed with which something is done.

> He will both bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun. Alternative translations are indented below the Scripture example.

… from **childhood** you have known the sacred writings … (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

> Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

> But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

> Today the people in this house **have been saved** … Today God **has saved** the people in this house …

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be. (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

> The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

> He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

Genesis References:

1:1; 4:13; 21:16; 21:23; 22:3; 30:18; 32:10; 40:14; 45:5; 47:29

Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects bolded:

- Active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- Passive: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the active form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the passive form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have bolded the subject.

- active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the Passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.

- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples From the Bible

> Then their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed** too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

> When the men of the city arose early in the morning, and see, the altar of Baal **was torn down**. (Judges 6:28a ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

> It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead,

use a generic expression like “they” or “people” or “someone.”
(3) Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

> A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21b ULT)
>
> > **The king’s servants gave** Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like “they” or “people” or “someone.”

> It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)
>
> > It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.
> > It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

> A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

> He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Genesis References:

1:9; 2:1; 2:4; 2:20; 2:23; 4:11; 4:24; 7:19; 7:20; 8:2; 8:2; 9:2; 9:6; 9:11; 9:14; 12:3; 12:15; 14:14; 16:4; 16:5; 17:12; 17:24; 17:25; 17:26; 18:4; 18:18; 18:29; 18:32; 19:15; 19:17; 20:16; 22:13; 22:20; 24:33; 24:67; 26:4; 27:33; 27:42; 28:14; 29:33; 31:22; 31:39; 32:12; 33:11; 35:19; 38:13; 40:15; 43:12; 44:3; 44:12; 44:16; 44:17; 47:15; 49:26; 49:29; 49:32; 50:26

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways. The speaker gives explicit information in what he states directly. Implicit Information is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from other things he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is explicit information.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called assumed knowledge.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Implicit information is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this implicit information by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the explicit information that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different from the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples From the Bible

> Then a scribe came to him and said, “Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go.” Jesus said to him, “Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here “I am the Son of Man” but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

> Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But I say to you, it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you. (Matthew 11:21-22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat bread**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

> Jesus said to him, “Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

> > Jesus said to him, “Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep.”

> It will be more tolerable for **Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

> > At the day of judgment, it will be more tolerable for **those cities of Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, than it will be for you. or At the day of judgment, It will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities, Tyre and Sidon,** than for you.
>
> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands** when they eat bread. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

> > Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat bread.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

> Then a scribe came to him and said, “Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go.” Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, then, like Jesus, he would have to live without a house.

> > Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man**, have **no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live**.”
>
> It will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

> > At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you**.
> > or:
> > At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Genesis References:

1:7; 1:12; 1:18; 1:21; 1:21; 1:22; 1:24; 1:24; 1:25; 2:23; 3:1; 3:1; 3:7; 3:7; 3:14; 3:24; 4:4; 4:8; 4:11; 4:15; 4:22; 4:25; 5:4; 5:6; 5:29; 5:32; 6:3; 6:7; 6:19; 7:1; 7:10; 8:1; 8:1; 8:5; 8:11; 8:12; 8:14; 8:20; 9:20; 9:21; 9:28; 10:19; 10:30; 11:2; 11:5; 11:31; 12:5; 12:14; 13:3; 13:12; 13:17; 14:2; 14:3; 14:5; 14:9; 14:10; 14:14; 14:20; 15:2; 15:5; 15:10; 15:10; 15:13; 15:16; 15:17; 15:18; 15:18; 16:5; 16:10; 16:11; 17:12; 17:26; 18:1; 18:8; 18:26; 18:28; 19:9; 21:17; 21:24; 22:2; 22:3; 22:6; 22:10; 22:13; 22:13; 22:19; 22:19; 22:19; 23:3; 23:4; 23:4; 24:9; 24:10; 24:11; 24:13; 24:16; 24:18; 24:22; 24:31; 24:32; 24:44; 24:49; 24:59; 24:67; 25:3; 25:6; 25:8; 25:10; 25:17; 25:21; 25:28; 25:33; 26:1; 26:2; 26:6; 26:17; 26:22; 26:29; 26:35; 27:4; 27:14; 27:19; 28:1; 28:10; 28:10; 29:2; 29:2; 29:2; 29:13; 29:27; 29:35; 30:40; 30:42; 30:42; 30:42; 31:5; 31:8; 31:12; 31:19; 31:19; 31:21; 31:25; 31:31; 31:37; 31:38; 31:50; 31:55; 32:1; 32:23; 32:30; 32:32; 34:6; 35:1; 35:1; 35:2; 35:4; 35:10; 36:1; 36:2; 36:12; 36:13; 36:40; 37:3; 37:25; 37:28; 37:28; 38:8; 38:14; 38:14; 38:15; 38:16; 38:24; 38:29; 39:9; 39:14; 39:14; 40:1; 40:3; 40:8; 40:15; 41:1; 41:6; 41:10; 41:14; 41:17; 41:48; 41:51; 41:56; 42:5; 42:23; 42:25; 42:38; 43:6; 43:8; 43:11; 43:34; 45:4; 45:10; 45:21; 45:23; 46:28; 46:29; 46:34; 47:1; 47:11; 47:19; 47:20; 47:27; 47:27; 48:2; 48:7; 48:15; 49:1; 49:11; 49:11; 49:18

Background Information

Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called background information. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

Example — The bolded phrases in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because **their village was going to have a feast the next day**. **Peter was the best hunter in the village.He once killed three wild pigs in one day!** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope **they had brought with them** and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: "their village was going to have a feast the next day," "He once killed three wild pigs in one day," and "that they had brought with them."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were," rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "their village was going to have a feast the next day," and "Peter **was** the best hunter in the village."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

A writer may use background information:

- to help their listeners be interested in the story
- to help their listeners understand something in the story
- to help the listeners understand why something is important in the story

• to tell the setting of a story

> • Setting includes:
> • where the story takes place
> • when the story takes place
> • who is present when the story begins
> • what is happening when the story begins

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

Examples From the Bible

> Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was 86 years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:15-16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

> And Jesus himself **was beginning about 30 years old**. He **was the son (as it was assumed)** of Joseph, of Heli, (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces a section of background information about Jesus' age and ancestors (Luke 3:23-38). The story resumes in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

> Then **it happened on a Sabbath** that he **was going through the grain fields**, and his disciples **were picking and eating the heads of grain**, **rubbing them in their hands**. But some of the Pharisees said … (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the phrase, "But some of the Pharisees said …."

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kinds of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

> **And** Jesus himself **was** beginning about 30 years old. He **was** the son **(as it was assumed)** of Joseph, of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

As here, English sometimes uses the word "and" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information. A set of parentheses is also a way to mark background information. Here, "as it was assumed" gives background information to the phrase, "He was the son." People assumed that Joseph was Jesus' father, although his true father was God.

> Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The bolded phrase happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

> Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. **Abram was 86 years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram**. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)
>
> > "**When Abram was 86 years old**, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."

> Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

> > "Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and **he did many other evil things**, so

> John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

Genesis References:

2:8; 2:15; 2:19; 4:2; 6:1; 11:30; 14:4; 16:1; 31:19; 31:25; 31:25; 31:32; 31:34; 39:1; 39:6; 42:6; 48:7; 48:10

Biblical Distance

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man's hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man's hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man's forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **"long" cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as "furlong," which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Metric Measure
handbreadth	8 centimeters
span	23 centimeters
cubit	46 centimeters
"long" cubit	54 centimeters
stadia	185 meters

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as ".46 meters" or even as "46 centimeters," readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say "half a meter," "45 centimeters," or "50 centimeters."

5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was 60 stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as “about ten kilometers” from Jerusalem.
6. When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.

Translation Strategies

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

> They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half. (Exodus 25:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements given in the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

> > “They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half kubits**; its width will be **one**

> **kubit and a half**; and its height will be **one kubit and a half**."

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard meter length, you could translate it as below.

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half cubits (one meter)**; its width will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**;

> and its height will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; [1] its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; [2] and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

The footnotes would look like:

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; [1] its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; [2] and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

The footnotes would look like:

> [1] two and a half cubits
> [2] one cubit and a half

Genesis References:

6:15; 6:16; 7:20; 21:16

Biblical Imagery — Extended Metaphors

An **extended metaphor** is an explicit metaphor that uses multiple images and multiple ideas at the same time. This is in contrast to a **simple metaphor**, which uses only a single Image and a single Idea. The difference between an extended metaphor and a **complex metaphor** is that an extended metaphor is explicitly stated by a writer/speaker, but a complex metaphor is not.

Explanation of an Extended Metaphor

When using a metaphor, a writer/speaker uses a physical Image in order to express an abstract Idea about some immediate Topic, with at least one point of comparison between the Topic and the Image. In an extended metaphor, the writer/speaker explicitly states the Topic, and then describes multiple images and communicates multiple ideas.

In Isaiah 5:1b-7, the prophet Isaiah uses a vineyard (the **Image**) to express God's disappointment (the **Idea**) with the nation of Israel (the **Topic**) for their unfaithfulness to God and his covenant with them as his people. Farmers care for their gardens, and a farmer would feel disappointed if his vineyard produced bad fruit. If a vineyard produced only bad fruit for a long enough time, the farmer would eventually stop caring for it. We call this an extended metaphor because the prophet describes in detail multiple images relating to a vineyard as well as multiple aspects of God's disappointment.

> 1b My well beloved had a **vineyard** on a very fertile hill. 2 He **spaded it,removed the stones**, and **planted it** with an excellent kind of vine. He **built a tower** in the middle of it, and also **built a winepress**. **He waited for it to produce grapes, but it produced wild grapes**. 3 So now, inhabitant of Jerusalem and man of Judah; judge between me and my vineyard. 4 What more could have been done for my vineyard, that I have not done for it? **When I looked for it to produce grapes, why did it produce wild grapes**? 5 Now I will tell you what I will do to my vineyard; I will remove the hedge; I will turn it into a pasture; I will break down its wall, and it will be trampled down. 6 I will lay it waste, and it will not be pruned nor hoed. Instead, briers and thorns will spring up. I will also command the clouds not to rain on it. 7 For **the vineyard of Yahweh of hosts is the house of Israel**, and the man of Judah his pleasant

> planting; **he waited for justice, but instead, there was killing**; **for righteousness, but, instead, a shout for help**. (Isa 5:1b-7 ULT)

Other Examples From the Bible

In Psalm 23, the psalmist uses the physical **Image** of a shepherd to describe the way that God (the **Topic**) shows great concern and care (the **Idea**) for his people. The psalmist describes multiple aspects of what shepherds do for sheep (leads them to pasture and to water, protects them, etc.). The psalmist also describes multiple aspects of how God takes care of him (gives him life, righteousness, comfort, etc.). Shepherds give sheep what they need, take them to safe places, rescue them, guide them, and protect them. What God does for his people is like these actions.

> 1 Yahweh is my shepherd; I will lack nothing.
> 2 He **makes me** to lie down in green pastures;
> he **leads me** beside tranquil water.
> 3 He **brings back** my life;
> he **guides me** along right paths for his name's sake.
> 4 Even though I walk through a valley of darkest shadow,
> I will not fear harm since you are with me;
> your rod and your staff comfort me. (Psalm 23:1-4 ULT)

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not realize that the images represent other things.
- People may not be familiar with the things that are used as images.
- Extended metaphors are often so profound that it would be impossible for a translator to show all of the meaning generated by the metaphor.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of the extended metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning more clear to the target audience than it was to the original audience.
- When someone uses an extended metaphor, the images are an important part of what he is trying to say.
- If the target audience is not familiar with some of the images, you will need to find some way of helping them understand the images so that they can understand the whole extended metaphor.

Translation Strategies

Consider using the same extended metaphor if your readers will understand it in the same way the original readers would have understood it. If not, here are some other strategies:

(1) If the target audience would think that the images should be understood literally, translate the metaphor as a simile by using words such as “like” or “as.” It may be enough to to do this in just the first sentence or two.
(2) If the target audience would not know the image, find a way of translating it so they can understand what the image is.
(3) If the target audience still would not understand, then state it clearly.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the target audience would think that the images should be understood literally, translate the metaphor as a simile by using words such as “like” or “as.” It may be enough to to do this in just the first sentence or two. See Psalm 23:1-2 as an example:

> Yahweh is **my shepherd**; I will lack nothing.
> He makes **me** to lie down in green pastures;
> **he leads me** beside tranquil water. (ULT)

Can be translated as:

> “Yahweh is **like** a shepherd to me, so I will lack nothing.
> **Like** a shepherd who makes his sheep lie down in green pastures and leads them by peaceful waters, Yahweh helps me to rest peacefully.”

(2) If the target audience would not know the image, find a way of translating it so they can understand what the image is.

> My well beloved had a **vineyard** on a very fertile hill.
> He **spaded** it, removed the stones, and planted it with **an excellent kind of vine**.
> He built **a tower** in the middle of it, and also built a **winepress**.

> He waited for it to produce grapes, but it only produced **wild grapes.** (Isaiah 5:1b-2 ULT)

May be translated as:

> My well beloved had a **grapevine garden** on a very fertile hill.
> He **dug up the ground** and removed the stones, and planted it with **the best grapevines**.
> He built a **watchtower** in the middle of it, and also built **a tank where he could crush the juice out of the grapes**.
> He waited for it to produce grapes, but it produced **wild grapes that were not good for making wine**.

(3) If the target audience still would not understand, then state it clearly.

> Yahweh is **my shepherd**; I will lack nothing. (Psalm 23:1 ULT)
>
> > "Yahweh **cares for me** like a shepherd that cares for his sheep, so I will lack nothing."
>
> For the vineyard of Yahweh of hosts **is** the house of Israel,
> and the men of Judah his pleasant planting;
> he waited for justice, but instead, there was killing;
> for righteousness, but, instead, a shout for help. (Isaiah 5:7 ULT)

Can be translated as:

> > For the vineyard of Yahweh of hosts **represents** the house of Israel,
> > and the men of Judah **are like** his pleasant planting;

> > he waited for justice, but instead, there was killing;
> > for righteousness, but, instead, a cry for help.

or as:

> > **So asa farmer stops caringforagrapevinegarden**
> > **that produces bad fruit**,
> > **Yahweh will stop protecting** Israel and Judah,
> > **because they do not do what is right.**
> > He waited for justice, but instead, there was killing;
> > for righteousness, but, instead, a cry for help.

Genesis References:

49:9; 49:14; 49:17; 49:22; 49:22; 49:27

Biblical Money

Description

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals, such as silver and gold, and would pay a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later, people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage
denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see Biblical Weight. The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament.

(1) Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
(2) Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
(4) Use the biblical term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.
(5) Use the biblical term and explain it in a footnote.

Translation Strategies Applied

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

> The one owed 500 denarii, and the other, 50. (Luke 7:41b ULT)

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

> > “The one owed **500 denali**, and the other, **50**.”

1. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

> > “The one owed **500 silver coins**, and the other, **50**.”

(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

> > "The one owed **500 days' wages**, and the other, **50**."

(4) Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

> > "The one owed **500 denarii** 1, and the other owed **50 denarii**. 2"

The footnotes would look like:

> > [1] 500 days' wages [2] 50 days' wages

(5) Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

> > "The one owed **500 denarii**,1 and the other, **50**."
> > (Luke 7:41 ULT)

> [1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Genesis References:

20:16; 23:15; 31:15; 33:19; 37:28; 43:21

Biblical Volume

Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Type	Original Measure	Liters
Dry	omer	2 liters
Dry	ephah	22 liters
Dry	homer	220 liters
Dry	cor	220 liters
Dry	seah	7.7 liters
Dry	lethek	114.8 liters
Liquid	metrete	40 liters
Liquid	bath	22 liters
Liquid	hin	3.7 liters
Liquid	kab	1.23 liters
Liquid	log	0.31 liters

Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.
- If you do not use the biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as “3.7 liters,” readers might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as “three and a half liters” or “four liters.”

- When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.

When the unit of measure is stated

Translation Strategies

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

> For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah. (Isaiah 5:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

> > “For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only one **bat**, and one **homer** of seed will yield only an **efa**.”

(2) Use the measurements given in the UST. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

> > "For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **22 liters** and **220 liters** of seed will yield only **22 liters**."

> > "For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **22**, and **ten baskets** of seed will yield only **one basket**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

> > "For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **six gallons**, and **six and a half bushels** of seed will yield only **20 quarts**."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

> > "For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **one bath (six gallons)**, and **one homer (six and a half**

> **bushels)** of seed will yield only **an ephah (20 quarts)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in footnotes.

> "For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only 22 liters[1], and 220 liters[2] of seed will yield only 22 liters[3]."

The footnotes would look like:

> [1] one bath
> [2] one homer
> [3] one ephah

When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULT and UST, add the word "measure."

> When you came to a heap of **20 measures** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 measures** of wine, there were only 20. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
(2) Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”
(3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
(4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

> When you came to a heap of **20 measures** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty measures** of wine, there were only **20**. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

(1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.

> > When you came to a heap of **20** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50** of wine, there were only **20**.

(2) Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”

> > When you came to a heap of **20 amounts** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty amounts** of wine, there were only **20**.

(3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.

> > When you came to a heap of **20 baskets** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 jars** of wine, there were only **20**.

(4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

> > When you came to a heap for **20 liters** of grain, there were only **ten liters**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 liters** of wine, there were only **20 liters**.

Genesis References:

18:6

Biblical Weight

Description

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term “shekel” means “weight,” and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Shekels	Grams	Kilograms
shekel	1 shekel	11 grams	-
bekah	1/2 shekel	5.7 grams	-
pim	2/3 shekel	7.6 grams	-
gerah	1/20 shekel	0.57 grams	-
mina	50 shekels	550 grams	1/2 kilogram
talent	3,000 shekels	-	34 kilograms

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as “.57 grams,” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a gram.”
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath’s spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as “3300 grams” or “3.3 kilograms,” it can be translated as “about three and one half kilograms.”
6. When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise, it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

Translation Strategies

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this, you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

> The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talents and 2,400 shekels**. (Exodus 38:29 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

> > “The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talents and 2,400 sekeles**.”

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

> > “The bronze from the wave offering weighed **2,400 kilograms**.”

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

> > “The bronze from the wave offering weighed **5,300 pounds**.”

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.

> > “The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talents (2,380 kilograms)** and **2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms)**.”

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

> > “The bronze from the offering weighed **70 talents and 2,400 shekels**. 1”

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.

Genesis References:

24:22; 24:22

Blessings

Description

Blessings are short sayings that people use to ask God to do something good for another person. In the Bible, the person saying the blessing speaks or writes directly to the person who will receive the blessing. The person who says the blessing does not directly speak to God, but it is understood that God is the one who will do the good thing mentioned. It is also understood that God hears the blessing, whether he is mentioned by name or not.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Each language has its own ways of saying blessings. There are many blessings in the Bible. They need to be translated in the way that people say blessings in your language, so that people recognize them as blessings and understand what one person wants God to do for another.

Examples From the Bible

In the Bible, people often said a blessing when they met someone or when they were leaving someone or sending someone off.

In the book of Ruth, when Boaz meets his workers in the fields, he greets them with a blessing:

> Then behold, Boaz coming from Bethlehem! And he said to the reapers, “Yahweh be with you.” And they said to him, “May Yahweh bless you.” (Ruth 2:4 ULT)

Similarly, when Rebekah leaves her family, they say farewell with a blessing:

> They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, “Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them.” (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

In a similar way, the writers of letters in the New Testament often wrote a blessing at the beginning of their letters as well as at the end. Here are examples from the beginning and end of Paul’s second letter to Timothy:

> Grace, mercy, and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Lord. (2 Tim 1:2 ULT)
> The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

Translation Strategies

Find out how people say blessings in your language. Collect a list of common blessings, noting the form of the verb, the use of certain words, and the words that are not used in a blessing but would normally be in a sentence. Also find out what differences there might be between blessings that people use when they are speaking to each other and when they are writing to each other.

If translating a blessing literally would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing that. If not, here are some options:

1. Add a verb if that is natural in your language.
2. Mention God as the subject of a blessing if that is natural in your language.
3. Translate the blessing in a form that is natural and clear in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add a verb if that is natural in your language.

> The Lord with your spirit. The grace with you. (2 Tim 4:22, literal from the Greek)

In the Greek of this verse, there is no verb ‘be.’ However, in blessings in English, it is natural to use a verb. The idea that the ‘grace’ from God will be or remain with the person is implied in Greek.

The Lord **be** with your spirit. Grace **be** with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

(2) Mention God as the subject of a blessing if that is natural in your language.

If people expect a blessing to refer to God in your language, you might have to provide ‘God’ as the subject or as the source of the blessing. In Greek and Hebrew, usually God is not explicitly mentioned in the blessing, but it is implied that God is the one acting to show his kindness to the person being addressed.

> The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

The Lord be with your spirit. **May God give** grace to you.

> They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, “Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them.” (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, “Our sister, may **God grant that** you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may **God empower** your descendants **to** possess the gate of those who hate them.”

(3) Translate the blessing in a form that is natural and clear in your language.

Here are some ideas for ways that people might say a blessing in their language.

> The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

May the Lord be with your spirit. May God cause his grace to be with you.

May you have God’s presence with you. May you experience grace from God.

> “Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them.” (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

“Our sister, we pray to God that you may be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and appeal to him that your descendants may possess the gate of those who hate them.”

“Our sister, by God’s power you will be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and your descendants will possess the gate of those who hate them.”

Genesis References:

1:28; 9:26; 43:23; 47:7; 48:15

Collective Nouns

Description

A collective noun is a singular noun that refers to a group of something. Examples: a **family, clan,** or **tribe** is a group of people who are related to each other; a **flock** is a group of birds or sheep; a **fleet** is a group of ships; and an **army** is a group of soldiers.

Many collective nouns are used exclusively as a singular replacement for a group as in the examples above. Frequently in the Bible the name of an ancestor is used, through a process of metonymy, as a collective noun referencing the group of his descendants. In the Bible, sometimes the singular noun will take a singular verb form, other times it will take a plural verb form. This may depend on how the author is thinking about the group, or whether the action is being done as a group or as individuals.

Reason This is a Translation Issue

There are several issues that require care when translating collective nouns. Further care is needed because the language you are translating into may not use collective nouns in the same way as the language you are translating from. Issues include:

1. The source language may have a collective noun for a group that the target language does not and vice-versa. You may have to translate a collective noun with a plural noun in your language, or you may need to translate a plural noun with a collective noun in your language.
2. Subject-verb agreement. Different languages or dialects may have different rules about using singular or plural verbs with collective nouns. Examples (from Wikipedia):
    - a singular noun with a singular verb: The team *is* in the dressing room.
    - a singular noun with a plural verb which is correct in British, but not American, English: The team *are* fighting among themselves. The team *have* finished the project.
3. Pronoun agreement. Similar to the previous, care needs to be taken to use the correct pronoun plurality and possibly gender or noun class to agree with the number/gender/class of the noun used. See the biblical examples below.
4. Clarity of referent. Especially if there is a mismatch in your translation between the verb and noun or pronoun concerning any of the factors above, readers may be confused about who or what is being referenced.

Examples from the Bible

> And Joab and all the **army** which was with him arrived (2 Samuel 3:23a ULT)

The word in bold is written in singular form in both Hebrew and English, but it refers to a group of warriors that fight together.

> and though the **flock** is cut off from the fold and there are no cattle in the stalls. (Habakkuk 3:17b ULT)

The word in bold is singular and refers to a group of sheep.

> And he went out again beside the sea, and all the **crowd** was coming to him, and he was teaching **them**. (Mark 2:13 ULT)

Note in this example that the noun is singular but the pronoun is plural. This may or may not be allowed or natural in your language.

> Do not let **your heart** be troubled. **You** believe in God; believe also in me. (John 14:1 ULT)

In this verse, the words translated “your” and “you” are plural, referring to many people. The word “heart” is singular in form, but it refers to all of their hearts as a group.

> And he shall take the **hair** of the head of his separation. And he shall put **it** on the fire that is under the sacrifice of the peace offerings. (Num 6:18b ULT)

The word **hair** is singular, but it refers to many hairs, not just one.

> And Pharaoh said, “Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **Israel** go.” (Exodus 5:2 ULT)

Here, “Israel” is singular, but means “the Israelites” by metonymy.

Translation Strategies

If your language has a collective (singular) noun that refers to the same group as referenced by the collective noun in the source text, then translate the word using that term. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

(1) Translate the collective noun with a plural noun.
(2) Add a plural word to the collective noun so that you can use a plural verb and pronouns.
(3) Use a phrase to describe the group that the collective noun references. A useful strategy here can be to use a general collective noun that refers to a group of people or things.
(4) If your language uses a collective noun for something that is a plural noun in the source language, you can translate the plural noun as a collective noun and, if necessary, change the form of the verb and any pronouns so that they agree with the singular noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the collective noun with a plural noun.

> And Pharaoh said, “Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **Israel** go.” (Exodus 5:2 ULT)

And Pharaoh said, “Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **the Israelites** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **the Israelites** go.”

> And he shall take the **hair** of the head of his separation. And he shall put **it** on the fire that is under the sacrifice of the peace offerings. (Num 6:18b ULT)

And he shall take the **hairs** of the head of his separation. And he shall put **them** on the fire that is under the sacrifice of the peace offerings.

(2) Add a plural word to the collective noun so that you can use a plural verb and pronouns.

> And Joab and all the **army** which was with him arrived (2 Samuel 3:23a ULT)

And Joab and all the **army men who were** with him arrived

> And he went out again beside the sea, and all the **crowd** was coming to him, and he was teaching **them**. (Mark 2:13 ULT)

And he went out again beside the sea, and all the **people of the crowd were** coming to him, and he was teaching **them**.

(3) Use a phrase to describe the group that the collective noun references. A useful strategy here can be to use a general collective noun that refers to a group of people or things.

> and though the **flock** is cut off from the fold and there are no cattle in the stalls. (Habakkuk 3:17b ULT)

and though the **group of sheep** is cut off from the fold and there are no cattle in the stalls.

> And Pharaoh said, “Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **Israel** go.” (Exodus 5:2 ULT)

And Pharaoh said, “Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **the people of Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **the people of Israel** go.”

(4) If your language uses a collective noun for something that is a plural noun in the source language, you can translate the plural noun as a collective noun and, if necessary, change the form of the verb and any pronouns so that they agree with the singular noun.

> Now this John had his clothing from the **hairs** of a camel and a leather belt around his waist (Matthew 3:4a ULT)

Now this John had his clothing from the **hair** of a camel and a leather belt around his waist

> You shall not make for yourself a carved figure nor any likeness that {is} in **the heavens** above, or that {is} in the earth beneath, or that {is} in **the waters** under the earth. (Deuteronomy 5:8 ULT)

You shall not make for yourself a carved figure nor any likeness that is in **heaven** above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in **the water** under the earth.

Genesis References:

1:26

Connect — Background Information

Time Relationship

Some connectors establish time relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Background Clause

Description

A background clause is one that describes something that is ongoing. Then, in the same sentence, another clause indicates an event that begins to happen during that time. These events are also simultaneous events, but they have the further relationship of background event and main event because the event that is already happening serves as the background for the other event, the one that is in focus. The background event simply provides the time frame or other context for the main event or events.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages indicate a shift in time in different ways. You (the translator) need to understand how these shifts in time are indicated in the original languages in order to communicate them clearly in your own language. Background clauses often indicate a time that began long before the event that is in focus. Translators need to understand how both the source language and the target language communicate background events. Some English words that indicate background events are “now,” “when,” “while,” and “during.” Those words can also indicate simultaneous events. To tell the difference, ask yourself if all of the events seem to be equal in importance and started at about the same time. If so, they are probably simultaneous events. But if an event(s) is ongoing and another event(s) just started, then the ongoing event(s) is probably background to the other event(s). Some common phrases that indicate background events are “in those days” and “at that time.”

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> **When** Solomon was old, he also worshiped their gods. (OBS Story 18 Frame 3)

Solomon began to worship foreign gods at a time when he was old. Being old is the background event. Worshiping other gods is the main event.

> And his parents went **every year** to Jerusalem to the Feast of the Passover. And when he was 12 years old, they went up according to the custom of the feast. (Luke 2:41-42 ULT)

The first event—going to Jerusalem—is ongoing and started long ago. We know this because of the words "every year." Going to Jerusalem is the background event. Then an event begins that started during the time "when he was twelve years old." So the main event is the specific time Jesus and his family traveled to Jerusalem for the Passover festival **when he was twelve years old.**

> And it came about that, **while** they were there, the days were fulfilled for her to give birth. (Luke 2:6 ULT)

Being in Bethlehem is the background event. The birth of the baby is the main event.

> And in the fifteenth year of the reign of Tiberius Caesar—**while** Pontius Pilate was governor of Judea, and Herod was tetrarch of Galilee, and his brother Philip was tetrarch of the region of Ituraea and Trachonitis, and Lysanias was tetrarch of Abilene, **during** the high priesthood of Annas and Caiaphas—the word of God came to John, the son of Zechariah, in the wilderness. (Luke 3:1-2 ULT)

This example begins with five background clauses (marked by commas), signalled as background by the words "while" and "during." Then the main event happens: "the word of God came to John."

Translation Strategies

If the way that the Background Clauses are marked is also clear in your language, then translate the Background Clauses as they are.

(1) If the connecting word does not make it clear that what follows is a Background Clause, use a connecting word that communicates this more clearly.
(2) If your language marks Background Clauses in a different way than using connecting words (such as by using different verb forms), then use that way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

> And in the fifteenth year of the reign of Tiberius Caesar—**while** Pontius Pilate was governor of Judea, and Herod was tetrarch of Galilee, and his brother Philip was tetrarch of the region of Ituraea and Trachonitis, and Lysanias was tetrarch of Abilene, **during** the high priesthood of Annas and Caiaphas—the word of God came to John, the son of Zechariah, in the wilderness. (Luke 3:1-2 ULT)

(1) If the connecting word does not make it clear that what follows is a background clause, use a connecting word that communicates this more clearly.

> **It happened during the time that** Pontius Pilate was governor of Judea, **and during the time that** Herod was tetrarch of Galilee, **and during the time that** his brother Philip was tetrarch of the region of Ituraea and Trachonitis, **and during the time that** Lysanias was tetrarch of Abilene, **and also during the time that** Annas and Caiaphas were high priests—**that** the word of God came to John son of Zechariah in the wilderness.

(2) If your language marks background clauses in a different way than using connecting words, such as with different verb forms, then use that way.

> Pontius Pilate **was governing** Judea, and Herod **was ruling over** Galilee, and his brother Philip **was ruling over** the region of Ituraea and Trachonitis, and Lysanias **was ruling over** Abilene, and Annas and Caiaphas **were being** high priests—the word of God **came** to John son of Zechariah in the wilderness.

Example of Differences in Time Relationship Connecting Words:

Category	Example
Background setting	Yahweh's word was rare **in those days**;
Background repeated	there was no frequent prophetic vision.
Introduction of main event	**At that time**, **when** Eli
Background	**whose** eyesight had begun to grow dim so that he could not see well,
Simultaneous background	was lying down in his own bed.
Simultaneous background	The lamp of God **had not yet** gone out,
Simultaneous background	**and** Samuel was lying down to sleep in the temple of Yahweh,
Simultaneous background	where the ark of God was.
Main event	**Yahweh called to Samuel**,
Sequential event	who said, "Here I am." (1 Sam 3:1-4 ULT)

In the above example, the first two lines talk about a condition that was going on for a long time. This is the general, long-term background. We know this from the phrase "in those days." After the introduction of the main event ("At that time,"), there are several lines of simultaneous background. The first one is introduced by "when," and then three more follow, with the last connected by "and." The background clause introduced by "where" explains a little more about the background clause before it. Then the main event happens, followed by more events. Translators will need to think about the best way to show these relationships in their language.

Genesis References:

2:5; 4:2; 5:6; 5:9; 6:1; 11:1; 12:4; 13:2; 13:5; 13:13; 14:10; 14:13; 17:24; 18:10; 18:11; 20:4; 24:29; 24:52; 29:16; 38:24; 38:27; 41:8; 43:1; 43:2; 43:21; 47:27

Connect — Contrary to Fact Conditions

Conditional Relationships

Conditional connectors connect two clauses to indicate that one of them will happen when the other one happens. In English, the most common way to connect conditional clauses is with the words, “if … then.” Often, however, the word “then” is not stated.

Contrary-to-Fact Conditions

Description

A Contrary-to-Fact Condition is a condition that sounds hypothetical, but the speaker is already certain that it is NOT true.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Usually there are no special words that indicate a Contrary-to-Fact Condition. The writer assumes that the reader knows that it is NOT a true condition. For this reason it often requires knowledge of implied information to know that it is not true. If this kind of condition is difficult for translators to communicate, they may want to consider using the same strategies that they used for Rhetorical Questions or Implied Information.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> But **if Baal is God**, worship him! (Story 19 Frame 6 OBS)

> Elijah came near to all the people and said, “How long will you keep changing your mind? If Yahweh is God, follow him. But **if Baal is God**, then follow him.” Yet the people did not answer him a word. (1 Kings 18:21 ULT)

Baal is not God. Elijah is not suggesting that Baal might be God, and he does not want the people to follow Baal. But Elijah used a conditional statement to show them that what they were doing was wrong. In the example above, we see two conditions that have the same construction. The first one, “If Yahweh is God,” is a Factual Condition because Elijah is certain

that it is true. The second one, “if Baal is God,” is a Contrary-to-Fact Condition because Elijah is certain that it is not true. You will need to consider if people would say both of these in the same way in your language or if they would say them in different ways.

> But his wife replied to him, “**If Yahweh had desired to kill us**, he would not have taken from our hand the whole burnt offering and the offering. He would not have shown us all these things, and at this time would he have not allowed us to hear about this.” (Judges 13:23 ULT)

Manoah’s wife thinks that the second part of her conditional statement is not true, therefore the first part is also not true. God received their burnt offering; therefore, He does not want to kill them.

>

> “**If only we had died** by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt, sitting by a pot of meat and eating bread to the full.” (Exodus 16b:3 ULT)

Of course the people speaking here did not die in Egypt, and so this is a Contrary-to-Fact condition that is used to express a wish.

> “Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes.” (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

The English reader knows that these last two examples are Contrary-to-Fact conditions because of the past-tense verbs used in the first part (they are not things that might happen). The last example also has a second part that uses “would have.” These words also signal something that did not happen.

Translation Strategies

If Contrary-to-Fact conditions are clear in your language, then use them as they are.

(1) If the condition leads the reader to think that the speaker believes something that is false, then restate the condition as something that others believe.
(2) If the condition leads the reader to think that the speaker is suggesting that the first part is true, then restate it as a statement that it is not true.
(3) If the condition is expressing something that did not happen but the speaker wanted it to happen, restate it as a wish.
(4) If the condition is expressing something that did not happen, restate it as a negative statement.
(5) Often Factual and Contrary-to-Fact conditions are used to make reasoned arguments for a change in behavior. If translators are struggling to know the best way to translate them, it could be helpful to discuss how this is done in their language community. If someone is trying to convince people to change their behavior, how do they do that? It may be possible to adapt similar strategies when translating these conditions.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the condition leads the reader to think that the speaker believes something that is false, then restate the condition as something that others believe.

> But **if Baal is God**, worship him! (Story 19 Frame 6 OBS)

> > If you believe that Baal is God, then worship him!

(2) If the condition leads the reader to think that the speaker is suggesting that the first part is true, then restate it as a statement that it is not true.

> > If Baal is not God, then you should not worship him!

But his wife replied to him, "**If Yahweh had desired to kill us**, he would not have taken from our hand the whole burnt offering and the offering. He would not have shown us all these things, and at this time would he have not allowed us to hear about this." (Judges 13:23 ULT)

> > "**Yahweh does not want to kill us**, or he would not have received the burnt offering and the offering we gave him."

(3) If the condition is expressing something that did not happen but the speaker wanted it to happen, restate it as a wish.

> "**If only we had died** by Yahweh's hand in the land of Egypt, sitting by a pot of meat and eating bread to the full." (Exodus 16b:3 ULT)
>
> > "**I wish we had died** by Yahweh's hand in the land of Egypt…"

(4) If the condition is expressing something that did not happen, restate it as a negative statement.

> "Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes." (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

> > "Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! The mighty deeds which were done in you **were not done** in Tyre and Sidon. But **if they had been done there,**

> > **those people would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes.”

(5) Often Factual and Contrary-to-Fact Conditions are used to make reasoned arguments for a change in behavior. If translators are struggling to know the best way to translate them, it could be helpful to discuss how this is done in their language community. If someone is trying to convince people to change their behavior, how do they do that? It may be possible to adapt similar strategies when translating these conditions.

> But **if Baal is God**, worship him! (Story 19 Frame 6 OBS)

> > Is Baal the one who is truly God? Should you worship him?

> “Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes.” (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

> > “Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! You think that you are better than Tyre and Sidon, but you are not! **They would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes at seeing the mighty deeds that you have seen! **You should be like them**!”

Genesis References:

13:16; 15:5

Connect — Contrast Relationship

Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Contrast Relationship

Description

A contrast relationship is a logical relationship in which one event or item is in contrast or opposition to another.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In Scripture, many events did not happen as the people involved intended or expected them to happen. Sometimes people acted in ways that were not expected, whether good or bad. Often it was God at work, changing the events. These events were often pivotal. It is important that translators understand and communicate these contrasts. In English, contrast relationships are often indicated by the words “but,” “although,” “even though,” “though,” “yet,” or “however.”

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, **but** God used the evil for good! (Story 8 Frame 12 OBS)

Joseph’s brothers’ evil plan to sell Joseph is contrasted with God’s good plan to save many people. The word “but” marks the contrast.

> For who is greater, the one who reclines at the table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at the table? **Yet** I am among you as one who serves. (Luke 22:27 ULT)

Jesus contrasts the proud way that human leaders behave with the humble way that he behaves. The contrast is marked by the word “yet.”

> The hill country will also be yours. **Though** it is a forest, you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders, for you will drive out the Canaanites, even **though** they have chariots of iron, and even **though** they are strong. (Joshua 17:18 ULT)

It was unexpected that the Israelites, who had been slaves in Egypt, would be able to conquer and lay claim to the promised land.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses contrast relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

(1) If the contrast relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a connecting word or phrase that is more specific or more clear.
(2) If it is more clear in your language to mark the other clause of the contrast relationship, then use a connecting word on the other clause.
(3) If your language shows a contrast relationship in a different way, then use that way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the contrast relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a connecting word or phrase that is more specific or more clear.

> For who is greater, the one who reclines at table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at table? **Yet** I am among you as one who serves. (Luke 22:27 ULT)
>
> > For who is greater, the one who reclines at table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at table? **Unlike that person**, I am among you as one who serves.

(2) If it is more clear in your language to mark the other clause of the contrast relationship, then use a connecting word on the other clause.

> The hill country will also be yours. **Though** it is a forest, you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders, for you will drive out the Canaanites, even **though** they have chariots of iron, and even **though** they are strong. (Joshua 17:18 ULT)
>
> > The hill country will also be yours. It is a forest, **but** you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders. They have chariots of iron, and they are strong, **but** you will drive out the Canaanites.

(3) If your language shows a contrast relationship in a different way, then use that way.

> {David} found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob. **However**, Solomon built the house for him. **But** the Most High does not live in houses made with hands. (Acts 7:46-48a ULT)
>
> > [David] found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob. **But** it was, Solomon, **not David**, who built the house for God. **Even though Solomon built him a house**, the Most High does not live in houses made with hands.

Genesis References:

4:2; 6:18; 11:31; 15:10; 15:14; 19:18; 20:7; 21:13; 25:27; 28:2; 30:35; 30:42; 33:4; 33:17; 50:20

Connect — Exception Clauses

Exceptional Relationship

Description

Exceptional relationship connectors exclude one or more items or people from a group.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

English indicates exceptional relationships by first describing a group (Part 1) and then stating what is not in that group by using words like “except,” “but not,” “other than,” “besides,” “unless,” “however … not,” and “only” (Part 2). Some languages do not indicate in this way that one or more items or people are excluded from a group. Instead, they have other ways of doing this. In some languages this type of construction does not make sense because the exception in Part 2 seems to contradict the statement in Part 1. Translators need to understand who (or what) is in the group and who (or what) is excluded in order to be able to accurately communicate this in their language.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> God told Adam that he could eat from **any** tree in the garden **except** from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. (OBS Story 1 Frame 11)
>
> But if you will not redeem it, then tell me so that I may know, for there is **no one** to redeem it **besides** you, and I am after you. (Ruth 4:4b ULT)
>
> David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. **Not** a man escaped **except for** 400 young men, who rode on camels and fled. (1 Samuel 30:17 ULT)
>
> The man said, “Let me go, for the dawn is breaking.” Jacob said, “I will **not** let you go **unless** you bless me.” (Genesis 32:26 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If the way that Exceptional Clauses are marked in the source language is also clear in your language, then translate the Exceptional Clauses in the same way.

(1) Very often, the exception in Part 2 contradicts something that was negated in Part 1. In this case, the translator can phrase the same idea without the contradiction by deleting the negative and using a word like "**only**."
(2) Reverse the order of the clauses so that the exception is stated first, and then the larger group is named second.

Examples of Translation Strategy Applied

(1) Very often, the exception in Part 2 contradicts something that was negated in Part 1. In this case, the translator can phrase the same idea without the contradiction by deleting the negative and using a word like "**only**."

> David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. **Not a man escaped except for 400 young men**, who rode on camels and fled. (1 Samuel 30:17 ULT)

- Part 1: (**Not** a man escaped)
- Part 2: (**except for** 400 young men)

> > David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. **Only** 400 young men escaped; they rode on camels and fled.

> But if you will not redeem it, then tell me so that I may know, for there is **no one** to redeem it **besides** you, and I am after you. (Ruth 4:4 ULT)
>
> > But if you will not redeem it, then tell me so that I may know, for **you are first in line to redeem it {only you can redeem it}**, and I am after you.

> The man said, “Let me go, for the dawn is breaking.” Jacob said, “I will **not** let you go **unless** you bless me.” (Genesis 32:26 ULT)
>
> > The man said, “Let me go, for the dawn is breaking.”
> > Jacob said, “I will let you go **only if** you bless me.”

(2) Reverse the order of the clauses, so that the exception is stated first, and then the larger group is named second.

> God told Adam that he could eat from **any** tree in the garden **except** from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. (OBS Story 1 Frame 11)
>
> > God told Adam that he could **not** eat from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, but he could eat from **any other** tree in the garden.

Genesis References:

2:17; 9:4; 14:24; 32:26; 39:6; 42:15; 43:3; 43:5

Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Goal (or Purpose) Relationship

Description

A Goal Relationship is a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first event. In order for something to be a goal relationship, someone must do the first event with the intention that it will cause the second event.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In Scripture, the goal or purpose may be stated either first or second. But in some languages, the goal or purpose must always occur in the same position (either first or second) in order for that logical relationship to be understood. You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between the two parts and communicate those accurately in your language. This may require changing the order of the two events. It may also require specific words to indicate that one is the goal or purpose of the other. Words commonly used to indicate a goal relationship in English are “in order to,” “in order that” or “so that.” It is important that the translator recognize the words that signal a goal relationship and translate that relationship in a natural way.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> She became angry and falsely accused Joseph **so that he was arrested and sent to prison**. (Story 8 Frame 5 OBS)

The goal or purpose of the woman’s false accusation was to get Joseph arrested and sent to prison.

> Meanwhile Gideon, his son, was threshing out wheat at the winepress **in order to hide from the presence of Midian**. (Judges 6:11b ULT)

Here the prepositional phrase begins with “in order to.”

> Now if I have found favor in your eyes, show me your ways **so that I may know you and continue to find favor in your eyes**. Remember that this nation is your people. (Exodus 33:13 ULT)

Moses wants God to show him God’s ways for the goal or purpose of Moses knowing God and continuing to find favor with God.

> Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **for her to glean**, and do not rebuke her! (Ruth 2:16 ULT)

The goal or purpose of Boaz instructing the men to pull out the grain from their bundles and leave it was for Ruth to gather (glean) it.

> The shepherds said to each other, “Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem, **and let us see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The purpose of going to Bethlehem was to see the thing that had happened. Here the purpose is not marked and might be misunderstood.

> “… if you want **to enter into life**, keep the commandments.” (Matthew 19:17b ULT)

The goal of keeping the commandments is to enter into life.

> Do not turn from it to the right or to the left **so that you may bewise** in everything in which you walk. (Joshua 1:7c ULT)

The purpose of not turning away from the instructions that Moses gave to the Israelites was so that they would be wise.

> But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

The purpose of the vine growers killing the heir was so they could take his inheritance. They state both events as a plan, joining them only with "and." Then the word "so" marks the reporting of the first event, but the second event (the goal or purpose) is not stated.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses Goal or Purpose relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

(1) If the construction of the Goal statement is unclear, change it to one that is more clear.
(2) If the order of the statements makes the Goal statement unclear or confusing for the reader, then change the order.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the construction of the goal statement is unclear, change it to one that is more clear.

> "Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **for her to glean**, and do not rebuke her!" (Ruth 2:16 ULT)
>
> > "Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **so that she can glean it**, and do not rebuke her!"

> The shepherds said to each other, “Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem, **and let us see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)
>
> > The shepherds said to each other, “Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem **so that we can see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us.”

(2) If the order of the statements makes the goal statement unclear or confusing for the reader, then change the order.

> “… if you want **to enter into life**, keep the commandments.” (Matthew 19:17bULT)
>
> > “… keep the commandments if you want **to enter into life**.” or: “… keep the commandments **so that you can enter into life**.”

> But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, ‘This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.’ So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

(1) and (2)

> But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, ‘This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.’ So

> they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

> > But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, ‘This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **so that we can take over his inheritance**.’ So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him **so that they could take over his inheritance**.

Genesis References:

1:22; 1:28; 6:20; 9:1; 18:21; 30:41

Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

Conditional Relationships

Conditional connectors connect two clauses to indicate that one of them will happen when the other one happens. In English, the most common way to connect conditional clauses is with the words "if … then." Often, however, the word "then" is not stated.

Hypothetical Condition

Description

A Hypothetical Condition is a condition in which the second event (the "then" clause) will only take place if the first event (the "if" clause) takes place or is fulfilled in some way. Sometimes what takes place is dependent on the actions of other people.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

It is important that translators understand whether or not something is a Hypothetical Condition so that they translate it in the correct way. For example, some of God's promises to Israel were conditional, based on whether or not Israel obeyed God. However, many of God's promises to Israel were not conditional; God would keep these promises whether or not the Israelites obeyed. It is important that you (the translator) know the difference between these two types of promises and communicate each one accurately in your own language. Also, sometimes conditions are stated in an order different than the order in which they would happen. If the target language would state the clauses in a different order, then you will need to make that adjustment.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> God promised to bless the people and protect them, **if** they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them **if** they did not obey them (Story 13 Frame 7 OBS)

There are two hypothetical conditions in this frame. In both of these conditions, the first event (the "if clause") is stated after the "then" clause. If this is unnatural or confusing, the clauses can be restated in the more natural order. The first hypothetical condition is: if the Israelites

obeyed God, then God would bless and protect them. The second hypothetical condition is: if the Israelites did not obey God, then God would punish them.

> If you do what is right, will you not be accepted? (Genesis 4:7a ULT)

If Cain does what is right, then he will be accepted. The only way for Cain to be accepted is by doing what is right.

> … **if** this plan or this work is of men, it will be overthrown. But **if** it is of God, you will not be able to overthrow them. (Acts 5:38b-39aULT)

There are two hypothetical conditions here: (1) If it is true that this plan is of men, then it will be overthrown; (2) If it is true that this plan is of God, then it cannot be overthrown.

Translation Strategies

(1) If the order of clauses makes the hypothetical condition confusing, then change the order of the clauses.

(2) If it is not clear where the second event is, mark that part with a word like "then."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the order of clauses makes the hypothetical condition confusing, then change the order of the clauses.

> God promised to bless the people and protect them **if** they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them **if** they did not obey them. (Story 13 Frame 7 OBS)

> > If the people obeyed these laws, God promised he would bless them and protect them. But **if** they did

> > not obey these laws, God said that he would punish them.

(2) If it is not clear where the second event is, mark that part with a word like “then.”

> God promised to bless the people and protect them, **if** they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them **if** they did not obey them. (Story 13 Frame 7 OBS)

> > If the people obeyed these laws, **then** God promised he would bless them and protect them. But **if** they did not obey these laws, **then** God said that he would punish them.

> … **if** this plan or this work is of men, it will be overthrown. But **if** it is of God, you will not be able to overthrow them; (Acts 5:38b-39a ULT)

> > … **if** this plan or this work is of men, **then** it will be overthrown. But **if** it is of God, **then** you will not be able to overthrow them;

Genesis References:

18:24

Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Reason-and-Result Relationships

Description

A reason-and-result relationship is a logical relationship in which one event is the **reason** or cause for another event. The second event, then, is the **result** of the first event.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

A reason-and-result relationship can look forward — "I did Y because I wanted X to happen." But usually it is looking backward — "X happened, and so I did Y." Also, it is possible to state the reason either before or after the result. Many languages have a preferred order for the reason and the result, and it will be confusing for the reader if they are in the opposite order. Common words used to indicate a reason-and-result relationship in English are "because," "so," "therefore," and "for." Some of these words can also be used to indicate a goal relationship, so translators need to be aware of the difference between a goal relationship and a reason-and-result relationship. It is necessary for translators to understand how the two events are connected, and then communicate them clearly in their language.

If the reason and result are stated in different verses, it is still possible to put them in a different order. If you change the order of the verses, then put the verse numbers together at the beginning of the group of verses that were rearranged like this: 1-2. This is called a Verse Bridge.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> The Jews were amazed, **because** Saul had tried to kill believers, and now he believed in Jesus! (Story 46 Frame 6 OBS)

The **reason** is the change in Saul — that he had tried to kill people who believed in Jesus, and now he himself believed in Jesus. The **result** is that the Jews were amazed. “Because” connects the two ideas and indicates that what follows it is a reason.

> Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves. (Matthew 8:24a ULT)

The **reason** is the great storm, and the **result** is that the boat was covered with the waves. The two events are connected by “so that.” Notice that the term “so that” often indicates a goal relationship, but here the relationship is reason-and-result. This is because the sea cannot think and therefore does not have a goal.

> God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

The **result** is that God blessed and sanctified the seventh day. The **reason** is because he rested on the seventh day from his work.

> “Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God.” (Luke 6:20b ULT)

The **result** is that the poor are blessed. The **reason** is that the kingdom of God is theirs.

> But he raised up in their place their sons that Joshua circumcised, being uncircumcised, **because** they had not been circumcised on the way. (Joshua 5:7 ULT)

The **result** is that Joshua circumcised the boys and men who had been born in the wilderness. The **reason** was that they had not been circumcised while they were journeying.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses reason-and-result relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

(1) If the order of the clauses is confusing for the reader, then change the order.

(2) If the relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a more clear connecting word.

(3) If it is more clear to put a connecting word in the clause that does not have one, then do so.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

> God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

(1) God rested on the seventh day from all his work which he had done in his creation. **That is why** he blessed the seventh day and sanctified it.

> Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God. (Luke 6:20 ULT)

(1) The kingdom of God belongs to you who are poor. **Therefore**, the poor are blessed.

(2) Blessed are the poor, **because** yours is the kingdom of God.

(3) **The reason that** the poor are blessed **is because** yours is the kingdom of God.

> Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves. (Matthew 8:24a ULT)

(1) Behold, the boat was covered with the waves **because** a great storm arose on the sea.

(2) Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **with the result that** the boat was covered with the waves.

(3) Behold, **because** a great storm arose on the sea, the boat was covered with the waves.

> **Since** he was not able to find out anything for certain because of the noise, he ordered that he be brought into the fortress. (Acts 21:34b ULT)

(1) The captain ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress, **because** he could not tell anything because of all the noise.

(2) **Because** the captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.

(3) The captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, **so** he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.

Genesis References:

3:17; 4:25; 6:14; 7:4; 8:4; 8:9; 12:12; 12:12; 12:19; 12:20; 13:6; 19:32; 24:35; 26:14; 39:23

Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

Time Relationships

Some connectors establish time relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Sequential Clause

Description

A sequential clause is a time relation that connects two events in which one happens and then the other happens.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages indicate sequences of events in different ways; some use ordering, some use connecting words, some even use relative tense (Relative tense is a tense that refers to a time in relation to a reference point in the context.) Connecting words that may indicate sequence are words such as “then,” “later,” “after,” “afterward,” “before,” “first,” and “when.” Translators need to be certain that they communicate the order of the events in a way that is natural in their language. This may require ordering clauses differently than in the original languages.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> **When** Joseph came to his brothers, they kidnapped him and sold him to some slave traders. (OBS Story 8 Frame 2)

First Joseph came to his brothers, and then they kidnapped and sold him. We know this because of the connecting word “**when**.” The translator needs to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

> It was as sweet as honey in my mouth, but **after** I ate it, my stomach became bitter. (Revelation 10:10b ULT)

The event of the first clause occurs first, and the event of the last clause occurs later. We know this because of the connecting word "**after**." The translator needs to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

> For **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate (Isaiah 7:16 ULT)

The event of the first clause occurs after the event of the second clause. First the land they dread will be desolate, and then the child will know to refuse evil and choose good. We know this because of the connecting word "**before**." However, stating the clauses in this order may communicate the wrong order of events in your language. The translator may have to change the order so that the clauses come in the order that they happen. Or it may be possible to keep the order of the original language text and mark the ordering of sequence so that it is clear to the readers. You (the translator) need to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

> Then Mary arose in those days **and** quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah, **and** she entered into the house of Zechariah **and** greeted Elizabeth. (Luke 1:39-40 ULT)

Here the general connector "**and**" connects four events. These are sequential events—each happens after the one before it. We know this because that is the only way that these events would happen. So in English, the general connector "and" is enough to make the sequence clear for events such as these. You will need to decide if this also communicates this sequence clearly and correctly in your language.

Translation Strategies

If the sequence of events is clear in your language, then translate the sequence as it is.

(1) If the connecting word is not clear, use a connecting word that communicates the sequence more clearly.
(2) If the clauses are in an order that makes the sequence unclear, put the clauses in an order that is more clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the connecting word is not clear, use a connecting word that communicates the sequence more clearly.

> Then Mary arose in those days **and** quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah, **and** she entered into the house of Zechariah **and** greeted Elizabeth. (Luke 1:39-40 ULT)
>
> > Then Mary arose in those days. **Then** she quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah. **Then** she entered into the house of Zechariah, **and then** she greeted Elizabeth.

> For **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate (Isaiah 7:16 ULT)
>
> > For the time will come when the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, **but even before that time**, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate.

(2) If the clauses are in an order that makes the sequence unclear, put the clauses in an order that is more clear.

> For the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good.

For more about sequences of events, see Sequence of Events.

Genesis References:

1:5; 4:8; 7:17

Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship

Time Relationships

Some connectors establish time relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Simultaneous Clause

Description

A simultaneous clause is a time relationship that connects two or more events that occur at the same time.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages indicate in many different ways that events occur simultaneously. These ways may vary based on whether or not something is causing the events to occur simultaneously. Connecting words that may indicate simultaneous events are words such as “while,” “as,” and “during.” Often the Bible does not state a relationship between the events but simply says they occurred at the same time. It is important that you (the translator) know when a time relationship is implied and when it is not implied so that you can communicate it clearly. A simultaneous clause communicates that events happened at the same time but it does not indicate that one event caused the other. That would be a reason-and-result relationship.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> Joseph served his master well, **and** God blessed Joseph. (OBS Story 8 Frame 4)

Two events happened while Joseph was a slave to a wealthy government official: Joseph served well, and God blessed Joseph. There is no indication of a reason-and-result (cause and effect) relationship between the two, or that the first event happened, and then the second event happened.

> But in truth I say to you that there were many widows in Israel **during** the days of Elijah. (Luke 4:25b ULT)

The connecting word "**during**" tells us clearly that two things happened at the same time, but one event did not cause the other.

> And the people were waiting for Zechariah, **and** they were wondering at his delaying in the temple. (Luke 1:21 ULT)

The people were both waiting and wondering at the same time. The general connector "**and**" indicates this.

> **While** they were looking intensely into heaven **as** he was going up, suddenly, two men stood by them in white clothing. (Acts 1:10 ULT)

Three events happened at the same time — the disciples looking, Jesus going up, and two men standing. The connector words "**while**" and "**as**" tell us this.

Translation Strategies

If the way that the simultaneous clauses are marked also is clear in your language, then translate the simultaneous clauses as they are.

(1) If the connecting word does not make it clear that the simultaneous clauses are happening at the same time, use a connecting word that communicates this more clearly.
(2) If it is not clear which clause the simultaneous clause is connected to, and that they are happening at the same time, mark all of the clauses with a connecting word.
(3) If your language marks events as simultaneous in a different way than using connecting words, then use that way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

Below, each Bible verse will be restated in three different ways, according to the translation strategies in the list above. Each restatement will have the same number as the translation strategy that it is using.

> And the people were waiting for Zechariah, **and** they were wondering at his delaying in the temple. (Luke 1:21 ULT)

(1) Now **while** the people were waiting for Zechariah, they were wondering at his delaying in the temple.

(2) Now **while** the people were waiting for Zechariah, they were **also** wondering at his delaying in the temple.

(3) Now the people were waiting for Zechariah, wondering at his delaying in the temple.

> **While** they were looking intently into heaven **as** he was going up, suddenly, two men stood by them in white clothing. (Acts 1:10 ULT)

(1) And **during the time** they were looking intently into heaven **while** he was going up, suddenly, two men stood by them in white clothing.

(2) And **while** they were looking intently into heaven **as** he was going up, suddenly, **at that same time** two men stood by them in white clothing.

(3) They were looking intently into heaven; he was going up **when** they saw two men standing by them in white clothing.

Genesis References:

8:8; 19:23

Connecting Words and Phrases

Description

As humans, we write our thoughts in phrases and sentences. We usually want to communicate a series of thoughts that are connected to each other in different ways. **Connecting words and phrases** show how these thoughts are related to each other. For example, we can show how the following thoughts are related by using the Connecting Words in bold type:

- It was raining, **so** I opened my umbrella.
- It was raining, **but** I did not have an umbrella. **So** I got very wet.

Connecting words or phrases can connect phrases or clauses within a sentence. They can connect sentences to each other. They can also connect entire chunks to one another in order to show how the chunk before relates to the chunk after the connecting word. Very often, the connecting words that connect entire chunks to one another are either conjunctions or adverbs.

> It was raining, but I did not have an umbrella, so I got very wet.
>
> **Now** I must change my clothes. Then I will drink a cup of hot tea and warm myself by the fire.

In the above example, the word **now** connects the two short chunks of text, showing the relationship between them. The speaker must change his clothes, drink hot tea, and warm himself because of something that happened earlier (that is, he got wet in the rain).

Sometimes people might not use a connecting word because they expect the context to help the readers understand the relationship between the thoughts. Some languages do not use connecting words as much as other languages do. They might say:

- It was raining. I did not have an umbrella. I got very wet.

You (the translator) will need to use the method that is most natural and clear in the target language. But in general, using connecting words whenever possible helps the reader to understand the ideas in the Bible most clearly.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- You need to understand the relationship between paragraphs, between sentences, and between parts of sentences in the Bible, and how connecting words and phrases can help you to understand the relationship between the thoughts that they are connecting.

- Each language has its own ways of showing how thoughts are related.
- You need to know how to help readers understand the relationship between the thoughts in a way that is natural in your language.

Translation Principles

- You need to translate in a way that readers can understand the same relationship between thoughts that the original readers would have understood.
- Whether or not a connecting word is used is not as important as readers being able to understand the relationship between the ideas.

The Different Types of Connections

Listed below are different types of connections between ideas or events. These different types of connections can be indicated by using different connecting words. When we write or translate something, it is important to use the right connecting word so that these connections are clear for the reader. If you would like additional information, simply click the colored, hyperlinked word to be directed to a page containing definitions and examples for each type of connection.

- Sequential Clause — a time relationship between two events in which one happens and then the other happens.
- Simultaneous Clause — a time relationship between two or more events that occur at the same time.
- Background Clause — a time relationship in which the first clause describes a long event that is happening at the time when the beginning of the second event happens, which is described in the second clause.
- Exceptional Relationship — one clause describes a group of people or items, and the other clause excludes one or more items or people from the group.
- Hypothetical Condition — the second event will only take place if the first one takes place. Sometimes what takes place is dependent on the actions of other people.
- **Factual Condition** — a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain or true, so that the condition is guaranteed to happen.
- Contrary-to-Fact Condition — a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain that it is not true. See also: Hypothetical Statements.
- Goal Relationship — a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first.
- Reason and Result Relationship — a logical relationship in which one event is the reason for the other event, the result.
- Contrast Relationship — one item is being described as different or in opposition to another.

Examples from the Bible

> I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood. I did not go up to Jerusalem to those who were apostles before me. **Instead**, I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years, I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days. (Galatians 1:16b-18 ULT)

The word "instead" introduces something that contrasts with what was said before. The contrast here is between what Paul did not do and what he did do. The word "then" introduces a sequence of events. It introduces something that Paul did after he returned to Damascus.

> **Therefore,** whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

The word "therefore" links this section with the section before it, signaling that the section that came before gave the reason for this section. "Therefore" usually links sections larger than one sentence. The word "and" links only two actions within the same sentence, that of breaking commandments and teaching others. In this verse the word "but" contrasts what one group of people will be called in God's kingdom with what another group of people will be called.

> We place nothing as a stumbling block in front of anyone, **so that** our ministry might not be discredited. **Instead**, we commend ourselves in everything as God's servants. (2 Corinthians 6:3-4 ULT)

Here the words "so that" connect what follows as the reason for what came before; the reason that Paul does not place stumbling blocks is that he does not want his ministry brought into disrepute. "Instead" contrasts what Paul does (prove by his actions that he is God's servant) with what he said he does not do (place stumbling blocks).

General Translation Strategies

See each type of Connecting Word above for specific strategies

If the way the relationship between thoughts is shown in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, then consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).
(2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be strange to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.
(3) Use a different connecting word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).

> Jesus said to them, “Come follow me, and I will make you to become fishers of men.” Then immediately they left the nets and followed him. (Mark 1:17-18 ULT)

They followed Jesus because he told them to. Some translators may want to mark this clause with the connecting word “so.”

> > Jesus said to them, “Come follow me, and I will make you to become fishers of men.” **So**, immediately they left the nets and followed him.

(2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be odd to use one, and if people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.

> Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But**

> whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Some languages would prefer not to use connecting words here because the meaning is clear without them and using them would be unnatural. They might translate like this:

> > Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments, teaching others to do so as well, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. Whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

> I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood. I did not go up to Jerusalem to those who were apostles before me. **Instead**, I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years, I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days. (Galatians 1:16b-18 ULT) (Galatians 1:16-18 ULT)

Some languages might not need the words “instead” or “then” here. They might translate like this:

> > I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me. I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. After three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days.

(3) Use a different connecting word.

> Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Instead of a word like "therefore," a language might need a phrase to indicate that there was a section before it that gave the reason for the section that follows. Also, the word "but" is used here because of the contrast between the two groups of people. But in some languages, the word "but" would show that what comes after it is surprising because of what came before it. So "and" might be clearer for those languages. They might translate like this:

> > **Because of that**, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **And** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

Genesis References:

1:4; 1:5; 1:12; 1:27; 2:3; 2:6; 2:10; 3:5; 3:19; 4:18; 6:9; 6:16; 7:18; 8:10; 12:4; 14:8; 16:4; 16:9; 16:16; 17:6; 25:4; 25:11; 25:15; 26:3; 31:30; 41:31

Copy or Borrow Words

Description

Sometimes the Bible includes things that are not part of your culture and for which your language may not have a word. The Bible also includes people and places for which you may not have names.

When that happens you can "borrow" the word from the Bible in a familiar language and use it in your translation in your own language. This means that you basically copy it from the other language. This page tells how to "borrow" words. (There are also other ways to translate words for things that are not in your language. See Translate Unknowns.)

Examples From the Bible

> Seeing one fig tree along the roadside, he went to it. (Matthew 21:19a ULT)

If there are no fig trees where your language is spoken, there might not be a name for this kind of tree in your language.

> Above him were the **seraphim**; each one had six wings; with two each covered his face, and with two he covered his feet, and with two he flew. (Isaiah 6:2 ULT)

Your language might not have a name for this kind of creature.

> The declaration of the word of Yahweh to Israel by the hand of **Malachi**. (Malachi 1:1 ULT)

Malachi might not be a name that people who speak your language use.

Translation Strategies

There are several things to be aware of when borrowing words from another language.

- Different languages use different scripts, such as the Hebrew, Greek, Latin, Cyrillic, Devanagari, and Korean scripts. These scripts use different shapes to represent the letters in their alphabets.
- Languages that use the same script might pronounce the letters in that script differently. For example, when speaking German, people pronounce the letter “j” the same way that people pronounce the letter “y” when speaking English.
- Languages do not all have the same sounds or combinations of sounds. For example, many languages do not have the soft “th” sound in the English word “think,” and some languages cannot start a word with a combination of sounds like “st” as in “stop.”

There are several ways to borrow a word.

(1) If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.
(2) You can spell the word as the Other Language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.
(3) You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the Other Language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.

> צְפַנְיָה — A man’s name in Hebrew letters.
>
> > “Zephaniah” — The same name in Roman letters

(2) You can spell the word as the Other Language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.

> Zephaniah — This is a man's name.
>
> > "Zephaniah" — The name as it is spelled in English, but you can pronounce it according to the rules of your language.

(3) You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the Other Language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

> Zephaniah — If your language does not have the "z," you could use "s." If your writing system does not use "ph" you could use "f." Depending on how you pronounce the "i" you could spell it with "i" or "ai" or "ay."
>
> > "Sefania"
> >
> > "Sefanaia"
> >
> > "Sefanaya"

Genesis References:

4:16; 6:4; 6:14; 10:4

Direct and Indirect Quotations

Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotations and indirect quotations.

A direct quotation occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks: "".

- John said, "**I** do not know at what time **I** will arrive."

An indirect quotation occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead and not from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually contains changes in pronouns, and it often includes changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would" to replace the future tense, indicated by "will."

- John said that **he** did not know at what time **he** would arrive.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one than the other. There may be a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or as an indirect quotation.

Examples From the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have marked in bold the words that are quoted.

> And he commanded him to tell no one, but, “Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

- Indirect quote: He commanded him **to tell no one**,
- Direct quote: but told him, “**Go, show yourself to the priest …**”

> And being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God was coming, he answered them and said, “The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, ‘Look, here it is!’ or ‘There it is!’ For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you.” (Luke 17:20-21 ULT)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees **when the kingdom of God was coming,**
- Direct quote: he answered them and said, “**The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, ‘Look. here it is!’ or ‘There it is!’ For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you.**”
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, ‘**Look, here it is!**’ or, ‘**There it is!**’

Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

(1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
(2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

> And he commanded him to tell no one, but, “**Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.**” (Luke 5:14 ULT)
>
> > He commanded him to tell no one, but **to go and show himself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for**

> > **his cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them**.

(2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

> And he commanded him **to tell no one,** but, "Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them." (Luke 5:14 ULT)
>
> > He commanded him, "**Tell no one**. But go and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_quotations.

Genesis References:

12:12; 12:13; 18:15; 18:27; 22:20; 24:30; 26:7; 26:7; 26:7; 26:20; 27:7; 28:6; 29:5; 29:12; 31:8; 31:8; 32:16; 32:20; 32:27; 32:27; 32:29; 37:15; 37:17; 38:22; 42:4; 45:16; 45:24; 48:1; 48:2; 50:5; 50:5; 50:6; 50:17

Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of "not." Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning "not." Examples in English are "no," "not," "none," "no one," "nothing," "nowhere," "never," "nor," "neither," and "without." Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean "not," such as the bolded parts of these words: "**un**happy," "**im**possible," and "use**less**." Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as "lack" or "reject," or even "fight" or "evil."

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

> We did this **not** because we have **no** authority … (2 Thessalonians 3:9a ULT)
>
> And this was **not** done **without** an oath! (Hebrews 7:20a ULT)
>
> Be sure of this—the wicked person will **not** go **un**punished. (Proverbs 11:21a ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, "He is not unintelligent" means "He is intelligent."
- In some languages, such as French and Spanish, two negative words in a clause do not cancel each other to become a positive. The Spanish sentence, "No vi a nadie," literally says "I did not see no one." It has both the word 'no' next to the verb and 'nadie,' which means "no one." The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, "I did not see anyone."
- In some languages, a double negative creates a stronger negative statement.
- In some languages, a double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, "He is not unintelligent" means, "He is somewhat intelligent."
- In some languages, including the languages of the Bible, a double negative can produce a stronger positive meaning than a simple positive statement. So, "He is not unintelligent"

can mean “He is very intelligent.” In this case, the double negative is actually the figure of speech called litotes.

Biblical Greek can do all of the above. So to translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what each double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples From the Bible

The Greek of John 15:5 says:

> χωρὶς ἐμοῦ **οὐ** δύνασθε ποιεῖν **οὐδέν**
>
> Without me **not** you can do **nothing**

We cannot reproduce this double negative in the English ULT because in English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one. In English, and perhaps in your language, we need to choose only one of the negatives and say either:

Without me, you can do **nothing**.
or:
Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

> … in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

This means “in order to be fruitful.”

> A prophet is **not without** honor (Mark 6:4 ULT)

This means “a prophet is honored.”

> I do **not** want you to be **ignorant**. (1 Corinthians 12:1)

This means “I want you to be knowledgeable.”

Translation Strategies

If the way that the double negative is used in the Bible is natural and has the same meaning as in your language, consider using it in the same way. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.
(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

> For we do **not** have a high priest who **cannot** feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15a ULT)
>
> > "For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses."

> … in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)
>
> > "… so that they may be fruitful."

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.

> χωρὶς ἐμοῦ **οὐ** δύνασθε ποιεῖν **οὐδέν**
>
> Without me **not** you can do **nothing** (John 15:5)

> > Without me, you can do **nothing**.
> >
> > or:
> > Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

> …ἰῶτα ἓν ἢ μία κεραία **οὐ μὴ** παρέλθῃ ἀπὸ τοῦ νόμου (Matthew 5:18)
>
> …iota one or one serif **not not** may pass away from the law

> > …**not even** one iota or one serif may pass away from the law
> >
> > or:
> > …**certainly no** iota or serif may pass away from the law

Genesis References:

11:6

Doublet

Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

A very similar issue is the repetition of the same word or phrase for emphasis, usually with no other words between them. Because these figures of speech are so similar and have the same effect, we will treat them here together.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples From the Bible

> He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

The bolded words mean the same thing. Together they mean the people were spread out.

> He attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself. (1 Kings 2:32b ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

> You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

> … like of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

> Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, **"Master! Master!** We are perishing!" (Luke 8:24 ULT)

The repetition of "Master" means that the disciples called to Jesus urgently and continually.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

(1) Translate only one of the words or phrases.
(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."
(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

> You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)
>
> > "You have decided to prepare **false** things to say."

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."

> He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)
>
> > "He has one people **very spread out**."

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

> … like a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)
>
> • English can emphasize this with "any" and "at all."
>
> > "… like a lamb **without any blemish at all**."

> Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, **"Master! Master!** We are perishing!" (Luke 8:24 ULT)

> Then they approached {and} woke him up, **urgently shouting, "Master!** We are perishing!"

Genesis References:

1:26; 5:3; 5:29; 9:2; 11:1; 24:1

Ellipsis

Description

An ellipsis[^1] occurs when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words that normally should be in the sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

> So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous**. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

There is ellipsis in the second part because "nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous" is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would read:

> So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **will** sinners **stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

[^1]: English has a punctuation symbol which is also called an ellipsis. It is a series of three dots (…) used to indicate an intentional omission of a word, phrase, sentence or more from text without altering its original meaning. This translationAcademy article is not about the punctuation mark, but about the concept of omission of words that normally should be in the sentence.

Two Types of Ellipsis

1. A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.
2. An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage or from the nature of the situation.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples From the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes**
> Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

> Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**not as unwise but as wise**. (Ephesians 5:15b ULT)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

> Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**walk** not
> as unwise but **walk** as wise,

Absolute Ellipsis

> Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

> > “Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight.”
>
> To Titus, a true son in our common faith. Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

> > To Titus, a true son in our common faith. **May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

> So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **sinners in the assembly** of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)
>
> > So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinners will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous.
>
> Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)
>
> > Then when the man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight.”
>
> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)
>
> > He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

Genesis References:

1:16; 14:23; 14:23; 17:26; 18:28; 18:29; 18:30; 18:30; 18:31; 18:31; 18:32; 21:23

Euphemism

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

> … they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons "were dead." It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples From the Bible

> … where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

> But Mary said to the angel, "How will this be, since I have not **known a man**?" (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.
(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

> … where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT) — Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
>
> > "… where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **dig a hole**"
> >
> > "… where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **have some time alone**"
>
> But Mary said to the angel, "How will this be, since I have not **known a man**?" (Luke 1:34 ULT)
>
> > But Mary said to the angel, "How will this be, since I have not **slept with a man**?"

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

> They found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

> “They found Saul and his sons **dead** on Mount Gilboa.”

Genesis References:

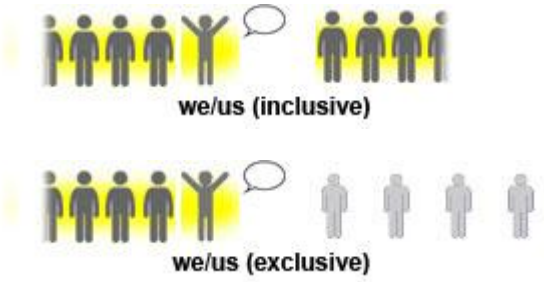
4:1; 4:1; 4:17; 4:25; 6:4; 15:15; 15:15; 16:2; 16:4; 16:5; 17:10; 18:11; 19:5; 19:8; 19:31; 19:32; 19:33; 19:33; 19:34; 19:35; 19:35; 20:4; 21:8; 25:8; 26:10; 29:23; 29:30; 30:3; 30:4; 30:15; 30:16; 30:16; 31:35; 34:2; 34:14; 35:11; 35:22; 35:29; 38:2; 38:9; 38:16; 38:18; 38:26; 39:7; 39:12; 39:14; 42:13; 42:32; 46:4; 46:26; 47:30; 49:3; 49:4; 49:33

Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an inclusive form that means “I and you” and an exclusive form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we,” then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples From the Bible

Exclusive

> They said, “There are not more than five loaves of bread and two fish with us—unless **we** go and buy food for all these people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food. They were speaking to Jesus, but Jesus was not going to buy food. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" would use the **exclusive** form there.

> **We** have seen it, and **we** bear witness to it. **We** are announcing to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and which has been made known to **us**. (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **exclusive** forms in this verse.

Inclusive

> The shepherds said one to each other, "Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**." (Luke 2:15b ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us," they were including the people they were speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

> Now it happened that on one of those days, he indeed got into a boat with his disciples, and he said to them, "Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake." So they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Genesis References:

3:2; 3:22; 11:3; 14:10; 19:13; 24:23; 26:10; 26:28; 26:28; 31:32; 31:44; 31:49; 34:16; 34:16; 34:21; 37:8; 38:23; 39:14; 39:17; 41:11; 43:2; 43:4; 43:7; 44:25; 44:25; 44:27; 50:16

First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you.”

Description

- First person — This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we.” (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- Second person — This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- Third person — This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it,” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

Examples From the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

> But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and used “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

> Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
> “… Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “his.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

> Abraham answered and said, “Look, I have undertaken to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes!” (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

> So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
(2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”

> But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)
>
> > But David said to Saul, “**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father’s sheep.”

(2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

> Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, "… Do you have an arm like **God's**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?" (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)
>
> > Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, "… Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **mine**?"
>
> So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)
>
> > So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Genesis References:

1:22; 9:6; 9:16; 18:3; 18:19; 18:19; 18:27; 18:30; 18:31; 18:32; 19:2; 19:19; 27:31; 28:20; 28:21; 28:22; 29:8; 41:10; 41:13; 41:16; 41:25; 41:28; 41:32; 41:33; 41:34; 41:35; 42:10; 42:11; 44:16; 44:19; 47:4; 47:18; 49:2; 49:4; 49:5; 49:8; 49:21; 49:24; 49:26; 49:27

Forms of ‘You’ — Dual/Plural

Description

Some languages have a singular form of “you” for when the word “you” refers to just one person, and a plural form for when the word “you” refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a dual form of “you” for when the word “you” refers to only two people. Translators who speak one of these languages will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for “you” in their language. Other languages, such as English, have only one form, which people use regardless of how many people it refers to.

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. These languages all have a singular form of “you” and a plural form of “you.” When we read the Bible in those languages, the pronouns and verb forms show us whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one person. However, they do not show us whether it refers to only two people or more than two people. When the pronouns do not show us how many people the word “you” refers to, we need to look at the context to see how many people the speaker was speaking to.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators who speak a language that has distinct singular, dual, and plural forms of “you” will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for “you” in their language.
- Many languages also have different forms of the verb depending on whether the subject is singular or plural. So even if there is no pronoun meaning “you,” translators of these languages will need to know if the speaker was referring to one person or more than one.

Often the context will make it clear whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one. If you look at the other pronouns in the sentence, they will help you know how many people the speaker was addressing.

Examples From the Bible

> Then **James and John**, the sons of Zebedee, came up to him, saying to him, “Teacher, we desire that you to do for us whatever we ask you.” 36 So he said to them, “What do **you** want me to do for **you**?” (Mark 10:35-36 ULT)

Jesus is asking the two, James and John, what they want him to do for them. If the target language has a dual form of "you," use that. If the target language does not have a dual form, then the plural form would be appropriate.

> Jesus sent out two of his disciples and said to them, "Go into the village opposite us. As soon as **you** enter it, **you** will find a colt tied there, on which no one has yet sat. Untie it and bring it to me." (Mark 11:1b-2 ULT)

The context makes it clear that Jesus is addressing two people. If the target language has a dual form of "you," use that. If the target language does not have a dual form, then the plural form would be appropriate.

> James, a servant of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ, to the twelve tribes who are in the dispersion: Greetings. Consider it all joy, my brothers, when **you** experience various troubles. You know that the testing of **your** faith produces endurance. (James 1:1-3 ULT)

James wrote this letter to many people, so the word "you" refers to many people. If the target language has a plural form of "you," it would be best to use it here.

Strategies for finding out how many people "you" refers to

(1) Look at the translationNotes to see if they tell whether "you" refers to one person or more than one person.
(2) Look at the UST to see if it says anything that would show you whether the word "you" refers to one person or more than one person.
(3) If you have a Bible that is written in a language that distinguishes "you" singular from "you" plural, see which form of "you" that Bible has in that sentence.
(4) Look at the context to see who the speaker was talking to and who responded.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_youdual.

Genesis References:

2:24; 3:5; 3:7; 19:1; 22:5; 22:6; 22:8; 24:50; 24:56; 31:6; 31:50; 33:4; 33:7; 34:26; 48:9

Forms of ‘You’ — Singular

Description

Some languages have a **singular** form of “you” for when the word “you” refers to just one person, and a **plural** form for when the word “you” refers to more than one person. Translators who speak one of these languages will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for “you” in their language. Other languages, such as English, have only one form, which people use regardless of how many people it refers to.

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. These languages all have both a singular form of “you” and a plural form of “you.” When we read the Bible in those languages, the pronouns and verb forms show us whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one. When we read the Bible in a language that does not have different forms of you, we need to look at the context to see how many people the speaker was speaking to.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators who speak a language that has distinct singular and plural forms of “you” will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for “you” in their language.
- Many languages also have different forms of the verb depending on whether the subject is singular or plural. So even if there is no pronoun meaning “you,” translators of these languages will need to know if the speaker was referring to one person or more than one.

Often the context will make it clear whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one. If you look at the other pronouns in the sentence, they will help you know the number of people the speaker was speaking to. Sometimes Greek and Hebrew speakers used the singular form of “you” even though they were speaking to a group of people. (See **Forms of ‘You’ — Singular to a Crowd** 🔗.)

Examples From the Bible

> But he said, “All these things **I** have kept from my youth.” But when he heard this, Jesus said to him, “One thing is still lacking to **you**. All things, as much as **you** have, **sell** all and **distribute** to the poor, and **you** will have treasure in heaven—and **come**, **follow** me.” (Luke 18:21-22 ULT)

The ruler was speaking about just himself when he said “I.” This shows us that when Jesus said “you” he was referring only to the ruler and he used the singular form. So languages that have singular and plural forms of “you” need the singular form here, as well as for the verbs “sell,” distribute,” “come,” and “follow.”

> The angel said to him, “**Dress yourself** and **put on your** sandals.” So he did that. He said to him, “**Put on your** outer garment and **follow** me.” (Acts 12:8 ULT)

The angel used singular forms here and the context makes it clear that he was speaking to one person and that only one person did what the the angel commanded. So languages that have singular and plural forms of “you” would need the singular form here for “yourself” and “your.” Also, if verbs have different forms for singular and plural subjects, then the verbs “dress,” “put on,” and “follow” need the form that indicates a singular subject.

> All the ones {who are} with me greet **you**. **Greet** the ones loving us in faith. Grace {be} with all of **you**. (Titus 3:15 ULT)

Paul wrote this letter to one person, Titus, so most of the time the word “you” in this letter is singular and refers only to Titus. In this verse, the first “you” is singular, so the greeting is for Titus, as well as the instruction to greet the others there. The second “you,” however, is plural, so the blessing is for Titus and for all of the believers there in Crete.

> “Having gone, **search** carefully for the young child, and after **you** have found him, **report** to me so that I also, having come, might worship him.” (Matthew 2:8 ULT)

Since Herod is speaking to all of the learned men, the word “you” and the commands “search” and “report” are plural.

Strategies for finding out how many people “you” refers to

(1) Look at the notes to see if they tell whether “you” refers to one person or more than one person.
(2) Look at the UST to see if it says anything that would show you whether the word “you”

refers to one person or more than one person.

(3) If you have a Bible that is written in a language that distinguishes “you” singular from “you” plural, see which form of “you” that Bible has in that sentence.

(4) Look at the context to see how many people the speaker was talking to and who responded.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Genesis References:

3:9; 3:11; 6:21; 6:21; 7:2; 17:7; 17:10; 17:10; 17:10; 17:11; 17:11; 18:3; 18:4; 24:49; 31:29; 34:8; 42:16; 44:27; 48:21; 48:22

Generic Noun Phrases

Description

Generic noun phrases refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things. This happens frequently in proverbs, because proverbs tell about things that are true about people in general.

> Can **a man** walk on hot coals without scorching his feet?
> So is **the man who goes in to his neighbor's wife**;
> **the one who touches her** will not go unpunished. (Proverbs 6:28-29 ULT)

The phrases in bold above do not refer to a specific man. They refer to any man who does these things.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of showing that noun phrases refer to something in general. You (the translator) should refer to these general ideas in ways that are natural in your language.

Examples From the Bible

> The **righteous person** is kept away from trouble and it comes upon **the wicked** instead. (Proverbs 11:8 ULT)

The bold phrases above do not refer to a specific person but to anyone who does what is right or anyone who is wicked.

> People curse **the man who refuses to sell grain**. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

This does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who refuses to sell grain.

> Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

The phrase “a good man” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who is good. The phrase “a man who makes evil plans” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who makes evil plans.

Translation Strategies

If your language can use the same wording as in the ULT to refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things, consider using the same wording. If not, here are some strategies you might use.

(1) Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.
(2) Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.
(3) Use the word “any,” as in “any person” or “anyone.”
(4) Use the plural form, as in “people.”
(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.

> Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)
>
> > “Yahweh gives favor to **the good man**, but he condemns **the man who makes evil plans**.” (Proverbs 12:2)

(2) Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

> > “People curse **a man** who refuses to sell grain.”

(3) Use the word “any,” as in “any person” or “anyone.”

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)
>
> > “People curse **any man** who refuses to sell grain.”

(4) Use the plural form, as in “people” (or in this sentence, “men”).

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)
>
> > “People curse **men** who refuse to sell grain”

(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)
>
> > “People curse **whoever** refuses to sell grain.”

Genesis References:

4:3; 4:22; 5:2; 6:14; 6:17; 12:5; 12:15; 12:20; 13:6; 13:7

Go and Come

Description

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words “go” or “come” and whether to use the words “take” or “bring” when talking about motion. For example, when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say “I am coming,” while Spanish speakers say “I am going.” You will need to study the context in order to understand what is meant by the words “go” and “come” (and also “take” and “bring”), and then translate those words in a way that your readers will understand which direction people are moving in.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of talking about motion. The biblical languages or your source language may use the words “go” and “come” or “take” and “bring” differently than your language uses them. If these words are not translated in the way that is natural in your language, your readers may be confused about which direction people are moving.

Examples From the Bible

> Yahweh said to Noah, “**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark.” (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

In some languages, this would lead people to think that Yahweh was in the ark.

> But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you. Then you will be free from my oath. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to his servant. Abraham’s relatives lived far away from where he and his servant were standing and he wanted his servant to **go** to them, not **come** toward Abraham.

> When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it … (Deuteronomy 17:14a ULT)

Moses is speaking to the people in the wilderness. They had not yet gone into the land that God was giving them. In some languages, it would make more sense to say, "When you have **gone** into the land …"

> They **brought** him up to the temple in Jerusalem to present him to the Lord. (Luke 2:22b ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that they **took** or **carried** Jesus to the temple.

> Then see, there was a man whose name was Jairus, and he was a leader of the synagogue. And falling at the feet of Jesus, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

The man was not at his house when he spoke to Jesus. He wanted Jesus to **go** with him to his house.

> What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to ask what did you come out to see.

Translation Strategies

If the word used in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other strategies.

(1) Use the word "go," "come," "take," or "bring" that would be natural in your language.
(2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.

> But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)
>
> > But you will be free from my oath if you **go** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.

> What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)
>
> > What did you come out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

(2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

> When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it … (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULT)
>
> > “When you have **arrived** in the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it …”

> Yahweh said to Noah, "**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark …" (Genesis 7:1 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh said to Noah, "**Enter**, you and all your household, into the ark …"

> What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)
>
> > What did you travel out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

Genesis References:

2:19; 2:22; 7:16; 8:16; 8:17; 8:18; 8:19; 12:5; 14:17; 15:7; 19:17; 24:32; 41:14; 42:5; 47:15; 47:18

Hendiadys

Description

In a hendiadys, a speaker uses two words that mean different things and that are connected with “and.” These two words work together to express a single idea. Usually one of the words is the primary idea and the other word further describes the primary one.

> … his own **kingdom and glory.** (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

Though “kingdom” and “glory” are both nouns, “glory” actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a **kingdom of glory** or **a glorious kingdom**.

Two phrases connected by “and” can also be a hendiadys when they refer to a single person, thing, or event.

> while we look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory** of **our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

Titus 2:13 contains two hendiadyses. “The blessed hope” and “appearing of the glory” refer to the same thing and serve to strengthen the idea that the return of Jesus Christ is greatly anticipated and wonderful. Also, “our great God” and “Savior Jesus Christ” refer to one person, not two.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Often a hendiadys contains an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that the second word is further describing the first one.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that only one person or thing is meant, not two.

Examples From the Bible

> For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** … (Luke 21:15a ULT)

“A mouth” and “wisdom” are nouns, but in this figure of speech “wisdom” describes what comes from the mouth.

> If you are willing and obedient … (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

“Willing” and “obedient” are adjectives, but “willing” describes “obedient.”

Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.
(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.
(5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

> For I will give you **a mouthand wisdom** … (Luke 21:15a ULT)
>
> > For I will give you **wise words** …
>
> Walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)
>
> > You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God,
> > who calls you to **his own glorious kingdom**.

(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

> For I will give you **a mouthand wisdom** … (Luke 21:15a ULT)
>
> > for I will give you **words of wisdom**.
>
> You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)
>
> > You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God,
> > who calls you to **his own kingdom of glory**.

(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

> If you are willing and obedient … (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)
>
> > If you are **willingly obedient** …

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

> If you are willing and obedient … (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

The adjective “obedient” can be substituted with the verb “obey.”

> > if you **obey willingly** …

(4) and (5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

> We look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory** of **our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

The noun “glory” can be changed to the adjective “glorious” to make it clear that Jesus’ appearing is what we hope for. Also, “Jesus Christ” can be moved to the front of the phrase and “great God and Savior” put into a relative clause that describes the one person, Jesus Christ.

> > We look forward to receiving **what we are longing for, the blessed and glorious appearing** of **Jesus Christ, who is our great God and Savior**.

Genesis References:

4:12; 4:14

How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible contains the names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to, but sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

> For this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, was the one who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

> His name first indeed means “king of righteousness,” and then also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2b ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.

- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples From the Bible

> Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** … fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that "Jordan" is the name of a river, "Jericho" is the name of a city, and "Amorites" is the name of a group of people.

> She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that "Beer Lahai Roi" means "Well of the Living One who sees me."

> And she called his name **Moses** and she said, "For out of the water I drew him." (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words "pull out."

> **Saul** was in agreement with his execution. (Acts 8:1a ULT)
>
> But when the apostles, Barnabas and **Paul**, heard of it, they tore their clothing. (Acts 14:14a ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
(5) Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

> Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** … fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)
>
> > You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The men of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites.**
>
> At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Leave and go away from here, because **Herod** wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)
>
> > At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Go and leave here, because **King Herod** wants to kill you.”

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

> And she called his name **Moses** and she said, "For out of the water I drew him." (Exodus 2:10b ULT)
>
> > She called his name **Moses (which sounds like 'drawn out'),** and she said, "For out of the water I drew him."

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

> She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)
>
> > She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore, the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

> … a young man named **Saul**. (Acts 7:58b ULT)

> > … a young man named **Paul** 1

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] Most versions say “Saul” here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called “Paul.”

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

> But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)
>
> > But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

> a young man named **Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULT)
>
> > a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

> But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)
>
> > But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

> It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)
>
> > It came about in Iconium that **Paul**[1] and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

> [1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Genesis References:

2:11; 2:11; 2:14; 2:15; 2:19; 3:20; 3:20; 4:1; 4:1; 4:1; 4:22; 5:2; 5:29; 10:4; 10:13; 10:22; 10:23; 10:25; 11:9; 11:31; 12:9; 13:3; 13:7; 13:10; 14:1; 14:1; 14:1; 14:5; 14:9; 14:18; 16:11; 16:11; 16:13; 16:14; 17:1; 17:19; 19:37; 19:38; 20:1; 21:3; 22:2; 22:14; 23:2; 23:9; 23:19; 24:62; 25:2; 25:3; 25:6; 25:11; 25:13; 25:18; 25:25; 25:26; 25:30; 26:18; 26:20; 26:33; 28:2; 29:32; 29:33; 29:34; 29:35; 30:6; 30:8; 30:8; 30:11; 30:13; 30:18; 30:24; 31:47; 32:2; 32:28; 32:31; 33:17; 33:20; 35:8; 35:8; 35:10; 35:18; 35:18; 35:21; 35:27; 36:2; 36:2; 36:2; 36:39; 36:39; 38:3; 38:29; 40:2; 41:1; 41:51; 41:52; 46:5; 46:13; 46:15

Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

It rains here every night.

1. The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
2. The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.
3. The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount or frequency of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

Hyperbole

In hyperbole, a figure of speech that uses exaggeration, a speaker deliberately describes something with an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

> They will not leave **stone upon stone in you.** (Luke 19:44b ULT)

This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

> Moses was educated in **all the wisdom of the Egyptians.** (Acts 7:22a ULT)

This hyperbole means that he had learned everything an Egyptian education could offer.

Generalization

This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

> The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame,**
> but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

> And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do,**
> **for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.**
> (Matthew 6:7)

This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarily mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

Examples From the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

> If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter
> into life maimed … (Mark 9:43a ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

> The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel with 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The bolded phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

> But as his anointing teaches you **everything** and is true and is not a lie, and just as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27b ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

> When they found him, they also said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

> Can **any good thing** come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46b ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

> One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

> **A lazy hand causes a person to be poor, but the hand of the diligent person gains riches.** (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and it reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

- Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

> They saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat. (John 6:19b ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

- Do not assume that the word "all" is always a generalization that means "most."

> Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways
> and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

(1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
(2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like "in general" or

“in most cases.”
(3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

> The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)
>
> > The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

(2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”

> **The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame.** (Proverbs 13:18a ULT)
>
> > **In general,** the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame
>
> When you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the **Gentiles do,** for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7 ULT)

> > And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.

(3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

> The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)
>
> > **Almost all** the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.
> > or:
> >
> > **Many** of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

> The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)
>
> > The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

Genesis References:

4:14; 4:24; 14:23; 19:4; 19:31; 25:32; 27:46; 29:31; 30:1; 31:26; 31:43; 33:13; 41:44; 47:13; 47:15

Hypothetical Situations

Consider these phrases: “If the sun stopped shining …” “What if the sun stopped shining …” “Suppose the sun stopped shining …” and “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. Hypothetical expressions occur often in the Bible. You (the translator) need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen and so that they will understand why the event was imagined.

Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, are not happening now, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions comprise a phrase that starts with “if.”)

- If he had lived to be 100 years old, he would have seen his grandson’s grandson. (But he did not.)
- If he lived to be 100 years old, he would still be alive today. (But he is not.)
- If he lives to be 100 years old, he will see his grandson’s grandson. (But he probably will not.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible and understand that they are unreal.
- Translators need to know their own language's ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

Examples From the Bible

Hypothetical Situations in the Past

> "Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes." (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

Here in Matthew 11:21, Jesus said that **if** the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles, and they did not repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles and yet did not repent.

> Martha then said to Jesus, "Lord, **if you had been here, my brother would not have died**." (John 11:21 ULT)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus would have come sooner so that her brother would not have died. But Jesus did not come sooner and her brother did die.

Hypothetical Situations in the Present

> And no man puts new wine into old wineskins. **But if he did do that, the new wine would burst the wineskins, and it would be spilled out, and the wineskins would be destroyed**. (Luke 5:37 ULT)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

> Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, **if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out**?” (Matthew 12:11 ULT)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

Hypothetical Situation in the Future

> **Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved**. But for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULT)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show how bad those days will be—so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

Expressing Emotion About a Hypothetical Situation

People sometimes talk about hypothetical situations in order to express regrets and wishes. Regrets are about the past and wishes are about the present and future.

> The Israelites said to them, “**If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.** For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.” (Exodus 16:3 ULT)

Here the Israelites were afraid that they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

> I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. **I wish that you were either cold or hot!** (Revelation 3:15 ULT)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

Translation Strategies

Find out how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.
- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_hypo.

Genesis References:

24:5; 24:39; 27:12; 31:27; 31:31; 31:42; 32:8; 34:22; 42:38; 43:9; 43:10; 44:29; 44:31; 44:31; 44:32; 44:34

Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, "You are teasing me by telling me something that is not true.")
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, "Do not take a matter to its extreme.")
- This house is under water. (This means, "The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.")
- We are painting the town red. (This means, "We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.")

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

> he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

The words "set his face" is an idiom that means "decided."

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

> I am not worthy that you would **come under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

The phrase "come under my roof" is an idiom that means "enter my house."

> Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

This idiom means "Listen carefully and remember what I say."

Purpose: An idiom is probably created in a culture somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples From the Bible

> Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

> The children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8b ASV)

This means, “The Israelites went out defiantly.”

> the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3b ULT)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
(2) Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

> Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)
>
> > Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

> Then he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)
>
> > He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

> I am not worthy that you would come **under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)
>
> > I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

> Put these words **into your ears.** (Luke 9:44a ULT)
>
> > **Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

> My **eyes grow dim** from grief. (Psalm 6:7a ULT)
>
> > I am crying my **eyes out**

Genesis References:

2:5; 2:21; 2:24; 2:24; 3:5; 3:7; 3:8; 3:16; 3:19; 4:2; 4:5; 4:5; 4:12; 4:14; 4:14; 4:15; 4:19; 4:20; 5:22; 5:29; 5:32; 6:3; 6:5; 6:5; 6:6; 6:7; 6:8; 6:9; 6:9; 6:17; 7:4; 7:21; 7:23; 8:1; 8:21; 8:21; 8:21; 9:1; 9:2; 9:6; 9:7; 9:15; 9:16; 11:3; 11:4; 11:4; 11:8; 12:2; 12:8; 12:8; 12:10; 13:1; 13:10; 14:5; 14:10; 14:15; 14:17; 14:20; 15:2; 15:4; 15:4; 15:12; 15:12; 15:18; 16:4; 16:4; 16:6; 16:6; 16:9; 16:16; 17:1; 17:1; 17:14; 17:14; 17:17; 17:18; 17:24; 18:2; 18:5; 18:10; 18:12; 18:19; 18:25; 18:27; 19:8; 19:11; 19:14; 19:21; 20:5; 20:5; 20:6; 20:8; 20:10; 20:15; 20:15; 20:16; 21:1; 21:5; 21:11; 21:12; 21:15; 21:19; 21:20; 21:21; 21:22; 21:27; 21:32; 21:32; 21:33; 22:3; 22:4; 22:7; 22:8; 22:12; 22:13; 22:14; 22:17; 23:10; 23:16; 23:18; 24:3; 24:16; 24:40; 24:45; 24:49; 24:50; 24:57; 25:8; 25:18; 25:26; 26:11; 26:19; 26:28; 26:29; 27:38; 27:40; 27:44; 27:45; 29:4; 29:7; 29:14; 29:31; 29:34; 30:2; 30:3; 30:22; 30:27; 30:30; 30:35; 30:40; 31:2; 31:5; 31:12; 31:15; 31:20; 31:21; 31:26; 31:35; 31:36; 31:39; 32:16; 32:20; 32:30; 32:32; 33:1; 33:4; 33:5; 33:8; 34:1; 34:7; 34:18; 34:21; 34:24; 34:30; 35:3; 35:3; 36:35; 37:3; 37:21; 37:22; 37:25; 37:26; 37:27; 37:27; 38:2; 38:7; 38:16; 39:6; 39:7; 39:8; 39:19; 39:21; 39:22; 40:2; 40:13; 41:5; 41:36; 41:37; 41:40; 41:47; 41:52; 42:9; 42:12; 42:24; 42:28; 42:37; 43:1; 43:9; 43:18; 43:21; 44:7; 44:17; 44:18; 44:29; 44:29; 44:30; 45:2; 45:5; 45:14; 45:18; 45:26; 46:2; 46:29; 47:27; 47:29; 48:2; 48:15; 48:17; 49:1; 49:8; 49:15; 49:24; 50:1; 50:21; 50:23; 50:24; 50:25

Imperatives — Other Uses

Description

Imperative sentences are mainly used to express a desire or requirement that someone do something. In the Bible, sometimes imperative sentences have other uses.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use an imperative sentence for some of the functions that they are used for in the Bible.

Examples From the Bible

Speakers often use imperative sentences to tell or ask their listeners to do something. In Genesis 26, God spoke to Isaac and told him not to go to Egypt but to live where God would tell him to live.

> Now Yahweh appeared to him and said, "**Do not go down** to Egypt; **live** in the land that I tell you to live in." (Genesis 26:2 ULT)

Sometimes imperative sentences in the Bible have other uses.

Imperatives that make things happen

God can make things happen by commanding that they happen. Jesus healed a man by commanding that the man be healed. The man could not do anything to obey the command, but Jesus caused him to be healed by commanding it. (In this context, the command "Be clean" means to "be healed" so that others around would know that it was safe to touch the man again.)

> "I am willing. **Be clean**." Immediately he was cleansed of his leprosy. (Matthew 8:3b ULT)

In Genesis 1, God commanded that there should be light, and by commanding it, he caused it to exist. Some languages, such as the Hebrew of the Bible, have commands that are in the third

person. English does not do that, and so it must turn the third-person command into a general, second-person command, as in the ULT:

> God said, "**Let there be** light," and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

Languages that have third-person commands can follow the original Hebrew, which translates into English as something like "light must be."

Imperatives that function as blessings

In the Bible, God blesses people by using imperatives. This indicates what his will is for them.

> God blessed them and said to them, "**Be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **Have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth." (Genesis 1:28 ULT)

Imperatives that function as conditions

An imperative sentence can also be used to tell the **condition** under which something will happen. The proverbs mainly tell about life and things that often happen. The purpose of Proverbs 4:6 below is not primarily to give a command, but to teach what people can expect to happen **if** they love wisdom.

> **Do not abandon** wisdom and she will watch over you;
> **love** her and she will keep you safe. (Proverbs 4:6 ULT)

The purpose of Proverbs 22:6, below, is to teach what people can expect to happen if they teach their children the way they should go.

> **Teach** a child the way he should go,
> and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

Imperatives that function as good results

An imperative sentence can also describe a desirable result. In Proverbs 3:3-4, several imperatives give instructions, then the final imperative describes the good outcome of following those instructions.

> Do not let covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness leave you;
> tie them on your neck, write them on the tablet of your heart,
> and **find favor** and good insight in the eyes of God and man! (Proverbs 3:3-4 ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.
(2) If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like "so" to show that what happened was a result of what was said.
(3) If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words "if" and "then."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.

> **Be clean**. (Matthew 8:3b ULT)
>
> > **You are now clean.**
> > **I now cleanse you.**
>
> God said, "**Let there be** light," and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)
>
> > God said, "**There is now** light" and there was light.

> God blessed them and said to them, "**Be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **Have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth." (Genesis 1:28 ULT)
>
> > God blessed them and said to them, "**My will for you is that you be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **I want you to have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth."

> Do not let covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness leave you;
> tie them on your neck, write them on the tablet of your heart,
> **and find favor** and good insight in the eyes of God and man! (Proverbs 3:3-4 ULT)
>
> > Do not let covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness leave you;
> > tie them on your neck, write them on the tablet of your heart,
> > **then you will find favor** and good insight in the eyes of God and man!

(2) If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like "so" to show that what happened was a result of what was said.

> God said, "**Let there be** light," and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

> > God said, ‘Let there be light,’ **so** there was light.
> > God said, “Light must be;” **as a result**, there was light.

(3) If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words “if” and “then.”

> Teach a child the way he should go, and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

Translated as:

> “**If** you teach a child the way he should go,
> **then** when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction.”

Genesis References:

13:9; 13:14; 15:5; 21:23; 24:3; 24:4; 24:54

Information Structure

Description

Different languages arrange the parts of the sentence in different ways. In English, a sentence normally has the subject first, then the verb, then the object, then other modifiers, like this: Peter painted his house yesterday.

Many other languages normally put these things in a different order such as: Painted yesterday Peter his house.

Although all languages have a normal order for parts of a sentence, this order can change depending on what information the speaker or writer considers to be the most important.

Suppose that someone is answering the question, “What did Peter paint yesterday?” The person asking the question already knows all of the information in our sentence above except for the object, “his house.” Therefore, that becomes the most important part of the information, and a person answering in English might say “His house is what Peter painted (yesterday).”

This puts the most important information first, which is normal for English. Many Other Languages would normally put the most important information last. In the flow of a text, the most important information is usually what the writer considers to be new information for the reader. In some languages the new information comes first, and in others it comes last.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Different languages arrange the parts of a sentence in different ways. If you (the translator) copy the order of the parts of a sentence from the source, it may not make sense in your language.
- Different languages put important or new information in different places in the sentence. If you keep the important or new information in the same place that it had in the source language, it may be confusing or give the wrong message in your language.

Examples From the Bible

> They all ate until they were satisfied. (Mark 6:42 ULT)

The parts of this sentence were in a different order in the original Greek source language. They were like this: And they ate all and they were satisfied.

In English, this means that the people ate everything. But the next verse says that they took up twelve baskets full of leftover pieces of food. In order for this to not be so confusing, the translators of the ULT put the parts of the sentence in the right order for English.

> And the day began to end, and the twelve came to him and said, “Send the crowd away so that, going into the surrounding villages and countryside, they may find lodging and food, because we are here in an desolate place.” (Luke 9:12 ULT)

In this verse, what the disciples say to Jesus puts the important information first, that he should send the crowd away. In languages that put the important information last, people would understand that the reason that they gave, being in an isolated place, is the most important part of their message to Jesus. They might then think that the disciples are afraid of the spirits in that place, and that sending the people to buy food is a way to protect them from the spirits. That is the wrong message.

> Woe to you when all men speak well of you, for their fathers treated the false prophets in the same way. (Luke 6:26 ULT)

In this verse, the most important part of the information is first, that “woe” is coming on the people for what they are doing. The reason that supports that warning comes last. This could be confusing for people who expect the important information to come last.

Translation Strategies

(1) Study how your language arranges the parts of a sentence, and use that order in your translation.
(2) Study where your language puts the new or important information, and rearrange the order of information so that it follows the way it is done in your language.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Study how your language arranges the parts of a sentence, and use that order in your translation.

This is the verse in the original Greek order:

> And he went out from there and came to the hometown his, and they followed him the disciples his. (Mark 6:1)

The ULT has put this into the normal order for English:

> Now Jesus went out from there and came to his hometown, and his disciples followed him. (Mark 6:1 ULT)

(2) Study where your language puts the new or important information and rearrange the order of information so that it follows the way it is done in your language.

> And the day began to end, and the twelve came and said to him, “Send the crowd away so that, going into the surrounding villages and countryside, they may find lodging and food, because we are here in a desolate place.” (Luke 9:12 ULT)

If your language puts the important information last, you can change the order of the verse.

> > Now the day was about to come to an end, and the twelve came to him and said, “Because we are here in an desolate place, send the crowd away that they may go into the surrounding villages and countryside to find lodging and food.”
>
> Woe to you, when all men speak well of you, for that is how their ancestors treated the false prophets. (Luke 6:26 ULT)

If your language puts the important information last, you can change the order of the verse.

> When all men speak well of you, which is just as people's ancestors treated the false prophets, then woe to you!

Genesis References:

1:10; 1:11; 1:30; 3:15; 3:17; 3:17; 4:1; 4:25; 5:2; 5:4; 5:24; 6:4; 6:4; 6:17; 6:20; 7:1; 7:3; 7:4; 7:6; 7:11; 7:11; 7:15; 7:17; 8:1; 8:4; 8:5; 8:22; 9:3; 9:6; 10:5; 10:5; 10:8; 10:32; 11:8; 11:10; 11:11; 11:30; 12:6; 12:7; 12:10; 12:17; 13:1; 13:3; 13:7; 13:8; 13:14; 13:16; 14:12; 14:17; 14:19; 14:23; 15:13; 15:14; 15:15; 15:18; 16:3; 17:10; 17:12; 17:23; 17:27; 18:5; 18:14; 19:16; 19:21; 19:24; 19:30; 19:34; 19:34; 20:3; 20:6; 20:6; 21:2; 21:4; 21:13; 21:16; 21:20; 21:34; 22:4; 22:8; 22:9; 23:1; 23:2; 23:6; 23:17; 24:12; 24:15; 24:21; 24:63; 25:6; 25:9; 25:21; 25:28; 26:7; 26:16; 26:24; 27:23; 28:5; 28:9; 28:11; 28:13; 29:5; 29:20; 29:21; 29:22; 29:26; 29:32; 29:34; 30:16; 30:24; 30:33; 31:10; 31:18; 31:20; 31:25; 31:27; 31:28; 31:29; 31:34; 31:44; 32:7; 32:20; 33:2; 33:5; 33:9; 34:2; 34:13; 34:19; 34:28; 35:6; 35:6; 35:8; 35:9; 35:13; 35:29; 36:6; 36:8; 36:14; 36:19; 36:24; 36:32; 36:33; 36:34; 36:36; 36:37; 37:8; 37:15; 37:16; 37:25; 37:31; 38:12; 38:14; 39:1; 39:2; 39:13; 39:23; 40:4; 40:5; 40:5; 40:6; 41:3; 41:18; 41:19; 41:22; 41:23; 41:25; 41:28; 41:31; 41:48; 41:53; 41:57; 42:18; 42:23; 42:34; 42:37; 42:37; 43:18; 43:25; 44:8; 45:3; 45:7; 45:9; 45:11; 45:15; 45:19; 45:22; 46:2; 46:5; 46:7; 46:18; 46:25; 46:26; 46:34; 47:1; 47:4; 47:11; 47:13; 47:15; 47:16; 47:19; 47:20; 47:26; 48:3; 48:5; 48:10; 48:13; 48:22; 49:12; 49:24; 49:25; 50:1; 50:8; 50:10; 50:10; 50:11; 50:13; 50:15; 50:25

Introduction of a New Event

Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages, people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

Examples From the Bible

> **In the days of Herod**, king of Judea, **there was a certain priest named Zechariah**, from the division of Abijah. And **his wife was** from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULT)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first bolded phrase tells when it happened, and the next two bolded phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase “And it happened that” in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

> **And it happened that** in his performing as priest before God, in the order of his division, according to the custom of the priesthood, he came up by lot to enter into the temple of the Lord to burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULT)

> **The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way.** His mother, Mary, was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULT)

The bolded sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

> **Now after Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king**, behold, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem. (Matthew 2:1 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened **after** Jesus was born.

> **Now in those days** John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea. (Matthew 3:1-22 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

> **Then** Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to John, to be baptized by him. (Matthew 3:13 ULT)

The word “then” shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

> Now there was **a man from thePharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did it. In some languages, it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

> 6 Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. 7 Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Verse 6 is a statement of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULT or UST. If not, consider one of these strategies:

(1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
(2) If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: "another time" or "someone."
(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.
(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, indicate that the event would actually happen later in the story.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

> Now there was **a man from thePharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)
>
> > There was a **man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**. One night he came to Jesus.

> One night **a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**, came to Jesus.

As he passed by, **he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, sitting** at the tax collector's tent, and he said to him … (Mark 2:14a ULT)

> As he passed by, **Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting** at the tax collector's tent. Jesus saw him and and said to him …

> As he passed by, **there was a man sitting** at the tax collector's tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him …

> As he passed by, **there was a tax collector** sitting at the tax collector's tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him …

(2) If readers would expect certain information, but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as “another time,” or “someone.”

> Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT) — If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase “after that” can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.
>
> > **After that**, when Noah was 600 years old, the flood came upon the earth.

> **Again he began** to teach beside the sea. (Mark 4:1a ULT) — In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone’s house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the sea.
>
> > **Another time** Jesus began to teach people again beside the sea.

> > Jesus went to the sea and **began to teach people again** there.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language’s way of showing that it is a summary.

> Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT)
>
> > **Now this is what happened when** Noah was 600 years old and the flood came upon the earth.

> > **This part tells about what happened when** the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was 600 years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

> Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)
>
> > **Now this is what happened when** Noah was 600 years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because **God had said that the waters of the flood would come**.

Genesis References:

4:3; 4:23; 7:10; 8:6; 9:20; 10:1; 11:2; 11:3; 11:31; 12:1; 15:12; 15:17; 17:1; 19:34; 21:22; 22:1; 22:20; 24:2; 24:15; 25:12; 25:29; 26:1; 27:1; 34:1; 37:23; 38:1; 39:7; 39:10; 40:20; 41:50; 42:1; 44:24; 48:1

Introduction of New and Old Participants

Description

The first time that people or things are mentioned in a story, they are **new participants**. After that, whenever they are mentioned, they are **old participants**.

> Now **there was a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus** … **This man** came to Jesus at night … Jesus replied and said to **him** … (John 3:1, 2a, 3a)

The first bolded phrase introduces Nicodemus as a new participant. After being introduced, he is then referred to as "This man" and "him" when he has become an old participant.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In order to make your translation clear and natural, it is necessary to refer to the participants in such a way that people will know if they are new participants or participants that they have already read about. Different languages have different ways of doing this. You must follow the way that your language does this, not the way that the source language does this.

Examples From the Bible

New Participants

Often the most important new participant is introduced with a phrase that says that he existed, such as "There was a man," as in the example below. The phrase "There was" tells us that this man existed. The word "a" in "a man" tells us that the author is speaking about him for the first time. The rest of the sentence tells where this man was from, who is family was, and what his name was.

> **Now there was a man** from Zorah, of the families of the Danites, and his name was Manoah. (Judges 13:2a ULT)

A new participant who is not the most important participant is often introduced in relation to the more important person who was already introduced. In the example below, Manoah's wife is simply referred to as "his wife." This phrase shows her relationship to him.

> Now there was one man from Zorah, of the families of the Danites, and his name was Manoah. **His wife** was barren and she had never given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Sometimes a new participant is introduced simply by name because the author assumes that the readers know who the person is. In the first verse of 1 Kings, the author assumes that his readers know who King David is, so there is no need to explain who he is.

> Now King David was old, he had advanced in the days, and they covered him with the garments, but it was not warm enough for him. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

Old Participants

A person who has already been brought into the story can be referred to with a pronoun after that. In the example below, Manoah is referred to with the pronoun "his," and his wife is referred to with the pronoun "she."

> **His wife** was barren and **she** had never given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Old participants can also be referred to in other ways, depending on what is happening in the story. In the example below, the story is about bearing a son, and Manoah's wife is referred to by the noun phrase "the wife."

> The angel of Yahweh appeared to **the wife** and he said to her … (Judges 13:3a ULT)

If the old participant has not been mentioned for a while, or if there could be confusion between participants, the author may use the participant's name again. In the example below, Manoah is referred to by his name, which the author has not used since verse 2.

> Then **Manoah** prayed to Yahweh. (Judges 13:8a ULT)

Some languages place an affix on the verb that tells something about the subject. In some of those languages, people do not always use noun phrases or pronouns for old participants when they are the subject of the sentence. The marker on the verb gives enough information for the listener to understand who the subject is. (See **Verbs** 🔗.)

Translation Strategies

(1) If the participant is new, use one of your language's ways of introducing new participants.
(2) If it is not clear to whom a pronoun refers, use a noun phrase or name.
(3) If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the participant is new, use one of your language's ways of introducing new participants.

> Then Joseph, who was called Barnabas by the apostles (which is translated as Son of Encouragement), a Levite from Cyprus by birth … (Acts 4:36-37 ULT) — Starting the sentence with Joseph's name when he has not been introduced yet might be confusing in some languages.
>
> > There was a man from Cyprus who was a Levite. His name was Joseph, and he was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of Encouragement). There was a Levite from Cyprus whose name was Joseph. The apostles gave him the name Barnabas, which means Son of encouragement.

(2) If it is not clear who a pronoun refers to, use a noun phrase or name.

> And it happened that when he was praying in a certain place, when he stopped, one of his disciples said to him, “Lord, teach us to pray just as John also taught his disciples.” (Luke 11:1 ULT) — Since this is the first verse in a chapter, readers might wonder who “he” refers to.
>
> > It happened when **Jesus** finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, “Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples.”

(3) If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

> Joseph’s master took Joseph and put him in prison, in the place where all the king’s prisoners were put, and Joseph stayed there. (Genesis 39:20) — Since Joseph is the main person in the story, some languages might prefer the pronoun.
>
> > Joseph’s master took **him** and put **him** in prison, in the place where all the king’s prisoners were put, and **he** stayed there in the prison.

Genesis References:

3:1; 24:15; 24:21

Irony

Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

> Then Jesus answered and said to them, "People who are well do not have need of a physician, but those who have sickness. I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance." (Luke 5:31-32 ULT)

When Jesus spoke of "the righteous," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

Examples From the Bible

> **How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9b ULT)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

> “Present your case,” says Yahweh; “present your best arguments for your idols,” says the King of Jacob. **“Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled**.” (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

> Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
> Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
> **You know, for you were born then,and the number of your days is many!** (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two phrases in bold above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God’s questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

> Already you are satisfied! Already you have become rich! **You began to reign** apart from us, and I wish you really did reign, so that we also might reign with you. (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULT)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

(1) Translate the irony in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
(2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. (Remember: The true meaning of the irony is **not** found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

> **How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)
>
> > **You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!
> > or:
> > **You act like it is good to reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!
>
> I did not come to call **the righteous**, but sinners to repentance. (Luke 5:32 ULT)
>
> > I did not come to call **people who think that they are righteous** to repentance, but to call people who know that they are sinners to repentance.

(2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

> **How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)

> **You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God** so you may keep your tradition!

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "**Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen**, so we may know these things well. **Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled**." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

> 'Present your case,' says Yahweh; 'present your best arguments for your idols,' says the King of Jacob. **Can your idols bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen** so we may know these things well? **No!** We cannot hear them because **they cannot speak** to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
You know, for you were born then,
and the number of your days is many! (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

> Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? **You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not**!

Genesis References:

37:19

Irregular Use of Tenses

Description

Normally, languages indicate when an event happens by marking it as past, present, or future (or some subset of those categories) through using different verb tenses. But sometimes speakers use those verb tenses in other ways to draw special attention to what they are saying. This article will discuss three ways that this happens in the Bible.

Past For Future

In the Bible, sometimes the past tense is used to refer to things that will happen in the future. This is a figure of speech that is used in prophecy to show that the event will certainly happen. It is sometimes called the "predictive past" or "prophetic perfect."

> Therefore my people have gone into captivity for lack of understanding; their honored leaders go hungry, and their common people have nothing to drink. (Isaiah 5:13 ULT)

In the example above, the people of Israel had not yet gone into captivity, but God spoke of their going into captivity as if it had already happened because he had decided that they certainly would go into captivity.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue:

Speakers of languages that do not use the past tense in prophecy to refer to future events may think that these are events that have already happened.

Examples From the Bible

> Now Jericho was tightly closed because of the sons of Israel. No one went out and no one came in. Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have delivered Jericho and its king and its powerful soldiers into your hand." (Joshua 6:1-2 ULT)

> For to us a child has been born, to us a son has been given; and the rule will be on his shoulder. (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)

In the examples above, God spoke of things that would happen in the future as if they had already happened.

> But even Enoch, the seventh from Adam, prophesied about them, saying, "Look! The Lord came with thousands and thousands of his holy ones." (Jude 1:14 ULT)

Enoch was speaking of something that would happen far in the future, but he used the past tense when he said, "the Lord came."

Present For Past

In the Bible, sometimes the present tense is used to refer to events that happened in the past. This is a figure of speech that makes these events more vivid or prominent for the reader. The effect can be to draw the reader into the story because these events are told as though they are happening now. The reader, however, knows that the events happened in the past. This is sometimes called the "historical present."

> Now the mother-in-law of Simon was lying down, being sick with a fever, and immediately they speak to him concerning her. (Mark 1:30 ULT)

In the example above, Mark had been narrating events that happened in the past, using the past tense. But when he came to the part about the disciples speaking to Jesus about Simon's mother-in-law, he changed from past tense to present tense.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue:

Speakers of languages that do not use the present tense to refer to past events may think that these events are happening now or that the Bible translation makes no sense.

Examples From the Bible

> And Simon and the ones with him searched for him 37 and found him and say to him, “Everyone is seeking you.” 38 And he says to them, “Let us go elsewhere, (Mark 1:36-38 ULT)

As in the above example, the historical present is often used to make direct speech stand out from the narrative.

> And he enters into Capernaum, and immediately on the Sabbaths, having entered into the synagogue, he began to teach. (Mark 1:21 ULT)

As in the above example, the historical present sometimes serves to set the scene for a new set of events. By using the historical present in this way, the writer draws the reader into the scene, and then relates the events using the past tense.

Present For Future

In the Bible, sometimes the present tense is used for a future event. Usually, this is to communicate that the event will happen very soon. Also, like the predictive past, this can communicate that the event is sure to happen or that the speaker is fully committed to making the event happen. This is sometimes called the “imminent future.”

> And Moses said, “Thus says Yahweh: ‘About the middle of the night I am going out in the midst of Egypt, (Exodus 11:4 ULT)

In the example above, Yahweh uses the present tense for something that he will do soon.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue:

Speakers of languages that do not use the present tense to refer to future events may think that these events are happening at the time of speaking or writing or that the Bible translation is confusing or wrong.

Examples From the Bible

> For behold me, raising up the Chaldeans, that fierce and impetuous nation… (Habakkuk 1:6 ULT)

> Therefore, remember from where you have fallen and repent and do the first works. But if not, I am coming to you and I will remove your lampstand from its place—if you do not repent. (Revelation 2:5 ULT)

In the examples above, God speaks of a future event as though he is doing it in the present. This is a way of emphasizing the certainty of the event.

> Therefore my people have gone into captivity for lack of understanding; their honored leaders go hungry, and their common people have nothing to drink. (Isaiah 5:13 ULT)

In the example above, the present tense continues the sense of the predictive past, communicating future events that are sure to happen.

Translation Strategies

If the tense that is used in the Literal Translation would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.
(2) Use the past tense to refer to past events.
(3) Use the tense that your language commonly uses to communicate the time of the event.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.

> For to us a child **has been born**, to us a son **has been given**. (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)

> > For to us a child **will be born**, to us a son **will be given**.

> Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, **I have delivered** Jericho and its king and its powerful soldiers into your hand.” (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

> > Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, **I will deliver** Jericho and its king and its powerful soldiers into your hand.”

> And Moses said, “Thus says Yahweh: ‘About the middle of the night **I am going out** in the midst of Egypt, (Exodus 11:4 ULT)

> > And Moses said, “Thus says Yahweh: ‘About the middle of the night **I will go out** in the midst of Egypt,

(2) Use the past tense to refer to past events.

> And Simon and the ones with him searched for him and found him and **say** to him, “Everyone is seeking you.” And he **says** to them, “Let us go elsewhere, (Mark 1:36-38 ULT)

> > And Simon and the ones with him searched for him and found him and **said** to him, “Everyone is seeking you.” And he **said** to them, “Let us go elsewhere,

> And he **enters** into Capernaum, and immediately on the Sabbaths, having entered into the synagogue, he began to teach. (Mark 1:21 ULT)

> > And he **entered** into Capernaum, and immediately on the Sabbaths, having entered into the synagogue, he began to teach.

(3) Use the tense that your language commonly uses to communicate the time of the event.

> Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, **I have delivered** Jericho and its king and its powerful soldiers into your hand.” (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

> > Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, **I am delivering** Jericho and its king and its powerful soldiers into your hand.”

> > Or: Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, **I am about to deliver** Jericho and its king and its powerful soldiers into your hand.”

> And Moses said, “Thus says Yahweh: ‘About the middle of the night **I am going out** in the midst of Egypt, (Exodus 11:4 ULT)

> > And Moses said, “Thus says Yahweh: ‘About the middle of the night **I will be going out** in the midst of Egypt,
> > Or: And Moses said, “Thus says Yahweh: ‘About the middle of the night **I shall certainly go out** in the midst of Egypt,

Genesis References:

17:5; 20:3

Kinship

Description

Kinship terms refer to those words used to describe people related to one another in familial relationships. These terms vary widely in their specificity from language to language. They range from the (Western) nuclear or immediate family (father-son, husband-wife) out to broad clan relationships in other cultures.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Depending on the language translators may need to use specific terms to designate the accurate kinship relationship. In some languages a different term may be used based on siblings' birth order. In others, the side of the family (father's or mother's), age, marital status, etc. may determine the term used. Different terms may be used based on the gender of the speaker and/or addressee. Translators may need to make sure they know the exact relationship between two related people in the Bible to find the correct term. Sometimes these terms are difficult even for native speakers to remember and translators may need to seek community help in finding the correct term. Another complicating issue is that the Bible may not give enough information about the relationship for translators to determine the correct term in the language being translated into. In this case, translators will have to use a more general term or simply pick a satisfactory term based on the limited information available.

Sometimes terms that seem like kinship terms are used for people who are not necessarily related. For instance, an older person may refer to a younger man or woman as "my son" or "my daughter."

Examples from the Bible

> Then Yahweh said to Cain, "Where is Abel **your brother**?" He said, "I do not know. Am I **my brother's** keeper?" (Genesis 4:9 ULT)

Abel was Cain's younger brother.

> Jacob sent and called Rachel and Leah to the field to his flock and said to them, “I see **your father’s** attitude toward me has changed, but the God of my father has been with me.” (Genesis 31:4-5 ULT)

Jacob is referring here to his father-in-law. In some languages there may be a specific term for a man’s father-in-law, however, in this case it is better to retain the form **your father** as Jacob may be using it to distance himself from Laban.

> And Moses was shepherding the flock of Jethro **his father-in-law**, the priest of Midian. (Exodus3:1a ULT)

Unlike the previous instance, if your language has a term for a man’s father-in-law this is a good place to use it.

> And **his sister** stationed herself at a distance to know what would be done to him. (Exodus 2:4 ULT)

From context we know that this was Miriam, Moses’s older sister. In some languages this may require a specific term. In others, the term for older sister may be only used when the younger sibling is addressing and/or referring to his or her sister.

> Then she and **her daughters-in-law** arose to return from the fields of Moab (Ruth 1:6a ULT)

Ruth & Orpah are Naomi’s daughters-in-law.

> Then she said, “Look, your sister-in-law has turned back to her people and to her gods.” (Ruth 1:15 ULT)

Orpah had been the wife of Ruth’s husband’s brother. This may be a different term in your language than if she had been Ruth’s husband’s sister.

> Then Boaz said to Ruth, “Will you not listen to me, **my daughter**?” (Ruth 2:8a ULT)

Boaz is not Ruth’s father; he is simply using the term to address a younger woman.

> And behold, **your relative** Elizabeth—she also has conceived a son in her old age, and this is the sixth month for her who was called barren. (Luke 1:36 ULT)

While the KJV translated this as **cousin**, the term simply means a related woman.

Translation Strategies

(1) Find out the exact relationship specified and translate using the term your language uses.

(2) If the text does not specify the relationship as clearly as your language would, either:

(a) settle on a more general term.

(b) use a specific term if required by your language, choosing the one that is most likely to be correct.

Translation Strategies Applied

This is not an issue in English, so the following illustrations draw on other languages.

In Korean, there are several terms for brother and sister, the use of them depends on the speaker’s (or referent’s) sex and birth order. Examples are from the Korean Living Bible, found on biblegateway.com

> Genesis 30:1 Rachel is jealous of her “eonni,” which is the term a woman uses for her older sister.
>
> Genesis 34:31 Simeon and Levi refer to Dinah as “nui,” a general term for sister.
>
> Genesis 37:16 Joseph refers to his brothers as “hyeong,” which is the term a man uses for his older brother(s).

> Genesis 45:12 Joseph refers to Benjamin as “dongsaeng,” which roughly means sibling, usually younger.

In Russian, in-law terms are complex. For instance, “nevéstka” is the term for a brother’s (or brother-in-law’s) wife; a woman uses the same term for her daughter-in-law but her husband would call the same daughter-in-law “snoxá.” Examples from the Russian Synodal Version.

> Genesis 38:25 Tamar sends a message to her father-in-law, Judah. The term used is “svekor.” This is used for a woman’s husband’s father.
>
> Exodus 3:1 Moses is watching his father-in-law’s herd. The term used is “test’.” This is used for a man’s wife’s father.

Genesis References:

4:2; 4:8; 4:21; 9:25; 10:5; 10:8; 10:15; 10:15; 10:20; 10:20; 10:21; 10:26; 10:31; 11:26; 11:31; 11:31; 24:48; 27:5; 27:6; 27:6; 28:2; 28:9; 34:25; 36:3; 36:22; 42:3; 42:4; 42:38; 43:14; 43:29; 44:20; 45:3; 45:12; 46:7

Litotes

Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by negating a word or phrase that means the opposite of the meaning that he intends. For example, someone could intend to communicate that something is extremely good by describing it as "not bad." The difference between a litotes and a double negative is that a litotes heightens the positive meaning beyond what a plain positive statement would do, and a double negative does not. In the example above, the literal meaning of "not bad," taken as a plain double negative, would be "acceptable" or even "good." But if the speaker intended it as a litotes, then the meaning is "very good" or "extremely good."

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

Examples From the Bible

> For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was **very** useful.

> Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a **lot** of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

> But you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,
> are **not the least** among the leaders of Judah,

> for from you will come a ruler
> who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a **very important city**.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

> For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)
>
> > "For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you **did much good**."

> Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)
>
> > "Now when it became day, there was **great excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."
> >
> > or:

> "Now when it became day, the soldiers were **very concerned** because of what had happened to Peter."

Genesis References:

23:6; 24:27; 39:9; 42:20

Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

Description

Some languages have ways of saying things that are natural for them but sound strange when translated into Other Languages. One of the reasons for this is that some languages say things explicitly that some Other Languages would leave as implicit information.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

If you translate all of the explicit information from the source language into the explicit information in the target language, it could sound foreign, unnatural, or perhaps even unintelligent if the target language would not make that information explicit. Instead, it is best to leave that kind of information implicit in the target language.

Examples from the Bible

> **And** Abimelech came to the tower and fought against it and drew near to the door of the tower **to burn it with fire**. (Judges 9:52 ESV)

In Biblical Hebrew, it is normal to start most sentences with a conjunction such as “and” to show the connection between sentences. In English, it is not natural to do so, it is quite tiresome for the English reader, and it gives the impression that the author is uneducated. In English, it is best to leave the idea of connection between sentences implicit in most cases and not translate the conjunction explicitly.

In Biblical Hebrew, it is normal to say that something was burned with fire. In English, the idea of fire is included in the action of burning, and so it is unnatural to state both ideas explicitly. It is enough to say that something was burned and leave the idea of fire implicit.

> But the centurion **answered and said**, “Lord, I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof” (Matthew 8:8a ULT)

In the biblical languages, it was normal to introduce direct speech with two verbs of speaking. One verb indicated the action, and the other introduced the words of the speaker. English

speakers do not do this, so it is very unnatural and confusing to use two verbs. For the English speaker, the idea of speaking is included in the idea of answering. Using two verbs in English implies two separate speeches, rather than just one. So in English, it is better to use only one verb of speaking.

Translation Strategies

(1) If the explicit information of the source language sounds natural in the target language, then translate it as explicit information.
(2) If the explicit information does not sound natural in the target language or seems unnecessary or confusing, leave the explicit information implicit. Only do this if the reader can understand this information from the context. You can test this by asking the reader a question about the passage.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the explicit information of the source language sounds natural in the target language, then translate it as explicit information.

- There would be no change to the text using this strategy, so no examples are given here.

(2) If the explicit information does not sound natural in the target language or seems unnecessary or confusing, make the explicit information implicit. Only do this if the reader can understand this information from the context. You can test this by asking the reader a question about the passage.

> **And** Abimelech came to the tower and fought against it and drew near to the door of the tower **to burn it with fire**. (Judges 9:52 ESV)
>
> > Abimelech came to the tower and fought against it,
> > and he approached the door of the tower **to burn it**.
> > (Or) … **to set it on fire**.

In English, it is clear that the action of this verse follows the action of the previous verse without the use of the connector “and” at the beginning, so it was omitted. Also, the words “with fire” were left out, because this information is communicated implicitly by the word “burn.” An alternative translation for “to burn it” is “to set it on fire.” It is not natural in

English to use both “burn” and “fire,” so the English translator should choose only one of them. You can test if the readers understood the implicit information by asking, “How would the door burn?” If they knew it was by fire, then they have understood the implicit information. Or, if you chose the second option, you could ask, “What happens to a door that is set on fire?” If the readers answer, “It burns,” then they have understood the implicit information.

> But the centurion **answered and said**, “Lord, I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof” (Matthew 8:8a ULT)
>
> > The centurion **answered**, “Lord, I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof”

In English, the information that the centurion responded by speaking is included in the verb “answered,” so the verb “said” can be left implicit. You can test if the readers understood the implicit information by asking, “How did the centurion answer?” If they knew it was by speaking, then they have understood the implicit information.

> **He opened his mouth** and taught them, saying, (Matthew 5:2 ULT)
>
> > **He began to** teach them, saying, (Or) He taught them, saying,

In English, it would be very strange to include the information that Jesus opened his mouth when he spoke. That information is included in the verbs “taught” and “saying,” so that phrase can be omitted and that information left implicit. However, “he opened his mouth” is an idiom that indicates the beginning of a speech, so that information may be included, or it may also be left implicit.

Genesis References:

1:14; 1:22; 1:26; 2:19; 2:20; 3:8; 6:7; 9:2; 12:13; 13:16; 16:3; 38:1

Merism

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

> "I am **the alpha and the omega**," says the Lord God, "the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty." (Revelation 1:8 ULT)
>
> I am **the alpha and the omega**, **the first and the last**, **the beginning and the end**. (Revelation 22:13, ULT)

Alpha and omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

> … I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth** …, (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples From the Bible

> **From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This bolded phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means "everywhere."

> He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The bolded phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

(1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

> I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)
>
> > I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything**.

> **From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)
>
> > **In all places**, people should praise Yahweh’s name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

> I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

> I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth**.

> He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)
>
> > He will bless **all those** who honor him, regardless of whether they are **young or old**.

Genesis References:

13:17; 19:4; 19:11; 31:24

Metaphor

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say, “The girl I love is a red rose.”

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer’s task is to understand in what way they are alike.

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about “the girl I love.” This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and “a red rose.” The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker’s **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison** (**Idea**) between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a "passive" metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being "active." Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these "dead metaphors." Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms "table **leg**," "family **tree**," "book **leaf**" (meaning a page in a book), or the word "crane" (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word "hand" to represent "power," using the word "face" to represent "presence," and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were "clothing."

Patterned Pairs of Concepts Acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction "up" (the Image) often represents the concepts of "more" or "better" (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as "The price of gasoline is going **up**," "A **highly** intelligent man," and also the opposite kind of idea: "The temperature is going **down**," and "I am feeling very **low**."

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world's languages because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- "Turn the heat **up**." More is spoken of as up.

- “Let us **go ahead** with our debate.” Doing what was planned is spoken of as walking or advancing.
- “You **defend** your theory well.” Argument is spoken of as war.
- “A **flow** of words.” Words are spoken of as liquids.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see **Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns** and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. Metaphors make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

> But for you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings. (Malachi 4:2a ULT)

Here, God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

> And he said to them, “Go and tell that fox …” (Luke 13:32a ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or

as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors require the translator's special care to make a correct translation. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

> Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus, misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so, not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.

- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples From the Bible

> Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1q ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you," the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshiped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

> Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay**. **You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are "we" and "you," and the Image(s) are "clay" and "potter." The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter's clay and "us" is that **neither the clay nor God's people have a right to complain about what they are becoming**.

> Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees**." The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, "It is because we did not take bread." (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said "yeast," they thought he was talking about bread, but "yeast" was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as." See Simile.
(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
(8) If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

> Then, see, one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **fell at his feet**. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

> > Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him**.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

> But Jesus said to them, "He wrote this commandment to you because of your **hardness of heart.**" (Mark 10:5 ULT)
>
> > It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law.

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

> Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we **are the clay.** You **are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)
>
> > And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

> Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14b ULT)
>
> > Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick**.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

> Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **clay**. You are our **potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)
>
> > "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood**. You are our **carver**; and we all are the work of your hand."
> > "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string**. You are the **weaver**; and we all are the work of your hand."

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

> Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

> > Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised.
> > May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

> Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the
> > rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**.
> > May the God of my salvation be exalted.
>
> Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14 ULT)
>
> > Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight**
> > **against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks**
> > **against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

> I will make you to become **fishers of men**. (Mark 1:17b ULT)
>
> > I will make you to become **people who gather men**.
> > Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see **Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns**.

Genesis References:

1:29; 1:31; 3:22; 4:14; 6:13; 7:11; 9:9; 10:1; 11:6; 12:11; 12:19; 15:1; 16:2; 16:6; 16:12; 16:14; 17:4; 18:27; 19:19; 24:13; 27:40; 45:8; 48:15; 48:22; 49:21; 49:24

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

> … and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from every sin. (1 John 1:7b ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

> And he took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not familiar with metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples From the Bible

> The Lord God will give to him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. “Throne” is a metonym for “kingly authority,” “kingship,” or “reign.” This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

> Then immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64a ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

> Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

The word “wrath” or “anger” is a metonym for “punishment.” God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

(2) Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

> And he took the cup in the same way after the supper, saying, “**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.” (Luke 22:20 ULT)

> > He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying,
> > "**The wine in this cup** is the new covenant in my
> > blood, which is poured out for you."

This verse also contains a second metonym: The cup, (representing the wine it contains) also represents the new covenant made with the blood Christ shed for us.

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

> The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)
>
> > "The Lord God will give him **the kingly authority** of
> > his father, David."
> > or:
> > "The Lord God will **make him king** like his ancestor,
> > King David."
>
> Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)
>
> > "Who warned you to flee from God's coming
> > **punishment**?"

To learn about some common metonymies, see **Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies** 🔗.

Genesis References:

3:6; 3:17; 4:16; 4:23; 6:11; 6:12; 6:13; 9:11; 9:13; 9:25; 9:27; 10:25; 12:1; 12:3; 12:6; 14:11; 16:2; 18:5; 18:18; 18:20; 19:31; 20:13; 21:23; 22:6; 22:18; 24:60; 26:5; 26:18; 27:8; 27:13; 27:22; 27:28; 27:28; 27:37; 27:39; 27:40; 27:43; 28:14; 28:20; 28:21; 31:30; 32:11; 35:5; 39:5; 41:30; 41:33; 41:34; 41:36; 41:40; 41:40; 41:55; 41:57; 42:22; 45:2; 45:8; 45:21; 46:3; 46:4; 47:13; 47:14; 49:7; 49:10; 49:25; 50:4; 50:8

Nominal Adjectives

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

> **The rich man** had huge numbers of flocks and herds. (2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man.”

> **He will not be rich**; his wealth will not last. (Job 15:29a ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He.”

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

> **The rich** must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15b ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich,” and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

Examples From the Bible

> The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

"The righteous" here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

> Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

"The meek" here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

> The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)
>
> > The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **righteous people**.

> Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)
>
> > Blessed are **people who are meek**.

Genesis References:

18:26; 19:34

Numbers

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words (“five”) or as numerals (“5”). Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000), or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

> Abram was **86** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

> That day about **3,000** of the people died. (Exodus 32:28b ULT)

Here the number three thousand (3,000) is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples From the Bible

> When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **800** years. He became the father

> of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, 800, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

> Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands.** (Genesis 24:60b ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

(1) Write numbers using numerals.
(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.
(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.
(4) Combine words for large numbers.
(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

> Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14a ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

> > I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.

> > I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

> > I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

> > I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand**

> > talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

> I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents)**, **ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST) use words for the numbers one through ten and use numerals for all numbers above ten.

> When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Genesis References:

5:3; 5:12; 7:4; 7:6; 7:24

Oath Formulas

An oath is a solemn promise that someone makes to another person to do something or to solemnly testify that something is true. The oath includes the idea that a bad thing will happen if the person making the oath does not do the thing promised or if what the person says is not true.

Description

There are two types of oath in the Bible. We can call the first type a “Promise” oath, and the second type a “Truth” oath.

Promise Oath

In this type of oath, the person saying it is promising to do something. As a guarantee that the person taking the oath will do what he promises, the person calls on God to witness the oath and to punish him severely if he does not do the thing promised. A complete Promise oath has four parts, but some of them are often left unspoken and only implied:

1. Calling on God to witness the oath and judge the person making it
2. Making the promise (may be implied as the opposite of the violation)
3. Telling what would be a violation of the oath (may be implied as the opposite of the promise)
4. Saying what punishment God would do if the person violates the oath (often implied)

Truth Oath

In this type of oath, the person saying it is affirming that what he is saying is true, and he guarantees that it is true by naming the life of God. Sometimes the person will not name God directly but will instead name something holy that is associated with God, such as the temple. In some situations, a person might name a revered person, such as a king. The implication is that if the person’s statement proves to be false, that person will lose any relationship to God or to the revered person. These oaths have three parts, but the third part is implied and not stated:

1. Naming something holy, usually the life of God or of someone who is revered.
2. Making the statement.
3. Implied: The speaker and hearers of the oath understand that the speaker forfeits his relationship to God or to the revered person if his statement is false.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue:

People in some cultures may not be familiar with the practice of taking oaths, and so they may not understand what the people in the Bible are doing. In many languages, people would not take an oath the way that people did in the Bible, and so they might not recognize that the person is taking an oath. In the Old Testament, people often did not speak one or more parts of the oath, leaving those parts implied. The part that was most often left unspoken was the part that would tell what would happen if they break the oath. People believed that spoken words have power, and that speaking the part about punishment might cause the punishment to happen, so they often left that part to be understood silently. Because of these things, people might think that the person in the Bible is not making a real oath or they may not understand what the verse is talking about at all.

Examples From the Bible

Promise Oath

> "I raise my hand to Yahweh, God Most High, the possessor of heaven and earth, if from a thread even to the strap of a sandal, or if I take from anything that {belongs} to you, so that you will not say, 'I made Abram rich.' (Genesis 14:22-23 ULT)

In the verse above, Abram describes a symbolic action (raising his hand to Yahweh) to signal that he is taking an oath and calling on Yahweh as witness and judge. He says what would violate his oath (thus promising to do the opposite). Then he leaves out the part that would describe how Yahweh would punish him if he fails to do what he is promising.

> May Yahweh do thus to me, and thus may he add, if death separates between me and between you. (Ruth 1:17 ULT)

Ruth calls on Yahweh and includes the part about Yahweh punishing her, says what the violation would be (thus promising to do the opposite), but does not say what the punishment would be.

> And Saul said, “Thus may God do and thus may he add, for dying you will die, Jonathan.” (1 Samuel 14:44 ULT)

Saul takes an oath that Jonathan will die, but does not specifically say whom God would punish, what the punishment would be, or what the person would do that would violate the oath and bring about God’s punishment.

Truth Oath

> But indeed, the life of Yahweh and the life of yourself, that between me and between death is like a step!” (1 Samuel 20:3)

Here David uses a truth oath to convince Jonathan that Saul does indeed want to kill David. David says this because Jonathan had been trying to assure David that he had nothing to fear from Saul. But Jonathan knows that David holds both Yahweh’s and Jonathan’s life as sacred, and so this oath convinces Jonathan that David truly believes what he is saying.

> The life of your soul, my lord, I {am} the woman having stationed herself with you in this {place} to pray to Yahweh. (1 Samuel 1:26 ULT)

Hannah is speaking to the priest Eli. She demonstrates that she holds the priest’s life as sacred by swearing by it that what she is saying is true.

And Elijah said, “The life of Yahweh of armies, before whom I stand, that I will appear before him today.” (1 Kings 18:15 ULT)

Elijah uses this oath to convince Obadiah to announce his arrival to Ahab. Obadiah knows that Elijah would never break his relationship to Yahweh.

Combination oath

> The life of Pharaoh, if you leave from this {place} without your youngest brother coming here. (Genesis 42:15)

Joseph is speaking to his brothers as an Egyptian official, and so he swears by the life of Pharaoh rather than by the life of the God of the Hebrews. Joseph combines the two types of oaths here by using a conditional "if" statement (part 3 of the "Promise" oath). He leaves unstated the "then" part of the oath which would be either a punishment from Pharoah (as with a Promise oath) or a breaking of relationship with Pharaoh (as with a "Truth" oath) if this conditional statement proves true.

Translation Strategies

If people who speak your language would recognize the oath as it is in the ULT, consider translating it in its current form. If not, consider using the following strategies.

(1) Add in the missing parts so that people recognize it as an oath.
(2) If oaths are unfamiliar, add a short explanation of what an oath is.
(3) Put the oath into a form that would be natural in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add in the missing parts so that people recognize it as an oath.

> "I raise my hand to Yahweh, God Most High, the possessor of heaven and earth, if from a thread even to the strap of a sandal, or if I take from anything that {belongs} to you, so that you will not say, 'I made Abram rich.' (Genesis 14:22-23 ULT)

"I raise my hand to Yahweh, God Most High, the possessor of heaven and earth, **and ask him to punish me severely** if from a thread even to the strap of a sandal, or if I take from anything that {belongs} to you, so that you will not say, 'I made Abram rich.'

> And Saul said, "Thus may God do and thus may he add, for dying you will die, Jonathan." (1 Samuel 14:44 ULT)

And Saul said, "May God **punish me severely** and may he add **even more punishment if I do not kill you**, for dying you will die, Jonathan."

> But indeed, the life of Yahweh and the life of yourself, that between me and between death is like a step! (1 Samuel 20:3)

But indeed, **I swear by** Yahweh's life and **by** the life of yourself that **it is true that** between me and death is like a step!

> The life of Pharaoh, if you leave from this {place} without your youngest brother coming here. (Genesis 42:15)

I swear by the life of Pharaoh, if you leave from this {place} without your youngest brother coming here, **may Pharaoh punish me severely**.

(2) If oaths are unfamiliar, add a short explanation of what an oath is.

> May Yahweh do thus to me, and thus may he add, if death separates between me and between you. (Ruth 1:17 ULT)

Then Ruth called on Yahweh to enforce her promise: "May Yahweh do thus to me, and thus may he add, if death separates between me and between you."

> But indeed, the life of Yahweh and the life of yourself, that between me and between death is like a step! (1 Samuel 20:3)

Then David made a statement to Jonathan to convince him that he truly believed that he was in danger: "But indeed, **I forfeit my relationship to** Yahweh and **to you** yourself **if it is not true** that between me and death is like a step!"

(3) Put the oath into a form that would be natural in your language.

> "I raise my hand to Yahweh, God Most High, the possessor of heaven and earth, if from a thread even to the strap of a sandal, or if I take from

> anything that {belongs} to you, so that you will not say, ‘I made Abram rich.’ (Genesis 14:22-23 ULT)

“**I solemnly swear before** Yahweh, God Most High, the possessor of heaven and earth, **that I will not take** from a thread even to the strap of a sandal, or from anything that {belongs} to you, **so help me God**, so that you will not say, ‘I made Abram rich.’

> May Yahweh do thus to me, and thus may he add, if death separates between me and between you. (Ruth 1:17 ULT)

May Yahweh **strike me dead right where I stand** if death separates between me and between you.

> But indeed, the life of Yahweh and the life of yourself, that between me and between death is like a step! (1 Samuel 20:3)

But indeed, **before** Yahweh and **before you** yourself, **I swear** that between me and death is like a step!

Genesis References:

14:22; 21:23

Ordinal Numbers

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

> And God has indeed appointed some in the church, **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then miracles. (1 Corinthians 12:28a ULT)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have "-th" added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples From the Bible

> The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim … the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

> You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

(1) Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
(2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

> The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim … the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

> There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim … **another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.
>
> There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim … **the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

> A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **the first** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the second** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the third** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. **The fourth** river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)
>
> > A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The **last** river is the Euphrates.

(2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

> The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim … the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

> They cast **24** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib,
> Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim … Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Genesis References:

1:5; 1:8; 1:13; 1:19; 1:23; 1:31; 2:2; 7:11; 8:13; 8:14

Parallelism

Description

Parallelism is a poetic device in which two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. The following are some of the different kinds of parallelism.

- The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is called synonymous parallelism.
- The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
- The second completes what is said in the first.
- The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

This article will only discuss synonymous parallelism, the kind in which the two parallel phrases mean the same thing, because that is the kind that presents a problem for translation. Note that we use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term "doublet" for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

In the poetry of the original languages, synonymous parallelism has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and raises it above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or, since it is in the Bible, they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it would be confusing, rather than beautiful. They would not understand that the repetition of the idea in different words serves to emphasize the idea.

Examples From the Bible

> Your word is a lamp to my feet
>
> and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live. That is the single idea. The words "lamp" and "light" are similar in meaning because they refer to light. The words "my feet" and "my path" are related because they refer to a person walking. Walking is a metaphor for living.

> You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
>
> you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything. "To rule over" is the same idea as putting things "under his feet," and "the works of your [God's] hands" is the same idea as "all things."

> Yahweh sees everything a person does
>
> and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The first phrase and the second phrase mean the same thing. There are three ideas that are the same between these two phrases. "Sees" corresponds to "watches," "everything…does" corresponds to "all the paths…takes," and "a person" corresponds to "he."

> Praise Yahweh, all you nations;
>
> exalt him, all you peoples! (Psalm 117:1 ULT)

Both parts of this verse tell people everywhere to praise Yahweh. The words 'Praise' and 'exalt' mean the same thing. The words 'Yahweh' and 'him' refer to the same person. The terms 'all you nations' and 'all you peoples' refer to the same people.

> For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people,

> and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2b ULT)

The two parts of this verse say that Yahweh has a serious disagreement with his people, Israel. These are not two different disagreements or two different groups of people.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

(1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like “very,” “completely,” or “all.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

> Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

> > Until now you have deceived me with your lies.
>
> Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”

> > Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.
>
> For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT)

This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

> > For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

> Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.
>
> You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)
>
> > You have certainly made him to rule over everything that you have created.

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

> Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)
>
> > All you have done is lie to me.
>
> Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.

Genesis References:

1:27; 3:16; 4:23; 6:11; 6:19; 8:17; 8:22; 9:6; 14:23; 16:12; 21:1; 22:2; 22:12; 26:5; 27:29; 27:29; 31:1; 49:6; 49:7; 49:7; 49:10; 49:11; 49:11; 49:13; 49:15

Personification

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

> Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1a ULT)

Or sin:

> Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT)

People also use personification because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things such as wealth as if they were relationships between people.

> You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples From the Bible

> You cannot **serve** God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

> Does not Wisdom **call** out? Does not Understanding **raise her voice**? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they were woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

> **Sin crouches** at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

> > **Sin** is at your door, **waiting to attack you.**

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

> Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — This can be translated with the word “as.”
>
> > Sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does as it waits to attack a person.**.

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

> Even the **winds and the sea obey him**. (Matthew 8:27b ULT) — The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.
>
> > He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

NOTE: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Genesis References:

1:16; 1:18; 4:7; 4:10; 4:11; 19:19; 30:33; 31:40; 44:34

Poetry

Description

Poetry is one of the ways that people use the words and sounds of their language to make their speech and writing more beautiful and to express strong emotion. Through poetry, people can communicate deeper emotion than they can through simple non-poetic forms. Poetry gives more weight and elegance to statements of truth, such as proverbs, and is also easier to remember than ordinary speech.

In poetry we commonly find:

- many figures of speech such as **Apostrophe** 🔗
- arrangements of clauses into particular patterns such as:
  - parallel lines (See Parallelism)
  - acrostics (beginning lines with successive letters of the alphabet)
  - chiasms (in which the first line relates to the last line, the second to the next-to-last line, etc.):

> You should not give what is holy to the dogs,
>
> > and should not throw your pearls in front of the pigs.
> >
> > Otherwise they will trample them under their feet,
>
> and having turned, they might tear you to pieces. (Matt 7:6 ULT)

- repetition of some or all of a line:

> Praise him, all his angels; praise him, all his hosts. Praise him, sun and moon; praise him, all you shining stars. (Psalm 148:2-3 ULT)

- lines of similar length:

> Listen to my call to you,

> Yahweh; think about my groanings.
>
> Listen to the sound of my call, my King and my God,
>
> for it is to you that I pray. (Psalm 5:1-2 ULT)

• the same sound used at the end or at the beginning of two or more lines:

> "Twinkle, twinkle little **star**. How I wonder what you **are**." (from an English rhyme)

• the same sound repeated many times:

> "Peter, Peter, pumpkin eater" (from an English rhyme)

• The same root word used as both a verb and as a noun:

> Your old men will **dream dreams** (Joel 2:28 ULT)

> Yahweh,…**light lightning** and scatter them (Psalm 144:5-6 ULT)

We also find:

• old words and expressions
• dramatic imagery
• different use of grammar — including:
  ◦ incomplete sentences
  ◦ lack of connective words

Some places to look for poetry in your language

1. Songs, particularly old songs or songs used in children's games
2. Religious ceremony or chants of priests or witch doctors
3. Prayers, blessings, and curses
4. Old legends

Elegant or fancy speech

Elegant or fancy speech is similar to poetry in that it uses beautiful language, but it does not use all of the language's features of poetry, and it does not use them as much as poetry does. Popular speakers in the language often use elegant speech, and this is probably the easiest source of text to study to find out what makes speech elegant in your language.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue:

- Different languages use poetry for different things. If a poetic form would not communicate the same meaning in your language, you may need to write it without the poetry.
- Different languages use different poetic devices. A poetic device that conveys elegance or emotion in a biblical language may be confusing or misunderstood in another language.
- In some languages, using poetry for a particular part of the Bible would make it much more powerful.

Examples From the Bible

The Bible uses poetry for songs, teaching, and prophecy. Almost all of the books of the Old Testament have poetry in them and many of the books are completely made up of poetry.

> … for you saw my affliction; you knew the distress of my soul. (Psalm 31:7b ULT)

This example of Parallelism has two lines that mean the same thing.

> Yahweh, judge the nations; vindicate me, Yahweh, because I am righteous and innocent, Most High. (Psalm 7:8 ULT)

This example of parallelism shows the contrast between what David wants God to do to him and what he wants God to do to the unrighteous nations. (See Parallelism.)

> Keep your servant also from arrogant sins; let them not rule over me. (Psalm 19:13a ULT)

This example of personification speaks of sins as if they could rule over a person. (See Personification.)

> Oh, give thanks to Yahweh; for he is good,
>
> for his covenant faithfulness endures forever. Oh, give thanks to the God of gods, for his cov
>
> (Psalm 136:1-3 ULT)

This example repeats the phrases “give thanks” and “his covenant faithfulness endures forever.”

Translation Strategies

If the style of poetry that is used in the source text would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other ways of translating it.

(1) Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry.
(2) Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.
(3) Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

If you use poetry it may be more beautiful.

If you use ordinary speech it may be more clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

> Blessed is the man who does not walk in the advice of the wicked, or stand in the pathway with sinners, or sit in the assembly of mockers. But his delight is in the law of Yahweh, and on his law he meditates day and night. (Psalm 1:1-2 ULT)

The following are examples of how people might translate Psalm 1:1-2.

(1) Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry. (The style in this example has words that sound similar at the end of each line.)

> > “Happy is the person not encouraged **to sin**,
> > Disrespect for God he will not **begin**, To those who

> > laugh at God he is **no kin.** God is his constant **delight**, He does what God says **is right**, He thinks of it all day **and night**."

(2) Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.

> > This is the kind of person who is truly blessed: the one who does not follow the advice of wicked people nor stop along the road to speak with sinners nor join the gathering of those who mock God. Rather, he takes great joy in Yahweh's law, and he meditates on it day and night.

(3) Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

> > The people who do not listen to the advice of bad people are really happy. They do not spend time with people who continually do evil things or join with those who do not respect God. Instead, they love to obey Yahweh's law, and they think about it all the time.

Genesis References:

1:20; 2:4; 8:17; 8:17; 46:1; 49:1

Politeness

Description

People say certain things, or say things in a certain way, in order to communicate that they respect the people to whom they are speaking. We can refer to this as speaking politely. The ways of speaking politely are generally agreed on by those who share a culture. People also use polite ways of speaking to avoid offending others. This can be especially important if the person being addressed has an influential or powerful position.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue:

Every language has ways to communicate politeness to other speakers of that language, but different languages do not communicate politeness in the same ways. A phrase that is polite in one language may be offensive in another language, or it may simply be confusing. Translators need to recognize politeness in the Bible and communicate the same polite meaning using the appropriate form of politeness in the target language.

Examples From the Bible

> **do not trouble yourself** (Luke 7:6 ULT)

The centurion sent friends to give Jesus this polite message that Jesus should not come to his house.

> **I ask you, have me excused** (Luke 14:18 ULT)

In this culture, this was a polite formula for declining a social invitation.

> **May I find favor in your eyes, my lord**, since you have comforted me, and since you have spoken to the heart of **your female servant**. (Ruth 2:13 ULT)

Ruth uses several phrases of politeness as she talks to Boaz. **May I find favor in your eyes** is an idiomatic phrase that communicates that Boaz is in a high position, **my lord** is an honorific

form of address, and she refers to herself humbly as **your female servant** even though she is not actually one of his servants.

> **Please** let **a little** water be brought… Let me also bring **a bit** of bread (Genesis 18:4-5 ULT)

Abraham describes his generosity as something small in order to be polite. This was a way to communicate to his guests that they were not imposing on him at all. Abraham also uses a word translated as "please" to make his request more polite.

> Then he brought him outside and said, "**Please** look at the heavens and count the stars…" (Genesis 15:5)

In the above example, God is speaking to Abram, inviting him to look at the stars. He also uses the word translated as "please." God has no need to be polite, but this communicates respect for Abram.

Honorifics

A specific category of politeness is the way that people address other people who are important, powerful, or worthy of honor in other ways. We can refer to this form of politeness as using honorific language. Honorific language can be in the form of special titles or, in some languages, special forms of the words used.

> to the **most excellent** Governor Felix (Acts 23:26 ULT)

The expression **most excellent** was an honorific title by which people addressed Roman government officials.

> **O king, live forever!** (Daniel 5:10 ULT)

This was the polite and respectful way to address the king before saying anything else to him.

Politeness under other categories

People often use language that is non-standard or figurative to communicate politeness. In these cases, there will be a Translation Note under the category of the figure of speech rather than under the category of politeness. The Note will discuss the issue of the figurative speech and then also mention that this is being used to be polite. For example, the following verses will have Translation Notes under the categories given rather than under politeness.

Metaphor

> Men, **brothers and fathers**, hear my defense to you now. (Acts 22:1 ULT)

Paul is using the word **brothers** to refer to his fellow Israelites. He is using the word **fathers** to refer either to Jewish leaders who may be present or to Jewish men who are older than he is. In both cases he is speaking respectfully.

Idiom

> **I beg of you**, about whom is the prophet saying this…? (Acts 8:34 ULT)

The Ethiopian official is using an idiomatic expression as a polite way to introduce a request.

Symbolic action

> **And having fallen down**, they worshiped him (Matt 2:11 ULT)

The act of kneeling down before someone showed deep respect for the person.

Speaking of oneself in the third person

> please do not pass by **your servant**. (Gen 18:3 ULT)

Abraham refers to himself as **your servant** here in order to show respect to his guests.

Euphemism

> And having said this, **he fell asleep**. (Acts 7:60 ULT)

Luke is describing the death of Stephen when he says **he fell asleep**. He is using this polite way of referring to something unpleasant to avoid offending his readers.

Other Uses of the Imperative

> **You pray to the Lord for me**, so that nothing of which you have spoken may come upon me. (Acts 8:24 ULT)

The verb **pray** is an imperative, but it communicates a polite request rather than a command.

Rhetorical question

> **Lord, are you not concerned that my sister has left me alone to serve**? (Luke 10:40 ULT)

Martha is complaining that Jesus is allowing Mary to sit listening to him when there is so much work to do. But Martha respects Jesus, so she uses the question form to make her complaint more polite.

Translation Strategies

If the phrase used in the ULT would be natural and be a polite expression in your language, consider using it. If not, use the strategy below.

(1) Use a phrase that would be both natural and polite in your language for this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that would be both natural and polite in your language for this situation.

> **do not trouble yourself** (Luke 7:6 ULT)

I do not want you to go out of your way

or

Please do not bother

> **I ask you, have me excused** (Luke 14:18 ULT)

Please accept my apology for not being able to attend

> **May I find favor in your eyes, my lord**, since you have comforted me, and since you have spoken to the heart of **your female servant**. (Ruth 2:13 ULT)

You are too kind to me, good sir; you have comforted me and you have spoken to my heart **even though I am not worthy of it**.

> Please let **a little** water be brought… Let me also bring **a bit** of bread (Genesis 18:4-5 ULT)

I have **plenty** of water… I also have **plenty** of food

> "**Please** look at the heavens and count the stars…" (Genesis 15:5)

"Look up at the heavens, **if you will**, and count the stars…"

> **O king, live forever!** (Daniel 5:10 ULT)

Your majesty, **I wish you well**!

> **I beg of you**, about whom is the prophet saying this…? (Acts 8:34 ULT)

Please tell me, about whom is the prophet saying this…?

> **You pray to the Lord for me**, so that nothing of which you have spoken may come upon me. (Acts 8:24 ULT)

Please pray to the Lord for me so that nothing of which you have spoken may come upon me.
or
I ask you to pray to the Lord for me so that nothing of which you have spoken may come upon me.

> **Lord, are you not concerned that my sister has left me alone to serve**? (Luke 10:40 ULT)

Lord, it seems as if you do not care that my sister has left me alone to serve.

Genesis References:

14:1; 14:21; 14:24; 15:2; 15:3; 18:3; 18:12; 19:2; 19:2; 19:2; 19:7; 19:18; 19:31; 20:3; 20:4; 20:18; 22:1; 22:11; 23:4; 23:6; 23:11; 23:13; 23:15; 23:15; 24:14; 24:18; 24:33; 24:43; 24:43; 24:46; 24:51; 24:55; 26:16; 27:1; 27:25; 27:31; 29:7; 29:25; 30:25; 31:35; 31:46; 32:4; 32:5; 32:18; 32:24; 32:29; 33:14; 33:15; 40:14; 40:17; 41:9; 41:16; 42:2; 42:7; 42:10; 43:20; 43:28; 44:7; 44:9; 44:9; 44:16; 44:18; 44:18; 44:21; 44:24; 44:30; 44:33; 46:31; 46:34; 47:3; 47:8; 47:18

Possession

Description

In English, the grammatical form that commonly indicates possession is also used to indicate a variety of relationships between people and objects or people and other people. In English, that grammatical relationship is shown by using the word "**of**," by using **an apostrophe and the letter "s"**, or by using a **possessive pronoun**. The following examples are different ways to indicate that my grandfather owns a house.

- the house **of** my grandfather
- my grandfather **'s** house
- **his** house

Possession is used in Hebrew, Greek, and English for a variety of situations. Here are a few common situations that it is used for.

- Ownership — Someone owns something.
- The clothes of me - my clothes — The clothes that I own
- Social Relationship — Someone has some kind of social relationship with another.
- The mother of John — John's mother - the woman who gave birth to John, or the woman who cared for John
- A teacher of Israel - Israel's teacher — a person who teaches Israel
- Association — A particular thing is associated with a particular person, place, or thing.
- The sickness of David - David's sickness — the sickness that David is experiencing
- the fear of the Lord — the fear that is appropriate for a human being to have when relating to the Lord
- Contents — Something has something in it.
- a bag of clothes — a bag that has clothes in it, or a bag that is full of clothes
- Part and whole: One thing is part of another.
- my head — the head that is part of my body
- the roof of a house — the roof that is part of a house

In some languages there is a special form of possession, termed **inalienable possession.** This form of possession is used for things that cannot be removed from you, as opposed to things you could lose. In the examples above, *my head* and *my mother* are examples of inalienable possession (at least in some languages), while *my clothes* or *my teacher* would be alienably possessed. What may be considered alienable vs. inalienable may differ by language. In languages that mark the difference, the expression of inalienable possession and alienable possession will be different.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between two ideas represented by the two nouns when one is in the grammatical relationship of possessing the other.
- Some languages do not use grammatical possession for all of the situations that your source text Bible might use it for.

Examples From the Bible

Ownership — In the example below, the son owned the money.

> The younger son … wasted his wealth by living recklessly. (Luke 15:13b)

Social Relationship — In the example below, the disciples were people who learned from John.

> Then **the disciples of John** came to him. (Matthew 9:14a ULT)

Association — In the example below, the gospel is the message associated with Paul because he preaches it.

> Remember Jesus Christ, raised from the dead, from the seed of David, according to **my gospel**, (2 Timothy 2:8 ULT)

Material — In the example below, the material used for making the crowns was gold.

> On their heads were something like **crowns of gold.** (Revelation 9:7b)

Contents — In the example below, the cup has water in it.

> For whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink … will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

Part of a whole — In the example below, the door was a part of the palace.

> But Uriah slept at **the door of the king's palace.** (2 Samuel 11:9a ULT)

Part of a group — In the example below, "us" refers to the whole group and "each one" refers to the individual members.

> Now to **each one of us** grace has been given according to the measure of the gift of Christ. (Ephesians 4:7 ULT)

Events and Possession

Sometimes one or both of the nouns is an abstract noun that refers to an event or action. In the examples below, the abstract nouns are in **bold** print. These are just some of the relationships that are possible between two nouns when one of them refers to an event.

Subject — Sometimes the word after "of" tells who would do the action named by the first noun. In the example below, **John baptized people**.

> The **baptism of John**, was it from heaven or from men? Answer me. (Mark 11:30)

In the example below, **Christ loves us**.

> Who will separate us from the **love of Christ**? (Romans 8:35)

Object — Sometimes the word after "of" tells who or what something would happen to. In the example below, **people love money**.

> For the **love of money** is a root of all kinds of evil. (1 Timothy 6:10a ULT)

Instrument — Sometimes the word after "of" tells how something would happen. In the example below, God would **punish people by sending enemies to attack them with swords**.

> Then be afraid of the sword, because wrath brings **the punishment of the sword**. (Job 19:29a ULT)

Representation — In the example below, John was baptizing people who were repenting of their sins. They were being baptized to show that they were repenting. Their **baptism represented their repentance**.

> John came, baptizing in the wilderness and preaching **a baptism of repentance** for the forgiveness of sins. (Mark 1:4 ULT)

Strategies for learning what the relationship is between the two nouns

(1) Read the surrounding verses to see if they help you to understand the relationship between the two nouns.
(2) Read the verse in the UST. Sometimes it shows the relationship clearly.
(3) See what the notes say about it.

Translation Strategies

If possession would be a natural way to show a particular relationship between two nouns, consider using it. If it would be strange or hard to understand, consider these.

(1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.
(2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.
(3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.

> On their heads were something like **crowns of gold.** (Revelation 9:7b)
>
> > "On their heads were **gold crowns**"

(2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.

> Whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink … will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)
>
> > Whoever gives you a **cup that has water in it** to drink … will not lose his reward.
>
> Wealth is worthless on **the day of wrath.** (Proverbs 11:4a ULT)
>
> > Wealth is worthless on **the day when God shows his wrath**.
> > or:
> > Wealth is worthless on the **day when God punishes people because of his wrath**.

(3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb. (In the example below, there are two possession relationships, "punishment of Yahweh" and "your God.")

> Notice that I am not speaking to your children, who have not known or seen **the punishment of Yahweh your God.** (Deuteronomy 11:2a ULT)
>
> > Notice that I am not speaking to your children who have not known or seen **how Yahweh, the God whom you worship, punished the people of Egypt**.
>
> You will only observe and see the **punishment of the wicked**. (Psalms 91:8 ULT)

> > You will only observe and see **how Yahweh punishes the wicked**.
>
> You will receive **the gift of the Holy Spirit**. (Acts 2:38b ULT)
>
> > You will receive the **Holy Spirit, whom God will give to you**.

Genesis References:

24:12; 24:27; 24:42; 24:48; 27:13

Pronouns

Description

Pronouns are words that people might use instead of using a noun when referring to someone or something. Some examples are “I,” “you,” “he,” “it,” “this,” “that,” “himself,” “someone,” and others. The personal pronoun is the most common type of pronoun.

Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show whether the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may provide. Other types of pronouns may give some of this information, as well.

Person

- First Person — The speaker and possibly others (I, me, we, us)
    - Exclusive and Inclusive “We”
- Second Person — The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
    - **Forms of You**
- Third Person — Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

Number

- Singular — one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural — more than one (we, you, they)
    - **Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups**
- Dual — two (Some languages have pronouns specifically for two people or two things.)

Gender

- Masculine — he
- Feminine — she
- Neuter — it

Relationship to other words in the sentence

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

Other Types of pronouns

Reflexive Pronouns refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

- John saw **himself** in the mirror. The word "himself" refers to John.

Interrogative Pronouns are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: what, which, who, whom, whose.

- **Who** built the house?

Relative Pronouns mark a relative clause. The relative pronouns, who, whom, whose, which and that give more information about a noun in the main part of the sentence. Sometimes, the relative adverbs when and where can also be used as relative pronouns.

- I saw the house **that John built**. The clause "that John built" tells which house I saw.
- I saw the man **who built the house**. The clause "who built the house" tells which man I saw.

Demonstrative Pronouns are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else. The demonstrative pronouns are: this, these, that, and those.

- Have you seen **this** here?
- Who is **that** over there?

Indefinite pronouns are used when no particular noun is being referred to. The indefinite pronouns are: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, and some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used in a generic way to do this: you, they, he or it.

- He does not want to talk to **anyone**.
- **Someone** fixed it, but I do not know who.
- **They** say that **you** should not wake a sleeping dog.

In the last example, "they" and "you" just refer to people in general.

Genesis References:

19:16; 19:34

Pronouns — When to Use Them

Description

When we talk or write, we use pronouns to refer to people or things without always having to repeat the noun or name. Usually, the first time we refer to someone in a story, we use a descriptive phrase or a name. The next time we might refer to that person with a simple noun or by name. After that we might refer to him simply with a pronoun as long as we think that our listeners will be able to understand easily to whom the pronoun refers.

> Now there was **a man from thePharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. **This man** came to Jesus at night. Jesus replied and said to **him** … (John 3:1, 2a, 3a ULT)

In John 3, Nicodemus is first referred to with noun phrases and his name. Then he is referred to with the noun phrase “this man.” Then he is referred to with the pronoun “him.”

Each language has its rules and exceptions to this usual way of referring to people and things.

- In some languages, the first time something is referred to in a paragraph or chapter, it is referred to with a noun rather than a pronoun.
- The main character is the person whom a story is about. In some languages, after a main character is introduced in a story, he is usually referred to with a pronoun. Some languages have special pronouns that refer only to the main character.
- In some languages, marking on the verb helps people know who the subject is. (See Verbs 🔗.) In some of these languages, listeners rely on this marking to help them understand who the subject is. Speakers will use a pronoun, noun phrase, or proper name only when they want either to emphasize or to clarify who the subject is.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- If translators use a pronoun at the wrong time for their language, readers might not know about whom the writer is talking.
- If translators too frequently refer to a main character by name, listeners of some languages might not realize that the person is a main character, or they might think that there is a new character with the same name.
- If translators use pronouns, nouns, or names at the wrong time, people might think that there is some special emphasis on the person or thing to which it refers.

Examples From the Bible

The example below occurs at the beginning of a chapter. In some languages it might not be clear to whom the pronouns refer.

> Then Jesus entered into the synagogue again, and there was a man who had a withered hand. Some people watched **him** closely to see if **he** would heal **him** on the Sabbath so that they might accuse **him**. (Mark 3:1-2 ULT)

In the example below, two men are named in the first sentence. It might not be clear whom "he" in the second sentence refers to.

> Now after some days had passed, **King Agrippa** and Bernice came down to Caesarea to pay their respects to **Festus**. After **he** had been there for many days, Festus presented to the king the things concerning Paul. (Acts 25:13-14)

Jesus is the main character of the book of Matthew, but in the verses below he is referred to four times by name. This may lead speakers of some languages to think that Jesus is not the main character. Or it might lead them to think that there is more than one person named Jesus in this story. Or it might lead them to think that there is some kind of emphasis on him, even though there is no emphasis.

> At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **Jesus**, "See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath." But **Jesus** said to them, "Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?" Then **Jesus** left from there and went into their synagogue. (Matthew 12:1-3,9 ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) If it would not be clear to your readers to whom or to what a pronoun refers, use a name or a noun.

(2) If repeating a noun or name would lead people to think that a main character is not a main character, or that the writer is talking about more than one person with that name, or that there is some kind of emphasis on someone when there is no emphasis, use a pronoun instead.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If it would not be clear to your readers to whom or to what a pronoun refers, use a name or a noun.

> Again **he** walked into the synagogue, and a man with a withered hand was there. Some Pharisees watched **him** to see if **he** would heal the man on the Sabbath. (Mark 3:1-2)
>
> > Again **Jesus** walked into the synagogue, and a man with a withered hand was there. Some Pharisees watched **Jesus** to see if **he** would heal the man on the Sabbath.

(2) If repeating a noun or name would lead people to think that a main character is not a main character, or that the writer is talking about more than one person with that name, or that there is some kind of emphasis on someone when there is no emphasis, use a pronoun instead.

> At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **Jesus**, “See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath.” But **Jesus** said to them, “Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?” Then **Jesus** left from there and went into their synagogue. (Matthew 12:1-3,9 ULT)

This may be translated as:

> At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **him**, “See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath.” But **he** said to them, “Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?” Then **he** left from there and went into their synagogue.

Genesis References:

1:7; 1:22; 1:27; 2:3; 2:7; 2:21; 3:1; 3:8; 3:8; 3:11; 3:15; 4:10; 4:17; 5:7; 5:10; 5:13; 5:13; 5:16; 5:19; 5:26; 6:4; 6:6; 6:9; 8:1; 8:9; 9:7; 9:9; 9:18; 9:23; 9:26; 10:25; 11:2; 11:6; 11:7; 11:11; 11:13; 11:17; 11:21; 11:25; 11:25; 11:31; 12:7; 12:8; 12:15; 12:16; 12:20; 13:11; 13:11; 14:4; 14:11; 14:17; 14:20; 15:5; 15:5; 15:6; 15:6; 15:8; 15:13; 15:13; 16:6; 16:12; 17:22; 18:7; 18:8; 18:8; 18:10; 18:19; 18:29; 18:30; 18:30; 19:5; 19:9; 19:13; 19:21; 19:28; 19:32; 19:33; 20:7; 20:8; 20:9; 20:14; 21:4; 22:1; 22:7; 22:10; 22:12; 24:23; 24:29; 24:30; 24:32; 24:58; 26:2; 29:12; 29:23; 29:25; 30:6; 30:39; 31:21; 31:44; 31:49; 32:2; 32:25; 32:25; 32:25; 33:5; 33:11; 33:13; 35:18; 37:2; 37:4; 39:4; 39:4; 39:14; 39:16; 39:19; 39:20; 40:7; 41:6; 41:36; 42:24; 43:2; 43:2; 44:12; 44:13; 45:1; 45:24; 46:28; 47:3; 47:6; 47:30; 47:31; 47:31; 48:1; 48:9; 48:10; 48:10; 48:12; 48:19; 49:17; 49:19; 49:23; 50:23

Quotations and Quote Margins

Description

When saying that someone said something, we often tell who spoke, whom they spoke to, and what they said. The information about who spoke and whom they spoke to is called the quote margin. What the person said is the quotation. (This is also called a quote.) In some languages the quote margin may come first, last, or even in between two parts of the quotation.

The quote margins are bolded below.

- **She said**, “The food is ready. Come and eat.”
- “The food is ready. Come and eat,” **she said**.
- “The food is ready,” **she said.** “Come and eat.”

Also in some languages, the quote margin may have more than one verb meaning “said.”

> But his mother **answered** and **said**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.” (Luke 1:60 ULT)

When writing that someone said something, some languages put the quote (what was said) in quotation marks called inverted commas (“ ”). Some languages use other symbols around the quotation, such as these angle quote marks (« »), or something else.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to put the quote margin where it is most clear and natural in their language.
- Translators need to decide whether they want the quote margin to have one or two verbs meaning “said.”
- Translators need to decide which marks to use around the quotation.

Examples From the Bible

Quote margin before the quote

> **Then Zechariah said to the angel**, “How will I know this? For I am an old man and my wife is advanced in her days.” (Luke 1:18 ULT)

> Then tax collectors also came to be baptized, and **they said to him**, “Teacher, what should we do?” (Luke 3:12 ULT)

> So **he said to them**, “Collect nothing more than what you have been ordered.” (Luke 3:13 ULT)

Quote margin after the quote

> Yahweh relented concerning this. “It will not happen,” **he said**. (Amos 7:3 ULT)

Quote margin between two parts of the quote

> “I will hide my face from them,” **he said,** “and I will see what their end will be; for they are a perverse generation, children who are unfaithful.” (Deuteronomy 32:20 ULT)

> For look, days are coming—**this is Yahweh’s declaration**—when I will restore the fortunes of my people, Israel and Judah. (Jeremiah 30:3a ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) Decide where to put the quote margin.
(2) Decide whether to use one or two words meaning “said.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Decide where to put the quote margin.

> **He said**, “Therefore, those among you who are leaders should go down with us. If there is something wrong with the man, let them accuse him.” (Acts 25:5 ULT)
>
> > “Therefore, those who can should go there with us,” **he said**. “If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”
>
> > “Therefore, those who can should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him,” **he said**.
>
> > “Therefore, those who can,” **he said**, “should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”

(2) Decide whether to use one or two words meaning “said.”

> But his mother **answered and said**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.” (Luke 1:60 ULT)
>
> > But his mother **replied**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.”
>
> > But his mother **said**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.”
>
> > But his mother **answered** like this. “No. Rather, he will be called John,” she **said**.

Genesis References:

1:3; 1:6; 1:9; 1:11; 1:14; 1:20; 1:26; 1:28; 1:29; 3:2; 3:4; 3:9; 3:10; 3:13; 4:6; 4:9; 4:9; 4:13; 4:15; 8:15; 9:1; 9:8; 9:12; 9:17; 9:25; 12:7; 12:18; 14:19; 15:2; 15:3; 16:6; 16:8; 16:10; 17:3; 17:9; 17:18; 17:19; 18:5; 18:9; 18:9; 18:10; 18:13; 18:17; 18:20; 18:23; 18:26; 18:28; 18:29; 18:29; 18:31; 18:31; 18:32; 18:32; 19:7; 19:9; 19:12; 19:17; 20:4; 20:9; 20:10; 20:13; 20:15; 21:7; 21:24; 22:2; 22:7; 22:7; 22:8; 22:11; 23:5; 23:8; 23:10; 23:10; 23:13; 23:14; 24:5; 24:6; 24:12; 24:17; 24:19; 24:23; 24:24; 24:25; 24:31; 24:33; 24:33; 24:34; 24:37; 24:47; 24:57; 24:60; 25:22; 25:23; 25:30; 25:31; 25:32; 26:2; 26:7; 26:9; 26:9; 26:10; 26:16; 26:28; 26:32; 27:1; 27:2; 27:11; 27:13; 27:18; 27:19; 27:24; 27:25; 27:26; 27:31; 27:32; 27:34; 27:35; 27:38; 27:39; 27:41; 27:42; 27:46; 28:1; 29:4; 29:4; 29:5; 29:6; 29:7; 29:8; 29:14; 29:15; 29:18; 29:26; 29:34; 30:1; 30:3; 30:6; 30:15; 30:16; 30:18; 30:27; 30:28; 30:29; 30:31; 30:31; 30:34; 31:3; 31:11; 31:12; 31:14; 31:26; 31:31; 31:35; 31:36; 31:43; 31:48; 32:4; 32:6; 32:9; 32:26; 32:26; 32:27; 32:29; 33:5; 33:8; 33:8; 33:9; 33:10; 33:15; 35:1; 35:10; 35:11; 37:10; 37:17; 37:21; 37:22; 37:30; 38:18; 38:22; 38:23; 38:24; 38:24; 38:25; 38:29; 39:7; 39:8; 39:12; 39:14; 39:17; 40:8; 40:8; 40:16; 40:18; 41:9; 41:15; 41:16; 41:17; 41:25; 41:41; 42:2; 42:12; 42:13; 42:14; 42:28; 42:37; 42:38; 43:3; 43:20; 43:29; 44:4; 44:7; 44:15; 44:16; 44:17; 44:20; 45:17;

46:34; 47:4; 47:9; 47:15; 47:16; 47:18; 47:23; 47:25; 48:3; 48:4; 48:5; 48:20; 48:21; 49:29; 50:2

Quotes within Quotes

Description

A quotation may have a quote within it, and quotes that are inside of other quotes can also have quotes within them. When a quote has quotes within it, we say there are "layers" of quotation, and each of the quotes is a layer. When there are many layers of quotes inside of quotes, it can be hard for listeners and readers to know who is saying what. Some languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes to make it easier.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

1. When there is a quote within a quote, the listener needs to know who the pronouns refer to. For example: if a quote that is inside a quote has the word "I," the listener needs to know whether "I" refers to the speaker of the inner quote or the outer quote.
2. Some languages make this clear by using different kinds of quotes when there are quotes within quotes. They may use direct quotes for some and indirect quotes for others.
3. Some languages do not use indirect quotes.

Examples From the Bible

A quotation with only one layer

> But Paul said, "I, however, was indeed born a citizen." (Acts 22:28b ULT)

Quotations with two layers

> Jesus answered and said to them, "Be careful that no one leads you astray. For many will come in my name. They will say, 'I am the Christ,' and will lead many astray." (Matthew 24:4-5 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to his disciples. The second layer is what other people will say.

> Jesus answered, "You say that I am a king." (John 18:37b ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to Pilate. The second layer is what Pilate said about Jesus.

A quotation with three layers

> Abraham said, "… I said to her, 'You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, **"He is my brother."**'" (Genesis 20:11a, 13 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Abraham responded to Abimelech. The second layer is what Abraham had told his wife. The third layer is what he wanted his wife to say. (We have bolded the third layer.)

A quotation with four layers

> They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: **'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'**"'" (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

The outermost layer is what the messengers said to the king. The second layer is what the man who had met the messengers told them. The third is what that man wanted the messengers to say to the king. The fourth is what Yahweh said. (We have bolded the fourth layer.)

Translation Strategies

Some languages use only direct quotes. Other languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes. In those languages it might sound strange and perhaps even be confusing if there are many layers of direct quotes.

(1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes.
(2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. (See Direct and Indirect Quotations.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes. In the example below we have bolded the indirect quotes in the ULT and the quotes that we have changed to direct quotes below it.

> Festus presented to the king the things concerning Paul, saying, “There is a certain man was left here as a prisoner by Felix. So I am uncertain about the things concerning this matter. I asked **if he was willing to go to Jerusalem and there to be judged concerning these things**. But when Paul appealed **to keep him in custody for the decision of the emperor**, I ordered him **to be held in custody until when I could send him to Caesar**.” (Acts 25:14b, 20-21 ULT)
>
> > Festus presented Paul’s case to the king. He said, “A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner. I was uncertain about the things concerning this matter. I asked him, **‘Will you go to Jerusalem to be judged there concerning these things?’** But when Paul said, **‘I want to be kept in custody for the emperor’s decision,’** I told the guard, **‘Keep him in custody until when I can send him to Caesar.’**”

(2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. In English the word “that” can come before indirect quotes. It is bolded in the examples below. The pronouns that changed because of the indirect quote are also bolded.

> And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying, “I have heard the complaints of the sons of Israel. Speak to them and say, ‘During the evenings you will eat meat, and in the morning you will be satisfied with bread. And you will know that I am Yahweh your God.’” (Exodus 16:11-12 ULT)
>
> > And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying, “I have heard the complaints of the sons of Israel. Tell them **that** during the evenings **they** will eat meat, and in the

> morning **they** will be satisfied with bread. And **they** will know that I am Yahweh **their** God.’”

They said to him, “A man came to meet us who said to us, ‘Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, “Yahweh says this: ‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’”’” (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

> They told him **that** a man had come to meet **them** who said to **them**, “Go back to the king who sent you, and tell him **that** Yahweh says this: ‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’”

Genesis References:

3:1; 3:3; 3:3; 3:11; 3:17; 14:23; 18:13; 20:2; 20:5; 20:11; 20:13; 24:7; 24:14; 24:43; 24:44; 24:45; 26:9; 26:9; 27:7; 31:29; 32:4; 32:5; 32:9; 32:9; 32:12; 32:17; 32:17; 32:20; 42:14; 42:22; 42:31; 42:32; 43:3; 43:5; 43:7; 44:19; 44:20; 44:21; 44:22; 44:22; 44:23; 44:23; 44:28; 44:32; 45:9; 45:9; 45:17; 45:18; 45:18; 45:19; 45:19; 45:20; 45:20; 46:31; 46:32; 46:33

Reduplication

Description

Writers and speakers in the Bible sometimes repeat the same word or forms of the same word. This is to increase the intensity, completeness, or certainty of the action that the word describes, or to otherwise increase the emotional impact of the word.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages may not repeat words to increase the intensity, completeness, or certainty of an action, or they may not repeat words to increase the level of emotion that they communicate. In these cases, repeated words may appear to be a mistake or may indicate that the speaker is unable to speak correctly.

Examples From the Bible

To the woman he said, “To multiply I will multiply your pain and your childbearing…” (Genesis 3:16 ULT)

The speaker is repeating forms of the verb “multiply” in order to intensify the idea of multiplying.

To be circumcised he must be circumcised (Genesis 17:13)

The speaker is repeating forms of the verb “circumcise” in order to increase the certainty that this must happen.

Begin, possess, to possess his land (Deuteronomy 2:31 ULT)

Moses repeats the word “possess” to emphasize the completeness of the action of possessing the land.

My God, my God, why have you forsaken me? (Psalm 22:1 ULT)

The writer repeats “my God” to increase the level of emotion that he wants to communicate; he is crying out desperately to God.

“Fallen, fallen has Babylon the Great…” (Revelation 14:8 ULT)

The angel repeats the word “fallen” in order to show deep emotion in this lament for the ruined city of Babylon.

Translation Strategies

If repeating words would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, then do the same in your translation. If not, here are some other options:

(1) If your language would not repeat words to increase the intensity, completeness, or certainty of an action, then use a different word or phrase to add that meaning.
(2) If your language would not repeat words to increase emotional intensity, then use an emotional word to do that.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language would not repeat words to increase the intensity, completeness, or certainty of an action, then use a different word or phrase to add that meaning.

> To the woman he said, “To multiply I will multiply your pain and your childbearing…” (Genesis 3:16 ULT)

> > To the woman he said, “I will greatly multiply your pain and your childbearing…”

> To be circumcised he must be circumcised (Genesis 17:13 ULT)

> > He certainly must be circumcised
> > Or By all means, he must be circumcised

> Begin, possess, to possess his land (Deuteronomy 2:31 ULT)

> > Begin to completely possess his land
> > Or Enter his land until you completely possess it

(2) If your language would not repeat words to increase emotional intensity, then use an emotional word to do that.

> My God, my God, why have you forsaken me? (Psalm 22:1 ULT)

> > You are my God! Why, then, have you forsaken me?
> > Or My God, oh, why have you forsaken me?

> “Fallen, fallen has Babylon the Great…” (Revelation 14:8 ULT)

> > “Alas, Babylon the Great has fallen!

Genesis References:

3:16; 17:13; 27:41; 30:26; 44:5

Reflexive Pronouns

Description

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. English does this by using reflexive pronouns. These are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: “myself,” “yourself,” “himself,” “herself,” “itself,” “ourselves,” “yourselves,” and “themselves.” In English, these pronouns can also be used to emphasize the person to whom they refer. Other languages may have other ways to do both of these things.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. For those languages, translators will need to know how to translate the English reflexive pronouns.
- The reflexive pronouns in English also have other functions.

Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- To show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- To show that someone or something did something alone or was alone

Examples From the Bible

To show that the same person or thing fills two different roles in a sentence

> If **I** testify about **myself**, my testimony is not true. (John 5:31 ULT)

> Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and **many** went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to purify **themselves**. (John 11:55 ULT)

To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence

> **Jesus himself** was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2 ULT)

> So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, just as he was, in the boat. There also were other boats with him. Then a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full of water. But **Jesus himself** was in the stern, asleep on the cushion. (Mark 4:36-38a ULT)

> Then Festus answered that Paul was being held at Caesarea but that **he himself** was about to depart soon. (Acts 25:4 ULT)

To show that someone did something alone, or that something was alone

> When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15 ULT)

> He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. **It** was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

(1) In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
(2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

(3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
(4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like "alone."
(5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) In some languages people modify the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.

> If I testify about **myself**, my testimony is not true. (John 5:31)
>
> > "If I **self-testify**, my testimony is not true."

> Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to **purify themselves**. (John 11:55)
>
> > "Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out from country before the Passover in order to **self-purify**."

(2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

> **He himself** took our sickness and bore our diseases. (Matthew 8:17 ULT)

> "**The one who** took our sickness and bore our diseases **was Jesus**."

Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2)

> "**It was not Jesus who** was baptizing, but his disciples."

(3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.

But Jesus said this to test Philip, for he **himself** knew what he was going to do. (John 6:6)

> But Jesus said this to test Philip, for, **as for him, he** knew what he was going to do.

Then Festus answered that Paul was being held at Caesarea but that **he himself** was about to depart soon. (Acts 25:4 ULT)

> Then Festus answered that Paul was being held at Caesarea but that, **for his part, he** was about to depart soon.

(4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like "alone."

> When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15)
>
> > "When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again **alone** up the mountain."

(5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

> He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)
>
> > "He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up and lying **in it's own place**."

Genesis References:

6:17

Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

> But those who stood by said, "**Are you insulting the high priest of God?**"(Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking if he was insulting God's high priest. Rather, they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purposes: of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples From the Bible

> Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

Jezebel used the question above **to remind** King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order **to rebuke** him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that, since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

> **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above **to remind** his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then **rebuked** his people for forgetting him who is so much greater than those things.

> But you, why do you judge your brother? And you also, why do you despise your brother? (Romans 14:10 ULT)

Paul used these rhetorical questions **to rebuke** the Romans for doing what they should not do.

> Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

Job used the question above **to show deep emotion**. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

> And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord would come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above **to show how surprised and happy she was** that the mother of her Lord came to her.

> Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above **to remind** the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on **to teach them** about God with his next rhetorical question:

> Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question **to teach** the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

> **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden … (Luke 13:18b-19a ULT)

Jesus used the question above **to introduce what he was going to talk about**. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to express surprise or other emotion? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

(1) Add the answer after the question.
(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the answer after the question.

> **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)
>
> > Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? **Of course not!** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

> Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)
>
> > Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed. (Luke 13:18-19a ULT)

> **This is what the kingdom of God is like.** It is like a mustard seed …

Are you insulting the high priest of God? (Acts 23:4b ULT) (Acts 23:4 ULT)

> **You should not insult God's high priest!**

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

> **I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!**

And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

> **How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!**

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

> **Do you not still rule** the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)
>
> > You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the orignal speaker communicated in his.

> Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)
>
> > If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone**?

> **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils**? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)
>
> > **What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils**? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

> But you, **why do you judge your brother**? And you also, **why do you despise your brother**? (Romans 14:10 ULT)

> > Do you think it is good to judge your brother? Do you think it is good to despise your brother?

Genesis References:

3:13; 4:6; 4:7; 4:9; 4:10; 12:18; 12:18; 12:19; 13:9; 15:2; 16:13; 17:17; 17:17; 18:12; 18:13; 18:14; 18:17; 18:23; 18:23; 18:24; 18:24; 18:25; 19:20; 20:4; 20:4; 20:5; 20:9; 20:9; 20:9; 21:7; 24:31; 25:32; 26:10; 26:27; 27:36; 27:37; 27:45; 27:46; 29:15; 29:25; 29:25; 30:2; 30:15; 30:30; 31:14; 31:15; 31:26; 31:27; 31:36; 31:36; 31:43; 32:29; 33:15; 34:23; 34:31; 37:8; 37:10; 37:10; 37:13; 37:26; 37:30; 38:29; 39:9; 40:8; 41:38; 42:1; 42:22; 43:6; 43:7; 43:29; 44:4; 44:5; 44:7; 44:8; 44:15; 44:16; 44:16; 44:34; 47:15; 47:19; 49:9; 50:19

Simile

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. The simile focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than.”

> When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were troubled and discouraged, **like sheep not having a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as the serpents** and harmless **as the doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep; Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

> For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.

- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with both of the items being compared.

Examples From the Bible

> Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier** of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

> Just as the lightning flashing from a place under the sky shines to another place under the sky, so will the Son of Man be. (Luke 17:24b ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But in context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves.** (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
>
> > See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.
>
> For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)
>
> > For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**.

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.
>
> > See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**.

> How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)
>
> > How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!
>
> If you have faith **as a grain of mustard** … (Matthew 17:20)
>
> > If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT)
>
> > See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.
>
> How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)
>
> > How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Genesis References:

19:28; 22:17; 25:25; 26:4; 28:14; 31:26; 33:10; 49:4; 49:9

Symbolic Action

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their heads up and down to mean “yes” or turn their heads from side to side to mean “no.” Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In other cultures it means “yes.”

In the Bible, people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible, we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture today.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples From the Bible

> And behold, a man came whose name was Jairus, and he was a ruler of the synagogue. And **falling at the feet of Jesus**, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

> Look, I am standing at the door and am knocking. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come into him and will eat with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.
(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

> And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)
>
> > Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

> Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

> > Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

> And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)
>
> > Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

> Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)
>
> > Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

> And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT) — Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

> Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) — Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

> > Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

Genesis References:

14:22; 17:3; 17:17; 19:1; 22:5; 23:7; 23:12; 24:2; 24:9; 24:26; 24:48; 24:52; 24:65; 28:18; 31:13; 31:54; 33:3; 33:6; 35:14; 37:7; 37:9; 37:29; 37:34; 41:42; 41:43; 41:43; 42:6; 43:26; 43:28; 44:13; 44:14; 47:29; 47:31; 48:12; 48:14; 49:8; 50:18

Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

> **My soul** magnifies the Lord. (Luke 1:46b ULT)

Mary was was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

> So **the Pharisees** said to him, “Look, why are they doing that which is not lawful?” (Mark 2:24a ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example From the Bible

> Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished.
> (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

> "**My soul** magnifies the Lord." (Luke 1:46b ULT)
>
> > "**I** magnify the Lord."
>
> So **the Pharisees** said to him … (Mark 2:24a ULT)
>
> > **Arepresentative of the Pharisees** said to him …
>
> Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)
>
> > I looked on all the deeds that **I** had accomplished

Genesis References:

3:18; 6:12; 6:13; 7:15; 7:16; 8:4; 8:17; 9:5; 9:5; 9:11; 15:2; 16:12; 17:13; 19:20; 21:12; 21:14; 27:4; 27:19; 31:17; 31:42; 31:54; 33:10; 34:30; 36:7; 37:21; 37:22; 41:54; 42:21; 43:31; 44:8; 44:26; 45:12; 45:12; 46:5; 46:30; 47:12; 47:15; 47:19; 49:6; 49:20; 49:26

Textual Variants

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook one word for another that looked like it. Occasionally, they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles include some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT New Testament on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. The ULT Old Testament is based on the Westminster Leningrad Codex, which is considered to be the best representative of the ancient copies. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes or in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

Examples From the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

> [10] See that you do not despise one of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. [11] [1]
>
> [1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11: **For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.**

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest copies. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

> 53 [Then everyone went to his own house … 11 She said, “No one, Lord.” Jesus said, “Neither do I condemn you. Go and sin no more.”] [2]
>
> [2] Some ancient manuscripts include John 7:53-8:11

Psalm 100:3 ULT follows the Westminster Leningrad Codex. It says:

> Know that Yahweh, he {is} God; he, he made us, **and not we**,

There are some other ancient copies that say:

> Know that Yahweh, he {is} God; he, he made us, **and we are his**,

There is an unfoldingWord® Translation Note at that place to tell the translator about this other reading and that either one is an acceptable choice.

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include a footnote about the alternate reading such as the one that the ULT provides or one in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.

> [14] He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. [15] There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” [16] [1]

> [1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

> [14] He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. [15] There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” [16] [1]
>
> > [1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

> [14] He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. [15]There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man. [16] If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” [1]
>
> > [1] Some ancient manuscripts do not include verse 16.

Genesis References:

4:8; 4:15; 47:21; 49:26

Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: “How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?”

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

> They said to him, “We have nothing here except five loaves of **bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God’s commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples From the Bible

> So I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals**. (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

> Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

> They offered him wine mixed with **myrrh**, but he did not drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

> … to him who made **great lights** … (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

> Your sins … will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.
(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

> Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are inwardly they are **ravenous wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)
>
> > Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **inwardly they are very hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See Translating Metaphors.)

> "We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)
>
> > We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish.

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

> Your sins … will be white like **snow.** (Isaiah 1:18b ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.
>
> > Your sins … will be white like **milk**.
> >
> > Your sins … will be white like **the moon**.

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

> Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) — People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."
>
> > Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

> "We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT) — People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
>
> > We have nothing here except five loaves of **baked crushed seed bread** and two fish.

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

> I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)
>
> > I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **wild dogs**

> "We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)
>
> > We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked food** and two fish.

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

> … to him who made **great lights** … (Psalm 136:7a ULT)
>
> > to him who made **the sun and the moon**

Genesis References:

1:6; 1:8; 2:12; 2:12; 6:14; 8:7; 10:30; 12:6; 15:11; 18:1; 21:33; 24:20; 25:34; 28:12; 30:14; 30:37; 34:12; 35:4; 37:3; 38:18; 41:42; 41:42; 43:11; 43:11; 43:11; 50:2

Verse Bridges

Description

In some cases, you will see in the unfoldingWord® Simplified Text (UST) that two or more verse numbers are combined, such as 17-18. This is called a verse bridge. This means that the information in the verses was rearranged so that the story or message could be more easily understood.

> 29 These were the clans of the Horites: Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, and Anah,
> 30 Dishon, Ezer, Dishan: these are clans of the Horites, according to their clan lists in the land of Seir. (Genesis 36:29-30 ULT)

> 29-30 The people groups who were descendants of Hor lived in Seir land. The names of the people groups are Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah, Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan. (Genesis 36:29-30 UST)

In the ULT text, verses 29 and 30 are separate, and the information about the people living in Seir is at the end of verse 30. In the UST text, the verses are joined, and the information about them living in Seir is at the beginning. For many languages, this is a more logical order of information.

Examples From the Bible

Where the UST has a verse bridge, the ULT will have separate verses.

> 4-5 Yahweh our God will bless you in the land that he is giving to you. If you obey Yahweh our God and obey all the commandments that I am giving to you today, there will not be any poor people among you. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 UST)

> 4 However, there should be no poor among you (for Yahweh will surely bless you in the land that he gives you as an inheritance to possess), 5 if

> only you diligently listen to the voice of Yahweh your God, to keep all these commandments that I am commanding you today. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 ULT)

> 16-17 But Yahweh said to him, “I will not permit you to eat the fruit of the tree that will enable you to know what actions are good to do and what actions are evil to do. If you eat any fruit from that tree, on the day you eat it you will surely die. But I will permit you to eat the fruit of any of the other trees in the park.” (Genesis 2:16-17 UST)

> 16 Yahweh God commanded the man, saying, “From every tree in the garden you may freely eat. 17 But from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you may not eat, for on the day that you eat from it, you will surely die.” (Genesis 2:16-17 ULT)

Translation Strategies

Order the information in a way that will be clear to your readers. If the order of information is clear as it is in the ULT, then use that order. But if the order is confusing or gives the wrong meaning, then change the order so that it is more clear.

(1) If you put information from one verse before information from an earlier verse, then combine the verses and put a hyphen between the two verse numbers.

See how to mark verses in translationStudio.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If information from one verse is put before information from an earlier verse, then combine the verses and put the verse numbers before the first verse with a hyphen between them.

> 2 You must select three cities for yourself in the middle of your land that Yahweh your God is giving you to possess. 3 You must build a road and divide the borders of your land into three parts, the land that Yahweh your

> God is causing you to inherit, so that everyone who kills another person may flee there. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3 ULT)
>
> 2-3 You must divide into three parts the land that he is giving to you. Then select a city in each part. You must make good roads in order that people can get to those cities easily. Someone who kills another person can escape to one of those cities to be safe. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3 UST)

Genesis References:

3:3; 20:18; 24:30; 36:7; 40:2

When Masculine Words Include Women

In the Bible, sometimes the words “men,” “brothers,” and “sons” refer only to men. At other times, those words include both men and women. In those places where the writer meant both men and women, you (the translator) need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can also be used in a more general way to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says “brothers” when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can be used in a more general way for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or a woman. In the example below, the pronoun is “his,” but it is not limited to males.

> A wise son makes **his** father rejoice
> but a foolish son brings grief to **his** mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- In some cultures words like “man,” “brother,” and “son” can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation in a more general way, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
- In some cultures, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

Translation Principles

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that it applies to both.

Examples From the Bible

> Now we want you to know, **brothers**, the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia. (2 Corinthians 8:1 ULT)

This verse is addressing the believers in Corinth, not only men, but **men and women**.

> Then said Jesus to his disciples, “If anyone wants to follow me, **he** must deny **himself**, take up **his** cross, and follow me.” (Matthew 16:24 ULT)

Jesus was not speaking only of men, but of **men and women**.

Caution: Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The words below are specifically about men.

> Moses said, ‘If **someone** dies, not having children, **hisbrother** must marry **his** wife and have children for **hisbrother**.’ (Matthew 22:24 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like “man,” “brother,” and “he” can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

(1) Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
(2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
(3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.

> The wise **man** dies just like the fool dies. (Ecclesiastes 2:16b ULT)
>
> > “The wise **person** dies just like the fool dies.”
> > “Wise **people** die just like fools die.”

(2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.

> For we do not want you to be uninformed, **brothers**, about the troubles that happened to us in Asia. (2 Corinthians 1:8) — Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.
>
> > "For we do not want you to be uninformed, **brothers and sisters**, about the troubles that happened to us in Asia."

(3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

> "If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me." (Matthew 16:24 ULT)

English speakers can change the masculine singular pronouns, "he," "himself," and "his" to plural pronouns that do not mark gender, "they," "themselves," and "their" in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.

> > "If **people** want to follow me, **they** must deny **themselves**, take up **their** cross, and follow me."

Genesis References:

3:22; 3:23; 13:13



unfoldingWord® Translation Words - Genesis

v88

Abel

Definition:

Abel was Adam and Eve's second son. He was Cain's younger brother.

- Abel was a shepherd.
- Abel sacrificed some of his animals as an offering to God.
- God was pleased with Abel and his offerings.
- Adam and Eve's firstborn son Cain murdered Abel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Cain, sacrifice, shepherd)

Bible References:

- Genesis 4:2
- Genesis 4:9
- **Hebrews 12:24**
- **Luke 11:49-51**
- **Matthew 23:35**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1893, G00060

Genesis References:

4:2; 4:4; 4:8; 4:9; 4:25

Abimelech

Definition:

Abimelech was a Philistine king over the region of Gerar during the time when Abraham and Isaac were living in the land of Canaan.

- Abraham deceived King Abimelech by telling him that Sarah was his sister rather than his wife.
- Abraham and Abimelech made an agreement regarding ownership of wells at Beersheba.
- Many years later, Isaac also deceived Abimelech and the other men of Gerar by saying that Rebekah was his sister, not his wife.
- King Abimelech rebuked Abraham, and later Isaac, for lying to him.
- Another man by the name of Abimelech was a son of Gideon and a brother of Jotham. While some translations use a slightly different spelling of his name to make it clear that he is a different person from King Abimelech, we recommend translating the same Hebrew name consistently for each person who had that name.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Beersheba, Gerar, Gideon, Jotham, Philistines)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 11:21
- Genesis 20:3
- Genesis 20:5
- Genesis 21:22
- Genesis 26:11
- Judges 9:54

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0040

Genesis References:

20:2; 20:3; 20:4; 20:8; 20:9; 20:10; 20:14; 20:15; 20:17; 20:18; 21:22; 21:25; 21:26; 21:27; 21:29; 21:32; 26:1; 26:8; 26:9; 26:10; 26:11; 26:16; 26:26

abomination, abominable

Definition:

The term “abomination” is used to refer to something that causes disgust or extreme dislike.

- The Egyptians considered the Hebrew people to be an “abomination.” This means that the Egyptians disliked the Hebrews and did not want to associate with them or be near them.
- Some of the things that the Bible calls “an abomination to Yahweh” include lying, pride, sacrificing humans, worship of idols, murder, and sexual sins such as adultery and homosexual acts.
- In teaching his disciples about the end times, Jesus referred to a prophecy by the prophet Daniel about an “abomination of desolation” that would be set up as a rebellion against God, defiling his place of worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “abomination” could also be translated by “something God hates” or “something disgusting” or “disgusting practice” or “very evil action.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase “is an abomination to” could include “is greatly hated by” or “is disgusting to” or “is totally unacceptable to” or “causes deep disgust.”
- The phrase “abomination of desolation” could be translated as “defiling object that causes people to be greatly harmed” or “disgusting thing that causes great sorrow.”

(See also: **adultery**, **desecrate**, desolate, false god, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- **Ezra 9:1-2**
- Genesis 46:34
- **Isaiah 1:13**
- **Matthew 24:15**
- **Proverbs 26:25**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0887, H6292, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, G09460

Genesis References:

43:32; 46:34

Abraham, Abram

Definition:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Chaldea, Sarah, Isaac)

Bible References:

- Galatians 3:8
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:4
- Genesis 22:2
- James 2:23
- Matthew 1:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 4:6 When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- 5:4 Then God changed **Abram**'s name to **Abraham**, which means "father of many."
- 5:5 About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- 5:6 When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- 6:1 When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.

- 6:4 After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- 21:2 God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0087, H0085, G00110

Genesis References:

11:26; 11:27; 11:29; 11:31; 12:1; 12:4; 12:5; 12:6; 12:7; 12:9; 12:10; 12:14; 12:16; 12:17; 12:18; 13:1; 13:2; 13:4; 13:5; 13:7; 13:8; 13:12; 13:14; 13:18; 14:12; 14:13; 14:14; 14:19; 14:22; 14:23; 15:1; 15:2; 15:3; 15:11; 15:12; 15:13; 15:18; 16:1; 16:2; 16:3; 16:5; 16:6; 16:15; 16:16; 17:1; 17:3; 17:5; 17:9; 17:15; 17:17; 17:18; 17:22; 17:23; 17:24; 17:26; 18:6; 18:7; 18:11; 18:13; 18:16; 18:17; 18:18; 18:19; 18:22; 18:23; 18:27; 18:33; 19:27; 19:29; 20:1; 20:2; 20:9; 20:10; 20:11; 20:14; 20:17; 20:18; 21:2; 21:3; 21:4; 21:5; 21:7; 21:8; 21:9; 21:10; 21:11; 21:12; 21:14; 21:22; 21:24; 21:25; 21:27; 21:28; 21:29; 21:34; 22:1; 22:3; 22:4; 22:5; 22:6; 22:7; 22:8; 22:9; 22:10; 22:11; 22:13; 22:14; 22:15; 22:19; 22:20; 22:23; 23:2; 23:3; 23:5; 23:7; 23:10; 23:12; 23:14; 23:16; 23:18; 23:19; 23:20; 24:1; 24:2; 24:6; 24:9; 24:12; 24:15; 24:27; 24:34; 24:42; 24:48; 24:52; 24:59; 25:1; 25:5; 25:6; 25:7; 25:8; 25:10; 25:11; 25:12; 25:19; 26:1; 26:3; 26:5; 26:15; 26:18; 26:24; 28:4; 28:9; 28:13; 31:42; 31:53; 32:9; 35:12; 35:27; 48:15; 48:16; 49:30; 49:31; 50:13; 50:24

Adam

Definition:

Adam was the first person whom God created. He and his wife Eve were made in the image of God.

- God formed Adam from dirt and breathed life into him.
- Adam's name sounds similar to the Hebrew word for "red dirt" or "ground."
- The name "Adam" is the same as the Old Testament word for "mankind" or "human being."
- All people are descendants of Adam and Eve.
- Adam and Eve disobeyed God. This separated them from God and caused sin and death to come into the world.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: death, descendant, Eve, image of God, life)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 2:14
- Genesis 3:17
- Genesis 5:1
- Genesis 11:5
- Luke 3:38
- Romans 5:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 1:9 Then God said, "Let us make human beings in our image to be like us."
- 1:10 This man's name was **Adam**. God planted a garden where **Adam** could live, and put him there to care for it.
- 1:12 Then God said, "It is not good for man to be alone." But none of the animals could be **Adam's** helper.
- 2:11 And God clothed **Adam** and Eve with animal skins.
- 2:12 So God sent **Adam** and Eve away from the beautiful garden.
- 49:8 When **Adam** and Eve sinned, it affected all of their descendants.
- 50:16 Because **Adam** and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0120, G00760

Genesis References:

1:26; 1:27; 2:5; 2:7; 2:8; 2:15; 2:16; 2:18; 2:19; 2:20; 2:21; 2:22; 2:23; 2:25; 3:8; 3:9; 3:12; 3:17; 3:20; 3:21; 3:22; 3:24; 4:1; 4:25; 5:1; 5:2; 5:3; 5:4; 5:5; 6:1; 6:2; 6:3; 6:4; 6:5; 6:6; 6:7; 7:21; 7:23; 8:21; 9:5; 9:6; 11:5; 16:12

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An “adversary” is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- The term “adversary” may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: **Satan**)

Bible References:

- **1 Timothy 5:14**
- **Isaiah 9:11**
- **Job 6:23**
- **Lamentations 4:12**
- **Luke 12:59**
- **Matthew 13:25**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G04760, G04800, G21890, G21900, G52270

Genesis References:

14:20; 22:17; 24:60; 49:8

afflict, affliction, distress

Definition:

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- Sometimes God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships with the intention for them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to suffer from some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.
- In some Old Testament contexts, the idea of “afflicting oneself” or “afflicting one’s soul” means to abstain from eating food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “afflict” someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- A phrase like “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.”
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See also: **leprosy**, **plague**, **suffer**)

Bible References:

- **2 Thessalonians 1:6**
- **Amos 5:12**
- **Colossians 1:24**
- **Exodus 22:22-24**
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G23460, G23470, G38040

Genesis References:

16:11; 29:32; 31:42; 31:50; 41:52; 43:6

Ai

Definition:

In Old Testament times, Ai was the name of a Canaanite town located just south of Bethel and about 8 km northwest of Jericho.

- After defeating Jericho, Joshua led the Israelites in an attack of Ai. But they were easily defeated because God was not pleased with them.
- An Israelite named Achan had stolen plunder from Jericho, and God ordered that he and his family be killed. Then God helped the Israelites defeat the people of Ai.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethel, Jericho)

Bible References:

- Ezra 2:27-30
- Genesis 12:8-9
- Genesis 13:3-4
- Joshua 7:3
- Joshua 8:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5857

Genesis References:

12:8; 13:3

alien, foreigner, sojourn

Definition:

The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.” To sojourn is to live temporarily as a foreigner.

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- A sojourner is another word for a temporary foreign resident.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 2:17
- Acts 7:29-30
- Deuteronomy 1:15-16
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 17:27
- Luke 17:18
- Matthew 17:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0312, H0628, H0776, H1471, H1481, H1616, H2114, H3937, H4033, H5236, H5237, H6154, H8453, G02410, G02450, G05260, G09150, G18540, G35810, G39270, G39410

Genesis References:

17:12; 17:27; 31:15; 35:4

Almighty

Definition:

The term “Almighty” literally means “all-powerful.” In the Bible, this term always refers to God.

- The titles “the Almighty” or “the Almighty One” refer to God and reveal that he has complete power and authority over everything.
- This term is also used to describe God in the titles “Almighty God” and “God Almighty” and “Lord Almighty” and “Lord God Almighty.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “All-powerful” or “Completely Powerful One” or “God, who is completely powerful.”
- Ways to translate the phrase “Lord God Almighty” could include “God, the Powerful Ruler” or “Powerful Sovereign God” or “Mighty God who is Master over everything.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: God, lord)

Bible References:

- Exodus 6:2-5
- Genesis 17:1
- Genesis 35:11-13
- Job 8:3
- Numbers 24:15-16
- Revelation 1:7-8
- Ruth 1:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7706, G38410

Genesis References:

17:1; 28:3; 35:11; 43:14; 48:3; 49:25

altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, false god, grain offering, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:9
- James 2:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 5:23
- Matthew 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 3:14 After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- 5:8 When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- 13:9 A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- 16:6 He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G10410, G23790

Genesis References:

8:20; 12:7; 12:8; 13:4; 13:18; 22:9; 26:25; 33:20; 35:1; 35:3; 35:7

Amalek, Amalekite

Definition:

The Amalekites were a nomadic people group who lived throughout the southern part of Canaan, from the Negev desert to the country of Arabia. This people group was descended from Amalek, the grandson of Esau.

- The Amalekites were bitter enemies of Israel from the time when Israel first came to live in Canaan.
- Sometimes the term “Amalek” is used figuratively to refer to all the Amalekites. (See: synecdoche)
- In one battle against the Amalekites, when Moses held up his hands, the Israelites were winning. When he got tired and his hands came down, they started losing. So Aaron and Hur helped Moses keep his hands up until the Israelite army had defeated the Amalekites.
- Both King Saul and King David led military expeditions against the Amalekites.
- After one victory over the Amalekites, Saul disobeyed God by keeping some of the plunder and by not killing the Amalekite king as God had commanded him to do.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: **Arabia**, **David**, Esau, Negev, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- **1 Chronicles 4:43**
- **2 Samuel 1:8**
- **Exodus 17:10**
- **Numbers 14:23-25**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6002, H6003

Genesis References:

14:7; 36:12

Ammon, Ammonite

Definition:

The “people of Ammon” or the “Ammonites” were a people group that lived on the east side of the Jordan River across from the Israelites.

- The book of Genesis reports that the Ammonite nation was descended from Ben-ammi, who was the son of Lot by his younger daughter.
- The term “Ammonitess” refers specifically to a female Ammonite. This could also be translated as “Ammonite woman.”
- At one point, the Ammonites hired a prophet named Balaam to curse Israel, but God did not allow him to do it.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: curse, Jordan River, Lot)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 19:1-3
- Ezekiel 25:2
- Genesis 19:38
- Joshua 12:1-2
- Judges 11:27
- Zephaniah 2:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5983, H5984, H5985

Genesis References:

19:38

Amorite

Definition:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who inhabited the land of Canaan and lived on both sides of the Jordan River.

- Their name means “high one,” which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The book of Genesis reports that the Amorites were descended from Canaan, the grandson of Noah.
- The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the “sin of the Amorites,” which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

Bible References:

- Amos 2:9
- Ezekiel 16:3
- Genesis 10:16
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Joshua 9:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 15:7 Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon.
- 15:8 In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them.
- 15:9 God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**.
- 15:10 God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0567

Genesis References:

10:16; 14:7; 14:13; 15:16; 15:21; 48:22

angel, archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term "archangel" refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word "angel" literally means "messenger."
- The term "archangel" literally means "chief messenger." The only angel referred to in the Bible as an "archangel" is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God's authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, "angel of Yahweh," has more than one possible meaning: (1) It may mean "angel who represents Yahweh" or "messenger who serves Yahweh." (2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel's use of "I" as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "angel" could include "messenger from God" or "God's heavenly servant" or "God's spirit messenger."
- The term "archangel" could be translated as "chief angel" or "head ruling angel" or "leader of the angels."
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase "angel of Yahweh" should be translated using the words for "angel" and "Yahweh." This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include "angel from Yahweh" or "angel sent by Yahweh" or "Yahweh, who looked like an angel."

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: chief, **head**, messenger, **Michael**, ruler, servant)

Bible References:

- **2 Samuel 24:16**
- **Acts 10:3-6**

- Acts 12:23
- Colossians 2:18-19
- Genesis 48:16
- Luke 2:13
- Mark 8:38
- Matthew 13:50
- Revelation 1:20
- Zechariah 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 2:12 God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- 22:3 The **angel** responded to Zechariah, “I was sent by God to bring you this good news.”
- 23:6 Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you.”
- 23:7 Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God.
- 25:8 Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- 38:12 Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- 38:15 “I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0047, H0430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G00320, G07430, G24650

Genesis References:

16:7; 16:9; 16:10; 16:11; 19:1; 19:15; 21:17; 22:11; 22:15; 24:7; 24:40; 28:12; 31:11; 32:1; 48:16

anoint, anointed, anointing

Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. In biblical times, there were several reasons for anointing someone with oil. Often this was a Symbolic Action, representing God empowering that person with the Holy Spirit for special service to him.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship.
- People prepared dead bodies for burial by anointing them with perfumed oils and spices.
- In the New Testament, receiving the Holy Spirit is described as anointing.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour/put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring oil on” or “consecrate” or “appoint.”
- Depending on the context, to “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated” or “be given the Holy Spirit.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: Christ, consecrate, high priest, King of the Jews, priest, prophet)

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:20
- 1 John 2:27
- 2 Corinthians 1:21
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 4:27-28
- Amos 6:5-6

- **Exodus 29:5-7**
- **James 5:13-15**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0430, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4397, H4398, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, H8136, G00320, G02180, G07430, G14720, G20250, G34620, G55450, G55480

Genesis References:

31:13

appoint, appointed

Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 8:11
- Acts 3:20
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 3:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0561, H0977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G03220, G06060, G12990, G13030, G19350, G25250, G27490, G42870, G42960, G43840, G49290, G50210, G50870

Genesis References:

1:14; 17:21; 18:14; 21:2; 24:14; 24:44; 28:18; 40:4; 41:33; 41:34; 47:6

Aram, Aramean, Aramaic, Aram of Damascus

Definition:

"Aram" was the name of two men in the Old Testament. It was also the name of a region northeast of Canaan, where modern-day Syria is located.

- The people living in Aram became known as "Arameans" and spoke "Aramaic." Jesus and other Jews of his time also spoke Aramaic.
- One of Shem's sons was named Aram. Another man named Aram was a cousin of Rebekah. It is probable that the region of Aram was named after one of these two men.
- Aram later became known by the Greek name "Syria."
- The term "Paddan Aram" means "plain of Aram" and this plain was located in the northern part of Aram.
- Some of Abraham's relatives lived in the city of Haran, which was located in "Paddan Aram."
- In the Old Testament, sometimes the terms "Aram" and "Paddan Aram" refer to the same region.
- The term "Aram Naharaim" may mean "Aram of Two Rivers." This region was located in the northern part of Mesopotamia and was to the east of "Paddan Aram."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Mesopotamia, Paddan Aram, Rebekah, Shem, Syria)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:17-19
- 2 Samuel 8:6
- Amos 1:5
- Ezekiel 27:16
- Genesis 31:19-21
- Hosea 12:12
- Psalm 60:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0130, H0726, H0758, H0761, H0762, H0763, H1834, H7421

Genesis References:

10:22; 10:23; 22:21; 24:10; 25:20; 28:5; 31:20; 31:24

Ararat

Definition:

In the Bible, “Ararat” is the name given to a land, a kingdom, and a mountain range.

- The “land of Ararat” was probably located in what is now the northeastern part of the country of Turkey.
- Ararat is best known as the name of the mountain that Noah’s ark came to rest on after the waters of the great flood began to recede.
- In modern times, a mountain called “Mount Ararat” is often thought to be the location of the “mountains of Ararat” in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: ark, Noah)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 19:35-37
- Genesis 8:4-5
- Isaiah 37:38
- Jeremiah 51:27

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0780

Genesis References:

8:4

archer

Definition:

The term “archer” refers to a man who is skilled at using a bow and arrow as a weapon.

- In the Bible, an archer is usually a soldier who uses a bow and arrow to fight in an army.
- Archers were an important part of the Assyrian military force.
- Some languages might have a term for this, such as “bow-man.”

(See also: Assyria)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 31:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 35:23-24
- Genesis 21:20
- Isaiah 21:16-17
- Job 16:13
- Proverbs 26:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1167, H1869, H2671, H3384, H7198, H7199, H7228

Genesis References:

21:20

ark

Definition:

The term “ark” literally refers to a rectangular wooden box that is made to hold or protect something. An ark can be large or small, depending on what it is being used for.

- In the English Bible, the word “ark” is first used to refer to the very large, rectangular, wooden boat that Noah built to escape the worldwide flood. The ark had a flat bottom, a roof, and walls.
- Ways to translate this term could include “very large boat” or “barge” or “cargo ship” or “large, box-shaped boat.”
- The Hebrew word that is used to refer to this huge boat is the same word used for the basket or box that held baby Moses when his mother put him in the Nile River to hide him. In that case it is usually translated as “basket.”
- In the phrase “ark of the covenant,” a different Hebrew word is used for “ark.” This could be translated as “box” or “chest” or “container.”
- When choosing a term to translate “ark,” it is important in each context to consider what size it is and what it is being used for.

(See also: ark of the covenant, basket)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:20
- Exodus 16:33-36
- Exodus 30:6
- Genesis 8:4-5
- Luke 17:27
- Matthew 24:37-39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0727, H8392, G27870

Genesis References:

6:14; 6:15; 6:16; 6:18; 7:1; 7:9; 7:13; 7:15; 7:17; 7:18; 7:23; 8:1; 8:4; 8:6; 8:9; 8:10; 8:13; 8:16; 8:19; 9:10; 9:18

ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh

Definition:

These terms refer to a special wooden chest, overlaid with gold, that contained the two stone tablets on which the Ten Commandments were written. It also contained Aaron's staff and a jar of manna.

- The term "ark" here could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- The objects in this chest reminded the Israelites of God's covenant with them.
- The ark of the covenant was located in the "most holy place."
- God's presence was above the ark of the covenant in the most holy place of the tabernacle, where he spoke to Moses on behalf of the Israelites.
- During the time that the ark of the covenant was in the most holy place of the temple, the high priest was the only one who could approach the ark, once a year on the Day of Atonement.
- Many English versions translate the term "covenant decrees" literally as "testimony." This refers to the fact that the Ten Commandments were a testimony or witness to God's covenant with his people. It is also translated as "covenant law."

(See also: ark, covenant, **atonement**, **holy place**, testimony)

Bible References:

- **1 Samuel 6:15**
- **Exodus 25:10-11**
- **Hebrews 9:5**
- **Judges 20:27**
- **Numbers 7:89**
- **Revelation 11:19**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0727, H1285, H3068

Genesis References:

50:26

Asher

Definition:

Asher was Jacob's eighth son. He was Zilpah's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Asher" or "Asher."
- His name sounds similar to a Hebrew word meaning "blessed, happy."
- The tribe of Asher settled in the northwest corner of Canaan, on the Mediterannean Sea. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Asher" refers to the land given to the tribe of Asher.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Zilpah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:13
- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 4:16
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Luke 2:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0836

Genesis References:

30:13; 35:26; 46:17; 49:20

assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community

Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: hyperbole)
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: council)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:14
- Acts 7:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 4:20-21

- Nehemiah 8:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G15770, G38310, G48630, G48640, G48710, G49050

Genesis References:

28:3; 35:11; 48:4; 49:1; 49:2; 49:6; 49:29

Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

Definition:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan.

The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: **Samaria**)

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11
- Genesis 25:17-18
- **Isaiah 7:16-17**
- **Jeremiah 50:17**
- **Micah 7:11-13**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:2** So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the **Assyrian Empire**, a powerful, cruel nation. The **Assyrians** killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **20:3** The **Assyrians** gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to **Assyria**.
- **20:4** Then the **Assyrians** brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0804, H1121

Genesis References:

2:14; 10:11; 10:22; 25:3; 25:18

avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance

Definition:

To “avenge” or “take revenge” or “execute vengeance” is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is “vengeance.”

- Usually “avenge” implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression “take revenge” or “get revenge” usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God “takes vengeance” or “executes vengeance,” he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression to “avenge” could also be translated as to “right a wrong” or to “get justice for.”
- When referring to human beings, to “take revenge” could be translated as “pay back” or “hurt in order to punish” or “get back at.”
- Depending on the context, “vengeance” could be translated as “punishment” or “punishment of sin” or “payment for wrongs done.” If a word meaning “retaliation” is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, “take my vengeance,” this could be translated by “punish them for wrongs done against me” or “cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me.”
- When referring to God’s vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: **punish**, just, righteous)

Bible References:

- **1 Samuel 24:12-13**
- **Ezekiel 25:15**
- **Isaiah 47:3-5**
- **Leviticus 19:17-18**
- **Psalms 18:47**
- **Romans 12:19**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H3467, H5358, H5359, H5360, H8199, G15560, G15570, G15580, G37090

Genesis References:

4:15; 4:24

Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian

Definition:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word "Babylon" refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the "king of Babylon" ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called "Chaldea" and the people living there were the "Chaldeans." As a result, the term "Chaldea" was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: synecdoche)

(See also: **Babel**, Chaldea, **Judah**, **Nebuchadnezzar**)

Bible References:

- **1 Chronicles 9:1**
- **2 Kings 17:24-26**
- **Acts 7:43**
- **Daniel 1:2**
- **Ezekiel 12:13**
- **Matthew 1:11**
- **Matthew 1:17**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:6** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **20:7** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:9** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.
- **20:11** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3778, H3779, H8152, H0894, H0895, H0896, G08970

Genesis References:

10:10; 11:9

barren, dry

Definition:

To be “barren” means to not be fertile or fruitful.

- Soil or land that is barren is not able to produce any plants.
- A woman who is barren is one who is physically unable to conceive or bear a child.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “barren” is used to refer to land, it could be translated as “not fertile” or “unfruitful” or “without plants.”
- When it is referring to a barren woman, it could be translated as “childless” or “not able to bear children” or “unable to conceive a child.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:5
- Galatians 4:27
- Genesis 11:30
- Job 3:7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4420, H6115, H6135, H6723, H7921, G06920, G47230

Genesis References:

11:30; 25:21; 29:31

bear, bearer, bore, borne, produce, produced

Definition:

Used in this sense, the term “bear” means to “produce” or “give birth to.”

- A common expression in the Bible is “bear fruit,” which means “produce fruit”
- When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means “give birth to” a child
- Depending on context, this term could be translated as “produce” or “give birth to.”

(Translation suggestions: fruit)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3205, H3209, H3211, H5375, G01420, G03990, G04300, G09410, G10800, G41600, G47220, G50410, G50880, G53420, G54090

Genesis References:

3:16; 4:1; 4:2; 4:13; 4:17; 4:18; 4:20; 4:22; 4:25; 4:26; 6:1; 6:4; 10:1; 10:21; 14:14; 16:1; 16:2; 16:11; 16:15; 16:16; 17:12; 17:13; 17:17; 17:19; 17:21; 17:23; 17:27; 18:13; 19:37; 19:38; 20:17; 21:2; 21:3; 21:5; 21:7; 21:9; 22:20; 22:24; 24:15; 24:24; 24:36; 24:47; 25:2; 25:12; 25:24; 25:26; 29:32; 29:33; 29:34; 29:35; 30:1; 30:3; 30:5; 30:7; 30:9; 30:10; 30:12; 30:17; 30:19; 30:20; 30:21; 30:23; 30:25; 30:39; 31:8; 31:43; 34:1; 35:16; 35:17; 35:26; 36:4; 36:5; 36:12; 36:14; 38:3; 38:4; 38:5; 38:27; 38:28; 40:20; 41:50; 44:27; 46:15; 46:18; 46:20; 46:22; 46:25; 46:27; 48:5; 50:23

beast

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “beast” is often just another way of saying “animal.”

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term “livestock” is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: Metaphor)
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include “creature” or “created thing” or “animal” or “wild animal,” depending on the context.

(See also: **authority**, **Daniel**, livestock, nation, **power**, **reveal**, **Beelzebul**)

Bible References:

- **1 Corinthians 15:32**
- **1 Samuel 17:44**
- **2 Chronicles 25:18**
- **Jeremiah 16:1-4**
- **Leviticus 7:21**
- **Psalms 49:12-13**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0338, H0929, H1165, H2123, H2416, H2423, H2874, H3753, H4806, H7409, G22260, G23410, G23420, G29340, G49680, G50740

Genesis References:

7:2; 7:8; 8:20; 34:23; 36:6; 45:17; 47:18

Beersheba

Definition:

In Old Testament times, Beersheba was a city located about 45 miles southwest of Jerusalem in a desert area that is now called the Negev.

- The desert surrounding Beersheba was the wilderness area where Hagar and Ishmael wandered after Abraham sent them away from his tents.
- The name of this city means “well of the oath.” It was given this name when Abraham swore an oath to not punish King Abimelech’s men for seizing control of one of Abraham’s wells.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abimelech, Abraham, Hagar, Ishmael, **Jerusalem**, oath)

Bible References:

- **1 Samuel 3:20**
- **2 Samuel 17:11**
- Genesis 21:14
- Genesis 21:31
- Genesis 46:1
- **Nehemiah 11:30**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0884

Genesis References:

21:14; 21:31; 21:32; 21:33; 22:19; 26:23; 26:33; 28:10; 46:1; 46:5

believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

3. believer

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

4. unbelief

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”

- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”
- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: believe, **apostle**, **Christian**, **disciple**, **faith**, trust)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:6
- Genesis 45:26
- **Job 9:16-18**
- **Habakkuk 1:5-7**
- **Mark 6:4-6**
- **Mark 1:14-15**
- **Luke 9:41**
- **John 1:12**
- **Acts 6:5**
- **Acts 9:42**
- **Acts 28:23-24**
- **Romans 3:3**
- **1 Corinthians 6:1**
- **1 Corinthians 9:5**
- **2 Corinthians 6:15**
- **Hebrews 3:12**
- **1 John 3:23**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 3:4 Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- 4:8 Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- 11:2 God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- 11:6 But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- 37:5 Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?"
- 43:1 After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- 43:3 While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- 43:13 Every day, more people became **believers**.
- 46:6 That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- 46:1 Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- 46:9 Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus.
- 46:9 It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called "Christians."
- 47:14 They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0539, H0540, G05430, G05440, G05690, G05700, G05710, G39820, G41000, G41020, G41030, G41350

Genesis References:

15:6

Benjamin, Benjaminite

Definition:

Benjamin was Jacob's twelfth son. He was Rachel's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Benjamin" or "Benjamin" or the "Benjaminites."
- In Hebrew, the name Benjamin means "son of my right hand."
- The tribe of Benjamin settled just northwest of the Dead Sea, north of Jerusalem.
- King Saul was from the tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Rachel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 2:8
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:18
- Genesis 42:4
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 3:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G09580

Genesis References:

35:18; 35:24; 42:4; 42:36; 43:14; 43:15; 43:16; 43:29; 43:34; 44:12; 45:12; 45:14; 45:22; 46:19; 46:21; 49:27

Bethel

Definition:

Bethel was a city located just north of Jerusalem in the land of Canaan. It was formerly called "Luz."

- After receiving God's promises for the first time, Abram (Abraham) built an altar to God near Bethel. The actual name of the city was not yet Bethel at that time, but it was usually referred to as "Bethel," which was better known.
- When fleeing from his brother Esau, Jacob stayed overnight near this city and slept outdoors on the ground there. While he was sleeping, he had a dream showing angels going up and down a ladder to heaven.
- This city did not have the name "Bethel" until after Jacob named it that. To make this clear, some translations may translate it as "Luz (later called Bethel)" in the passages about Abraham, as well as when Jacob first arrives there (before he changed the name).
- Bethel is mentioned often in the Old Testament and was a place where many important events happened.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, altar, Jacob, **Jerusalem**)

Bible References:

- Genesis 12:8-9
- Genesis 35:1
- **Hosea 10:15**
- **Judges 1:23**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1008

Genesis References:

12:8; 13:3; 28:19; 31:13; 35:1; 35:3; 35:6; 35:7; 35:8; 35:15; 35:16

Bethlehem, Ephrathah

Definition:

Bethlehem was a small city in the land of Israel, near the city of Jerusalem. It was also known as "Ephrathah," which was probably its original name.

- Bethlehem has been called the "city of David," since King David was born there.
- The prophet Micah said that the Messiah would come from "Bethlehem Ephrathah."
- Fulfilling that prophecy, Jesus was born in Bethlehem, many years later.
- The name "Bethlehem" means "house of bread" or "house of food."

(See also: **Caleb**, **David**, **Micah**)

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:16
- **John 7:42**
- **Matthew 2:6**
- **Matthew 2:16**
- **Ruth 1:2**
- **Ruth 1:21**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:2** David was a shepherd from the town of **Bethlehem**.
- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin. The prophet Micah said that he would be born in the town of **Bethlehem**.
- **23:4** Joseph and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to **Bethlehem** because their ancestor was David whose hometown was **Bethlehem**.
- **23:6** "The Messiah, the Master, has been born in **Bethlehem**!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0376, H0672, H1035, G09650

Genesis References:

35:19; 48:7

Bethuel

Definition:

Bethuel was the son of Abraham's brother Nahor.

- Bethuel was the father of Rebekah and Laban.
- There was also a town called Bethuel, which may have been located in southern Judah, not far from the town of Beersheba.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Beersheba, Laban, Nahor, Rebekah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 4:30
- Genesis 28:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1328

Genesis References:

22:22; 22:23; 24:15; 24:24; 24:47; 24:50; 25:20; 28:2; 28:5

Bilhah

Definition:

Bilhah was one of Jacob's wives. She gave birth to Dan and Naphtali, two sons of Jacob whose descendants became tribes of Israel.

- Laban gave Bilhah to Rachel as a servant when Rachel married Jacob.
- Because Rachel was not having children, she gave Bilhah to Jacob as a wife in order to produce children for her.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Jacob, Rachel, Dan, Naphtali)

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:29
- Genesis 30:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1090

Genesis References:

29:29; 30:3; 30:4; 30:5; 30:7; 35:22; 35:25; 37:2; 46:25

bind, bond, bound

Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to “restrain” or to “prevent” or to “keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: **fulfill**, peace, **prison**, servant, **vow**)

Bible References:

- Leviticus 8:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0247, H0481, H0519, H0615, H0631, H0632, H0640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G02540, G03310, G03320, G11950, G11960, G11980, G11990, G12100, G13970, G13980, G14010, G14020, G26110, G26150, G37340, G37840, G38140, G40190, G40290, G43850, G48860, G48870, G52650

Genesis References:

22:9; 37:7; 38:28; 42:24; 44:30; 49:11

birthright

Definition:

The term “birthright” in the Bible refers to the honor, family name, and physical wealth that was normally given to the firstborn son in a family.

- The birthright of the firstborn son included a double portion of the father’s inheritance.
- A king’s firstborn son was normally given the birthright to rule after his father died.
- Esau sold his birthright to his younger brother Jacob. Because of this, Jacob inherited the blessing of the firstborn instead of Esau.
- The birthright also included the honor of having the family descendants traced through the firstborn son’s line.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible ways to translate “birthright” could include, “rights and wealth of the firstborn son” or “family honor” or “privilege and inheritance of the firstborn.”

(See also: firstborn, inherit, descendant)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:1
- Genesis 25:34
- Genesis 43:33
- Hebrews 12:14-17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1062, G44150

Genesis References:

25:31; 25:32; 25:33; 25:34; 27:36; 43:33

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:3
- James 1:25
- Luke 6:20
- Matthew 26:26

- **Nehemiah 9:5**
- **Romans 4:9**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:7** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **1:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, "Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth."
- **1:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **4:4** "I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you."
- **4:7** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, "May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram."
- **7:3** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0833, H0835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G17570, G21270, G21280, G21290, G31060, G31070, G31080, G60500

Genesis References:

1:22; 1:28; 2:3; 5:2; 9:1; 9:26; 12:2; 12:3; 14:19; 14:20; 17:16; 17:20; 18:18; 22:17; 22:18; 24:1; 24:27; 24:31; 24:35; 24:48; 24:60; 25:11; 26:3; 26:4; 26:12; 26:24; 26:29; 27:4; 27:7; 27:10; 27:12; 27:19; 27:23; 27:25; 27:27; 27:29; 27:30; 27:31; 27:33; 27:34; 27:35; 27:36; 27:38; 27:41; 28:1; 28:3; 28:4; 28:6; 28:14; 30:27; 30:30; 31:55; 32:26; 32:29; 33:11; 35:9; 39:5; 47:7; 47:10; 48:3; 48:9; 48:15; 48:16; 48:20; 49:25; 49:26; 49:28

blot out, wipe out

Definition:

The terms “blot out” and “wipe out” are expressions that mean to completely remove or destroy something or someone.

- These expressions can be used in a positive sense, as when God “blots out” sins by forgiving them and choosing not to remember them.
- It is also often used in a negative sense, as when God “blots out” or “wipes out” a people group, destroying them because of their sin.
- The Bible talks about a person’s name being “blotted out” or “wiped out” of God’s Book of Life, which means that the person will not receive eternal life.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, these expressions could be translated as “get rid of” or “remove” or “completely destroy” or “completely remove.”
- When referring to blotting someone’s name out of the Book of Life, this could be translated as “removed from” or “erased.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 29:20
- Exodus 32:30-32
- Genesis 7:23
- Psalm 51:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4229, H8045, G18130

Genesis References:

6:7; 7:4; 7:23

bow and arrow, a bow

Definition:

This is a type of weapon that consists of shooting arrows from a stringed bow. In Bible times it was used for fighting against enemies and for killing animals for food.

- The bow is made out of wood, bone, metal, or other hard material, such as a deer's antler. It has a curved shape and is strung tightly with a string, cord, or vine. When not in use the bow string would not be attached to both ends of the bow so that the bow was not under the pressure of being bent all the time. When preparing to fight a warrior would bend the bow and attach the string to both ends.
- An arrow is a thin shaft with a sharp, pointed head on one end. In ancient times, the arrows could be made of a variety of materials such as wood, bone, stone, or metal.
- Bows and arrows are commonly used by hunters and warriors.
- The term "arrow" is also sometimes used figuratively in the Bible to refer to enemy attacks or divine judgment.

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:16
- **Habakkuk 3:9-10**
- **Job 29:20-22**
- **Lamentations 2:4**
- **Psalms 58:6-8**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2671, H7198, G51150

Genesis References:

9:13; 9:14; 9:16; 21:16; 27:3; 48:22; 49:23; 49:24

bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To "bow down" means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include "bow the knee" (meaning to kneel) and "bow the head" (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is "bowed down" has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means "bend forward" or "bend the head" or "kneel."
- The term "bow down" could be translated as "kneel down" or "prostrate oneself."
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: **humble**, worship)

Bible References:

- **2 Kings 5:18**
- **Exodus 20:5**
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- **Isaiah 44:19**
- **Luke 24:5**
- **Matthew 2:11**
- **Revelation 3:9**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0086, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G11200, G25780, G28270, G40980

Genesis References:

18:2; 19:1; 23:7; 23:12; 24:26; 24:48; 24:52; 27:29; 33:3; 33:6; 33:7; 37:7; 37:9; 37:10; 41:43; 42:6; 43:26; 43:28; 44:14; 47:31; 48:12; 49:8; 50:18

bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called “unleavened bread” in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate “unleavened bread” during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: Synecdoche) Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”
- The phrase “bread of the presence” refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The term “bread from heaven” refers to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”

(See also: **Passover**, **tabernacle**, **temple**, unleavened bread, **yeast**)

Bible References:

- **Acts 2:46**
- **Acts 27:35**
- **Exodus 16:15**
- **Luke 9:13**
- **Mark 6:38**
- **Matthew 4:4**
- **Matthew 11:18**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G01060, G07400, G42860

Genesis References:

3:19; 14:18; 18:5; 21:14; 25:34; 27:17; 28:20; 31:54; 37:25; 39:6; 40:16; 41:54; 41:55; 43:25; 43:31; 43:32; 45:23; 47:12; 47:13; 47:15; 47:17; 47:19; 49:20

bronze

Definition:

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: **armor**, **tabernacle**, **temple**)

Bible References:

- **1 Kings 7:16**
- **1 Samuel 17:37-38**
- **Daniel 2:44-45**
- **Exodus 25:3-7**
- **Revelation 1:15**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G54700, G54740, G54750

Genesis References:

4:22

burnt offering, offering by fire

Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: altar, atonement, ox, priest, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 3:5
- Mark 12:33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G36460

Genesis References:

8:20; 22:2; 22:3; 22:6; 22:7; 22:8; 22:13

bury, buried, burial

Definition:

The term “bury” refers to putting an object (usually a dead body) into a hole or other burial place and then covering it with dirt or stones, etc. The term “burial” is the act of burying something, or it can be used to describe a place where something has been buried.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” always refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: Jericho, tomb)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 9:9-10
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Jeremiah 25:33
- Luke 16:22
- Matthew 27:7
- Psalm 79:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6900, H6912, H6913, G17790, G17800, G22900, G49160, G50270

Genesis References:

15:15; 23:4; 23:6; 23:8; 23:11; 23:13; 23:15; 23:19; 25:9; 25:10; 35:4; 35:8; 35:19; 35:29; 47:29; 47:30; 48:7; 49:29; 49:31; 50:5; 50:6; 50:7; 50:13; 50:14

Cain

Definition:

Cain and his younger brother Abel were the first sons of Adam and Eve mentioned in the Bible.

- Cain was a farmer who produced food crops while Abel was a sheep herder.
- Cain killed his brother Abel in a fit of jealousy because God had accepted Abel's sacrifice but had not accepted Cain's sacrifice.
- As punishment, God sent him away from Eden and told him that the land would no longer yield crops for him.
- God put a mark on Cain's forehead as a sign that God would protect him from being killed by other people as he wandered.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Adam, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 1 John 3:12
- Genesis 4:2
- Genesis 4:9
- Genesis 4:15
- Hebrews 11:4
- Jude 1:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7014, G25350

Genesis References:

4:1; 4:2; 4:3; 4:5; 4:6; 4:8; 4:9; 4:13; 4:15; 4:16; 4:17; 4:24; 4:25

call, called, call out, called out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out,” in this sense, mean to speak loudly.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- In some contexts the terms “call” and “call out” mean to loudly ask for help.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- To “call out” could be translated as “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.

(See also: pray, cry, call to summon, call name)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G01540, G03630, G14580, G15280, G19410, G19510, G20280, G20460, G25640, G28210, G28220, G28400, G29190, G30040, G31060, G33330, G33430, G36030, G36860, G36870, G43160, G43410, G43770, G47790, G48670, G54550, G55370, G55810

Genesis References:

1:5; 1:8; 1:10; 2:19; 2:20; 2:23; 3:9; 3:20; 4:17; 4:25; 4:26; 5:2; 5:3; 5:29; 11:9; 12:8; 12:18; 13:4; 16:11; 16:13; 16:14; 16:15; 17:5; 17:15; 17:19; 19:5; 19:22; 19:37; 19:38; 20:8; 20:9; 21:3; 21:12; 21:17; 21:31; 21:33; 22:11; 22:14; 22:15; 24:57; 24:58; 25:25; 25:26; 25:30; 26:9; 26:18; 26:20; 26:21; 26:25; 26:33; 27:1; 27:36; 27:42; 28:1; 28:19; 29:32; 29:33; 29:34; 29:35; 30:6; 30:8; 30:11; 30:13; 30:18; 30:20; 30:21; 30:24; 31:4; 31:47; 31:48; 31:54; 32:2; 32:28; 32:30; 33:17; 33:20; 35:7; 35:8; 35:10; 35:15; 35:18; 38:3; 38:4; 38:5; 38:29; 38:30; 39:14; 41:8; 41:14; 41:43; 41:45; 41:51; 41:52; 45:1; 46:33; 47:29; 48:6; 48:16; 49:1; 50:11

camel

Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: **burden**, **clean**)

Bible References:

- **1 Chronicles 5:21**
- **2 Chronicles 9:1-2**
- **Exodus 9:1-4**
- **Mark 10:25**
- **Matthew 3:4**
- **Matthew 19:23-24**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1581, G25740

Genesis References:

12:16; 24:10; 24:11; 24:14; 24:19; 24:20; 24:22; 24:30; 24:31; 24:32; 24:35; 24:44; 24:46; 24:61; 24:63; 24:64; 30:43; 31:17; 31:34; 32:7; 32:15; 37:25

Canaan, Canaanite

Definition:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ham, **Promised Land**)

Bible References:

- **Acts 13:19-20**
- **Exodus 3:7-8**
- Genesis 9:18
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:7
- Genesis 47:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:5** He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of **Canaan**.
- **4:6** When Abram arrived in **Canaan** God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **4:9** "I give the land of **Canaan** to your descendants."
- **5:3** "I will give you and your descendants the land of **Canaan** as their possession and I will be their God forever."
- **7:8** After twenty years away from his home in **Canaan**, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, H3669, G54780

Genesis References:

9:18; 9:22; 9:25; 9:26; 9:27; 10:6; 10:15; 10:18; 10:19; 11:31; 12:5; 12:6; 13:7; 13:12; 15:21; 16:3; 17:8; 23:2; 23:19; 24:3; 24:37; 28:1; 28:6; 28:8; 31:18; 33:18; 34:30; 35:6; 36:2; 36:5; 36:6; 37:1; 38:2; 42:5; 42:7; 42:13; 42:29; 42:32; 44:8; 45:17; 45:25; 46:6; 46:10; 46:12; 46:31; 47:1; 47:4; 47:13; 47:14; 47:15; 48:3; 48:7; 49:30; 50:5; 50:11; 50:13

captive, captivate, captivity, catch

Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to people who have been captured and forced to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: Babylon, exile, prison, seize)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:5
- Isaiah 20:4
- Jeremiah 43:3
- Luke 4:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G01610, G01620, G01630, G01640, G22210

Genesis References:

14:14; 31:26; 34:29

cast out, driving out, throw out

Definition:

To “cast out” or “drive out” someone or something means to force that person or thing to go away.

- The term “cast” means the same thing as “throw.” To cast a net means to throw the net into the water.
- In a figurative sense, “cast out” or “cast away” someone can mean to reject that person and send him away.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, “force out” or “send away” or “get rid of.”
- To “cast out demons” could be translated as “cause the demons to leave” or “drive the evil spirits out” or “expel the demons” or “command the demon to come out.”
- To “cast out” someone from a synagog or church could be translated as “banish them” or “put them out.”

(See also: **demon**, **demon-possessed**, **lots**)

Bible References:

- **Acts 7:17-19**
- **Mark 3:13-16**
- **Mark 9:29**
- **Matthew 7:21-23**
- **Matthew 9:32-34**
- **Matthew 12:24**
- **Matthew 17:19-21**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1272, H1644, H1920, H3423, H7971, H7993, G15440

Genesis References:

3:24; 4:14; 21:10; 37:20; 37:22; 37:24

Chaldea, Chaldean

Definition:

Chaldea was a region in the southern part of Mesopotamia or Babylonia. The people who lived in this region were called Chaldeans.

- The city of Ur, where Abraham was from, was located in Chaldea. It is often referred to as "Ur of the Chaldeans."
- King Nebuchadnezzar was one of several Chaldeans who became kings over Babylonia.
- After many years, around 600 BC, the term "Chaldean" came to mean "Babylonian."
- In the book of Daniel, the term "Chaldean" also refers to a special class of men who were highly educated and studied the stars.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Babylon, Shinar, Ur)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:4-5
- Ezekiel 1:1
- Genesis 11:27-28
- Genesis 11:31-32
- Genesis 15:6-8
- Isaiah 13:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3679, H3778, H3779, G54660

Genesis References:

11:28; 11:31; 15:7

chariot, charioteer

Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Egypt, Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:22
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Acts 8:29
- Acts 8:38
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:25
- Genesis 41:43

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 12:10 So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2021, H4817, H4818, H7393, H7395, H7398, G07160, G44800

Genesis References:

41:43; 46:29; 50:9

cherub, cherubim

Definition:

The term “cherub,” and its plural form “cherubim,” refer to a special type of heavenly being that God created. The Bible describes cherubim as having wings and flames.

- The cherubim display the glory and power of God and seem to be guardians of sacred things.
- After Adam and Eve sinned, God placed cherubim with flaming swords at the east side of the Garden of Eden so that people could no longer get to the tree of life.
- God commanded the Israelites to carve two cherubim facing each other, with their wings touching, over the atonement lid of the ark of the covenant.
- He also told them to weave pictures of the cherubim into the curtains of the tabernacle.
- In some passages, these creatures are also described as having four faces: of a man, a lion, an ox, and an eagle.
- Cherubim are sometimes thought of as being angels, but the Bible does not clearly state that.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “cherubim” could be translated as “creatures with wings” or “guardians with wings” or “winged spiritual guardians” or “holy, winged guardians.”
- A “cherub” should be translated as the singular of cherubim, as in, “creature with wings” or “winged spiritual guardian,” for example.
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “angel.”
- Also consider how this term is translated or written in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: angel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:6
- 1 Kings 6:23-26
- Exodus 25:15-18
- Ezekiel 9:3
- Genesis 3:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3742, G55020

Genesis References:

3:24

chief, leader

Definition:

The term “chief” refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, “chief musician,” “chief priest,” and “chief tax collector.” and “chief ruler.”
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as “chiefs” of their family clans. In this context, the term “chief” could also be translated as “leader” or “head father.”
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as “leading” or “ruling,” as in “leading musician” or “ruling priest.”

(See also: **head**, **chief priests**, priest, **tax collector**)

Bible References:

- **Daniel 1:11-13**
- **Ezekiel 26:15-16**
- **Luke 19:2**
- **Psalm 4:1**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0047, H0441, H5057, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G07490, G07500, G07540, G44100, G44130, G55060

Genesis References:

36:15; 36:16; 36:17; 36:18; 36:19; 36:21; 36:29; 36:30; 36:40; 36:41; 36:42; 36:43

circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision

Definition:

The term “circumcise” means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

- God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God’s covenant with them.
- God also commanded Abraham’s descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
- The phrase, “circumcision of the heart” refers figuratively to the “cutting away” or removal of sin from a person.
- In a spiritual sense, “the circumcised” refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
- The term “uncircumcised” refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

The terms “uncircumcised” and “uncircumcision” refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the “uncircumcised,” he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.

- The Bible refers to people who have an “uncircumcised heart” or who are “uncircumcised in heart.” This a figurative way of saying that these people are not God’s people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.

- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, “uncircumcised” could be translated as “not circumcised.”

- The expression “the uncircumcision” could be translated as “people who are not circumcised” or “people who do not belong to God,” depending on the context.

- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include “not God’s people” or “rebellious like those who don’t belong to God” or “people who have no sign of belonging to God.”

- The expression “uncircumcised in heart” could be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to believe.” However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
- Other ways to translate this term would be, “cut around” or “cut in a circle” or “cut off the foreskin.”
- In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
- Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of “male.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Abraham, covenant)

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:11
- Genesis 17:14
- **Exodus 12:48**
- **Leviticus 26:41**
- **Joshua 5:3**
- **Judges 15:18**
- **2 Samuel 1:20**
- **Jeremiah 9:26**
- **Ezekiel 32:25**
- **Acts 10:44-45**
- **Acts 11:3**
- **Acts 15:1**
- **Acts 11:3**
- **Romans 2:27**
- **Galatians 5:3**
- **Ephesians 2:11**
- **Philippians 3:3**
- **Colossians 2:11**

- Colossians 2:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 5:3 "You must **circumcise** every male in your family."
- 5:5 That day Abraham **circumcised** all the males in his household.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4135, H4139, H5243, H6188, H6189, H6190, G02030, G05640, G19860, G40590, G40610

Genesis References:

17:10; 17:11; 17:12; 17:13; 17:14; 17:23; 17:24; 17:25; 17:26; 17:27; 21:4; 34:15; 34:17; 34:22; 34:24

cistern, well

Definition:

The terms “well” and “cistern” refer to two different kinds of sources for water in Bible times.

- A well is a deep hole dug into the ground so that underground water can flow into it.
- A cistern is a deep hole dug into rock that was used as a holding tank for collecting rain water.
- Cisterns were usually dug into rock and sealed with plaster to keep the water in. A “broken cistern” happened when the plaster became cracked so that the water leaked out.
- Cisterns were often located in the courtyard area of people’s homes to catch the rainwater that would run off the roof.
- Wells were often located where they could be accessed by several families or a whole community.
- Because water was very important for both people and livestock, the right to use a well was often a cause of strife and conflict.
- Both wells and cisterns were usually covered with a large stone to prevent anything falling in it. Often there was a rope with a bucket or pot attached to it to bring the water up to the surface.
- Sometimes a dry cistern was used as a place to imprison someone, such as happened to Joseph and Jeremiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “well” could include “deep water hole” or “deep hole for spring water” or “deep hole for drawing water.”
- The term “cistern” could be translated as “stone water pit” or “deep and narrow pit for water” or “underground tank for holding water.”
- These terms are similar in meaning. The main difference is that a well continually receives water from underground springs, whereas a cistern is a holding tank for water that usually comes from rain.

(See also: **Jeremiah**, **prison**, strife)

Bible References:

- **1 Chronicles 11:17**
- **2 Samuel 17:17-18**
- Genesis 16:14
- **Luke 14:4-6**
- **Numbers 20:17**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0875, H0883, H0953, H1360, H4599, H4726, H4841, G40770, G54210

Genesis References:

16:14; 21:19; 21:25; 21:30; 24:11; 24:20; 26:15; 26:18; 26:19; 26:20; 26:21; 26:25; 26:32; 29:2; 29:3; 29:8; 29:10; 37:20; 37:22; 37:24; 37:28; 37:29

clan

Definition:

The term “clan” refers to a group of extended family members who come from a common ancestor.

- In the Old Testament, the Israelites were counted according to their clans, or family groups.
- Clans were normally named after their most well-known ancestor.
- Individual people were sometimes referred to by the name of their clan. An example of this is when Moses’ father-in-law Jethro is sometimes called by his clan name, Reuel.
- The term “clan” might also be translated as “family group” or “extended family” or “relatives.”

(See also: family, Jethro, tribe)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:33-35
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 36:15-16
- Genesis 36:29-30
- Genesis 36:40
- Joshua 15:20
- Numbers 3:38-39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0001, H0441, H1004, H4940

Genesis References:

10:5; 10:18; 10:20; 10:31; 10:32; 12:3; 24:38; 24:40; 24:41; 28:14; 36:40

column, pillar

Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- As a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: foundation, false god, image)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:4
- Exodus 13:21
- Exodus 33:9
- Genesis 31:45
- Proverbs 9:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0352, H0547, H2106, H2553, H3730, H4552, H4676, H4678, H4690, H5324, H5333, H5982, H8490, G47690

Genesis References:

19:26; 28:18; 28:22; 31:13; 31:45; 31:51; 31:52; 35:14; 35:20

companion, fellow worker, friend

Definition:

The term “companion” refers to a person who goes with someone else or who is associated with someone else, such as in a friendship or marriage. The term “fellow worker” refers to someone who works with another person.

- Companions go through experiences together, share meals together, and support and encourage each other.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “friend” or “fellow traveler” or “supporting-person who goes with” or “person who works with.”

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 37:16
- Hebrews 1:9
- Proverbs 2:17
- Psalms 38:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0251, H0441, H2269, H2270, H2273, H2278, H3674, H3675, H4828, H7453, H7462, H7464, G28440, G33530, G48980, G49040

Genesis References:

11:3; 11:7; 26:26; 31:49; 38:20; 43:33

compassion, compassionate

Definition:

The term “compassion” refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A “compassionate” person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word “compassion” refers to caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways of translating “compassion” could include, “deep caring” or “pity” or “helpful mercy.”
- The term “compassionate” could also be translated as “caring and helpful” or “deeply loving and merciful.”

Bible References:

- Daniel 1:8-10
- Hosea 13:14
- James 5:9-11
- Jonah 4:1-3
- Mark 1:41
- Romans 9:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2550, H7349, H7355, H7356, G16530, G33560, G36270, G46970, G48340, G48350

Genesis References:

43:14; 43:30

conceive, conceived, conception

Definition:

Used in this sense, the terms “conceive” and “conception” usually refer to a woman becoming pregnant with a child. It can also be used for animals that become pregnant.

- The phrase “conceive a child” could be translated as “become pregnant” or some other term that is an acceptable way of referring to this.
- The related term “conception” could be translated as “beginning of a pregnancy” or “moment of becoming pregnant.”
- Depending on context, the term “conceived” could be translated as “became pregnant” or “became pregnant with.”

(See also: create, womb)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:1-4
- **Hosea 2:4-5**
- **Job 15:35**
- **Luke 1:24-25**
- **Luke 2:21**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2029, H2030, H2032, H2232, H2254, H2803, H3179, G10800, G17220, G28450, G48150

Genesis References:

4:1; 4:17; 16:4; 16:5; 16:11; 19:36; 21:2; 25:21; 29:32; 29:33; 29:34; 29:35; 30:5; 30:7; 30:17; 30:19; 30:23; 30:41; 38:3; 38:4; 38:18; 38:24; 38:25; 49:26

concubine

Definition:

A concubine is a woman who is a secondary wife for a man who already has a wife. Usually a concubine is not legally married to the man.

- In the Old Testament, concubines were often female slaves.
- A concubine could be acquired by purchase, through military conquest, or in payment of a debt.
- For a king, having many concubines was a sign of power.

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 3:7
- Genesis 22:24
- Genesis 25:5-6
- Genesis 35:21-22
- Genesis 36:12
- Judges 19:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3904, H6370

Genesis References:

22:24; 25:6; 35:22; 36:12

contempt, contemptible, not worth listening to

Definition:

The term “contempt” refers to a deep disrespect and dishonor that is shown toward something or someone. Something that is greatly dishonorable is called “contemptible.”

- A person or behavior that shows open disrespect for God is also called “contemptible” and could be translated as “greatly disrespectful” or “completely dishonorable” or “deserving scorn.”
- To “hold in contempt” means to regard someone as having less value or to judge someone as less worthy than oneself.
- The following expressions have a similar meaning: “have contempt for” or “show contempt for” or “be in contempt of” or “treat with contempt.” These all mean to “strongly disrespect” or “strongly dishonor” something or someone by what is said and done.
- When King David sinned by committing adultery and murder, God said that David had “shown contempt for” God. It means he had greatly disrespected and dishonored God by doing that.

(See also: **dishonor**)

Bible References:

- **Daniel 12:1-2**
- **Proverbs 15:5-6**
- **Psalms 31:18**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0936, H0937, H0959, H0963, H1860, H7043, H7589, H5006, G18480

Genesis References:

12:3; 25:34; 38:23

corrupt, corrupted, corruption, incorruptibility, depraved

Definition:

The terms “corrupt” and “corruption” refer to a state of affairs in which people have become ruined, immoral, or dishonest.

- The term “corrupt” literally means to be “bent” or “broken” morally.
- A person who is corrupt has turned away from truth and is doing things that are dishonest or immoral.
- To corrupt someone means to influence that person to do dishonest and immoral things.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “corrupt” could be translated as to “influence to do evil” or to “cause to be immoral.”
- A corrupt person could be described as a person “who has become immoral” or “who practices evil.”
- This term could also be translated as “bad” or “immoral” or “evil.”
- The term “corruption” could be translated as “the practice of evil” or “evil” or “immorality.”

(See also: evil)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 20:42-44
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Genesis 6:12
- Matthew 12:33-35
- Psalm 14:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2610, H3891, H4889, H7843, H7844, G08610, G13110, G27040, G53510, G53560

Genesis References:

6:11; 6:12

council

Definition:

A council is a group of people who meet to discuss, give advice, and make decisions about important matters.

- A council is usually organized in an official and somewhat permanent way for a specific purpose, such as making decisions about legal matters.
- The "Jewish Council" in Jerusalem, also known as the "Sanhedrin," had 70 members, which included Jewish leaders such as chief priests, elders, scribes, Pharisees, and Sadducees who met regularly to decide matters of Jewish law. It was this council of religious leaders who put Jesus on trial and decided that he should be killed.
- There were also smaller Jewish councils in other cities.
- The apostle Paul was brought before a Roman council when he was arrested for teaching the gospel.
- Depending on the context, the word "council" could also be translated as "legal assembly" or "political assembly."
- To be "in council" means to be in a special meeting to decide something.
- Note that this is a different word than "counsel," which means "wise advice."

(See also: assembly, counsel, Pharisee, law, priest, Sadducee, scribe)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:57-58
- Acts 24:20
- John 3:2
- Luke 22:68
- Mark 13:9
- Matthew 5:22
- Matthew 26:59

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4186, H5475, G10100, G48240, G48920

Genesis References:

49:6

covenant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "covenant" refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
- This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."

- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."

- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term “new covenant” could be translated as “new formal agreement” or “new pact” or “new contract.”
- The word “new” in these expressions has the meaning of “fresh” or “new kind of” or “another.”

(See also: covenant, **promise**)

Bible References:

- Genesis 9:12
- Genesis 17:7
- Genesis 31:44
- **Exodus 34:10-11**
- **Joshua 24:24-26**
- **2 Samuel 23:5**
- **2 Kings 18:11-12**
- **Mark 14:24**
- **Luke 1:73**
- **Luke 22:20**
- **Acts 7:8**
- **1 Corinthians 11:25-26**
- **2 Corinthians 3:6**
- **Galatians 3:17-18**
- **Hebrews 12:24**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:9** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **5:4** “I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac.”
- **6:4** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **7:10** “The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob.”
- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation.”

- 13:4 Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- 15:13 Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- 21:5 Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- 21:14 Through the Messiah’s death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- 38:5 Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it.”
- 48:11 But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God’s people by believing in Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1285, H2319, H3772, G08020, G12420, G49340

Genesis References:

6:18; 9:9; 9:11; 9:12; 9:13; 9:15; 9:16; 9:17; 14:13; 15:18; 17:2; 17:4; 17:7; 17:9; 17:10; 17:11; 17:13; 17:14; 17:19; 17:21; 21:27; 21:32; 26:28; 31:44

covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love

Definition:

In biblical times, the term translated as “covenant faithfulness” was used to describe the kind of faithfulness, loyalty, kindness, and love that was both expected and demonstrated between people who were closely related to one another, either by marriage or by blood. This same term is used often in the Bible to describe the way God relates to his people, especially his commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to them.

- The way this term is translated can depend on how each of the individual terms “covenant” and “faithfulness” are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term might include: “faithful love;” “loyal, committed love;” or “loving dependability.”

(See also: covenant, faithful, grace, Israel, people of God, promise)

Bible References:

- Ezra 3:11
- Numbers 14:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2617

Genesis References:

20:13; 21:23; 24:12; 24:14; 24:27; 24:49; 32:10; 39:21; 47:29

cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

Definition:

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: yoke)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- **Exodus 24:5-6**
- **Numbers 19:1-2**
- **Deuteronomy 21:3-4**
- **1 Samuel 1:24-25**
- **1 Samuel 15:3**
- **1 Samuel 16:2-3**
- **1 Kings 1:9**
- **2 Chronicles 11:15**
- **2 Chronicles 15:10-11**
- **Matthew 22:4**

- Luke 13:15
- Luke 14:5
- Hebrews 9:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0441, H0504, H0929, H1165, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H6499, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8450, G10160, G11510, G23530, G29340, G34470, G34480, G41650, G50220

Genesis References:

12:16; 13:5; 15:9; 18:7; 18:8; 20:14; 21:27; 24:35; 26:14; 32:5; 32:7; 32:15; 33:13; 34:28; 41:2; 41:3; 41:4; 41:18; 41:19; 41:20; 41:26; 41:27; 45:10; 46:32; 47:1; 47:17; 49:6; 50:8

create, created, creation, creator

Definition:

The term “create” means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a “creation.” God is called the “Creator” because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings “create” something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes “create” is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term “creation” can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word “creation” refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world “out of nothing” to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, “since the creation of the world” means “since the time when God created the world.”
- A similar phrase, “at the beginning of creation” could be translated as “when God created the world at the beginning of time,” or “when the world was first created.”
- To preach the good news to “all creation” means to preach the good news to “all people everywhere on earth.”
- The phrase “Let all creation rejoice” means “Let everything that God created rejoice.”
- Depending on the context, “create” could be translated as “make” or “cause to be” or “make out of nothing.”
- The term “the Creator” could be translated as “the One who created everything” or “God, who made the whole world.”
- Phrases like “your Creator” could be translated as “God, who created you.”

(See also: God, **good news**, **world**)

Bible References:

- **1 Corinthians 11:9-10**
- **1 Peter 4:17-19**
- **Colossians 1:15**
- **Galatians 6:15**

- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 14:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3335, H4639, H6213, H6385, H7069, G20410, G26020, G26750, G29360, G29370, G29390, G41600, G54800

Genesis References:

1:1; 1:21; 1:27; 2:3; 2:4; 5:1; 5:2; 6:7

cry, cry out, outcry

Definition:

The terms “cry” or “cry out” usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

- The phrase “cry out” can mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
- The terms “cry” or “cry out” can also mean to pray.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: call speak loudly, plead, pray)

Bible References:

- Job 27:9
- Mark 5:5-6
- Mark 6:48-50
- Psalm 22:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8663, G03100, G03490, G08630, G09940, G09950, G19160, G20190, G27990, G28050, G28960, G29050, G29060, G29290, G43770, G54550

Genesis References:

4:10; 18:20; 18:21; 19:13; 27:34; 39:14; 39:15; 39:18; 41:55

cupbearer

Definition:

In Old Testament times, a “cupbearer” was a king’s servant who was given the task of bringing the king his cup of wine, usually tasting the wine first to make sure it had not been poisoned.

- In English, the term cupbearer literally means “cup bringer” or “someone who brings the cup.”
- A cupbearer was known for being very trustworthy and loyal to his king.
- Because of his trusted position, a cupbearer would often have influence in the decisions the ruler made.
- Nehemiah was the cupbearer for King Artaxerxes of Persia during the time when some of the Israelites were in captivity in Babylon.

(See also: Artaxerxes, Babylon, captive, Persia, Pharaoh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:3-5
- Nehemiah 1:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8248

Genesis References:

40:1; 40:2; 40:5; 40:9; 40:13; 40:20; 40:21; 40:23; 41:9

curse, cursed, cursing

Definition:

The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: bless)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Galatians 3:10
- Galatians 3:14
- Genesis 3:14
- Genesis 3:17
- James 3:10
- Numbers 22:6
- Psalms 109:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 2:9 God said to the snake, “You are **cursed**!”
- 2:11 “Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food.”
- 4:4 “I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you.”
- 39:7 Then Peter vowed, saying, “May God **curse** me if I know this man!”
- 50:16 Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0422, H0423, H0779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G03310, G03320, G06850, G19440, G25510, G26520, G26530, G26710, G26720, G60350

Genesis References:

3:14; 3:17; 4:11; 5:29; 8:21; 9:25; 12:3; 27:12; 27:13; 27:29; 49:7

Cush

Definition:

Cush was the oldest son of Noah's son Ham. He was also the ancestor of Nimrod. Two of his brothers were named Egypt and Canaan.

- In Old Testament times, "Cush" was the name of a large region of land south of Israel. It is probable that the land was named after Ham's son Cush.
- The ancient region of Cush covered an area of land that may have, at different times, included parts of the modern-day countries of Sudan, Egypt, Ethiopia, and possibly, Saudi Arabia.
- Another man named Cush is mentioned in the Psalms. He was a Benjamite.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: **Arabia**, Canaan, Egypt, **Ethiopia**)

Bible References:

- **1 Chronicles 1:8-10**
- **Ezekiel 29:10**
- Genesis 2:13
- Genesis 10:6-7
- **Jeremiah 13:23**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3568, H3569, H3570, 3571

Genesis References:

2:13; 10:6; 10:7; 10:8

Damascus

Definition:

Damascus is the capital city of the country of Syria. It is still in the same location as it was in Bible times.

- Damascus is one of the oldest, continuously inhabited cities in the world.
- During the time of Abraham, Damascus was the capital of the Aram kingdom (located in what is now Syria).
- Throughout the Old Testament, there are many references to the interactions between the inhabitants of Damascus and the people of Israel.
- Several biblical prophecies predict the destruction of Damascus. These prophecies may have been fulfilled when Assyria destroyed the city during Old Testament times, or there may be also be a future, more complete destruction of this city.
- In the New Testament, the Pharisee Saul (later known as Paul) was on his way to arrest Christians in the city of Damascus when Jesus confronted him and caused him to become a believer.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Aram, Assyria, believe, Syria)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 24:23-24
- Acts 9:1-2
- Acts 9:3
- Acts 26:12
- Galatians 1:15-17
- Genesis 14:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1834, G11540

Genesis References:

14:15; 15:2

Dan

Definition:

Dan was Jacob's fifth son. He was Bilhah's first son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- His name sounds similar to the Hebrew word for "judge."
- The tribe of Dan settled in the northern part of Canaan. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Dan" refers to the land given to the tribe of Dan.
- "Dan" was also the name an Israelite city located about 60 miles north of Jerusalem. In the Old Testament times, the city of Dan served as a landmark for the northern boundary of the country of Israel, opposite the city of Beersheba as a landmark for the southern boundary.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Bilhah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 12:35
- 1 Kings 4:25
- Exodus 1:1-5
- Genesis 14:14
- Genesis 30:6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1835, H1839, H2051

Genesis References:

14:14; 30:6; 35:25; 46:23; 49:17

day

Definition:

The term “day” generally refers to the time it takes for the alternating periods of light and darkness in the sky to complete one cycle (that is, 24 hours). However, in the Bible the same term is often used to refer to a shorter period of time (such as the time between sunrise and sunset) or a longer period of time that is often not specified.

- “Day” is sometimes used in contrast to “night.” In these cases, the term refers to the period of time when the sky is light.
- The term may also refer to a specific point in time, such as “today.”
- Sometimes the term “day” is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “last days.” Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate “day” non-figuratively.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally as “day” or “daytime” using the word in your language that refers to the part of the day when there is light.
- Other translations of “day” could include “daytime,” “time,” “season,” “occasion” or “event,” depending on the context.

(See also: **time**, **judgment day**, **last day**)

Bible References:

- **Acts 20:6**
- **Daniel 10:4**
- **Ezra 6:15**
- **Ezra 6:19**
- **Matthew 9:15**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H3118, H6242, G22500

Genesis References:

1:5; 1:8; 1:13; 1:14; 1:16; 1:18; 1:19; 1:23; 1:31; 2:2; 2:3; 2:4; 2:17; 3:5; 3:8; 3:14; 3:17; 4:3; 4:14; 5:1; 5:2; 5:4; 5:5; 5:8; 5:11; 5:14; 5:17; 5:20; 5:23; 5:27; 5:31; 6:3; 6:4; 6:5; 7:4; 7:10; 7:11; 7:12; 7:13; 7:17; 7:24; 8:3; 8:4; 8:6; 8:10; 8:12; 8:14; 8:22; 9:29; 10:25; 11:32; 14:1; 15:18; 17:12; 17:23; 17:26; 18:1; 19:37; 19:38; 21:4; 21:8; 21:26; 21:34; 22:4; 22:14; 24:1; 24:12; 24:42; 24:55; 25:7; 25:24; 25:31; 25:33; 26:1; 26:8; 26:15; 26:18; 26:32; 26:33; 27:2;

27:41; 27:44; 27:45; 29:7; 29:14; 29:20; 29:21; 30:14; 30:32; 30:33; 30:35; 30:36; 31:22; 31:23; 31:39; 31:40; 31:43; 31:48; 32:32; 33:16; 34:25; 35:3; 35:20; 35:28; 35:29; 37:34; 38:12; 39:10; 39:11; 40:4; 40:7; 40:12; 40:13; 40:18; 40:19; 40:20; 41:1; 41:9; 42:13; 42:17; 42:18; 42:32; 43:9; 44:32; 47:8; 47:9; 47:23; 47:26; 47:28; 47:29; 48:15; 48:20; 49:1; 50:3; 50:4; 50:10; 50:20

deceive, lie, deception, illusion

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true, often by telling a “lie.” The act of deceiving someone is called “lying,” “deceit,” or “deception.”

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- To “lie” is to say something that is not true.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: true)

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8
- 1 Timothy 2:14
- 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 6:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G05380, G05390, G13860, G13870, G13880, G18180, G38840, G41050, G41060, G41080, G54220, G54230

Genesis References:

3:13; 21:23; 27:35; 29:25; 31:7; 34:13

declare, proclaim, announce

Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include “proclaim,” “proclamation,” “announce,” and “announcement.”

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: **preach**, decree)

Bible References:

- **1 Chronicles 16:24**
- **1 Corinthians 15:31-32**
- **1 Samuel 24:17-18**
- **Amos 2:16**
- **Ezekiel 5:11-12**
- **Matthew 7:21-23**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0262, H0559, H0816, H0874, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G03120, G05180, G06690, G12290, G13440, G15550, G17180, G18340, G20970, G25110, G26050, G26070, G31400, G36700, G37240, G38220, G38700, G39550, G42960

Genesis References:

22:16; 26:22

decree, decreed

Definition:

The term “decree” means to give an order that must be obeyed. The order itself can also be called a “decree.”

- A “decree” is similar to a “law,” but is generally used more often to refer to something spoken rather than written.
- The term “decree” could be translated as to “order” or to “command” or to “formally require” or to “publicly make a law.”
- God’s laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
- An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.

(See also: command, declare, law)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:13-15
- 1 Kings 8:57-58
- Acts 17:5-7
- Daniel 2:13
- Esther 1:22
- Luke 2:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0633, H1697, H5715, H1504, H1510, H1881, H1882, H1696, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2711, H2782, H2852, H2940, H2941, H2942, H3791, H3982, H4055, H4406, H4687, H4941, H5407, H5713, H6599, H6680, H7010, H8421, G13780

Genesis References:

49:10

deer, doe, fawn, roebuck, stag

Definition:

A deer is a large, graceful, four-legged animal that lives in forests or on mountains. The male animal has large horns or antlers on its head.

- The term “doe” refers to a female deer and a “fawn” is the name of a baby deer.
- The terms “buck” and “stag” refer to a male deer.
- A “roebuck” is the male of the specific variety called “roe deer.”
- Deer have strong, thin legs that help them jump high and run fast.
- Their feet have split hooves which help them walk or climb easily on most any terrain.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 22:34
- Genesis 49:21
- Job 39:2
- Psalms 18:33
- Song of Songs 2:7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0354, H0355, H0365, H3180, H3280, H6643, H6646

Genesis References:

49:21

defile, defiled, desecrate

Definition:

The terms “defile” and “be defiled” refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as “unclean” and “unholy.”
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “defile” can also be translated as “cause to be unclean” or “cause to be unrighteous” or “cause to be ritually unacceptable.”
- To “be defiled” could be translated as “become unclean” or “be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)” or “become ritually unacceptable.”

(See also: **profane**, **clean**)

Bible References:

- **2 Kings 23:8**
- **Exodus 20:24-26**
- Genesis 34:27
- Genesis 49:4
- **Isaiah 43:27-28**
- **Leviticus 11:43-45**
- **Mark 7:14-16**
- **Matthew 15:10**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1351, H1352, H1602, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2930, H2931, G28390, G28400, G33920, G34350

Genesis References:

34:5; 34:13; 34:27; 49:4

delight

Definition:

The term “delight” means great pleasure or great joy.

- To “delight in” something means to “to take pleasure in” or “take joy in” or “be happy about” it. If a person “delights in” something, it means that he enjoys it very much.
- When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called “delightful.”
- The expression “my delight is in the law of Yahweh” could be translated as “the law of Yahweh gives me great joy” or “I love to obey the laws of Yahweh” or “I am happy when I obey Yahweh’s commands.”
- The phrases “take no delight in” and “have no delight in” could be translated as “not at all pleased by” or “not happy about.”
- The phrase “delight himself in” means “he enjoys doing” something or “he is very happy about” something or someone.
- The term “delights” refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as “pleasures” or “things that give joy.”
- An expression such as “I delight to do your will” could also be translated as “I enjoy doing your will” or “I am very happy when I obey you.”

Bible References:

- **Proverbs 8:30**
- **Psalm 1:2**
- **Psalms 119:69-70**
- **Song of Songs 1:3**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1523, H2530, H2531, H2532, H2654, H2655, H2656, H2836, H4574, H5276, H5727, H5730, H6026, H6027, H7306, H7381, H7521, H7522, H8057, H8173, H8191, H8588, H8597

Genesis References:

2:9; 18:12; 34:19; 49:6; 49:15

deliver, deliverer, deliverance, delivered

Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: judge, save)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:10
- Acts 7:35
- Galatians 1:4
- Judges 10:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 16:3 Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- 16:16 They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- 16:17 Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8199, G03250, G05250, G06290, G10800, G13250, G15600, G16590, G18070, G19290, G26730, G30860, G38600, G45060, G49910, G50880, G54830

Genesis References:

14:20; 32:11; 32:30; 37:21; 37:22; 45:7

descend, descendant

Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person’s descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob’s descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as “from the family line of.”

(See also: Abraham, **ancestor**, Jacob, Noah, **twelve tribes of Israel**)

Bible References:

- **1 Kings 9:4-5**
- **Acts 13:23**
- **Deuteronomy 2:20-22**
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:9** “The woman’s **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.”
- **4:9** “I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.”
- **5:10** “Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.”
- **17:7** “Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants**!”
- **18:13** The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- **21:4** God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own **descendants**.
- **48:13** God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0319, H1004, H1121, H1323, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6849, H7611, H8435, G10740, G10850, G46900

Genesis References:

17:12; 21:23

desert, wilderness

Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
- "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as "deserted place" or "remote place" or "uninhabited place."

Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:38
- Exodus 4:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 3:14
- Luke 1:80
- Luke 9:12-14
- Mark 1:3
- Matthew 4:1
- Matthew 11:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G20470, G20480

Genesis References:

14:6; 16:7; 21:14; 21:20; 21:21; 36:24; 37:22

desolate, desolated, desolation, deserted, desolator

Definition:

The terms “desolate” and “desolation,” when used to refer to a place or location, refer to the state or condition of being ruined and left fully or partially uninhabited. The term “desolate,” when referring to a person or group of people, describes a state or condition of ruin, loneliness, and grief.

- If a field where crops are growing is made desolate, it means that something has destroyed the crops, such as insects or an invading army.
- A “desolate region” refers to an area of land that is partially deserted or abandoned and therefore has few people living there.
- If a city is “made desolate” it means that its buildings and goods have been destroyed or stolen, and its people have been killed or captured. The city becomes “empty” and “ruined.” This is similar to the meaning of “devastate” or “devastated,” but with more emphasis on the emptiness.
- A “desolate land” or “wilderness” was often where outcasts (such as lepers) and dangerous animals lived.
- Depending on the context, this term, when referring to a city or region, could be translated as “ruined” or “destroyed” or “laid waste” or “abandoned” or “deserted.”
- Depending on the context, this term, when referring to a person or people group, could be translated as “lonely and outcast” or “deserted.”
- A “desolator” is one who causes desolation.

(See also: desert, **devastate**, **ruin**, **waste**)

Bible References:

- **2 Kings 22:19**
- **Acts 1:20**
- **Daniel 9:17-19**
- **Lamentations 3:11**
- **Luke 11:17**
- **Matthew 12:25**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0490, H0816, H0910, H1565, H2717, H2720, H2721, H2723, H3173, H3341, H3456, H3582, H4875, H4923, H5352, H5800, H7582, H7701, H7722, H8047, H8074, H8076, H8077, G20480, G20490, G20500, G34430

Genesis References:

47:19

destroy, destruction, annihilate

Definition:

The term “destroy” means to completely make an end to something, so that it no longer exists.

- The term “destroyer” means “a person who destroys.”
- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as “the destroyer of the firstborn.” This could be translated as “the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males.”
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called “the Destroyer.” He is the “one who destroys” because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.

(See also: angel, Egypt, firstborn, **Passover**)

Bible References:

- **Exodus 12:23**
- **Hebrews 11:28**
- **Jeremiah 6:26**
- **Judges 16:24**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0006, H0007, H0622, H0398, H1104, H1197, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2000, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H4191, H4229, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5595, H5642, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7667, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8316, H8552, G03550, G03960, G06220, G08530, G13110, G18420, G20490, G25060, G25070, G26470, G26730, G27040, G30890, G36450, G41990, G53510, G53560

Genesis References:

6:13; 6:17; 9:11; 9:15; 13:10; 18:28; 18:31; 18:32; 19:13; 19:14; 19:29; 34:30

devour

Definition:

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

(See also: consume)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:8
- Amos 1:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 21:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0398, H0399, H0400, H0402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G20680, G26660, G27190, G53150

Genesis References:

31:15

discern, discernment, distinguish

Definition:

The term “discern” means to be able to understand something, especially being able to know whether something is right or wrong.

- The term “discernment” refers to understanding and deciding wisely about a certain matter.
- It means to have wisdom and good judgment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “discern” could also be translated as “understand” or “know the difference between” or “distinguish good and evil” or “judge rightly about” or “perceive right from wrong.”
- “Discernment” could be translated as “understanding” or “ability to distinguish good and evil.”

(See also: judge, wise)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 3:7-9
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Proverbs 1:5
- Psalms 19:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0995, H2940, H4209, H5234, H8085, G03500, G12520, G12530, G29240

Genesis References:

41:33; 41:39

disperse, dispersion, scatter, distributed

Definition:

The terms “disperse” and “dispersion” refer to the scattering of people or things into many different directions.

- In the Old Testament, God talks about “dispersing” people, causing them to have to separate and live in different places apart from each other. He did this to punish them for their sin. Perhaps being dispersed would help them repent and start worshiping God again.
- The term “dispersion” is used in the New Testament to refer to Christians who had to leave their homes and move to many different locations to escape persecution.
- The phrase “the dispersion” could be translated as “believers in many different places” or “the people who moved away to live in different nations.”
- The term “disperse” could be translated as “send away into many different places” or “scatter abroad” or “cause to move away to live in different countries.”

(See also: believe, persecute, captive, exile)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:1
- Ezekiel 12:15
- Ezekiel 30:23
- Psalms 18:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2219, H5310, H6327, H6340, H6504, H8600, G12870, G12900, G46500

Genesis References:

9:19; 10:18; 10:32; 11:4; 11:8; 11:9; 49:7

divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer

Definition:

The terms “divination” and “soothsaying” refer to the practice of trying to get information from spirits in the supernatural world. A person who does this is sometimes called a “diviner” or “soothsayer.”

- In Old Testament times, God commanded the Israelites to not practice divination or soothsaying.
- God did permit his people to seek information from him using the Urim and Thummim, which were stones that he had designated to be used by the high priest for that purpose. But he did not allow his people to seek information through the help of evil spirits.
- Pagan diviners used different methods of trying to find out information from the spirit world. Sometimes they would examine the inside parts of a dead animal or throw animal bones on the ground, looking for patterns that they would interpret as messages from their false gods.
- In the New Testament, Jesus and the apostles also rejected divination, sorcery, witchcraft, and magic. All these practices involve using the power of evil spirits and are condemned by God.

(See also: apostle, false god, magic, sorcery)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 6:1-2
- Acts 16:16
- Ezekiel 12:24-25
- Genesis 44:5
- Jeremiah 27:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1870, H4738, H5172, H6049, H7080, H7081, G44360

Genesis References:

30:27; 44:5; 44:15

dominion

Definition:

The term “dominion” refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

- Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
- Satan’s dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ’s death on the cross.
- At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “authority” or “power” or “control.”
- The phrase “have dominion over” could be translated as “rule over” or “manage.”

(See also: **authority**, **power**)

Bible References:

- **1 Peter 5:10-11**
- **Colossians 1:13**
- **Jude 1:25**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1166, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4915, H7287, H7300, H7980, H7985, G26340, G29040, G29610, G29630

Genesis References:

1:26; 1:28; 3:16; 4:7; 24:2; 37:8

donkey, mule

Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:32-34
- 1 Samuel 9:4
- 2 Kings 4:21-22
- Deuteronomy 5:12-14
- Luke 13:15
- Matthew 21:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, G36780, G36880, G52680

Genesis References:

12:16; 16:12; 22:3; 22:5; 24:35; 30:43; 32:5; 32:15; 34:28; 36:24; 42:26; 42:27; 43:18; 43:24; 44:3; 44:13; 45:23; 47:17; 49:11; 49:14

dove, pigeon, turtledove

Definition:

Doves and pigeons are two kinds of small, gray-brown birds that look similar. A dove is often thought of as being lighter in color, almost white.

- Some languages have two different names for them, while others use the same name for both.
- Doves and pigeons were used in sacrifices to God, especially for people who could not afford to buy a larger animal.
- A dove brought the leaf of an olive tree to Noah when the flood waters were going down.
- Doves sometimes symbolize purity, innocence, or peace.
- If doves or pigeons are not known in the language area where the translation is being done, this term could be translated as “a small grayish brown bird called a dove” or “a small gray or brown bird, similar to a (name of local bird)”.
- If both a dove and a pigeon are referred to in the same verse, it is best to use two different words for these birds, if possible.
- A turtledove is a type of dove mentioned in Genesis 15:9, Song of Songs 2:12, and Leviticus 12:6.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: olive, innocent, pure)

Bible References:

- Genesis 8:9
- **Luke 2:22-24**
- **Mark 1:10**
- **Matthew 3:16**
- **Matthew 21:12-14**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1469, H1686, H3123, H8449, G40580

Genesis References:

8:8; 8:9; 8:10; 8:11; 8:12; 15:9

dream

Definition:

A dream is something that people see or experience in their minds while they are sleeping.

- Dreams often seem like they are really happening, but they are not.
- Sometimes God causes people to dream about something so they can learn from it. He may also speak directly to people in their dreams.
- In the Bible, God gave special dreams to certain people to give them a message, often about something that would happen in the future.
- A dream is different from a vision. Dreams happen while a person is asleep, but visions usually happen when a person is awake.

(See also: vision)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:16-17
- Daniel 1:17-18
- Daniel 2:1
- Genesis 37:6
- Genesis 40:4-5
- Matthew 2:13
- Matthew 2:19-21

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 8:2 Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had **dreamed** that he would be their ruler.
- 8:6 One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two **dreams** that disturbed him greatly. None of his advisors could tell him the meaning of the **dreams**.
- 8:7 God had given Joseph the ability to interpret **dreams**, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison. Joseph interpreted the **dreams** for him and said, "God is going to send seven years of plentiful harvests followed by seven years of famine."
- 16:11 So that night, Gideon went down to the camp and heard a Midianite soldier telling his friend about something he had **dreamed**. The man's friend said, "This **dream** means that Gideon's army will defeat the Midianite army!"
- 23:1 He (Joseph) did not want to shame her (Mary), so he planned to quietly divorce her. Before he could do that, an angel came and spoke to him in a **dream**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1957, H2472, H2492, H2493, G17970, G17980, G36770

Genesis References:

20:3; 20:6; 28:12; 31:10; 31:11; 31:24; 37:5; 37:6; 37:8; 37:9; 37:10; 37:19; 37:20; 40:5; 40:8; 40:9; 40:16; 41:1; 41:5; 41:7; 41:8; 41:11; 41:12; 41:15; 41:17; 41:22; 41:25; 41:26; 41:32; 42:9

drink offering

Definition:

A drink offering was a sacrifice to God that involved pouring wine on an altar. It was often offered together with a burnt offering and a grain offering.

- Paul refers to his life as being poured out like a drink offering. This means that he was totally dedicated to serving God and telling people about Jesus, even though he knew he would suffer and probably be killed because of that.
- Jesus' death on the cross was the ultimate drink offering, as his blood was poured out on the cross for our sins.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another way to translate this term could be "offering of grape wine."
- When Paul says he is being "poured out like an offering" this could also be translated as "I am completely committed to teaching God's message to people, just like an offering of wine is poured out completely on the altar."

(See also: burnt offering, **grain offering**)

Bible References:

- **Exodus 25:29**
- **Ezekiel 45:16-17**
- Genesis 35:14
- **Jeremiah 7:16-18**
- **Numbers 5:15**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5257, H5261, H5262

Genesis References:

35:14

drunk, drunkard

Definition:

The term “drunk” means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A “drunkard” is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an “alcoholic.”
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God’s Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate “drunk” could include “inebriated” or “intoxicated” or “having too much alcohol” or “filled with fermented drink.”

(See also: wine)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:11-13
- 1 Samuel 25:36
- Jeremiah 13:13
- Luke 7:34
- Luke 21:34
- Proverbs 23:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5433, H7301, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G31780, G31820, G31830, G31840, G36300, G36320

Genesis References:

9:21; 43:34

earth, land

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world on which human beings and other living things live. In the Bible, this term is sometimes translated as “land” when used in a general way to refer to the ground or the soil, or when used in a specific way to refer to a particular geographical area, usually a country or nation.

- In the Bible, the term “earth” is often paired with the term “heaven” as a way of indicating the abode of humankind on the earth in contrast with the abode of God in heaven.
- This term is usually translated “land” when paired with the name of a people group to denote the territory belonging to those people, such as “the land of Canaan.”
- The term “earthly” is sometimes used to refer to things that are physical and/or visible in contrast to things that are non-physical and/or invisible.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: world, heaven)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 2:11-12
- Daniel 4:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 6:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 6:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0127, H0772, H0776, H0778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G10930, G19190, G27090, G28860, G36250, G45780, G55170

Genesis References:

1:1; 1:2; 1:10; 1:11; 1:12; 1:15; 1:17; 1:20; 1:22; 1:24; 1:25; 1:26; 1:28; 1:29; 1:30; 2:1; 2:4; 2:5; 2:6; 2:11; 2:12; 2:13; 4:12; 4:14; 4:16; 6:4; 6:5; 6:6; 6:11; 6:12; 6:13; 6:17; 7:3; 7:4; 7:6; 7:10; 7:12; 7:14; 7:17; 7:18; 7:19; 7:21; 7:23; 7:24; 8:1; 8:3; 8:7; 8:9; 8:11; 8:13; 8:14; 8:17; 8:19; 8:22; 9:1; 9:2; 9:7; 9:10; 9:11; 9:13; 9:14; 9:16; 9:17; 9:19; 10:5; 10:8; 10:10; 10:11; 10:20; 10:25; 10:31; 10:32; 11:1; 11:2; 11:4; 11:8; 11:9; 11:28; 11:31; 12:1; 12:5; 12:6; 12:7; 12:10; 13:6; 13:7; 13:9; 13:10; 13:12; 13:15; 13:16; 13:17; 14:19; 14:22; 15:7; 15:13; 15:18; 16:3; 17:8; 18:2; 18:18; 18:25; 19:1; 19:23; 19:28; 19:31; 20:1; 20:15; 21:21; 21:23; 21:32; 21:34; 22:2; 22:18; 23:2; 23:7; 23:12; 23:13; 23:15; 23:19; 24:3; 24:4; 24:5; 24:7; 24:37; 24:52; 24:62; 25:6; 26:1; 26:2; 26:3; 26:4; 26:12; 26:22; 27:28; 27:39; 27:46; 28:4; 28:12; 28:13; 28:14; 29:1; 30:25; 31:3; 31:13; 31:18; 32:3; 32:9; 33:3; 33:18; 34:1; 34:2; 34:10; 34:21; 34:30; 35:6; 35:12; 35:16; 35:22; 36:5; 36:6; 36:7; 36:16; 36:17; 36:20; 36:21; 36:30; 36:31; 36:34; 36:43; 37:1; 37:10; 38:9; 40:15; 41:19; 41:29; 41:30; 41:31; 41:33; 41:34; 41:36; 41:41; 41:43; 41:44; 41:45; 41:46; 41:47; 41:48; 41:52; 41:53; 41:54; 41:55; 41:56; 41:57; 42:5; 42:6; 42:7; 42:9; 42:12; 42:13; 42:29; 42:30; 42:32; 42:33; 42:34; 43:1; 43:11; 43:26; 44:8; 44:11; 44:14; 45:6; 45:7; 45:8; 45:10; 45:17; 45:18; 45:19; 45:20; 45:25; 45:26; 46:6; 46:12; 46:20; 46:28; 46:31; 46:34; 47:1; 47:4; 47:6; 47:11; 47:13; 47:14; 47:15; 47:20; 47:27; 47:28; 48:3; 48:4; 48:5; 48:7; 48:12; 48:16; 48:21; 49:15; 49:30; 50:5; 50:7; 50:8; 50:11; 50:13; 50:24

Eden, garden of Eden

Definition:

In ancient times, Eden was a region that had a garden where God placed the first man and woman to live.

- The garden where Adam and Eve lived was only part of Eden.
- The exact location of the region of Eden is not certain, but the Tigris and Euphrates Rivers were flowing through it.
- The word "Eden" comes from a Hebrew word meaning to "take great delight in."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Adam, Euphrates River, Eve)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 28:11-13
- Genesis 2:7-8
- Genesis 2:10
- Genesis 2:15
- Genesis 4:16-17
- Joel 2:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5729, H5731

Genesis References:

2:8; 2:10; 2:15; 3:23; 3:24; 4:16

Edom, Edomite, Idumea

Definition:

Edom was another name for Esau. The region where he lived also became known as “Edom” and later, “Idumea.” The “Edomites” were his descendants.

- The region of Edom changed locations over time. It was mostly located to the south of Israel and eventually extended into southern Judah.
- During New Testament times, Edom covered the southern half of the province of Judea. The Greeks called it “Idumea.”
- The name “Edom” means “red,” which may refer to the fact that Esau was covered with red hair when he was born. Or it may refer to the red lentil stew that Esau traded his birthright for.
- In the Old Testament, the country of Edom is often mentioned as an enemy of Israel.
- The entire book of Obadiah is about the destruction of Edom. Other Old Testament prophets also spoke negative prophecies against Edom.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: adversary, birthright, Esau, **Obadiah**, prophet)

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:30
- Genesis 32:3
- Genesis 36:1
- **Isaiah 11:14-15**
- **Joshua 11:16-17**
- **Obadiah 1:2**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0123, H0130, H8165, G24010

Genesis References:

25:30; 32:3; 36:1; 36:8; 36:9; 36:16; 36:17; 36:19; 36:21; 36:31; 36:32; 36:43

Egypt, Egyptian

Definition:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: **Herod the Great**, **Joseph (NT)**, Nile River, **patriarchs**)

Bible References:

- **1 Samuel 4:7-9**
- **Acts 7:10**
- **Exodus 3:7**
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- **Matthew 2:15**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:4** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **8:8** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **8:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to __Egypt __ to buy food.
- **8:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **9:1** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4713, H4714, G01240, G01250

Genesis References:

10:6; 10:13; 12:10; 12:11; 12:12; 12:14; 13:1; 13:10; 15:18; 16:1; 16:3; 21:9; 21:21; 25:12; 25:18; 26:2; 37:25; 37:28; 37:36; 39:1; 39:2; 39:5; 40:1; 40:5; 41:8; 41:19; 41:29; 41:30; 41:33; 41:34; 41:36; 41:41; 41:43; 41:44; 41:45; 41:46; 41:48; 41:53; 41:54; 41:55; 41:56; 41:57; 42:1; 42:2; 42:3; 43:2; 43:15; 43:32; 45:2; 45:4; 45:8; 45:9; 45:13; 45:18; 45:19; 45:20; 45:23; 45:25; 45:26; 46:3; 46:4; 46:6; 46:7; 46:8; 46:20; 46:26; 46:27; 46:34; 47:6; 47:11; 47:13; 47:14; 47:15; 47:20; 47:21; 47:26; 47:27; 47:28; 47:29; 47:30; 48:5; 50:3; 50:7; 50:11; 50:14; 50:22; 50:26

Elam, Elamites

Definition:

Elam was a son of Shem and a grandson of Noah.

- The descendants of Elam were called “Elamites,” and they lived in a region that was also called “Elam.”
- The region of Elam was located southeast of the Tigris River in what is now western Iran.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Noah, Shem)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:17-19
- Acts 2:9
- Ezra 8:4-7
- Isaiah 22:6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5867, H5962, G16390

Genesis References:

10:22; 14:1; 14:9

elder

Definition:

The term “elder” refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community and to be respected for their wisdom and experience.

- The term “elder” came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish “elders” continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian “elders” gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as “respected leaders” or “spiritually mature men leading the church.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 3:1-3
- 1 Timothy 4:14
- Acts 5:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1419, H2205, H7868, G10870, G31870, G42440, G42450, G48500

Genesis References:

50:7

Enoch

Definition:

Enoch was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One man named Enoch was descended from Seth. He was the great grandfather of Noah.
- This Enoch had a close relationship with God and when he was 365 years old, God took him to heaven while he was still alive.
- A different man named Enoch was a son of Cain.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Cain, Seth)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:3
- Genesis 5:18-20
- Genesis 5:24
- Jude 1:14
- Luke 3:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2585, G18020

Genesis References:

4:17; 4:18; 5:18; 5:19; 5:21; 5:22; 5:23; 5:24; 25:4; 46:9

envy, covet, jealous, jealousy

Definition:

The terms “envy” and “envious” refer to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person’s admirable qualities or abilities. The term “covet” means to strongly desire to have something.

- Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person’s success, good fortune, possessions, or abilities.
- Coveting is a strong desire to have someone else’s property, or even someone else’s spouse.
- In some contexts the terms “jealous” and “jealousy” can mean “envy.”

Translation Suggestions

- When the terms “jealous” and “jealousy” refer to being wrongfully “envious” of someone the terms “envious” or “envy” could be used if the context permits.

(See also: jealous)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- 1 Peter 2:1
- Exodus 20:17
- Mark 7:20-23
- Proverbs 3:31-32
- Romans 1:29

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0183, H1214, H1215, H2530, H3415, H5869, H7065, H7068, G08660, G19370, G22050, G22060, G37130, G37880, G41230, G41240, G41900, G53540, G53550, G53660

Genesis References:

26:14; 30:1

Ephraim, Ephraimite

Definition:

Ephraim was the younger son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the tribes of Israel.

- The name Ephraim sounds like the Hebrew word meaning “to make fruitful.”
- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel (similar to how the name Judah is sometimes used to refer to the whole southern kingdom of Israel).

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Joseph, Manasseh, **kingdom of Israel**, **twelve tribes of Israel**)

Bible References:

- **1 Chronicles 6:66-69**
- **2 Chronicles 13:4-5**
- **Ezekiel 37:16**
- Genesis 41:52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- **John 11:54**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0669, H0673, G21870

Genesis References:

41:52; 46:20; 48:1; 48:5; 48:13; 48:14; 48:17; 48:20; 50:23

Ephrath, Ephrathah

Definition:

The name “Ephrathah” refers to a clan of Judah as well as to the territory that they occupied, which was centered around the town of Bethlehem. Sometimes the name is shortened to “Ephrath.”

- The clan of Ephrathah was probably named after a woman named “Ephrathah,” who was a wife of Caleb and the grandmother of the founders of the towns of Kiriath Jearim, Bethlehem, and Beth Gader (1 Chron 2:50-51).
- The towns of Bethlehem (Gen 35:19;48:7) and Kirjath Jearim (Psalm 132:6) are both sometimes referred to as “Ephrathah.”
- Rachel died on the way to a town called “Ephrathah.”
- It is possible that there was a different town called “Ephrathah” further north near Ramah, and that Rachel was buried near there (1 Sam 10:2; Jer 31:15).

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethlehem, Boaz, Caleb, David, Israel)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0672, H0673

Genesis References:

35:16; 35:19; 48:7

Esau

Definition:

Esau was one of the twin sons of Isaac and Rebekah. He was the first baby born to them. His twin brother was Jacob.

- Esau sold his birthright to his brother Jacob in exchange for a bowl of food.
- Since Esau was born first, his father Isaac was supposed to give him a special blessing. But Jacob tricked Isaac into giving him that blessing instead. At first Esau was so angry that he wanted to kill Jacob, but later he forgave him.
- Esau had many children and grandchildren, and these descendants formed a large people group living in the land of Canaan.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Edom, Isaac, Jacob, Rebekah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 25:29-30
- Genesis 26:34
- Genesis 27:11-12
- Genesis 32:5
- **Hebrews 12:17**
- **Romans 9:13**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 6:7 When Rebekah's babies were born, the older son came out red and hairy, and they named him **Esau**.
- 7:2 So **Esau** gave Jacob his rights as the oldest son.
- 7:4 When Isaac felt the goat hair and smelled the clothes, he thought it was **Esau** and blessed him.
- 7:5 **Esau** hated Jacob because Jacob had stolen his rights as oldest son and also his blessing.
- 7:10 But **Esau** had already forgiven Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6215, G22690

Genesis References:

25:25; 25:26; 25:27; 25:28; 25:29; 25:30; 25:32; 25:34; 26:34; 27:1; 27:5; 27:6; 27:11; 27:15; 27:19; 27:21; 27:22; 27:23; 27:24; 27:30; 27:32; 27:34; 27:37; 27:38; 27:41; 27:42; 28:5; 28:6; 28:8; 28:9; 32:3; 32:4; 32:6; 32:8; 32:11; 32:13; 32:17; 32:18; 32:19; 33:1; 33:4; 33:9; 33:15; 33:16; 35:1; 35:29; 36:1; 36:2; 36:4; 36:5; 36:6; 36:8; 36:9; 36:10; 36:12; 36:13; 36:14; 36:15; 36:17; 36:18; 36:19; 36:40; 36:43

eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”

- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: **David**, reign, **life**)

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:8
- Genesis 48:4
- **Exodus 15:17**
- **2 Samuel 3:28-30**
- **1 Kings 2:32-33**
- **Job 4:20-21**
- **Psalms 21:4**
- **Isaiah 9:6-7**
- **Isaiah 40:27-28**
- **Daniel 7:18**
- **Luke 18:18**
- **Acts 13:46**
- **Romans 5:21**
- **Hebrews 6:19-20**
- **Hebrews 10:11-14**
- **1 John 1:2**
- **1 John 5:12**
- **Revelation 1:4-6**
- **Revelation 22:3-5**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?”
- **28:1** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God’s laws.”

- **28:10** Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G01260, G01650, G01660, G13360

Genesis References:

3:22; 6:3; 9:12; 9:16; 13:15; 17:7; 17:8; 17:13; 17:19; 21:33; 48:4

Euphrates River, the River

Definition:

The Euphrates is the name of one of the four rivers that flowed through the Garden of Eden. It is the river that is most often mentioned in the Bible.

- The modern day river named Euphrates is located in the Middle East and is the longest and most important river in Asia.
- Together with the Tigris River, the Euphrates borders a region of land known as Mesopotamia.
- The ancient city of Ur where Abraham came from was at the mouth of the Euphrates River.
- This river was one of the boundaries of the land that God promised to give to Abraham (Genesis 15:18).
- Sometimes the Euphrates is simply called “the River.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 9:25-26
- Exodus 23:30-33
- Genesis 2:13-14
- Isaiah 7:20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5104, H6578, G21660

Genesis References:

2:14; 15:18

Eve

Definition:

This was the name of the first woman. Her name means “life” or “living.”

- God formed Eve from a rib that he took out of Adam.
- Eve was created to be Adam’s “helper.” She came alongside Adam to assist him in the work that God gave them to do.
- Eve was tempted by Satan (in the form of a snake) and was the first to sin by eating the fruit that God said not to eat.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Adam, life, Satan)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 2:13
- 2 Corinthians 11:3
- Genesis 3:20
- Genesis 4:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 1:13 Then God took one of Adam’s ribs and made it into a woman and brought her to him.
- 2:2 But there was a crafty snake in the garden. He asked the woman, “Did God really tell you not to eat the fruit from any of the trees in the garden?”
- 2:11 The man named his wife **Eve**, which means “life-giver,” because she would become the mother of all people.
- 21:1 God promised that a descendant of **Eve** would be born who would crush the snake’s head.
- 48:2 Satan spoke through the snake in the garden in order to deceive **Eve**.
- 49:8 When Adam and **Eve** sinned, it affected all of their descendants.
- 50:16 Because Adam and **Eve** disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2332, G20960

Genesis References:

3:20; 4:1

evil, wicked, unpleasant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: **disobey**, sin, good, righteous, **demon**)

Bible References:

- **1 Samuel 24:11**
- **1 Timothy 6:10**
- **3 John 1:10**
- Genesis 2:17
- Genesis 6:5-6
- **Job 1:1**
- **Job 8:20**
- **Judges 9:57**
- **Luke 6:22-23**
- **Matthew 7:11-12**
- **Proverbs 3:7**
- **Psalms 22:16-17**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 2:4 “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- 3:1 After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- 3:2 But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- 4:2 God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- 8:12 “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- 14:2 They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- 17:1 But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- 18:11 In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- 29:8 The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- 45:2 They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!”
- 50:17 He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H0605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G00920, G01130, G04590, G09320, G09870, G09880, G14260, G25490, G25510, G25540, G25550, G25560, G25570, G25590, G25600, G26350, G26360, G41510, G41890, G41900, G41910, G53370

Genesis References:

2:9; 2:17; 3:5; 3:22; 6:5; 8:21; 13:13; 18:23; 18:25; 19:7; 19:9; 19:19; 21:11; 21:12; 24:50; 26:29; 28:8; 31:7; 31:24; 31:29; 31:52; 37:2; 37:20; 37:33; 38:7; 38:10; 39:9; 41:3; 41:4; 41:19; 41:20; 41:21; 41:27; 44:4; 44:5; 44:34; 47:9; 48:16; 48:17; 50:15; 50:17; 50:20

ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearer, sheepskin

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Israel, lamb, sacrifice, shepherd)

Bible References:

- Acts 8:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 2:14
- Luke 15:5
- Mark 6:34
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 9:12 One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- 17:2 David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- 30:3 To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.

- 38:8 Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G41650, G42620, G42630

Genesis References:

15:9; 20:14; 21:27; 21:28; 21:29; 21:30; 22:13; 29:2; 29:3; 29:6; 29:7; 29:8; 29:9; 29:10; 30:32; 31:19; 31:38; 32:14; 33:13; 38:12; 38:13

family, household

Definition:

The term “family” refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. In the Bible, this term sometimes includes other close relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- In biblical times, usually the oldest man was the major authority of a family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as “clan” or “household” that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The New Testament often uses terms related to the concept of “family” to refer to the Church, meaning people who believe in Jesus.

(See also: clan, ancestor, house)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:1-2
- 1 Samuel 18:18
- Exodus 1:21
- Joshua 2:12-13
- Luke 2:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0001, H0251, H0272, H0504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, G10850, G36140, G36240, G39650

Genesis References:

11:28; 12:1; 24:4; 24:7; 31:3; 31:13; 32:9; 43:7; 43:8

famine

Definition:

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
- In the Bible, God sometimes caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- Acts 7:11
- Genesis 12:10
- Genesis 45:6
- Jeremiah 11:21-23
- Luke 4:25
- Matthew 24:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3720, H7458, H7459, G30420

Genesis References:

12:10; 26:1; 41:27; 41:30; 41:31; 41:36; 41:54; 41:56; 41:57; 42:5; 42:19; 43:1; 45:6; 45:11; 47:4; 47:13; 47:20

favor, favorable, favoritism

Definition:

The term “favor” generally means approval. Someone who favors another person regards that person positively and approves of them.

- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means that both God and others approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.
- A “favor” can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.
- The term “favoritism” means an attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include “approval” or “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite,” which means to prefer above all others.

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:7
- 2 Corinthians 1:11
- Acts 24:27
- Genesis 41:16
- Genesis 47:25
- Genesis 50:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H7521, H7522, H7965, G11840, G36850, G43800, G43820, G54850, G54860

Genesis References:

4:7; 6:8; 12:13; 18:3; 19:19; 30:27; 32:5; 33:8; 33:10; 33:11; 33:15; 34:11; 39:4; 39:21; 47:25; 47:29; 50:4

fear, afraid, frighten

Definition:

The terms “fear” often refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term “fear” can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “fear” can be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “be afraid;” “deeply respect,” or “deep respect;” “revere,” or “reverence;” or perhaps “be in awe of.”
- The sentence “The fear of God fell on all of them” might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear Yahweh” could be translated as “reverence Yahweh” or “deeply respect Yahweh.”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”

(See also: awe, Yahweh, Lord, marvel, power)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- Acts 2:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 6:14
- Jonah 1:9
- Luke 12:5
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0367, H0926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373,

H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G08700, G11670, G11680, G11690, G16300, G17190, G21240, G21250, G29620, G53980, G53990, G54000, G54010

Genesis References:

3:10; 9:2; 15:1; 18:15; 19:30; 20:8; 20:11; 21:17; 22:12; 26:7; 26:24; 28:17; 31:31; 31:42; 31:53; 32:7; 32:11; 35:17; 42:18; 42:35; 43:18; 43:23; 46:3; 50:19; 50:21

feast, feasting

Definition:

The term “feast” is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to “feast” could also be translated as to “eat lavishly” or to “celebrate by eating lots of food” or to “eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: **festival**, **banquet**)

Bible References:

- **2 Peter 2:12-14**
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- **Jude 1:12-13**
- **Luke 2:43**
- **Luke 14:7-9**
- **Matthew 22:1**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G00260, G10620, G11730, G18590, G21650, G49100

Genesis References:

19:3; 21:8; 26:30; 29:22; 40:20

fig

Definition:

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

Bible References:

- Habakkuk 3:17
- James 3:12
- Luke 13:7
- Mark 11:14
- Matthew 7:17
- Matthew 21:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H1690, H6291, H8384, G36530, G48080, G48100

Genesis References:

3:7

firstborn

Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “first-born” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- Other ways to translate this term could include “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: inherit, sacrifice, **son**)

Bible References:

- **Colossians 1:15**
- Genesis 4:3-5
- Genesis 29:26-27
- Genesis 43:33
- **Luke 2:6-7**
- **Revelation 1:5**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G44160, G52070

Genesis References:

4:4; 10:15; 22:21; 25:13; 27:19; 27:32; 29:26; 35:23; 36:15; 38:6; 38:7; 41:51; 43:33; 46:8; 48:14; 48:18; 49:3

flock, herd

Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.

Translation Suggestions

- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals, and use the appropriate term for each kind of animal.
- If your language uses the same word to refer to both groups of sheep and cattle, then you may need to say “groups of sheep” where the Bible says only “flocks,” and “groups of cattle” where the Bible says only “herds.” Alternatively, if the Biblical context does not demand differentiation (if the text simply says “flocks and herds,” meaning all their domesticated animals) you may just use the one word once.

(See also: goat, cow, pig, sheep)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 2:8-9
- Matthew 8:30
- Matthew 26:31

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G00340, G41670, G41680

Genesis References:

4:2; 4:4; 12:16; 13:5; 21:28; 24:35; 26:14; 27:9; 29:2; 29:3; 29:8; 30:31; 30:32; 30:36; 30:38; 30:39; 30:40; 30:41; 30:42; 30:43; 31:4; 31:8; 31:10; 31:12; 31:38; 31:41; 31:43; 32:5; 32:7; 32:16; 32:19; 33:13; 34:28; 37:2; 37:12; 37:14; 38:17; 45:10; 46:32; 46:34; 47:1; 47:3; 47:4; 47:17; 50:8

flood

Definition:

The term “flood” literally refers to a large amount of water that completely covers over the land.

- This term is also used figuratively to refer to an overwhelming amount of something, especially something that happens suddenly.
- In Noah’s time, people had become so evil that God caused a worldwide flood to come over the entire surface of the earth, even covering the mountaintops. Everyone who was not in the boat with Noah drowned. All other floods cover a much smaller land area.
- This term can also be an action, as in “the land was flooded by river water.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the literal meaning of “flood” could include “an overflowing of water” or “large amounts of water.”
- The figurative comparison “like a flood” could keep the literal term, or a substitute term could be used that refers to something that has a flowing aspect to it, such as a river.
- For the expression “like a flood of water” where water is already mentioned, the word “flood” could be translated as “an overwhelming amount” or “an overflowing.”
- This term can be used as a metaphor, as in “do not let the flood sweep over me,” which means “do not let these overwhelming disasters happen to me” or “don’t let me be devastated by disasters” or “don’t let your anger devastate me.” (See: Metaphor)
- The figurative expression “I flood my bed with tears” could be translated as “my tears cover my bed with water like a flood.”

(See also: ark, Noah)

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:10
- Genesis 7:6-7
- Luke 6:46-48
- Matthew 7:24-25
- Matthew 7:26-27
- Matthew 24:37-39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3999, G26270

Genesis References:

6:17; 7:6; 7:7; 7:10; 7:17; 9:11; 9:15; 9:28; 10:1; 10:32; 11:10

flute, pipe

Definition:

In Bible times, pipes were musical instruments made of bone or wood with holes to allow the sound to come out. A flute was a kind of pipe.

- Most pipes had reeds made out of a kind of thick grass that vibrated as air was blown over it.
- A pipe without any reeds was often called a “flute.”
- A shepherd played a pipe to calm his flocks of sheep.
- Pipes and flutes were used for playing sad or joyful music.

(See also: flock, shepherd)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 14:7
- 1 Kings 1:38-40
- Daniel 3:3-5
- Luke 7:31-32
- Matthew 9:23
- Matthew 11:17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4953, H5748, H2485, H2490, G08320, G08340, G08360

Genesis References:

4:21

fool, foolish, folly

Definition:

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “fool” could be translated as “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: wise)

Bible References:

- **Ecclesiastes 1:17**
- **Ephesians 5:15**
- **Galatians 3:3**
- Genesis 31:28
- **Matthew 7:26**
- **Matthew 25:8**
- **Proverbs 13:16**
- **Psalms 49:13**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0191, H0196, H0200, H1198, H1984, H2973, H3684, H3687, H3688, H3689, H3690, H5014, H5034, H5036, H5039, H5528, H5529, H5530, H5531, H6612, H8417, H8602, H8604, G04530, G04540, G07810, G08010, G08770, G08780, G27570, G31500, G31540, G34710, G34720, G34730, G34740, G39120

Genesis References:

31:28

forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned

Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. “Forgiveness” is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean “cancel,” as in the expression “forgive a debt.”
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus’ sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term “pardon” means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as “forgive” but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “forgive” could be translated as “pardon” or “cancel” or “release” or “not hold against” (someone).
- The term “forgiveness” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “practice of not resenting” or “declaring (someone) as not guilty” or “the act of pardoning.”
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate “pardon.”

(See also: guilt)

Bible References:

- Genesis 50:17
- **Numbers 14:17-19**
- **Deuteronomy 29:20-21**
- **Joshua 24:19-20**
- **2 Kings 5:17-19**
- **Psalms 25:11**
- **Psalms 25:17-19**

- **Isaiah 55:6-7**
- **Isaiah 40:2**
- **Luke 5:21**
- **Acts 8:22**
- **Ephesians 4:31-32**
- **Colossians 3:12-14**
- **1 John 2:12**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 7:10 But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- 13:15 Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- 17:13 David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.
- 21:5 In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.
- 29:1 One day Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?"
- 29:8 I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- 38:5 Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G85900, G86300, G54830

Genesis References:

18:24; 18:26; 50:17

forsake, forsaken, leave

Definition:

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used in the past tense, as in “he has forsaken you” or as in referring to someone who has “been forsaken.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:11-13
- Daniel 11:29-30
- Genesis 24:27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- Matthew 27:45-47
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 71:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G06460, G06570, G08630, G14590, G26410

Genesis References:

24:27; 28:15

fountain, source, spring

Definition:

The terms “fountain” and “spring” usually refer to a large amount of water that flows out naturally from the ground.

- These words are also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to blessings flowing from God or to refer to something that cleanses and purifies.
- In modern times, a fountain is often a manmade object that has water flowing out of it, such as a drinking fountain. Make sure that the translation of this term refers to a natural source of flowing water.
- Compare the translation of this term with how the term “flood” is translated.

(See also: flood)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:17
- Genesis 7:11
- Genesis 8:2
- Genesis 24:13
- Genesis 24:42
- James 3:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0953, H1530, H1543, H3222, H4002, H4161, H4456, H4599, H4726, H5033, H5869, H5927, H6524, H6779, H8444, H8666, G02420, G40770

Genesis References:

7:11; 8:2; 16:7; 24:13; 24:29; 24:30; 24:42; 24:43; 24:45; 36:24; 49:22

fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

Definition:

The term “fruit” refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” produces a lot of fruit. Something that is “unfruitful” does not produce fruit.

- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the phrase “the fruit of every tree” refers to the fruit that comes from these trees.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.

Translation Suggestions:

- When the term “fruit” refers to what a specific plant produces, the specific term for the fruit of that plant can be used, otherwise, use a general word for the edible things that plants produce, if possible. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- When used literally, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much fruit.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When used literally, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit.”

(See also: descendant, grain, grape, Holy Spirit, vine, womb)

Bible References:

- Genesis 1:11
- Matthew 7:17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0004, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8393, H8570, G10810, G25900, G25920, G25930, G37030, G50520, G53520

Genesis References:

1:11; 1:12; 1:22; 1:28; 1:29; 3:2; 3:3; 3:6; 4:3; 8:17; 9:1; 9:7; 17:6; 17:20; 26:22; 28:3; 30:2; 35:11; 41:52; 47:27; 48:4; 49:22

Gad

Definition:

Gad was Jacob's seventh son. He was Zilpah's first son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Gad" or "Gad" or "Gad."
- The name Gad is similar to the Hebrew word for "good fortune."
- The tribe of Gad settled on the eastern side of the Jordan River between the Sea of Galilee and the Dead Sea. This was to the north of Reuben and south of half of the tribe of Manasseh. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Gad" refers to the land given to the tribe of Gad.
- Another man in the Bible named Gad was a prophet who confronted King David for his sin of taking a census of the Israelite people.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Zilpah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:18
- Exodus 1:1-5
- Genesis 30:11
- Joshua 1:12
- Joshua 21:38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1410, H1425, G10450

Genesis References:

30:11; 35:26; 46:16; 49:19

gate, gate bar, gatekeeper, gatepost, gateway

Definition:

The term “gate” refers to an access point in a fence, wall, or other kind of barrier that surrounds a house, property, city, etc.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A “bar” for a gate refers to a wood or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the doors of the gate cannot be opened from the outside.
- In Bible times, a city gate was often the social center for that town or city. It was a place where news of current events was exchanged between people, where business transactions occurred, and where civil judgments were made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:

- Acts 9:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:1
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 7:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G23740, G44390, G44400

Genesis References:

19:1; 22:17; 23:10; 23:18; 24:60; 28:17; 34:20; 34:24; 38:14

Gaza

Definition:

During Bible times, Gaza was a prosperous Philistine city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, about 38 kilometers south of Ashdod. It was one of the Philistines' five major cities.

- Because of its location, Gaza was a key seaport where commercial activities took place between many different people groups and nations.
- Today, the city of Gaza is still an important seaport in the Gaza Strip, which is a region of land located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea bordered by Israel on the north and east, and by Egypt on the south.
- Gaza was the city that the Philistines took Samson to after they had captured him.
- Philip the evangelist was walking along the desert road to Gaza when he met an Ethiopian eunuch.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: **Ashdod**, **Philip**, Philistines, **Ethiopia**, **Gath**)

Bible References:

- **1 Kings 4:24-25**
- **Acts 8:26**
- Genesis 10:19
- **Joshua 10:40-41**
- **Judges 6:3-4**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5804, H5841, G10480

Genesis References:

10:19

generation

Definition:

The term “generation” in this sense refers to a period of time approximately equal to the lifetime of a person. This could be as long as 100 years. This period of time also came to be measured by the time between the adulthood of one person and the adulthood of his or her offspring, or a 30–40-year time span.

Translation Suggestions

- When referring to the past, “generations” could be translated as “during the times of our ancestors” or “when people lived before us.”
- When referring to the future, “generations” could be translated as “lifespans” or “times of people who will come afterwards” or “when our descendants are living.”
- The phrase “in his own generation” could be translated as “while he lived” or “during his time”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as “from the time of people living now and for always” or “as long as people live on the earth” or “from now to all future time periods” or “for all time.”

(See also: descendant, ancestor)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1755, H8435, G01650, G10740

Genesis References:

2:4; 5:1; 6:9; 7:1; 9:12; 10:1; 10:32; 11:10; 11:27; 15:16; 17:7; 17:9; 17:12; 25:12; 25:13; 25:19; 36:1; 36:9; 37:2

Gerar

Definition:

Gerar was a city and region in the land of Canaan, located southwest of Hebron and northwest of Beersheba.

- King Abimelech was the ruler of Gerar when Abraham and Sarah settled there.
- The Philistines dominated the region of Gerar during the time that the Israelites were living in Canaan.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abimelech, Beersheba, Hebron, Philistines)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 14:12-13
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1642

Genesis References:

10:19; 20:1; 20:2; 26:1; 26:6; 26:17; 26:20; 26:26

Gilead, Gileadite

Definition:

Gilead was the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region was also referred to as the "hill country of Gilead" or "Mount Gilead."
- "Gilead" was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Gad, **Jephthah**, Manasseh, Reuben, **twelve tribes of Israel**)

Bible References:

- **1 Chronicles 2:22**
- **1 Samuel 11:1**
- **Amos 1:3**
- **Deuteronomy 2:36-37**
- Genesis 31:21
- Genesis 37:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1568, H1569

Genesis References:

31:21; 31:23; 31:25; 37:25

Girgashites

Definition:

The Girgashites were a people group living near the Sea of Galilee in the land of Canaan.

- They were descendants of Ham's son Canaan and so were one of the many people groups who were also known as "Canaanites."
- God promised the Israelites that he would help them defeat the Girgashites and other Canaanite people groups.
- Like all the Canaanite peoples, the Girgashites worshiped false gods and did immoral things as part of that worship.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Ham, Noah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:14
- Deuteronomy 7:1
- Genesis 10:16
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Joshua 24:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1622

Genesis References:

10:16; 15:21

goat, goatskin, scapegoat, kid

Definition:

A goat is a medium-sized, four-legged animal which is similar to a sheep and is raised primarily for its milk and meat. A baby goat is called a "kid."

- Like sheep, goats were important animals of sacrifice, especially at Passover.
- Although goats and sheep can be very similar, these are some ways that they are different:
  - Goats have coarse hair; sheep have wool.
  - The tail of a goat stands up; the tail of a sheep hangs down.
  - Sheep usually like to stay with their herd, but goats are more independent and tend to wander away from their herd.
- In Bible times, goats were often the main source of milk in Israel.
- Goat skins were used for tent coverings and to make bags for holding wine.
- In both the Old and New Testaments, the goat was used as a symbol for unrighteous people, perhaps because of its tendency to wander away from the one taking care of it.
- The Israelites also used goats as symbolic sin bearers. When one goat was sacrificed, the priest would lay his hands on a second, live goat, and send it into the desert as a symbol that the animal was bearing the people's sins.

(See also: flock, sacrifice, sheep, righteous, wine)

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:3-4
- Genesis 30:32
- Genesis 31:10
- Genesis 37:31
- Leviticus 3:12-14
- Matthew 25:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0689, H1423, H1429, H3277, H3629, H5795, H5796, H6260, H6629, H6842, H7716, H8163, H8166, H8495, G01220, G20550, G20560, G51310

Genesis References:

15:9; 27:9; 27:16; 30:32; 30:33; 30:35; 31:10; 31:12; 31:38; 32:14; 37:31; 38:17; 38:20; 38:23

God

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "God" refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God's personal name is "Yahweh."

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as "Yahweh," which means "he is" or "I am" or "the One who (always) exists."
- The Bible also teaches about false "gods," which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "God" could include "Deity" or "Creator" or "Supreme Being" or "Supreme Creator" or "Infinite Sovereign Lord" or "Eternal Supreme Being."
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for "God" in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for "God" and "god." NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word "god," it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase "I will be their God and they will be my people" could also be translated as "I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: create, false god, **God the Father**, **Holy Spirit**, false god, **Son of God**, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- **1 John 1:7**
- **1 Samuel 10:7-8**
- **1 Timothy 4:10**

- Colossians 1:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 3:1-2
- Genesis 1:2
- Hosea 4:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 2:20
- Jeremiah 5:5
- John 1:3
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Lamentations 3:43
- Micah 4:5
- Philippians 2:6
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 47:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 1:1 **God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- 1:15 **God** made man and woman in his own image.
- 5:3 "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- 9:14 **God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- 10:2 Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- 16:1 The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- 22:7 "You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- 24:9 There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- 25:7 "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- 28:1 "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- 49:9 But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- 50:16 But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0136, H0305, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G01120, G05160, G09320, G09350, G10960, G11400, G20980, G21240, G21280, G21500, G21520, G21530, G22990, G23040, G23050, G23120, G23130, G23140, G23150, G23160, G23170, G23180, G23190, G23200, G33610, G37850, G41510, G52070, G53770, G54630, G55370, G55380

Genesis References:

1:1; 1:2; 1:3; 1:4; 1:5; 1:6; 1:7; 1:8; 1:9; 1:10; 1:11; 1:12; 1:14; 1:16; 1:17; 1:18; 1:20; 1:21; 1:22; 1:24; 1:25; 1:26; 1:27; 1:28; 1:29; 1:31; 2:2; 2:3; 2:4; 2:5; 2:7; 2:8; 2:9; 2:15; 2:16; 2:18; 2:19; 2:21; 2:22; 3:1; 3:3; 3:5; 3:8; 3:9; 3:13; 3:14; 3:21; 3:22; 3:23; 4:25; 5:1; 5:22; 5:24; 6:2; 6:4; 6:9; 6:11; 6:12; 6:13; 6:22; 7:9; 7:16; 8:1; 8:15; 9:1; 9:6; 9:8; 9:12; 9:16; 9:17; 9:26; 9:27; 14:18; 14:19; 14:20; 14:22; 16:13; 17:1; 17:3; 17:7; 17:8; 17:9; 17:15; 17:18; 17:19; 17:22; 17:23; 19:29; 20:3; 20:6; 20:11; 20:13; 20:17; 21:2; 21:4; 21:6; 21:12; 21:17; 21:19; 21:20; 21:22; 21:23; 21:33; 22:1; 22:3; 22:8; 22:9; 22:12; 23:6; 24:3; 24:7; 24:12; 24:27; 24:42; 24:48; 25:11; 26:24; 27:20; 27:28; 28:3; 28:4; 28:12; 28:13; 28:17; 28:20; 28:21; 28:22; 30:2; 30:6; 30:8; 30:17; 30:18; 30:20; 30:22; 30:23; 31:5; 31:7; 31:9; 31:11; 31:13; 31:16; 31:24; 31:29; 31:42; 31:50; 31:53; 32:1; 32:2; 32:9; 32:28; 32:30; 33:5; 33:10; 33:11; 33:20; 35:1; 35:3; 35:5; 35:7; 35:9; 35:10; 35:11; 35:13; 35:15; 39:9; 40:8; 41:16; 41:25; 41:28; 41:32; 41:38; 41:39; 41:51; 41:52; 42:18; 42:28; 43:14; 43:23; 43:29; 44:16; 45:5; 45:7; 45:8; 45:9; 46:1; 46:2; 46:3; 48:3; 48:9; 48:11; 48:15; 48:20; 48:21; 49:25; 50:17; 50:19; 50:20; 50:24; 50:25

god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term "goddess" refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God's people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as "idolatrous" if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An "idolatrous kingdom" means a "kingdom of people who worship idols" or a "kingdom of people who worship earthly things."
- The term "idolatrous figure" is another word for a "carved image" or an "idol."

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for "god" or "false god" in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term "idol" could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case "g" is used to refer to false gods, and upper case "G" is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: God, **Asherah**, **Baal**, **Molech**, **demon**, image, kingdom, worship)

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:2
- **Exodus 32:1**
- **Psalms 31:6**
- **Psalms 81:8-10**
- **Isaiah 44:20**
- **Acts 7:41**
- **Acts 7:43**
- **Acts 15:20**
- **Acts 19:27**
- **Romans 2:22**
- **Galatians 4:8-9**
- **Galatians 5:19-21**
- **Colossians 3:5**
- **1 Thessalonians 1:9**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:2** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0367, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G14930, G14940, G14950, G14960, G14970, G22990, G27120

Genesis References:

31:30; 31:32; 31:53; 35:2; 35:4

gold, golden

Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term "golden" or "gold-covered" or "gold-overlaid" could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as "gold-colored," which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: altar, ark of the covenant, false god, silver, **tabernacle**, **temple**)

Bible References:

- **1 Peter 1:7**
- **1 Timothy 2:8-10**
- **2 Chronicles 1:15**
- **Acts 3:6**
- **Daniel 2:32**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G55520, G55530, G55540, G55570

Genesis References:

2:11; 2:12; 13:2; 24:22; 24:35; 24:53; 41:42; 44:8

Gomorrah

Definition:

Gomorrah was a city located in a fertile valley near Sodom, where Abraham's nephew Lot chose to live.

- The exact location of Gomorrah and Sodom is unknown, but there are indications that they may have been located directly south of the Salt Sea, near the Valley of Siddim.
- There were many kings at war in the region where Sodom and Gomorrah were located.
- When Lot's family was captured in a conflict between Sodom and other cities, Abraham and his men rescued them.
- Not long after that, Sodom and Gomorrah were destroyed by God because of the wickedness of the people who lived there.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Babylon, Lot, Salt Sea, Sodom)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:6
- Genesis 10:19
- Genesis 14:1-2
- Genesis 18:21
- Isaiah 1:9
- Matthew 10:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6017

Genesis References:

10:19; 13:10; 14:2; 14:8; 14:10; 14:11; 18:20; 19:24; 19:28

good, right, pleasant, better, best

Definition:

The term “good” generally refers to a positive evaluation of the quality of something or someone, often in a moral or emotional sense. However, the term conveys various nuances throughout the Bible depending on the context.

- Something that is “good” could be emotionally pleasant, morally right, excellent, helpful, suitable, or profitable.
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone or “cause someone to prosper.”
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: righteous, prosper, evil)

Bible References:

- Galatians 5:22-24
- Genesis 1:12
- Genesis 2:9
- Genesis 2:17
- James 3:13
- Romans 2:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 1:4 God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- 1:11 God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.
- 1:12 Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”

- 2:4 “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- 8:12 “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!”
- 14:15 Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- 18:13 Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- 28:1 “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0117, H0145, H0155, H0202, H0239, H0410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G00140, G00150, G00180, G00190, G05150, G07440, G08650, G09790, G13800, G20950, G20970, G21060, G21070, G21080, G21090, G21140, G21150, G21330, G21400, G21620, G21630, G21740, G22930, G25650, G25670, G25700, G25730, G28870, G29860, G31400, G36170, G37760, G41470, G46320, G46740, G48510, G52230, G52240, G53580, G55420, G55430, G55440

Genesis References:

1:4; 1:10; 1:12; 1:18; 1:21; 1:25; 1:31; 2:9; 2:12; 2:17; 2:18; 3:5; 3:6; 3:22; 4:7; 6:2; 12:16; 15:15; 16:6; 18:7; 20:15; 24:10; 24:16; 24:50; 25:8; 26:7; 26:29; 27:9; 29:19; 30:20; 31:24; 31:29; 32:9; 32:12; 34:18; 40:14; 40:16; 41:5; 41:22; 41:24; 41:26; 41:35; 41:37; 44:4; 45:16; 45:18; 45:20; 45:23; 47:6; 47:11; 49:15; 50:20

Goshen

Definition:

Goshen was the name of a fertile region of land located along the Nile River in the northern part of Egypt.

- When Joseph was a ruler in Egypt, his father and brothers and their families came to live in Goshen to escape a famine in Canaan.
- They and their descendants lived well in Goshen for over 400 years, but then they were forced into slavery by the Egyptian pharaoh.
- Finally God sent Moses to help the people of Israel leave the land of Goshen and escape this slavery.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Egypt, famine, Moses, Nile River)

Bible References:

- Exodus 8:22-24
- Genesis 45:11
- Genesis 47:2
- Genesis 50:7-9
- Joshua 10:40-41

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1657

Genesis References:

45:10; 46:28; 46:29; 46:34; 47:1; 47:4; 47:6; 47:27; 50:8

grace, gracious

Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

Bible References:

- Acts 4:33
- Acts 6:8
- Acts 14:4
- Colossians 4:6
- Colossians 4:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 4:7
- John 1:16
- Philippians 4:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G21430, G54850, G55430

Genesis References:

43:29

grain, grainfields

Definition:

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: head, wheat)

Bible References:

- Genesis 42:3
- Genesis 42:26-28
- Genesis 43:1-2
- Luke 6:2
- Mark 2:24
- Matthew 13:7-9
- Ruth 1:22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1250, H1430, H1715, H2233, H2591, H3759, H3899, H7054, H7383, H7641, H7668, G02480, G25900, G34500, G46210, G47190

Genesis References:

27:28; 27:37; 41:5; 41:6; 41:7; 41:22; 41:23; 41:24; 41:26; 41:27; 41:35; 41:49; 42:1; 42:2; 42:3; 42:19; 42:25; 42:26; 43:2; 44:2; 45:23; 47:14

grape, grapevine

Definition:

A grape is a small, round, smooth-skinned berry fruit that grows in clusters on vines. The juice of grapes is used in making wine.

- There are different colors of grapes, such as light green, purple, or red.
- Individual grapes can be around one to three centimeters in size.
- People grow grapes in gardens called vineyards. These normally consist of long rows of vines.
- Grapes were a very important food during Bible times and having vineyards was a sign of wealth.
- In order to keep grapes from rotting, people would often dry them. Dried grapes are called "raisins" and they were used to make raisin cakes.
- Jesus told a parable about a grape vineyard to teach his disciples about God's kingdom.

(See also: vine, vineyard, wine)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 23:24
- Hosea 9:10
- Job 15:33
- Luke 6:43-44
- Matthew 7:15-17
- Matthew 21:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0811, H0891, H1154, H1155, H1210, H3196, H5955, H6025, H6528, G02880, G47180

Genesis References:

40:10; 40:11; 49:11

grave, gravedigger, tomb, burial place

Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: bury, death)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:29-31
- Genesis 23:6
- Genesis 50:5
- John 19:41
- Luke 23:53
- Mark 5:1-2
- Matthew 27:53
- Romans 3:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 32:4 The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- 37:6 Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- 37:7 The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- 40:9 Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.

- 41:4 He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- 41:5 When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.” The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G34180, G34190, G50280

Genesis References:

23:4; 23:6; 23:9; 23:20; 35:20; 47:30; 49:30; 50:5; 50:13

Greece, Grecian

Definition:

During New Testament times, Greece was a province in the Roman Empire.

- Like the modern-day country of Greece, it was located on a peninsula that is bordered by the Mediterranean Sea, the Aegean Sea, and the Ionian Sea.
- The apostle Paul visited several cities in Greece and established churches in the cities of Corinth, Thessalonica, and Philippi and probably others.
- People who are from Greece are called "Greeks" and their language is "Greek." People from other Roman provinces also spoke Greek, including many Jews.
- Sometimes the term "Greek" is used to refer to a Gentile.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: **Corinth**, **Gentile**, **Greek**, Hebrew, **Philippi**, **Thessalonica**)

Bible References:

- **Daniel 8:21**
- **Daniel 10:20-21**
- **Daniel 11:1-2**
- **Zechariah 9:13**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3120, G16710

Genesis References:

10:2; 10:4

guilt, guilty

Definition:

The term “guilt” refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To “be guilty” means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of “guilty” is “innocent.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate “guilt” as “the weight of sin” or “the counting of sins.”
- Ways to translate to “be guilty” could include a word or phrase that means, to “be at fault” or “having done something morally wrong” or “having committed a sin.”

(See also: innocent, iniquity, **punish**, sin)

Bible References:

- **Exodus 28:36-38**
- **Isaiah 6:7**
- **James 2:10-11**
- **John 19:4**
- **Jonah 1:14**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:2** They brought many witnesses who lied about him (Jesus). However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was **guilty** of anything.
- **39:11** After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, “I find no **guilt** in this man.” But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!” Pilate replied, “He is not **guilty**.” But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, “He is not **guilty**!”
- **40:4** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Don’t you fear God? We are **guilty**, but this man is innocent.”
- **49:10** Because of your sin, you are **guilty** and deserve to die.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0816, H0817, H0818, H5352, H5355, H7563, G03380, G17770, G37840, G52670

Genesis References:

26:10; 42:21

Hagar

Definition:

Hagar was an Egyptian woman who was Sarai's personal slave.

- When Sarai was not able to bear children, she gave her servant Hagar to her husband Abram to have a child by him.
- Hagar conceived and gave birth to Abram's son Ishmael.
- God watched over Hagar when she was in distress in the desert and promised to bless her descendants.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, descendant, Ishmael, Sarah, servant)

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:25
- Genesis 16:1-4
- Genesis 21:9
- Genesis 25:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 5:1 So Abram's wife, Sarai, said to him, "Since God has not allowed me to have children and now I am too old to have children, here is my servant, **Hagar**. Marry her also so she can have a child for me."
- 5:2 **Hagar** had a baby boy, and Abram named him Ishmael.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1904

Genesis References:

16:1; 16:3; 16:4; 16:8; 16:15; 16:16; 21:9; 21:14; 21:17; 25:12

Ham

Definition:

Ham was the second of Noah's three sons.

- During the worldwide flood that covered the whole earth, Ham and his brothers were with Noah in the ark, along with their wives.
- After the flood, there was an occasion where Ham was very dishonoring to his father, Noah. As a result, Noah cursed Ham's son Canaan and all his descendants, who eventually became known as the Canaanites.
- Another son of Ham was Mizraim, which means "Egypt." His descendants became the Egyptians. For this reason, Egypt is sometimes called, "the land of Ham."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: ark, Canaan, dishonor, Noah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 5:32
- Genesis 6:10
- Genesis 7:13-14
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 10:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2526

Genesis References:

5:32; 6:10; 7:13; 9:18; 9:22; 10:1; 10:6; 10:20

Hamath, Hamathites, Lebo Hamath

Definition:

Hamath was an important city in northern Syria, north of the land of Canaan. The Hamathites were descendants of Noah's son Canaan.

- The name "Lebo Hamath" probably refers to a mountain pass near the city of Hamath.
- Some versions translate "Lebo Hamath" as "entrance to Hamath."
- King David defeated enemies of King Tou of Hamath, causing them to be on good terms.
- Hamath was one of Solomon's storehouse cities where provisions were kept.
- The land of Hamath was where King Zedekiah was killed by King Nebuchadnezzar and where King Jehoahaz was captured by an Egyptian pharaoh.
- The term "Hamathite" could also be translated as "person from Hamath."

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Babylon, Canaan, **Nebuchadnezzar**, **Syria**, **Zedekiah**)

Bible References:

- **1 Chronicles 18:3-4**
- **2 Samuel 8:9**
- **Amos 6:1-2**
- **Ezekiel 47:15-17**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2574, H2577

Genesis References:

10:18

Hamor

Definition:

Hamor was a Canaanite man living in the city of Shechem when Jacob and his family were living in nearby Succoth. He was a Hivite.

- Jacob bought a family burial ground from Hamor's sons.
- While they were there, Hamor's son Shechem raped Jacob's daughter Dinah.
- Dinah's brothers took revenge on Hamor's family and killed all the men in the city of Shechem.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Hivite, Jacob, Shechem, Succoth)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:14-16
- Genesis 34:2
- Genesis 34:21
- Joshua 24:32-33
- Judges 9:28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2544

Genesis References:

33:19; 34:2; 34:4; 34:6; 34:8; 34:13; 34:18; 34:20; 34:24; 34:26

hang, hung

Definition:

The term “hang” means to suspend something or someone above the ground.

- In modern times, death by hanging is usually done by tying a rope around a person’s neck and suspending him from an elevated object until he dies. This elevated object can be any number of things, such as a tree or a gallows, that is, a platform built specifically for the purpose of hanging a person in order to kill him.
- In biblical times, however, ancient cultures may not have killed people by hanging in precisely the same way. For example, Jesus died while hanging on a wooden cross (sometimes called a “tree”), but there was nothing around his neck. The soldiers suspended him by nailing his hands (or wrists) and his feet to the cross.
- Some ancient cultures “hung” a person by impaling him on a wooden pole in such a way that he was suspended above the ground so that he could not escape. The person would be left there until he died.
- For many references to death by “hanging” in the Bible, the specific means of death is unknown.

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 17:23
- Acts 10:39
- Galatians 3:13
- Genesis 40:22
- Matthew 27:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2614, H3363, H8518, G05190

Genesis References:

40:19; 40:22; 41:13

Haran

Definition:

Haran was a younger brother of Abram and the father of Lot.

- Haran was also the name of the town where Abram and his family lived awhile on their journey from the city of Ur to the land of Canaan.
- A different man named Haran was a son of Caleb.
- A third man in the Bible named Haran was a descendant of Levi.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Caleb, Canaan, Levite, Lot, Terah, Ur)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 19:12
- Acts 7:1-3
- Genesis 11:31
- Genesis 27:43-45
- Genesis 28:10-11
- Genesis 29:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2039

Genesis References:

11:26; 11:27; 11:28; 11:29; 11:31; 11:32; 12:4; 12:5; 27:43; 28:10; 29:4

hard, harder

Definition:

The term “hard” generally refers to something that is difficult, challenging, or requires great diligence and persistence to be done.

- When used as a modifier, its meaning is similar to “great effort.”

Translation Suggestions

- The term “hard” could also be translated as “difficult” or “persistent” or “diligently” or “challenging,” depending on the context.
- In expressions such as “work hard” or “try hard,” the term “hard” could be translated as “with perseverance” or “diligently.”
- The expression “press hard against” could also be translated as “shove with force” or “push strongly against.”
- To “oppress people with hard labor” could be translated as “force people to work so hard that they suffer” or “cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work.”
- Depending on context the term “harder” could also be translated as “more difficult” or “more diligently”
- In some contexts “hard” could be translated as “heavy” or “heavily.”
- A different kind of “hard labor” is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2388, H3515, H6381, H7185, H7186, G03180, G14190, G14220, G14230, G25320, G28730, G44560, G44570, G46410, G46420, G46430, G46450, G49120

Genesis References:

18:14

harvest, reap

Definition:

The term “harvest” refers to the gather the ripe fruits, vegetables, seeds, or grains from the plants on which they were growing. The term “reap” means to harvest crops.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In biblical times, reapers usually harvested crops by hand, either pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate the concept with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb to “harvest” could be translated as to “gather in” or to “pick up” or to “collect.”

(See also: **firstfruits**, **festival**, **good news**)

Bible References:

- **1 Corinthians 9:9-11**
- **2 Samuel 21:7-9**
- **Galatians 6:9-10**
- **Isaiah 17:11**
- **James 5:7-8**
- **Leviticus 19:9**
- **Matthew 9:38**
- **Ruth 1:22**
- **Galatians 6:9-10**
- **Matthew 6:25-26**
- **Matthew 13:30**
- **Matthew 13:36-39**
- **Matthew 25:24**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2758, H4395, H4672 H7105, H7114, H7938, G02700, G23250, G23260, G23270

Genesis References:

8:22; 26:12; 30:14; 45:6

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we cannot directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: **kingdom of God**)

Bible References:

- **1 Kings 8:22-24**
- **1 Thessalonians 1:8-10**
- **1 Thessalonians 4:17**
- **Deuteronomy 9:1**
- **Ephesians 6:9**
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 7:11
- **John 3:12**
- **John 3:27**
- **Matthew 5:18**
- **Matthew 5:46-48**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 4:2 They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- 14:11 He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- 23:7 Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- 29:9 Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- 37:9 Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- 42:11 Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G09320, G20320, G33210, G37700, G37710, G37720

Genesis References:

1:1; 1:8; 1:9; 1:14; 1:15; 1:17; 1:20; 1:26; 1:28; 1:30; 2:1; 2:4; 2:19; 2:20; 6:7; 6:17; 7:3; 7:11; 7:19; 7:23; 8:2; 9:2; 11:4; 14:19; 14:22; 15:5; 19:24; 21:17; 22:11; 22:15; 22:17; 24:3; 24:7; 26:4; 27:28; 27:39; 28:12; 28:17; 49:25

Hebrew

Definition:

The term “Hebrew” refers in a very general sense to the people group descended from Abraham through the line of Isaac and Jacob.

- The specific word “Hebrew” can refer either to a individual person in the people group or to the language spoken by that people group.
- The vast majority of the Old Testament was written in the language called “Hebrew.” However, in most cases in the New Testament, the specific term “Hebrew” probably refers to the Aramaic language rather than the Hebrew language.
- In different places in the Bible, the Hebrews were also called “Israelites” or “Jews.” When translating, it is best to keep all three terms distinct in the text, as long as it is clear that these terms refer to the same people group.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, Jew, Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- Acts 26:12-14
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Genesis 40:15
- Genesis 41:12-13
- John 5:1-4
- John 19:13
- Jonah 1:8-10
- Philippians 3:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5680, G14440, G14450, G14460, G14470

Genesis References:

14:13; 39:14; 39:17; 40:15; 41:12; 43:32

Hebron, Kiriath Arba

Definition:

Hebron was a city located in the high, rocky hills about 20 miles south of Jerusalem.

- The city was built around 2000 BC during the time of Abram. It was mentioned many times in the historical accounts given in the Old Testament.
- Hebron had a very important role in King David's life. Several of his sons, including Absalom, were born there.
- The city was destroyed around AD 70 by the Romans.
- The city of Hebron was formerly called Kiriath Arba (see Joshua 14:15 and Joshua 15:54).
- The city of Hebron, formerly called Kiriath Arba, was probably founded by Arba, the father of Anak and may have been originally named Kiriath Arba to honor Arba because Joshua 14:15 records that Arba "was a great man among the Anakites."
- The name "Hebron" is an English transliteration of the Hebrew word for Hebron.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: **Anak**, **Absalom**)

Bible References:

- **2 Samuel 2:10-11**
- Genesis 13:18
- Genesis 23:1-2
- Genesis 35:27
- Genesis 37:12-14
- **Judges 1:10**
- **Numbers 13:22**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2275, H2276

Genesis References:

13:18; 23:2; 23:19; 35:27; 37:14

heir

Definition:

An “heir” is a person who legally receives property or money that belonged to a person who has died.

- In Bible times, the main heir was the firstborn son, who received most of the property and money of his father.
- The Bible also uses “heir” in a figurative sense to refer to person who as a Christian receives spiritual benefits from God, his spiritual father.
- As God’s children, Christians are said to be “joint heirs” with Jesus Christ. This could also be translated as “co-heirs” or “fellow heirs” or “heirs together with.”
- The term “heir” could be translated as “person receiving benefits” or whatever expression is used in the language to communicate the meaning of someone who receives property and other things when a parent or other relative dies.

(See also: firstborn, inherit)

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:1-2
- Galatians 4:7
- Genesis 15:1
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 20:14
- Mark 12:7
- Matthew 21:38-39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1121, H3423, G28160, G28180, G28200, G47890

Genesis References:

21:10

Hittite

Definition:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: descendant, Esau, foreigner, Ham, mighty, **Solomon**, **Uriah**)

Bible References:

- **1 Kings 9:20-21**
- **Exodus 3:7-8**
- Genesis 23:11
- Genesis 25:10
- **Joshua 1:4-5**
- **Nehemiah 9:8**
- **Numbers 13:27-29**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2850

Genesis References:

10:15; 15:20; 23:3; 23:5; 23:7; 23:10; 23:16; 23:18; 23:20; 25:9; 25:10; 26:34; 27:46; 36:2; 49:29; 49:30; 49:32; 50:13

Hivite

Definition:

The Hivites were one of seven major people groups living in the land of Canaan.

- All these groups, including the Hivites, were descended from Canaan, who was Noah's grandson.
- Shechem the Hivite raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, and her brothers killed many Hivites in revenge.
- When Joshua led the Israelites to take over the land of Canaan, the Israelites were tricked into making a treaty with the Hivites instead of conquering them.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Hamor, Noah, Shechem)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 8:7-8
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 34:2
- Joshua 9:1-2
- Judges 3:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2340

Genesis References:

10:17; 34:2; 36:2

honey, honeycomb

Definition:

"Honey" is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar.

Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God's words and decrees are said to be "sweeter than honey." (See also: Simile, Metaphor)
- Sometimes a person's words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: John (the Baptist), Jonathan, Philistines, Samson)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:1-3
- Deuteronomy 6:3
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Joshua 5:6
- Proverbs 5:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1706, H3293, H3295, H5317, H6688, G31920

Genesis References:

43:11

honor

Definition:

The terms “honor” and “to honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term to “honor” could be translated as to “show special respect to” or to “cause to be praised” or to “show high regard for” or to “highly value.”

(See also: dishonor, glory, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:8
- Acts 19:17
- John 4:44
- John 12:26
- Mark 6:4
- Matthew 15:6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G08200, G13910, G13920, G17840, G21510, G25700, G31700, G44110, G45860, G50910, G50920, G50930, G53990

Genesis References:

30:20; 34:19; 45:13

horn, horned

Definition:

Horns are permanent, hard, pointed growths on the heads of many types of animals, including cattle, sheep, goats, and deer.

- The horn of a ram (male sheep) was made into a musical instrument called a “ram’s horn” or “shofar,” which was blown for special events such as religious festivals.
- This term should be translated with a word that is different from the word that refers to a trumpet.
- God told the Israelites to make a horn-shaped projection on each of the four corners of the incense and brazen altars. Although these projections were called “horns,” they were not actually animal horns.
- The term “horn” was sometimes used to refer to a “flask” that was shaped like a horn and was used for holding water or oil. A flask of oil was used for anointing a king, as Samuel did with David.

(See also: authority, cow, deer, goat, power, royal, sheep, trumpet)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:27-28
- 1 Kings 1:39
- 2 Samuel 22:3
- Jeremiah 17:1
- Psalms 22:21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3104, H7160, H7161, H7162, H7782, G27680

Genesis References:

22:13

horse, warhorse, horseback, stallion, steed, mare

Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for war and for transporting people. A stallion is a male horse and a mare is a female horse. “Steed” is a poetic word referring to a horse that is powerful or fast.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon’s great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.

(See also: chariot, donkey, Solomon)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:4
- 2 Kings 2:11
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Zechariah 6:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0047, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G24620

Genesis References:

41:43; 47:17; 49:17

horseman

Definition:

In Bible times, the term “horsemen” referred to men who rode horses into battle.

- Warriors who rode in horse-pulled chariots may also have been called “horsemen,” though this term usually refers to men who were actually riding on horses.
- Yahweh commanded the Israelites not to have many horsemen because having a strong army would cause them to trust their own strength rather than Yahweh in battle.
- This term could also be translated as “horse riders” or “men on horses.”

(See also: chariot, horse)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:5
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Genesis 50:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6571, H7395, G24600

Genesis References:

50:9

house

Definition:

The term “house” refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps.

- When referring to a building where people live and sleep the term “house” could be translated as “dwelling place” or “dwelling structure” or with another term that expresses the meaning.

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1005, H1035, H1397, G36140, G36240

Genesis References:

6:14; 7:1; 12:1; 12:15; 12:17; 14:14; 15:2; 15:3; 17:12; 17:13; 17:23; 17:27; 18:19; 19:2; 19:3; 19:4; 19:10; 19:11; 20:13; 20:18; 24:2; 24:7; 24:23; 24:27; 24:28; 24:31; 24:32; 24:38; 24:40; 27:15; 28:2; 28:17; 28:21; 28:22; 29:13; 30:30; 31:14; 31:30; 31:37; 31:41; 33:17; 34:19; 34:26; 34:29; 34:30; 35:2; 36:6; 38:11; 39:2; 39:4; 39:5; 39:8; 39:9; 39:11; 39:14; 39:16; 40:3; 40:7; 41:10; 41:40; 41:51; 42:19; 42:33; 43:16; 43:17; 43:18; 43:19; 43:24; 43:26; 44:1; 44:4; 44:8; 44:14; 45:2; 45:8; 45:11; 45:16; 45:18; 46:27; 46:31; 47:12; 47:14; 47:24; 50:4; 50:7; 50:8; 50:22

image of God, image

Definition:

The term “image” refers to something that looks like something else or that is like someone in character or essence. The phrase “image of God” is used in different ways, depending on the context.

- At the beginning of time, God created human beings “in his image,” that is, “in his likeness.” This means that people have certain characteristics that reflect the image of God, such as the ability to feel emotion, the ability to reason and communicate, and a spirit that lives eternally.
- The Bible teaches that Jesus, God’s Son, is “the image of God,” that is, he is God himself. Unlike human beings, Jesus was not created. From all eternity God the Son has had all the divine characteristics because he has had the same essence with God the Father.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to Jesus, “image of God” could be translated as “exact likeness of God” or “same essence as God” or “same being as God.”
- When referring to human beings, “God created them in his image” could be translated with a phrase that means “God created them to be like him” or “God created them with characteristics like his own.”

(See also: image, Son of God, Son of God)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 4:3-4
- Colossians 3:9-11
- Genesis 1:26-27
- Genesis 9:6
- James 3:9-10
- Romans 8:28-30

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4541, H1544, H2553, H6456, H6459, H6754, H6816, H8403, G05040, G01790

Genesis References:

1:26; 1:27; 9:6

image, carved image, cast metal image, figure, carved figure, statue

Definition:

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term "image" is a shortened form of "carved image."

- A "carved image" or "carved figure" is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
- A "cast metal figure" is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
- These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
- The term "image" when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to an idol, the term "image" could also be translated as "statue" or "engraved idol" or "carved religious object."
- It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as "carved image" or "cast metal figure," even in places where only the term "image" or "figure" is in the original text.
- Make sure it is clear that this term is different than the term used to refer to being in the image of God.

(See also: false god, God, false god, image of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:9-10
- Acts 7:43
- Isaiah 21:8-9
- Matthew 22:21
- Romans 1:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0457, H1544, H2553, H4541, H4676, H4853, H4906, H5257, H5262, H5566, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6754, H6755, H6816, H8403, H8544, H8655, G15040, G51790

Genesis References:

31:19; 31:34; 31:35

inherit, inheritance, heir

Definition:

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after a parent dies. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An “inheritance” is the things that are received, and an “heir” is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as “inherited blessings.”

(See also: heir, Canaan, Promised Land, possess)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- 1 Peter 1:4
- 2 Samuel 21:3
- Acts 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 5:21
- Genesis 15:7
- Hebrews 9:15
- Jeremiah 2:7
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29

- **Psalm 79:1**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**.”
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?”
- **35:3** “There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, ‘Father, I want my **inheritance** now!’ So the father divided his property between the two sons.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G28160, G28170, G28190, G28200

Genesis References:

15:3; 15:4; 31:14; 48:6

iniquity

Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: sin, transgress, **trespass**)

Bible References:

- **Daniel 9:13**
- **Exodus 34:5-7**
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16
- **Habakkuk 2:12**
- **Matthew 13:41**
- **Matthew 23:27-28**
- **Micah 3:10**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G00920, G00930, G04580, G38920, G41890

Genesis References:

15:16; 44:16

innocent

Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”
- In the Bible, “blood” can represent “killing,” so “innocent blood” refers to “killing people who did not deserve to die.”

Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- “To shed innocent blood” can be translated as “to kill people who did not deserve to die.”

(See also: guilt)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:4
- 1 Samuel 19:5
- Acts 20:26
- Exodus 23:7
- Jeremiah 22:17
- Job 9:23
- Romans 16:18

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 8:6 After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.
- 40:4 One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**.”
- 40:8 When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, “Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2136, H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, G01210

Genesis References:

20:5; 44:10

integrity

Definition:

The term “integrity” refers to being honest, with strong moral principles and behavior is said to have integrity.

- Having integrity also means choosing to do what is honest and right even when nobody else is watching.
- Certain characters in the Bible, such as Joseph and Daniel, showed integrity when they refused to do evil and chose to obey God.
- The book of Proverbs says that it is better to be poor and have integrity than to be rich and corrupt or dishonest.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “integrity” could also be translated as “honesty” or “moral uprightness” or “behaving truthfully” or “acting in a trustworthy, honest manner.”

(See also: Daniel, Joseph (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:4
- Job 2:3
- Job 4:6
- Proverbs 10:8-9
- Psalm 26:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3476, H6664, H6666, H8535, H8537, H8537, H8538, H8549, G45870

Genesis References:

20:5; 20:6

interpret, interpretation, interpreter

Definition:

The terms “interpret” and “interpretation” refer to understanding and explaining the meaning of something that is not clear.

- Often in the Bible these terms are used in connection with explaining the meaning of dreams or visions.
- When the king of Babylon had some confusing dreams, God helped Daniel to interpret them and to explain their meanings.
- The “interpretation” of the dream is the “explanation” of the meaning of the dream.
- In the Old Testament, God sometimes used dreams to reveal to people what would happen in the future. So the interpretations of those dreams were prophecies.
- The term “interpret” can also refer to figuring out the meaning of other things, such as figuring out what the weather will be like based on how cold or hot it is, how windy it is, and what the sky looks like.
- Ways to translate the term “interpret” could include, “figure out the meaning of” or “explain” or “give the meaning of.”
- The term “interpretation” could also be translated as “explanation” or “meaning.”

(See also: Babylon, Daniel, dream, prophet, vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- Daniel 4:4-6
- Genesis 40:4-5
- Judges 7:15-16
- Luke 12:56

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0995, H3887, H6591, H6622, H6623, H7667, H7760, H7922, G12520, G13280, G13290, G13810, G19550, G20580, G31770, G47930

Genesis References:

40:5; 40:8; 40:12; 40:16; 40:18; 40:22; 41:8; 41:11; 41:12; 41:13; 41:15; 42:23

Isaac

Definition:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name "Isaac" means "he laughs." When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham's faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac's son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, descendant, eternity, **fulfill**, Jacob, Sarah, **twelve tribes of Israel**)

Bible References:

- **Galatians 4:28-29**
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:19
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:8
- Genesis 28:1-2
- Genesis 31:18
- **Matthew 8:11-13**
- **Matthew 22:32**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:4** "Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him **Isaac**."
- **5:6** When **Isaac** was a young man, God tested Abraham's faith by saying, "Take **Isaac**, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **5:9** God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of **Isaac**.

- 6:1 When Abraham was very old and his son, **Isaac**, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, **Isaac.**
- 6:5 **Isaac** prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- 7:10 Then **Isaac** died, and Jacob and Esau buried him. The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to **Isaac** now passed on to Jacob.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3327, H3446, G24640

Genesis References:

17:19; 17:21; 21:3; 21:4; 21:5; 21:8; 21:10; 21:12; 22:2; 22:3; 22:6; 22:7; 22:9; 24:4; 24:14; 24:62; 24:63; 24:64; 24:66; 24:67; 25:5; 25:6; 25:9; 25:11; 25:19; 25:20; 25:21; 25:26; 25:28; 26:1; 26:6; 26:8; 26:9; 26:12; 26:16; 26:17; 26:18; 26:19; 26:20; 26:25; 26:27; 26:31; 26:32; 26:35; 27:5; 27:20; 27:21; 27:22; 27:26; 27:30; 27:32; 27:33; 27:37; 27:39; 27:46; 28:1; 28:5; 28:6; 28:8; 28:13; 31:42; 31:53; 32:9; 35:12; 35:27; 35:28; 35:29; 46:1; 48:15; 48:16; 49:31; 50:24

Ishmael, Ishmaelite

Definition:

Ishmael was the son of Abraham and the Egyptian slave Hagar. There were several other men in the Old Testament named Ishmael.

- The name "Ishmael" means "God hears."
- God promised to bless Abraham's son Ishmael, but he was not the son with whom God had promised to establish his covenant.
- God protected Hagar and Ishmael when they were sent into the desert.
- While Ishmael was living in the desert of Paran, he married an Egyptian woman.
- Ishmael son of Nethaniah was an army officer from Judah who led a group of men to kill a governor who had been appointed by the Babylonian king, Nebuchadnezzar.
- There were also four other men named Ishmael in the Old Testament.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Babylon, covenant, desert, Egypt, Hagar, Isaac, Nebuchadnezzar, Paran, Sarah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:28-31
- 2 Chronicles 23:1
- Genesis 16:12
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 37:25-26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 5:2 So Abram married Hagar. Hagar had a baby boy, and Abram named him **Ishmael**.
- 5:4 "I will make **Ishmael** a great nation, too, but my covenant will be with Isaac."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3458, H3459

Genesis References:

16:11; 16:15; 16:16; 17:18; 17:20; 17:23; 17:25; 17:26; 25:9; 25:12; 25:13; 25:16; 25:17; 28:9; 36:3; 37:25; 37:27; 37:28; 39:1

Israel, Israelites

Definition:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. Often it refers to the nation that is descended from him.

- The name Israel probably means “He struggles with God.”
- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “sons of Israel” or the “people of Israel” or the “nation of Israel” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah,” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: Jacob, kingdom of Israel, Judah, nation, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1
- 1 Kings 8:2
- Acts 2:36
- Acts 7:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 27:9
- Philippians 3:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 8:15 The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- 9:3 The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- 9:5 A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- 10:1 They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’”

- 14:12 But despite all this, the people of __Israel __ complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- 15:9 God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- 15:12 After this battle, God gave each tribe of __Israel __ its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders.
- 16:16 So God punished __Israel __ again for worshiping idols.
- 43:6 “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G09350, G24740, G24750

Genesis References:

32:28; 32:32; 33:20; 34:7; 35:10; 35:21; 35:22; 36:31; 42:5; 47:27; 48:20; 49:7; 49:16; 49:24; 49:28; 50:25

Issachar

Definition:

Issachar was Jacob's ninth son. He was Leah's fifth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Issachar" or "Issachar."
- The meaning of the name is unknown, but it is similar to a Hebrew word meaning "reward, hire."
- The tribe of Issachar settled in central Canaan, southwest of the Sea of Galilee. Issachar's land was bordered by the lands of Naphtali, Zebulun, Manasseh, and Gad.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Leah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:18
- Exodus 1:1-5
- Ezekiel 48:23-26
- Joshua 17:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3485, G24660

Genesis References:

30:18; 35:23; 46:13; 49:14

Jacob, Israel

Definition:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac by Rebekah. God changed his name to "Israel." His descendants became the nation of Israel.

- Jacob is the last of the three patriarchs of the Israelite nation: Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. The descendants of Jacob's twelve sons because the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The name Jacob is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "heel." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau. In the Old Testament times, the heel was a body part associated both with attack and with the rear part of a person's body. The Hebrew name Jacob was probably associated with the idea of attacking someone from behind.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which probably means "He struggles with God."
- Jacob married Laban's two daughters, Leah and Rachel, as well as each of their servants, Zilpah and Bilhah. These four women mothered the twelve sons who became the ancestral fathers of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- In the New Testament, a different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, twelve tribes of Israel, Leah, Rachel, Zilpah, Bilhah, deceive, Esau, Isaac, Rebekah, Laban)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:11
- Acts 7:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 4:4-5
- Matthew 8:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 7:1 As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.

- 7:7 **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- 7:8 After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- 7:10 The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- 8:1 Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G23840

Genesis References:

25:26; 25:27; 25:28; 25:29; 25:30; 25:31; 25:33; 25:34; 27:6; 27:11; 27:15; 27:17; 27:19; 27:21; 27:22; 27:30; 27:36; 27:41; 27:42; 27:46; 28:1; 28:5; 28:6; 28:7; 28:10; 28:16; 28:18; 28:20; 29:1; 29:4; 29:10; 29:11; 29:12; 29:13; 29:15; 29:18; 29:20; 29:21; 29:28; 30:1; 30:2; 30:4; 30:5; 30:7; 30:9; 30:10; 30:12; 30:16; 30:17; 30:19; 30:25; 30:31; 30:36; 30:37; 30:40; 30:41; 30:42; 31:1; 31:2; 31:3; 31:4; 31:11; 31:17; 31:20; 31:22; 31:24; 31:25; 31:26; 31:29; 31:31; 31:32; 31:33; 31:36; 31:43; 31:45; 31:46; 31:47; 31:51; 31:53; 31:54; 32:1; 32:2; 32:3; 32:4; 32:6; 32:7; 32:9; 32:18; 32:20; 32:24; 32:25; 32:27; 32:28; 32:29; 32:30; 32:32; 33:1; 33:10; 33:17; 33:18; 34:1; 34:3; 34:5; 34:6; 34:7; 34:13; 34:19; 34:25; 34:27; 34:30; 35:1; 35:2; 35:4; 35:5; 35:6; 35:9; 35:10; 35:14; 35:15; 35:20; 35:22; 35:23; 35:26; 35:27; 35:29; 36:6; 37:1; 37:2; 37:3; 37:13; 37:34; 42:1; 42:4; 42:29; 42:36; 43:6; 43:8; 43:11; 45:21; 45:25; 45:27; 45:28; 46:1; 46:2; 46:5; 46:6; 46:8; 46:15; 46:18; 46:19; 46:22; 46:25; 46:26; 46:27; 46:29; 46:30; 47:7; 47:8; 47:9; 47:10; 47:28; 47:29; 47:31; 48:2; 48:3; 48:8; 48:10; 48:11; 48:13; 48:14; 48:21; 49:1; 49:2; 49:7; 49:24; 49:33; 50:2; 50:24

Japheth

Definition:

Japheth was one of Noah's three sons.

- During the worldwide flood that covered the whole earth, Japheth and his two brothers were with Noah in the ark, along with their wives.
- Noah's sons are usually listed as, "Shem, Ham, and Japheth." This indicates that Japheth was the youngest brother.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: ark, flood, Ham, Noah, Shem)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:4
- Genesis 5:32
- Genesis 6:10
- Genesis 7:13-14
- Genesis 10:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3315

Genesis References:

5:32; 6:10; 7:13; 9:18; 9:23; 9:27; 10:1; 10:2; 10:21

jealous, jealousy

Definition:

The terms “jealous” and “jealousy” in this sense refer to a strong desire to protect the purity of a relationship. They can also refer to a strong desire to keep possession of something or someone (See Numbers 11:29).

- The term “jealous” is used to describe the angry feeling that a person has toward their spouse when they suspect that their spouse has been unfaithful in their marriage (See Numbers 5:14).
- The terms “jealous” and “jealousy” are often used to describe God’s strong desire that his covenant people love him, remain spiritually faithful to him, and keep him foremost in their affections.
- When used in the Bible, these terms often refer to God’s strong desire for his people to remain pure and unstained by sin.
- God is “jealous” for his glory, desiring that he be treated with honor and reverence.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “jealous” could include “strong protective desire” or “possessive desire.”
- The term “jealousy” could be translated as “strong protective feeling” or “possessive feeling.”
- When talking about God, make sure the translation of these terms does not give a negative meaning of being resentful or envious of someone else.

(See also: envy)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7067, H7068, H7072, G22050, G22060, G38630

Genesis References:

37:11

Jebus, Jebusite

Definition:

The Jebusites were a people group living in the land of Canaan. They were descended from Ham's son Canaan.

- The Jebusites lived in the city of Jebus, and its name was later changed to Jerusalem when King David conquered it.
- Melchizedek, the king of Salem, was probably of Jebusite origin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Ham, Jerusalem, Melchizedek)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:14
- 1 Kings 9:20-21
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 10:16
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Judges 1:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2982, H2983

Genesis References:

10:16; 15:21

Jordan River, Jordan

Definition:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on its west from Jordan on its east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as "the Jordan."

(See also: Canaan, Salt Sea, Sea of Galilee)

Bible References:

- Genesis 32:9-10
- John 1:26-28
- John 3:25-26
- Luke 3:3
- Matthew 3:6
- Matthew 3:13-15
- Matthew 4:14-16
- Matthew 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 15:2 The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land.
- 15:3 After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- 19:14 Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3383, G24460

Genesis References:

13:10; 13:11; 32:10; 50:10; 50:11

Joseph (OT)

Definition:

Joseph was Jacob's eleventh son. He was Rachel's first son. The descendants of his two sons Ephraim and Manasseh became two of the tribes of Israel.

- The Hebrew name Joseph is similar to both the Hebrew word meaning "to add, increase" and the Hebrew word meaning "to gather, take away."
- A large portion of the book of Genesis is dedicated to the story of Joseph, how he remained faithful to God throughout his many difficulties and forgave his brothers who had sold him to be a slave in Egypt.
- Eventually God raised Joseph to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save the people of Egypt and the surrounding nations in a time when there was little food. Joseph helped save his own family from starving and brought them to live with him in Egypt.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Ephraim, Manasseh, Jacob, Rachel)

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:22-24
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Genesis 37:1-2
- Genesis 37:23-24
- Genesis 41:55-57
- John 4:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 8:2 **Joseph's** brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- 8:4 The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt.
- 8:5 Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- 8:7 God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.
- 8:9 **Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- 9:2 The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3084, H3130, G25000, G25010

Genesis References:

30:24; 30:25; 33:2; 33:7; 35:24; 37:2; 37:3; 37:5; 37:13; 37:17; 37:23; 37:28; 37:29; 37:31; 37:33; 39:1; 39:2; 39:4; 39:5; 39:6; 39:7; 39:10; 39:20; 39:21; 39:22; 40:3; 40:4; 40:6; 40:8; 40:9; 40:12; 40:16; 40:18; 40:22; 40:23; 41:14; 41:15; 41:16; 41:17; 41:25; 41:39; 41:41; 41:42; 41:44; 41:45; 41:46; 41:49; 41:50; 41:51; 41:54; 41:55; 41:56; 41:57; 42:3; 42:4; 42:6; 42:7; 42:8; 42:9; 42:14; 42:18; 42:23; 42:25; 42:36; 43:15; 43:16; 43:17; 43:18; 43:19; 43:24; 43:25; 43:26; 43:30; 44:2; 44:4; 44:14; 44:15; 45:1; 45:3; 45:4; 45:9; 45:16; 45:17; 45:21; 45:26; 45:27; 45:28; 46:4; 46:19; 46:20; 46:27; 46:28; 46:29; 46:30; 46:31; 47:1; 47:5; 47:7; 47:11; 47:12; 47:14; 47:15; 47:16; 47:17; 47:20; 47:23; 47:26; 47:29; 48:1; 48:2; 48:3; 48:8; 48:9; 48:11; 48:12; 48:13; 48:15; 48:17; 48:18; 48:21; 49:22; 49:26; 50:1; 50:2; 50:4; 50:7; 50:8; 50:14; 50:15; 50:16; 50:17; 50:19; 50:22; 50:23; 50:24; 50:25; 50:26

joy, joyful, rejoice, glad

Definition:

joy

The term “joy” refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

rejoice

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: metonymy)

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 8:10
- Psalm 48:2
- Isaiah 56:6-7

- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 2:9-10
- Luke 15:7
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 3:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 5:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 5:23
- Philippians 4:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 1:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:16
- Philemon 1:4-7
- James 1:2
- 3 John 1:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 33:7 “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with **joy**.”
- 34:4 “The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field… Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field.”
- 41:7 The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G00200, G00210, G21650, G21670, G27440, G46400, G47960, G49130, G54630, G54790

Genesis References:

31:27

Judah

Definition:

Judah was Jacob's fourth son. He was Leah's fourth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Judah" or "Judah."
- His name sounds similar to the Hebrew word meaning "praise."
- The tribe of Judah settled in the southern part of Canaan, including the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Judah" refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah.
- In the Old Testament, the name Judah is sometimes used to refer to the whole southern kingdom of Israel (similar to how the name Ephraim is sometimes used to refer to the whole northern kingdom).
- King David, King Solomon, and all the kings of the southern kingdom were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Judah (kingdom), Jew, Judea, Jacob, Leah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 1:9
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:2
- Luke 3:33
- Ruth 1:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

Genesis References:

29:35; 35:23; 37:26; 38:1; 38:2; 38:6; 38:7; 38:8; 38:11; 38:12; 38:15; 38:20; 38:22; 38:23; 38:24; 38:26; 43:3; 43:8; 44:14; 44:16; 44:18; 46:12; 46:28; 49:8; 49:9; 49:10

judge

Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
- After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called "judges" to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
- The term "judge" could also be called "decision-maker" or "leader" or "deliverer" or "governor," depending on the context.

(See also: **governor**, judge, **law**)

Bible References:

- **2 Timothy 4:8**
- **Acts 7:27**
- **Luke 11:19**
- **Luke 12:14**
- **Luke 18:1-2**
- **Matthew 5:25**
- **Ruth 1:1**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0148, H0430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1781, H1782, H6414, H6416, H6419, H8199, G03500, G12520, G13480, G29190, G29220, G29230

Genesis References:

18:25

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right. However, these terms can also refer to actions performed by a person as the result of a decision, usually in the context of deciding that something is bad, wrong, or evil.

- The terms “judge” and “judgment” can also mean “to cause harm to” (usually because God has decided a person or nation’s actions are wicked).
- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, judge, **judgment day**, just, law, **law**)

Bible References:

- **1 John 4:17**
- **1 Kings 3:9**
- **Acts 10:42-43**
- **Isaiah 3:14**
- **James 2:4**
- **Luke 6:37**

- Micah 3:9-11
- Psalm 54:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 19:16 The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- 21:8 A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- 39:4 The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- 50:14 But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0148, H0430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G01440, G03500, G09680, G11060, G12520, G13410, G13450, G13480, G13490, G29170, G29190, G29200, G29220, G29230, G42320

Genesis References:

15:14; 16:5; 19:9; 31:53; 49:16

just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

Definition:

"Just" and "justice" refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

The terms "unjust" and "unjustly" refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An "injustice" is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being "partial" or "prejudiced" because he is not treating people equally.

The terms "justify" and "justification" refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- "Justification" refers to what God does when he forgives a person's sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as "righteous" or "upright."

- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.” (See: abstractnouns)
- Other ways to translate “justify” could include “declare (someone) to be righteous” or “cause (someone) to be righteous.”
- The term “justification” could be translated as “being declared righteous” or “becoming righteous” or “causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “resulting in justification” could be translated as “so that God justified many people” or “which resulted in God causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “for our justification” could be translated as “in order that we could be made righteous by God.”

(See also: forgive, guilt, judge, righteous, righteous)

Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16
- **1 Chronicles 18:14**
- **Isaiah 4:3-4**
- **Jeremiah 22:3**
- **Ezekiel 18:16-17**
- **Micah 3:8**
- **Matthew 5:43-45**
- **Matthew 11:19**
- **Matthew 23:23-24**
- **Luke 18:3**
- **Luke 18:8**
- **Luke 18:13-14**

- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:4
- Romans 4:1-3
- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:11
- Galatians 5:3-4
- Titus 3:6-7
- Hebrews 6:10
- James 2:24
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 17:9 David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- 18:13 Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- 19:16 They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- 50:17 Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H2555, H3477, H4941, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G00910, G00930, G00940, G13420, G13440, G13450, G13460, G13470, G17380

Genesis References:

18:19; 18:25

Kadesh, Kadesh Barnea, Meribah Kadesh

Definition:

The names Kadesh, Kadesh Barnea, and Meribah Kadesh all refer to an important city in Israel's history which was located in the southern part of Israel, near the region of Edom.

- The city of Kadesh was an oasis, a place where there was water and fertile soil in the middle of a desert named Zin.
- Moses sent twelve spies into the land of Canaan from Kadesh Barnea.
- Israel also encamped at Kadesh during the wandering in the wilderness.
- Kadesh Barnea was where Miriam died.
- It was at Meribah Kadesh where Moses disobeyed God and hit a rock to get water for the Israelites, instead of speaking to it as God had told him to do.
- The name "kadesh" comes from the Hebrew word meaning "holy" or "set apart."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: desert, Edom, holy)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 48:28
- Genesis 14:7-9
- Genesis 16:14
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Joshua 10:40-41
- Numbers 20:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4809, H6946, H6947

Genesis References:

20:1

Kedar

Definition:

Kedar was Ishmael's second son. It was also an important city, which was probably named after the man.

- The city of Kedar is located in the northern part of Arabia near the southern border of Palestine. In Bible times, it was known for its greatness and beauty.
- The descendants of Kedar formed a large people group that is also called "Kedar."
- The phrase "dark tents of Kedar" refers to the black goathair tents the people of Kedar lived in.
- These people raised sheep and goats. They also used camels for transporting things.
- In the Bible, the phrase "the glory of Kedar" refers to the greatness of that city and its people.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Arabia, goat, Ishmael, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Song of Songs 1:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6938

Genesis References:

25:13

king, kingship

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God is as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term “king” might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: **authority**, **Herod Antipas**, kingdom, **kingdom of God**)

Bible References:

- **1 Timothy 6:15-16**
- **2 Kings 5:18**
- **2 Samuel 5:3**
- **Acts 7:9-10**
- **Acts 13:22**
- **John 1:49-51**
- **Luke 1:5**
- **Luke 22:24-25**
- **Matthew 5:35**
- **Matthew 14:9**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:1** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.

- 17:5 Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- 21:6 God's prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- 48:14 David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G09350, G09360

Genesis References:

14:1; 14:2; 14:5; 14:8; 14:9; 14:10; 14:17; 14:18; 14:21; 14:22; 17:6; 17:16; 20:2; 26:1; 26:8; 35:11; 36:31; 39:20; 40:1; 40:5; 41:46; 49:20

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term "kingdom" can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term "kingdom of God."
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term "kingdom of God" especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a "kingdom" in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as "darkness."

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term "kingdom" could be translated as "country (ruled by a king)" or "king's territory" or "region ruled by a king."
- In a spiritual sense, "kingdom" could be translated as "ruling" or "reigning" or "controlling" or "governing."
- One way to translate "kingdom of priests" might be "spiritual priests who are ruled by God."
- The phrase "kingdom of light" could be translated as "God's reign that is good like light" or "when God, who is light, rules people" or "the light and goodness of God's kingdom." It is best to keep the word "light" in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term "kingdom" is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: **authority**, king, **kingdom of God**, **kingdom of Israel**, Judah, **Judah**, priest)

Bible References:

- **1 Thessalonians 2:12**
- **2 Timothy 4:17-18**
- **Colossians 1:13-14**
- **John 18:36**
- **Mark 3:24**

- **Matthew 4:7-9**
- **Matthew 13:19**
- **Matthew 16:28**
- **Revelation 1:9**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **18:4** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:8** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G09320

Genesis References:

10:10; 20:9

kiss

Definition:

A kiss is an action in which one person puts his lips to another person's lips or face. This term can also be used figuratively.

- Some cultures kiss each other on the cheek as a form of greeting or to say goodbye.
- A kiss can communicate deep love between two people, such as a husband and wife.
- The expression to "kiss someone farewell" means to say goodbye with a kiss.
- Sometimes the word "kiss" is used to mean "say goodbye to." When Elisha said to Elijah, "Let me first go and kiss my father and mother," he wanted to say goodbye to his parents before leaving them to follow Elijah.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:25-28
- Genesis 27:26-27
- Genesis 29:11
- Genesis 31:28
- Genesis 45:15
- Genesis 48:10
- Luke 22:48
- Mark 14:45
- Matthew 26:48

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5390, H5401, G27050, G53680, G53700

Genesis References:

27:26; 27:27; 29:11; 29:13; 31:28; 31:55; 33:4; 45:15; 48:10; 50:1

know, knew, knowledge, known, unknown, distinguish

Definition:

Used in this sense the term “know” and “knowledge” mean generally to understand something. It can also mean to be aware of a fact. The expression “to make known” means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with.”
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as “distinguish.” When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition “between.”
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with that person. The word for knowing facts should be used when translating this sense of the word “know.”

(See also: **know-relationship**, **law**, **reveal**, **understand**, wise)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1844, H1847, H3045, H3046, H3318, G00500, G00560, G03190, G10970, G11070, G11080, G11100, G14920, G19210, G19220, G19870, G42670

Genesis References:

2:9; 2:17; 3:5; 3:7; 3:22; 4:1; 4:9; 4:17; 4:25; 8:7; 8:11; 9:24; 12:11; 15:8; 15:13; 18:19; 18:21; 19:5; 19:8; 19:33; 19:35; 20:6; 20:7; 21:26; 22:12; 24:14; 24:16; 24:21; 25:27; 27:2; 28:16; 29:5; 30:26; 30:29; 31:6; 31:32; 33:13; 38:9; 38:16; 38:26; 39:6; 39:8; 41:21; 41:31; 41:39; 42:23; 42:33; 42:34; 43:7; 43:22; 44:15; 44:27; 45:1; 47:6; 48:19

Korah, Korahite

Definition:

Korah was the name of three men in the Old Testament.

1. Korah was a descendant of Levi and so served in the tabernacle as a priest. He became jealous of Moses and Aaron and led a group of men to rebel against them.
2. One of the sons of Esau was named Korah. He became a leader in his community.
3. A third man named Korah is listed as a descendant of Judah.

(See also: **Aaron**, **authority**, **Caleb**, descendant, Esau, Judah, priest)

Bible References:

- **1 Chronicles 1:34-37**
- **Numbers 16:1-3**
- **Numbers 16:25-27**
- **Psalm 42:1-2**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7141

Genesis References:

36:5; 36:14; 36:16; 36:18

Laban

Definition:

In the Old Testament, Laban was the uncle and father-in-law of Jacob.

- Jacob lived with Laban's household in Padan Aram and managed his sheep and goats as a condition of marriage to Laban's daughters.
- Jacob's preference was for Laban's daughter Rachel to be his wife.
- Laban deceived Jacob and made him marry his oldest daughter Leah first before giving Rachel to him as his wife.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Jacob, Nahor, Leah, Rachel)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:30
- Genesis 24:50
- Genesis 27:43
- Genesis 28:1-2
- Genesis 29:5
- Genesis 29:13
- Genesis 30:26
- Genesis 46:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3837

Genesis References:

24:29; 24:50; 25:20; 27:43; 28:2; 28:5; 29:5; 29:10; 29:13; 29:14; 29:15; 29:16; 29:19; 29:21; 29:22; 29:24; 29:25; 29:26; 29:29; 30:25; 30:27; 30:34; 30:36; 30:40; 30:42; 31:1; 31:2; 31:12; 31:19; 31:20; 31:22; 31:24; 31:25; 31:26; 31:31; 31:33; 31:34; 31:36; 31:43; 31:47; 31:48; 31:51; 31:55; 32:4; 46:18; 46:25

labor, labors, labored, laboring, laborer, work, hard work

Definition:

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include “work” or “toil” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or to “work hard.”

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3021, H4399, H4522, H4639, H5647, H5656, H5998, H6001, H6089, G20380, G20400, G20410, G28720, G28730

Genesis References:

2:5; 2:15; 4:2; 4:12

lamb, Lamb of God

Definition:

The term “lamb” refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “a young sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: sheep, shepherd)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 12:3
- Ezra 8:35-36
- Isaiah 66:3
- Jeremiah 11:19
- John 1:29
- John 1:36
- Leviticus 14:21-23
- Leviticus 17:1-4
- Luke 10:3

- **Revelation 15:3-4**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:7** As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, “Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?”
- **11:2** God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it.
- **24:6** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, “Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world.”
- **45:8** He read, “They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word.”
- **48:8** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place.
- **48:9** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7716, G07210, G23160

Genesis References:

22:7; 22:8; 30:32; 30:33; 30:35; 30:40

Lamech

Definition:

Lamech was the name of two men mentioned in the book of Genesis.

- The first Lamech mentioned was a descendant of Cain. He boasted to his two wives that he had killed a man for injuring him.
- The second Lamech was a descendant of Seth. He was also the father of Noah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Cain, Noah, Seth)

Bible References:

- Genesis 4:18-19
- Genesis 4:24
- Genesis 5:25
- Genesis 5:29
- Genesis 5:31
- Luke 3:36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3929, G29840

Genesis References:

4:18; 4:19; 4:23; 4:24; 5:25; 5:26; 5:28; 5:30; 5:31

lament, lamentation

Definition:

The terms “lament” and “lamentation” refer to a strong expression of mourning, sorrow, or grief.

- Sometimes this includes deep regret for sin, or compassion for people who have experienced disaster.
- A lamentation could include moaning, weeping, or wailing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “lament” could be translated as to “deeply mourn” or to “wail in grief” or to “be sorrowful.”
- A “lamentation” (or a “lament”) could be translated as “loud wailing and weeping” or “deep sorrow” or “sorrowful sobbing” or “mournful moaning.”

Bible References:

- Amos 8:9-10
- Ezekiel 32:1-2
- Jeremiah 22:18
- Job 27:15-17
- Lamentations 2:5
- Lamentations 2:8
- Micah 2:4
- Psalm 102:1-2
- Zechariah 11:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0056, H0421, H0578, H0592, H1058, H4553, H5091, H5092, H5594, H6088, H6969, H7015, H8567, G23540, G23550, G28700, G28750

Genesis References:

21:16; 23:2; 27:38; 37:35; 50:1; 50:3; 50:10

law, principle

Definition:

A “law” is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A “principle” is a guideline for decision-making and behavior, and is usually not written down or enforced. However, sometimes the term “law” is used to mean a “principle.”

- A “law” is similar to a “decree,” but the term “law” is generally used to refer to something written rather than spoken.
- Both “law” and “principle” can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person’s behavior.
- This meaning of “law” is different from its meaning in the term “law of Moses,” where it refers to commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
- When a general law is being referred to, “law” could be translated as “principle” or “general rule.”

(See also: law of Moses, decree, command, declare)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 4:2
- Esther 3:8-9
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Genesis 26:5
- John 18:31
- Romans 7:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1285, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2708, H2710, H4687, H4941, H6310, H7560, H8451, G17850, G35480, G35510, G47470

Genesis References:

26:5

Leah

Definition:

Leah was one of Jacob's wives. She was the older sister of Rachel and the mother of six of Jacob's sons: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun. She was also the mother of Jacob's daughter Dinah.

- The book of Genesis tells the story of how Leah's father Laban tricked Jacob into marrying her before marrying Rachel.
- God abundantly blessed Leah by giving her many children, even though her husband Jacob loved Rachel more than her.
- Leah is the ancestral mother of both King David and Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Jacob, Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Issachar, Zebulun, Laban, Rachel, **twelve tribes of Israel**)

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:17
- Genesis 29:28
- Genesis 31:6
- **Ruth 4:11**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3812

Genesis References:

29:16; 29:17; 29:23; 29:24; 29:25; 29:30; 29:31; 29:32; 30:9; 30:10; 30:11; 30:12; 30:13; 30:14; 30:16; 30:17; 30:18; 30:19; 30:20; 31:4; 31:14; 31:33; 33:1; 33:2; 33:7; 34:1; 35:23; 35:26; 46:15; 46:18; 49:31

Levi, Levite

Definition:

Levi was Jacob's third son. He was Leah's third son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Levi" or the "Levites."
- The name Levi is similar to the Hebrew word for "join to."
- Unlike the other tribes, the tribe of Levi did not inherit a unified area of land in Canaan. Instead, they inherited various cities scattered throughout the regions belonging to the other tribes.
- The tribe of Levi was responsible for taking care of the tabernacle (and later, the temple) and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers for the Israelite people.
- In the Old Testament, it is not always clear whether the term "Levite" refers generally to a descendant of Levi or specifically to a person who served in the temple helping the priests.
- The Old Testament law prescribed that all priests were to be chosen from the tribe of Levi. The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named "Levi" were ancestors of Jesus. Their names are listed in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus' disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, priest, sacrifice, temple, Jacob, Leah, Matthew)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 8:3-5
- Acts 4:36-37
- Genesis 29:34
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3878, H3879, H3881, G30170, G30180, G30190, G30200

Genesis References:

29:34; 34:25; 34:30; 35:23; 46:11; 49:5

lion, lioness

Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, that has animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: **David**, **leopard**, **Samson**, sheep)

Bible References:

- **1 Chronicles 11:22-23**
- **1 Kings 7:29**
- **Proverbs 19:12**
- **Psalms 17:12**
- **Revelation 5:5**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0738, H0739, H0744, H3715, H3833, H3918, H7826, H7830, G30230

Genesis References:

49:9

livestock, animals

Definition:

The term “livestock” refers to animals which are raised to provide food and other useful products. Some types of livestock are also trained as work animals.

- Kinds of livestock include sheep, cattle, goats, horses, and donkeys.
- In Biblical times, wealth was partly measured by how much livestock a person had.
- Livestock are used to produce items such as wool, milk, cheese, housing materials, and clothing.
- This term could also be translated as “farm animals.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: cow, ox, donkey, goat, horse, sheep)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 3:15-17
- Genesis 30:29
- Joshua 1:14-15
- Nehemiah 9:36-37
- Numbers 3:41

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0929, H4399, H4735

Genesis References:

1:24; 1:25; 1:26; 2:20; 3:14; 4:20; 6:7; 6:20; 7:14; 7:21; 7:23; 8:1; 8:17; 9:10; 13:2; 13:7; 29:7; 30:29; 31:9; 31:18; 33:17; 34:5; 34:23; 36:6; 36:7; 46:6; 46:32; 46:34; 47:6; 47:16; 47:17; 47:18

loins

Definition:

The term “loins” refers to the part of the body of an animal or person that is between the lower ribs and the hip bones, also known as the lower abdomen.

- The expression “gird up the loins” refers to preparing to work hard. It comes from the custom of tucking the bottom of one’s robe into a belt around the waist in order to move with ease.
- The term “loins” is often used in the Bible to refer to the lower back part of an animal that was sacrificed.
- In the Bible, the term “loins” often refers figuratively and euphemistically to a man’s reproductive organs as the source of his descendants. (See: euphemism)
- The expression “will come from your loins” could also be translated as “will be your offspring” or “will be born from your seed” or “God will cause to come from you.” (See: euphemism)
- When referring to a part of the body, this could also be translated as “abdomen” or “hips” or “waist,” depending on the context.

(See also: descendant, **gird**, **children**)

Bible References:

- **1 Peter 1:13**
- **2 Chronicles 6:9**
- **Deuteronomy 33:11**
- Genesis 37:34
- **Job 15:27**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2504, H3409, H3689, H4975, G37510

Genesis References:

35:11; 37:34; 46:26; 47:29

lord, Lord, master, sir

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of "master" when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as "master."
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, "lord" could be translated with a respectful form of address such as "sir." This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as "Lord" (capitalized) in English.

(See also: God, Jesus, ruler, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:2
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Psalms 86:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Lamentations 2:2
- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 9:9
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Malachi 3:1
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 6:23
- Ephesians 6:9
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Colossians 3:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 2:1
- 1 Peter 1:3
- Jude 1:5
- Revelation 15:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 25:5 But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, “In God’s word, he commands his people, ‘Do not test the **Lord** your God.’”
- 25:7 Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.’”
- 26:3 This is the year of the **Lord’s** favor.
- 27:2 The law expert replied that God’s law says, “Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind.”
- 31:5 Then Peter said to Jesus, “**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water”
- 43:9 “But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!”
- 47:3 By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- 47:11 Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0113, H0136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G02030, G06340, G09620, G12030, G29620

Genesis References:

15:2; 15:8; 18:3; 18:12; 18:27; 18:30; 18:31; 18:32; 19:2; 19:18; 20:4; 23:6; 23:11; 23:15; 24:9; 24:10; 24:12; 24:14; 24:18; 24:27; 24:35; 24:36; 24:37; 24:39; 24:42; 24:44; 24:48; 24:49; 24:51; 24:54; 24:56; 24:65; 27:29; 27:37; 31:35; 32:4; 32:5; 32:18; 33:8; 33:13; 33:14; 33:15; 37:19; 39:2; 39:3; 39:7; 39:8; 39:16; 39:19; 39:20; 40:1; 40:7; 42:10; 42:30; 42:33; 43:20; 44:5; 44:7; 44:8; 44:9; 44:16; 44:18; 44:19; 44:20; 44:22; 44:24; 44:33; 45:8; 45:9; 47:18; 47:25; 49:23

Lot

Definition:

Lot was Abraham's nephew.

- He was the son of Abraham's brother Haran.
- Lot traveled with Abraham to the land of Canaan and settled in the city of Sodom.
- Lot was the ancestor of the Moabites and Ammonites.
- When enemy kings attacked Sodom and captured Lot, Abraham came with several hundred men to rescue Lot and recover his belongings.
- The people living in the city of Sodom were very wicked, so God destroyed that city. But he first told Lot and his family to leave the city so that that they could escape.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Ammon, Haran, Moab, Sodom)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:8
- Genesis 11:27-28
- Genesis 12:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3876, G30910

Genesis References:

11:27; 11:31; 12:4; 12:5; 13:1; 13:5; 13:7; 13:8; 13:10; 13:11; 13:12; 13:14; 14:12; 14:16; 19:1; 19:5; 19:6; 19:9; 19:10; 19:12; 19:14; 19:15; 19:18; 19:23; 19:29; 19:30; 19:36

love, beloved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it does not benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
    - Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
    - When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
    - In the ULT, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
    - This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
    - The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.
3. The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
- In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.

- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: covenant, death, sacrifice, save, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:7
- 1 John 3:2
- 1 Thessalonians 4:10
- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:6
- Jeremiah 2:2
- John 3:16
- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 9:32-34
- Philippians 1:9
- Song of Songs 1:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 27:2 The law expert replied that God’s law says, “**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself.”
- 33:8 “The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God.”
- 36:5 As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- 39:10 “Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- 47:1 She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- 48:1 When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- 49:3 He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- 49:4 He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- 49:7 Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- 49:9 But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.

- 49:13 God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0157, H0158, H0159, H0160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G00250, G00260, G53600, G53610, G53620, G53630, G53650, G53670, G53680, G53690, G53770, G53810, G53820, G53830, G53880

Genesis References:

22:2; 24:67; 25:28; 27:4; 27:9; 27:14; 29:18; 29:20; 29:30; 29:32; 34:3; 37:3; 37:4; 44:20

lust, lustful, passion, desire

Definition:

Lust is a very strong desire, usually in the context of wanting something sinful or immoral. To lust is to have lust.

- In the Bible, "lust" usually referred to sexual desire for someone other than one's own spouse.
- Sometimes this term was used in a figurative sense to refer to worshiping idols.
- Depending on the context, "lust" could be translated as "wrong desire" or "strong desire" or "wrongful sexual desire" or "strong immoral desire" or to "strongly desire to sin."
- The phrase to "lust after" could be translated as to "wrongly desire" or to "think immorally about" or to "immorally desire."

(See also: **adultery**, false god)

Bible References:

- **1 John 2:16**
- **2 Timothy 2:22**
- **Galatians 5:16**
- **Galatians 5:19-21**
- Genesis 39:7-9
- **Matthew 5:28**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0183, H0185, H0310, H1730, H2181, H2183, H2530, H5178, H5375, H5689, H5691, H5869, H7843, G07660, G19370, G19390, G22370, G37150, G38060

Genesis References:

3:6

lute, lyre

Definition:

A lute and a lyre are small, stringed, musical instruments that were used by the Israelites to worship God.

- A lyre looks like a small harp, having strings strung across an open frame.
- A lute is very similar to a modern day acoustic guitar, having a wooden sound box and an extended neck on which strings are strung.
- In playing a lute or a lyre, certain strings are held down with the fingers of one hand while these and other strings are plucked or strummed with the other hand.
- The lute, lyre, and harp are all played by strumming or plucking the strings.
- The number of strings varied, but the Old Testament specifically mentions instruments that had ten strings.

(See also: **harp**)

Bible References:

- **1 Kings 10:11-12**
- **1 Samuel 10:5-6**
- **2 Chronicles 5:11-12**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3658, H5035, H5443

Genesis References:

4:21; 31:27

Maacah

Definition:

Maacah (or Maakah) was one of the sons of Abraham's brother Nahor. Other people in the Old Testament also had this name.

- The city of Maacah or Beth Maacah was located in the far north of Israel, in the region occupied by the tribe of Naphtali.
- It was an important city and was attacked by enemies on several occasions.
- Maacah was the name of several women, including the mother of David's son Absalom.
- King Asa removed his grandmother Maacah from being queen because she had promoted Asherah worship.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: **Asa**, **Asherah**, Nahor, Naphtali, **twelve tribes of Israel**)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4601

Genesis References:

22:24

magic, magical, magician, who talk with spirits

Definition:

The term “magic” refers to the practice of using supernatural power that does not come from God. A “magician” is someone who practices magic.

- In Egypt, when God did miraculous things through Moses, the Egyptian pharaoh’s magicians were able to do some of the same things, but their power did not come from God.
- Magic often involves casting spells or repeating certain words in order to make something supernatural happen.
- God commands his people to not do any of these practices of magic or divination.
- A sorcerer is a type of magician, usually one who uses magic to do harm to others.

(See also: divination, Egypt, Pharaoh, power, sorcery)

Bible References:

- Genesis 41:8
- Genesis 41:22-24
- Genesis 44:3-5
- Genesis 44:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2748, H2749, H3049, G30970

Genesis References:

41:8; 41:24

Manasseh

Definition:

Manasseh was the older son of Joseph. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The name Manasseh is similar to the the Hebrew word meaning “to forget.”
- The tribe of Manasseh was often called the “half-tribe of Manasseh” because only part of the tribe settled in the land of Canaan, on the west side of the Jordan River. The other part of the tribe settled on the east side of the Jordan.
- One of the kings of Judah was also named Manasseh. King Manasseh was an evil king who sacrificed his own children as burnt offerings to false gods.
- God punished King Manasseh by allowing him to be captured by an enemy army. Manasseh turned back to God and destroyed the altars where idols were worshiped.
- Three other men named Manasseh are mentioned in the Old Testament. One of them was the grandfather of some Danites who were priests for false gods. The other two were men who lived during the time of Ezra and were required to divorce their pagan wives, who had influenced them to worship false gods.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Joseph, Ephraim, **twelve tribes of Israel**)

Bible References:

- **2 Chronicles 15:9**
- **Deuteronomy 3:12-13**
- Genesis 41:51
- Genesis 48:1-2
- **Judges 1:27-28**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4519, H4520, G31280

Genesis References:

41:51; 46:20; 48:1; 48:5; 48:13; 48:14; 48:17; 48:20; 50:23

Mede, Medes, Media

Definition:

Media was an ancient empire located east of Assyria and Babylonia, and north of Elam and Persia. The people who lived in the empire of Media were called “Medes.”

- The Media empire covered parts of what are present-day Turkey, Iran, Syria, Iraq and Afghanistan.
- The Medes were closely associated with the Persians and the two empires joined forces to conquer the Babylonian empire.
- Babylonia was invaded by Darius the Mede during the time that the prophet Daniel was living there.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, Cyrus, Daniel, Darius, Elam, Persia)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 17:6
- Acts 2:9
- Daniel 5:28
- Esther 1:3-4
- Ezra 6:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4074, H4075, H4076, H4077, G33700

Genesis References:

10:2

meditate, meditation

Definition:

"The term meditate" means to spend time thinking about something carefully and deeply.

- This term is often used in the Bible to refer to thinking about God and his teachings.
- Psalm 1 says that the person who meditates on the law of the Lord "day and night" will be greatly blessed.

Translation Suggestions:

- To "meditate on" could be translated as to "think about carefully and deeply" or to "consider thoughtfully" or to "think about often."
- The noun form is "meditation" and could be translated as "deep thoughts." A phrase like "meditation of my heart" could be translated as "what I think deeply about" or "what I often think about."

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:63
- **Joshua 1:8-9**
- **Psalm 1:1-2**
- **Psalms 119:15**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1897, H1900, H1902, H7742, H7878, H7879, H7881

Genesis References:

24:63

Melchizedek

Definition:

During the time when Abram lived, Melchizedek was the king of the city of Salem (later "Jerusalem")

- Melchizedek's name means "king of righteousness" and his title "king of Salem" means "king of peace."
- He was also called a "priest of God Most High."
- Melchizedek is first mentioned in the Bible when he served Abram bread and wine after Abram rescued his nephew Lot from powerful kings. Abram gave Melchizedek one-tenth of the plunder from his victory.
- In the New Testament, Melchizedek is described as someone who had no father or mother. He was called a priest and king who will reign forever.
- The New Testament also says that Jesus is a priest according to the priestly "order of Melchizedek." Jesus was not descended from Levi as the Israelite priests were. His priesthood is directly from God, as Melchizedek's was.
- Based on these descriptions of him in the Bible, Melchizedek was a human priest who was also chosen by God to represent or point forward to Jesus, the eternal king of peace and righteousness and our great high priest.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, everlasting, high priest, Jerusalem, Levite, priest, righteous)

Bible References:

- Genesis 14:18
- Hebrews 6:20
- Hebrews 7:17
- Psalm 110:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4442, G31980

Genesis References:

14:18

Meshech

Definition:

Meshech is the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One Meshech was a son of Japheth.
- The other Meshech was a grandson of Shem.
- Meshech was also the name of a region of land, which was probably named after one of these men.
- The region of Meshech may have been located in part of what is now the country of Turkey.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Japheth, Noah, Shem)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:5-7
- Ezekiel 27:12-13
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Psalms 120:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4851, H4902

Genesis References:

10:23

messenger

Definition:

The term “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: angel, **apostle**, **John (the Baptist)**)

Bible References:

- **1 Kings 19:1-3**
- **1 Samuel 6:21**
- **2 Kings 1:1-2**
- **Luke 7:27**
- **Matthew 11:10**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G00320, G06520

Genesis References:

32:3; 32:6

Midian, Midianite

Definition:

Midian was a son of Abraham and his wife Keturah. It is also the name of a people group and region located in the northern Arabian Desert to the south of the land of Canaan. The people of that group were called "Midianites."

- When Moses first left Egypt, he went to the region of Midian where he met the daughters of Jethro and helped them water their flocks. Later Moses married one of Jethro's daughters.
- Joseph was taken to Egypt by a group of Midianite slave traders.
- Many years later the Midianites attacked and raided the Israelites in the land of Canaan. Gideon led the Israelites in defeating them.
- Many of the modern-day Arabian tribes are descendants of this group.

(See also Arabia, Egypt, flock, Gideon, Jethro, Moses)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:30
- Exodus 2:16
- Genesis 25:1-4
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Genesis 37:28
- Judges 7:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 16:3 But then the people forgot about God and started worshiping idols again. So God allowed the **Midianites**, a nearby enemy people group, to defeat them.
- 16:4 The Israelites were so scared, they hid in caves so the **Midianites** would not find them.
- 16:11 The man's friend said, "This dream means that Gideon's army will defeat the **Midianite** army!"
- 16:14 God confused the **Midianites**, so that they started attacking and killing each other.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4080, H4084, H4092

Genesis References:

25:2; 25:4; 36:35; 37:28; 37:36

might, mighty, mighty works

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, **miracle**, **power**, **strength**)

Bible References:

- **Acts 7:22**
- Genesis 6:4
- **Mark 9:38-39**
- **Matthew 11:23**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0046, H0047, H0117, H0202, H0386, H0410, H0430, H0533, H0650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581,

H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G14110, G14150, G14980, G24780, G24790, G29000, G29040, G31670, G31730

Genesis References:

6:4; 10:8; 10:9; 18:18; 26:16; 49:3; 49:7; 49:24

Mizpah

Definition:

Mizpah is the name of several towns mentioned in the Old Testament. It means “look-out point” or “watchtower.”

- When David was being pursued by Saul, he left his parents in Mizpah, under the protection of the king of Moab.
- One city called Mizpah was located on the border between the kingdoms of Judah and Israel. It was a major military center.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: **David**, **Judah**, **kingdom of Israel**, Moab, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- **1 Kings 15:20-22**
- **1 Samuel 7:5-6**
- **1 Samuel 7:10-11**
- **Jeremiah 40:5-6**
- **Judges 10:17-18**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4708, H4709

Genesis References:

31:49

Moab, Moabite

Definition:

The term “Moab” refers to a people group that lived to the east of the Salt Sea. The book of Genesis describes this people group as the descendents of a man named “Moab,” who was the son of Lot’s elder daughter.

- In the book of Ruth, Elimelek and his family went to live in Moab because of the famine around Bethlehem.
- Ruth is called a “Moabite woman” because she was born in the country of Moab and was from that people group.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethlehem, Judea, Lot, Ruth, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- Genesis 19:37
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Ruth 1:1-2
- Ruth 1:22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4124, H4125

Genesis References:

19:37; 36:35

mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock

Definition:

The terms “mock,” “ridicule,” and “scoff at” all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people’s words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term “scoff at” can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
- A “mocker” is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 3:4
- Acts 2:12-13
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Luke 22:63-65
- Mark 10:34
- Matthew 9:23-24
- Matthew 20:19
- Matthew 27:29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 21:12 Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, **mock**, and beat the Messiah.
- 39:5 The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, “He deserves to die!” Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and **mocked** him.
- 39:12 The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!”
- 40:4 Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God?”

- 40:5 The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd **mocked** Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1422, H2048, H2049, H2778, H2781, H3213, H3887, H3931, H3932, H3933, H3934, H3944, H3945, H4167, H4485, H4912, H5058, H5607, H6026, H6711, H7046, H7048, H7814, H7832, H8103, H8148, H8437, H8595, G15920, G17010, G17020, G17030, G23010, G26060, G34560, G55120

Genesis References:

21:9; 27:12; 39:14; 39:17

month, monthly

Definition:

The term “month” refers to a period of time lasting about four weeks. The number of days in each month varies depending on whether a lunar or solar calendar is used.

- In the lunar calendar, the length of each month is based on the amount of time it takes for the moon to go around the earth, about twenty-nine days. In this system there are twelve or thirteen months in a year. Despite the year being twelve or thirteen months, the first month is always called the same name even though it may be a different season.
- The “new moon,” or beginning phase of the moon with its sliver of light, marks the beginning of each month in the lunar calendar.
- All the names of months referred to in the Bible are those of the lunar calendar since this was the system used by the Israelites. Modern Jews still use this calendar for religious purposes.
- The modern-day solar calendar is based on how long it takes the earth to go around the sun (about 365 days). In this system, the year is always divided up into twelve months, with the length of each month ranging from twenty-eight to thirty-one days.

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 20:34
- Acts 18:9-11
- Hebrews 11:23
- Numbers 10:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2320, H3391, H3393, G33760

Genesis References:

7:11; 8:4; 8:5; 8:13; 8:14; 29:14; 38:24

Most High

Definition:

The term “Most High” is a title for God. It refers to his greatness or authority. This title emphasizes God’s supreme authority and power over all creation.

- The meaning of this term is similar to the meaning of “Sovereign” or “Supreme.”
- The word “high” in this title does not refer to physical height or distance. It refers to greatness.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can also be translated as “Most High God” or “Most Supreme being” or “God Most High” or “Greatest One” or “Supreme One” or “God, who is Greater than all.”
- If a word like “high” is used, make sure it does not refer to being physically high or tall.

(See also: God)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:47-50
- Acts 16:16-18
- Daniel 4:17-18
- Deuteronomy 32:7-8
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Hebrews 7:1-3
- Hosea 7:16
- Lamentations 3:35
- Luke 1:32

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5945, G53100

Genesis References:

14:18; 14:19; 14:20; 14:22

mourn, mourner, weeping

Definition:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: sackcloth, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 1:11
- Genesis 23:2
- Luke 7:31-32
- Matthew 11:17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0056, H0057, H0060, H0205, H0578, H0584, H0585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1671, H1897, H1899, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6937, H6941, H8386, G23540, G28750, G36020, G39960, G39970

Genesis References:

23:2; 27:41; 37:34; 37:35; 50:4; 50:10; 50:11

multiply, multiplied, multiplication

Definition:

The term “multiply” means to greatly increase in number. It can also mean to cause something to increase in amount, such as causing pain to multiply.

- God told animals and human beings to “multiply” and fill the earth. This was a command to reproduce many more of their own kind.
- Jesus made the bread and fish multiply in order to feed the 5,000 people. The amount of food kept increasing so that there was more than enough food to feed everyone.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated as “increase” or “cause to increase” or “greatly increase in number” or “become greater in number” or “become more numerous.”
- The phrase “greatly multiply your pain” could also be translated as “cause your pain to become more severe” or “cause you to experience much more pain.”
- To “multiply horses” means to “greedily keep acquiring more horses” or to “get large numbers of horses.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 8:1
- Genesis 9:7
- Genesis 22:17
- Hosea 4:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3254, H3527, H6280, H7231, H7233, H7235, H7680, G40520, G41290

Genesis References:

1:22; 1:28; 3:16; 6:1; 7:17; 7:18; 8:17; 9:1; 9:7; 16:10; 17:2; 17:20; 22:17; 26:4; 26:24; 28:3; 35:11; 47:27; 48:4

myrrh

Definition:

Myrrh is an oil or spice that is made from the resin of a myrrh tree that grows in Africa and Asia. It is related to frankincense.

- Myrrh was also used to make incense, perfume, and medicine, and to prepare dead bodies for burial.
- Myrrh was one of the gifts that the learned men gave to Jesus when he was born.
- Jesus was offered wine mixed with myrrh in order to ease the pain when he was crucified.

(See also: **frankincense**, **learned men**)

Bible References:

- **Exodus 30:22-25**
- Genesis 37:25-26
- **John 11:1-2**
- **Mark 15:23**
- **Matthew 2:11-12**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3910, H4753, G34640, G46660, G46690

Genesis References:

37:25; 43:11

Naaman

Definition:

In the Old Testament, Naaman was the commander of the army of the king of Aram.

- Naaman had a terrible skin disease called leprosy that could not be cured.
- A Jewish slave in Naaman's household told him to go ask the prophet Elisha to heal him.
- Elisha told Naaman to wash seven times in the Jordan River. When Naaman obeyed, God healed him of his disease.
- As a result, Naaman came to believe in the only true God, Yahweh.
- Two other men named Naaman were descendants of Jacob's son Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Aram, Jordan River, leprosy, prophet)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 8:6-7
- 2 Kings 5:1
- Luke 4:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 19:14 One of the miracles happened to **Naaman**, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease.
- 19:15 At first **Naaman** was angry and would not do it because it seemed foolish. But later he changed his mind and dipped himself seven times in the Jordan River.
- 26:6 "He (Elisha) only healed the skin disease of **Naaman**, a commander of Israel's enemies."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5283, G34970

Genesis References:

46:21

Nahor

Definition:

Nahor was the name of two relatives of Abraham, his grandfather and his brother.

- Abraham's brother Nahor was the grandfather of Isaac's wife Rebekah.
- The phrase "city of Nahor" could mean "the city named Nahor" or "the city where Nahor had lived" or "Nahor's city."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Rebekah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:24-27
- Genesis 31:53
- Joshua 24:2
- Luke 3:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5152, G34930

Genesis References:

11:22; 11:23; 11:24; 11:25; 11:26; 11:27; 11:29; 22:20; 22:23; 24:10; 24:15; 24:24; 24:47; 29:5; 31:53

Naphtali

Definition:

Naphtali was Jacob's sixth son. He was Bilhah's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Naphtali" or "Naphtali" or "Naphtalites."
- The name Naphtali is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "to twist, wrestle."
- The tribe of Naphtali settled in the northern part of Canaan, between the tribes of Manassah and Asher. Its eastern border was on the western shoreline of the Sea of Chinnereth. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Naphtali" refers to the land given to the tribe of Naphtali.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Bilhah)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:15
- Deuteronomy 27:13-14
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Genesis 30:8
- Judges 1:33
- Matthew 4:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5321, G35080

Genesis References:

30:8; 35:25; 46:24; 49:21

nation

Definition:

In the Bible, a nation is a large group of people who share a common identity and speak the same language. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- In the Bible, a nation could be a country with an extensive government structure and defined boundaries (such as Egypt or Ethiopia), but usually it is more general and refers to a people group.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word "nation" was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were "nations" that would fight against each other. This could be translated as "the founders of two nations" or the "ancestors of two people groups."
- When used in the plural in a general way, the word translated as "nations" often referred to the people who were not Israelites, that is, to Gentiles, the people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word "nation" could also be translated as "people group" or "people" or "country."
- If a language has a term for "nation" that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term "nations" can often be translated as "people groups."
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as "Gentiles" or "non-Jews."

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, Canaan, **Gentile**, **Greek**, **people group**, Philistines, **Rome**)

Bible References:

- **1 Chronicles 14:15-17**
- **2 Chronicles 15:6**
- **2 Kings 17:11-12**
- **Acts 2:5**
- **Acts 13:19**
- **Acts 17:26**

- **Acts 26:4**
- **Daniel 3:4**
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- **Luke 7:5**
- **Mark 13:7-8**
- **Matthew 21:43**
- **Romans 4:16-17**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0523, H0524, H0776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G02460, G10740, G10850, G14840

Genesis References:

10:5; 10:20; 10:31; 10:32; 12:2; 15:14; 17:4; 17:5; 17:6; 17:16; 17:20; 18:18; 20:4; 21:13; 21:18; 22:18; 25:23; 26:4; 35:11; 46:3; 48:19

Negev

Definition:

The Negev is a desert region in the southern part of Israel, southwest of the Salt Sea.

- The original word means “the South,” and some English versions translate it this way.
- It could be that the “South” is not located where the Negev Desert is today.
- When Abraham lived in the city of Kadesh, he was in the Negev or southern region.
- Isaac was living in the Negev when Rebekah traveled to meet him and become his wife.
- The Jewish tribes of Judah and Simeon lived in this southern region.
- The largest city in the Negev region was Beersheba.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Beersheba, Israel, Judah, Kadesh, Salt Sea, Simeon)

Bible References:

- Genesis 12:9
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Genesis 24:62
- **Joshua 3:14-16**
- **Numbers 13:17-20**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5045, H6160

Genesis References:

12:9; 13:1; 13:3; 13:14; 20:1; 24:62; 28:14

Nile River, River of Egypt, the Nile

Definition:

The Nile is a very long and wide river in northeastern Africa. It is especially well known as the main river of Egypt.

- The Nile River flows north through Egypt and into the Mediterranean Sea.
- Crops grow well in the fertile land on either side of the Nile River.
- Most Egyptians live near the Nile River since it is an important source of water for food crops.
- The Israelites lived in the land of Goshen, which was very fertile because it was located along the Nile River.
- When Moses was a baby, his parents placed him in a basket among the reeds of the Nile to hide him from Pharaoh's men.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Egypt, Goshen, Moses)

Bible References:

- Amos 8:8
- Genesis 41:1-3
- Jeremiah 46:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 8:4 Egypt was a large, powerful country located along the **Nile River**.
- 9:4 Pharaoh saw that the Israelites were having many babies, so he ordered his people to kill all Israelite baby boys by throwing them into the **Nile River**.
- 9:6 When the boy's parents could no longer hide him, they put him in a floating basket among the reeds along the edge of the **Nile River** in order to save him from being killed.
- 10:3 God turned the **Nile River** into blood, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0216, H2975, H4714, H5104

Genesis References:

41:1; 41:2; 41:3; 41:17; 41:18

Nineveh, Ninevite

Definition:

Nineveh was the capital city of Assyrian empire. A “Ninevite” was a person who lived in Nineveh.

- God sent the prophet Jonah to warn the Ninevites to turn from their wicked ways. The people stopped acting so violently and God did not destroy them at that time.
- The prophets Nahum and Zephaniah both prophesied that God would destroy Nineveh as judgment for their sin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Assyria, **Jonah**, **repent**, **turn**)

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11-14
- **Jonah 1:3**
- **Jonah 3:3**
- **Luke 11:32**
- **Matthew 12:41**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5210, G35350, G35360

Genesis References:

10:11; 10:12

Noah

Definition:

Noah was a man who lived over 4,000 years ago, at the time when God sent a worldwide flood to destroy all the evil people in the world. God told Noah to build a gigantic ark in which he and his family could live while the flood waters covered the earth.

- Noah was a righteous man who obeyed God in everything.
- When God told Noah how to build the gigantic ark, Noah built it exactly the way God told him to.
- Inside the ark, Noah and his family were kept safe, and later their children and grandchildren filled the earth with people again.
- Everyone born since the time of the flood is a descendant of Noah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: descendant, ark)

Bible References:

- Genesis 5:30-31
- Genesis 5:32
- Genesis 6:8
- Genesis 8:1
- **Hebrews 11:7**
- **Matthew 24:37**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:2** But **Noah** found favor with God.
- **3:4** **Noah** obeyed God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **3:13** Two months later God said to **Noah**, “You and your family and all the animals may leave the boat now. Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.” So **Noah** and his family came out of the boat.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5146, G35750

Genesis References:

5:29; 5:30; 5:32; 6:8; 6:9; 6:10; 6:13; 6:22; 7:1; 7:5; 7:6; 7:7; 7:9; 7:11; 7:13; 7:15; 7:23; 8:1; 8:6; 8:11; 8:13; 8:15; 8:18; 8:20; 9:1; 9:8; 9:17; 9:18; 9:19; 9:20; 9:24; 9:28; 9:29; 10:1; 10:32

oak

Definition:

An oak, or oak tree, is a tall shade tree with a large trunk and wide spreading branches.

- Oak trees have strong, hard wood that was used to build ships and to make farming plows, oxen yokes and walking sticks.
- The seed of an oak tree is called an acorn.
- The trunks of certain oak trees could be measured up to 6 meters around.
- Oak trees were symbolic of long life and had other spiritual meanings. In the Bible, they were often associated with holy places.

Translation Suggestions:

- Many translations will find it important to use the term "oak tree" rather than just the word "oak."
- If oak trees are not known in the receptor area, "an oak" could be translated as "an oak, which is a large shade tree like…," then give the name of a local tree that has similar characteristics.

(See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: holy)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:3-4
- Genesis 13:18
- Genesis 14:13-14
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Judges 6:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0352, H0424, H0427, H0436, H0437, H0438

Genesis References:

12:6; 13:18; 14:13; 18:1; 35:8

oath, vow, swear, swearing, swear by

Definition:

The term “oath” in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term “swear” means to make an oath. A “vow” is a solemn promise or oath that a person makes to God.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word “swear” is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term “swear by” means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham’s relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
- If a person in ancient Israel made a vow to God, that person was obligated to fulfill the vow. The ancient Israelites believed that God might punish a person who did not fulfill a vow that he made.
- In ancient Israel, sometimes a person would ask God to protect him or provide for him in exchange for making the vow. However, the ancient Israelites did not believe that God was obligated to fulfill these requests.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “an oath” could also be translated as “a pledge” or “a solemn promise.”
- To “swear” could be translated as to “formally promise” or to “pledge” or to “commit to do something.”
- Other ways to translate “swear by my name” could include “make a promise using my name to confirm it.”
- To “swear by heaven and earth” could be translated as to, “promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it.”
- Make sure the translation of “swear” or “oath” does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.
- Depending on the context, the term “vow” can be translated as “solemn promise” or “solemn oath” or “promise made to God.”

(See also: Abimelech, covenant, **promise**)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:3
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- **Luke 1:73**
- **Mark 6:26**
- **Matthew 5:36**
- **Matthew 14:6-7**
- **Matthew 26:72**
- **1 Corinthians 7:27-28**
- **Acts 21:23**
- Genesis 28:21
- Genesis 31:12-13
- **Jonah 1:14-16**
- **Jonah 2:9-10**
- **Proverbs 7:14**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0422, H0423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G03320, G36600, G37270, G37280, H5087, H5088, G21710

Genesis References:

21:23; 21:24; 21:31; 22:16; 24:3; 24:7; 24:8; 24:9; 24:37; 24:41; 25:33; 26:3; 26:28; 26:31; 28:20; 31:13; 31:53; 47:31; 50:5; 50:6; 50:24; 50:25

oil

Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: olive, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 1:21
- Exodus 29:2
- Leviticus 5:11
- Leviticus 8:1-3
- Mark 6:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G16370, G34640

Genesis References:

28:18; 35:14

olive

Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: **lamp**, **the sea**, **Mount of Olives**)

Bible References:

- **1 Chronicles 27:28-29**
- **Deuteronomy 6:10-12**
- **Exodus 23:10-11**
- Genesis 8:11
- **James 3:12**
- **Luke 16:6**
- **Psalms 52:8**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, H8081, G00650, G16360, G16370, G25650

Genesis References:

8:11

oversee, overseer, keeper

Definition:

The term “overseer” refers to a person who is in charge of the work and welfare of other people. In the Bible, often the term “keeper” means “overseer.”

- In the Old Testament, an overseer had the job of making sure the workers under him did their work well.
- In the New Testament, this term is used to describe leaders of the early Christian church. Their work was to take care of the spiritual needs of the church, making sure the believers received accurate biblical teaching.
- Paul refers to an overseer as being like a shepherd who takes care of the believers in a local church, who are his “flock.”
- The overseer, like a shepherd, keeps watch over the flock. He guards and protects the believers from false spiritual teaching and other evil influences.
- In the New Testament, the terms “overseers,” “elders,” and “shepherds/pastors” are different ways of referring to the same spiritual leaders.

Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could be “supervisor” or “caretaker” or “manager.”
- When referring to a leader of a local group of God’s people, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “spiritual supervisor” or “someone who takes care of the spiritual needs of a group of believers” or “person who oversees the spiritual needs of the Church.”

(See also: church, elder, pastor, shepherd)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 26:31-32
- 1 Timothy 3:2
- Acts 20:28
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Philippians 1:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5329, H6485, H6496, H7860, H8104, G19830, G19840, G19850

Genesis References:

39:4; 39:5; 41:34

overtake

Definition:

The term “overtake” and “overtook” refer to gaining control over someone or something. It usually includes the idea of catching up to something after pursuing it.

- When military troops “overtake” an enemy, it means they defeat that enemy in battle.
- When a predator overtakes its prey, it means that it pursues and catches its prey.
- If a curse “overtakes” someone, it means that whatever was said in that curse happens to the person
- If blessings “overtake” people, it means that those people experience those blessings.
- Depending on the context, “overtake” could be translated as “conquer” or “capture” or “defeat” or “catch up to” or “completely affect.”
- The past action “overtook” can be translated as “caught up to” or “came alongside of” or “conquered” or “defeated” or “caused harm to.”
- When used in a warning that darkness or punishment or terrors will overtake people because of their sin, it means that those people will experience these negative things if they do not repent.
- The phrase “My words have overtaken your fathers” means that the teachings that Yahweh gave to their ancestors will now cause the ancestors to receive punishment because they failed to obey those teachings.

(See also: bless, curse, prey, **punish**)

Bible References:

- **2 Kings 25:4-5**
- **John 12:35**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0579, H0935, H1692, H4672, H5066, H5381, G26380, G29830

Genesis References:

31:25; 44:4; 44:6

Paddan Aram

Definition:

Paddan Aram was the name of a region where Abraham's family lived before moving to the land of Canaan. It means "plain of Aram."

- When Abraham left Haran in Paddan Aram to travel to the land of Canaan, most of the rest of his family stayed behind in Haran.
- Many years later, Abraham's servant went to Paddan Aram to find a wife for Isaac among his relatives there and found Rebekah, grand-daughter of Bethuel.
- Isaac and Rebekah's son Jacob also traveled to Paddan Aram and married two daughters of Rebekah's brother Laban who was living in Haran.
- Aram, Paddan Aram, and Aram Naharaim were all part of the same region that is now where the modern-day country of Syria is located.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Aram, Bethuel, Canaan, Haran, Jacob, Laban, Rebekah, Syria)

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:2
- Genesis 35:9
- Genesis 46:12-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6307

Genesis References:

25:20; 28:2; 28:5; 28:6; 28:7; 31:18; 33:18; 35:9; 35:26; 46:15; 48:7

Paran

Definition:

Paran was a desert or wilderness area east of Egypt and south of the land of Canaan. There was also a Mount Paran, which may have been another name for Mount Sinai.

- The slave Hagar and her son Ishmael went to live in the wilderness of Paran after Sarah ordered Abraham to send them away.
- When Moses led the Israelites out of Egypt, they passed through the wilderness of Paran.
- It was from Kadesh-Barnea in the wilderness of Paran that Moses sent twelve men to spy out the land of Canaan and bring back a report.
- The wilderness of Zin was north of Paran and the wilderness of Sin was south of Paran.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, desert, Egypt, Kadesh, Sinai)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:18
- 1 Samuel 25:1
- Genesis 21:19-21
- Numbers 10:11-13
- Numbers 13:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0364, H6290

Genesis References:

14:6; 21:21

peace, peaceful, peacemaker

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- In the Old Testament, the term “peace” often means a general sense of a person’s welfare, wellness, or wholeness.
- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:1-3
- Acts 7:26
- Colossians 1:18-20
- Colossians 3:15
- Galatians 5:23
- Luke 7:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 4:39
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 15:6 God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.

- 15:12 Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- 16:3 Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- 21:13 He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people's sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- 48:14 David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- 50:17 Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G02690, G15140, G15150, G15160, G15170, G15180, G22720

Genesis References:

15:15; 26:29; 26:31; 28:21; 29:6; 34:21; 37:4; 37:14; 41:16; 43:23; 43:27; 43:28; 44:17

perfect, complete

Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “perfect” means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws. Old Testament sacrifices needed to be “perfect” or “complete,” that is, without blemish.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term “perfect” also has the meaning of being “complete” or “whole.”
- The New Testament book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “without flaw” or “without error” or “flawless” or “without fault” or “not having any faults.”

(See also: **blemish**)

Bible References:

- **Hebrews 12:2**
- **James 3:2**
- **Matthew 5:46-48**
- **Psalms 19:7-8**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3632, H3634, H4359, H8003, H8503, H8537, H8549, H8552, G01990, G26750, G26760, G36470, G50460, G50470, G50480, G50500

Genesis References:

6:9; 17:1

Perizzite

Definition:

The Perizzites were one of several people groups in the land of Canaan. Little is known about this group as to who their ancestors were or what part of Canaan they lived in.

- The Perizzites are mentioned most frequently in the Old Testament Book of Judges, where it is recorded that the Perizzites intermarried with the Israelites and influenced them to worship false gods.
- Note that the clan of Perez, called the "Perezites," was a different people group from the Perizzites. It may be necessary to spell the names very differently to make this clear.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, false god)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 8:7-8
- Exodus 3:16-18
- Genesis 13:7
- Joshua 3:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6522

Genesis References:

13:7; 15:20; 34:30

Pharaoh, king of Egypt

Definition:

In ancient times, the kings who ruled over the country of Egypt were called pharaohs.

- Altogether, over 300 pharaohs ruled Egypt for more than 2,000 years.
- These Egyptians kings were very powerful and wealthy.
- Several of these pharaohs are mentioned in the Bible.
- Often this title is used as a name rather than as a title. In these cases, it is capitalized and written as "Pharaoh."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: egypt, king)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 7:13
- Acts 7:21
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 40:7
- Genesis 41:25

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 8:6 One night, the **Pharaoh**, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- 8:8 **Pharaoh** was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!
- 9:2 So the **Pharaoh** who was ruling over Egypt at that time made the Israelites slaves to the Egyptians.
- 9:13 "I will send you to **Pharaoh** so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt."
- 10:2 Through these plagues, God showed __Pharaoh __ that he is more powerful than **Pharaoh** and all of Egypt's gods.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4428, H4714, H6547, G53280

Genesis References:

12:15; 12:17; 12:18; 12:20; 37:36; 39:1; 40:2; 40:7; 40:11; 40:13; 40:14; 40:17; 40:19; 40:21; 41:1; 41:4; 41:7; 41:8; 41:9; 41:10; 41:14; 41:15; 41:16; 41:17; 41:25; 41:28; 41:32; 41:33; 41:34; 41:35; 41:37; 41:38; 41:39; 41:41; 41:42; 41:44; 41:45; 41:46; 41:55; 42:15; 42:16; 44:18; 45:2; 45:8; 45:16; 45:17; 45:21; 46:5; 46:31; 46:33; 47:1; 47:2; 47:3; 47:4; 47:5; 47:7; 47:8; 47:9; 47:10; 47:11; 47:14; 47:19; 47:20; 47:22; 47:23; 47:24; 47:25; 47:26; 50:4; 50:6; 50:7

Philistines

Definition:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means “people of the sea.”

- There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
- The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
- The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
- King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ashdod, Ashkelon, David, Ekron, Gath, Gaza, Goliath, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 13:4
- 2 Chronicles 9:25-26
- Genesis 10:11-14
- Psalm 56:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6429, H6430

Genesis References:

10:14; 21:32; 21:34; 26:1; 26:8; 26:14; 26:15; 26:18

pit, pitfall, trench, cistern

Definition:

A pit is a deep hole that has been dug in the ground.

- A “cistern” was a hole dug in order to hold water.
- People dig pits for the purpose of trapping animals or finding water.
- A pit can also be used as a temporary place to hold a prisoner.
- Sometimes the phrase “the pit” refers to the grave or to hell. Other times it may refer to “the abyss.”
- The term “pit” is also used figuratively in phrases such as, “pit of destruction” which describes being trapped in a disastrous situation or being deeply involved in sinful, destructive practices.

(See also: **abyss**, **hell**, **prison**)

Bible References:

- Genesis 37:21-22
- **Job 33:18**
- **Luke 6:39**
- **Proverbs 1:12**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0875, H0953, H1356, H1475, H2352, H4087, H4113, H4379, H6354, H7585, H7745, H7816, H7825, H7845, H7882, G00120, G09990, G54210

Genesis References:

14:10; 40:15; 41:14

plea, plead, please, beg, implore

Definition:

The terms “plead” and “pleading” refer to urgently asking someone to do something. A “plea” is an urgent request.

- Pleading often implies that the person feels in very great need or strongly desires help.
- People can plead or make an urgent appeal to God for mercy or to ask him to grant something, either for themselves or someone else.
- Other ways to translate this could include “beg” or “implore” or “urgently ask.”
- The term “plea” could also be translated as “urgent request” or “strong urging.”
- Make sure it is clear in the context that this term does not refer to begging for money.

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 8:3-5
- Judges 6:31
- Luke 4:39
- Proverbs 18:17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1777, H2603, H3198, H4941, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6664, H6419, H7378, H7379, H7775, H8199, H8467, H8469, G11890, G17930, G20650, G38700

Genesis References:

25:21; 42:21

pledge

Definition:

The term “pledge” refers to formally and solemnly promising to do something or give something.

- In the Old Testament the officials of Israel pledged to be loyal to King David.
- To “pledge” could be translate as to “formally commit to” or to “strongly promise.”
- The term “pledge” can also refer to an object given as a guarantee or promise that a debt will be paid.
- The object given as a pledge would be returned to its owner when the promise was fulfilled.
- Ways to translate “a pledge” could include “a solemn promise” or “a formal commitment” or “a guarantee” or “a formal assurance,” depending on the context.

(See also: promise, oath, vow)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 5:4-5
- Exodus 22:26
- Genesis 38:17-18
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0781, H2254, H2258, H5667, H5671, H6148, H6161, H6162

Genesis References:

38:17; 38:18; 38:20; 43:9; 44:32

plow, plower, plowman, plowmen, plowshare, unplowed

Definition:

A “plow” is a farm tool that is used for breaking up soil to prepare a field for planting.

- Plows have sharp, pointed prongs that dig into the soil. They usually have handles that the farmer uses to guide the plow.
- In Bible times, plows were usually pulled by a pair of oxen or other work animals.
- Most plows were made of hard wood, except for the sharp points which were made of a metal, such as bronze or iron.

(See also: bronze, ox)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 8:10-12
- Deuteronomy 21:4
- Luke 9:62
- Luke 17:7
- Psalm 141:5-7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0406, H0855, H2758, H2790, H5215, H5647, H5656, H5674, H6213, H6398, G07220, G07230

Genesis References:

45:6

possess, possessed, possession, dispossess

Definition:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “possess” could also be translated as “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: Canaan, worship, inherit)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:70
- 1 Kings 9:17-19
- Acts 2:45
- Deuteronomy 4:5-6

- Genesis 31:36-37
- **Matthew 13:44**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0270, H0272, H0834, H2505, H2631, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H4736, H5157, H5159, H5459, H7069, G11390, G21920, G26970, G27220, G29320, G29330, G29350, G40470, G52240, G55640

Genesis References:

15:7; 15:8; 17:8; 22:17; 24:60; 28:4; 34:10; 36:43; 47:11; 47:27; 48:4

Potiphar

Definition:

Potiphar was an important official for the pharaoh of Egypt during the time that Joseph was sold as a slave to some Ishmaelites.

- Potiphar bought Joseph from the Ishmaelites and appointed him to be in charge of his household.
- When Joseph was falsely accused of doing wrong, Potiphar had Joseph put in prison.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Egypt, Joseph (OT), Pharaoh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 37:34-36
- Genesis 39:2
- Genesis 39:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6318

Genesis References:

37:36; 39:1

praise, praised, praiseworthy

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to "praise" could also be translated as to "speak well of" or to "highly honor with words" or to "say good things about."
- The noun "praise" could be translated as "spoken honor" or "speech that honors" or "speaking good things about."

(See also: worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:3
- Acts 2:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 3:28
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 49:8
- James 3:9-10
- John 5:41-42
- Luke 1:46
- Luke 1:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 12:13 The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.

- 17:8 When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- 22:7 Zechariah said, "**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!"
- 43:13 They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- 47:8 They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H7121, H8416, G29800, G38530

Genesis References:

12:15; 29:35; 49:8

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: false god, forgive, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:9
- Acts 8:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 4:4
- John 17:9
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 6:5 Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- 13:12 But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- 19:8 Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- 21:7 Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.

- 38:11 Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- 43:13 The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- 49:18 God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H0577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G01540, G11620, G11890, G17830, G20650, G21710, G21720, G38700, G43350, G43360

Genesis References:

20:7; 20:17

prey, prey on

Definition:

The term “prey” refers to something that is hunted, usually an animal that is used for food.

- In a figurative sense, “prey” can refer to a person who is taken advantage of, abused, or oppressed by a more powerful person.
- To “prey on” people means to take advantage of them by oppressing them or stealing something from them.
- The term “prey” could also be translated as “hunted animal” or “hunted one” or “victim.”

(See also: **oppress**)

Bible References:

- **Jeremiah 12:9**
- **Psalms 104:21**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0400, H0957, H0962, H2963, H2964, H5706, H5861, H7997, H7998

Genesis References:

49:9; 49:27

priest, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: **Aaron**, **high priest**, **mediator**, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- **2 Chronicles 6:41**
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22

- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 1:44
- Mark 2:25-26
- Matthew 8:4
- Matthew 12:4
- Micah 3:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 1:6

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 4:7 "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"
- 13:9 Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- 19:7 So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- 21:7 An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G07480, G07490, G24050, G24060, G24070, G24090, G24200

Genesis References:

14:18; 41:45; 41:50; 46:20; 47:22; 47:26

prince, princess, governor, provincial governor, official, nobleman, noblemen, nobility

Definition:

A “prince” is the son of a king. A “princess” is a daughter of a king.

- The term “prince” is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham’s wealth and importance, he was referred to as a “prince” by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term “prince” is used in the expressions “prince of Persia” and “prince of Greece,” which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a “prince” in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as “the prince of this world.”
- Jesus is called the “Prince of Peace” and the “Prince of Life.”
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as “Lord and Christ” and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as “Prince and Savior,” showing the parallel meaning of “Lord” and “Prince.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “prince” could include, “king’s son” or “ruler” or “leader” or “chieftain” or “captain.”
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as “spirit ruler” or “leading angel.”
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as “evil spirit ruler” or “powerful spirit leader” or “ruling spirit,” depending on the context.

(See also: angel, **authority**, **Christ**, **demon**, lord, **power**, ruler, **Satan**, **Savior**, spirit)

Bible References:

- **Acts 5:29-32**
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 49:26
- **Luke 1:52**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0001, H0117, H0324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7261, H7333, H7786, H8269, H8282, H8323, G07470, G07580, G14130, G31750

Genesis References:

12:15; 17:20

profit, profits, profited, profitable

Definition:

Used in this sense, the terms “profit” and “profitable” refer to gaining some material thing through doing certain actions or behaviors. Something is “profitable” to someone if it enables them to earn or attain good material things.

- More specifically, the term “profit” often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is “profitable” if it gains more money than it spends.
- Actions are profitable if they cause material things to be gained for people.

(See also: worthy,profit-spiritual)

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “profit” could also be translated as “benefit” or “help” or “gain.”
- Depending on context, the term “profits” could be translated as “earnings” when referring to wages earned by working.
- The term “profitable” could be translated as “useful” or “beneficial” or “helpful.”
- The term “profited” could be translated as “gained.”
- To “profit from” something could be translated as “benefit from” or “gain money from.”
- In the context of a business, “profit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “money gained” or “surplus of money” or “extra money.”

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1215, H3276, H4195, G12810, G20390, G27700, G27710, G36850, G37860, G48510, G48525, G55390, G56220, G56230, G56240

Genesis References:

37:26

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: synecdoche)
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: **Baal**, divination, false god, **false prophet**, **fulfill**, **law**, vision)

Bible References:

- **1 Thessalonians 2:14-16**

- Acts 3:25
- John 1:43-45
- Malachi 4:4-6
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 2:18
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalm 51:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 12:12 When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- 17:13 God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- 19:1 Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- 19:6 All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- 19:17 Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- 21:9 The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- 43:5 "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- 43:7 "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- 48:12 Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G24950, G43940, G43950, G43960, G43970, G43980, G55780

Genesis References:

20:7

prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Definition:

The term “prosper” generally refers to living well, whether it be physically, morally, emotionally, etc. This term often expresses the idea of being wealthy or successful in life.

- The term “prosperous” often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term “prosperous” also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A “prosperous” city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God’s teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term “prosper” could also be translated as “succeed spiritually” or “be blessed by God” or “experience good things” or “live well.”
- The term “prosperous” could also be translated as “successful” or “wealthy” or “spiritually fruitful.”
- “Prosperity” could also be translated as “well-being” or “wealth” or “success” or “abundant blessings.”

(See also: bless, good, fruit, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:22-23
- Deuteronomy 23:6
- Job 36:11
- Leviticus 25:26-28
- Psalms 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1129, H1767, H1878, H1879, H2428, H2896, H2898, H3027, H3190, H3444, H3498, H3787, H4195, H5381, H6500, H6509, H6555, H6743, H6744, H7230, H7487, H7919, H7951, H7961, H7963, H7965

Genesis References:

24:21; 24:40; 24:42; 24:56; 34:29; 39:2; 39:3; 39:23

prostitute, harlot, whored

Definition:

The terms “prostitute” and “harlot” both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word “prostitute” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression “play the harlot” means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To “prostitute oneself” to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: euphemism)

(See also: **adultery**, false god, **sexual immorality**, false god)

Bible References:

- Genesis 34:31
- Genesis 38:21
- **Luke 15:30**
- **Matthew 21:31**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2154, H2181, H2183, H2185, H6945, H6948, H8457, G42040

Genesis References:

34:31; 38:15; 38:24

prostrate

Definition:

The term “prostrate” means to be lying face down, stretched out on the ground.

- To “fall prostrate” or to “prostrate oneself” before someone means to suddenly bow down very low or in front of that person.
- Usually this position of being prostrate is a response that shows shock, amazement, and awe because of something miraculous that happened. It also shows honor and respect for the person being bowed to.
- Being prostrate also was a way to worship God. People often responded this way to Jesus in thanksgiving and worship when he did a miracle or to honor him as a great teacher.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “prostrated” could include “bowed down low with the face to the ground” or “worshiped him by lying face down in front of him” or “bowed down low to the ground in amazement” or “worshiped.”
- The phrase “will not prostrate ourselves” could be translated as “will not worship” or “will not lie face down in worship” or “will not bow down and worship.”
- “Prostrate himself to” could also be translated as “worship” or “bow down in front of.”

(See also: awe, bow)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 17:36-38
- Genesis 43:28
- Revelation 19:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5307, H5457, H6440, H6915, H7812

Genesis References:

43:28

prostrate, bow down, worship

Definition:

To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: bow, fear, sacrifice, praise, honor)

Bible References:

- Colossians 2:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 3:11-12
- Luke 4:7
- Matthew 2:2
- Matthew 2:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 13:4 Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- 14:2 The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- 17:6 David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.

- 18:12 All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- 25:7 Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- 26:2 On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- 47:1 There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- 49:18 God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G13910, G14790, G21510, G23180, G23230, G23560, G30000, G35110, G43520, G43530, G45730, G45740, G45760

Genesis References:

22:5; 24:26; 24:48

proud, pride, prideful, boast, boastful, boasting

Definition:

The terms “proud” and “pride,” in this sense, refer to a person thinking too highly of themself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people. The term “boast,” when used with this sense, means to talk proudly about something or someone. Often it means to brag about oneself.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”
- The term “boastful” is always negative, and refers to a person who brags about themself or what they possess or have done or can do.
- Someone who is “boastful” frequently talks about himself in a proud way.
- God rebuked the Israelites for “boasting in” their idols. They arrogantly worshiped false gods instead of the true God.
- The Bible also talks about people boasting in such things as their wealth, their strength, their fruitful fields, and their laws. This means that they were proud about these things and did not acknowledge that God is the one who provided these things.

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- Other ways to translate “boast” could include “brag” or “talk proudly” or “be proud.”
- The term “boastful” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “full of prideful talk” or “prideful” or “talking proudly about oneself.”

(See also: **arrogant**, **humble**, **proud positive sense**)

Bible References:

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **34:10** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1364, H1431, H2087, H2102, H3093, H4994, G51870, G52430, G52440, G53080, G53090, G54260, G54500

Genesis References:

19:13

pure, purify, purification

Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: **atonement**, **clean**, spirit)

Bible References:

- **1 Timothy 1:5**
- **Exodus 31:6-9**
- **Hebrews 9:13-15**
- **James 4:8**
- **Luke 2:22**
- **Revelation 14:4**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343,

H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G00480, G00490, G00530, G00540, G15060, G25110, G25120, G25130, G25140

Genesis References:

35:2

Rachel

Definition:

Rachel was one of Jacob's wives. She was the mother of Joseph and Benjamin, whose descendants became three of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- Rachel and her sister Leah were the daughters of Laban, Jacob's uncle.
- For many years, Rachel was not able to have any children. Then God enabled her to give birth to Joseph.
- Years later, Rachel died as she gave birth to Benjamin. Jacob buried her near Bethlehem.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethlehem, Jacob, Laban, Leah, Joseph (OT), **twelve tribes of Israel**)

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:6
- Genesis 29:19-20
- Genesis 29:30
- Genesis 31:6
- Genesis 33:1-3
- **Matthew 2:18**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7354, G44780

Genesis References:

29:6; 29:9; 29:10; 29:11; 29:12; 29:16; 29:17; 29:18; 29:20; 29:25; 29:28; 29:29; 29:30; 29:31; 30:1; 30:2; 30:6; 30:7; 30:8; 30:14; 30:15; 30:22; 30:25; 31:4; 31:14; 31:19; 31:32; 31:33; 31:34; 33:1; 33:2; 33:7; 35:16; 35:19; 35:20; 35:24; 35:25; 46:19; 46:22; 46:25; 48:7

Rebekah

Definition:

Rebekah was a grand-daughter of Abraham's brother Nahor.

- God chose Rebekah to be the wife of Abraham's son Isaac.
- Rebekah left the region of Aram Naharaim where she lived and went with Abraham's servant to the region of the Negev where Isaac was living.
- For a long time Rebekah did not have any children, but finally God blessed her with twin boys, Esau and Jacob.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Aram, Esau, Isaac, Jacob, Nahor, Negev)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15
- Genesis 24:45
- Genesis 24:56
- Genesis 24:64
- Genesis 25:28
- Genesis 26:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 6:2 After a very long journey to the land where Abraham's relatives lived, God led the servant to **Rebekah**. She was the granddaughter of Abraham's brother.
- 6:6 God told **Rebekah**, "There are two nations inside of you."
- 7:1 As the boys grew up, **Rebekah** loved Jacob, but Isaac loved Esau.
- 7:3 Isaac wanted to give his blessing to Esau. But before he did, **Rebekah** and Jacob tricked him by having Jacob pretend to be Esau.
- 7:6 But **Rebekah** heard of Esau's plan. So she sent Jacob far away to live with her relatives.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7259

Genesis References:

22:23; 24:15; 24:29; 24:30; 24:45; 24:51; 24:53; 24:58; 24:59; 24:60; 24:61; 24:64; 24:67; 25:20; 25:21; 25:28; 26:7; 26:8; 26:35; 27:5; 27:6; 27:11; 27:15; 27:42; 27:46; 28:5; 29:12; 35:8; 49:31

rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to “rebel” could also be translated as to “disobey” or to “revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: **authority**, **governor**)

Bible References:

- **1 Kings 12:18-19**
- **1 Samuel 12:14**
- **1 Timothy 1:9-11**
- **2 Chronicles 10:17-19**
- **Acts 21:38**
- **Luke 23:19**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:14** After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- **18:9** Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- **18:13** Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.
- **20:7** But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- **45:3** Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G38930, G49550

Genesis References:

14:4

rebuke, reprove

Definition:

The term “rebuke” refers to correcting someone verbally, usually with sternness or force.

- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
- This could be translated by “sternly correct” or “admonish.”
- The phrase “a rebuke” could be translated by “a stern correction” or “a strong criticism.”
- “Without rebuke” could be translated as “without admonishing” or “without criticism.”

(See also **admonish**, **disobey**)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:25
- **Mark 1:23-26**
- **Mark 16:14**
- **Matthew 8:26-27**
- **Matthew 17:17-18**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1605, H1606, H2778, H2781, H3198, H4045, H4148, H8156, H8433, G16490, G16510, G19690, G20080, G36790

Genesis References:

21:25; 31:42; 37:10

redeem, redeemer, redemption

Definition:

The term “redeem” refers to buying back something or someone that has been previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things. For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “buying back.”
- The words “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these words. The word “ransom,” however, can also mean the payment necessary to “redeem” something or someone. The term “redeem” never refers to the actual payment itself.

(See also: **free**, **ransom**)

Bible References:

- **Colossians 1:13-14**
- **Ephesians 1:7-8**
- **Ephesians 5:16**
- **Galatians 3:13-14**
- **Galatians 4:5**
- **Luke 2:38**
- **Ruth 2:20**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G00590, G06290, G18050, G30840, G30850

Genesis References:

48:16

reed

Definition:

The term “reed” refers to a plant with a long stalk that grows in the water, usually along the edge of a river or stream.

- The reeds in the Nile River where Moses was hidden as a baby were also called “bulrushes.” They were tall, hollow stalks growing in dense clumps in the river water.
- These fibrous plants were used in ancient Egypt for making paper, baskets, and boats.
- The stalk of the reed plant is flexible and is easily bent over by the wind.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Egypt, Moses, Nile River)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:15
- Luke 7:24
- Matthew 11:7
- Matthew 12:20
- Psalm 68:30

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0098, H0100, H0260, H5488, H6169, H7070, G25630

Genesis References:

41:2; 41:5; 41:18; 41:22

reign, rule

Definition:

The term to “reign” means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king.”

(See also: kingdom)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 19:26-27
- Matthew 2:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, H6113, H7287, H7786, G07570, G09360, G22310, G48210

Genesis References:

36:31; 36:32; 36:33; 36:34; 36:35; 36:36; 36:37; 36:38; 36:39; 37:8

remnant

Definition:

The term “remnant” literally refers to people or things that are “remaining” or “left over” from a larger amount or group.

- Often a “remnant” refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
- Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who would survive attacks from outsiders and live to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
- Paul talks about there being a “remnant” of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
- The term “remnant” also implies that there were other people who did not remain or were not left over.

Translation Suggestions:

- A phrase such as “the remnant of this people” could be translated as “the rest of these people” or “the people who are left.”
- The “whole remnant of people” could be translated by “all the rest of the people” or “the remaining people.”

Bible References:

- Acts 15:17
- Amos 9:12
- Ezekiel 6:8-10
- Genesis 45:7
- Isaiah 11:11
- Micah 4:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3498, H3499, H5629, H6413, H7604, H7605, H7611, H8281, H8300, G26400, G30050, G30620

Genesis References:

45:7

report, reported, tell, reputation

Definition:

The term to “report” means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A “report” is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

- “Report” could also be translated as “tell” or “explain” or “tell the details of.”
- The expression “Report this to no one” could be translated as “Do not talk about this with anyone” or “Do not tell anyone about this.”
- Ways to translate “a report” could include “an explanation” or “a story” or “a detailed account,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

- Acts 5:22-23
- John 12:38
- Luke 5:15
- Luke 8:34-35
- Matthew 28:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1681, H1696, H1697, H5046, H7725, H8034, H8052, H8085, H8088, H8089, G01890, G01910, G03120, G05180, G09870, G12250, G13100, G18340, G20360, G21630, G30040, G30560, G31400, G33770

Genesis References:

9:22; 14:13; 21:26; 22:20; 24:28; 26:32; 27:42; 29:12; 31:20; 31:22; 31:27; 32:5; 32:29; 37:2; 37:16; 38:13; 38:24; 41:24; 41:25; 42:29; 43:6; 43:7; 45:13; 45:26; 46:31; 47:1; 48:2; 49:1

restore, restoration

Definition:

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original place or condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- Other expressions for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration” could be translated as “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:10
- Acts 3:21
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 5:22
- Leviticus 6:5-7
- Luke 19:8
- Matthew 12:13
- Psalm 80:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7725, H7999, H8421, G06000, G26750

Genesis References:

37:22

Reuben

Definition:

Reuben was Jacob's first son. He was Leah's first son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the tribe of Reuben or the Reubenites.
- In Hebrew, the name Reuben means "Look, a son!"
- The tribe of Reuben settled on the eastern side of the Jordan River along with the tribe of Gad and half the tribe of Manasseh.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Leah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:32
- Genesis 35:21-22
- Genesis 42:22
- Genesis 42:37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7205, H7206, G45020

Genesis References:

29:32; 30:14; 35:22; 35:23; 37:21; 37:22; 37:29; 42:22; 42:37; 46:8; 46:9; 48:5; 49:3

reward, prize, deserve

Definition:

The term “reward” refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. To “reward” someone is to give someone something he deserves. However, this is different than the concept of “wages,” which refers to payment (often money) given in exchange for work performed.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement “the reward of the wicked.” In this context “reward” refers to the punishment or negative consequences they receive because of their sinful actions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “reward” could be translated as “payment” or “something that is deserved” or “punishment.”
- To “reward” someone could be translated by to “repay” or to “punish” or to “give what is deserved.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: **punish**)

Bible References:

- **Deuteronomy 32:6**
- **Isaiah 40:10**
- **Luke 6:35**
- **Mark 9:40-41**
- **Matthew 5:11-12**
- **Matthew 6:3-4**
- **Psalms 127:3-5**
- **Revelation 11:18**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0319, H0866, H0868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7938, H7939, H7999, G04690, G05140, G05910, G26030, G34050, G34060, G34080

Genesis References:

15:1

righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Definition:

The term "righteousness" refers to God's absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God "righteous." Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called "righteous" include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus' righteousness.

The term "unrighteous" means to be sinful and morally corrupt. "Unrighteousness" refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God's teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes "the unrighteous" refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms "upright" and "uprightness" refer to acting in a way that follows God's laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is "upright" is someone who obeys God's rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as "integrity" and "righteous" have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as "integrity and uprightness." (See: parallelism)

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term "righteous" could be translated as "perfectly good and just" or "always acting rightly."
- God's "righteousness" could also be translated as "perfect faithfulness and goodness."
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term "righteous" could also be translated as "morally good" or "just" or "living a God-pleasing life."

- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good.”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: evil, **faithful**, good, **holy**, integrity, just, law, **law**, **obey**, pure, righteous, sin, **unlawful**)

Bible References:

- **Deuteronomy 19:16**
- **Job 1:8**
- **Psalms 37:30**
- **Psalms 49:14**
- **Psalms 107:42**
- **Ecclesiastes 12:10-11**
- **Isaiah 48:1-2**

- **Ezekiel 33:13**
- **Malachi 2:6**
- **Matthew 6:1**
- **Acts 3:13-14**
- **Romans 1:29-31**
- **1 Corinthians 6:9**
- **Galatians 3:7**
- **Colossians 3:25**
- **2 Thessalonians 2:10**
- **2 Timothy 3:16**
- **1 Peter 3:18-20**
- **1 John 1:9**
- **1 John 5:16-17**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **4:8** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:2** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:1** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G00930, G00940, G04580, G13410, G13420, G13430, G13440, G13450, G13460, G21180, G37160, G37170

Genesis References:

6:9; 7:1; 15:6; 18:19; 18:23; 18:24; 18:25; 18:26; 18:28; 20:4; 30:33; 38:26; 44:16

rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who “rules,” and his authority is his “rule.”

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a “ruler,” as in the phrase “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action to “rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: **authority**, **governor**, king, **synagogue**)

Bible References:

- **Acts 3:17-18**
- **Acts 7:35-37**
- **Luke 12:11**
- **Luke 23:35**
- **Mark 10:42**
- **Matthew 9:32-34**
- **Matthew 20:25**
- **Titus 3:1**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4427, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4623, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7300, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G07460, G07520, G07550, G07570, G07580, G09320, G09360, G10180, G12030, G12990, G17780, G17850, G18490, G22320, G22330, G25250, G25830, G28880, G29610, G35450, G38410, G41650, G41730, G42910

Genesis References:

1:16; 1:18; 21:22; 21:32; 23:6; 25:16; 26:26; 34:2; 37:36; 39:1; 39:21; 39:22; 39:23; 40:2; 40:3; 40:4; 40:7; 40:9; 40:16; 40:20; 40:21; 40:22; 40:23; 41:9; 41:10; 41:12; 42:6; 45:8; 45:26; 47:6

sackcloth

Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made from goat hair or camel hair.

- A person who wore clothing made from it would be uncomfortable. Sackcloth was worn to show mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase “sackcloth and ashes” was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “coarse cloth from animal hair” or “clothes made of goat hair” or “rough, scratchy clothing.”
- Another way to translate this term could be “rough, scratchy mourning clothes.”
- The phrase “sit in sackcloth and ashes” could be translated as “show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: ash, camel, goat, humble, mourn, repent, sign)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 3:31
- Genesis 37:34
- Joel 1:8-10
- Jonah 3:5
- Luke 10:13
- Matthew 11:21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8242, G45260

Genesis References:

37:34

sacrifice, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin; animal sacrifices could never do that.

offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: altar, burnt offering, drink offering, false god, **fellowship offering**, **freewill offering** **peace offering**, priest, **sin offering**, worship)

Bible References:

- **2 Timothy 4:6**
- **Acts 7:42**
- **Acts 21:25**
- Genesis 4:3-5
- **James 2:21-24**

- Mark 1:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 5:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 3:14 After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- 5:6 "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- 5:9 God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- 13:9 Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- 17:6 David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- 48:6 Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- 48:8 But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- 49:11 Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0801, H0817, H0819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G02660, G03340, G10490, G14350, G14940, G23780, G23800, G36460, G43760, G54850

Genesis References:

31:54; 46:1

Salt Sea, Dead Sea

Definition:

The Salt Sea (also called the Dead Sea) was located between southern Israel on its west and Moab on its east.

- The Jordan River flows south into the Salt Sea.
- Because it is smaller than most seas, it could be called "Salt Lake."
- This sea has such a high concentration of minerals (or "salts") that nothing can live in its waters. Its lack of plants and animals is the cause of the name "Dead Sea."
- In the Old Testament, this sea is also called the "Sea of Arabah" and the "Sea of Negev" because of its location near the regions of Arabah and Negev.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Ammon, Arabah, Jordan River, Moab, Negev)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 20:1-2
- Deuteronomy 3:17
- Joshua 3:14-16
- Numbers 34:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3220, H4417

Genesis References:

14:3

sandal

Definition:

A sandal is a simple shoe with a flat sole that is held onto the foot by straps that go around the foot or ankle. Sandals are worn by both men and women.

- In ancient Israel, a sandal was sometimes used to confirm a legal transaction, such as the selling of property. One person would take off a sandal and give it to the other person to show that the transaction was legal and binding.
- John said that he was not worthy to even untie Jesus' sandals, which was a normal task for the servant or slave with the lowest status in a Jewish household.

Bible References:

- Acts 7:33
- Deuteronomy 25:10
- John 1:27
- Joshua 5:15
- Mark 6:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5274, H5275, H8288, G45470, G52660

Genesis References:

14:23

Sarah, Sarai

Definition:

- Sarah was Abraham's wife.
- Her name was originally "Sarai," but God changed it to "Sarah."
- Sarah gave birth to Isaac, the son God had promised to give her and Abraham.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Isaac)

Bible References:

- Genesis 11:30
- Genesis 11:31
- Genesis 17:15
- Genesis 25:9-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 5:1 So Abram's wife, **Sarai**, said to him, "Since God has not allowed me to have children and now I am too old to have children, here is my servant, Hagar. Marry her also so she can have a child for me."
- 5:4 "Your wife, **Sarai**, will have a son—he will be the son of promise."
- 5:4 God also changed **Sarai's** name to **Sarah**, which means "princess."
- 5:5 About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and **Sarah** was 90, **Sarah** gave birth to Abraham's son. They named him Isaac as God had told them to do.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8283, H8297, G45640

Genesis References:

11:29; 11:30; 12:5; 12:11; 12:17; 16:1; 16:2; 16:3; 16:5; 16:6; 16:8; 17:15; 17:17; 17:19; 17:21; 18:6; 18:9; 18:10; 18:11; 18:12; 18:13; 18:14; 18:15; 20:2; 20:14; 20:16; 20:18; 21:1; 21:2; 21:3; 21:6; 21:7; 21:9; 21:12; 23:1; 23:2; 23:19; 24:36; 24:67; 25:10; 25:12; 49:31

Saul (OT)

Definition:

Saul was an Israelite man whom God chose to become the first king of Israel.

- Saul was tall and handsome, and a powerful soldier. He was the kind of man that the Israelites wanted to be their king.
- Although he served God at first, Saul later became proud and disobeyed God. As a result, God appointed David to take Saul's place as king and allowed Saul to be killed in battle.
- In the New Testament, there was a Jew named Saul who was also known as Paul and who became an apostle of Jesus Christ.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: king)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1-3
- 1 Samuel 9:1
- 2 Samuel 1:1-2
- Acts 13:22
- Psalm 18:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 17:1 **Saul** was the first king of Israel. He was tall and handsome, just like the people wanted. **Saul** was a good king for the first few years that he ruled over Israel. But then he became a wicked man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- 17:4 **Saul** became jealous of the people's love for David. **Saul** tried many times to kill him, so David hid from **Saul**.
- 17:5 Eventually, **Saul** died in battle, and David became king of Israel.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7586, G45490

Genesis References:

36:37; 36:38; 46:10

save, saved, safe, salvation

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: **cross**, deliver, **punish**, sin, **Savior**)

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- **Psalms 80:3**
- **Jeremiah 16:19-21**
- **Micah 6:3-5**
- **Luke 2:30**
- **Luke 8:36-37**
- **Acts 4:12**
- **Acts 28:28**
- **Acts 2:21**
- **Romans 1:16**
- **Romans 10:10**
- **Ephesians 6:17**
- **Philippians 1:28**
- **1 Timothy 1:15-17**
- **Revelation 19:1-2**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:8** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:2** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:5** Moses told the Israelites, “Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you.”
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:8** “You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!”
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, “What must I do to be **saved**?” Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**.”
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G08030, G08040, G08060, G12950, G15080, G49820, G49910, G49920, G51980

Genesis References:

49:18

scepter

Definition:

The term “scepter” refers to an ornamental rod or staff held by a ruler, such as a king.

- Scepters were originally a branch of wood with carved decorations. Later scepters were also made of precious metals such as gold.
- The scepter was a symbol of royalty and authority and also symbolized the honor and dignity associated with a king.
- In the Old Testament, God was described as having a scepter of righteousness because God rules as king over his people.
- An Old Testament prophecy referred to the Messiah as a symbolic scepter that would come from Israel to rule over all nations.
- This could also be translated as “ruling rod” or “ruler’s rod” or “king’s rod.”

(See also: **authority**, **Christ**, king, righteous)

Bible References:

- **Amos 1:5**
- **Esther 4:11**
- Genesis 49:10
- **Hebrews 1:8**
- **Numbers 21:18**
- **Psalms 45:6**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2710, H4294, H7626, H8275, G44640

Genesis References:

49:10

seal, sealed, unsealed

Definition:

When referring to an action, the term “seal” means to close an object with something (usually called a “seal”) that makes the object impossible to open without breaking the seal. When referring to an object, the term “seal” refers to something that was made of wood or metal or stone that was formed into a design so that it could be used to stamp something (make an imprint on it).

- A seal was marked with a design to show who it belonged to.
- Seals were used to mark different objects for the purpose of showing that the thing belonged to the owner or had come from the owner or was approved by the owner.
- Seals were used to indicate the authenticity of something as deriving from the owner or being approved by the owner or belonging to the owner in some way.
- Sometimes a seal was put on the top of a ring so that the owner of the ring could press the seal down into something and make an imprint on it.
- Sometimes seals were attached to a string or cord and worn around the neck.
- Melted wax was used to seal letters or other documents that needed to be protected. When the wax cooled and hardened, the letter could not be opened without breaking the wax seal. The person who received the letter would see the unbroken seal and know that no one had opened it.
- A seal was put on the stone in front of Jesus’ grave in order to keep anyone from moving the stone.

(See also: **Holy Spirit**, tomb)

Bible References:

- **Exodus 2:3**
- **Isaiah 29:11**
- **John 6:27**
- **Matthew 27:66**
- **Revelation 5:2**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2368, H2560, H2856, H2857, H2858, H5640, G26960, G49720, G49730

Genesis References:

38:18; 38:25

seed

Definition:

A “seed” is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant.

- The term “seed” can also refer to what a man plants into a woman that allows them to reproduce.
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a man‘s or woman‘s offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people’s hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- For the seed of a plant, use a general term that can apply to all plants, if possible.
- When “seed” refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of “seed.” Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman’s “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people.

(See also: **children**, descendant)

Bible References:

- **1 Kings 18:32**
- Genesis 1:11
- **Jeremiah 2:21**
- **Matthew 13:8**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G46150, G46870, G46900, G47010, G47030

Genesis References:

1:11; 1:12; 1:29; 3:15; 4:25; 7:3; 8:22; 9:9; 12:7; 13:15; 13:16; 15:3; 15:5; 15:13; 15:18; 16:10; 17:7; 17:8; 17:9; 17:10; 17:19; 19:32; 19:34; 21:12; 21:13; 22:17; 22:18; 24:7; 24:60; 26:3;

26:4; 26:24; 28:4; 28:13; 28:14; 32:12; 35:12; 38:8; 38:9; 46:6; 46:7; 47:19; 47:23; 47:24; 48:4; 48:11; 48:19

seek, search, look for

Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is “sought.” This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to “attempt” or “make an effort” to do something or to ask for something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity to do something can mean to “try to find a time” to do it.
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- To “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “urgently ask for favor” or to “do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: just, true)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:6
- Luke 11:9
- Psalms 27:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G03270, G15670, G19340, G20520, G22120

Genesis References:

9:5; 25:22; 31:35; 31:39; 37:15; 37:16; 42:22; 43:30; 44:12

seize, seizure, capture

Definition:

The term “seize” means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

- When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
- When used figuratively, a person can be described as being “seized with fear.” This means that the person was suddenly “overcome by fear.” If a person was “seized with fear” it could also be stated that the person “suddenly became very afraid.”
- In the context of labor pains that “seize” a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated by saying that the pains “overcome” or “suddenly come upon” the woman.
- This term could also be translated as “take control of” or “suddenly take” or “grab.”
- The expression “seized and slept with her” could be translated as “forced himself on her” or “violated her” or “raped her.” Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable.

(See: euphemism)

Bible References:

- Acts 16:19-21
- Exodus 15:14
- John 10:37-39
- Luke 8:29
- Matthew 26:48

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0270, H1497, H2388, H3027, H3920, H3947, H4672, H5377, H5860, H6031, H7760, H8610, G07240, G19490, G26380, G29020, G29830, G48150, G48840

Genesis References:

14:11; 14:12; 19:16; 21:25; 31:31; 39:12

serpent, snake, viper

Definition:

These terms all refer to a kind of reptile that has a long, thin body and large, fanged jaws, and that moves by slithering back and forth across the ground. The term "serpent" usually refers to a large snake and "viper" refers to a type of snake that has venom which it uses to poison its prey.

- This animal is also used figuratively to refer to a person who is evil, especially someone who is deceitful.
- Jesus called the religious leaders "offspring of vipers" because they pretended to be righteous but deceived people and treated them unfairly.
- In the garden of Eden, Satan took the form of a serpent when he talked to Eve and tempted her to disobey God.
- After the serpent tempted Eve to sin, and both Eve and her husband Adam did sin, God cursed the snake, saying that from then on, all snakes would slither along the ground, implying that before then they had had legs.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: curse, deceive, **disobey**, Eden, evil, prey, **Satan**, sin, **tempt**)

Bible References:

- Genesis 3:3
- Genesis 3:4-6
- Genesis 3:12-13
- **Mark 16:17-18**
- **Matthew 3:7**
- **Matthew 23:33**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0660, H2119, H5175, H6620, H6848, H8314, H8577, G21910, G20620, G37890

Genesis References:

3:1; 3:2; 3:4; 3:13; 3:14; 49:17

servant, serve, maidservant, young man, young women

Definition:

A “servant” refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. A servant was under his master’s direction. In the Bible, “servant” and “slave” are mostly interchangeable terms. The term “serve” generally means to do work for someone, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts.

- In the Bible the words “young man” or “young woman” often mean “servant” or “slave.” This meaning will be discerned from context. One indicator of this situation is if the possessive is used, eg. “her young women” which could be translated as “her servants” or “her slaves.”

Translation Suggestions

- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God were often called his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.” When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”
- Often, when a person referred to himself as “your servant” he was showing respect to the person addressed. That person may have had higher social status, or the speaker may be showing humility. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.

(See also: enslave, works, obey, house, lord)

Bible References:

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 6:1 When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- 19:10 Then Elijah prayed, “O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**.”
- 29:3 “Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, ‘Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.’”
- 35:6 “All my father’s **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving.”
- 47:4 The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, “These men are servants of the Most High God.”
- 50:4 Jesus also said, “A **servant** is not greater than his master.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s for Servant: H0519, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G12490, G14010, G14020, G23240, G34070, G34110, G36100, G38160, G49830, G52570

Strong’s for Serve: H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G12470, G12480, G13980, G14020, G14380, G19830, G20640, G22120, G23230, G29990, G30000, G30090, G43370, G43420, G47540, G50870, G52560

Genesis References:

9:25; 9:26; 9:27; 12:16; 14:4; 14:15; 15:13; 15:14; 16:1; 16:2; 16:3; 16:5; 16:6; 16:8; 18:3; 18:5; 18:7; 19:2; 19:19; 20:8; 20:14; 20:17; 21:10; 21:12; 21:13; 21:25; 22:3; 22:5; 22:19; 24:2; 24:5; 24:9; 24:10; 24:14; 24:17; 24:34; 24:35; 24:52; 24:53; 24:59; 24:61; 24:65; 24:66; 25:12; 25:23; 26:14; 26:15; 26:19; 26:24; 26:25; 26:32; 27:29; 27:37; 27:40; 29:15; 29:18; 29:20; 29:24; 29:25; 29:27; 29:29; 29:30; 30:3; 30:4; 30:7; 30:9; 30:10; 30:12; 30:18; 30:26; 30:29; 30:43; 31:6; 31:33; 31:41; 32:4; 32:5; 32:10; 32:16; 32:18; 32:20; 32:22; 33:1; 33:2; 33:5; 33:6; 33:14; 34:19; 35:25; 35:26; 39:4; 39:17; 39:19; 40:4; 40:20; 41:10; 41:12; 41:37; 41:38; 42:10; 42:11; 42:13; 43:18; 43:28; 44:7; 44:9; 44:10; 44:16; 44:17; 44:18; 44:19; 44:21; 44:23; 44:24; 44:27; 44:30; 44:31; 44:32; 44:33; 45:16; 46:34; 47:3; 47:4; 47:19; 47:25; 49:15; 50:2; 50:7; 50:17; 50:18

Seth

Definition:

In the book of Genesis, Seth was the third son of Adam and Eve.

- Eve said that Seth was given to her in place of her son Abel, who was murdered by his brother Cain.
- Noah was one of Seth's descendants, so everyone who has lived since the time of the Flood is also a descendant of Seth.
- Seth and his family were the first people to "call on the name of the Lord."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abel, Cain, call, descendant, ancestor, flood, Noah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:1
- Luke 3:36-38
- Numbers 24:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8352, G45890

Genesis References:

4:25; 4:26; 5:3; 5:4; 5:6; 5:7; 5:8

shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or “dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: **dishonor**, **accuse**, rebuke, false god, **humble**, **Isaiah**, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:15-17
- 2 Kings 2:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 8:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 3:7
- Genesis 34:7
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 2:1-2
- Psalms 22:6
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 9:5
- Proverbs 25:7-8
- Psalms 6:8-10
- Psalms 123:3
- 1 Timothy 5:7-8
- 1 Timothy 6:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0937, H0954, H0955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G01520, G01530, G04100, G04220, G04230, G08080, G08180, G08190, G08210, G17880, G17910, G18700, G26170, G30590, G36790, G36800, G36810, G38560, G50140, G51950, G51960, G54840

Genesis References:

2:25; 30:23; 34:7; 34:14

Sheba

Definition:

In ancient times, Sheba was an ancient civilization or region of land that was located somewhere in southern Arabia.

- The region or country of Sheba was probably located near what are now the present-day countries of Yemen and Ethiopia.
- Its inhabitants were probably descendants of Ham.
- The Queen of Sheba came to visit King Solomon when she heard the fame of his riches and wisdom.
- There were also several men named "Sheba" listed in genealogies in the Old Testament. It is possible that the name of the region of Sheba came from one of these men.
- The city of Beersheba was shortened to Sheba one time in the Old Testament.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: **Arabia**, Beersheba, **Ethiopia**, **Solomon**)

Bible References:

- **1 Chronicles 1:8-10**
- **1 Kings 10:1-2**
- **Isaiah 60:6-7**
- **Psalms 72:10**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5434, H7614

Genesis References:

10:7; 10:28; 25:3

Shechem

Definition:

Shechem was a town in Canaan located about 40 miles north of Jerusalem. Shechem was also the name of a man in the Old Testament.

- The town of Shechem was where Jacob settled after being reconciled to his brother Esau.
- Jacob bought land from the sons of Hamor the Hivite in Shechem. This land later became his family burial ground and the place where his sons buried him.
- Hamor's son Shechem raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, resulting in Jacob's sons killing all the men in the town of Shechem.

(Translation suggestions: Hamor)

(See also: Canaan, Esau, Hamor, Hivite, Jacob)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:14-16
- Genesis 12:6-7
- Genesis 33:19
- Genesis 37:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7928, H7930

Genesis References:

12:6; 33:18; 33:19; 34:2; 34:4; 34:6; 34:8; 34:11; 34:13; 34:18; 34:20; 34:24; 34:26; 37:12; 37:13; 37:14

Shem

Definition:

Shem was one of Noah's three sons, all of whom went with him into the ark during the worldwide flood described in the book of Genesis.

- Shem was the ancestor of Abraham and his descendants.
- The descendants of Shem were known as "Semites"; they spoke "Semitic" languages such as Hebrew and Arabic.
- The Bible indicates that Shem lived nearly 600 years.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Arabia, ark, flood, Noah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 5:32
- Genesis 6:10
- Genesis 7:13-14
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 10:31
- Genesis 11:10
- Luke 3:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8035, G45900

Genesis References:

5:32; 6:10; 7:13; 9:18; 9:23; 9:26; 9:27; 10:1; 10:21; 10:22; 10:31; 11:10; 11:11

shepherd, herder, pastor

Definition:

A “shepherd” is a person who takes care of sheep. In the Old Testament, this word can also refer to a “herder” who takes care of other kinds of domestic livestock such as goats or cattle.

- As a verb, the term “shepherd” means to lead sheep (or other livestock) to places with good food and water, protect them from wild animals, keep them from getting lost and other duties necessary to keep livestock alive and healthy.
- In the Bible, this term is often used figuratively to refer to taking care of the needs of people (not only animals), both physical and spiritual.
- In the Old Testament, God was called the “shepherd” of his people because he took care of them. In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the “good shepherd,” and in other places Jesus is called the “great shepherd” of the Church.
- The term “shepherd” is also used in the New Testament to refer to a person who is a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as “pastor” is the same word that is translated as “shepherd.” Elders and overseers are also called shepherds.

Translation Suggestions

- The noun “shepherd” can be translated as “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When referring to someone who cares for livestock other than sheep, the term can be translated as “herder,” “tender of livestock” or “person who takes care of livestock.”
- When used as a verb, the term “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- In some contexts, the term “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- When used figuratively, the noun “shepherd” could be translated in different ways, including “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- When used figuratively, the verb “shepherd” could be translated as to “take care of” or to “spiritually nourish” or to “guide and teach” or to “lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep).”

(See also: sheep, livestock, **pastor**)

Bible References:

- Genesis 13:7
- Genesis 49:24
- **Luke 2:9**

- **Mark 6:34**
- **Mark 14:26-27**
- **Matthew 2:6**
- **Matthew 9:36**
- **Matthew 25:32**
- **Matthew 26:31**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:11** Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.to
- **17:2** David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- **23:6** That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- **23:8** The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- **30:3** To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6629, H7462, H7469, H7473, G07500, G41650, G41660

Genesis References:

4:2; 13:7; 13:8; 26:20; 29:7; 29:9; 30:31; 30:36; 37:2; 37:12; 37:13; 37:16; 46:32; 47:3; 48:15; 49:24

shield

Definition:

A shield was an object held by a soldier in battle to protect himself from being injured by the enemy's weapons. To "shield" someone means to protect that person from harm.

- Shields were often circular or oval, were made of materials such as leather, wood, or metal, and were sturdy and thick enough to keep a sword or arrow from piercing them.
- Using this term as a metaphor, the Bible refers to God as a protective shield for his people. (See: Metaphor)
- Paul talked about the "shield of faith," which is a figurative way of saying that having faith in Jesus and living out that faith in obedience to God will protect believers from the spiritual attacks of Satan.

(See also: **faith**, **obey**, **Satan**, spirit)

Bible References:

- **1 Kings 14:26**
- **2 Chronicles 23:8-9**
- **2 Samuel 22:36**
- **Deuteronomy 33:29**
- **Psalms 18:35**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2653, H3591, H4043, H5437, H5526, H6793, H7982, G23750

Genesis References:

15:1

Shiloh

Definition:

Shiloh was a walled Canaanite city that was conquered by the Israelites under the leadership of Joshua.

- The city of Shiloh was located west of the Jordan River and northeast of the city of Bethel.
- During the time that Joshua was leading Israel, the city of Shiloh was a meeting place for the people of Israel.
- The twelve tribes of Israel met together at Shiloh to hear Joshua tell them which portion of the land of Canaan had been assigned to each of them.
- Before any temple was built in Jerusalem, Shiloh was the place where the Israelites came to sacrifice to God.
- When Samuel was a young boy, his mother Hannah took him to live in Shiloh to be trained by the priest Eli to serve Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethel, dedicate, Hannah, Jerusalem, Jordan River, priest, sacrifice, Samuel, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 2:26-27
- 1 Samuel 1:9-10
- Joshua 18:1-2
- Judges 18:30-31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7886, H7887

Genesis References:

49:10

Shinar

Definition:

Shinar means “country of two rivers” and was the name of a plain or region in southern Mesopotamia.

- Shinar later became known as “Chaldea” and then, “Babylonia.”
- Ancient peoples living in the city of Babel in the Plain of Shinar built a tall tower to try to make themselves great.
- Generations later, the Jewish patriarch Abraham lived in the city of Ur in this region, which by that time was called “Chaldea.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, **Babel**, Babylon, Chaldea, **Mesopotamia**, **patriarchs**, Ur)

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:8-10
- Genesis 14:1
- Genesis 14:7-9
- **Isaiah 11:10-11**
- **Zechariah 5:11**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8152

Genesis References:

10:10; 11:2; 14:1; 14:9

shrewd, cunning

Definition:

The term “shrewd” describes a person who is intelligent and clever, especially in practical matters.

- Often the term “shrewd” has a meaning that is partly negative since it usually also involves being selfish.
- A shrewd person is usually focused on helping himself, not others.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “cunning” or “crafty” or “smart” or “clever,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2450, H6175, G54290

Genesis References:

3:1

Sidon, Sidonians

Definition:

Sidon was the oldest son of Canaan. There is also a Canaanite city called Sidon, probably named after Canaan's son.

- The city of Sidon was located northwest of Israel on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is part of the present-day country of Lebanon.
- The "Sidonians" were a Phoenician people group who lived in ancient Sidon and the region surrounding it.
- In the Bible, Sidon is closely associated with the city of Tyre, and both cities were known for their wealth and for immoral behavior of their people.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Noah, **Phoenicia**, **the sea**, **Tyre**)

Bible References:

- **Acts 12:20**
- **Acts 27:3-6**
- Genesis 10:15-18
- Genesis 10:19
- **Mark 3:7-8**
- **Matthew 11:22**
- **Matthew 15:22**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6721, H6722, G46050, G46060

Genesis References:

10:15; 10:19; 49:13

sign, proof, reminder

Definition:

The term “sign” usually refers an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- In the Bible, signs are sometimes given in connection to a promise or covenant that God has made:
  - The book of Genesis describes the rainbow God created in the sky as a sign (or reminder) to himself that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
  - In the book of Genesis, God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign (or indicator) of the fact that he had made his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
  - The book of Luke describes that an angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
  - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
  - The book of Exodus describes the plagues that destroyed Egypt as signs that showed who Yahweh was and proved that he was greater than Pharaoh and the Egyptian gods.
  - The book of Acts describes the miracles performed by the prophets and apostles as signs that proved they were speaking God’s message.
  - The book of John describes the miracles that Jesus performed as signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: **miracle**, **apostle**, **Christ**, covenant, circumcise)

Bible References:

- **Acts 2:18-19**
- **Exodus 4:8-9**
- **Exodus 31:12-15**
- Genesis 1:14
- Genesis 9:12
- **John 2:18**
- **Luke 2:12**
- **Mark 8:12**
- **Psalms 89:5-6**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G03640, G08800, G12130, G12290, G17180, G17300, G17320, G17700, G39020, G41020, G45910, G45920, G49530, G49730, G52800

Genesis References:

1:14; 4:15; 9:12; 9:13; 9:17; 17:11

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made from silver include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.
- If your culture does not have silver you could translate this term as "precious metal"

(See also: **tabernacle**, **temple**)

Bible References:

- **1 Chronicles 18:9-11**
- **1 Samuel 2:36**
- **2 Kings 25:13-15**
- **Acts 3:6**
- **Matthew 26:15**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G06930, G06940, G06950, G06960, G14060

Genesis References:

13:2; 17:12; 17:13; 17:23; 17:27; 20:16; 23:9; 23:13; 23:15; 23:16; 24:35; 24:53; 31:15; 37:28; 42:25; 42:27; 42:28; 42:35; 43:12; 43:15; 43:18; 43:21; 43:22; 43:23; 44:1; 44:2; 44:8; 45:22; 47:14; 47:15; 47:16; 47:18

Simeon

Definition:

Simeon was Jacob's second son. He was Leah's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Simeon."
- The name Simeon is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "to hear."
- The tribe of Simeon occupied part of the southernmost territory in the promised land of Canaan. Its land was entirely surrounded by the land that belonged to Judah. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Simeon" refers to the land given to the tribe of Simeon.
- When Joseph and Mary brought the baby Jesus to the temple in Jerusalem to dedicate him to God, an elderly man named Simeon praised God for allowing him to see the Messiah.
- Another man named Simeon is mentioned in Luke's geneology of Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: **twelve tribes of Israel**, Jacob, Leah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:33
- Genesis 34:25
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Genesis 43:21-23
- **Luke 2:25**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8095, H8099, G48260

Genesis References:

29:33; 34:25; 34:30; 35:23; 42:24; 42:36; 43:23; 46:10; 48:5; 49:5

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people do not know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who did not keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebelling against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people do not see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: **disobey**, evil, **flesh**, **tax collector**)

Bible References:

- **1 Chronicles 9:1-3**
- **1 John 1:10**

- 1 John 2:2
- 2 Samuel 7:12-14
- Acts 3:19
- Daniel 9:24
- Genesis 4:7
- Hebrews 12:2
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 4:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 6:23
- Romans 8:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 3:15 God said, “I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children.”
- 13:12 God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- 20:1 The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- 21:13 The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people’s **sin**.
- 35:1 One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinners** who had gathered to hear him.
- 38:5 Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**.”
- 43:11 Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**.”
- 48:8 We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- 49:17 Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0817, H0819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G02640, G02650, G02660, G02680, G03610, G37810, G39000, G42580

Genesis References:

4:7; 13:13; 18:20; 20:6; 20:9; 31:36; 39:9; 40:1; 41:9; 42:22; 43:9; 44:32; 50:17

slaughter, slaughtered

Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called “slaughter.”

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression “the slaughter was very great” could be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: angel, cow, disobey, Ezekiel, servant, slay)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Hebrews 7:1
- Isaiah 34:2
- Jeremiah 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2026, H2027, H2028, H2076, H2491, H2873, H2874, H2878, H4046, H4293, H4347, H4660, H5221, H6993, H7524, H7819, H7821, G28710, G49670, G49690

Genesis References:

22:10; 37:31; 43:16

slay, slain, slaughter, kill, murder

Definition:

To “slay” a person or animal means to kill it. Often it means to kill it in a forceful or violent way. If a man has killed an animal he has “slain” it.

- When referring to an animal or to a large number of people, the term “slaughter” is another term that is often used.
- An act of slaughtering is also called a “slaughter.”
- The phrase “the slain” could also be translated as “the slain people” or “the people who were killed.”

(See also: slaughter)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 28:23
- Isaiah 26:21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2026, H2076, H2491, H2717, H2763, H2873, H2874, H4191, H4194, H5221, H6991, H6992, H7523, H7819, G03370, G06150, G13150, G23800, G26950, G49680, G49690, G54070

Genesis References:

4:8; 4:14; 4:15; 4:23; 4:25; 12:12; 20:4; 20:11; 26:7; 27:41; 27:42; 34:25; 34:26; 37:20; 37:26; 49:6

Sodom

Definition:

Sodom was a city in the southern part of Canaan where Abraham's nephew Lot lived with his wife and children.

- The land of the region surrounding Sodom was very well watered and fertile, so Lot chose to live there when he first settled in Canaan.
- The exact location of this city is not known because Sodom and the nearby city of Gomorrah were completely destroyed by God as punishment for the evil things the people there were doing.
- The most significant sin that the people of Sodom and Gomorrah were practicing was homosexuality.

(See also: Canaan, Gomorrah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:19
- Genesis 13:12
- **Matthew 10:15**
- **Matthew 11:24**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5467, G46700

Genesis References:

10:19; 13:10; 13:12; 13:13; 14:2; 14:8; 14:10; 14:11; 14:12; 14:17; 14:21; 14:22; 18:16; 18:20; 18:22; 18:26; 19:1; 19:4; 19:24; 19:28

sons of God, children of God

Definition:

The term “sons of God” is a figurative expression that has several possible meanings.

- In the New Testament, the term “sons of God” refers to all believers in Jesus and is often translated as “children of God” since it includes both males and females.
- This use of the term speaks of a relationship with God that is like the relationship between a human son and his father, with all the privileges associated with being sons.
- Some people interpret the term “sons of God” that appears in Genesis 6 to mean fallen angels—evil spirits or demons. Others think it may refer to powerful political rulers or to the descendants of Seth.
- The title “Son of God” is a different term: it refers to Jesus, who is God’s only Son.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “sons of God” refers to believers in Jesus, it could be translated as “children of God.”
- In Genesis 6:2 and 4 ways to translate “sons of God” could include “angels,” “spirit beings,” “supernatural creatures,” or “demons.”
- Also see the link for “son.”

(See also: angel, demon, son, Son of God, ruler, spirit)

Bible References:

- Genesis 6:2
- Genesis 6:4
- Job 1:6
- Romans 8:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0430, H1121, G52070, G50430

Genesis References:

6:2; 6:4

soul, self

Definition:

The term “soul” can either refer generally to the non-physical part of a person or refer specifically to a person’s awareness of themselves as a person distinct from others.

- In the Bible, the terms “soul” and “spirit” may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- In contrast to the body, the “soul” can be spoken of as the part of a person that “relates to God.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “soul” could also be translated as “inner self” or “inner person.”
- In some contexts, “my soul” could be translated as “I” or “me.”
- Usually the phrase “the soul” can be translated as “the person” or “he” or “him,” depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts “soul” and “spirit.”
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase “dividing soul and spirit” could mean “deeply discerning or exposing the inner person.”

(See also: spirit)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:8
- Acts 2:27-28
- Acts 2:41
- Genesis 49:6
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 1:21
- Jeremiah 6:16-19
- Jonah 2:7-8
- Luke 1:47
- Matthew 22:37
- Psalms 19:7
- Revelation 20:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5082, H5315, H5397, G55900

Genesis References:

2:7

sow, sower, plant, planted, replanted, transplanted

Definition:

To “sow” means to put seeds on top of or in the ground in order to grow plants. A “sower” is a person who sows or plants seeds. A “plant” is generally something that grows and is attached to the ground.

- One method of sowing or planting seeds during biblical times was to take handfuls of seeds and scatter them on the ground.
- Farmers would often plow the ground on which they had sown seeds after they had sown the seeds. The reason farmers would plow the ground after they had sown the seed is so that the seed would be covered with soil.
- Sometimes farmers may have plowed the field that they sowed seeds in both before and after sowing seeds.

Translations Suggestions

- The term to “sow” could also be translated as to “plant.” Make sure the word or phrase you use to translate this term refers to, or can include, planting seeds by scattering them because this is the method of sowing that Jesus was referring to in his parable in Matthew 13:3-23, Mark 4:2-20, and Luke 8:4-8 where he describes a sower who sowed seeds.
- Other ways to translate “sower” could include “planter” or “farmer” or “person who plants seeds.”
- In English, “sow” is only used for planting seeds, but the English word “plant” can be used for planting seeds as well as larger things, such as trees. Other languages may also use different words, depending on what is being planted.

(See also: harvest)

Bible References:

- Luke 8:5
- Matthew 6:25-26
- Matthew 13:4
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 25:24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2221, H2232, H2233, H2236, H4218, H4302, H5193, H7971, H8362, G46870, G47030, G54520

Genesis References:

2:8; 9:20; 21:33; 26:12; 47:23

spirit, wind, breath

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of a person which cannot be seen. In biblical times, the concept of a person’s spirit was closely related to the concept of a person’s breath. The term can also refer to wind, that is, the movement of air in the natural world.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, such as an evil spirit.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes things in the non-physical world.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.” Sometimes the Bible applies this term in the context of a person’s attitude or emotional state, such as “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”
- Jesus said that God is a spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”
- Sometimes this term can be translated as “wind” when referring to the simple movement of air or “breath” when referring to air movement caused by living beings.

(See also: soul, **Holy Spirit**, **demon**, **breath**)

Bible References:

- **1 Corinthians 5:5**
- **1 John 4:3**
- **1 Thessalonians 5:23**
- **Acts 5:9**

- **Colossians 1:9**
- **Ephesians 4:23**
- Genesis 7:21-22
- Genesis 8:1
- **Isaiah 4:4**
- **Mark 1:23-26**
- **Matthew 26:41**
- **Philippians 1:27**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:3** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, “It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands.” Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, receive my **spirit**.”
- **48:7** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G41510, G41520, G41530, G53260, G54270

Genesis References:

1:2; 3:8; 6:3; 6:17; 7:15; 7:22; 8:1; 26:35; 41:8; 41:38; 45:27

staff, clubs

Definition:

A staff is a long wooden stick or rod, often used as a walking stick.

- When Jacob was old, he used a staff to help him walk.
- God turned Moses' staff into a snake to show his power to Pharaoh.
- Shepherds also used a staff to help guide their sheep, or to rescue the sheep when they fell or wandered.
- The shepherd's staff had a hook on the end, so it differed from the shepherd's rod, which was straight and was used to kill wild animals that were trying to attack the sheep.

(See also: Pharaoh, power, sheep, shepherd)

Bible References:

- Exodus 4:1-3
- Exodus 7:9
- Luke 9:3
- Mark 6:7-9
- Matthew 10:8-10
- Matthew 27:29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4132, H4294, H4731, H4938, H6086, H6418, H7626, G25630, G35860, G44640

Genesis References:

38:18; 38:25

statute

Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” and “command” and “law” and “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh’s statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: command, decree, law, ordinance, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Ezekiel 33:15
- Numbers 19:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H2708, H7010, G13450

Genesis References:

26:5; 47:26

strife, disputes, quarrel, arguing, conflict

Definition:

The term “strife” refers to physical or emotional conflict between people.

- A person who causes strife does things that result in strong disagreements between people and in hurt feelings.
- Sometimes the use of the word “strife” implies that strong emotions are involved, such as anger or bitterness.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “disagreement” or “dispute” or “conflict.”

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 3:3-5
- Habakkuk 1:3
- Philippians 1:17
- Proverbs 17:1
- Psalms 55:8-9
- Romans 13:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1777, H1779, H4066, H4090, H4683, H4808, H7379, H7701, G04850, G20520, G20540, G30550, G31630, G53790

Genesis References:

13:7; 13:8; 26:20; 26:21

Succoth

Definition:

Succoth was the name of two Old Testament cities. The word, “succoth” (or “sukkoth”) means “shelters.”

- One city called Succoth was located on the east side of the Jordan River.
- Jacob stayed at Succoth with his family and flocks, building shelters for them there.
- Hundreds of years later, Gideon and his exhausted men stopped at Succoth as they were chasing the Midianites, but the people there refused to give them any food.
- The other city called Succoth was located on the northern border of Egypt and was a place where the Israelites stopped after they crossed the Red Sea as they were escaping from slavery in Egypt.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 7:46
- Exodus 12:37-40
- Joshua 13:27-28
- Judges 8:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5523, H5524

Genesis References:

33:17

sweep

Definition:

To “sweep” usually means to remove dirt by making broad, quick movements with a broom or brush. “Swept” is the past tense of “sweep.” These words are also used figuratively.

- The term “sweep” is used figuratively to describe how an army attacks with swift, decisive, wide-reaching movements.
- For example, Isaiah prophesied that the Assyrians would “sweep through” the Kingdom of Judah. This means they would destroy Judah and capture its people.
- The term “sweep” can also be used to describe the manner in which rapidly flowing water pushes things and forces them away.
- When overwhelming, difficult things are happening to a person, it can be said that they are “sweeping over” him.

(See also: Assyria, Isaiah, Judah, prophet)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:3
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Genesis 18:24
- Proverbs 21:7-8
- Psalms 90:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0622, H0857, H1640, H2498, H2894, H3261, H5500, H5595, H7857, G42160, G45630, G49510

Genesis References:

18:23; 18:24; 19:15; 19:17

sword, swordsmen

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: Metaphor)
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: **James (brother of Jesus)**, **John (the Baptist)**, tongue, **word of God**)

Bible References:

- **Acts 12:2**
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- **Luke 2:33-35**
- **Luke 21:24**
- **Matthew 10:34**
- **Matthew 26:55**

- Revelation 1:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0019, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G31620, G45010

Genesis References:

3:24; 27:40; 31:26; 34:25; 34:26; 48:22; 49:5

Tamar

Definition:

Tamar is the name of several different women in the Old Testament. There are also several cities or other places that are named Tamar in the Old Testament.

- Tamar was the daughter-in-law of Judah. After Tamar became a widow, Judah fathered a son with Tamar, who continued the family name of her dead husband. The son's name was Perez, who became an ancestor of King David and of Jesus Christ.
- One of King David's daughters was named Tamar; she was the sister of Absalom. Her half-brother Amnon raped her and left her desolate.
- Absalom also had a daughter named Tamar.
- A city called "Hazezon Tamar" was the same as the city of Engedi on the western shore of the Salt Sea. There is also a "Baal Tamar," and general references to a place called "Tamar" which may have been different from the cities.

(See also: **Absalom**, **ancestor**, **Amnon**, **David**, **ancestor**, Judah, Salt Sea)

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

Bible References:

- **1 Chronicles 2:4**
- **2 Samuel 13:2**
- **2 Samuel 14:25-27**
- Genesis 38:6-7
- Genesis 38:24
- **Ruth 4:12**
- **Matthew 1:1-3**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1193, H2688, H8412, H8559

Genesis References:

14:7; 38:6; 38:11; 38:13; 38:24

Tarshish

Definition:

In biblical times, Tarshish was a port city situated on the Mediterranean Sea. The specific location of the city is unknown. Also, the Old Testament mentions two different men named Tarshish.

- The city of Tarshish was a prosperous port city with ships that carried products to buy, sell, or trade. The Bible states that King Solomon kept a fleet of ships stationed at Tarshish.
- The Old Testament prophet Jonah boarded a ship bound for the city of Tarshish instead of obeying God's command to go preach to Nineveh.
- One of Japheth's grandsons was named Tarshish.
- Tarshish was also the name of one of the wise men of King Ahashuerus.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: **Esther**, Japheth, **Jonah**, Nineveh, **Phoenicia**, wise men)

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:2-5
- **Isaiah 2:16**
- **Jeremiah 10:9**
- **Jonah 1:3**
- **Psalms 48:7**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8659

Genesis References:

10:4

tent, tentmaker

Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents constructed from sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he supported himself by making tents.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses" or even "bodies." (See: synecdoche)

(See also: Abraham, Canaan, **curtain**, **Paul**, **Sinai**, **tabernacle**, **tent of meeting**)

Bible References:

- **1 Chronicles 5:10**
- **Daniel 11:45**
- **Exodus 16:18**
- Genesis 12:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0167, H0168, H2583, H3407, H6898

Genesis References:

4:20; 9:21; 9:27; 12:8; 13:3; 13:5; 13:12; 13:18; 18:1; 18:2; 18:6; 18:9; 18:10; 24:67; 25:27; 26:25; 31:25; 31:33; 31:34; 33:19; 35:21

tenth, tithe

Definition:

The terms “tenth” and “tithe” refer to “ten percent” or “one-out-of-ten portion” of one’s money, crops, livestock, or other possessions, which is given to God.

- In the Old Testament, God instructed the Israelites to set aside a tenth of their belongings to give as an offering of thanksgiving to him.
- This offering was used to support the Levite tribe of Israel who served the Israelites as priests and caretakers of the tabernacle and later, the temple.
- In the New Testament, God does not require giving a tithe, but instead he instructs believers to generously and cheerfully help people in need and support the work of Christian ministry.
- This could also be translated as “one-tenth” or “one out of ten.”

(See also: believe, Israel, Levite, livestock, Melchizedek, **minister**, sacrifice, **tabernacle**, **temple**)

Bible References:

- Genesis 14:19-20
- Genesis 28:20-22
- **Hebrews 7:4-6**
- **Isaiah 6:13**
- **Luke 11:42**
- **Luke 18:11-12**
- **Matthew 23:23-24**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4643, H6237, H6241, G05860, G11810, G11830

Genesis References:

14:20; 28:22

Terah

Definition:

Terah was a descendant of Noah's son Shem. He was the father of Abram, Nahor and Haran.

- Terah left his home in Ur in order to go to the land of Canaan with his son Abram, his nephew Lot, and Abram's wife Sarai.
- On the way to Canaan, Terah and his family lived for years in the city of Haran in Mesopotamia. Terah died in Haran at the age of 205.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Canaan, Haran, Lot, **Mesopotamia**, Nahor, Sarah, Shem, Ur)

Bible References:

- Genesis 11:31-32
- **1 Chronicles 1:24-27**
- **Luke 3:33-35**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8646, G22910

Genesis References:

11:24; 11:25; 11:26; 11:27; 11:28; 11:31; 11:32

terror, terrorize, terrify, dread, panic

Definition:

The term “terror” refers to a feeling of extreme or intense fear. To “terrify” someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A “terror” is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as “terrifying.” This term could be translated as “fear-causing” or “terror-producing.”
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The “terror of Yahweh” could be translated as “the terrifying presence of Yahweh” or “the dreaded judgment of Yahweh” or “when Yahweh causes great fear.”
- Ways to translate “terror” could also include “extreme fear” or “deep dread.”

(See also: adversary, fear, judge, plague, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 2:25
- Exodus 14:10
- Luke 21:9
- Mark 6:48-50

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0367, H0926, H0928, H1091, H1161, H1204, H1205, H1763, H2111, H2113, H2189, H2731, H2847, H2851, H2865, H3372, H3707, H4032, H4172, H4288, H4637, H6184, H6206, H6343, H6973, G16290, G16300, G22580, G44220, G44260, G54010

Genesis References:

9:2; 15:12; 28:17; 35:5; 45:3

test, tested, testing, testing in the fire

Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “test” could also be translated as, to “challenge” or to “cause to experience difficulties” or to “prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as to “test” or to “set up a challenge” or to “force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: **tempt**)

Bible References:

- **1 John 4:1**
- **1 Thessalonians 5:21**
- **Acts 15:10**
- Genesis 22:1
- **Isaiah 7:13**
- **James 1:12**
- **Lamentations 3:40-43**
- **Malachi 3:10**

- **Philippians 1:10**
- **Psalm 26:2**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5254, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G12420, G12630, G13030, G13820, G19570, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G39840, G43030, G44510, G48280, G60200

Genesis References:

22:1

testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence

Definition:

When a person gives "testimony" he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To "testify" is to give "testimony."

- In some places in the Old Testament, "Testimony" refers specifically to the tablets of stone on which Yahweh wrote his ten commandments. From that use it came to refer to God's law more broadly.
- Often a person "testifies" about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives "false testimony" does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term "testimony" refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus' followers testified about the events of Jesus' life, death, and resurrection.

The term "witness" refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term "eyewitness" emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To "witness" something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness "gives witness" or "bears witness." This has the same meaning as "testify."
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a "false witness." He is said to "give false witness" or to "bear false witness."
- The expression "be a witness between" means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "testify" or "give testimony" could also be translated as "tell the facts" or "tell what was seen or heard" or "tell from personal experience" or "give evidence" or "tell what happened."

- Ways to translate "testimony" could include, "report of what happened" or "statement of what is true" or "evidence" or "what has been said" or "prophecy."

- Ways to translate "Testimony" could include, "the stone slabs on which I wrote my commands" or "God's law" or "God's commands" or "the record of the agreement between Yahweh and Israel."

- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, judge, prophet, **true**)

Bible References:

- **Deuteronomy 31:28**
- **Micah 6:3**
- **Matthew 26:60**
- **Mark 1:44**
- **John 1:7**
- **John 3:33**
- **Acts 4:32-33**
- **Acts 7:44**
- **Acts 13:31**
- **Romans 1:9**

- 1 Thessalonians 2:10-12
- 1 Timothy 5:19-20
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- 2 Peter 1:16-18
- 1 John 5:6-8
- 3 John 1:12
- Revelation 12:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 39:2 Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- 39:4 The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, “We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?”
- 42:8 “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things.”
- 43:7 “We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G02670, G12630, G19570, G26490, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G31440, G43030, G48280, G49010, G55750, G55760, G55770, G60200

Genesis References:

31:44; 31:48; 31:50; 31:52; 41:16

thief, thieves, rob, robber, robbery, bandit

Definition:

The term “thief” refers to a person who steals money or property from other people. The plural of “thief” is “thieves.” The term “robber” often refers to a thief who also physically harms or threatens the people he is stealing from.

- Jesus told a parable about a Samaritan man who took care of a Jewish man who had been attacked by robbers. The robbers had beaten the Jewish man and wounded him before stealing his money and clothing.
- Both thieves and robbers come suddenly to steal, when people are not expecting it. Often they use the cover of darkness to hide what they are doing.
- In a figurative sense, the New Testament describes Satan as a thief who comes to steal, kill, and destroy. This means that Satan’s plan is to try to get God’s people to stop obeying him. If he succeeded in doing this Satan would be stealing from them the good things that God has planned for them.
- Jesus compared the suddenness of his return to the suddenness of a thief coming to steal from people. Just as a thief comes at a time when people are not expecting it, so Jesus will return at a time when people do not expect it.

(See also: bless, **crime**, **crucify**, **darkness**, destroyer, **power**, **Samaria**, **Satan**)

Bible References:

- **2 Peter 3:10**
- **Luke 12:33**
- **Mark 14:48**
- **Proverbs 6:30**
- **Revelation 3:3**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1215, H1416, H1589, H1590, H1980, H6530, H7703, G07270, G24170, G28120, G30270

Genesis References:

49:19

thorn, thorn bush, thistle

Definition:

Thorn bushes and thistles are plants that have prickly branches or flowers. These plants do not produce fruit or anything else that is useful.

- A “thorn” is a hard, sharp growth on the branch or stem of a plant. A “thornbush” is a type of small tree or shrub that has many thorns on its branches.
- A “thistle” is a plant with prickly stems and leaves. Often the flowers are purple.
- Thorn and thistle plants multiply quickly and can cause nearby plants or crops to not be able to grow. This is a picture of how sin keeps a person from producing good spiritual fruit.
- A crown made of twisted thorn branches was placed on Jesus’ head before he was crucified.
- If possible, these terms should be translated by the names of two different plants or bushes that are known in the language area.

(See also: crown, fruit, spirit)

Bible References:

- Hebrews 6:7-8
- Matthew 13:7
- Matthew 13:22
- Numbers 33:55

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0329, H1863, H2312, H2336, H4534, H5285, H5518, H5544, H6791, H6796, H6975, H7063, H7898, G01730, G01740, G46470, G51460

Genesis References:

3:18

thresh

Definition:

The terms “thresh” and “threshing” refer to the first part of the process of separating grain from the rest of the plant.

- Threshing a crop loosens the grain from the stalk. Afterwards the grain is “winnowed” to completely separate the seed from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a “threshing floor” was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A “threshing cart” or “threshing wheel” was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A “threshing sledge” or “threshing board” was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: **chaff**, grain, **winnow**)

Bible References:

- **2 Chronicles 3:1-3**
- **2 Kings 13:7**
- **2 Samuel 24:16**
- **Daniel 2:35**
- **Luke 3:17**
- **Matthew 3:12**
- **Ruth 3:1-2**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0212, H4173, H1637, H1758, H1786, H1869, H2251, G02480

Genesis References:

50:10; 50:11

throne, enthroned

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word "throne" can also be used to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power.
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God's throne. One way to translate this could be, "where God reigns as king."

(See also: **authority**, **power**, king, reign)

Bible References:

- **Colossians 1:15-17**
- Genesis 41:40
- **Luke 1:32**
- **Luke 22:30**
- **Matthew 5:34**
- **Matthew 19:28**
- **Revelation 1:4-6**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3427, H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G09680, G23620

Genesis References:

41:40

tongue, language

Definition:

The term “tongue” refers to the organ inside a person’s mouth that is used to speak. The term is often used figuratively to mean “language” or “speaking.” There also several other figurative meanings as well.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is “language” or “speech.”
- Sometimes “tongue” may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the “gifts of the Spirit.”
- In the book of Acts, the expression “tongues” of fire refers to “flames” of fire, presumably shaped like tongues.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “tongue” can be translated as “language” or “supernatural language.” If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as “language.”
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as “flames.”
- The expression “my tongue rejoices” could be translated as “I rejoice and praise God” or “I am joyfully praising God.”
- The phrase, “tongue that lies” could be translated as “person who tell lies” or “people who lie.”
- Phrases such as “with their tongues” could be translated as “with what they say” or “by their words.”

(See also: gift, Holy Spirit, joy, praise, rejoice, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- 1 John 3:18
- 2 Samuel 23:2
- Acts 2:26
- Ezekiel 36:3
- Philippians 2:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3956, G11000, G12580, G20840

Genesis References:

10:5; 10:20; 10:31

transgress, transgression

Definition:

The term “transgress” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. The term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a command, rule, or moral code.

- This term is very similar to the word “trespass,” but is generally used more often to describe violations against God than against other people.
- To “transgress” can also be described as to “cross a line,” that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “transgress” could be translated as to “sin” or to “disobey” or to “rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See: parallelism)

(See also: disobey, sin, trespass, iniquity)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 4:6
- Daniel 9:24-25
- Galatians 3:19-20
- Galatians 6:1-2
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Psalm 32:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0898, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G04580, G04590, G38450, G38470, G38480, G39280

Genesis References:

31:36; 50:17

tremble, stagger, shake

Definition:

The term “tremble” means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning “to be very afraid.”

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to “tremble.” It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as “be afraid” or “fear God” or “shake,” depending on the context.

(See also: earth, fear, Lord)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 7:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 5:22
- Luke 8:47

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5568, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, H8653, G17900, G51410, G51560, G54250

Genesis References:

4:12; 4:14; 27:33; 42:28; 45:24

tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: clan, nation, **people group**, **twelve tribes of Israel**)

Bible References:

- **1 Samuel 10:19**
- **2 Kings 17:16-18**
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- **Luke 2:36-38**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G14290, G54430

Genesis References:

25:16; 49:16; 49:28

trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity

Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Do not trouble her” could also be translated as “do not bother her” or “do not criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: afflict, persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:6
- Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H0926, H0927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1804, H2000, H4103, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451,

H7489, H8513, G03870, G16130, G17760, G23460, G23470, G23500, G23600, G28730, G36360, G39260, G39300, G39860, G44230, G46600, G50150, G51820

Genesis References:

34:30; 35:3; 41:8; 41:51; 42:21

trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: believe, **confidence**, **faith**, **faithful**, **true**)

Bible References:

- **1 Chronicles 9:22-24**
- **1 Timothy 4:9**
- **Hosea 10:12-13**
- **Isaiah 31:1-2**
- **Nehemiah 13:13**
- **Psalm 31:5**
- **Titus 3:8**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:2** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.

- 34:6 Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0539, H0982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G16790, G38720, G39820, G40060, G41000, G42760

Genesis References:

24:27; 24:49; 32:10; 42:20; 47:29

Tubal

Definition:

There were several men in the Old Testament who had the name "Tubal."

- One man named Tubal was one of the sons of Japheth.
- A man named "Tubal-Cain" was a son of Lamech and descendant of Cain.
- Tubal was also the name of a people group mentioned by the prophets Isaiah and Ezekiel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Cain, descendant, Ezekiel, Isaiah, Japheth, Lamech, people group, prophet)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:5
- Ezekiel 27:12-13
- Genesis 10:2-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8422, H8423

Genesis References:

4:22; 10:2

tunic

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “tunic” referred to a garment that was worn next to the skin, under other clothing.

- A tunic reached from the shoulders down to the waist or knees and was usually worn with a belt. Tunics worn by wealthy people sometimes had sleeves and reached down to the ankles.
- Tunics were made of leather, haircloth, wool, or linen, and were worn by both men and women.
- A tunic was normally worn under a longer over-garment, such as a toga or outer robe. In warmer weather a tunic was sometimes worn with no outer garment.
- This term could be translated as “long shirt” or “long undergarment” or “shirt-like garment.” It could also be written in a similar way to “tunic,” with a note to explain what kind of clothing it was.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See Also: **robe**)

Bible References:

- **Daniel 3:21-23**
- **Isaiah 22:21**
- **Leviticus 8:12-13**
- **Luke 3:11**
- **Mark 6:7-9**
- **Matthew 10:10**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2243, H3801, H6361, G55090

Genesis References:

3:21; 37:3; 37:23; 37:31; 37:32; 37:33

unleavened bread

Definition:

The term “unleavened bread” refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening.

This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, “unleavened bread” represents the removal of sin from a person’s life in order to live in a way that honors God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “bread with no yeast” or “flat bread that did not rise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term “yeast, leaven.”
- In some contexts, the term “unleavened bread” refers to the “Feast of Unleavened Bread” and can be translated that way.

(See also: bread, Egypt, feast, **Passover**, servant, sin, **yeast**)

Bible References:

- **1 Corinthians 5:6-8**
- **2 Chronicles 30:13-15**
- **Acts 12:3**
- **Exodus 23:14-15**
- **Ezra 6:21-22**
- Genesis 19:1-3
- **Judges 6:21**
- **Leviticus 8:1-3**
- **Luke 22:1**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4682, G01060

Genesis References:

19:3

Ur

Definition:

Ur was an important city along the Euphrates River in the ancient region of Chaldea, which was part of Mesopotamia. This region was located in what is now the modern-day country of Iraq.

- Abraham was from the city of Ur and it was from there that God called him to leave to go to the land of Canaan.
- Haran, the brother of Abraham and father of Lot, died in Ur. This was probably a factor that influenced Lot to leave Ur with Abraham.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Canaan, Chaldea, Euphrates River, Haran, Lot, Mesopotamia)

Bible References:

- Genesis 11:27-28
- Genesis 11:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0218

Genesis References:

11:28; 11:31; 15:7

veil, veiled, unveiled

Definition:

The term “veil” usually refers to a thin piece of cloth that is used as a head covering, to fully or partially cover the head or face.

- Moses covered his face with a veil after he had been in the presence of Yahweh, so that the brightness of his face would be hidden from the people.
- In the Bible, women wore a veil to cover their head, and often their face as well, when they were in public or in the presence of men.
- The veils that women in the Bible wore over their face may have been made of thin material which could be partly seen through and may have only covered part of the face so that the women’s eyes were not covered.
- The verb to “veil” means to cover something with a veil.
- In some English versions, the word “veil” is used to refer to the thick curtain that covered the entrance into the most holy place. But “curtain” is a better term in that context, since it refers to a heavy, thick piece of cloth.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “veil” could also be translated as “thin cloth covering” or “cloth covering” or “head covering” or “head covering.”
- In some cultures, there may already be a term for a veil for women. It may be necessary to find a different word when it is used for Moses.

(See also: Moses)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 3:12-13
- 2 Corinthians 3:16
- Ezekiel 13:18
- Isaiah 47:1-2
- Song of Songs 4:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4304, H4533, H4555, H6777, H6809, H7196, H7479, G03430, G25710, G25720

Genesis References:

24:65; 38:14; 38:19

vine

Definition:

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: Metaphor)

(See also: grape, vineyard)

Bible References:

- Genesis 40:9
- Genesis 49:11
- **John 15:1**
- **Luke 22:18**
- **Mark 12:3**
- **Matthew 21:35-37**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5139, H1612, H8321, G02880, G02900, G10090, G10920

Genesis References:

40:9; 40:10; 49:11

vineyard

Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: Metaphor)
- Vineyard could be also translated as “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: grape, Israel, vine)

Bible References:

- Genesis 9:20-21
- **Luke 13:6**
- **Luke 20:15**
- **Matthew 20:2**
- **Matthew 21:40-41**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1612, H3754, H3755, H8284, G02900

Genesis References:

9:20

virgin, virginity

Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: Euphemism)

(See also: **Christ**, **Isaiah**, **Jesus**, **Mary**)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15-16
- **Luke 1:27**
- **Luke 1:35**
- **Matthew 1:23**
- **Matthew 25:2**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**.
- **22:4** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- **22:5** Mary replied, “How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?”
- **49:1** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God’s Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1330, H1331, G39320, G39330

Genesis References:

24:16

vision, envision

Definition:

The term “vision” refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However, sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

Translation Suggestion

- The phrase “saw a vision” could be translated as “saw something unusual from God” or “God showed him something special.”
- Some languages may not have separate words for “vision” and “dream.” So a sentence such as “Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind” could be translated as something like “Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things.”

(See also: dream)

Bible References:

- Acts 9:10-12
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 10:11
- Acts 12:9-10
- Luke 1:22
- Luke 24:23
- Matthew 17:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2376, H2377, H2378, H2380, H2384, H4236, H4758, H4759, H7203, H7723, H8602, G37010, G37050, G37060

Genesis References:

15:1; 46:2

watch, guard, take heed, beware

Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:6
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 8:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G00690, G09910, G11270, G14920, G23340, G28920, G35250, G37080, G39060, G43370, G46480, G50830, G54380

Genesis References:

2:15; 4:9; 17:9; 17:10; 24:6; 28:15; 28:20; 30:31; 31:24; 31:29; 31:49; 37:11

week

Definition:

The term “week” literally refers to a period of time lasting seven days.

- In the Jewish system of counting time, a week begins at sunset on Saturday and ends at sunset the following Saturday.
- In the Bible, the term “week” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a group of seven units of time, such as seven years.
- The “Festival of Weeks” is a celebration of harvest that takes place seven weeks after Passover. It is also called “Pentecost.”

(See also: **Pentecost**)

Bible References:

- **Acts 20:7-8**
- **Deuteronomy 16:9**
- **Leviticus 23:15-16**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7620, G45210

Genesis References:

29:27; 29:28

wheat

Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: **barley**, **chaff**, grain, seed, thresh, **winnow**)

Bible References:

- **Acts 27:36-38**
- **Exodus 34:21-22**
- **John 12:24**
- **Luke 3:17**
- **Matthew 3:12**
- **Matthew 13:26**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1250, H2406, G46210

Genesis References:

30:14

wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: grape, vine, vineyard, **winepress**)

Bible References:

- **1 Timothy 5:23**
- Genesis 9:21
- Genesis 49:12
- **John 2:3-5**
- **John 2:10**
- **Matthew 9:17**
- **Matthew 11:18**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G10980, G36310, G38200, G39430

Genesis References:

9:21; 9:24; 14:18; 19:32; 19:33; 19:34; 19:35; 27:25; 27:28; 27:37; 49:11; 49:12

wise men, advisor

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wise men” is often a technical term referring to men with unusual knowledge and abilities who served in a king’s royal court as advisors to the king or other high officials.

Old Testament

- The “wise men” who served pharaohs or other kings were often scholars who studied the stars, especially looking for special meanings for the patterns that the stars made in their positions in the sky. Sometimes “wise men” also practiced divination of performed acts of magic, probably by the power of evil spirits.
- Often wise men were expected to explain the meanings of dreams. For example, King Nebuchadnezzar demanded that his wise men describe his dreams and tell him what they meant, but none of them was able to do this, except Daniel who had received this knowledge from God.

New Testament

- The group of men who came from eastern regions to worship Jesus were called “magi,” which is often translated as “wise men,” since this probably refers to scholars who served a ruler of an eastern country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “wise men” could be translated using the term “wise” or with a phrase such as “gifted men” or “educated men” or some other term that refers to men who have an important job working for a ruler.

(See also: Babylon, Daniel, divination, magic, Nebuchadnezzar, ruler, wise)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:32-34
- Daniel 2:1-2
- Daniel 2:10-11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2445, H2450, H3778, H3779, G46800

Genesis References:

41:8

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: obey, fruit)

Bible References:

- Acts 6:3
- Colossians 3:15-17
- Exodus 31:6
- Genesis 3:6
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 7:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 2:5 She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- 18:1 When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- 23:9 Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.

- **45:1** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G46780, G46790, G46800, G49200, G54280, G54290, G54300

Genesis References:

41:33; 41:39

wolf, wild dog, wild dogs

Definition:

A wolf is a fierce, meat-eating animal that is similar to a wild dog.

- Wolves usually hunt in groups and stalk their prey in a clever and stealthy manner.
- In the Bible, the term "wolves" is used figuratively to refer to false teachers or false prophets who destroy believers, who are compared to sheep. False teaching causes people to believe wrong things that bring harm to them.
- This comparison is based on the fact that sheep are especially vulnerable to being attacked and eaten by wolves, because they are weak and cannot defend themselves.

Translation Suggestion

- This term could be translated as "wild dog" or "wild animal."
- Other names for wild dogs could be "jackal" or "coyote."
- When used figuratively to refer to people, this could be translated as "evil people who harm people like animals that attack sheep."

(See also: evil, false prophet, sheep, teach)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:29
- Isaiah 11:7
- John 10:11-13
- Luke 10:3
- Matthew 7:15
- Zephaniah 3:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2061, H3611, G30740

Genesis References:

49:27

womb

Definition:

The term “womb” refers to where a baby grows inside its mother.

- This is an older term that is sometimes used in order to be polite and less direct. (See: euphemism)
- A more modern term for womb is “uterus.”
- Some languages use a word like “belly” to refer to a woman’s womb or uterus.
- Use a word for this in the project language that is well-known, natural, and acceptable.

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:23
- Genesis 25:24-26
- Genesis 38:27-28
- Genesis 49:25
- **Luke 2:21**
- **Luke 11:27**
- **Luke 23:29**
- **Matthew 19:12**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0990, H4578, H7356, H7358, G10640, G28360, G33880

Genesis References:

20:18; 25:23; 25:24; 29:31; 30:2; 30:22; 38:27; 49:25

wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God's "wrath," make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, "wrath" often refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- God's wrath is just and holy. When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: judge, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- Luke 3:7
- Luke 21:23
- Matthew 3:7
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 1:18
- Romans 5:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G23720, G37090, G39490, G39500

Genesis References:

27:44; 40:2; 49:7

wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful

Definition:

To “wrong” someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

- The term “mistreat” means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
- The term “hurt” is more general and means to “cause someone harm in some way.” It often has the meaning of “physically injure.”
- Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as “do wrong to” or “treat unjustly” or “cause harm to” or “treat in a harmful way” or “injure.”

Bible References:

- Acts 7:26
- Exodus 22:21
- Genesis 16:5
- Luke 6:28
- Matthew 20:13-14
- Psalms 71:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H0816, H2248, H2250, H2255, H2257, H2398, H2554, H2555, H3238, H3637, H4834, H5062, H5142, H5230, H5627, H5753, H5766, H5791, H5792, H5916, H6031, H6087, H6127, H6231, H6485, H6565, H6586, H7451, H7489, H7563, H7665, H7667, H7686, H8133, H8267, H8295, G00910, G00920, G00930, G00950, G02640, G08240, G09830, G09840, G15360, G16260, G16510, G17270, G19080, G25560, G25580, G25590, G26070, G30760, G30770, G37620, G41220, G51950, G51960

Genesis References:

16:5

Yahweh, Yah

Definition:

The term "Yahweh" is God's personal name in the Old Testament. The specific origin of this name is unknown, but it is probably derived from the Hebrew verb meaning, "to be."

- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term "LORD" or "the LORD" to represent "Yahweh." This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh's name and started saying "Lord" every time the term "Yahweh" appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write "LORD" with all capital letters to show that this represents God's personal name and to distinguish it from "Lord" which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULT and UST texts always translate this term as "Yahweh," in agreement with the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term "Yahweh" never occurs in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for "Lord" is used, even when quoting the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.
- "Yah" is a shortened form of the name Yahweh that occurs in poetry and praise (e.g. Hallelujah = "Praise Yah"), and in some Hebrew names (e.g. Zechariah = "Yah remembers").

Translation Suggestions:

- "Yahweh" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "I am" or "existing one" or "the one who is" or "he who is present."
- This name could also be written in a way that is similar to how "Yahweh" is spelled, or how it sounds in your language.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term "Yahweh" and instead use the traditional rendering, "LORD." An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title "Lord." Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish "LORD" as a name (Yahweh) from "Lord" as a title.
- In most cases it is good to keep the name Yahweh where it occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places to make the text more natural and clear.
- An introduction of a quote from Yahweh could be something like, "This is what Yahweh says."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: God, Lord)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:20
- 1 Samuel 16:7
- Daniel 9:3
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 2:4
- Genesis 4:3-5
- Genesis 28:13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:4
- Isaiah 38:8
- Job 12:10
- Joshua 1:9
- Lamentations 1:5
- Leviticus 25:35
- Malachi 3:4
- Micah 2:5
- Micah 6:5
- Numbers 8:11
- Psalm 124:3
- Ruth 1:21
- Zechariah 14:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 9:14 God said, “I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, ‘I AM has sent me to you.’ Also tell them, ‘I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.’”
- 13:4 Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- 13:5 “Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God.”
- 16:1 The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- 19:10 Then Elijah prayed, “O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

Genesis References:

2:4; 2:5; 2:7; 2:8; 2:9; 2:15; 2:16; 2:18; 2:19; 2:21; 2:22; 3:1; 3:8; 3:9; 3:13; 3:14; 3:21; 3:22; 3:23; 4:1; 4:3; 4:4; 4:6; 4:9; 4:13; 4:15; 4:16; 4:26; 5:29; 6:3; 6:5; 6:6; 6:7; 6:8; 7:1; 7:5; 7:16; 8:20; 8:21; 9:26; 10:9; 11:5; 11:6; 11:8; 11:9; 12:1; 12:4; 12:7; 12:8; 12:17; 13:4; 13:10; 13:13; 13:14; 13:18; 14:22; 15:1; 15:2; 15:4; 15:6; 15:7; 15:8; 15:18; 16:2; 16:5; 16:7; 16:9; 16:10; 16:11; 16:13; 17:1; 18:1; 18:13; 18:14; 18:17; 18:19; 18:20; 18:22; 18:26; 18:33; 19:13; 19:14; 19:16; 19:24; 19:27; 20:18; 21:1; 21:33; 22:11; 22:14; 22:15; 22:16; 24:1; 24:3; 24:7; 24:12; 24:21; 24:26; 24:27; 24:31; 24:35; 24:40; 24:42; 24:44; 24:48; 24:50; 24:51; 24:52; 24:56; 25:21; 25:22; 25:23; 26:2; 26:12; 26:22; 26:24; 26:25; 26:28; 26:29; 27:7; 27:20; 27:27; 28:13; 28:16; 28:21; 29:31; 29:32; 29:33; 29:35; 30:24; 30:27; 30:30; 31:3; 31:49; 32:9; 38:7; 38:10; 39:2; 39:3; 39:5; 39:21; 39:23; 49:18

year

Definition:

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into twelve months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has twelve months. But an extra thirteenth month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is eleven days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: month)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:31
- Acts 19:8-10
- Daniel 8:1
- Exodus 12:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H7620, H7657, H8140, H8141, G17630, G20940

Genesis References:

1:14; 5:3; 5:4; 5:5; 5:6; 5:7; 5:8; 5:9; 5:10; 5:11; 5:12; 5:13; 5:14; 5:15; 5:16; 5:17; 5:18; 5:19; 5:20; 5:21; 5:22; 5:23; 5:25; 5:26; 5:27; 5:28; 5:30; 5:31; 5:32; 6:3; 7:6; 7:11; 8:13; 9:28; 9:29; 11:10; 11:11; 11:12; 11:13; 11:14; 11:15; 11:16; 11:17; 11:18; 11:19; 11:20; 11:21; 11:22; 11:23; 11:24; 11:25; 11:26; 11:32; 12:4; 14:4; 14:5; 15:13; 16:3; 16:16; 17:1; 17:17; 17:21; 17:24; 17:25; 21:5; 23:1; 25:7; 25:17; 25:20; 25:26; 26:12; 26:34; 29:18; 29:20; 29:27; 29:30; 31:38; 31:41; 35:28; 37:2; 41:1; 41:26; 41:27; 41:29; 41:30; 41:34; 41:35; 41:36; 41:46; 41:47; 41:48; 41:50; 41:53; 41:54; 45:6; 45:11; 47:8; 47:9; 47:17; 47:18; 47:28; 50:22; 50:26

yoke, yoked, tied

Definition:

A yoke is a piece of wood or metal attached to two or more animals to connect them for the purpose of pulling a plow or a cart. There are also several figurative meanings for this term.

- The term “yoke” is used figuratively to refer to something that joins people for the purpose of working together, such as in serving Jesus.
- Paul used the term “yokefellow” to refer to someone who was serving Christ as he was. This could also be translated as “fellow worker” or “fellow servant” or “coworker.”
- The term “yoke” is also often used figuratively to refer to a heavy load that someone has to carry, such as when being oppressed by slavery or persecution.
- In most contexts, it is best to translate this term literally, using the local term for a yoke that is used for farming.
- Other ways to translate the figurative use of this term could be, “oppressive burden” or “heavy load” or “bond,” depending on the context.

(See also: bind, **burden**, **oppress**, **persecute**, servant)

Bible References:

- **Acts 15:10**
- **Galatians 5:1**
- Genesis 27:40
- **Isaiah 9:4**
- **Jeremiah 27:4**
- **Matthew 11:30**
- **Philippians 4:3**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3627, H4132, H4133, H5674, H5923, H6776, G20860, G22180

Genesis References:

27:40

Zebulun

Definition:

Zebulun was Jacob's tenth son. He was Leah's sixth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Zebulun" or "Zebulun."
- The meaning of the name Zebulun is unknown, but it is similar to a Hebrew word probably meaning "to honor" or "to dwell."
- The tribe of Zebulun settled in northwest Canaan, bordered by the lands of Naphtali, Issachar, Manasseh, and Asher.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Leah)

Bible References:

- Exodus 1:1-5
- Genesis 30:20
- Isaiah 9:1
- Judges 4:10
- Matthew 4:13
- Matthew 4:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2074, H2075, G21940

Genesis References:

30:20; 35:23; 46:14; 49:13

Zilpah

Definition:

Zilpah was one of Jacob's wives. She was the mother of Jacob's two sons Gad and Asher.

- Laban gave Zilpah to Leah as a servant when Leah married Jacob.
- When Leah stopped having children, she gave Zilpah to Jacob as a wife to bear more children for her.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Jacob, Leah, Gad, Asher)

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:23
- Genesis 30:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2153

Genesis References:

29:24; 30:9; 30:10; 30:12; 35:26; 37:2; 46:18

Zoar

Definition:

Zoar was a small city where Lot fled when God destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah.

- It was formerly known as “Bela” but was renamed “Zoar” when Lot asked God to spare this “small” city.
- Zoar is thought to have been located in the plain of the Jordan River or at the southern end of the Dead Sea.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Lot, Sodom, Gomorrah)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 34:1-3
- Genesis 13:10-11
- Genesis 14:1-2
- Genesis 19:22
- Genesis 19:23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6820

Genesis References:

13:10; 14:2; 14:8; 19:22; 19:23; 19:30